PEARSON NEW INTERNATIONAL EDITION

Technical Communication
Process and Product

Sharon Gerson   Steven Gerson

Eighth Edition

Pearson New International Edition

Technical Communication
Process and Product
Sharon Gerson Steven Gerson
Eighth Edition

PEARSON

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at: www.pearsoned.co.uk

PEARSON

ISBN 10: 1-292-02465-8
ISBN 13: 978-1-292-02465-3

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Printed in the United States of America

Table of Contents

1. An Introduction to Technical Communication
Sharon Gerson 1

2. The Communication Process
Sharon Gerson 29

3. Objectives in Technical Communication
Sharon Gerson 61

4. Audience Recognition
Sharon Gerson 89

5. Research
Sharon Gerson 125

6. Routine Correspondence
Sharon Gerson 157

7. Social Media
Sharon Gerson 227

8. The Job Search
Sharon Gerson 249

9. Document Design
Sharon Gerson 323

10. Using Visual Aids
Sharon Gerson 347

11. Communicating to Persuade
Sharon Gerson 379

12. Technical Descriptions and Process Analyses
Sharon Gerson 413

13. Instructions, User Manuals, and Standard Operating Procedures
Sharon Gerson 469

14. Web Sites and Online Help
Sharon Gerson 503

15. Short, Informal Reports
Sharon Gerson 531

16. Long, Formal Reports
Sharon Gerson 571

17. Proposals
Sharon Gerson 621

18. Oral Presentations
Sharon Gerson 657

Index 687

An Introduction to Technical Communication

An Introduction to Technical Communication

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In the Gulfview scenario, employees in diverse locations reveal the importance of technical communication.

Gulfview Architectural and Engineering Services is home based in Gulfview, Texas, with office sites in ten U.S. cities and five locations throughout the world. Gulfview hopes to build a power plant in Saudi Arabia. To accomplish this task, a team of employees is working on two continents. The project requires that all team members be involved in numerous communication challenges.

Proposal. First, one team, consisting of engineers, architects, marketing specialists, accountants, lawyers, and technical communicators, put together a proposal. In this proposal, they focused on the services they could offer, the expertise of their workforce, the price they would charge for the construction, and a timeline for their work. Despite many competitors, Gulfview won the account.

E-mail, text messages, and instant messages. The construction would take Gulfview approximately two years. During that time, Gulfview personnel had to communicate with their Saudi contractors on a daily basis. E-mail, text messages, and instant messages answered this need. The team members communicated with each other by writing approximately 50 e-mail messages a day. In these transmittals, the team members focused on construction permits, negotiated

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- **Understand that technical communication is written for and about business and industry and focuses on products and services**
- **Use various oral and written channels of communication, dependent upon the audience, purpose, and situation**
- **Recognize that technical communication costs a company both time and money, so employees must strive to write effectively**
- **Recognize the importance of teamwork in technical communication**
- **Understand that Human Performance Improvement (HPI) solves problems—"gaps"—inherent in teamwork**
- **Face problems in teams including varied knowledge levels, differing motives, and insufficient resources**
- **Use groupware for collaborative projects**
- **Recognize that conflict resolution strategies are essential to a team's success**
- **Resolve conflicts in a team by setting guidelines, encouraging all to participate, and avoiding taking sides**
- **Apply the checklist to team activities**

costs with vendors, changed construction plans, and asked questions and received answers. They used text messages and instant messages for quick updates and to build rapport with coworkers.

Intranet Web Site and Corporate Blog. To help all parties involved (those in Saudi Arabia as well as Gulfview employees throughout the United States), Gulfview's Information Technology Department built an intranet site and a blog geared specifically toward the power plant project. This firewall-protected site, open to Gulfview employees and external vendors associated with the project, helped all construction personnel submit online forms, get corporate updates, and access answers to frequently asked questions. Many of these FAQs were managed through online help screens with pull-down menus. The blog allowed employees to provide work journals, Web logs in which they could comment on construction challenges, and get feedback from other employees working with similar issues.

Letters. To secure and revise construction permits, Gulfview personnel had to write formal letters to government officials in Saudi Arabia. In addition, Gulfview employees had to write letters to vendors, asking for quotes.

Reports. Finally, all of the employees involved in the power plant project had to report on their activities. To encourage collaboration and improve the quality of the company's writing, management created a corporate wiki where participants could write the following:

- Progress reports providing updates on the project's status
- Incident reports when job-related accidents and injuries occurred
- Feasibility reports to recommend changes to the project's plan or scope
- Meeting minutes following the many team meetings

Like all companies engaged in job-related projects, Gulfview Architectural and Engineering Services spent much of its time communicating with a diverse and dispersed audience. The challenges they faced involved teamwork, multicultural and multilingual concerns, a vast array of communication technologies, and a variety of communication channels.

What Is Technical Communication?

Technical communication is oral and written communication for and about business and industry. Technical communication focuses on products and services—how to manufacture them, market them, manage them, deliver them, and use them. Technical communication is composed primarily in the work environment for supervisors, colleagues, subordinates, vendors, and customers.

Purposes of Technical Communication

Whether you are an employer or an employee, a customer or a vendor, you will be involved with communication in the workplace. You will write business correspondence and speak to colleagues, clients, or salespeople. Knowing how to communicate successfully in a work environment will help you express your point of view and influence people.

What are the purposes of technical communication? When would you be writing or speaking on the job? In the business world, you will communicate to different audiences, for different purposes, using different channels of communication. Consider the possibilities shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1 Purposes of Workplace Communication

Speaking to customers As a computer information systems employee, you work at a 1-800 hotline helpdesk. A call comes through from a concerned client. Your job not only is to speak politely and professionally to the customer but also to follow up with an e-mail documenting your responses.	
Writing a letter As a customer, you have just celebrated your 6-year-old child's birthday at a local pizza parlor. Unfortunately, the pizzas for the 15 guests were cold, the service was rude, and the promised entertainment was late in arriving. You now need to write a complaint letter to the store's management, recounting your experience.	**Making a PowerPoint presentation** As a trust officer in a bank, one of your jobs is to make proposals to potential clients. In doing so, you will write a proposal about your bank's services, and you will use PowerPoint to make an oral presentation for this client.
	**Writing reports** As the manager of human resources, one of your major responsibilities is to document your training staff's job accomplishments. To do so, you must write year-end progress reports for the employees, which will be used to justify their raises.

TABLE 1 (Continued)

Marketing
As an entrepreneur, you want to advertise your new catering business. To do so, you plan to write brochures (to be distributed locally), create a Web site (to expand your business opportunities), use your Facebook site to connect with clients, and send tweets to tell customers when your catering trucks are in the neighborhood.

Using a Wiki
As a mid-level manager, you are in charge of a team of employees who work in different cities, have varied job titles, and work different shifts. To maintain constant communication about a proposal the team is creating for distribution to the marketing department, you use a Wiki so everyone is encouraged to interact and make suggestions about the proposal's content.

Seeking employment
As a recently graduated accounting major, it is time to get a job. You need to write an effective resume and letter of application to show corporations what an asset you will be to their work environment. Then, you will need to interview well and write a follow-up letter.

Texting and IMing
As a manager, you need to stay in contact with your sales representatives who frequently call on customers or visit companies in the region. You use both text messages and instant messages to communicate with these employees.

Blogging
Your employer wants you to create and maintain a blog to reach a new market segment for the company's products.

Communication Channels

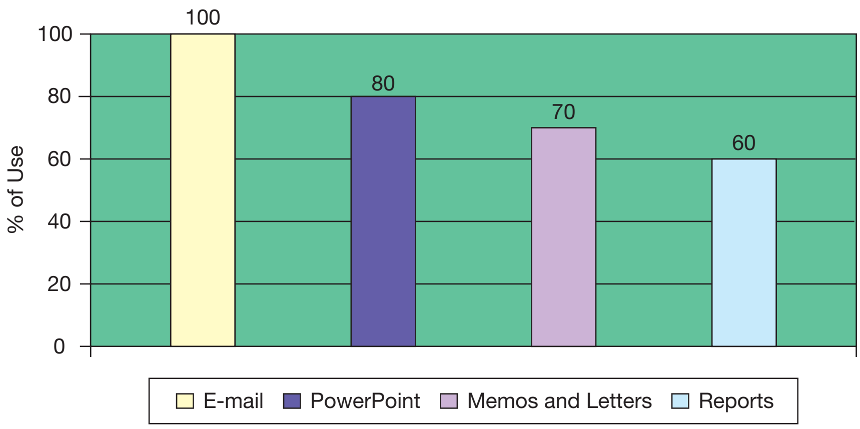
Technical communication takes many different forms. Not only will you communicate both orally and in writing, but also you will rely on various types of correspondence and technology, dependent upon the audience, purpose, and situation. To communicate successfully in the workplace, you must adapt to different channels of communication. Table 2 gives you examples of different communication channels, both oral and written.

TABLE 2 Communication Channels

Written Communication Channels	Oral Communication Channels
• E-mail • Memos • Letters • Reports • Proposals • Fliers • Brochures • Faxes • Web sites • Instant and text messages • Blogs • Facebook • Twitter • Job information (resumes, letters of application, follow-up letters)	• Leading meetings • Conducting interviews • Making sales calls • Participating in teleconferences and videoconferences • Facilitating training sessions • Participating in collaborative team projects • Providing customer service • Making telephone calls • Leaving voicemail messages • Making presentations at conferences or to civic organizations • Participating in interpersonal communication at work • Conducting performance reviews

To clarify the use of different technical communication channels, look at Figure 1. In a survey of approximately 120 companies employing over 8 million people, the National Commission on Writing found that employees "almost always" use different forms of writing, including e-mail messages, PowerPoint, memos, letters, and reports ("Writing: A Ticket to Work" 11).

FIGURE 1 Channels "Almost Always" Used in Workplace Communication



Smartphones and Technical Communication

The Pew Research Center states that "The mobile device will be the primary connection tool to the Internet for most people in the world in 2020" (Welinske). Smartphones are impacting the size, speed, mobility, and tone of technical correspondence in multifunctional ways. The omnipresence of smartphones, a communication channel that is both written and oral, can have a variety of values for technical communication.

Portability Equals Mobility

Smartphones allow people to communicate everywhere, anywhere, anytime. The mobility of smartphones is especially valuable for employees involved in work-related travel or employees who telecommute. From your smartphone, you can text, tweet, and send e-mail messages to your coworkers and clients—from wherever you are to wherever they are.

Smartphones Encourage Multitasking

Imagine this scenario: You're at your office writing a formal report. You need additional information to develop your ideas. To research, you use your smartphone to call a colleague. She verbally shares data with you over the phone, sends an e-mail message with a pie chart she just developed, suggests that you access a Web site she's just found that will provide you details for your report, and follows that up by re-tweeting a Twitter message about your topic that she just received. You can also take a photo with your smartphone and use the image in your report to document workplace issues. You're on your office computer, but simultaneously, you're using your phone to multitask.

Get Immediate Feedback

What are others thinking? Sure, you could wait until you get back to the office, but why? With a smartphone, you can access your Twitter or Facebook accounts and find out what's what. You can read your blog or someone else's on the go. You can use your smartphone to see what your LinkedIn connections are up to (new jobs, skills, accomplishments, and more). Smartphones let you access a network of colleagues, clients, followers, connections, and friends. Here's another example of how your smartphone lets you get feedback. A colleague sends you a tweet and tells you to click on a hashtagged (#) word or phrase in the tweet. This allows you to access other tweets in that category or topic. The hashtag, "community-driven . . . metadata," provides you additional, immediate content for a report you're researching (Messina).

Find New Job Opportunities

Finally, smartphones and their mobile apps give technical writers new job opportunities. With smartphones and mobile apps proliferating, technical writers will need to add a new skill to their technical toolkit. In addition to hardcopy and online help, writers will need to design user help tutorials and assistance for a mobile environment that demands less screen space, a smaller work/viewing area, and fewer words. Conciseness and clarity have always been important in technical writing. With smartphones, these skills are even more essential.

Technological Communication Advances through Mobile Apps

Apps, short for application software, are the perfect accompaniment for smartphone users. Technical communicators need to be aware of and understand apps used for writing because technology changes our communication channels. Technical communicators have not been limited to hard-copy documents for decades because of the ability to produce text online in HTML, XHTML, XML, and DITA and use authoring tools like Robohelp, Flare, Flash, and HelpNDoc. People communicate electronically through e-mail, instant messages, text messages, and tweets. Employees use Facebook and YouTube to promote businesses and connect with the audience. In every instance, technology shapes the message. Technology alters the length and look of communication. Apps are part of this changing technology and an important part of communication today.

For example, Marziah Karch is a Senior Educational Technology Analyst and the co-author of three instructional books: *Android for Work, Droids Made Simple,* and *Android Tablets Made Simple*. All three books explain how business professionals can successfully use Android and ensure workplace productivity while taking their offices on the road. Marziah uses mobile apps to

- write and check her e-mail
- manage her calendar
- inform colleagues of her location (conference, airport, hotel, restaurant, customer's site, etc.)
- create portable WiFi hotspots to use her laptop, tablet, or other electronic devices
- access a documents dropbox
- store and retrieve documents from the cloud
- log her travel itinerary

Marziah tends to compose either on her laptop, tablet, or desktop PC, but when she's on the road, she uses mobile writing apps to open Word or PDF documents for editing or previewing. The advantage of mobile apps, for Marziah, is instantaneous access from the comfort and convenience of her smartphone (Karch).

Types of Writing Apps

Writing apps cover a wide gamut of capabilities. Some apps are limited to note taking, blogging, and simple text. Others allow for a greater scope of options, including font sizes and colors, graphics, highlighting, and organization into distinct folders. Still other apps focus on PowerPoint development. See Table 3 for a list of current writing apps available for technical communication and an overview of their capabilities.

The Importance of Technical Communication

Why is communication in the workplace important? At work, your primary job is not necessarily writing . . . or is it? For example, you might be an accountant, computer technician, training facilitator, salesperson, buyer, supervisor, account administrator, or administrative assistant. Your employers will expect expertise from you in those areas of specialization. As a computer technician, for instance, you have been hired due to your knowledge of hardware and software. As an accountant, you have been hired due to your knowledge of accounts payable and receivable. However, a major part of every job is an employee's ability to communicate.

To succeed on the job, you need to write and speak effectively to others—constantly. Gaston Caperton, president of the National Commission on Writing for America's Families, Schools, and Colleges, says that "Writing is a fundamental professional skill. Most of the new jobs in the years ahead will emphasize writing. If students want professional work in service firms, in banking, finance, insurance, and real estate, they must know how to communicate on paper clearly and concisely" ("Writing Skills"). Technical communication is important to you for many reasons.

Operating a Business

Technical communication is not a frill or an occasional occurrence. It is a major component of your job. The National Commission on Writing for America's Families, Schools, and Colleges is a blue-ribbon group of leaders from public schools, higher education, and the business and writing communities. This commission surveyed human resource

TABLE 3 Mobile Apps

App Name	App Capabilities
BlogWriter	• limit to text blogging • sync, publish, edit, and delete blog posts • upload and post photos
Chapters	• journal for ideas, stories, and events • allow pictures and data transfer between an iPad and iPod
Chronicle	• take notes for journals/diaries • organize notes in virtual notebooks • add photos • create PDFs
CleanWriter	• plain text editor • font options • margin adjustment • color options • autocorrect
Documents To Go	• view, edit, and create Word documents • view, edit, and create PowerPoint presentations • cut, copy, and paste • bullet and number lists • change fonts • embed graphics and tables • edit in landscape view
My Writing Spot	• organize writing into chapters • autosave • count words • use a dictionary/thesaurus • send text and graphics to e-mail • download to a computer
Pages	• create, edit, and view documents • use full-screen mode and zoom • insert graphics • use templates • sort and organize documents into folders • change font style, size, and color • adjust line spacing and paragraph alignment • format lists with bullets or numbers • spell check • generate a table of contents • add headers, footers, and footnotes • count words
Quickoffice Mobile Office Suite	• create and edit Microsoft Office files (font type, size, colors, underline, italics, bold, bullets, paragraph alignment) • create and edit PowerPoint slides
WriteRoom	• use simple text only • offers no page layout, tables, or graphics

directors from 150 leading American corporations with a combined workforce of more than 10 million employees in the United States and combined annual revenues of $4 trillion ("Writing Skills"). Based on their research, the commission concluded the following:

- People who cannot write and communicate clearly will not be hired, and if already working, are unlikely to last long enough to be considered for promotion. Half of responding companies reported that they take writing into consideration when hiring professional employees and when making promotion decisions. 'In most cases, writing ability could be your ticket in . . . or it could be your ticket out,' said one respondent. Commented another: 'You can't move up without writing skills.'"

- "Two-thirds of salaried employees in large American companies have some writing responsibility. 'All employees must have writing ability. . . . Manufacturing documentation, operating procedures, reporting problems, lab safety, waste-disposal operations—all have to be crystal clear,' said one human resource director."
- "Eighty percent or more of the companies in the services and the finance, insurance, and real estate (FIRE) sectors, the corporations with greatest employment growth potential, assess writing during hiring. 'Applicants who provide poorly written letters wouldn't likely get an interview,' commented one insurance executive" ("Writing Skills").

Using Time

In addition to serving valuable purposes on the job, getting a job, or meeting your needs as a customer, communication is important because it is time consuming. Just imagine how much of your time at work will be spent communicating with others.

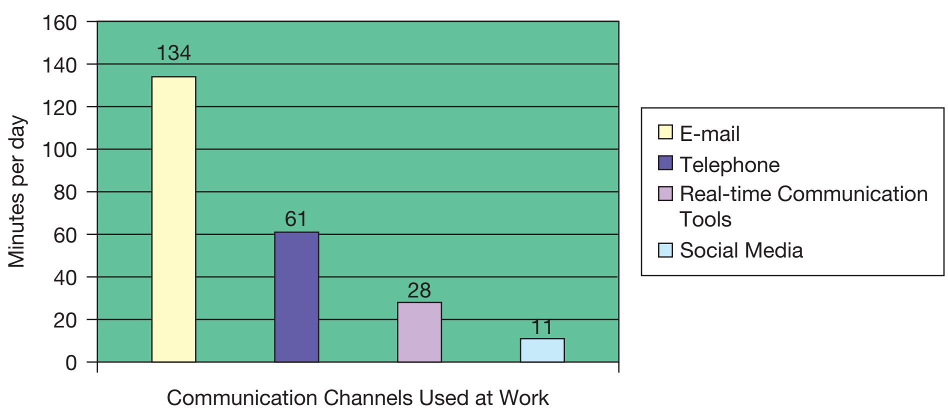
Osterman Research, Inc., in a published white paper, reports that corporate employees send about 43 e-mail messages each day and receive around 123 more. That means that when workers aren't writing e-mail messages, they're reading them. Between writing and reading e-mail messages, employees spend on average "134 minutes per day working in email, or about 28% of an eight-hour day" ("The Importance of Email Continuity"). In addition, Osterman Research found that workers

- speak on the telephone around an hour a day
- use real-time communication tools like instant messages, text messages, video conferences, or Wikis about a half hour each day
- communicate through social media around ten minutes a day

See Figure 2 for a breakdown of time spent communicating on the job.

Though you will spend a great deal of time writing, reading, and speaking on the telephone at work, you will spend even more time communicating in other ways. Calculate the time you will spend verbally communicating in meetings, walking to and from the elevator with your coworkers, and on collaborative work teams while discussing how to complete a project. You will use oral communication skills when speaking to a customer in your office or in the showroom. You will need to convince your boss to let you miss two workdays while you coach your child's soccer team at an out-of-town tournament.

FIGURE 2 Time Spent Communicating on the Job



You also will need to use effective oral communication when you represent your company at the local speaker's bureau. When you are not writing at work, you will be speaking, listening, and reading much of the time.

Costing Money

You have heard it before—time is money. Here are three simple ways of looking at the cost of your technical communication.

- **Percentage of salary.** Consider how much of your salary is being paid for your communication skills. Let's say you make $35,000 a year and spend 28 percent of your time writing e-mail (as do many employees in the workplace). Your company is paying you approximately $9,800 just to write e-mail. That does not include the additional time you spend using other written communication channels or speaking to coworkers, vendors, and clients.

  If you are not communicating effectively on the job, then you are asking your bosses to pay you a lot of money for substandard work. Your time spent communicating, both in writing and orally, is part of your salary—and part of your company's expenditures.
- **Cost of training.** Corporations spend money to improve their employees' writing skills. The National Commission on Writing for America's Families, Schools, and Colleges reported that "More than 40 percent of responding firms offer or require training for salaried employees with writing deficiencies. 'We're likely to send out 200–300 people annually for skills upgrade courses like "business writing" or "technical writing," said one respondent.' Based on survey responses, the Commission estimates that remedying deficiencies in writing costs American corporations as much as $3.1 billion annually" ("Writing Skills").
- **Generating income.** Your communication skills do more than just cost the company money; these talents can earn money for both you and the company. A well-written sales letter, flier, brochure, proposal, or Web site can generate corporate income. Good written communication is not just part of your salary—it helps pay your wages.

The Importance of Teamwork in Technical Communication

Companies have found that teamwork enhances productivity. Teammates help and learn from each other. They provide checks and balances. Through teamwork, employees can develop open lines of communication to ensure that projects are completed successfully.

Collaboration

In business and industry, many user manuals, reports, proposals, PowerPoint presentations, and Web sites are team written. Teams consist of engineers, graphic artists, marketing specialists, and corporate employees in legal, delivery, production, sales, accounting, and management. These collaborative team projects extend beyond the company. A corporate team also will work with subcontractors from other corporations. The collaborative efforts include communicating with companies in other cities and countries through teleconferences, faxes, and e-mail. Modern technical communication requires the participation of "communities of practice": formal and informal networks of people who collaborate on projects based on common goals, interests, initiatives, and activities (Fisher and Bennion 278).

According to *Horizon Report* regarding major trends, "The world of work is increasingly collaborative. . . . The days of isolated desk jobs are disappearing, giving way to models in which teams work actively together to address issues too far-reaching or complex for a single worker to resolve alone" (Johnson). Table 4 from the National Association of Colleges and Employers lists the skills employers want. Notice how communication, interpersonal, and teamwork skills take precedence over other skills.

Collaboration ranks so highly for employers because teamwork helps employees accomplish the following goals:

- Brainstorm for new ideas and consensus
- Make decisions
- Solve problems
- Determine team roles
- Assign tasks
- Complete work by team-determined deadlines

TABLE 4 Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want

Skill	Rating
1. Communication Skills (Verbal and Written)	4.7
2. Honesty/Integrity	4.7
3. Teamwork Skills (work well with others)	4.6
4. Strong Work Ethic	4.5
5. Analytical Skills	4.4
6. Flexibility/Adaptability	4.4
7. Interpersonal Skills (relate well to others)	4.4
8. Motivation/Initiative	4.4
9. Computer Skills	4.3
10. Detail Oriented	4.1

(5-point scale, where 1 = not at all important and 5 = extremely important)

Source: National Association of Colleges and Employers. Job Outlook Student Version

The Problems with Silo Building

Working well with others requires collaboration versus silo building. The *silo* is a metaphor for departments and employees that behave as if they have no responsibilities outside their areas. They fail to collaborate with others. In addition, they act as if no other department's concerns or opinions are valuable.

Such "stand-alone" departments or people isolate themselves from the company as a whole and become inaccessible to other departments. They "focus narrowly," which creates problems (Hughes 9). Poor accessibility and poor communication "can cause duplicate efforts, discourage cooperation, and stifle cross-pollination of ideas" (Hughes 9). To be effective, companies need "open lines of communication within and between departments" (Hughes 9). The successful employee must be able to work collaboratively with others to share ideas. In the workplace, teamwork is essential.

Why Teamwork Is Important

Teamwork benefits employees, corporations, and consumers. By allowing all constituents a voice in project development, teamwork helps to create effective workplaces and ensures product integrity.

Diversity of Opinion. When you look at problems individually, you tend to see issues from a limited perspective—*yours*. In contrast, teams offer many points of view. For instance, if a team has members from accounting, public relations, customer service, engineering, and information technology, then that diverse group can offer diverse opinions. You should always look at a problem from various angles.

Checks and Balances. Diversity of opinion also provides the added benefit of checks and balances. Rarely should one individual or one department determine outcomes. When a team consists of members from different disciplines, those members can say, "Wait a minute. Your idea will negatively impact my department. We had better stop and reconsider."

Broad-Based Understanding. If decisions are made in a silo, by a small group of like-minded individuals, then these conclusions might surprise others in the company. Surprises are rarely good. You always want buy-in from the majority of your stakeholders. An excellent way to achieve this is through team projects. When multiple points of view are shared, a company benefits from broad-based knowledge.

Empowerment. Collaboration gives people from varied disciplines an opportunity to provide their input. When groups are involved in the decision-making process, they have a stake in the project. This allows for better morale and productivity.

Team Building. Everyone in a company should have the same goals—corporate success, customer satisfaction, and quality production. Team projects encourage shared visions, a better work environment, a greater sense of collegiality, and improved performance. Employees can say, "We are all in this together, working toward a common goal."

SPOTLIGHT

Using a Variety of Communication Channels to Achieve Collaboration

Rob Studin is the Executive Director of Financial Advisory Services for Lincoln Financial Advisors (LFA). Home based in Philadelphia, LFA's 3,000 advisors and employees provide fee-based financial planning for clients, including estate planning, investment planning, retirement planning strategies, and business owner planning (http://www.lfg.com/).

LFA uses four electronic oral communication channels to ensure a consistent, collaborative workforce: teleconferences, videoconferences, webinars, and LFA's Virtual University.

- Teleconferences: Rob, who works in LFA's Birmingham office, has six key managers who work in San Francisco, Salt Lake City, Cleveland, Columbus, Rochester, and Baltimore. To communicate with his dispersed team members, Rob says, "We have a conference call just to touch base. Sometimes we have a formal agenda, and sometimes I just ask, 'What's going on, guys?' A casual, weekly teleconference allows us to stay up to date on issues facing us individually or as a group. We collectively understand that six heads are better than one for problem solving."
- Videoconferences: You can't communicate effectively with 3,000 people on the telephone. While teleconferencing works well for Rob and smaller groups, when LFA needs to communicate to all of its employees and/or advisors about corporate-wide issues that affect policy, budget, personnel, and strategic planning, face-to-face meetings might be the optimum solution. However, transporting 3,000 people to a central location is neither time efficient nor cost effective. A three-hour meeting might require two days of travel plus hotel, food, and air fares. To save time and money, LFA uses videoconferences.
- Webinars: Videoconferences create at least three challenges for LFA employees. First, to participate in a videoconference, the employees must be in a room fitted with LFA's company-wide videoconference system. Second, if many people are in the audience and seated at a distance from the screen, visibility/readability can be an obstacle. Finally, videoconferences don't allow the audience any hands-on opportunity to practice new skills. Webinars solve these corporate communication challenges. All an individual needs to participate in an online seminar is a computer.
- LFA's Virtual University: Most of LFA's webinars are synchronous. All employees are asked to log on at a given time while a webinar host runs the training program. Inevitably, however, an employee can't participate in the webinar when it is initially presented. LFA has solved this problem. Their Virtual University offers asynchronous "training on demand." All training videoconferences and all webinars are recorded and archived. By accessing LFA's password-protected www.LFAplanner.com site, advisors and employees can retrieve training materials at their convenience.

Rob says that he spends approximately 50 percent of his work time communicating via e-mail messages, telephone calls, and teleconferences. For efficiency, cost savings, and consistent communication to a geographically dispersed workforce, LFA has found that multiple, electronic channels help team members achieve their communication goals.

Diverse Teams . . . Dispersed Teams in a Global Economy

Collaborative projects will depend on diverse and dispersed team members.

Diverse Teams

Teams will be diverse, consisting of people from different areas of expertise. Your teams will be made up of engineers, graphic artists, accountants, technical communicators, financial advisors, human resource employees, and others. In addition, the team will consist of people who are different ages, genders, cultures, and races.

Dispersed Teams

In a global economy, members of a team project might not be able to work together face to face. Team members might be located across time and space. They could work in different cities, states, time zones, countries, or shifts. For example, you might work for your company in New York, while members of your team work for the company at other sites in Chicago, Denver, and Los Angeles. This challenge to collaboration is compounded when you also must team with employees at your company's sites in India, Mexico, France, and Japan. According to a recent report, 41 percent of employees at the top international corporations live outside the borders of their company's home country (Nesbitt and Bagley-Woodward 25). As companies "get comfortable with new technologies," these companies will become mobile enterprises. "Forrester [Research] defines a mobile enterprise as one that can connect and control suppliers, partners, employees, assets, products, and customers from any location" ("Achieving the Promise").

Using Collaborative Software (Groupware) in Virtual Teams

When employees are dispersed geographically, getting all team members together would be costly in terms of time and money. Companies solve this problem by forming virtual, remote teams that collaborate using electronic communication tools—groupware. Groupware consists of software and hardware that helps companies reduce travel costs, allows for telecommuting, and facilitates communication for employees located in different cities and countries.

Groupware includes the following tools (Nesbit and Bagley-Woodward 28):

- Electronic conferencing tools such as webinars, listservs, message and discussion boards, videoconferences, and teleconferences.
- Electronic management tools, such as digital dashboards, project management software that schedules, tracks, and charts the steps in a project. Another example of an electronic management tool is Outlook's electronic calendaring. This allows you to send a meeting request to dispersed team members, check the availability of meeting attendees, reschedule meetings electronically, forward meeting requests, and cancel a meeting—without ever visiting with your team member face to face.
- Electronic communication tools for writing and sending documents. These include tools like instant messages, e-mail, blogs, intranets and extranets, and wikis.
- Social media for communication of text and videos through Facebook, YouTube, Twitter, and more.

Collaborative Writing Tools

A variety of software tools allows collaboration among team members, including wikis, Google Docs, and Google Sites.

Wikis. A wiki "is a website that allows the visitors . . . to easily add, remove, and otherwise edit and change available content, and typically without the need for registration. This ease of interaction and operation makes a wiki an effective tool for mass collaborative authoring" ("Wiki"). In addition, wikis let collaborative writers track "the history of a document as it is revised." Whenever a team member edits text in the "wiki, that new text becomes the current version, while older versions are stored" (Mader "Using Wiki").

Who's Using Wikis? Many companies use wikis for collaborative writing projects. **Yahoo!** uses a wiki. Eric Baldeschwieler, Director of Software Development of Yahoo!, says, "Our development team includes hundreds of people in various locations all over the world, so web collaboration is VERY important to us." **Cmed** runs pharmaceutical clinical trials and develops new technology. In this heavily regulated environment, wikis "improved communication and increased the quantity (and through peer review, the quality) of documentation." **Cingular Wireless** "project managers have been encouraged to utilize the [wiki] site for any issues needing collaborating efforts in lieu of emails." **Disney** uses a wiki "for an engineering team that was re-architecting the Go.com portal." Disney found "TWiki to be a very effective means of posting and maintaining development specs and notes as well as pointers to resources." **Texas Instrument's** India design center uses Wikis to manage all project-specific information, such as documenting ideas, plans, and status; sharing information with other teams across various work sites; and updating information and content to team members ("Twiki").

How Can You Use a Wiki? In your dispersed teams, whether virtual, remote, or mobile, you might use wikis in the following ways to create collaborative documents:

- **Create Web sites.** Wikis help team members easily add pages, insert graphics, create hyperlinks, and add simple navigation.
- **Project development with peer review.** A wiki makes it easy for team members to write, revise, and submit projects, since all three activities can take place in the wiki.
- **Group authoring.** Wikis allow group members to build and edit a document. This creates a sense of community within a group, allows group members to build on each other's work, and provides immediate, asynchronous access to all versions of a document.
- **Track group projects.** Each wiki page lets you track how group members are developing their contributions. The wiki also lets you give feedback and suggest editorial changes.

Benefits of Using Wikis. A wiki offers many benefits to collaboration in the workplace including the following:

- Involves all team members in the writing process. When many individuals brainstorm ideas and participate in writing, revising, and proofreading, this can lead to an improved document.
- Minimizes the need for face-to-face meetings. An asynchronous wiki lets team members work on a project anytime and anywhere. Rather than having to attend a meeting, team members can receive "updates from the wiki via RSS or e-mail" (Mader "Your Wiki"). Because a wiki allows for detailed revisions and discussions, meetings can be shorter and concentrate only on the topics that would benefit from face-to-face communication.
- Limits excessive and lengthy e-mail messages. When content is available for threaded discussion within the wiki, the need for a constant flow of e-mail messages about the project diminishes.

- Transmits the finished product to end users. The content in the wiki can be shared with customers or other individuals via Word documents or PDF files.
- Organizes the team's work and maintains privacy. A wiki allows you and your team to have in one location all of the material related to a project. In the wiki, you can designate which content is viewable by team members. You can also share designated information with anyone in the company (Mader "Your Wiki").

Figure 3 and Figure 4 are illustrations of a wiki and a record of edited versions.

FIGURE 3 Wiki Page

By clicking "Edit page," any team member can revise the text.

What the audience sees when the wiki is first opened.

Source: Courtesy of PBWiki

FIGURE 4 Record of Edited Versions

This screen allows team members to compare all versions of the text, thus seeing what has been added, deleted, or enhanced.

Source: Courtesy of PBWiki

Google Docs and Google Sites. Other collaborative writing tools you can use easily are Google Docs and Google Sites. These online tools, free to anyone with a Web browser and an Internet connection, are useful for document sharing, collaborating on group projects, and publishing to the Internet.

Google docs. Using Google Docs, you and group members can edit Word documents, RTF (rich text format), and HTML (hypertext markup language) files. Teams can be at any location on their computers and work on one document simultaneously. Changes made by one writer will be seen by all team members instantly.

Google Docs provides you these benefits:

- Upload and save files
- Edit and view a document
- Show changes in real time
- View a document's revision history
- Return to earlier versions
- Add new team members or delete writers
- Choose who can access your site
- Post documents to a blog or publish a document to a Web page

See Figure 5 for an example of Google Docs applications.

FIGURE 5 Google Docs Homepage

Source: Courtesy Alex Elting

From the Google Docs home page, you can create a secure, collaborative workspace.

DOT-COM UPDATES

For more information about wikis, check out the following links:

- WetPaint (www.wetpaint.com)
- WikiSpaces (www.wikispaces.com)
- eGroupWare (www.egroupware.org)
- Group-Office (www.group-office.com)
- Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (http://info.tiki.org/tiki-index.php)

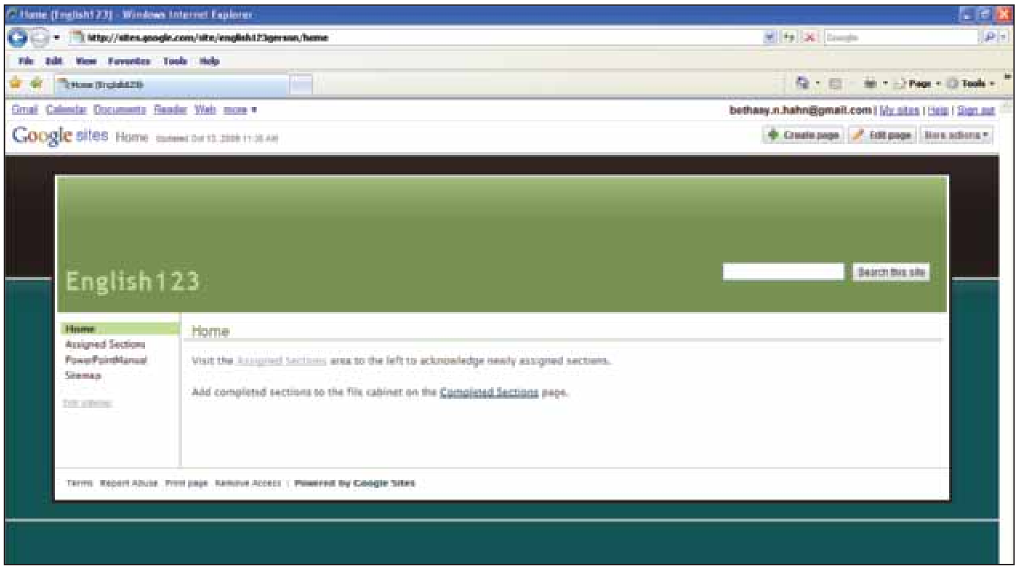
Google sites. Google defines this collaborative writing tool as "a free and easy way to create and share webpages." Through Google Sites, you can

- "Create rich Web pages easily"
- "Collect all your info in one place"
- "Control who can view and edit" (*Google Sites*)

See Figure 6 for a sample of a Google Sites screen capture.

FIGURE 6 Google Sites Customized Homepage

Google Sites lets you customize a design for your collaborative writing site.



Source: Courtesy of Bethany Hahn

Choosing the Appropriate Channel for Collaboration

Technologies for collaboration are not equal. Some allow for more interactivity than others. Some are more synchronous than others. While some technologies depend solely on the written word, others allow for verbal and nonverbal communication among team members. When deciding which technology to use for your team efforts, you need to decide which collaborative tools aid frequent and effective communication. Table 5 provides you an overview of various technology channels for collaboration.

TABLE 5 Technology Channels for Collaboration

Collaboration Channel	Synchronous or Asynchronous	Written, Verbal, or Nonverbal	Interaction
Teleconference	Synchronous. Team members can have real-time, spontaneous communication.	All participants can be seen and heard. They can write, read, speak, and convey nonverbal cues (frowns, laughter, gestures, etc.).	All team members can participate equally with feedback and suggestions.
Webinar	Synchronous. Participants can engage in real-time, spontaneous communication.	All participants can talk and share written communication. Nonverbal communication is limited unless participants have Web cameras.	All team members can participate equally with feedback and suggestions.
E-mail, Text Message, Instant Message, and Twitter	Near synchronous. Participants can engage in near real-time communication if everyone is online or has his or her cell phone turned on.	All participants can share written communication. Nonverbal communication is limited to emoticons.	Participation is dependent on the team member's willingness to send and receive messages.
Blogs and Wikis	Asynchronous. Team members can access a blog or wiki at their own convenience.	All participants can share written communication. Nonverbal communication is limited to emoticons.	Participation is dependent on the team member's willingness to respond to the blog or wiki posting.

Source: Adapted from Robidoux and Hewett

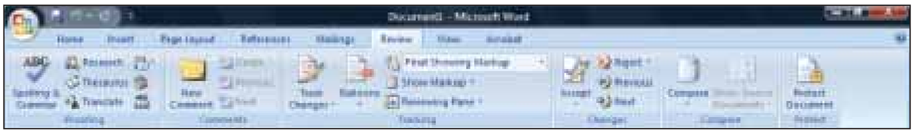
TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Using the Microsoft Word 2010 Track Changes Feature for Collaborative Writing in Team Projects

Microsoft Word 2010 allows you to write text and have diverse and dispersed team members provide feedback, as follows:

Track Changes as You Edit

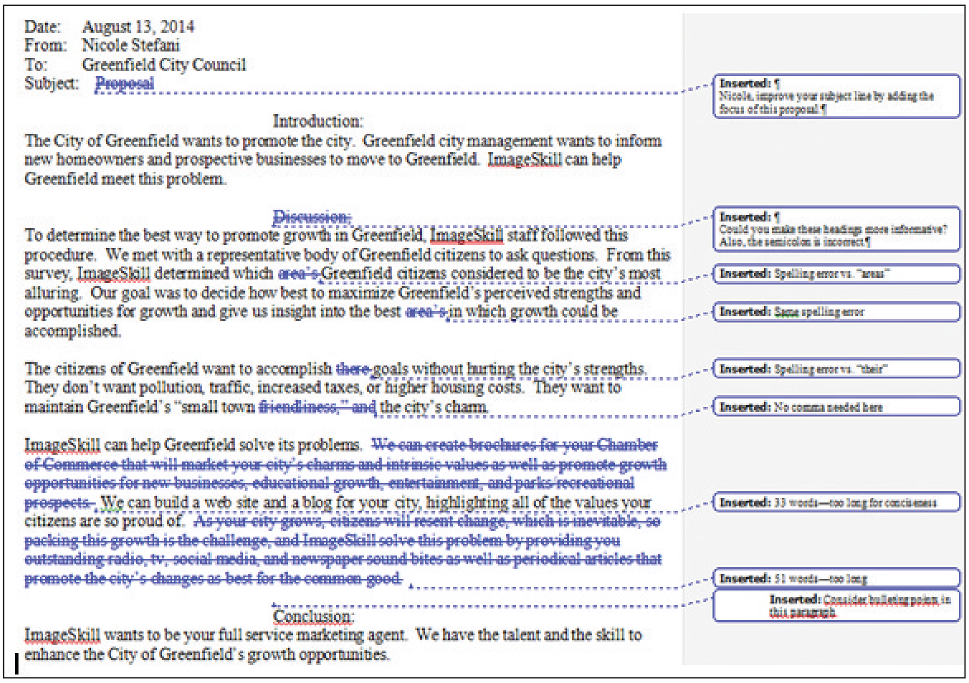
1. Open a document for revision.
2. Click the **Review** tab.



3. In the **Tracking** grid, click **Track Changes**.
4. Suggest revisions to the text by adding your comments.

Note: When you turn off **Track Changes**, your edits are not removed.

Following is an example of text that a team member has revised with suggested changes.



Date: August 13, 2014
From: Nicole Stefani
To: Greenfield City Council
Subject: ~~Proposal~~

Introduction:

The City of Greenfield wants to promote the city. Greenfield city management wants to inform new homeowners and prospective businesses to move to Greenfield. ImageSkill can help Greenfield meet this problem.

~~Discussion:~~

To determine the best way to promote growth in Greenfield, ImageSkill staff followed this procedure. We met with a representative body of Greenfield citizens to ask questions. From this survey, ImageSkill determined which ~~area's~~ Greenfield citizens considered to be the city's most alluring. Our goal was to decide how best to maximize Greenfield's perceived strengths and opportunities for growth and give us insight into the best ~~area's~~ in which growth could be accomplished.

The citizens of Greenfield want to accomplish ~~there~~ goals without hurting the city's strengths. They don't want pollution, traffic, increased taxes, or higher housing costs. They want to maintain Greenfield's "small town ~~friendliness," and~~ the city's charm.

ImageSkill can help Greenfield solve its problems. ~~We can create brochures for your Chamber of Commerce that will market your city's charms and intrinsic values as well as promote growth opportunities for new businesses, educational growth, entertainment, and parks/recreational prospects.~~ We can build a web site and a blog for your city, highlighting all of the values your citizens are so proud of. ~~As your city grows, citizens will resent change, which is inevitable, so packing this growth is the challenge, and ImageSkill solve this problem by providing you outstanding radio, tv, social media, and newspaper sound bites as well as periodical articles that promote the city's changes as best for the common good.~~

Conclusion:

ImageSkill wants to be your full service marketing agent. We have the talent and the skill to enhance the City of Greenfield's growth opportunities.

Inserted: ¶ Nicole, improve your subject line by adding the focus of this proposal ¶

Inserted: ¶ Could you make these headings more informative? Also, the semicolon is incorrect ¶

Inserted: Spelling error vs. "areas"

Inserted: Same spelling error

Inserted: Spelling error vs. "their"

Inserted: No comma needed here

Inserted: 33 words—too long for conciseness

Inserted: 51 words—too long

Inserted: Consider bulleting points in this paragraph

Challenges to Effective Teamwork

Any collaborative activity is challenging to manage: Team members do not show up for class or work; one student or employee monopolizes the activity while another individual snoozes; people exert varying amounts of enthusiasm and ability; personalities clash. Some people fight over everything. Occasionally, when a boss participates on a team, employees fear speaking openly. Some team members will not stay focused on the subject. One team member will not complete an assignment ("Individual's and Teams' Roles and Responsibilities"). Group dynamics are difficult and can lead to performance gaps.

Human Performance Improvement

Human Performance Improvement (HPI) focuses on "root cause analysis" to assess and overcome the barriers inherent in teamwork. To close performance gaps, HPI analyzes the following possible causes for collaborative breakdowns:

1. **Knowledge.** Perhaps employees do not know how to perform a task. They have never acquired the knowledge or do not understand which skills are needed to complete the specific job. Varying skills of team members can impede the group's progress.
2. **Resources.** Think of these possibilities: Tools are broken or missing; the department is out of funds; you do not have enough personnel to do the job; the raw material needed for the job is below par; you ordered one piece of machinery but were shipped something different; you needed 100 items but have only 50 in stock. To complete a project, you often have to solve problems with resources.
3. **Processes.** For teams to succeed in collaborative projects, everyone must have specific responsibilities. Who reports to whom? How will these reports be handled (orally or in writing)? Who does what job? Are responsibilities shared equally? Structure, of some sort, is needed to avoid chaos, lost time, inefficiency, hurt feelings, and many other challenges to teamwork. To achieve successful collaboration, the team should set and maintain effective procedures.
4. **Information.** A team needs up-to-date and accurate information to function well. If required database information is late or incorrect, then the team will falter. If the information is too high tech for some of the team members, a lack of understanding may undermine the team effort.
5. **Support.** To succeed in any project, a team needs support. This could be financial, attitudinal, or managerial. When managers from different departments are fighting "turf wars" over ownership of a project, teams cannot succeed. Teams need enough money for staffing, personnel, or equipment.
6. **Wellness.** Another consideration involves the team's health and well-being. People get sick or miss work for health reasons. People have car accidents. If a teammate must miss work for a day or an extended period, this will negatively impact the team's productivity. Stress and absences can lead to arguments, missed deadlines, erratic work schedules, and poor quality.
7. **Acknowledgment.** For teams to succeed, management needs to recognize the benefits and results of collaboration. Successful workplaces reward staff with promotions, merit raises, bonuses, and awards.
8. **Trust.** A team is only as good as the trust each member has for the team effort. Team members who trust each other are more open in their brainstorming, more complimentary of each other's efforts, and work effectively toward a common goal.
9. **Leadership.** A team needs direction. Successful teams work well when their team leaders provide clear deadlines, responsibilities, task goals, and fair-minded leadership.

10. **Efficient Communication.** If everyone on the team is overwhelmed with e-mail messages, text messages, tweets, or instant messages, no work will get done. Too much information is as bad as no information.

Ten HPI Intervention Techniques. After assessing root causes that challenge a team's success, HPI creates intervention options. These might include the following:

- Improved compensation packages
- Employee recognition programs
- Revised performance appraisals
- Improved employee training
- Mentoring or coaching
- Restructured work environments to enhance ergonomics
- Safety implementations
- Strategic planning changes
- Improved communication channels
- Health and wellness options—lectures, on-site fitness consultants, incentives for weight loss, and therapist and social worker interventions

People need help in order to work more effectively with each other. A progressive company recognizes these challenges and steps in to help.

Conflict Resolution in Collaborative Projects

To ensure that team members work well together and that projects are completed successfully, consider these approaches to conflict resolution:

1. **Choose a team leader.** Sometimes, team leaders are chosen by management; sometimes, team leaders emerge from the group by consensus. However this person gains the position, the team leader becomes "point person," the individual whom all can turn to for assistance. He or she can solve problems, seek additional resources, or organize the team effort.
2. **Set guidelines.** One reason that conflicts occur is because people do not know what to expect or what is expected of them. To solve this problem, set guidelines. Hold an initial meeting (online or teleconferenced for remote, virtual teams) to define goals and establish guidelines, establish project milestones, or create schedules for synchronous dialogues. Communicate to all team members (before the meeting via e-mail or early in a project) how long the project will last. Also, clarify the team's goals, the chain of command (if one exists), and each team member's responsibilities. Use text messages, instant messages, e-mail, or Twitter messages for frequent updates.
3. **Ensure that all team members have compatible hardware and software.** This is especially important for virtual, remote teams. To communicate successfully, all team members need access to compatible e-mail platforms, computers, smartphones, and video equipment.
4. **Encourage equal discussion and involvement.** A team's success demands that everyone participate. A team leader should encourage involvement and discussion. All team members should be mutually accountable for team results, including planning, writing, editing, proofreading, and packaging the finished project. Be sure that everyone is allowed a chance to give input by participating orally, in writing, or in a wiki.

5. **Discourage taking sides.** Discussion is necessary, but conflict will arise if team members take sides. An "us against them" mentality will harm the team effort. You can avoid this pitfall by seeking consensus, tabling issues, or creating subcommittees.
6. **Seek consensus.** Not every member of the team needs to agree on a course of action. However, a team cannot go forward without majority approval. To achieve consensus, your job as team leader is to listen to everyone's opinion, seek compromise, and value diversity. Conflict can be resolved by allowing everyone a chance to speak.
7. **Table topics when necessary.** If an issue is so controversial that it cannot be agreed upon, take a time out. Tell the team, "Let's break for a few minutes. Then we can reconvene with fresh perspectives." Maybe you need to table the topic for the next meeting. Sometimes, conflicts need a cooling-off period.
8. **Create subcommittees.** If a topic cannot be resolved, teammates are at odds, or sides are being taken, create a subcommittee to resolve the conflict. Let a smaller group tackle the issue and report back to the larger team.
9. **Find the good in the bad.** Occasionally, one team member comes to a meeting with an agenda. As team leader, seek compromise. Let the challenging team member speak. Discuss each of the points of dissension. Allow for input from the team. Some of the ideas might have more merit than you originally assumed.
10. **Deal with individuals individually.** From time to time, a team member will cause problems for the group. To handle these conflicts, avoid pointing a finger of blame at this person during the meeting. Do not react aggressively or impatiently. Doing so will lead to several problems:
    - Your reaction might call more attention to this person. Sometimes people come to meetings late or speak out in a group *just* to get attention. If you react, you might give the individual exactly what he or she wants.
    - Your reaction might embarrass this person.
    - Your reaction might make you look unprofessional.
    - Your reaction might deter others from speaking out. You want an open environment, allowing for a free exchange of ideas.

    Speak to any offending team members individually. This could be accomplished at a later date, in your office, or during a coffee break. Speaking to the person later and individually might defuse the conflict.

CHECKLIST FOR COLLABORATION

_____ **1.** Have you chosen a team leader (or has a team leader been assigned)?

_____ **2.** Do all participants understand the team's goal and their individual responsibilities?

_____ **3.** Does the team have a schedule, complete with milestones and target due dates?

_____ **4.** Does the team have compatible hardware and software for their wiki site or teleconference equipment?

_____ **5.** In planning the team's project, did you seek consensus?

_____ **6.** Have all participants been allowed to express themselves?

_____ **7.** Have you avoided confronting people in public, choosing to meet with individuals privately to discuss concerns?

_____ **8.** If conflicts occurred, did you table topics for later discussion or additional research?

_____ **9.** Did you encourage diversity of opinion?

_____**10.** Have you remained calm in your interaction with the team?

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Technical communication is written for and about business and industry and focuses on products and services.
2. You will use various channels of communication, dependent upon the audience, purpose, and situation.
3. Technical communication costs a company both time and money, so employees must strive to write effectively.
4. The top five skills employers want include communication skills, honesty, teamwork, a strong work ethic, and analytical skills.
5. Avoid “silo building,” isolating yourself on the job.
6. Working in teams allows you to see issues from several points of view.
7. Human Performance Improvement (HPI) solves problems—“gaps”—inherent in teamwork.
8. Teams face problems including varied knowledge levels, differing motives, and insufficient resources.
9. Conflict resolution strategies are essential to a team’s success.
10. To resolve conflicts in a team, you should set guidelines, encourage all to participate, and avoid taking sides.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

You are the team leader of a work project at Gulfview Architectural and Engineering Services. The team has been involved in this project for a year. During the year, the team has met weekly, every Wednesday at 8:00 A.M. It is now time to assess the team’s successes and areas needing improvement.

Your goal will be to recommend changes as needed before the team begins its second year on this project. You have encountered the following problems:

- One team member, Caroline Jensen, misses meetings regularly. In fact, she has missed at least one meeting a month during the past year. Occasionally, she missed two or three in a row. You have met with Caroline to discuss the problem. She says she has had child care issues that have forced her to use the company’s flextime option, allowing her to come to work later than usual, at 9:00 A.M.
- Another team member, Guy Stapleton, tends to talk a lot during the meetings. He has good things to say, but he speaks his mind very loudly and interrupts others as they are speaking. He also elaborates on his points in great detail, even when the point has been made. If Guy isn’t talking, he’s texting.
- A third team member, Sharon Mitchell, almost never provides her input during the meetings. She will e-mail comments later or talk to people during breaks. Her comments are valid and on topic, but not everyone gets to hear what she says.

- A fourth team member, Craig Mabrito, is very impatient during the meetings. This is evident from his verbal and nonverbal communication. He grunts, slouches, drums on the table, gets up to walk around while others are speaking, and answers his cell phone.
- A fifth employee, Julie Jones, is overly aggressive. She is confrontational, both verbally and physically. Julie points her finger at people when she speaks, raises her voice to drown out others as they speak, and uses sarcasm as a weapon. Julie also crowds people, standing very close to them when speaking.

Assignment

How will you handle these challenges? Try this approach:

- Analyze the problem(s). To do so, brainstorm. What gaps might exist causing these problems?
- Invent or envision solutions. How would you solve the problems? Consider Human Performance Improvement issues.
- Plan your approach. To do so, establish verifiable measures of success (including timeframes and quantifiable actions).

Write an e-mail to your instructor sharing your findings.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

Teamwork—Business and Industry Expectations

Individually or in small groups, visit local banks, hospitals, police or fire stations, city offices, service organizations, manufacturing companies, engineering companies, or architectural firms. Once you and your teammates have visited these sites, asked your questions (see the following assignments), and completed your research, share your findings using one of the following methods:

- **Oral**—as a team, give a three- to five-minute briefing to share with your colleagues the results of your research.
- **Oral**—invite employee representatives from other work environments to share with your class their responses to your questions.
- **Written**—write a team e-mail message, letter, or report about your findings.
    1. Ask employees at the sites you visit if, how, and how often they are involved in team projects. In your team, assess your findings and report your discoveries.
    2. Ask employees at the sites you visit about the different communication channels they use on the job. In your team, assess your findings and report your discoveries.
    3. Research companies that rely on teamwork. Focus on which industries these companies represent and the goals of their team projects. You could also consider the challenges they encounter, their means of resolving conflicts, the numbers of individuals on each team, and whether the teams are diverse. Then report these findings to your professor or classmates, either orally or in writing.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

To understand and practice conflict resolution, complete the following assignments.

1. Attend a meeting. This could be at your church, synagogue, or mosque; a city council meeting; your school, college, or university's board of trustees meeting; or a meeting at your place of employment. Was the meeting successful? Did it have room for improvement? To help answer these questions, use the following Conflict Resolution in Team Meetings Matrix. Then report your findings to your professor or classmates, either orally or in writing. Write an e-mail message, memo, or report, for example.

CONFLICT RESOLUTION IN TEAM MEETINGS MATRIX			
Goals	**Yes**	**No**	**Comments**
1. Were meeting guidelines clear?			
2. Did the meeting facilitator encourage equal discussion and involvement?			
3. Were the meeting's attendees discouraged from taking sides?			
4. Did the meeting facilitator seek consensus?			
5. Did the meeting facilitator deal with individuals *individually*?			
6. Were topics tabled if necessary?			
7. Were subcommittees created if necessary?			
8. Did the meeting facilitator find the good in the bad?			
9. Did the meeting's facilitator stay calm?			
10. Did the meeting facilitator create subcommittees if needed?			

2. Have you been involved in a team project at work or at school? Perhaps you and your classmates grouped to write a proposal, research Web sites, create a Web site, or perform mock job interviews. Maybe you were involved in a team project for another class. Did the team work well together? If so, analyze how and why the team succeeded. If the team did not function effectively, why not? Analyze the gaps between what should have been and what was. To help you with this analysis, use the following Human Performance Index Matrix. Then, report your findings to your instructor or classmates either orally or in writing. Write an e-mail message, memo, or report, for example.

HUMAN PERFORMANCE INDEX MATRIX			
Potential Gaps	**Yes**	**No**	**Comments**
1. Did teammates have equal and appropriate levels of knowledge to complete the task?			
2. Did teammates have equal and appropriate levels of motivation to complete the task?			
3. Did the team have sufficient resources to complete the task?			
4. Did teammates understand their roles in the process needed to complete the task?			
5. Did the team have sufficient and up-to-date information to complete the task?			
6. Did the team have sufficient support to complete the task?			
7. Did wellness issues affect the team's success?			

3. Amir Aksarben works in corporate communication for Prismatic Consulting Engineering. He needs to respond to an RFP (request for proposal), posted by Oceanview City Council about flood control. Before Amir can respond to the RFP, he plans to gather information, as follows:
   - Inquire about specific problems the city is encountering and the time frame for making a decision.
   - Communicate with his boss to determine which team members will work on the RFP.
   - Ask colleagues in other departments for input regarding the proposal's content.

   Based on the above information, which communication channel should Amir use in each instance and why?

WEB WORKSHOP

1. How important is technical communication in the workplace? Go online to research this topic. Find five Web sites that discuss the importance of communication in the workplace, and report your discoveries to your teacher and/or class. To do so, write a brief report, memo, or e-mail message. You could also report your information orally.
2. Create a class wiki for collaborative writing. To do so, consider using one of the following sites:
   - WetPaint (www.wetpaint.com)
   - WikiSpaces (www.wikispaces.com)
   - eGroupWare (www.egroupware.org)
   - Group-Office (www.group-office.com)
   - Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (http://info.tiki.org/tiki-index.php)

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 3 — Wiki Page. Courtesy of PBWiki.

Figure 4 — Record of Edited Versions. Courtesy of PBWiki.

Figure 5 — Google Docs Homepage. Courtesy of Alex Etting.

Figure 6 — Google Sites Customized Homepage. Courtesy of Bethany Hahn.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© FotolEdhar / Fotolia
© diego cervo / Fotolia
© Rido / Fotolia
© Monkey Business / Fotolia
© Andres Rodriguez / Fotolia
© Steven and Sharon Gerson

REFERENCES

"Achieving the Promise of the Mobile Enterprise." *Motorola: Position Paper.* Aug. 2005. Web. 31 Aug. 2007.

Fisher, Lori, and Lindsay Bennion. "Organizational Implications of the Future Development of Technical Communication: Fostering Communities of Practice in the Workplace." *Technical Communication* 52 (Aug. 2005): 277–288. Print.

Google Docs. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

Hughes, Michael A. "Managers: Move from Silos to Channels." *Intercom* Mar. 2003: 9–11. Print.

"The Importance of E-mail Continuity." An Osterman Research White Paper. Osterman Research, Inc. Dec. 2010. Web. Jan. 2011.

"Individual's and Teams' Roles and Responsibilities." GOAL/QPC. Web. 24 Feb. 2003.

Johnson, L. *et al*. "Key Trends." 2011 *Horizon Report* 16 Feb. 2012. Web. 2011.

Karch, Marziah. Personal Interview. 20 June 2011.

Mader, Stewart. "Using Wiki in Education." *The Science of Spectroscopy.* 16 Nov. 2008. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

Mader, Stewart. "Your Wiki Isn't Wikipedia: How to Use It for Technical Communication." *Intercom* Jan. 2009: 14–15. Print.

Messina, Chris. "Hashtags." 2010. Web. 20 Nov. 2011.

Nesbitt, Pamela, and Elizabeth Bagley-Woodward. "Practical Tips for Working with Global Teams." *Intercom* Jun. 2006: 25–30. Print.

Robidoux, Charlotte, and Beth Hewett. "Is There a Write Way to Collaborate?" *Intercom* Feb. 2009: 4–9. Print.

"Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 2005: 5. Web. 16 Nov. 2011.

"TWiki—Enterprise Wiki & Collaboration Platform." *TWiki*. 4 Mar. 2007. Web. 9 Mar. 2012.

"Wiki." *Wikipedia*. 9 Jan. 2007. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

Welinske, Joe. "Developing User Assistance for Mobile Applications." *Intercom*. 30 Nov. 2011. Web. 1 Dec. 2011.

"Writing: A Ticket to Work . . . Or A Ticket Out, A Survey of Business Leaders." *National Commission on Writing*. Sep. 2004. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

"Writing Skills Necessary for Employment, Says Big Businesses." *National Commission on Writing*. 2007. Web. 1 Aug. 2007.

The Communication Process

From Chapter 2 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

The Communication Process

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In the following scenario, Creative International uses the writing process for effective communication with its clients.

Connie Jones (President), Mary Michelson (Project Director), and Lori Smith (Director of Sales and Marketing) have made Creative International a cutting edge company. Creative International works with organizations to define strategic communication goals. A key to their success is following a process "from the beginning to the end of a communication project." They prewrite, write, and rewrite.

Prewriting

- **Initial Client Contact**—Through telephone calls, e-mail messages, networking, their Facebook site, or a preliminary meeting, Creative gathers data to discover the client's needs. In this phase, the Creative team interviews the end-users and observes them at work.
- **Clarify Request Meeting**—Meeting face-to-face with an upper-level decision maker, the Creative team collects information about the end-user's needs. Connie, Mary, and Lori don't just say, "Sure, we can do that job." Instead, they ask probing questions, such as "Why do you need that?" "Why do you want that?" "What do you want to communicate to your audience?"

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Understand the writing process including prewriting, writing, and rewriting
- Prewrite to help you determine goals, consider audience, gather data, examine purposes, and determine the communication channel
- Use various prewriting techniques to help you get started: reporter's questions, mind mapping, brainstorming or listing, outlining, storyboarding, creating organization charts, flowcharting, or researching
- Decide whether you are communicating to persuade, instruct, inform, or build trust
- Write a rough draft, by organizing material, considering the layout and design of the communication, and adding visual aids such as tables and figures
- Communicate content through e-mail messages, instant messages, blogging, letters, memos, reports, brochures, proposals, Web sites, and Microsoft PowerPoint presentations
- Perfect your text by testing for usability
- Rewrite your document by adding, deleting, simplifying, moving, reformatting, enhancing, and correcting
- Proofread, an essential part of the rewriting step in the writing process
- Apply the checklist to your technical communication

- **Proposal Creation**—Following the initial meeting, Creative writes a proposal, complete with schedules, project plans, the project's scope, and a description of the deliverables.

Writing

- **Drafting through Collaboration**—The Creative team creates a wiki to help them write collaboratively.
- **Design, Development, Production, and Pilot Testing**—Creative designs text, graphics, audio and video training modules, and mobile apps for final beta testing.

Rewriting

- **Editing**—The Creative writing team (with input from other coworkers) and the end user revises their initial drafts by making revisions through their wiki. This includes adding details, deleting unnecessary content, and correcting errors.
- **Evaluation and Maintenance**—Through end-user analysis, commentary on their blog, usability testing, and customer questionnaires, Creative ensures that the performance needs are met and that training materials are current and valid.

Creative International refers to its "process map" from the beginning to the end of a project. They use process for marketing, for internal communication, and for project planning and management. The writing process that Creative follows is recursive. It includes constant sign offs and change orders. With input from all parties, during prewriting, writing, and rewriting, Creative provides custom solutions.

The Writing Process: An Overview

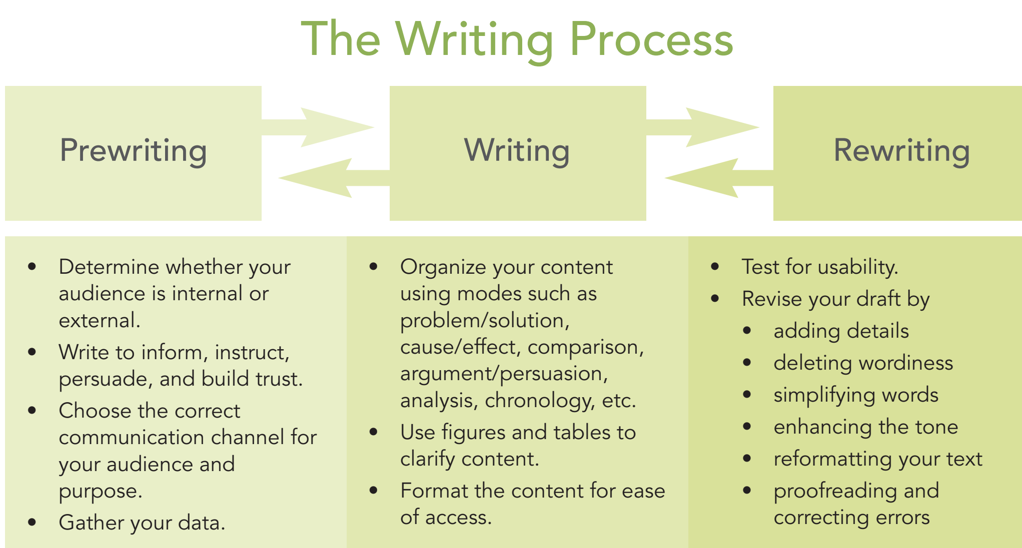
Technical communication is a major part of your daily work experience. It takes time to construct the correspondence, and your writing has an impact on those around you. A well-written report, e-mail message, user manual, Web site, or blog gets the job done and makes you look good. Poorly written correspondence wastes time and creates a negative image of you and your company.

However, recognizing the importance of technical communication does not ensure that your correspondence will be well written. How do you effectively write the memo, letter, blog entry, or report? How do you successfully produce the finished product? To produce successful technical communication, approach writing as a process. The process approach to writing has the following sequence:

1. **Prewrite.** Before you can write your document, you must have something to say. Prewriting allows you to spend quality time, prior to writing the correspondence, generating information, considering the needs of the audience, and choosing the communication channel.
2. **Write.** Once you have gathered your data and determined your objectives, the next step is to draft your document. To do so, organize the draft, supply visual aids, and format the content so that your readers can follow easily.
3. **Rewrite.** The final step, and one that is essential to successful communication, is to rewrite your draft. Revision allows you to test for usability and to perfect your memo, Web site, letter, report, or any document so you can be a successful communicator.

The writing process is dynamic, with the three parts—prewriting, writing, and rewriting—often occurring simultaneously. You may revisit any of these parts of the process at various times as you draft your document. The writing process is illustrated in Figure 1.

FIGURE 1 The Writing Process



Prewriting

Prewriting, the first stage of the process, allows you to plan your communication. If you do not know where you are going in the correspondence, you will never get there, and your audience will not get there with you. Through prewriting, you accomplish many objectives, including

- Examining purposes
- Determining goals
- Considering audience
- Deciding what action you want your audience to perform
- Gathering data
- Determining the most effective communication channel

Examine Your Purposes

Before you write the document, you need to know why you are communicating. Are you planning to write because you have chosen to do so of your own accord or because you have been asked to do so by your boss? In other words, is your motivation *external* or *internal*?

External Motivation. If someone else has requested the correspondence, then your motivation is external. Your boss, for example, expects you to write a monthly status report, a performance appraisal of your subordinate, or an e-mail report suggesting solutions to a current problem. Perhaps a vendor has requested that you write a letter documenting due dates, or a customer asks that you respond to a letter of complaint. In all of these instances, someone else has asked you to communicate.

Internal Motivation. If you have decided to write on your own accord, then your motivation is internal. For example, you need information to perform your job more effectively, so you write a letter of inquiry. You need to meet with colleagues to plan a job, so you write an e-mail message calling a meeting and setting an agenda. Perhaps you recognize a problem in your work environment, so you create a questionnaire and transmit it via the company blog. Then, analyzing your findings, you call a meeting to report your findings. In all of these instances, you initiate the communication.

Determine Your Goals

Once you have examined why you are planning to communicate, the next step is to determine your goals in the correspondence or presentation. You might be communicating to

- Inform an audience of facts, concerns, or questions you might have
- Instruct an audience by directing actions
- Persuade an audience to accept your point of view
- Build trust and rapport by managing work relationships

These goals can overlap, of course. You might want to inform by providing an instruction. You might want to persuade by informing. You might want to build trust by persuading. Still, it is worthwhile looking at each of these goals individually to clarify their distinctions.

Communicating to Inform. Often, you will write letters, reports, and e-mails merely to inform. In an e-mail message, for instance, you may invite your staff to an upcoming meeting. A trip report will inform your supervisor what conference presentations you attended or what your prospective client's needs are. A letter of inquiry will inform a vendor about questions you might have regarding her services. Maybe you will be asked to write a corporate blog entry or a Web site link informing your coworkers about the company's picnic, personnel birthdays, or new stock options available to employees. In these situations, your goal is to share information objectively.

Communicating to Instruct. Instructions will play a large role in your technical communication activities. As a manager, for example, you often will need to direct action. Your job demands that you tell employees under your supervision what to do. You might need to write an e-mail providing instructions for correctly following procedures. These could include steps for filling out employee forms, researching documents in your company's intranet data bank, using new software, or writing reports according to the company's new standards.

As an employee, you also will provide instructions. Your boss might ask you to create an instructional YouTube video. As a computer information specialist, maybe you work the 1-800 hotline for customer concerns. When a customer calls about a computer's crisis, your job would be to give instructions for correcting the problem. You either will provide a written instruction in a follow-up e-mail or a verbal instruction while on the phone.

Communicating to Persuade. If your goal in writing is to change others' opinions or a company's policies, you need to be persuasive. For example, you might want to write a proposal, a brochure, or a flier to sell a product or a service. Maybe you will write your annual progress report to justify a raise or a promotion. As a customer, you might want to write a letter of complaint or an e-mail message about poor service. Your goal in each of these cases is to persuade an audience to accept your point of view.

Communicating to Build Trust. Building rapport (empathy, understanding, connection, and confidence) is a very important component of your communication challenge. As a manager or employee, your job is not merely to "dump data" in your written communication. You also need to realize that you are communicating with coworkers and clients, people with whom you will work every day. To maintain a successful work environment, you want to achieve the correct, positive tone in your writing. This might require nothing more than writing a tweet, saying "Thanks for the information," or "You've done a great job reporting your findings." A positive tone shows approval for work accomplished and recognition of the audience's time.

Recognizing the goals for your correspondence makes a difference. Determining your goals allows you to provide the appropriate tone and scope of detail in your communication. In contrast, failure to assess your goals can cause communication breakdowns.

Consider Your Audience

What you say and how you say it is greatly determined by your audience. Are you writing up to management, down to subordinates, or laterally to coworkers? Are you speaking to a high-tech audience (experts in your field), a low-tech audience (people with some knowledge about your field), or a lay audience (customers or people outside your work environment)? Face it—you will not write the same way to your boss as you would to your subordinates. You will not speak the same way to a customer as you would to a team member. You must provide different information to a multicultural audience than you would to individuals with the same language and cultural expectations. You must consider issues of diversity when you communicate.

Gather Your Data

Once you know why you are writing and who your audience is, the next step is deciding what to say. You have to gather data. The page or screen remains blank until you fill it with content. Your communication, therefore, will consider personnel, dates, actions required, locations, costs, methods for implementing suggestions, and so forth. As the writer, it is your obligation to flesh out the detail. After all, until you tell your readers what you want to tell them, they do not know.

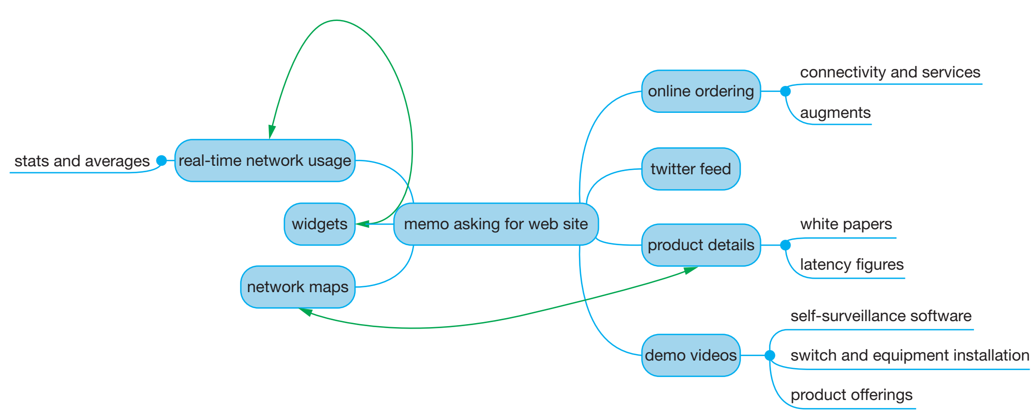
There are many ways to gather data. In this chapter, and throughout the textbook, we provide options for gathering information. These planning techniques include the following:

- Answering the reporter's questions
- Mind mapping

- Brainstorming or listing
- Outlining
- Storyboarding
- Creating organization charts
- Flowcharting
- Researching (online or at the library)

Each prewriting technique is discussed in greater detail in Table 1. Table 2 lists some good Web sites for online research.

TABLE 1 Prewriting Techniques

	Sample Reporter's Questions	
Answering the Reporter's Questions By answering *who, what, when, where, why, and how*, you create the content of your correspondence.	*Who*	Joe Kingsberry, Sales Rep
	What	Need to know • what our discount is if we buy in quantities • what the guarantees are • if service is provided onsite • if the installers are certified and bonded • if Acme provides 24-hour shipping
	When	Need the information by July 9 to meet our proposal deadline
	Where	Acme Radiators 11245 Armour Blvd. Oklahoma City, Oklahoma 45233 Jkings@acmerad.com
	Why	As requested by my boss, John, to help us provide more information to prospective customers
	How	Communicate either with a letter or an e-mail. I can write an e-mail inquiry to save time, but I must tell Joe to respond in a letter with his signature to verify the information he provides.
Mind Mapping Envision a wheel. At the center is your topic. Radiating from this center, like spokes of the wheel, are different ideas about the topic. Mind mapping allows you to look at your topic from multiple perspectives and then cluster the similar ideas.	Sample Mind Mapping	

(*Continued*)

TABLE 1 Prewriting Techniques (Continued)

Brainstorming or Listing
Performing either individually or with a group, you can randomly suggest ideas (brainstorming) and then make a list of these suggestions. This method, which works for almost all kinds of communication, is especially valuable for team projects.

Sample Listing—Improving Employee Morale

- Before meetings, ask employees for agenda items (that way, they can feel empowered)
- Consider flextime
- Review employee benefits packages
- Hold yearly awards ceremony for best attendance, highest performance, most cold calls, lowest customer complaints, etc.
- Offer employee sharing for unused personal days/sick leave days
- Roll over personal days to next calendar year
- Include employees in decision-making process
- Add more personal days (as a tradeoff for anticipated lower employee raises)

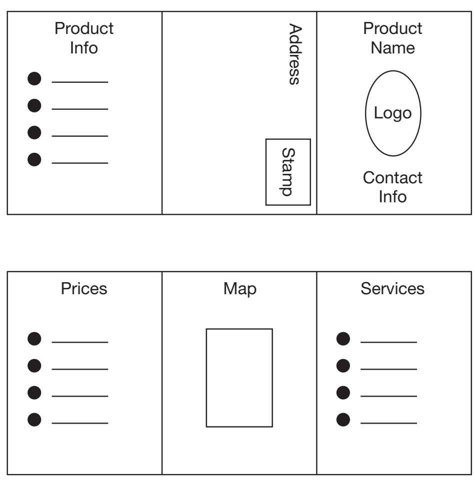
Outlining
This traditional method of gathering and organizing information allows you to break a topic into major and minor components. This is a wonderful all-purpose planning tool.

Sample Topic Outline

1.0 The Writing Process
  1.1 Prewriting
    - Planning Techniques
  1.2 Writing
    - All-Purpose Organizational Template
    - Organizational Techniques
  1.3 Rewriting
2.0 Criteria for Effective Technical Communication
  2.1 Clarity
  2.2 Conciseness
  2.3 Document Design
  2.4 Audience Recognition
  2.5 Accuracy

Storyboarding
Storyboarding is a visual planning technique that lets you graphically sketch each page or screen of your text. This allows you to see what your document might look like.

Sample Brochure Storyboard



Creating Organization Charts
This graphic allows you to see the overall organization of a document as well as the subdivisions to be discussed.

Sample Organization Chart

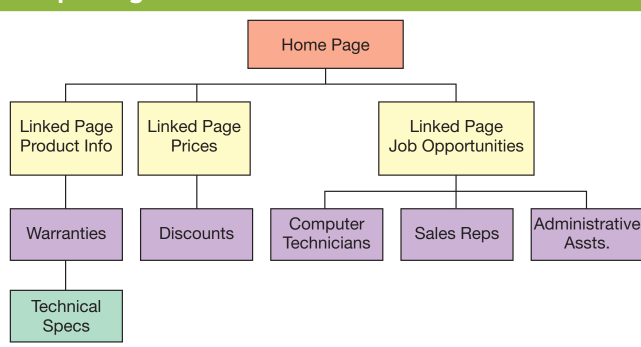


TABLE 1 (Continued)

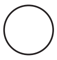
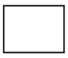
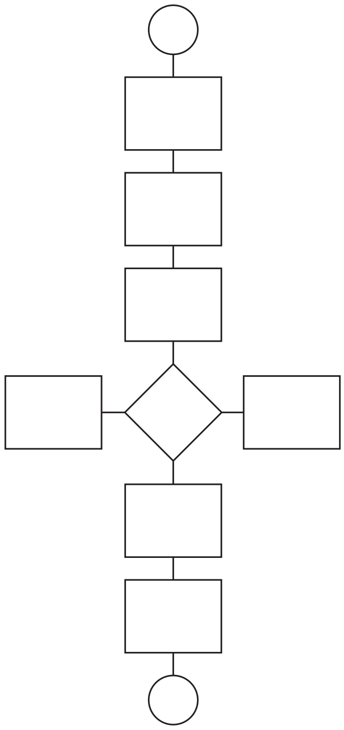
	Sample Flowchart
Flowcharting Flowcharting is another visual technique for gathering data. Because flowcharting organizes content chronologically, it is especially useful for instructions. For example, in flowcharting, the following symbols represent actions: Stop/Start =  Step =  Decision = 	

TABLE 2 Internet Search Engines

Purpose	Sites
Popular online search engines	Yahoo.com, Google.com, Bing.com, Ask.com
Meta-search engines (multithreaded engines that search several major engines at once)	MetaCrawler.com, Clusty.com, and Dogpile.com
Specialty search engines	Findlaw.com focuses on legal resources. Webmd.com lets you access health and medical sites. MedlinePlus.gov provides consumer information. GoPubMed.com provides biomedical resources. Scirus.com provides scientific resources. ZDNet.com, EarthLink.net, and BusinessWeek.com provide resources for business.
Broad academic searches	Librarians' Internet Index to the Internet (http://lii.org), Infomine.ucr.edu, GoogleScholar.com, and FindArticle.com
Government search sites	USA.gov and Google's Uncle Sam
International search sites	Search Engine Colossus, Abyz News Links (international newspapers and magazines), and Worldpress.org (international perspectives on the United States)
Directory of search engines	Yahoo!'s directory of search engines and Search Engine Colossus

Determine How the Content Will Be Provided—The Communication Channel

After you have determined your audience, goals, and content, the last stage in prewriting is to decide which communication channel will best convey your message. Will you write an instant message or a text message, a letter, a memo, a report, an e-mail, a Web site, a blog entry, a YouTube video, a proposal, a user manual, a flier, or a brochure or will you make an oral presentation? In Table 3, you can review the many channels or methods you may use for communicating your content.

TABLE 3 Options for Providing Content through Different Communication Channels

Communication Channels	Benefits and Challenges
E-mail messages, instant messages (IM), text messages (TM)	*Benefits:* These types of electronic communication are quick and can almost be synchronous. You can have a real-time, electronic chat with one or more readers. Though e-mail messages should be short (20 or so lines of text), you can attach documents, Web links, graphics, and sound and movie files for review. *Challenges:* E-mail, IM, and TM tend to be less formal than other types of communication. E-mail might not be private (a company's network administrators can access your electronic communication). IM and TM have size limitations.
Letters	*Benefits:* Typed on official corporate letterhead stationery, letters are formal correspondence to readers outside your company. *Challenges:* Letters are time consuming because they must be mailed physically. Although you can enclose documents, this might demand costly or bulky envelopes.
Memos	*Benefits:* Memos—internal correspondence to one or several coworkers—allow for greater privacy than e-mail (e-mail messages are archived and can be observed by administrators within a company). Even though most memos are limited in length (one or two pages), you can attach or enclose documents. *Challenges:* Memos are both more time consuming than e-mail and less formal than letters.
Reports and proposals	*Benefits:* Reports, internal and external, are usually very formal. They can range in length, from one page to hundreds of pages (proposals and annual corporate reports to stakeholders, for example). Because of their length, reports are appropriate for detailed information. *Challenges:* They can be time consuming to write.
Brochures and fliers	*Benefits:* Brochures and fliers are appropriate for informational and promotional communication to large audiences. *Challenges:* Most brochures are limited to six or so panels, the equivalent of a back and front hard copy. Similarly, a flier is usually only one page long. Thus, in-depth coverage of a topic will not occur.
Web sites and blogs	*Benefits:* A Web site or blog can provide informal and public communication to the entire world—anytime, anyplace. Web sites essentially have unlimited size, so you can provide lots of information, and the content can be updated instantaneously by Web designers. A Web site can include links to other sites, animation, graphics, and color. *Challenges:* Audiences need access to the Internet. Blogs could divulge sensitive corporate communication.
Oral presentations	*Benefits:* Oral presentations can be both formal and informal and communicate directly with the audience. *Challenges:* Many people are afraid to make an oral presentation. Sometimes audience members can be poor listeners.
Social media	*Benefits:* Social media such as Twitter, Facebook, YouTube, and LinkedIn allow you to communicate rapidly with many people. You can communicate in a friendly, informal way with your audience. *Challenges:* Social media can pose confidentiality issues and consume too much on-the-job time. Twitter allows only 140 characters of text.
Videos	*Benefits:* Instructional videos avoid language barriers and provide clear actions for people to follow. Videos can also be entertaining. *Challenges:* Creating a precise script with detailed directions for the video camera operator can be challenging, time consuming, and expensive.

Single Sourcing. Maybe you will create content that will be used in a variety of communication channels simultaneously. *Single sourcing* is the act of "producing documents designed to be recombined and reused across projects and various media" (Carter 317). In a constantly changing marketplace, you will need to communicate your content to many different audiences using a variety of communication channels. For instance, you might need to market your product or service using the Internet, a flier, a brochure, newsletters, and a sales letter. You might have to write hard-copy user manuals and develop online help screens. To ensure that content is reusable, the best approach would be to write a "single source of text" that will "generate multiple documents for different media" (Albers 337). See Figure 2 for an example of single sourcing provided as an online resource by The Society for Technical Communication's SIG (special interest group).

FIGURE 2 The Society for Technical Communication Single Sourcing Link

Source: Courtesy of STC Single Sourcing SIG

The Society for Technical Communication emphasizes the importance of single sourcing by providing an online resource for writers.

FAQs: Using the Writing Process on the Job

Q: Do writers actually follow a process when they compose correspondence?

A: Most good writers follow a process. It's like plotting your route before a trip. Sure, someone can get in a car without a map, head west (or east or north or south) and find their destination without getting lost, but mapping the route before a trip ensures that you won't get lost and waste time.

There's no one way to plot your destination. Prewriting might entail only a quick outline, a few brief notes that list the topics you plan to cover, and the order in which you'll cover them. This way, you will know where you're going before you get there.

In addition to creating both brief and sometimes much more detailed outlines, an important part of prewriting is considering your audience. By considering the readers, writers can decide how much detail, definition, or explanation is needed. In fact, thinking about the audience can even help writers determine how many examples or illustrations to include and what details need to be removed from the document.

After prewriting, good writers always see their text as a draft that can be improved. Improving text requires rewriting. Word processing programs make this essential step in the process easier. Word processing programs let you add, delete, and reformat text. Computers also highlight in color spelling and grammar errors. Thus, editing is an integral part of writing.

Writing

Writing lets you *package* your data. Once you have gathered your data, determined your objectives, recognized your audience, and chosen the channel of communication, the next step is writing the document. Writing the draft lets you *organize* your thoughts in some logical, easy-to-follow sequence. Writers usually know where they are going, but readers do not have this same insight. When readers pick up your document, they can read only one line at a time. They know what you are saying at the moment, but they don't know what your goals are. They can only hope that in your writing, you will lead them along logically and not get them lost with unnecessary data or illogical arguments.

Organization

To avoid confusing or misleading your audience, you need to organize your thoughts. As with prewriting, you have many organizational options. You can approach organizing according to the following traditional methods of organization:

- Space (spatial organization)
- Chronology
- Importance
- Comparison/contrast
- Problem/solution

These organizational methods are not exclusive. Many of them can be used simultaneously within your technical communication to help your reader understand your content.

Formatting

You also must format your text to allow for ease of access. In addition to organizing your ideas, you need to consider how the text looks on the page or screen. If you give your readers a massive wall of words, they will file your document for future reading and look for the nearest exit. An unbroken page or screen of text is not reader-friendly. To invite your readers into the document, to make them want to read the technical communication, be sure to highlight key points and break up monotonous-looking text to ensure that your information is accessible.

Rewriting

Rewriting lets you *perfect* your writing. After you have prewritten (to gather data, organize your thoughts, and understand your audience) and written your draft, your final step is to rewrite. Revision requires that you look over your draft to determine its usability and correctness.

Collaborative Evaluations

You can review your own text, but that might not be the most effective way to assess your writing. Reviewing your own text provides you a limited perspective—yours. When we read our own writing, we tend to read what we think we wrote versus what we actually said. In contrast, getting help from peer reviewers could provide you more insight. You could benefit from their objectivity. They will read what's on the page instead of what you think you said. Furthermore, they might have a greater knowledge about the subject matter or grammar and syntax and be able to help you improve your content and writing. In either case, it's helpful to get feedback from other people.

Usability Testing

A report, instruction, or Web site is good only if your audience can understand the content and use the information. Usability testing helps you determine the success of your draft. Through usability testing, you decide what works in the draft and what needs to be rewritten. Thus, usability focuses on the following key factors:

- **Retrievability**—Can the user find specific information quickly and easily?
- **Readability**—Can the user read and comprehend information quickly and easily?
- **Accuracy**—Is the information complete and correct?
- **User satisfaction**—Does the document present information in a way that is easy to learn and remember? (Dorazio)

USABILITY EVALUATION CHECKLIST

Audience Recognition

_____ **1.** Are technical terms defined?

_____ **2.** Are examples used at the reader's level of understanding to explain difficult steps or concepts?

_____ **3.** Are graphics used appropriately to help the audience understand the procedure or concept?

_____ **4.** Are tone and word usage appropriate for the intended audience?

Development

_____ **5.** Are steps or concepts precisely developed?

_____ **6.** Is all required information provided including hazards, technical descriptions, process analyses, warranties, accessories, and required equipment or tools?

_____ **7.** Is irrelevant or rarely needed information omitted?

Ease of Use

_____ **8.** Can readers easily find what they want through

- a table of contents
- a navigation bar
- a glossary
- hierarchical headings
- headers or footers

Conciseness

_____ **9.** Are words limited to one to two syllables when possible?

_____ **10.** Are sentences limited to 10–15 words when possible?

_____ **11.** Are paragraphs limited to 4–6 lines of text when possible?

Consistency

_____ **12.** Is a consistent hierarchy of headings used?

_____ **13.** Are graphics presented consistently (same location, same use of figure titles and numbers, similar sizes, similar style of graphics, etc.)?

_____ **14.** Does word usage mean the same throughout the text (technical terms, hazard notations, etc.)?

_____ **15.** Is the same style of numbering used throughout?

Document Design

_____ **16.** Do graphics help depict how to perform steps?

_____ **17.** Is white space used to make information accessible?

_____ **18.** Does color emphasize hazards, key terms, or important information?

_____ **19.** Do headings, subheadings, and talking headings aid clarity and help the readers navigate the text?

Revision Techniques

After testing your document for usability, revise your text by using the following revision techniques:

- *Add* any missing detail for clarity.
- *Delete* dead words and phrases for conciseness.
- *Simplify* unnecessarily complex words and phrases to allow for easier understanding.
- *Move* around information (cut and paste) to ensure that your most important ideas are emphasized.
- *Reformat* (using highlighting techniques) to ensure reader-friendly ease of access.
- *Enhance* the tone and style of the text.
- *Correct* any errors to ensure accurate grammar and content.

We discuss each of these points in greater detail throughout the text.

How Important Is Proofreading?

Do employees in the workplace really care about grammar and mechanics? Is proofreading only important to teachers? Proofreading is absolutely important. Table 4 shows the importance of proofreading. The National Commission on Writing highlights what employers and employees consider to be essential skills in technical communication ("Writing: A Powerful Message from State Government" 19).

TABLE 4 Essential Skills in Technical Communication

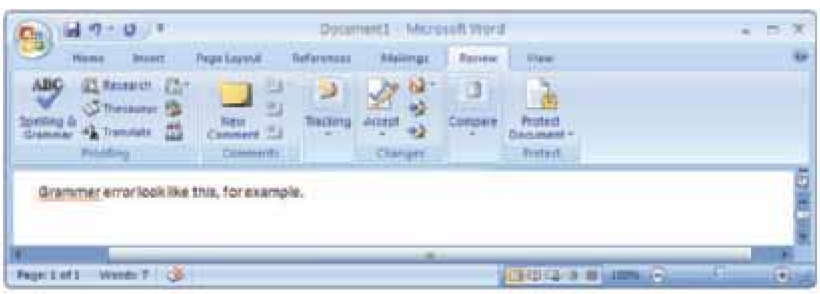
Skills	Extremely Important
Accuracy	87.8%
Spelling, Grammar, Punctuation	71.4%
Clarity	69.4%
Documentation/Support	61.2%
Logic	55.1%
Conciseness	42.9%
Visual Appeal	12.2%

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Using Microsoft Word 2010 for Rewriting

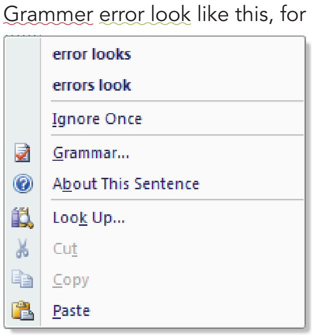
Word processing programs help you rewrite your document in many ways:

- Spell check—When you misspell a word, often spell check will underline the error in red (as shown in the following example with "grammer" incorrectly spelled). Spell check, unfortunately, will not catch all errors. If you use a word like *to* instead of *too*, spell check will not "no" the difference (of course, that should be "know" but spell check did not mark the error). Microsoft Word 2010's "**Review**" tab also provides you access to proofreading help and allows you to make comments and track changes.



- Grammar check—Word processors also can help you catch grammar errors. Grammar check underlines errors in green. When you right-click on the underlined text, the word processing package will provide an optional correction.

  Grammer error look like this, for example.



- Add/Delete—Word processing makes adding new content and deleting unneeded text very easy. All you need to do is place your cursor where you want to add/delete. Then, to add, you type. To delete, you hit the Backspace key or the Delete key.
- Move—The Copy, Cut, and Paste features of word processing allow you to move text with ease.
- Enhance/Reformat—In addition to changing the tone of your text, you also can enhance the visual appeal of your document at a keystroke. From the "**Home**" tab on your toolbar, you can choose from the Word 2010 Ribbon and include bullets, italics, boldface, font changes, numbered lists, etc.

WRITING PROCESS CHECKLIST

Prewriting

_____ **1.** Have you determined the purpose for communicating?

_____ **2.** Is your goal to inform, instruct, persuade, or build trust?

_____ **3.** Is your audience high-tech, low-tech, or lay?

_____ **4.** Have you gathered data through prewriting techniques or researching?

_____ **5.** Have you chosen the correct communication channel?

Writing

_____ **6.** Have you organized the information (using modes such as spatial, chronology, comparison/contrast, etc.)?

_____ **7.** Is the content formatted for readability?

Rewriting

_____ **8.** Have you tested for usability?

_____ **9.** Have you revised by adding, deleting, simplifying, enhancing tone, and reformatting?

_____ **10.** Have you proofread for accuracy?

Revision is possibly the most important stage in the writing process. If you prewrite effectively (gathering your data, determining your objectives, and recognizing your audience) and write an effective draft, you are off to a great start. However, if you then fail to rewrite your text, you run the risk of having wasted the time you spent prewriting and writing. Rewriting is the stage in which you make sure that everything is correct. Failure to do so not only can cause confusion for your readers but also can destroy your credibility.

The process approach to writing— prewriting, writing, and rewriting (including usability testing)—can help you communicate successfully in any work environment or writing situation. In fact, the greatest benefit of process is that it is generic. Process is not designed for any one profession or type of correspondence. No author of a technical communication book can anticipate exactly where you will work, what type of documents you will be required to write, or what your supervisors will expect in your writing. However, we *can* give you a methodology for tackling any communication activity. Writing as a process will help you write any kind of oral or written communication, for any boss, in any work situation.

SPOTLIGHT

An Editor's Use of the Writing Process

Candice Millard, an editor at *Wireless World* and *National Geographic* magazines and author of *The River of Doubt* and *Destiny of the Republic*, sees herself as "the reader's advocate." As an editor, her job is to make sure that readers understand the text she is editing. Candice states, "Because authors invest enormous time and effort in their writing, they often become so attached to their work that they get lost in the details." Ms. Millard's job is to be the detached eye, the objective reader's point of view.

In the writing process, Candice's authors are in charge of the prewriting and writing. Ms. Millard's job focuses on the final stage of the writing process—rewriting. To accomplish this goal, she offers these editorial hints:

- **Start big and get small.** To achieve editorial objectivity, Candice says that she must "step back, get the big picture, and then work toward the details." She asks herself, "what's superfluous, what's confusing, what questions do I have that haven't been answered, and where is clarity needed?"
- **Flesh out the details.** Candice's next job is to "fill in the holes." Sometimes, Candice's biggest challenge is defining her authors' highly technical terminology. When authors depend on jargon, Candice "translates the terms."
- **Slice and dice.** The opposite goal to adding detail for clarity is deleting text. Candice also must "edit out contradictions, weed the irrelevancies, remove the distractions, and excise whatever might ring false."
- **Practice diplomacy.** Candice's authors are all experts in their fields. When these authors write about what they love, every word they use is precious to them; every detail is crucial. Candice, on the other hand, must cut their text to fit space limitations and to meet a reader's limited attention span. Cutting makes "people bristle." Therefore, when editing, she considers how her comments will affect the writer. She "engages in conversation, points out what's good, tempers the bad with the positive, and then weaves in required changes.

As an editor, Candice knows that she isn't just dealing with words; she is working with people.

The Writing Process At Work

Each company you work for over the course of your career will have its own unique approach to writing memos, letters, reports, e-mail messages, proposals, or Web sites. Your employers will want you to do it their way. Company requirements vary. Different jobs and fields of employment require different types of correspondence. However, you will succeed in tackling any writing task if you have a consistent process approach to writing.

Following is an e-mail report written using the process approach to writing. The document was produced in the workplace by John, an information technologist (IT), writing to his supervisor.

Prewriting

John needed to create a user manual and instructional video for the installation of a video card, with added functions such as video capture, MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 decoding, light pen, TV output, and the ability to connect multiple monitors. His boss asked for a follow-up status report about the creation of the manual and the instructional video. John's prewriting (shown in Figure 3) tells us *who* he is writing to; *what* types of documents he worked on; *where* the user manual will be accessible to the customer; *when* the new product will be released; *why* the boss requested the update; and *how* John gathered data for his manual and tested for usability.

FIGURE 3 Using Reporter's Questions to Prewrite

Who—my boss

What—write a progress report about our new user manual and instructional video

Where—the manual will be available online (www.vCard.com/customerhelp) and saved to disc and packaged with the product; the instructional video will be saved on disc and accessible on our Web site

When—to accompany the release of our new product (November 2014)

Why—in response to boss's request for an update on how to improve customer service

How—I worked with SMEs and a panel of customers to test usability to create the user manual and instructional video

Writing

After prewriting, John wrote a rough draft and took the word rough seriously. He did not consider document design, grammar, or sentence structure. When you draft, do not worry about errors or how the correspondence looks. It is meant to be rough, to free you from worry about making errors. You can correct errors when you revise. No writing is ever perfect. Every memo, letter, report, or e-mail message can be improved. John asked a colleague to review his rough draft and suggest revisions. Figure 4 shows the rough draft with suggestions for improvement.

FIGURE 4 Rough Draft with Suggested Revisions

REPORT ON MANUAL

Recently, you asked us to develop an instruction manual and video for installation of our vCard 9600 pro series video card. Our focus was to create a manual that was aesthetically pleasing and easy to follow for all levels of computer literate people. All in efforts to increase our customer service satisfaction percentage.

We feel we successfully created a manual that can be beneficial to anyone who uses this product. Our installation guide is an extremely user friendly, providing an easy-to-follow, step-by-step instruction to the installation of our 9600 pro and can be used as a basis for developing manuals for all of our products. We feel we should develop detailed installation manuals for every product and service we provide, this will increase customer service satisfaction and relieve our technical support department's hold time on calls. We're sure you agree that Extreme PCs should not only be known for our great products, but for our great customer service as well. Since the release of this manual, our customer satisfaction percentage has increased greater than our competitors. We encountered two problems in writing our manual. Using computer jargon when describing installation. Our use of high-tech terminology led to reader confusion, as documented by customer complaints. Screen captures should parallel the content. We had problems with the instructional video.

The manual was a complete success. However, we could improve future manuals as follows: More instruction manuals detailing installation on all our products. We're certain that our customer satisfaction will continue to increase if all of our products are packaged with manuals or if manuals are provide online for easy download. To manage the challenge we encountered with high-tech terminology, all manuals will now include glossaries to define challenging word usage. SMEs will help with this. More time to work on the manuals. We had so many ideas during the development process, that we ran out of time to implement them all. With this first manual created, however, we can use it as a template. This will save time for future manual development. We'd also like to see an increase in staffing to take on such a massive project. Plus, we'd like to increase our tech support department to reduce hold time and ensure customer satisfaction levels.

John, don't put the subject line in all caps. What about the manual? You need additional information about the video.

Change the word "recently" to a specific date, clarify who you worked with on this project, and remind the reader exactly why you're writing this report.

Note that your last line in paragraph one is a fragment (incomplete sentence). You have similar grammar errors elsewhere.

No one will read your last two paragraphs, John. They're both too bulky. Can you add white space, add headings, and use some bulleted lists?

Define "SMEs," John.

Our boss asked for a status report about the vCard project. Your conclusion does not emphasize what was learned from the project. A status report of the vCard project will help him decide how to set up the next company project.

Your conclusion needs some "punch" for emphasis.

Rewriting

After John read his colleague's comments, he revised the report and sent it to his boss. Figure 5 shows you his finished product. Once the manager received the report, he commended John for a job well done. The manager found the report easy to read because of the use of white space, headings, listed and bulleted information, and smaller paragraphs. The manager also noted the grammatically correct and well-constructed sentences. When you approach writing as a step-by-step process (prewriting, writing, and rewriting), your results usually are positive—and you will receive positive feedback from your supervisors.

FIGURE 5 Finished Product

Subject: Report on Video Card Installation Manual and Instructional Video

What we hoped to achieve

On Friday, November 2, 2014, you asked our team to develop an instruction manual and video for installation of our vCard 9600 pro series video card. Our focus was to create a hard-copy manual and an instructional video that were aesthetically pleasing and easy to follow for all levels of computer literate people. We hoped to increase our customer service satisfaction percentage. We completed the user manual and video in time for the vCard 9600 rollout. This report will bring you up to date on our achievements.

What we accomplished

We successfully created a manual and a video that can be beneficial to anyone who uses our product. Our installation guide is user friendly, providing an easy-to-follow, step-by-step instruction to the installation of our 9600 pro. The manual and video are available online at www.vCard.com/customerhelp. Plus, we saved the text and accompanying video to disc and packaged them with the product.

We believe that these end-user help aids can serve as a basis for developing manuals for all our products. Our instructional video is easy to use for the consumer and can be a model for all future instructional videos. Working with our customer usability panel and SMEs (subject matter experts) proved to be an invaluable resource and a great way to achieve customer service satisfaction.

Work remaining to be done

We feel we should develop detailed installation manuals and instructional videos for every product and service we provide. This will increase customer service satisfaction and relieve our technical support department's hold time on calls. Since the release of this manual and video, our customer satisfaction percentage has increased by approximately 12 percent over our competitors, as validated by independent survey results.

Problems encountered

We encountered two problems in writing our manual:

1. We used computer jargon when describing installation. Our use of high-tech terminology led to reader confusion, as documented by customer complaints.
2. We did not include enough screen captures to help our target audience. This led to complaints about lack of understanding.

We encountered two problems when scripting our video:

1. The instructional steps were not detailed enough for the video camera operator to shoot.
2. Our "actors" had insufficient time for learning lines.

Suggestions for future projects

The manual and video were successful after we made revisions based on comments from our usability panel. However, we could improve future manuals and videos as follows:

- **More Manuals:** More instruction manuals detailing installation of our products need to be created. We're certain that our customer satisfaction will continue to increase if all products are packaged with manuals or if manuals are provided online for easy download.

FIGURE 5 (Continued)

- **More Instructional Videos:** Most if not all of our products could benefit from instructional videos. We could create videos in different languages to be sold in our international market. YouTube videos would be appealing to many of our customers.
- **Glossaries:** To manage the challenge we encountered with high-tech terminology, all manuals will now include glossaries to define challenging word usage. Our in-house SMEs can help with definitions of terms.
- **Time:** We need more time to work on the manuals and the videos. We had so many ideas during the development process that we ran out of time to implement them all. With this first manual and video created, however, we can use them as templates. This will save time for future manual and video development.
- **Personnel:** We'd also like to see an increase in staffing to take on such a massive project. Plus, we'd like to increase our tech support department to reduce hold time and ensure customer satisfaction levels. My team believes that hiring only two more help desk employees could successfully handle this need.

If I can answer any questions, let me know. Thank you for giving me the opportunity to work on this project.

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Writing effectively is a challenge for many people. Following the process approach to writing will help you meet this challenge.
2. Prewriting helps you determine your goals, consider your audience, gather your data, examine your purposes, and determine the communication channel.
3. Prewriting techniques will help you get started. Try answering reporter's questions, mind mapping, brainstorming or listing, outlining, storyboarding, creating organization charts, flowcharting, or researching.
4. When you prewrite, decide whether you are communicating to persuade, instruct, inform, or build trust.
5. To begin writing a rough draft, organize your material, consider the layout and design of the communication, and add visual aids such as tables and figures.
6. You can communicate content through e-mail messages, instant messages, blogging, letters, memos, reports, brochures, proposals, Web sites, and Microsoft PowerPoint presentations.
7. Perfect your text by testing for usability.
8. Rewrite your document by adding, deleting, simplifying, moving, reformatting, enhancing, and correcting.
9. Proofreading is an essential part of the rewriting step in the writing process. Lack of proofreading causes businesses to lose money.
10. Accuracy is an essential skill in business according to the National Commission on Writing.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. You are the co-chair of the "Mother's Weekend" at your sorority, fraternity or other school organization. Using mind mapping and listing, brainstorm the activities, menus, locations, decorations, dates, and fees for this weekend's festivities. Brainstorm the pros and cons of hosting the weekend at your sorority or fraternity house or at a hotel or restaurant.

Assignment

Write an outline showing the decisions you've made regarding the topics above. Then, write a short memo or e-mail to your organization's executive board sharing your findings.

2. Electronic City is a retailer of DVDs, televisions, DVD players with MP3 playback/JPEG viewer, computer systems, cameras, telephones, fax machines, printers, and more. Electronic City needs to create a Web site to market its products and services. The content for this Web site should include the following:

Prices	Store hours	Warranties	Service agreements
Job opportunities	Installation fees	Extended holiday hours	Discounts
Technical support	Product information	Special holiday sales	Delivery fees

Assignment

Review the list of Web site topics for Electronic City. Using an organizational chart, decide how to group these topics. Which will be major links on the Web site's navigation bar? Which will be topics of discussion within each of the major links?

Once you have organized the links, sketch the Web site by creating a storyboard.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. To practice prewriting, take one of the following topics. Then, using the suggested prewriting technique, gather data.
   a. **Reporter's questions.** To gather data for your resume, list answers to the reporter's questions for two recent jobs you have held and for your past and present educational experiences.
   b. **Mind mapping.** Create a mind map for your options for obtaining college financial aid.
   c. **Brainstorming or listing.** List five reasons why you have selected your degree program or why you have chosen the school you are attending.
   d. **Outlining.** Outline your reasons for liking or disliking a current or previous job.

e. **Storyboarding.** If you have a personal Web site, use storyboarding to depict graphically the various screens. If you do not have such a site, use storyboarding to depict graphically what your site's screens would include.

f. **Creating organizational charts.** What is the hierarchy of leadership or management at your job or college organization (fraternity, sorority, club, or team)? To depict graphically who is in charge of what and who reports to whom, create an organizational chart.

g. **Flowcharting.** Create a flowchart of the steps you followed to register for classes, buy a car, or seek employment.

h. **Researching.** Go online or find a hard copy of the *Occupational Outlook Handbook*. Then, research a career field that interests you. Reading the *Occupational Outlook Handbook,* find out the nature of the work, working conditions, employment opportunities, educational requirements, and pay scale.

2. Using the techniques illustrated in this chapter, edit, correct, and rewrite the following flawed memo.

Date: April 3, 2014
To: William Huddleston
From: Julie Schopper
Subject: Trainning Classes

Bill, our recent training budget has increased beyond our projections. We need to solve this problem. My project team has come up with several suggestions, you need to review these and then get back to us with your input. Here is what we have come up with.

We could reduce the number of training classes, fire several trainers, but increase the number of participants allowed per class. Thus we would keep the same amount of income from participants but save a significant amount of money due to the reduction of trainer salaries and benefits. The downside might be less effective training, once the trainer to participant ratio is increased. As another option, we could outsource our training. This way we could fire all our trainers, which would mean that we would save money on benefits and salaries, as well as offer the same number of training sessions, which would keep our trainer to participant ratio low.

What do you think? We need your feedback before we can do anything so even if your busy, get on this right away. Please write me as soon as you can.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECE

In an interview, a company benefits manager said that she spent over 50 percent of her workday on communication issues. These included the following:

- Consulting with staff, answering their questions about retirement, health insurance, and payroll deductions
- Meeting weekly with human resources (HR) colleagues
- Collaborating with project team members
- Preparing and writing quarterly reports to HR supervisors
- Teleconferencing with third-party insurance vendors regarding new services and/or costs

- E-mailing supervisors and staff, in response to questions
- Updating information about benefits on the corporate blog
- Creating a new link on the company Web site about changes to insurance and benefits
- Calling and responding to telephone calls
- Faxing information as requested
- Responding to and sending instant messages and text messages
- Writing letters to vendors and staff to document services

Though she had to use various methods of both written and oral communication, the communication channels each have benefits and drawback. E-mailing, for example, has pluses and minuses (convenience over depth of discussion, perhaps). Think about each of the communication options above. Using the following table, list the benefits of each particular type of communication versus the drawbacks.

Communication Channels	Benefits	Drawbacks	Possible Solutions
One-on-one discussions			
Group meetings			
Collaborative projects			
Written reports			
Teleconferences			
E-mail			
Blogging			
Web site			
Phone calls			
Faxes			
IM/TM			
Letters			

WEB WORKSHOP

1. Proofreading is a key component of successful technical communication. Access the following Web sites and read what these sites suggest as editing/proofreading hints. Compare the content to your approaches to proofreading and editing. Write an e-mail message or memo summarizing your findings.
   - Literacy Education Online
     http://leo.stcloudstate.edu/acadwrite/genproofed.html
   - Purdue University's Online Writing Lab
     http://owl.english.purdue.edu/handouts/general/gl_edit.html
   - University of North Carolina
     http://www.unc.edu/depts/wcweb/handouts/proofread.html
2. The Society for Technical Communication provides a link to professional articles about usability testing: http://www.stcsig.org/usability/. Read any of the articles found in this Web site and report on your findings in an e-mail message or memo to your professor.

PARENTHETICAL SOURCE CITATIONS AND DOCUMENTATION

To document research correctly, you must provide parenthetical source citations following the quote or paraphrase within the text. At the end of your document, supply a references page (American Psychological Association and Council of Science Editors) or a works cited page (Modern Language Association).

Parenthetical Source Citations

The American Psychological Association (APA), the Council of Science Editors (CSE), and the Modern Language Association (MLA) use a parenthetical form of source citations. If your boss or instructor requests footnotes or endnotes, you should still use these forms. However, the most modern approach to source citations according to MLA and APA requires only that you cite the source of your information parenthetically after the quotation or paraphrase. The CSE style manual uses a number after the quote or paraphrase to reference the source to the references page at the end of the document. CSE also uses an author-year sequence similar to APA.

APA Format

One Author. If you do not state the author's name or the year of the publication in the lead-in to the quotation, include the author's name, year of publication, and page number in parentheses, after the quotation.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints" (Cottrell, 2011, p. 118).

(Page numbers are included for quoted material. The writer determines whether page numbers are included for source citations of summaries and paraphrases.)

Two Authors. When you cite a source with two authors, always use both last names with an ampersand (&).

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (Gerson & Gerson, 2011, p. 158).

Three or More Authors. When your citation has more than two authors but fewer than six, use all the last names in the first parenthetical source citation. For subsequent citations, list the first author's last name followed by *et al.* (Latin for "and others"), the year of publication, and for a quotation, the page number.

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" (Conners et al., 2011, p. 2).

Anonymous Works. When no author's name is listed, include in the source citation the title or part of a long title and the year. Book titles are underlined or italicized, and periodical titles are placed in quotation marks.

> Flash drives have revolutionized data storage (*Electronic Databases,* 2011).

> Effective e-mail messages can be organized in three paragraphs ("Using Templates," 2011).

CSE Format

In-text citations for quoted or paraphrased material are in the form of superscript numbers. Sometimes, editors prefer that numbers are placed in parentheses or in brackets. The number refers to the numbered source citations on the references list at the end of the document. Many editors and publishers believe that a numbered form of citation is less intrusive to the reader than the method used by APA or MLA.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints."[1]

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (2).

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" [3].

MLA Format

One Author. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the author's last name and the page number of the information.

> "Viewing the molecular activity required state-of-the-art electron microscopes" (Heinlein 193).

Note that the period follows the parenthesis, not the quotation. Also note that no comma separates the name from the page number and that no lowercase *p* precedes the number.

Two Authors. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the authors' last names and the page number of the information.

> "Twitter has dramatically changed the way we write on the job" (Crider and Berry 292).

Three or More Authors. Writing a series of names can be cumbersome. To avoid this, if you have a source of information written by three or more authors, parenthetically cite one author's name, followed by *et al.* and the page number.

> "The development of gaming software is a growing industry" (Norwood et al. 93).

Anonymous Works. If your source has no author, parenthetically cite the shortened title and page number.

> "Robots are more accurate and less prone to errors caused by long hours of operation than humans" ("Useful Robots" 81).

Documentation of Sources

Parenthetical source citations are an abbreviated form of documentation. In parentheses, you tell your readers only the names of your authors and the page numbers on which the information can be found, or you provide a number that parallels the numbered source at the end of the document. Such documentation alone would be insufficient. Your readers would not know the names of the authors (in CSE numerical-sequence format), the titles of the books, the names of the periodicals, or the dates, volumes, or publishing companies. This more thorough information is found on the references page (APA) or works cited page (MLA), a listing of research sources alphabetized either by author's name or title (if anonymous). On the references page (CSE), you organize the citations numerically by the order in which the quote or paraphrase appeared in the text. This is the last page[s] of your research report.

Your entries should follow APA, CSE, and MLA standards. (Additional style manuals are available for many professions.) MLA no longer requires the use of URLs in source citations. Because Web addresses can change and documents sometimes appear in several different databases, MLA says that most readers can find electronic sources using title or author searches in Internet search engines. If you do include a URL, MLA says to put the URL in angle brackets after the date of access. Use slash marks to break a URL.

APA References

The APA style is commonly used in both engineering and scientific fields. The following are sample entries for the reference page, which is placed at the end of the document. Include on the reference page only sources from which you cited in the document. For a comprehensive illustration of reference page entries, use the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association* (2009) and the *APA Style Guide to Electronic References* (2009).

A book with one author

Cottrell, R. C. (2006). *Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II.* London: McFarland and Co., Inc.

A book with two authors

Heath, C. & Heath, D. (2007). *Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die.* New York: Random House.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell, J., McNeniman, L., & Langan, J. (1997). *The Macmillan writer.* Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends.* Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

A translated book

Phelps, R. (Ed.). (1983). *The collected stories of Colette* (M. Ward, Trans.). New York: Farrar, Straus & Giroux.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, K. (2005). What's in a Name? In R. Atwan (Ed.), *America now: short readings from recent periodicals* (pp. 12–20). NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, R. (2007, April). Getting—and keeping good clients. *Intercom,* 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, J. (2007, May 28). A question of honor. *Time,* 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

Internet. (2000). *The world book encyclopedia.* Chicago: World Book.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities [Computer software]. (2002–2004). Dell, Inc.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

E-mail

According to APA, do not include e-mail messages in the list of references. You should cite the message parenthetically in your text. (J. Millard, personal communication, April 2, 2011).

Blog

McWard, J. (2011, May 31). Graphics on-line. Message posted to http://www.jmcward.net.

Personal Web site

Mohr, E. (2011, Dec. 29). Home page of Ellen Mohr's Web site. Retrieved from http://emohr.edu.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. (2011, Jan. 5). Johnson County Community College. Retrieved from http://jccc.edu.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

APA References Page

Place the references page at the end of the document or in an appendix. The entries on the reference page are alphabetized by author's last name or title.

References

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends.* Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

CSE References

The CSE style guide shows two systems for organizing references at the end of the document. First, you can use the citation-sequence system that lists the numbered references in the order cited within the text (illustrated below). Second, you can follow the name-year system that lists references in alphabetical order by author's last name.

Personal e-mail messages, blog entries, personal Web sites, and entries to listservs should not automatically be included on a references list. According to the CSE style manual, the decision to include such references is left to publishers and editors.

The CSE style of documentation is used in the fields of biology and medicine. Following are sample entries using the numerical system for the references list. For a comprehensive

illustration of entries on the references list, use the *Scientific Style and Format: The CSE Manual for Authors, Editors, and Publishers* (2006).

A book with one author

Cottrell RC. Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II. London: McFarland and Co., Inc.; 2006. p 27–28.

A book with two authors

Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell J., McNeniman L., Langan J. The Macmillan writer. Boston: Allyn and Bacon; 1997. p 224.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends. Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central; 2007.

A translated book

Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton K. What's in a name? R. Atwan, editor. America now: short readings from recent periodicals. NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2005. p 12–20.

A signed article in a journal

Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007 April: 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe J. A question of honor. Time 2007 May 28: 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C: 3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. Technical Communication 2009 Sep 23; 22.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. [cited 2011 Jan 5]. Available from: http://jccc.edu.

CSE References Page

The references page in CSE style is placed either at the end of the document or in an appendix. List the sources in the order in which they appeared in the document.

References

1. Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007; April: 8–12.
2. Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.
3. Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.
4. Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.
5. Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C:3.

MLA Works Cited

MLA documentation format is used in the arts and humanities fields. Following are examples of entries on the works cited page. For a comprehensive illustration of MLA format for the works cited page, refer to the *MLA Style Manual and Guide to Scholarly Publishing* (2008). MLA also recently provided an abbreviated, updated style guide, *A Guide to MLA Style 2009 Update*.

A book with one author

Cottrell, Robert C. *Smoke Jumpers of the Civilian Public Service in World War II.* London: McFarland and Co., Inc., 2006. Print.

A book with two or three authors

Heath, Chip, and Dan Heath. *Made to Stick: Why Some Ideas Survive and Others Die.* New York: Random House, 2007. Print.

A book with four or more authors

Nadell, Judith, et al. *The Macmillan Writer.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1997. Print.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends.* Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

A translated book

Phelps, Robert, ed. *The Collected Stories of Colette.* Trans. Matthew Ward. New York: Farrar, Straus Giroux, 1983. Print.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, Kendra. "What's in a Name?" *America Now: Short Readings from Recent Periodicals.* Ed. Robert Atwan. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's, 2005. 12–20. Print.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, Rachel. "Getting—and Keeping Good Clients." *Intercom* (April 2007): 8–12. Print.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, Jason. "University to go wireless." *The Kansas City Star* 29 Mar. 2007: C3. Print.

An unsigned article

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

"Internet." *The World Book Encyclopedia.* 2000 ed. Chicago: World Book. Print.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities. Computer software. Dell, Inc., 2002–2004. Print.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

E-mail

Schneider, Max. "Re: Teaching Technical Communication." Message to Sharon Gerson. 2 Apr. 2011. Email.

Blog

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Personal Web site

Mohr, Ellen. Home page. 29 Dec. 2009. Web. 30 December 2011.

Professional web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. 5 Jan. 2009. Web. 14 Feb. 2011.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Ptsui [Peter Tsui]. "Questionnaire." *Society for Technical Communication Listserv.* 15 Sep. 2011. Web. 17 Sep. 2011.

MLA Works Cited Page

At the end of the document, include a works cited page or place this page in an appendix.

Works Cited

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends*. Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version*. National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 2 — The Society for Technical Communication single sourcing link. Courtesy of STC Single Sourcing SIG.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Blend Images / Shutterstock
© Steven and Sharon Gerson
© pressmaster / Fotolia

REFERENCES

Albers, Michael J. "Single Sourcing and the Technical Communication Career Path." *Technical Communication* 50 (Aug. 2003): 336–343. Print.

Carter, Locke. "The Implications of Single Sourcing for Writers and Writing." *Technical Communication* 50 (Aug. 2003): 317–320. Print.

Dorazio, Pat. Interview. Jun. 2000.

"The Single Sourcing SIG." *STC*. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

"Writing: A Powerful Message from State Government." *Report of the National Commission on Writing*. College Board, 2005. Print.

Objectives in Technical Communication

From Chapter 3 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

Objectives in Technical Communication

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In the ImageSkill scenario, Nicole Stefani addresses the needs of her audience by writing text that is clear, concise, and accurate.

ImageSkill is a marketing firm that deals primarily with governmental and not-for-profit agencies. Its mission is to mold clients' public relations and to promote an effective overall image. The company accomplishes this through an array of services including

- Web design
- Social media development strategies
- Desktop publishing
- Editing
- Multimedia production
- Events management
- Image control
- Communications training

ImageSkill recently hired Nicole Stefani to be a member of its public relations team. Nicole graduated with honors from the University of Indiana with a degree in journalism and a specialization in public relations. After graduation, she interned in Chicago at a renowned PR company, working with such clients as Nike, Crate & Barrel, and Banana Republic. She brings to ImageSkill expertise as a communications and social media specialist.

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- **Understand that if your technical communication is unclear, your reader may do a job wrong, damage equipment, injure themselves, or contact you for further explanations**
- **Use details, specify, and quantify to ensure reader understanding**
- **Answer *who, what, when, where, why,* and *how* (the reporter's questions) to help determine which details to include**
- **Avoid words that are not commonly used including legalese and outdated terms**
- **Avoid passive voice constructions, which tend to lengthen sentences and confuse readers**
- **Use short, simple words (always considering your reader's level of technical knowledge)**
- **Limit the length of sentences by deleting expletives, "be" verbs, "shun" words, camouflaged words, and more**
- **Use Microsoft Word to determine your text's readability**
- **Use different organizational patterns—spatial, chronological, importance, comparison/contrast, and problem/solution—to help you explain material**
- **Evaluate your technical communication for clarity, conciseness, accuracy, and organization using a checklist**

In Chicago, she worked as an advocate for businesses and nonprofit organizations. She says, "I understand the attitudes and concerns of a community and public interest groups. I work to establish and maintain relationships with my clients, other businesses, and the media." Nicole will be called upon to draft press releases, make promotional films, plan conventions, interact with members of print and broadcast journalism, communicate via social media, and prepare annual reports and proposals.

Nicole says, "As a new hire at ImageSkill, I need to write a proposal in response to an RFP (request for proposal) from Greenfield City Management and make a PowerPoint presentation to the city council." Nicole has spent the last three weeks gathering data for her proposal to the city council.

Nicole initially made contact with the client. She visited with them on the telephone and used e-mail correspondence to gather information that the client considered important. Nicole then reviewed their needs with her boss, Marc Shabbot, who suggested some additional questions she could ask in face-to-face meetings. Through two meetings with upper-level decision makers, she collected information about the end-user's needs. She asked questions, such as "How can we meet your needs?" and "How will you measure success?"

After Nicole gathered data from the client, she had to write the proposal complete with schedules, project plans, the project's scope, and a description of the deliverables. This proposal also would be reviewed by Marc, so Nicole wanted to do a good job.

Nicole said, "I know the importance of this proposal for ImageSkill, the city council, and for me. This is my first big job writing a proposal for ImageSkill, and I want the proposal to be well organized, well designed, well written, clear, concise, accurate, and persuasive. I'm fortunate that Marc is willing to edit my proposal. He has worked for ImageSkill for over ten years and knows how to write a winning proposal. He's a great team leader, and I look forward to his comments about the proposal. I had a technical writing class in college where I learned the communication process of prewriting, writing, and rewriting documents for the business world. With Marc's help and the communication process, I know that I'm going to be a successful communicator in the workplace."

Achieving Clarity in Technical Communication

The ultimate goal of good technical communication is clarity. If you write a letter, report, e-mail message, user manual, blog entry, or Web site that is unclear to your readers, problems can occur. Unclear technical communication can lead to missed deadlines, damaged equipment, inaccurate procedures, incorrectly filled orders, or danger to the end user. To avoid these problems and many others caused by unclear communication, write to achieve clarity.

Why is clarity important? Readers are less informed than you might assume for several reasons:

- **If There Is a CC (Complimentary Copy).** Your primary reader might know what you are talking about. In contrast, the other four or five people who get copies of the e-mail or report could be less informed.
- **When Many People Will Hear Your Oral Presentation.** If you are speaking to an audience composed of many different people, they might not have the same level of knowledge about your topic. Your job is to clarify so all members of your audience basically have the same level of knowledge.
- **When Time Has Passed.** Even if your primary reader knows the background and understands the topic, time might have passed between your initial discussion and your actual writing of the correspondence. In addition, correspondence is filed for future reference. You need to clarify for future readers who won't be familiar with the content.

Provide Specific Detail

One way to achieve clarity is by supplying specific, quantified information. If you write using vague, abstract adjectives or adverbs, such as *some* or *recently,* your readers will interpret these words in different ways. The adverb *recently* will mean 30 minutes ago to one reader, yesterday to another, and last week to a third reader. This adverb, therefore, is not clear. The same applies to an adjective like *some*. If you write, "I need some information about the budget," your readers can only guess what you mean by *some*. Do you want the desired budget increase for 2014 or the budget expenditures for 2013?

Look at the following example of vague writing caused by imprecise, unclear adjectives. (Vague words are underlined.)

BEFORE

Our <u>latest</u> attempt at molding preform protectors has led to <u>some</u> positive results. We spent <u>several</u> hours in Dept. 15 trying different machine settings and techniques. <u>Several</u> good parts were molded using two different sheet thicknesses. Here's a summary of the findings.

First, we tried the <u>thick</u> sheet material. At 240°F, this thickness worked well. Next, we tried the <u>thinner</u> sheet material. The <u>thinner</u> material is less forgiving, but after a <u>few</u> adjustments we were making good parts. Still, the <u>thin</u> material caused the most handling problems.

The engineer who wrote this report realized that it was unclear. To solve the problem, she rewrote the report, quantifying the vague adjectives.

AFTER

During the week of 10/4/14, we spent approximately 12 hours in Dept. 15 trying different machine settings, techniques, and thicknesses to mold preform mold protectors. Here is a report on our findings:

- <u>0.030″ Thick Sheet</u> At 240°F, this thickness worked well.
- <u>0.015″ Thick Sheet</u> This material is less forgiving, but after decreasing the heat to 200°F, we could produce good parts.

Still, material at 0.015″ causes handling problems.

Your goal as a technical communicator is to express yourself clearly. To do so, state your exact meaning through specific, quantified word usage (measurements, dates, monetary amounts, and so forth).

Answer the Reporter's Questions

A second way to write clearly is to answer the reporter's questions—who, what, when, where, why, and how. The best way we can emphasize the importance of answering these reporter's questions is by sharing with you the following e-mail message, written by a highly placed executive, to a newly hired employee.

BEFORE

Date: November 16, 2014
To: Staff
From: Earl Eddings, Manager
Subject: Research

Please be prepared to plan a presentation on research. Make sure the information is very detailed. Thanks.

That's the entire e-mail. The questions are, "What doesn't the newly hired employee know?" "What additional information would that employee need to do the job?" "What needs clarifying?"

To achieve successful communication, the writer needs to answer reporter's questions. *What* is the subject of the presentation and the research? *What* exactly is the reader supposed to do? Will the reader of this e-mail make a presentation, plan a presentation, or prepare to plan a presentation? *Who* is the audience? The word "staff" is too encompassing. Will all of the staff be involved in this project? *Why* is this presentation being made? That is, what is the rationale or motivation for this presentation? *When* will the presentation be made? *How* much detail is "very detailed"? *Where* will the presentation take place?

In contrast, the "After" e-mail message below achieves clarity by answering reporter's questions.

AFTER

Date: November 16, 2014 What
To: Melissa Hider
From: Earl Eddings Who
Subject: Research for Homeland Security Presentation

Please make a presentation on homeland security for the Weston City Council. This meeting is planned for November 20, 2014, in Conference Room C, from 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.

When Where

We have a budget of $6,000,000. Thus, to use these funds effectively, our city must be up to date on the following concerns:

- Bomb-detection options
- Citizen preparedness Why
- Defense personnel training
- Crisis management

How

Use PowerPoint software to make your presentation. With your help, I know Weston and the KC metro area will benefit.

Use Easily Understandable Words

Another key to clarity is using words that your readers can understand easily. Avoid *obscure words.*

Avoid Obscure Words. Write to express, not to impress; write to communicate, not to confuse. If your reader must use a dictionary, you are not writing clearly.

Read the following unclear example.

EXAMPLE ▶

Words like "nonduplicatable" and phrases like "execute without abnormal termination" are hard to understand. For clarity, write "do not duplicate secure messages" and "JCL system testing will ensure that applications continue to work."

> The following rules are to be used when determining whether or not to duplicate messages:
>
> - Do not duplicate nonduplicatable messages.
> - A message is considered nonduplicatable if it has already been duplicated.
>
> Your job duties will be to ensure that distributed application modifications will execute without abnormal termination through the creation of production JCL system testing.

Following is a list of difficult, out-of-date terms and the modern alternatives.

Before	After
aforementioned	discussed above
initial	first
in lieu of	instead of
accede	agree
as per your request	as you requested
issuance	send
this is to advise you	I'd like you to know
subsequent	later
inasmuch as	because
ascertain	find out
pursuant to	after
forward	mail
cognizant	know
endeavor	try
remittance	pay
disclose	show
attached herewith	attached
pertain to	about
supersede	replace
obtain	get

Simplifying Words, Sentences, and Paragraphs for Conciseness

A second major goal in technical communication is conciseness, providing detail in fewer words. Conciseness is important for at least three reasons.

Conciseness Saves Time

Other people's time is valuable. Your audience cannot nor should they spend too much time reading your e-mail or listening to you speak. They have their own jobs to perform. Long documents and lengthy oral presentations often waste people's time. Keep it short—for the sake of your audience as well as for your sake as the communicator.

SPOTLIGHT

The Importance of Clarity, Conciseness, and Accuracy

How important is clarity, conciseness, and accuracy in technical communication? For answers to this question, look at the varied communication channels used by **Joel Blobaum,** Community Relations Manager at the Missouri Department of Transportation (MoDOT). MoDOT, which plans, builds, inspects, and maintains over 32,000 miles of roadway, is the sixth largest state highway system in the nation.

As Community Relations Manager, Joel conducts public meetings and writes newsletters, news releases, and daily work zone reports. His audience includes approximately 1,200 current and retired MoDOT employees and thousands of external readers, consisting of citizens, public works employees, and local and state elected officials.

- Elected officials base legislative decisions and funding allocations on Joel's documentation.
- Business consultants and vendors depend on MoDOT news for job and bidding opportunities.
- Community members engage in meetings and surveys to provide feedback for MoDOT construction plans.

In his hard-copy, electronic, and online communication (Facebook, Twitter, MoDOT's blog, YouTube, podcasts, and Widgets), Joel must be clear, concise, and accurate. Why? Look at the following clear and concise documentation from Joel's daily "Road Zones Today" updates, provided online in MoDOT's Web site:

> **I-70:** Shoulder-repair crews will work in the left lane of westbound I-70 between I-470 and Lee's Summit Road from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m. Friday. Bridge-maintenance crews will close the right lane of westbound I-70 between Grain Valley and west of Adams Dairy Parkway from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m. Monday.
>
> **Route 291:** Pavement-repair crews will work on southbound Route 291 between Kentucky Road and Route 78 from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. weekdays through March 16, and on northbound Route 291 between Route 78 and Route 24 from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. weekdays March 12-30.
>
> **I-35 at Route 69:** Bridge-maintenance crews will close the right lane of northbound I-35 between Route 69 and north of I-435 from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m. Friday.

In each of the examples above, Joel writes short paragraphs, provides specific details, and answers the reporter's questions (who, what, when, where, why, and how). His audience can access this information quickly and use the news to plot their driving routes around the city. Thus, Joel's content must be accurate. If his information is incorrect, and people get snarled in traffic, bad things can occur—accidents, delays, and poor public relations.

Technology Demands Conciseness

Technology is impacting the size of your technical communication. The size of the screen and the character limitations placed on the length of the communication by Twitter and instant messages, for example, make the difference. Thus, when you write, you need to consider the way in which technology limits your space. Today, more and more, effective technical communication must be concise enough to *fit in a box*. Notice how the size of the "box" containing the following communication channels affects the way you package your content (see Figure 1 and Table 1).

FIGURE 1 The Shrinking Size of Technical Communication

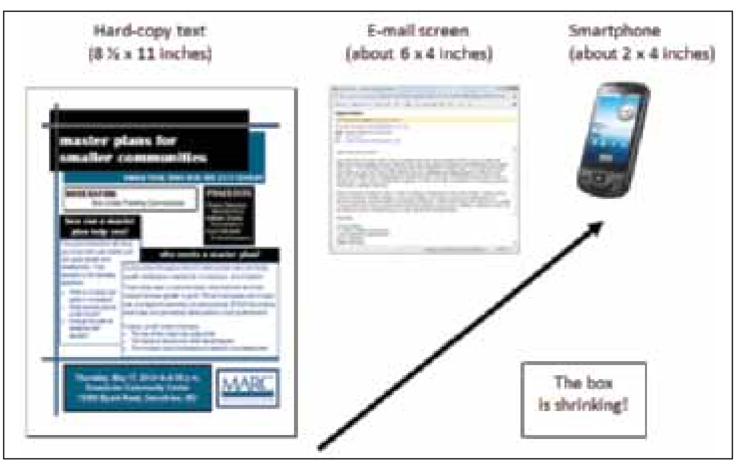


TABLE 1 Approximate Size Characteristics of Communication Channels

Communication Channel	Overall Size of the Screen	Lines per Page or Screen	Characters per Line
Hard-copy paper	8½ × 11 inches	55	70–80
PC or laptop e-mail screen	About 4 × 6 inches	20–22	60–70
Smartphone screen (depending on horizontal versus vertical orientation)	About 2 × 4 inches	20 (vertical) 10 (horizontal)	45 (vertical) 80 (horizontal)

Resumes. A one-page resume is standard. One hard-copy page measures 8½ × 11 inches. That is a box. In fact, this box (one page of text) allows for only about 55 lines of text, and each line of text allows for only about 70–80 characters (a "character" is every letter, punctuation mark, or space).

E-mail Messages. In contrast, much of today's written communication in the workplace is accomplished through e-mail messages. Because e-mail screens displayed on computer monitors are often smaller than a hard-copy page, e-mails should be concise. Yes, you can scroll an e-mail message endlessly, but no one wants to do that. In fact, the reason that readers like a one-page resume is that one page allows for what is known as the "W-Y-S-I-W-Y-G" factor ("What You See Is What You Get"). Readers like to see what they will be getting in the correspondence. In contrast, if you make your readers scroll endlessly in e-mail, they do not see what they get. This causes problems. Therefore, a good e-mail message should fit in the box, letting the reader see the entire content at one glance. It should be limited to about 20 to 40 lines of text.

Mobile Messaging. The technological impact is even more dramatic when you consider the screen size for handheld, mobile messaging equipment such as smartphones. In "Serving the Electronic Reader," Linda E. Moore says, "More and more e-readers are accessing documents using cell phones, PDAs, and other wireless devices" (17). Technical communicators need "to figure out how to create content that works on a four-line cell phone screen" (Perlin 4-8).

Online Help Screens. Another example of technical communication that must fit in a box is online help screens. If you work in information technology or computer sciences, you might need to create or access online help screens. If you do so, then your text will be limited by the size of these screens.

Twitter and Instant Messages. A further size limitation created by technology is evident in tweets and instant messages. A tweet (the name for messages sent via Twitter) is limited to 140 characters. Instant messages are limited to 160 characters.

Microsoft PowerPoint. You also must fit your technical communication within a box (or boxes) when you use Microsoft PowerPoint software.

◀ EXAMPLE

Examples of text boxes provided in PowerPoint

Conciseness Improves Readability

"Readability" is the reading level of your document. It defines whether you are writing at a fifth-grade, ninth-grade, or twelfth-grade level, for example. You can gauge your readability level by using many readability formulas, including the Linsear Write Index, the Lazy Word Index, the Flesch Reading Ease Score, and the Flesch-Kincaid Grade Level Score. A popular tool for determining readability is Robert Gunning's Fog Index. Gunning bases his readability findings on the length of your sentences and the length of your word usage.

Several online sites will help you calculate a document's readability. For example, in an online site for testing readability, *Online-Utility* (http://www.online-utility.org/), just type or download text into the site and receive instant feedback on the "number of characters, words, sentences, and average number of characters per word, syllables per word, and words per sentence." Another Web site, *Readability Formulas* (http://www.readabilityformulas.com/), provides "Free readability tools to check for Reading Levels, Reading Assessment, and Reading Grade Levels."

Readability is important for the following reasons. According to the National Center for Education Statistics, close to 22 percent of the adult population "reads at the lowest literacy level" (Labbe B9). That equals about 70 million people in the United States. You might think that this fact won't apply to you because you'll always be writing to college graduates. That's a mistake. Only about 30 percent of Americans graduate from college. Therefore, if you are writing at a college level, you might create readability challenges for approximately 70 percent of your audience (U.S. Census Bureau). Regardless of your work environment, you will need to communicate to the general public.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about readability, check out William H. DuBay's detailed white paper "The Principles of Readability" found at http://www.impact-information.com/impactinfo/readability02.pdf

Reading habits are changing. Many of today's readers "power browse"—they skim rather than read text in depth (Self 11). Much of this, according to studies, is due to the emergence of social media. Look at the following statistics which highlight the change in reading habits of average college students (Self 11):

Number of books read in a year	8
Number of Web pages read in a year	2,300
Number of Facebook profiles viewed in a year	1,281
Number of pages of college assignments written in a year	42
Number of e-mail messages written in a year	500

Limit Word Length for Conciseness

To achieve clarity *and* conciseness, limit your word usage. Try to use one- and two-syllable words versus words with three or more syllables. You cannot nor should you avoid words like "accountant," "engineer," "telecommunications," "computer," or "nuclear." Though these words have more than two syllables, they are not difficult to understand.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Using Microsoft Word 2010 to Check the Readability Level of Your Text

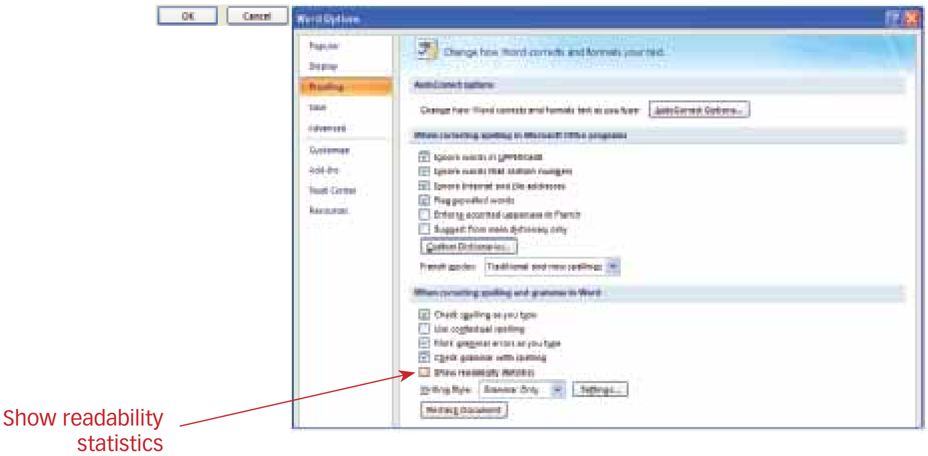
Microsoft Word 2010 allows you to check the "readability" level of your writing. Doing so will let you know the following:

- How many words you've used
- How many sentences you've written
- How many words per sentence
- If you've used passive voice constructions
- The grade level of your writing

1. Click on the **Microsoft Office Button**, and then click **Word Options.**

2. Click on **Proofing.**

3. When the following screen pops up, select **Check grammar with spelling** and **Show readability statistics.** Then click **OK**.



(Continued)

TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

Once you have enabled this readability feature, open a file and check the spelling. When Word has finished checking the spelling and grammar, you will see a display similar to the one below.

In this example, the text consisted of 2159 words, 78 paragraphs, and 144 sentences. This averaged 14 words per sentence, equaling about 10th grade level writing. Four percent of the sentences were written in passive voice.

When you need longer words, use them. Also, try to avoid old-fashioned, legalistic words, like "pursuant," "accordance," and "aforementioned." Too often, writers and speakers use these words to *impress* their audience. In contrast, communicators should *express* their content clearly and simply. Look at the following, lengthy "Before" sentence:

BEFORE

I would like you to take into consideration the following points, which I know will assist you in better applying new HIPAA rules and regulations currently burdened by the need to execute all data manually and on paper rather than through standardized, electronic transmissions.

The above sentence is 44-words long and contains 10 words with more than 3 syllables. None of these words is challenging individually. Still, the mass of syllables makes the sentence hard to understand. To solve the challenges presented by the length of the sentence and the length of the words, simplify as in the "After" example.

AFTER

Please consider the following points. This will help you apply new HIPAA rules by submitting data online instead of having to type text on separate forms.

In this revision, the 44 words have been reduced to 26 words. Also, the original long sentence has been cut into two smaller sentences. The remaining two sentences contain only four multisyllabic words. The conciseness saves you and your reader time and makes the information easier to understand.

Following is a list of long words that can be simplified for conciseness and easier understanding:

BEFORE	AFTER
Long Words	**Concise Version**
utilize	use
anticipate	await (or expect)
cooperate	help
indicate	show
initially	first (or 1.)
presently	now
prohibit	stop
inconvenience	problem
pursuant	before
endeavor	try
sufficient	enough
subsequent	next

Limit Sentence Length for Conciseness

For conciseness and improved readability, limit the length of your sentences. The GNOME Documentation Style Guide (a Unix and Linux desktop suite and development platform) provides the following information about readable sentence length:

READABILITY	LENGTH OF SENTENCES
Very easy to read	Average sentence length is 12 words or less.
Plain English	Average sentence length is 15 to 20 words.
Extremely difficult to read	Average sentence length exceeds 20 words.

To limit sentence length, use the following techniques for deleting dead words and phrases.

Delete "Be" Verbs. "Be" verbs include conjugations of the verb "be": *is, are, was, were, would, will, been,* and *am.* Often, these verbs create unnecessarily wordy sentences. For example, look at the "Before" and "After" examples.

BEFORE	AFTER
Wordiness Caused by "Be" Verbs	**Deleting for Conciseness**
Bill *is* of the opinion that stock prices will decrease.	Bill thinks stock prices will decrease.
I *am* in receipt of your bill for $1000.	I received your $1000 bill.
If I can *be* of any assistance to you, please call.	If I can help, please call.
They *are* planning to fax new invoices tomorrow.	They plan to fax new invoices tomorrow.
Barb *had been* hoping to move into her new office complex today.	Barb hoped to move into her new office complex today.

Use Active Voice Versus Passive Voice. In active voice sentences, the subject performs an action. In passive voice sentences, the subject is acted upon. Sometimes, "Be" verbs create passive voice sentences, as in the "Before" example.

BEFORE

It *has been* decided that Joan Smith *will* head our Sales Department.

This sentence is written in the passive voice (the primary focus of the sentence, Joan Smith, is acted on rather than initiating the action).

Passive voice causes two problems.

1. Passive constructions are often unclear. Who decided that Joan Smith will head the department? To solve this problem and to achieve clarity, replace the vague indefinite pronoun "it" with a precise noun, as in the "After" example.

AFTER

Larry named Joan Smith head of the Sales Department.

2. Passive constructions are often wordy. Passive sentences require helping verbs, such as *has been*. The "After" example omits the helping verb *has been* and the verb *will*.

Delete the Expletive Pattern. When you begin sentences with "there" or "it," you create the expletive pattern of sentence structure. Notice how the expletive pattern again uses "Be" verbs. The expletives (*there* and *it*) create wordy sentences, as shown in the "Before" examples in contrast to the "After" examples.

BEFORE	AFTER
There are three people who will work for Acme.	Three people will work for Acme.
It has been decided that ten engineers will be hired.	Ten engineers will be hired.

Note that the second "after" example contains the verbs "will be." You can't always omit "Be" verbs. When you can, do so. When you can't do so, don't.

Avoid *Shun* Words. Another way to write more concisely is to avoid words ending in *-tion* or *-sion*—*shun* sounds. For example, look at the "Before" and "After" examples.

BEFORE	AFTER
Shun Words	**Concise Versions**
came to the conclu*sion*	concluded (or decided, ended, stopped)
with the excep*tion* of	except for (or but)
make revi*sions*	revise (or change)
investiga*tion* of the	investigate (or look at, review, assess)
consider implementa*tion*	implement (or use)
utiliza*tion* of	use

Avoid Camouflaged Words Camouflaged words are similar to *shun* words. In both instances, a key word is buried in the middle of surrounding words (usually helper verbs or unneeded prepositions). For example, in the phrase *make an amendment to*, the key word *amend* is camouflaged behind unnecessary words. Look at the "Before" and "After" examples.

BEFORE	AFTER
Camouflaged Words	**Concise Versions**
make an *adjust*ment of	adjust (or revise, alter, change, edit, fix)
have a *meeting*	meet
*thank*ing *you* in advance	thank you
for the purpose of *discussing*	discuss
arrive at an *agree*ment	agree
at a *later* moment	later

Limit Prepositional Phrases. Prepositions can be important words in your communication. They help you convey information about time and place. Occasionally, however, prepositional phrases create wordy sentences. A prepositional phrase includes a *preposition* and a *noun* or *pronoun* that serves as the object of the preposition. For example, "at a later moment" is a prepositional phrase. It includes the preposition *at* and the noun *moment*. This prepositional phrase is wordy and can be revised to read "later."

BEFORE	AFTER
Wordy Prepositional Phrases	**Concise Versions**
He spoke *at a rapid rate*.	He spoke rapidly (or fast).
She wrote *with regard to* the meeting.	She wrote regarding (or about) the meeting.
I will call *in the near future*.	I will call soon.
On two different occasions, we met.	We met twice.
The manager *of personnel* was hired.	The personnel manager was hired.

Use the Meat Cleaver Method of Revision. One way to limit the number of words per sentence is to cut the sentence in half or into thirds. The following sentence, which contains 43 words, is too long.

BEFORE

To maintain proper stock balances of respirators and canister elements and to ensure the identification of physical limitations that may negate an individual's previous fit-test, a GBC-16 Respirator Request and Issue Record will need to be submitted for each respirator requested for use.

Using the meat cleaver approach makes this sentence more concise. The "Before" sentence, now rewritten as three sentences, is easier to read.

AFTER

Please submit a GBC-16 Respirator Request and Issue Record for each requested respirator. We then can maintain proper respirator and canister element stock balances. We also can identify physical limitations that may negate an individual's previous fit-test.

Limit Paragraph Length

The number of lines you write in a paragraph is arbitrary. Some paragraphs, due to the complexity of the subject matter, might require development. Other paragraphs requiring less development can be shorter. Nonetheless, an excessively long paragraph is ineffective. In a long paragraph, you force your reader to wade through many words and digest large amounts of information. This hinders comprehension. In contrast, shorter paragraphs invite reading and help your readers understand your content. A paragraph in effective technical communication should consist of no more than four to six typed lines.

BEFORE

Our project management approach will provide your city clear deliverables and meet your RFP criteria. Orlin & Sons proposes the following sequence. We will assess the adequacy of your current facilities from a technology perspective, starting on January 13, to be completed by February 1. Then, beginning on February 5, O&S will meet with residents' focus groups to identify community needs, including health, culture, history, and quality-of-life issues. This will allow us to identify necessary improvements to meet your current and ongoing requirements. We will complete this project milestone on February 25. The final step of the process involves setting team goals needed to work with city, county, and state regulatory agencies. We will begin this step on March 8 and conclude by March 15.

The "Before" paragraph is neither visually attractive nor easy to understand. To invite your readers into the document and help them grasp the details, improve the document's design. Make your text open and inviting by using formatting techniques, as shown in the "After" example. Not only is the "After" example easy to access but also it is more concise than the "Before" example. The "Before" example consists of 125 words. The "After" example consists of only 75 words.

AFTER

Our project management approach will provide your city clear deliverables and meet your RFP criteria. Orlin & Sons proposes the following sequence.

- Assess the adequacy of your current facilities from a technology perspective.

  Begin/End Dates: 1/13–2/1
- Meet with residents' focus groups to identify community needs: health, culture, history, and quality-of-life issues.

  Begin/End Dates: 2/5–2/25
- Set team goals needed to work with city, county, and state regulatory agencies.

  Begin/End Dates: 3/8–3/15

Break up wall-to-wall words, margin-to-margin text with smaller paragraphs. Use bullets to make each paragraph stand out more effectively. The boldfaced, indented dates emphasize key milestones.

Achieving Accuracy in Technical Communication

Clarity and conciseness are primary objectives of effective technical communication. However, if your writing is clear and concise but incorrect—grammatically or contextually—then you have misled your audience and destroyed your credibility. To be effective, your technical communication must be *accurate*. Accuracy in technical communication requires that you *proofread* your text. The examples of inaccurate technical communication below are caused by poor proofreading (we have underlined the errors to highlight them).

First City Federal Savings and Loan
1223 Main
Oak Park, Montana

October 12, 2014

Mr. and Mrs. David Harper
2447 N. Purdom
Oak Park, Montana

Dear Mr. and Mrs. <u>Purdom</u>:

Note that the savings and loan incorrectly typed the customer's street rather than the last name.

> National Bank
> 1800 Commerce Street
> Houston, TX
>
> **September 9, 2014**
>
> Adler's Dog and <u>Oat</u> Shop
> 8893 Southside
> Bellaire, TX
>
> Dear <u>Sr:</u>
>
> In response to your request, your account with <u>use</u> has been <u>close</u> out. We <u>are submitted</u> a check in the amount of $468.72 (your existing balance). If you have any questions, please <u>fill</u> free to contact us.

In addition to all the other errors, it should be "Dog and <u>C</u>at Shop." The errors make the writer look incompetent.

Proofreading Tips

1. **Let someone else read it.** We miss errors in our own writing for two reasons. First, we make the error because we don't know any better. Second, we read what we think we wrote, not what we actually wrote. Another reader might help you catch errors.
2. **Let it sit.** Write your correspondence and then read it later. When you read it later in the day, you'll be more objective.
3. **Print it out.** You can proofread more effectively by printing the document and then reading it for errors, line by line.
4. **Use technology.** Computer spell checks are useful for catching most errors. They might miss proper names, homonyms (*their, they're,* or *there*) or incorrectly used words, such as *device* to mean *devise*.
5. **Read it out loud.** Sometimes we can hear errors that we cannot see. For example, we know that *a outline* is incorrect. It just sounds wrong. *An outline* sounds better and is correct.

FAQs: The Importance of Proofreading

Q: Is anyone in the workplace concerned about proofreading? Isn't proofreading just something that only English professors care about?

A: Proofreading is essential in technical writing. Here are two stories to prove our point.

- One company paid $120,000 in taxes for industrial equipment when only $1,200 was owed. The writer had incorrectly placed the comma.
- A Chicago-based company purchased an industrial sander for $54,589.62. Unfortunately, when listing the purchase on their year-end taxes, the company reported the purchase price as $5,458,962. This misplaced decimal point and commas equaled a difference of over 5 million dollars. The issue is now in court, of course costing even more money.

A single mark of punctuation can be important.

Source: Tony Rizzo, *Kansas City Star*

Organizing Technical Communication

If you are clear, concise, and accurate, but no one can follow your train of thought because your text rambles, you still haven't communicated effectively. Successful technical communication also must be well organized. No one method of organization always works. Following are patterns of organization that you can use to help clarify content.

Analysis

Topics can be difficult for audiences to understand. For example, what does your employee benefits package include? What does your homeowner's insurance cover? What are the benefits of your cell phone calling plan? What courses do you need to take to complete your degree program? Analyzing a topic helps you focus on the smaller pieces that make up the whole. The following example uses analysis to provide information about smartphone rates.

◀ EXAMPLE

SmartPhone Rates
Look at what AaBbTelecom offers you as part of your smartphone services:

Plan Prices	**$29.99**	**$49.99**	**$59.99**
Minutes	450	450	Unlimited
Nights and Weekends	5,000 minutes	Unlimited	Unlimited
Mobile to Mobile	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited
Roaming and Long Distance	None	None	None
Optional Features	Text messaging	Text messaging Pre-installed games Ringtones	Text messaging Pre-installed games Ringtones Bluetooth wireless technology

Spatial Organization

To organize a topic spatially, you discuss how the topic looks if viewed from left to right, right to left, inside to outside, or bottom to top. Spatial organization is useful when providing physical descriptions of products or perhaps reporting on work-related accidents or events. For example, an accident report might factor in geographical location—north, east, south, and west. The home burglary claims report shown in Figure 2 uses compass directions for spatial organization.

Chronology

You might use chronological order to organize many types of communication. If you are a recording secretary for a board, agency, sorority, fraternity, or city council, you could use chronology to report meeting minutes. This would entail noting who said what first, who responded next, and so forth. Reverse chronology is used for many resumes. In a reverse chronological resume, you discuss your current job or educational status first. Then, you list your prior employment and educational accomplishments. Chronology is mandatory if you are discussing the steps in a procedure. Using chronological order also can help your audience follow trends. The "Before" taken from a company's Web site advertising their clothing lines, is not organized effectively, while the "After" is reorganized chronologically.

FIGURE 2 Report Using Spatial Organization

Claims Report

Date: January 16, 2014
To: Larry Lerner, Regional Manager
From: Susan McGarvey
Subject: Claims Report on Burglary at 1600 Oaklawn

Introduction

Time/Date When Claim Was Filed: 8:45 p.m./January 15, 2014
Policy Number: 3209-6491
Effective Date of Insurance Coverage: May 15, 2013
Policy Holder(s): Mr. John Stamper and Mrs. Carol Stamper
Mailing Address: 1600 Oaklawn
City/State/Zip: Caligon, MS 34267
Phone: 314-555-2424

Description of the Burglary

Narrative: The residents (Mr. John Stamper and Mrs. Carol Stamper), returning from an evening out, found their house broken into, vandalism, and missing items.

Exit/Entry: Entry appears to have been made by cutting an L-shaped hole in the northwest bedroom (BR) window. The perpetrators then apparently left the BR and traveled due south to the southwest BR, where vandalism occurred. Then, the culprits walked east down the hall to the family room (FAM). When the Stampers returned home, they found their garage (GR) door open, suggesting that the perpetrators exited south from their home.

Missing Items/Estimated Costs:

- Sony 46″ high definition television ($1,400)
- $200 cash that had been laying on the family room desk
- A Nintendo Wii Console ($259)
- A Blu-ray player ($159)

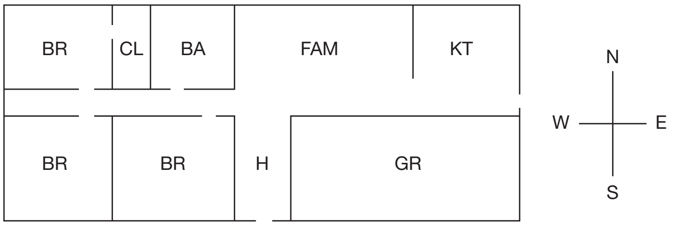
Vandalism/Costs:

- The southwest BR had random spray paint on the ceiling and walls ($200—materials and labor). Please see the attached photographs.
- Window repair ($125—material and labor)

Status of the Claim

This claim has been given to claims adjuster Mary Rivera for disposition. I have informed Mary that turnaround time on claim clearance must be two weeks maximum to meet our company's new mandates for customer satisfaction.

Compass directions can be used in reports to help you organize content and help the reader visualize the event.



BEFORE

We have clothing and other things from the 50s to the 90s. Our 90s' clothing includes everything from early 90s' grunge (raggedy cut-off shorts and flannel plaid shirts) to late 90s' hip-hop clothes and add-ons (oversized jewelry, sports jerseys, hooded sweatshirts, and fancy club duds). Our 50s' goodies cover the "beats" to the "blues brothers" clothing. We have black suits, black skinny ties, as well as black berets and turtlenecks. Our 70s' clothing and items include all kinds of disco clothing including leisure suits and everything from Ban-lon to skin-tight pants, shirts, white belts, and boots. We even have disco dance hall balls and posters for your own disco dance floor. Our 80s' clothing focuses on what we call "business-nerd" including pocket protectors, wing-tip shoes, horn-rimmed glasses (with the nose piece already pre-taped). We also cover "Flash Dance" clothes like leg warmers and off-the-shoulder sweatshirts. Finally, our 60s' hippie stuff is way cool, such as wide, hallucinogenic ties, Nehru jackets, short-short mini-dresses, long-long granny dresses, way-out-there boots, peace symbols, fringe belts, and vests.

The "Before" example discusses clothing options in the 90s, 50s, 70s, 80s, and 60s. Organizing the topic so randomly makes the text hard to follow.

AFTER

We have clothing and other things from the 50s to the 90s.

- **The 50s**—Our goodies cover the "beats" to the "blues brothers" clothing. We have black suits, black skinny ties, as well as black berets and turtlenecks.
- **The 60s**—Our hippie stuff is way cool. We sell wide, hallucinogenic ties, Nehru jackets, short-short mini-dresses, long-long granny dresses, way-out-there boots, peace symbols, fringe belts, and vests.
- **The 70s**—Our merchandise includes all kinds of disco clothing including leisure suits and everything from Ban-lon to skin-tight pants, shirts, white belts, and boots. We even have disco dance hall balls and posters for your own disco dance floor.
- **The 80s**—Check out our "business-nerdwear" including pocket protectors, wing-tip shoes, and horn-rimmed glasses (with the nose piece already pre-taped). We also cover "Flash Dance" clothes like leg warmers and off-the-shoulder sweatshirts.
- **The 90s**—We have clothing from early 90s' grunge (raggedy cut-off shorts and flannel plaid shirts) to late 90s' hip-hop clothes and add-ons (oversized bling bling jewellery, sports jerseys, hooded sweatshirts, and fancy club duds).

The "After" example is improved in at least three ways: The text has been organized chronologically by decade; the bullets make the text easier to access; the boldface headings highlight each era.

Importance

If you organize your text by importance, you tell readers which parts of the discussion are most important and which are less important. Figure 3 is a letter written by the chairperson of the board of a publicly traded utility company. In this letter to the other board members, the chair suggests ways in which the organization can meet stockholder concerns regarding changes that are taking place in the industry.

Comparison/Contrast

One way to make decisions is by comparing and contrasting options. Which car should you buy? In which degree program should you enroll? Which job offer should you take? By comparing and contrasting topics or options, you can help your audience see the pros and cons of the choices available. The example compares and contrasts three social media sites to clarify service options.

Problem/Solution

Another way to organize your content is to focus on problems and solutions. For instance, if you work in customer service, you might have to respond to consumer complaints. To do so, you might focus on the problem your customer has identified and then present your company's solutions. Proposals often use a problem/solution method of organization.

FIGURE 3 Letter Organizing Content by Importance

Arrowhead Utilities
1209 Arrowhead Dr.
Lake Washington, IA 39921

September 12, 2014

Ms. Stacy Helgoe
1982 Evening Star Rd.
Lawrence, KS 78721

Dear Ms. Helgoe:

We have experienced rough times lately in the utilities industry. Prices for oil, gas, water, and coal have gone up by over 50 percent, but statewide regulations have disallowed us from raising rates to meet these costs. This has led the Board to consider laying off workers, reducing our geographic area of coverage, limiting our customers' options for service, merging with a utilities competitor, and providing fewer hours of service ("enforced brownouts").

To ensure continued good relations, we should inform our stakeholders of these decisions. How should we proceed? Here are our options:

The itemized body in this letter uses analysis to provide the reader options. In the last paragraph, the body points are itemized from *least important to most important*. Notice that point #4 is considered "best choice," thus the most important point.

1. Implement the Board suggestions without notifying the stakeholders directly. A follow-up article in the local newspaper's business section could then report the activity.
2. Implement the Board suggestions and provide a personalized letter to each stockholder detailing the causes and our goals.
3. Present information to the stakeholders at an abbreviated annual meeting, asking for questions and answers, and then taking a vote on which options to pursue.
4. Hold four "small town" meetings prior to any vote or implementation. This will allow stakeholders ample opportunity for discussion.

My suggestion is #4, the best choice to ensure large scale stakeholder buy-in and empowerment. Any other approach, I believe, will create distrust on the part of our primary audience. I want to hear from each of you regarding your thoughts. Please call me at 914-555-7676, ext. 234, or e-mail me at cpieburn@au.org by September 21.

Sincerely,

Christy Pieburn

Christy Pieburn
Board Chair

◀ EXAMPLE

Social Media Sites			
Service Options	Facebook	Friendster	Orkut
Multilingual	✓	✓	✓
Profile Editor	✓	✓	
Customize		✓	
Personalize URL		✓	
Photos	✓	✓	✓
Blog Journal		✓	
Safety Tips	✓		✓
Instant Messaging	✓		
Tags	✓	✓	
Mobile	✓		
Music	✓		

Source: "Social Networking Websites Review"

If you are giving an oral presentation as part of a proposal, for example, you might want to mention the customer's problem and then highlight the many ways in which your company will make improvements. The following example is a proposal's executive summary, which uses problem/solution as a means of organization.

◀ EXAMPLE

Executive Summary

Problem

Results from the employee satisfaction survey indicate that the Northwest Group needs to improve current leadership training. Our analysis reveals that managers want to hire staff from outside our Supervision Identification Program's (SIP) pool of "SIP Certified" personnel.

Managers do not currently believe that the SIP pool contains personnel with the skills needed to succeed on the job. They highlighted three areas specifically: Diversity Management, Communication Skills, and Knowledge of ISO Standardization.

Solution

We propose solving this problem as follows:

- Researching supervisory software vendors for improved online and computer-aided individual instruction
- Implementing improved ongoing and post-assessment techniques

Cause and Effect

Another method of organizing your draft is cause and effect. In this instance, you would focus on what caused a specific situation or its results—the effects. This method of organization would be useful in writing reports. Figure 4 is a report organized by cause and effect.

FIGURE 4 Report Organized by Cause and Effect

Date: March 16, 2014
To: Edie Kreisler
From: Carlos De La Torre
Subject: National Savings and Loan Employee Interview Results

Purpose of Report

The introduction explains why this report was being written—to determine the *causes* of departmental problems.

In response to your request on February 23, 2014, ExecuMeasure has interviewed the National Savings and Loan's Trust Department employees. Our goal was to determine what might have been causing the department's poor morale and decreasing sales. The following is a report on our procedure and findings.

Analysis of Employee Morale Problems and Decreasing Sales

Procedures—ExecuMeasure's research consultants met with all of the Trust Department's staff and interviewed them on the basis of their job performance and interpersonal communication skills. We used a scale of 1 to 10, with 1 representing "poor" and 10 representing "outstanding."

The questions regarding job performance are "Does *name of person* a) represent the company/department in a professional manner, b) return customer calls/e-mail, c) close sales deals efficiently, d) meet his/her quotas?

For interpersonal communication, I asked the employees to assess themselves and other staff, using the same 1 to 10 point scale. The questions were "Does *name of person* a) work well with other team members, b) respond in a timely manner to team member calls/e-mail, c) conduct him/herself professionally in departmental meetings, e) act collegially (with honesty and sincerity)?

Findings—As Figure 1 below indicates, all six staff received very good ratings on job performance with scores between 7.6 and 8.7. However, two employees scored significantly lower on interpersonal communication skills than the other workers. Barb scored 4 and Dan 3.6. The norm for the other four employees was 8.3.

Figure 1: Overall Employee Rankings

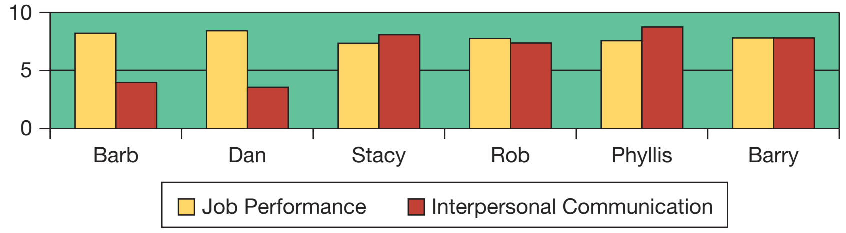
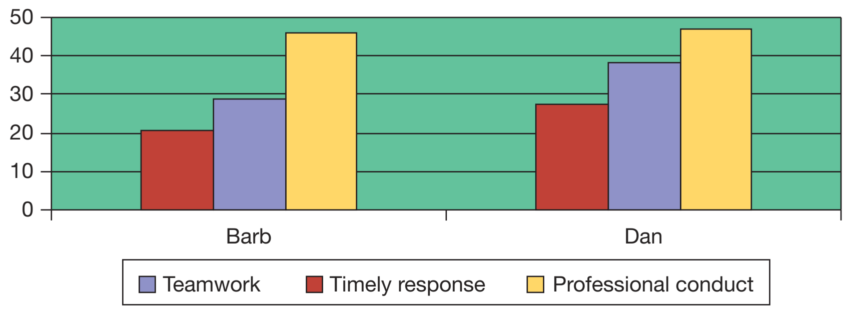


FIGURE 4 Continued

Figure 2 clarifies why Barb and Dan received their low scores, causing low employee morale.

Figure 2: Causes for Low Scores



The figure specifies the *causes* for this office's employee problems.

When we asked the other staff members to explain their scores, they gave us the following causes: "Barb will tell me one thing but then say something else to another employee." "Dan always comes late to meetings and either acts bored or says contrary things." "Barb never returns my e-mail messages or my phone calls." "Dan will mock other coworkers." "Barb thinks that she is the only one who works here." "It's obvious that Dan has no respect for Stacy—or anyone else for that matter."

The employees' comments further clarify the causes behind the company's problems.

Summary of Findings

As is evident from our survey, Stacy, Rob, Phyllis, and Barry trust and respect each other and their manager. However, they do not have the same trust and respect for Barb and Dan, nor do they believe Barb or Dan treat them professionally. The effect of this office dynamic seems to be poor morale and office inefficiency.

The report's conclusion highlights the effect of the office's poor employee relationships.

ExecuMeasure specializes not only in determining the causes for office-environment challenges but also in providing solutions to improve office morale and efficiency. If you would like us to work with you and your colleagues on creative solutions, please contact me at 212-555-9856, ext. 234, or cdltorre@execumeasure.com.

CHECKLIST FOR CLARITY, CONCISENESS, ACCURACY, AND ORGANIZATION IN TECHNICAL COMMUNICATION

Clarity

_____ **1.** Have you answered the reporter's questions (who, what, when, where, why, and how)?

_____ **2.** Have you provided specific information, avoiding vague word usage?

Conciseness

_____ **3.** Have you limited the number of syllables per word?

_____ **4.** Have you limited the number of words per sentence?

_____ **5.** Have you limited the number of lines per paragraph?

Accuracy

_____ **6.** Have you proofread your technical communication?

Organization

_____ **7.** Have you used modes, such as analysis, spatial, importance, chronology, comparison/contrast, and problem/solution to organize your technical communication?

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. If your technical communication is unclear, your reader may misunderstand you and then do a job wrong, damage equipment, injure themselves, or contact you for further explanations.
2. Use details to ensure reader understanding. Whenever possible, specify and quantify your information.
3. Answering *who, what, when, where, why,* and *how* (the reporter's questions) helps you determine which details to include.
4. Avoid words that are not commonly used (legalese, outdated terms, etc.).
5. Avoid passive voice constructions, which tend to lengthen sentences and confuse readers.
6. When possible, use short, simple words (always considering your reader's level of technical knowledge).
7. Limit the length of sentences by deleting expletives, "be" verbs, "shun" words, camouflaged words, and more.
8. Use Microsoft Word to determine your text's readability.
9. Proofreading is essential to effective technical communication.
10. Different organizational patterns—spatial, chronological, importance, comparison/contrast, and problem/solution—can help you explain material.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

The Blue Valley Wastewater Treatment Plant processes water running to and from Frog Creek, a water reservoir that passes through the North Upton community. This water is usually characterized by low alkalinity (generally, <30 mg/l), low hardness (generally, <40 mg/l), and minimal water discoloration. Inorganic fertilizer nutrients (phosphorus and nitrogen) are also generally low, with limited algae growth.

Despite the normal low readings, algae-related tastes and odors occur occasionally. Although threshold odors range from 3 to 6, they have risen to 10 in summer months. Alkalinity rises to <50 mg/l, hardness to <60 mg/l, and discoloration intensifies. Taste and odor problems can be controlled by powdered activated carbon (PAC); nutrient-related algae growth can be controlled by filtrated ammonia. Both options are costly.

The odors and tastes are disturbing North Upton residents. The odors are especially bothersome to outdoor enthusiasts who use the trails bordering Frog Creek for biking and hiking. Residents also worry about the impact of increased alkalinity on fish and turtles, many of which are dying, further creating an odor nuisance. Frog Creek is treasured for its wildlife and recreational opportunities.

The Blue Valley Wastewater Treatment Plant is under no legal obligation to solve these problems. The alkalinity, hardness, color, and nutrient readings are all within regulated legal ranges. However, Blue Valley Wastewater Treatment Plant values the community residents and wants to take restorative steps to improve the environment.

Assignments

In response to this dilemma, divide into small groups to write one of the following documents. These documents could be organized by the problem/solution or comparison/contrast methods.

- You are Blue Valley Wastewater Treatment Plant's director of public relations. Write a letter to the City Commission stating your plant's point of view.
- You are North Upton community's resident representative. Write a letter to the City Council stating your community's point of view.
- You are an employee for the Blue Valley Wastewater Treatment Plant. Write an e-mail to the plant director suggesting ways in which the plant could solve this environmental and community relations problem.
- You are the Blue Valley Wastewater Treatment Plant's director. Write an e-mail to the engineering supervisor (your subordinate) stating how to solve this environmental and community relations problem.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

Achieving Clarity

The following sentences are unclear. They will be interpreted differently by different readers. Revise these sentences by replacing the vague words with more specific information.

1. We need this information as soon as possible.
2. The machinery will replace a flawed piece of equipment in our department.
3. Failure to purchase this will have a negative impact.
4. Weather problems in the area resulted in damage to the computer systems.
5. The most recent occurrences were caused by insufficient personnel.

Using the Active Voice Versus the Passive Voice

Passive voice often leads to vague, wordy sentences. Revise the following sentences by writing them in the active voice.

1. Implementation of this procedure is to be carried out by the Accounting Department.
2. Benefits derived by attending the conference were twofold.
3. The information was demonstrated and explained in great detail by the training supervisor.
4. Discussions were held with representatives from Allied, who supplied analytical equipment for automatic upgrades.
5. Also attended was the symposium on polymerization.

Limiting Paragraph Length to Achieve Conciseness

You can achieve clarity and conciseness if you limit the length of your paragraphs. An excessively long paragraph (beyond six typed lines) requires too much work for your reader.

Revise the following paragraph to make it more reader-friendly.

> As you know, we use electronics to process freight and documentation. We are in the process of having terminals placed in the export departments of some of our major customers around the country so they may keep track of all their shipments within our system. I would like to propose a similar tracking mechanism for your company. We could handle all of your export traffic from your locations around the country and monitor these exports with a terminal located in your home office. This could have many advantages for you. You could generate an export invoice in your export department, which could be transmitted via the computer to our office. You could trace your shipments more readily. This would allow you to determine rating fees more accurately. Finally, your accounting department would benefit. All in all, your export operations would achieve greater efficiency.

Reducing Word Length to Achieve Conciseness

Multisyllabic words can create long sentences. To limit sentence length, limit word length. Find shorter words to replace the following words:

1. advise
2. anticipate
3. ascertain
4. cooperate
5. determine
6. endeavor
7. inconvenience
8. indicate
9. initially
10. presently

Reducing Sentence Length to Achieve Conciseness

Each of the following sentences is too long. Revise them using the techniques suggested in this chapter:

1. In regard to the progress reports, they should be absolutely complete by the fifteenth of each month.
2. I wonder if you would be so kind as to answer a few questions about your proposal.
3. I am in receipt of your e-mail requesting an increase in pay and am of the opinion that it is not merited at this time due to the fact that you have worked here for only one month.
4. On two different occasions, I have made an investigation of your residence, and I believe that your sump pump might result in damage to your neighbor's adjacent property. I have come to the conclusion that you must take action to rectify this potential dilemma, or your neighbor might seek to sue you in a court of law.
5. If there are any questions that you might have, please feel free to contact me by phone.

Using Organization

1. **Spatial:**
   a. Using spatial organization, write a paragraph describing your classroom, your office, your work environment, your dorm room, your apartment, or any room in your house.
   b. Using spatial organization, write an advertisement describing the interior of a car, the exterior of a mechanism or tool, a piece of clothing, or an iPod.
2. **Chronological:** Organizing your text chronologically, write a report documenting your drive to school or work, your activities accomplished in class or at work, your discoveries at a conference or on vacation, or your activities at a sporting event.
3. **Importance:** A fashion merchandising retailer asked her buyers to purchase a new line of clothing. In her e-mail, she provided them the following list to help them accomplish their task. Reorganize the list by importance, and justify your decisions.

Date: January 15, 2014
To: Buyers
From: Sharon Baker
Subject: Clothing Purchases

It is time again for our spring purchases. This year, let's consider a new line of clothing. When you go to the clothing market, focus on the following:

- Colors
- Materials
- Our customers' buying habits
- Price versus markup potential
- Quantity discounts
- Wholesaler delivery schedules

Good luck. Your purchases at the market are what make our annual sales successful.

4. **Comparison/contrast:** Visit two auto dealerships, two clothing stores, two restaurants, two online dating sites, two prospective employers, two colleges, and so on. Based on your discoveries, write a report using comparison/contrast to make a value judgment. Which of the two cars would you buy, which of the two restaurants would you frequent, and which of the two online dating sites would you use?
5. **Problem/solution:** You work for Acme Electronics as an electrical engineer. Dejuan Simpson, your boss, informs you that your department's electronic scales are measuring tolerances inaccurately. You are asked to study the problem and determine solutions. In your study, you find that one scale (ID #1893) is measuring within 90 percent of tolerance; another scale (ID #1887) is measuring within 75 percent of tolerance; a third scale (ID #1890) is measuring within 60 percent of tolerance; a final scale (ID #1885) is measuring within 80 percent of tolerance. Standards suggest that 80 percent is acceptable. To solve this problem, the company could purchase new scales ($2,000 per scale); reduce the vibration on the scales by mounting them to the floor ($1,500 per scale); or reduce the vibration around the scales by enclosing the scales in Plexiglas boxes ($1,000 per scale).

Write an e-mail to your boss detailing your findings (the problems) and suggesting the solutions.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECE

Correcting Errors for Accuracy

The following memo contains grammatical errors. The errors include problems with spelling and punctuation, as well as agreement, capitalization, and number usage. Correct the errors to ensure professionalism.

Date: February 12, 2014
To: Martha Collins
From: Richard Davis
Subject: 2014 Digital Carriers

Attached is the supplemental 2014 Digital Carriers reports that is required to support this years growth patterns. As we have discussed in previous phone conversations the January numbers show a decrease in traffic but forecasts still suggest increased traffic therefore we are issuing plans for this contingency.

If the January forecasts prove to be accurate the carriers being placed in the network via these plans will support our future growth accept for areas where growth cannot be predicted. Some areas for example are to densely populated for forecasting. Because the company did not hire enough survey personal to do a thorough job.

Following is an update of our suggested revisions;

Digital Carriers Needed	Capitol Costs
52,304	$3,590,625

If your going to hire anyone to provide follow–up forecasts, they should have sufficient lead time. The survey teams, if you want a successful forecast, needs at least three months. 25 team members should be sufficient. If we can provide farther information please let us know.

WEB WORKSHOP

Many governmental organizations and technical professions ask employees to follow the standards for "plain language," which focus on clarity and conciseness. To learn more about plain language, visit http://www.plainlanguage.gov. This site provides a definition of plain language, governmental mandates, and before and after comparisons. Click any of the links in this site and report your findings either orally or in an e-mail message.

PHOTO CREDITS

REFERENCES

Gnome Dev Center. "GNOME Documentation Style Guide." 2005–2011. Web. 20 Feb. 2012.

Labbe, J.R. "A Post-Literate World Will Leave Much to be Desired." *The Kansas City Star*. Aug. 29 2007: B9. Print.

Moore, Linda E. "Serving the Electronic Reader." *Intercom* Apr. 2003: 17. Print.

Online-Utility.org. 2012. Web. 20 Feb. 2012.

Perlin, Neil. "Technical Communication: The Next Wave." *Intercom* Jan. 2001: 4–8. Print.

Readability Formulas. 2012. Web. 20 Feb. 2012.

Rizzo, Tony. "Dropped Decimal Point Becomes a Costly Point of Contention." *The Kansas City Star.* 19 Feb. 2005: A1, A6. Print.

Self, Tony. "What If Readers Can't Read?" *Intercom* Feb. 2009: 10–14. Print.

"Social Networking Websites Review." *Top Ten Reviews*. 20 Jan. 2011. Web. 17 Feb. 2011.

U.S. Census Bureau. 2005. Web. Aug. 31 2007.

Audience Recognition

From Chapter 4 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

Audience Recognition

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, Home and Business Mortgage works to meet the company's commitment to diversity through its technical communication.

Home and Business Mortgage (HBM), a Phoenix, Arizona, company, prides itself on being a good neighbor and an asset to the community. Its goal is to ensure that the company meets all governmental personnel regulations, including those required by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC), the Family Medical Leave Act (FMLA), and the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). HBM is committed to achieving diversity in its workplace.

In fact, the company is so focused on its appreciation of and commitment to diversity that HBM's technical communicators have created the following:

- Bilingual brochures, newsletters, and annual reports
- Brochures geared toward different stakeholders—senior citizens (age 55 and up); African-American, Hispanic, and Native American homebuyers; women; and young singles (18–25)
- A Web site with photographs depicting Phoenix's diverse population

HBM's Web site is unique in another important way. It has sought to abide by W3C WAI mandates. The World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) hosts the Web Accessibility

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- **Recognize that high-tech readers understand acronyms, abbreviations, and jargon**
- **Understand that low-tech readers need glossaries or parenthetical definitions of technical terms**
- **Recognize that lay readers usually will not understand technical terms and often need extended definitions**
- **Consider issues of diversity, such as gender, race, religion, age, and sexual orientation**
- **Communicate with multiple audiences who have different levels of technical knowledge by considering the amount of technical content and terms you should include in your document**
- **Know that the definition of a technical term usually includes its type and distinguishing characteristics but can also include examples, descriptions, and procedures**
- **Communicate with multicultural audiences by defining terms, avoiding jargon and idioms, considering the context of the words you use, avoiding cultural biases, avoiding slash marks, being careful with humor, and allowing space for translation**
- **Avoid sexist language**
- **Get your audience involved in the text, by using pronouns, the reader's name, and revealing audience benefit**
- **Evaluate your audience using the audience checklist**

Initiative (WAI). This initiative states that "the power of the Web is its universality. Access by everyone regardless of disability is an essential aspect." HBM's webmasters, in agreement with the WAI, realize that graphic-laden Web sites, as well as those with audio components, are not accessible to people with disabilities, such as hearing and visual impairment.

To meet this WAI platform, HBM's webmasters have achieved the following at the company's Web site:

- Provided links to access information in different languages.
- Avoided online audio.
- Limited online video and used the Alt attribute to describe each visual's function.
- Increased the font of Web text to 20-point versus the standard 12- to 14-point font.
- Avoided all designer fonts, like cursive, which are hard to read online.
- Avoided red and green for color emphasis because these colors are hard to read for audiences with visual impairments.
- Avoided frames that not only fail to load on all computers but also create readability challenges online.

HBM is honored to serve all of its customers, regardless of race, age, religion, or physical challenges. One way to achieve the company's commitment to diversity is through its technical communication.

When you write a memo, e-mail message, blog entry, Web site, instant message, tweet, letter, or report, someone reads it. That individual or group of readers is your audience. To compose effective technical communication, you should achieve audience recognition and audience involvement.

Audience Recognition

When you write, give an oral presentation, convene a meeting, communicate with customers in a salesroom, or make a speech at a conference, consider the following questions:

- Who is your audience?
- What does this reader or listener know?
- What does this reader or listener not know?
- What must you write or say to ensure that your audience understands your point?
- How do you communicate to more than one person (multiple audiences)?
- What is this person's position in relation to your job title?
- What diversity issues (gender, sexual orientation, cultural, multicultural) must you consider?

If you do not know the answers to these questions, your communication might contain jargon or acronyms the reader will not understand. The tone of the e-mail may be inappropriate for management (too dictatorial) or for your subordinates (too relaxed). Your communication might not consider your audience's unique culture and language. To communicate successfully, you must recognize your audience's level of understanding. You also should factor in your audience's unique personality and traits, which could impact how successfully you communicate.

See Table 1 for a summary of audience variables to consider when communicating.

Knowledge of Subject Matter

What does your audience know about the subject matter? Does the person work closely with you on the project? That would make the audience a high-tech peer. Does the audience

TABLE 1 Audience Variables

Knowledge of Subject Matter • High tech • Low tech • Lay • Multiple
Personality Traits • Audience's perceived personality • Audience's attitude or position regarding the topic • Audience's preference regarding style • Audience's response to the topic
Issues of Diversity • Age • Gender • Race and/or religion • Sexual orientation • Language and/or culture of origin—multicultural or cross-cultural

have general knowledge of the subject matter but a different area of expertise? That would make the audience a low-tech peer. Is the audience totally uninvolved in the subject matter? That would make the person a lay audience. Finally, could your audience be a combination of these types? Then, you would be communicating with an audience with multiple levels of expertise.

High-Tech Audience. High-tech readers work in your field of expertise. They might work directly with you in your department, or they might work in a similar capacity for another company. Wherever they work, they are your colleagues because they share your educational background, work experience, or level of understanding.

If you are a computer programmer, for example, another computer programmer who is working on the same system is your high-tech peer. If you are an environmental engineer working with hazardous wastes, other environmental engineers focusing on the same concerns are your high-tech peers.

Once you recognize that your reader is high tech, what does this tell you? High-tech readers have the following characteristics:

- They are experts in the field you are writing about. If you write an e-mail message to a department colleague about a project you two are working on, your associate is a high-tech peer. If you write a letter to a vendor requesting specifications for a system she markets, that reader is a high-tech expert. If you write a proposal geared toward your colleagues, they are high tech.
- Because their work experience or education is comparable to yours, high-tech readers share your level of understanding. Therefore, they will understand high-tech jargon, acronyms, and abbreviations. You do not have to explain to an electronic technician, for example, what MHz means. Defining megahertz for this high-tech reader would be unnecessary.
- High-tech readers require minimal detail regarding standard procedures or scientific, mathematical, or technical theories. Two biomedical technologists, when discussing a metabolic condition in which the body cannot buffer changes in pH, do not need to define pH or acidosis (the terms being discussed).
- High-tech readers need little background information regarding a project's history or objectives unless the specific subject matter of the correspondence is new to them. If, for example, you are writing a status report to your supervisor, who has been involved in a project since its inception, then you will not need to flesh out the history of the project. On the other hand, if a new supervisor is hired or if you are updating a colleague new to your department, even though these readers are high tech, you will need to provide background data.

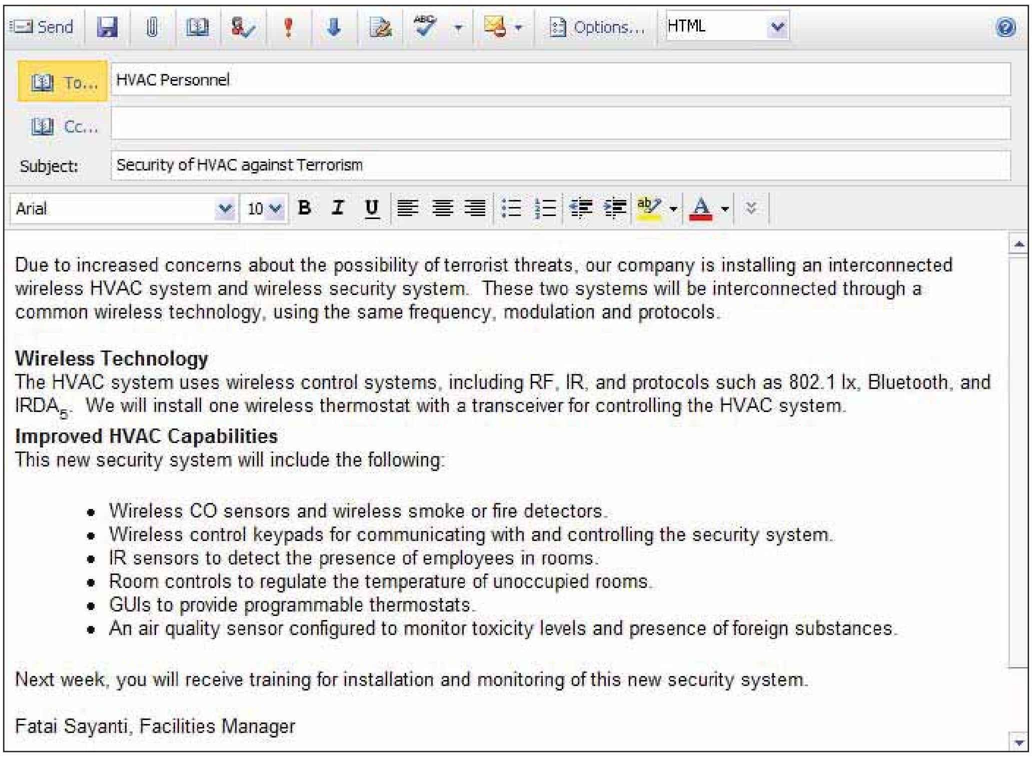
Figure 1 is an e-mail message to high-tech HVAC employees, informing them of the capabilities of a new HVAC security system. In contrast, Figure 2 discusses the same topic for a low-tech audience.

Low-Tech Audience. Writing in the workplace, however, rarely allows you to communicate only with high-tech readers. You also will write to low-tech readers. Low-tech readers include your coworkers in other departments. Low-tech readers also might include your bosses, subordinates, or colleagues who work for other companies. For instance, if you are a biomedical equipment technician, the accountant or personnel director or graphic artists in your company are low-tech peers. These individuals have worked around your company's equipment and, therefore, are familiar with your technology. However, they do not understand the intricacies of this technology.

Although your colleagues at other companies might have your level of education or work experience, they could be low tech if they are not familiar with your company's

FIGURE 1 E-mail Message to a High-tech Audience

This e-mail, written to high-tech readers, uses terminology without explanation or definition. Its tone is businesslike and directive.


To... HVAC Personnel

Cc...

Subject: Security of HVAC against Terrorism

Due to increased concerns about the possibility of terrorist threats, our company is installing an interconnected wireless HVAC system and wireless security system. These two systems will be interconnected through a common wireless technology, using the same frequency, modulation and protocols.

Wireless Technology
The HVAC system uses wireless control systems, including RF, IR, and protocols such as 802.1 lx, Bluetooth, and $IRDA_5$. We will install one wireless thermostat with a transceiver for controlling the HVAC system.

Improved HVAC Capabilities
This new security system will include the following:

- Wireless CO sensors and wireless smoke or fire detectors.
- Wireless control keypads for communicating with and controlling the security system.
- IR sensors to detect the presence of employees in rooms.
- Room controls to regulate the temperature of unoccupied rooms.
- GUIs to provide programmable thermostats.
- An air quality sensor configured to monitor toxicity levels and presence of foreign substances.

Next week, you will receive training for installation and monitoring of this new security system.

Fatai Sayanti, Facilities Manager

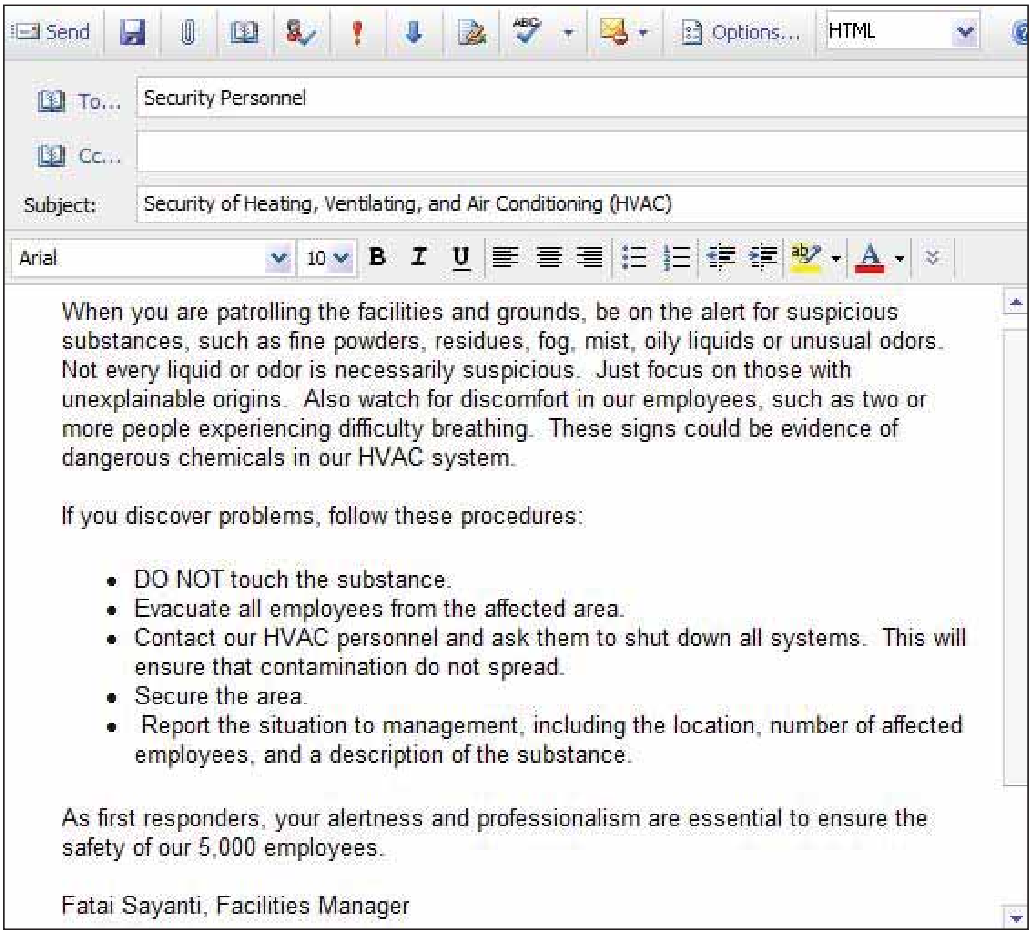
procedures or in-house jargon, acronyms, and abbreviations. When you write e-mail, letters, and reports to low-tech readers, remember that they share the following characteristics:

- Low-tech readers are familiar with the technology you are writing about, but their job responsibilities are peripheral to the subject matter. They either work in another department, manage you, work under your supervision, or work outside your company.
- Because low-tech readers are familiar with your subject matter, they understand some abbreviations, jargon, and technical concepts. To ensure that readers understand your content, therefore, define your terms. An abbreviation like BCA can't stand alone. Define it parenthetically: BCA (Burst Cutting Area).
- Abbreviations, acronyms, and technical jargon like burst cutting area sometimes need follow-up explanations. You should write, "BCA (Burst Cutting Area) is a circular section located near the center of a DVD disc where manufacturing information can be inscribed in a barcode."
- In addition, technical concepts must be defined for low-tech readers. For example, whereas high-tech readers understand the function of pressure transducers, a low-tech reader needs further information, such as "Pressure transducers: Solid-state components sense proximal pressure in the patient tubing circuit. The transducers convert this pressure value into a proportional voltage for the control system."
- Since the low-tech reader is not someone to whom you write often regarding your field of expertise, provide more background information. When you submit a status report to upper-level management, for example, don't just begin with work accomplished. Explain why you are working on the project (objectives, history), who is involved (other personnel), when the project began and its scheduled end date, and how you are accomplishing your goals. Low-tech readers understand the basic concepts of your work, but they have not been involved in it daily. Fill them in on past history.

Figure 2 is an e-mail to low-tech security personnel, informing them of procedures to follow if they discover suspicious substances on site.

Lay Audience. Customers and clients who neither work for your company nor have any knowledge about your field of expertise are the lay audience. If you work in network

FIGURE 2 E-mail Message to a Low-tech Audience



Send Options... HTML

To... Security Personnel

Cc...

Subject: Security of Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC)

Arial 10

When you are patrolling the facilities and grounds, be on the alert for suspicious substances, such as fine powders, residues, fog, mist, oily liquids or unusual odors. Not every liquid or odor is necessarily suspicious. Just focus on those with unexplainable origins. Also watch for discomfort in our employees, such as two or more people experiencing difficulty breathing. These signs could be evidence of dangerous chemicals in our HVAC system.

If you discover problems, follow these procedures:

- DO NOT touch the substance.
- Evacuate all employees from the affected area.
- Contact our HVAC personnel and ask them to shut down all systems. This will ensure that contamination do not spread.
- Secure the area.
- Report the situation to management, including the location, number of affected employees, and a description of the substance.

As first responders, your alertness and professionalism are essential to ensure the safety of our 5,000 employees.

Fatai Sayanti, Facilities Manager

This e-mail to low-tech readers deals with a very important subject (security in the face of potential terrorism). The writer presents only what the audience needs to know in order to complete their job responsibilities. The writer conveys this content simply, using short sentences, a list, and easy-to-understand words. HVAC is defined.

communications for a cable company, for example, and you write an e-mail to a client regarding a problem with the high-speed Internet connection, your audience is a lay reader. If your field of expertise is biomedical equipment and you write a user manual for the patient, you are writing to a lay audience. If you are an automotive technician writing a service report for a customer, that customer is a lay reader.

Although you understand your technology, your reader, who uses the high-speed Internet service or the medical equipment or the car, is not an expert in the field. These readers are using your equipment or require your services, but the technology you are writing about is not within their daily realm of experience.

This makes writing for a lay audience difficult. To write successfully to a lay audience, remember that these readers share the following characteristics:

- Lay readers are unfamiliar with your subject matter and terminology. Therefore, you should write simply. That's not to say that you should insult your lay reader with a remedial discussion or with a patronizing tone. You must, however, explain your topic clearly through precise word usage, depth of detail, and simple graphics.

FIGURE 3 Letter from a High-Tech Writer to a Lay Audience

This letter from a high-tech writer to a lay audience defines all terms and avoids abbreviations.

Cottrell & Schneider Engineering
5117 East 31st Street
Kansas City, MO 64128

May 6, 2014

Dr. Jamie Wilson
Superintendent, Parkton Independent School District
205 Main
Parkton, MO 65110

Dear Dr. Wilson:

Thank you for inviting Cottrell & Schneider Engineering and GreenLive to work with you on plans for new construction and retrofitting of Parkton schools. Dale Askew, from GreenLive, and I have completed our review of the Parkton Independent School District. To ensure that your facilities meet green construction principles, we are proposing the following energy-saving building changes:

1. **Net-zero Energy.** Currently, your facilities draw energy from the city's grid. The goal of net-zero energy is to ensure that buildings generate, on their own sites, at least as much energy as they use. By installing only four wind turbines on the southwest corner of your high school (currently used for overflow parking), your entire district can produce as much power from renewable sources as from the city's grid.
2. **Retrofitting.** Our studies show that your buildings lose approximately 36 percent heat and cooling from air seepage. By retrofitting the current sites (no new construction needed), you can achieve what's known in the industry as "a tight envelope." This means that by sealing floor-to-wall joints, insulating roofs, and wrapping pipes—all easy and cost-effective fixes—Parkton can earn the coveted Platinum certification. Only businesses that are at least 80 percent energy efficient earn this award.
3. **Solar Panel Installation.** GreenLive provided two great options for solar power. Cyrstalline cell modules, common to flat panel installation, are somewhat costly but very efficient. Thin-film modules are less expensive but also less efficient. Still, they are a good option for building retrofits like you're considering. We'll be happy to provide you more details on each option.
4. **Biophilic design.** This green technology incorporates nature in building construction. We can create vegetated roofs (partially covering your roof with grass, reeds, and bushes); rammed earth walls (building walls out of sustainable materials like earth, chalk, lime, and gravel); operable windows that open to let in light and air; skylights; and ventilation systems that let fresh air into your buildings. Not only will these techniques improve energy consumption, but also biophilic designs have proven to positively impact morale.

The writer recognizes his lay audience by defining the high-tech terms "retrofitting" and "a tight envelope." To motivate the audience, the writer uses positive words like "easy" and "cost-effective."

Once you have reviewed the attached construction and retrofit plans, Dr. Wilson, please call or e-mail me (682-0011 or mwalker@cottrell&schneider.com). I look forward to answering your questions and working with you on ways to make Parkton schools green.

Sincerely,

Mike Walker

Mike Walker, CEO Cottrell & Schneider Engineering

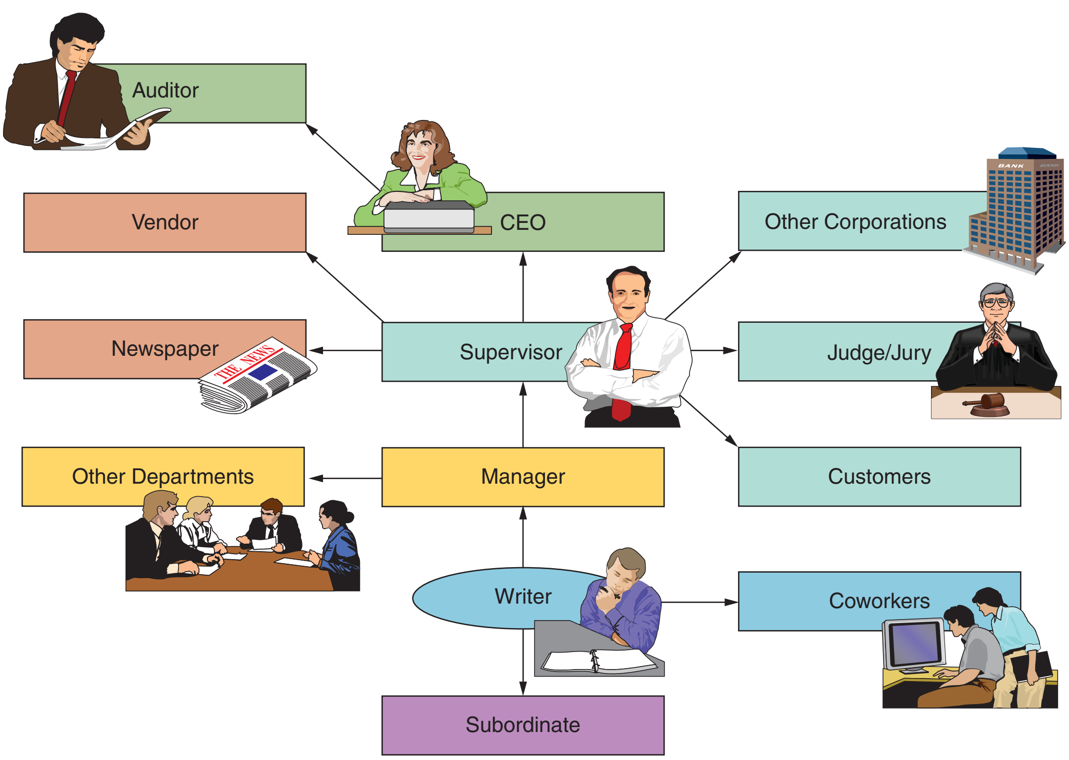
- Because your lay readers do not understand your terminology or work environment, they won't understand your in-house jargon, abbreviations, or acronyms. Avoid high-tech terms or define them thoroughly.
- Lay readers will need background information. If you leap into a discussion about a procedure without explaining to your lay readers why they should perform each step, they will not understand the causes or rationale. High-tech and possibly even low-tech readers might not need such explanations, but the lay reader needs clarity.

For example, look at the letter about green construction principles from a high-tech engineer to a lay audience, a school superintendent (Figure 3).

Composing effective technical communication requires that you recognize the differences among high-tech, low-tech, and lay audiences. If you incorrectly assume that all readers are experts in your field, you will create problems for yourself as well as for your readers. If you write using high-tech terms to low-tech or lay audiences, your readers will be confused and anxious. You will waste time on the phone or answering e-mail messages clarifying the points that you did not make clear in the technical document.

Multiple Audiences. Correspondence is not always sent to just one type of audience. Your correspondence may have an audience with multiple levels of expertise. Sometimes you write to high-tech, low-tech, and lay audiences simultaneously. For example, when writing a report, most people assume that their supervisor will be the only reader. This might not be the case, however. The supervisor could send a copy of your report to the manager, who could then submit the same report to the executive officer. Similarly, your supervisor might send the report to your colleagues or to your subordinates. Your report might be sent out to other lateral departments. Figure 4 shows the possibilities.

FIGURE 4 Examples of Possible Audiences



Writing correspondence for multiple readers with different levels of understanding and reasons for reading creates a challenge. When you add the necessity of using a tone that will be appropriate for all of these varied readers, the writing challenge becomes even greater.

How do you meet such a challenge? The first key to success is recognizing that multiple audiences exist and that they share the following characteristics.

- Your intended audience will not necessarily be your only readers. Others might receive copies of your correspondence.
- Some of the multiple readers will be unfamiliar with the subject matter. Proper background data (objectives, overviews) will clarify the history of the report for these readers. In a letter, report, e-mail message, Web site, or blog, this background information cannot be too elaborate. Often, all you do is provide a reference line, subject line, or link suggesting where the readers can find out more about the subject matter if they wish—"Reference: Operations Procedure 321 dated 9/21/14." In longer reports, background data will appear in the summary or abstract, as well as in the report's introduction.
- Multiple readers have diverse understandings of your technology. This requires that you define jargon, abbreviations, and acronyms.
- You might be writing correspondence in a collaborative team. If you're the technical writer, you could work with SMEs (subject matter experts). These could include software developers, customer service personnel, project managers, business analysts, and more. To communicate effectively within your team, everyone needs to understand each other's terminology.

Writing for Future Audiences

Time creates another challenge regarding audience recognition. Technical communication usually is archived for future reference. You might write an e-mail, report, proposal, or instruction using terms or focusing on content that your primary audience understands . . . at the moment. However, months (or years) later when the correspondence is retrieved from the files, will your readers still be familiar with the topic? Will you still have the same readers? Many people, some of whom didn't even work for your company at the time of the original writing, will read your correspondence. These future readers need clarity, background information, and terms defined. Future readers could include

- judges and juries who depend on past reports to decide cases
- new employees at a company who retrieve filed documents to learn how to complete current tasks
- accountants and auditors who look at past records to find what work was accomplished at a prior date
- new managers or supervisors who need to familiarize themselves with workplace procedures
- technicians who need to implement current lab procedures based on past findings

Defining Terms for Audiences

Based on whether or not the current or future audience is high tech, low tech, lay, or multiple, you have to decide when to use acronyms, abbreviations, and technical terminology and how to use them effectively. One simple rule for low-tech, lay, and multiple audiences is to define your terms. You can do so as follows:

- parenthetically
- in a sentence

- in an extended paragraph
- in a glossary
- as online help with a pop-up definition

Defining Terms Parenthetically

Rather than just writing CIA, write CIA (Cash in Advance) or Cash in Advance (CIA). Such parenthetical definitions, which are only used once per correspondence, don't take a lot of time and won't offend your readers. Instead, the result will be clarity.

Defining Your Terms in a Sentence

If you provide a sentence definition, include the following:

Term + Type + Distinguishing characteristics.

For example, using a sentence to define *HTTP*, you would write the following:

Term

Type

HTTP (hypertext transfer protocol) is a **set of rules** for the secure transfer of files, including **text, graphics, videos, and sound on the Internet.**

Distinguishing characteristics

◀ EXAMPLE

Using Extended Definitions of One or More Paragraphs

When you need to provide an extended definition of a paragraph or more, in addition to providing the term, type, and distinguishing characteristics, also consider including examples, procedures, and descriptions. Look at the following paragraph definition of a video card.

A video card (graphics accelerator card, display adapter, or graphics card) is a type of printed circuit board that can be inserted into an expansion slot of a computer's motherboard. The video card creates and outputs images to a display. Functions of a video card can include video capture, MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 decoding, TV output, or the ability to connect multiple monitors.

◀ EXAMPLE

Using a Glossary

If you have not defined your terms parenthetically, in a sentence, or in a paragraph, you should use a glossary. A glossary is an alphabetized list of terms placed after your conclusion/recommendation.

GLOSSARY

ADC	analog to digital converter
Analog	a variable signal continuous in both time and amplitude
DAC	digital to analog converter
LAN	local area network
PSTN	public switched telephone network—analog phone systems
ROI	return on investment
Voice signal	allows users to access phone options with a single voice command
VoIP	voice over Internet protocol
WAN	wide area network

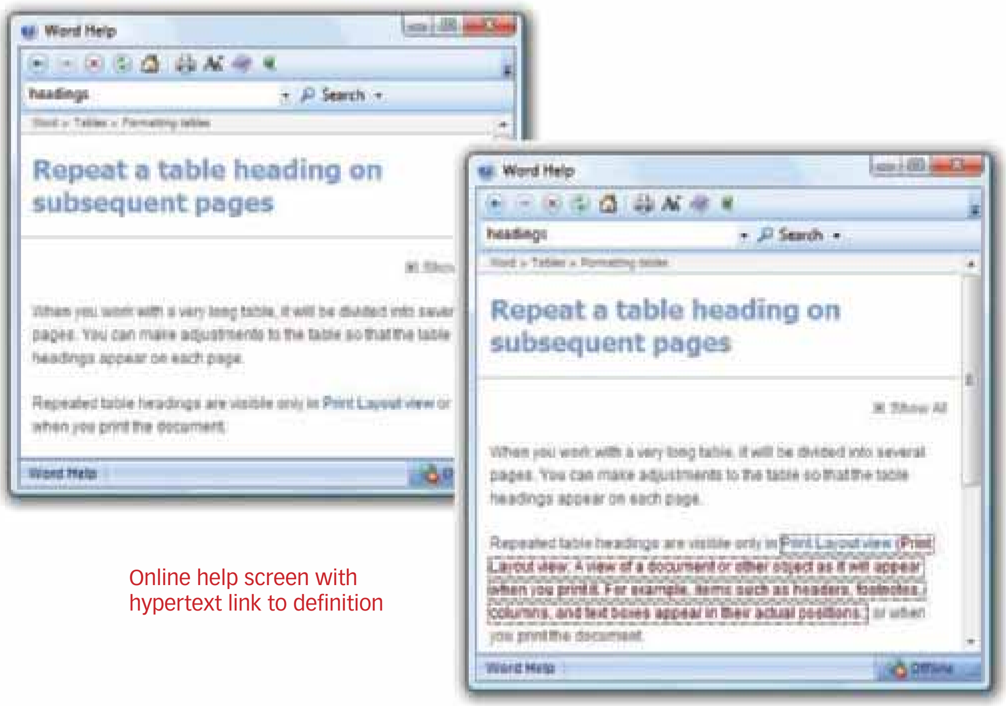
◀ EXAMPLE

Providing Pop-ups and Links with Definitions

Use pop-up screens for online help. (See Figure 5.)

FIGURE 5 Online Help Screen with Pop-up Definition

Pop-up definition of "Print Layout view"



Online help screen with hypertext link to definition

Audience Personality Traits

In addition to considering an audience's level of knowledge, a technical communicator should determine aspects of an audience's personality. By considering personality traits, the writer then can write appropriately using the proper tone, visual aids, and writing style. This will help the writer meet the audience's needs. Of equal importance, by recognizing the audience's personality traits, the writer can more effectively get the desired response from the reader.

Let us start with a caveat. You obviously cannot always know your audience's personality traits. This would be a difficult goal to achieve when working with customers you've never met, a dispersed team of coworkers located in different cities, members of an audience at a large conference, or the widely diverse audience that reads your Web site or blog postings. However, many times you will write or speak to an audience that you know. This could include customers you have served in the past, vendors you often work with, as well as coworkers in your office and your immediate supervisors. To communicate successfully with an audience whom you know, factor in your knowledge of their personalities, attitudes, and preferences.

For example, we work with a company that offers its employees a pay incentive. The company will pay employees to identify a problem in the workplace and then suggest solutions to this problem. The goal is to improve the company's services, efficiency, budget, and profits. To earn this monetary award, the employees must write a report analyzing the perceived problem and proposing the solutions, create PowerPoint slides regarding the topic, and make a brief oral presentation to their supervisors.

We have found from interviews that employees who successfully earn the financial incentive assess their audience's personality. An audience's personality traits and possible responses to a topic of discussion can include issues such as those shown in Table 2. Reviewing these considerations will help you determine the type of content you want to provide, how persuasive you need to be, and what tone and style your technical communication must achieve.

TABLE 2 Audience Personality Traits and Responses

Audience's perceived personality
• Slow to act? • Eager? • Receptive? • Questioning? • Organized? • Disorganized? • Oppositional?
Audience's attitude or position regarding the topic
• Negative? • Positive? • Noncommittal? • Informed? • Uninformed?
Audience's preference regarding style
• Will he, she, or they accept contractions? • Should you use first names, last names, or position titles? • Is short and to-the-point better? • Is long and detailed better?
Desired audience response
• Do you want the audience to consider this idea and pass on a recommendation? • Do you want the audience to act now? • Do you want the audience to confirm what has been suggested? • Do you want the audience to reject some options but act on others? • Do you want the audience to file this information for future reference?

Biased Language—Issues of Diversity

Your readers or listeners will more than likely be diverse. Diversity includes "gender, race/ethnicity, religion, age, sexual orientation, class, physical and mental characteristics, language, family issues, [and] departmental diversity" (Grimes and Richard 8).

Think of it this way: You work for a city government, and your audience is the citizenry. Who comprises your city's populace? Or you work in a hospital. Who will visit your facility? Or you work in a retail establishment. Who will shop there? They are people of many different interests, levels of knowledge, and backgrounds—and they are all valuable to your business.

Why should you be concerned about a diverse audience?

1. **Diversity is protected by the law.** Prejudicial behavior and discrimination on the job will not be tolerated. "Non-compliance with Equal Opportunity or Affirmative Action legislation can result in fines and/or loss of contracts" (McInnes).
2. **Respecting diversity is the right thing to do.** People should be treated equally, regardless of their age, gender, sexual orientation, culture, or religion.
3. **Diversity is good for business.** In a workplace where employees feel valued and respected, they feel more committed to the company ("What Is the 'Business Case' for Diversity?"). Clients and customers prefer shopping in an environment devoid of prejudice. In addition, people from diverse backgrounds spend money and buy products. "To ensure that . . . products and services are designed to appeal to this diverse customer base, 'smart' companies are hiring people from those walks of life—for their specialized insights and knowledge" (McInnes).
4. **A diverse workforce keeps companies competitive.** Talent does not come in one color, nationality, or belief system. Instead, talent is "represented by people from a vast array of backgrounds and life experiences. Competitive companies cannot

DOT.COM UPDATES

Go to http://www.shrm.org/diversity/ (the Society for Human Resource Management) for additional information about diversity in the workplace, including definitions, links, and articles about diversity in the news.

allow discriminatory preferences and practices to impede them from attracting the best available talent" (McInnes).

Diversity management is such an important concern that American businesses spend millions of dollars training employees to understand multiculturalism and diversity (Jordan 1). This is further verified in a Society for Human Resource Management survey of diversity initiatives, which reported that "84 percent of human resource professionals at Fortune 500 companies say their top-level executives think diversity management is important" ("What Is the 'Business Case' for Diversity?").

Multiculturalism

Your company might market its products or services worldwide. International business requires multicultural communication, the sharing of written and oral information between businesspeople from different countries (Nethery). According to Edward Jones, an international investment company, "S&P 500 companies generate about half of their sales outside the U.S." For example,

- "Nike generate[s] in excess of two-thirds of their sales outside the U.S.
- Yum! Brands (which operates Taco Bell, KFC, and Pizza Hut) generates more of its sales in China than in the U.S.
- GM sells more cars in China today than it does in the U.S." (Bannister)

FAQs: Multiculturalism and Technical Communication in a Global Economy

Q: Why is "multiculturalism" important in technical communication? Doesn't everyone in the United States speak English?

A: No, not everyone in the United States speaks English. Look at these facts:

- "With 170 different languages and dialects in the U.S., . . . more than 27.6 million people are limited English speakers" ("Marketing to the Multicultural U.S. Population") 55.4 million Americans—or 20 percent—speak a language other than English at home.
- 35 million Americans speak Spanish in the home.
- 2.5 million Americans speak Chinese in the home.
- 1.4 million Americans speak French in the home ("New Census Bureau").

Q: Though many people in the U.S. speak a language other than English, shouldn't we write for the majority of our audience?

A: Your audience will be diverse—and the "majority" in the U.S. is changing.

- "America's population has become increasingly diverse as Hispanics, African Americans, Asians, and people from many other segments rapidly contribute to the cultural richness of our population" (Melgoza).
- Hispanics number 48.4 million or 15.8 percent of the U.S. population.
- Asian Americans number approximately 13.6 million or 4.4 percent of the U.S. population (Demographics of the United States).

Source: "Demographics of the United States"

The Global Economy

For Coca Cola, which produces 300 different brands in 200 countries, 80 percent of their income is generated from outside the United States (Bannister). To accommodate its worldwide audience, Microsoft offers Windows XP Professional operating system in more than 100 different languages ("Set Up Windows XP for Multiple Languages"). Black & Veatch, a global engineering company, has office locations in Australia, Canada, Chile, China, India, Indonesia, Malaysia, Nepal, Puerto Rico, Russia, Singapore, Taiwan, Thailand, Turkey, the United Arab Emirates, the United Kingdom, the United States, and Vietnam.

Margaret Keating, vice president of operations for Hallmark Cards Inc., oversees Hallmark's North American global operations. Her workforce of 6,000 employees is geographically dispersed. Much of her time is spent writing clear and concise communication to be translated into different languages (Cardarella D19).

The Challenges of Multicultural Communication. The Internet, e-mail, Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube affect global communication and global commerce constantly. With these technologies, companies can market their products internationally and communicate with multicultural clients and coworkers at a keystroke. An international market is great for companies because a global economy increases sales opportunities. However, international commerce also creates written and oral communication challenges. Companies that work internationally must communicate with all of their employees and clients; therefore, communication must be multilingual.

For example, Medtronic, a leading medical technology company, does business in 120 countries. Many of those countries mandate that product documentation be written in the local language. To meet these countries' demands, Medtronic translates its manuals into 11 languages: French, Italian, German, Spanish, Swedish, Dutch, Danish, Greek, Portuguese, Japanese, and Chinese (Walmer 230).

Multilingual reports create unique communication challenges:

- Will each language version be identical in content and readability?
- Will the first language version suggest advantages to investors over translations?
- Are all translations carefully prepared according to tone, style, and content?
- Is each translation tested for usability and accuracy? (Courtis and Hassan 395).

See Figure 6 for an illustration of SurveyMonkey's Web site with numerous language options.

Multicultural Team Projects. What about international, multilingual project work teams? If, for example, your U.S. company is planning to build a power plant in China, you will work with Chinese engineers, financial planners, and regulatory officials. To do so effectively, you will need to understand that country's verbal and nonverbal communication norms. You also will have to know that country's management styles, decision-making procedures, sense of time and place, and local values, beliefs, and attitudes.

Our natural instinct is to evaluate people and situations according to our sense of values, our cultural perspectives. That is called ethnocentrism—a belief that one's own culture represents the norm. Such is not the case. The world's citizenry does not share the same perspectives, beliefs, values, political systems, social orders, languages, or habits. Successful technical communication takes into consideration differences in language, nonverbal communication, and culture.

FIGURE 6 SurveyMonkey with Spanish Language Options

SurveyMonkey recognizes the importance of their global clientele. The SurveyMonkey Web site allows users to conduct surveys in one of 15 languages in addition to English, including Spanish, Dutch, German, French, Italian, and Portuguese.

Source: Courtesy of SurveyMonkey

Due to the multicultural makeup of your audience, you must ensure that your writing, speaking, and nonverbal communication skills accommodate language barriers and cultural customs. The classic example of one company's failure to recognize the importance of translation concerns a car that was named Nova. In English, *nova* is defined as a star that spectacularly flares up. In contrast, *no va* in Spanish is translated as "no go," a poor advertisement for an automobile.

Cross-cultural Workplace Communication

Multiculturalism will affect you not just when you communicate globally. You will be confronted with multicultural communication challenges even in your own city and state. "The challenge posed by the increasing cultural diversity of the U.S. workforce is perhaps the most pressing challenge of our times" (Grimes and Richard 9). Another term for this challenge is cross-cultural communication, writing and speaking between businesspeople of two or more different cultures within the same country (Nethery). Look at the statistics regarding America's melting pot, as shown in Figure 7 and Figure 8 ("Demographics of the United States").

These numbers are estimated to change. The United States Census projects that by 2050, the White population will fall in percentage to 46.3 percent, the African-American population remains 13 percent, and the Asian population will rise to around 8 percent. The Hispanic population will almost double to 30.3 percent, shown in Figure 8.

One of the challenges presented by the increasingly multicultural nature of our society and workplace is language. Language barriers are an especially challenging situation for hospitals, police and fire personnel, and governmental agencies where failure to communicate effectively can have dangerous repercussions.

One hospital reported that it has "13 staff members supplying Spanish, Arabic and Somali translations." However, this hospital's successful use of translators to help with doctor-patient communication is rare. "Only about 14 percent of U.S. hospitals provide training for volunteer translators." Most hospitals depend on the patient's relatives. "In one case studied, an 11-year-old sibling translated. The child made 58 mistakes" (Sanchez A4). Imagine how such errors can negatively impact healthcare and medical records.

The communication challenges are not only evident for employees in healthcare and other community infrastructures. Industries as diverse as banking, hospitality (restaurants and hotels), construction, agriculture, meat production and packing, and insurance also face difficulties when communicating with clients and employees for whom English is a second language.

DOT.COM UPDATES

Check out these sites related to the importance of multiculturalism, cross-culturalism, and diversity:

- **Diversity in the Workplace** (http://www.business.com/directory/human_resources/diversity/) provides information about affirmative action, diversity training, minority-owned businesses, and related cultural issues.
- **International Business Multiculturalism and the Internet** (http://www.infotoday.com/searcher/oct01/fink.htm) provides an article and access to various Web sites related to the global economy.
- **American Society of Mechanical Engineers** (http://www.professionalpractice.asme.org/communications/diversity/index.htm) provides a great definition of workplace diversity and an overview of why diversity is important with case studies.

FIGURE 7 U.S. Census Population as of 2010

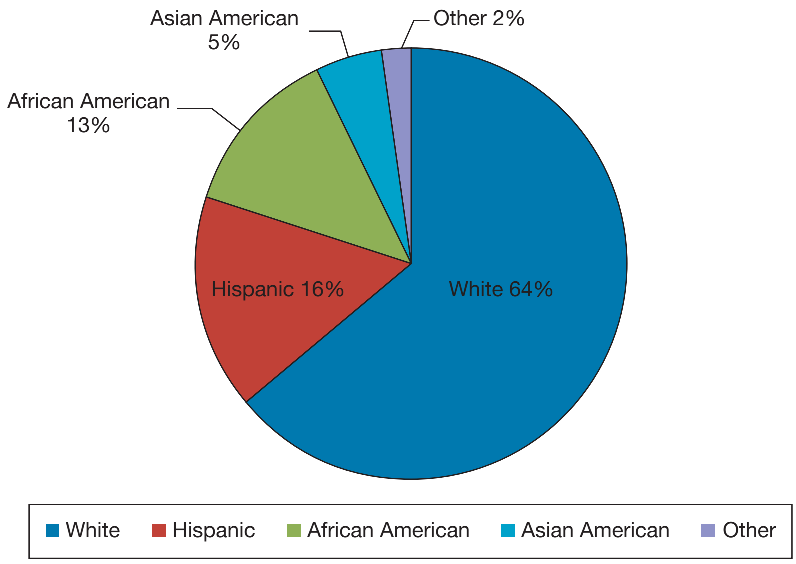
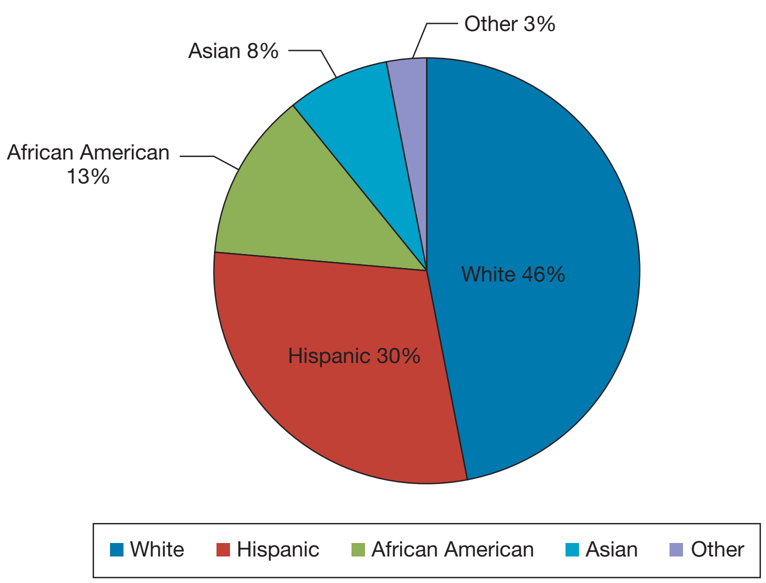


FIGURE 8 U.S. Population Projections for 2050



Guidelines for Effective Multicultural Communication

To achieve effective multicultural technical communication, follow the guidelines in this section.

Define Acronyms and Abbreviations

Acronyms and abbreviations cause most readers a problem. Although you and your immediate colleagues might understand such high-tech usage, many readers won't. This is especially true when your audience is not native to the United States. For example, corporate employees often abbreviate the job title "system manager" as *sysmgr*. However, in German, the title "system manager" is called the "system leiter"; in French, it's "le responsable." The abbreviation *sysmgr*. would make no sense in either of these countries (Swenson WE-193).

SPOTLIGHT

Why do some corporations provide foreign language training for their employees?

Phil Wegman, Program Director of Skills Enhancement for the Center for Business and Technology, sighed deeply and said, "I receive two to three calls *every day* from companies, desperate for Spanish language training. They need to teach their supervisors how to communicate more effectively with customers as well as with employees for whom English is a second language."

Phil's client base covers literally hundreds of fields, including dental and medical, criminal justice, public safety, transit, government, and education, as well as industries such as hospitality management (hotels and restaurants), construction, casinos, manufacturing, warehousing, banking, retail, childcare, and accounting. Police, nurses, physicians, and paramedics, for example, have asked Phil to provide them occupational language training that is "work specific and real life." Then, when an emergency situation occurs, the safety personnel can ask, in Spanish, French, German, or Chinese, "Where does it hurt?"

McDonalds, Hardees, and Burger King supervisors need to know enough Spanish to be able to say to their staff, "here's how you ring up this sale," "here's how you make this meal," or "here's how you clean this piece of equipment." Of equal importance, these companies have asked Phil to teach their supervisors how to answer customer questions or to take customer orders. Many of these fast-food restaurants have on staff a worker who is fluent in a second language. However, the pace is so hectic in fast food that the restaurants can't always pull that one employee off the job to handle the situation. Thus, *all* supervisors need enough language skills to provide direct commands, make simple statements, or answer common questions in a foreign language.

Sometimes, the needs are immediate . . . and life threatening. Phil says, "When a construction or manufacturing company is rolling out a new piece of equipment, where the learning curve is enormous, language can be a huge barrier. Maybe a company has either employees for whom English is a second language, or that company does business internationally. Fluency becomes mandatory to ensure productivity, quality, and personal safety." If the new machinery is operated incorrectly, due to a failure to understand the English instructions, the end products might not meet standards and, of greater concern, injuries can occur.

There is one more key component to language knowledge, Phil states. "When a company teaches its employees a different language, the company honors that culture. The company tells its client base, 'We're trying to learn who you are and what makes you unique.'" The company is learning cross-cultural information to minimize barriers; the company is saying to its staff and customers, "We respect who you are and we want to work with you. That's just good business."

Avoid Jargon and Idioms

The same dilemma applies to jargon and idioms, words and phrases that are common expressions in English but that could be meaningless outside our borders. Every day in the United States, we use "on the other hand" as a transitional phrase and "in the black" or "in the red" to denote financial status. What will these idioms mean in a global market? Following is a list of idioms that are commonly used in America but which will not translate well in other countries:

ballpark figure	eye on the prize
belt-tightening	face the music
bite the bullet	guesstimate
brownie points	jump through hoops
buck stops here	pass the buck
crunch time	pull the plug
dog-eat-dog world	shape up or ship out
drum up business	through the roof

Distinguish Between Nouns and Verbs

Many words in English act as both nouns and verbs. This is especially true with computer terms, such as "file," "scroll," "paste," "boot," "code," and "help." If your text will be translated, make sure that your reader can tell whether you're using the word as a noun or a verb (Rains).

Watch for Cultural Biases/Expectations

Your text will include words and graphics. As a technical communicator, you need to realize that many colors and images that connote one thing in the United States will have different meanings elsewhere. For example, the idioms "in the red" and "in the black" will not necessarily communicate your intent when they are translated. Even worse, the colors black and red have different meanings in different cultures. Red in the United States connotes danger; therefore, "in the red" suggests a financial problem. In China, however, the word *red* has a positive connotation, which would skew your intended meaning. The word *black* often implies death and danger, yet "in the black" suggests financial stability. Such contradictions could confuse readers in various countries.

Animals represent another multicultural challenge. In the United States, we say you're a "turkey" if you make a mistake, but success will make you "soar like an eagle." The same meanings don't translate in other cultures. Take the friendly piggy bank, for example. It represents a perfect image for savings accounts in the United States, but pork is a negative symbol in the Mideast. If you are "cowed" by your competition in the United States, you lose. Cows, in contrast, represent a positive and sacred image in India.

Be Careful When Using Slash Marks

Does the slash mark mean "and," "or," or both "and/or"? The word "and" means "both," but the word "or" means "one or the other," not necessarily both. If your text will be translated to another language, will the translator know what you meant by using a slash mark? To avoid this problem, determine what you want to say and then say it.

Avoid Humor and Puns

Humor is not universal. In the United States, people talk about regional humor. If a joke is good in the South but not in the North, how could that same joke be effective overseas? Microsoft's software package Excel is promoted by a logo that looks like an *X* superimposed over an *L*. This visual pun works in the United States because we pronounce the letters *X* and *L* just as we would the name of the software package. If your readers are not familiar with English, however, they might miss this clever sound-alike image (Horton 686).

Realize That Translations May Take More or Less Space

An even greater problem occurs when you are writing for the Internet. On a Web site, you will provide a navigation bar and several frames. Why is this a problem? The word count of a document written in English will expand more than 30 percent when translated into some European languages. In Table 3, notice how English words become longer when translated into other languages (Horton 691).

TABLE 3 Translations Increase Word Length

English Word	Translations into Other Languages
Print	*Impression* (French)
File	*Archivo* (Spanish)
View	*Visualizzare* (Italian)
Help	*Assistance* (French)
E-mail	*Courriel* (Swiss)

The Swiss government is trying to curb what it defines as "the encroachment of English." To do so, the government's French Linguistics Service asked its citizens to avoid using the word "spam," instead opting for *courier de masse non sollicite,* meaning "unsolicited bulk mail" ("Swiss fight encroachment of English" A16).

Whereas the above examples add length to a document, "Chinese character writing captures the subject matter more compactly than English. Consequently, the length of the Chinese translation is usually about 60 percent of that needed by the English version" (Courtis and Hassan 397). You must consider length to accommodate translations.

Consider Paper Size

If your writing will be conveyed not on paper but on disk or on the Internet, you must consider software's line-length and screen-length restrictions. For example, a page of hard-copy text in the United States will consist of approximately 55 lines that average 80 characters per line. How could this present a problem? The standard sheet of paper in the United States measures 8½ × 11 inches. In contrast, the norm in Europe for standard-sized paper is A4—210 × 297 millimeters, or 8.27 × 11.69 inches.

Why is the size of paper important? Here is the problem: If you format your text and graphics for an 8 ½ × 11-inch piece of paper in Atlanta, travel to London, download the files on a computer there, and hit Print, you might find that what you get is not what you hoped for. The line breaks will not be the same. You will not be able to three-hole punch and bind the text. The margins will be off, and so will the spacing on your flowchart or table (Scott 20-21).

Avoid Figurative Language

Many of us use sports images to figuratively illustrate our points. We "tackle" a chore; in business, a "good defense is the best offense"; we "huddle" to make decisions; if a sale isn't made, you might have "booted" the job; if a sale is made, you "hit a home run." Each of these sports images might mean something to native speakers, but they may not communicate worldwide. Instead, say what you mean, using precise words (Weiss 14).

Be Careful with Numbers, Measurements, Dates, and Times

For multicultural audiences, be sure to clarify which numbering system you use for measurements and how dates and times are written.

Numbers and Measurements. If your text uses measurements, you are probably using standard American inches, feet, and yards. However, most of the world measures in metrics. Thus, if you write 18 high × 20 wide × 30 deep, what are the measurements? There is a huge difference between 18 × 20 × 30 inches and 18 × 20 × 30 millimeters.

Dates. In the United States, we tend to abbreviate dates as MM/DD/YY: 05/03/14. In the United Kingdom, however, this could be perceived as March 5, 2014, instead of May 3, 2014. See Table 4 for additional examples.

TABLE 4 Different Ways of Understanding and Writing the U.S. Date 05/03/14

Country	Date
United States	May 3, 2014
United Kingdom	March 5, 2014
France	5 mars 2014
Germany	5. Marz 2014
Sweden	14–05–03
Italy	5.3.14

Time. Time is another challenge. Table 5 shows how different countries write times.

TABLE 5 Different Ways of Writing the U.S. Time 5:15 P.M.

Country	Time
United States	5:15 P.M.
France	17:15
Germany	17.15
Quebec, Canada	17 h 15

In addition to different ways of writing time, you must also remember that even within the United States, 1:00 P.M. does not mean the same thing to everyone. Is that central time, Pacific time, mountain time, or eastern time?

Another challenge with time occurs when we incorrectly assume that everyone everywhere abides by the same work hours. In the United States, the average workweek is 40 hours, and the typical workday is from 8:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M. However, this is not the norm globally. French laws have reduced the workweek to 35 hours. Many Middle Eastern countries close work on Friday, the beginning of Sabbath. Offices in parts of southern Europe shut down for a traditional two-hour lunch (noon to 2 P.M.) (St. Amant "Communication" 28). Therefore, if you write an e-mail telling a coworker in Spain or Jordan that you will call at 1:00 P.M. his or her time, that could be an inappropriate time for your audience.

Finally, even simple words like *today, yesterday,* or *tomorrow* can cause problems. Japan is 14 hours ahead of U.S. eastern standard time. Thus, if you need a report *tomorrow,* do you mean tomorrow—the next day your time—or tomorrow—two days from your reader's time? To solve these problems, determine your audience and make changes accordingly. That might mean

- Writing out the date completely (January 12, 2014)
- Telling the reader what standard of measurement you will use ("This document provides all measurements in metrics.")
- Telling the reader what scheme of time presentation you will use ("This document relates time using a 24-hour clock rather than a 12-hour clock.")
- Using multiple formats ("Let's meet at 2:30 P.M./14:30.")
- Avoiding vague words like today, tomorrow, or yesterday
- Recognizing that people have different work schedules globally

Use Stylized Graphics to Represent People

A photograph or realistic drawing of people will probably offend someone and create a cultural conflict. You want to avoid depicting race, skin color, hairstyles, and even gender. To solve this problem, avoid shades of skin color, choosing instead pure white or black to represent generic skin. Use simple, abstract, even stick figures to represent people. Stylize hands so they are neither male nor female—and show a right hand rather than a left hand, if possible (a left hand is perceived as "unclean" in some countries) (Flint 241). Recognizing the importance of the global marketplace is smart business and a wise move on the part of the technical communicator.

Following is an example of poor communication in an e-mail message for a multilingual audience.

BEFORE

Send | Options... | HTML

To... Jose Guerrero, Mexico; Yong Kim, Hong Kong; Hans Rittmaster, Berlin

Cc...

Subject: Agenda for Teleconference

Arial | 10

Time to wrap up that deal, guys. If we don't finish the project soon, we're all behind the eight ball. So, here's what I'm planning for the 03/07/14, 12:00 discussion:

- Restructured design—rather than build the part at 8 x 10 x 23, let's consider a smaller design.
- Shipping method—let's use a new carrier/vendor. We've not had good luck with Flyrite Overnight.

I'm open to your suggestions. Let's think outside the box and just wing it. Brainstorm with your men before our teleconference so we can tackle this topic pronto. My boss, the old "ball and chain," needs our suggestions ASAP, so I need it even sooner. I know you'll come through with flying colors.

Leonard Liss
1212 W. 148th
New York, NY 10101
1-800-555-1212

In contrast, the following example corrects these communication problems:

AFTER

Send | Options... | HTML

To... Jose Guerrero, Mexico; Yong Kim, Hong Kong; Hans Rittmaster, Berlin

Cc...

Subject: Agenda for Teleconference

Calibri | 12

We need to complete our team project. Doing so will allow our respective companies to met our client's deadline. A teleconference is our best way to communicate, given everyone's diverse locations. I have made all the technical arrangements. The teleconference is scheduled for March 7, 2014, at 12:00 noon, Pacific standard time. This is the only time that is at least somewhat convenient for all of us. During the teleconference, we will discuss the following:

- Restructured design—rather than build the part at 8" x 10" x 23" as planned (all dimensions in inches), we should consider a smaller design.
- Shipping method—a new carrier or vendor might save us money and time. Flyrite Overnight has increased its shipping fees by 25 percent. What do you think? I am open to your creative ideas.

Discuss these ideas with your coworkers before our teleconference so we can use our time effectively. My boss, Sue Cottrell, needs our suggestions by March 8, 2014, 4:00 P.M. central standard time. With your help, I know our company will make the correct decisions.

Leonard Liss
1212 W. 148th
New York, NY 10101
1-800-555-1212

Avoiding Biased Language

In addition to recognizing your audience's level of knowledge, roles, and cultural diversity, you also must consider your audience's age, physical limitations, and gender.

Ageist Language

A word like "elderly" could imply feebleness. The words "old folks" create a negative image. To avoid these biases, write "people over seventy" or "retirees." Better yet, avoid reference to age.

BEFORE	AFTER
Professor Jones, an elderly teacher at State University, is publishing a textbook despite his age.	Professor Jones, a State University teacher, is publishing a textbook.

Biased Language about People with Disabilities

The word "handicap" creates a negative image. "Disability" is generally preferred. However, any euphemism can be offensive. You should avoid reference to a person's disabilities. If you need to refer to a physical problem, do so without negative characterizations.

BEFORE	AFTER
Debbie Brown, a blind market researcher, won employee of the month.	Debbie Brown, a market researcher, won employee of the month.
The AIDS victim changed insurance carriers.	The AIDS patient changed insurance carriers.
John suffers from diabetes.	John is diabetic.
Sheila is confined to a wheelchair.	Sheila uses a wheelchair.

Sexist Language

Many of your readers will be women. This does not constitute a separate audience category. Women readers will be high tech or low tech, management or subordinate. Thus, you don't need to evaluate a woman's level of understanding or position in the chain of command any differently than you do for readers in general.

Recognize, however, that women constitute at least half the workforce. As such, when you write, you should avoid sexist language, which is offensive to all readers. Let's focus specifically on ways in which sexism is expressed and techniques for avoiding this problem. Sexism creates problems through omission, unequal treatment, and stereotyping, as well as through word choice.

Ignoring Women or Treating Them as Secondary. When your writing ignores women or refers to them as secondary, you are expressing sexist sentiments. The following are examples of biased comments and their nonsexist alternatives:

BEFORE	AFTER
When setting up his experiment, the researcher must always check for errors.	When setting up experiments, the researcher must always check for errors.
As we acquired scientific knowledge, men began to examine long-held ideas more critically.	As we acquired scientific knowledge, people began to examine long-held ideas more critically.

Modifiers that describe women in physical terms not applied to men treat women unequally.

BEFORE	AFTER
The poor women could no longer go on; the exhausted men ...	The exhausted men and women could no longer go on.
Mrs. Acton, a gorgeous blonde, is Joe Granger's assistant.	Jan Acton is Joe Granger's assistant.

Stereotyping. If your writing implies that only men do one kind of job and only women do another kind of job, you are stereotyping. For example, if all management jobs are held by men and all subordinate positions are held by women, this is sexist stereotyping.

BEFORE	AFTER
Current tax regulations allow a head of household to deduct for the support of his children.	Current tax regulations allow a head of household to deduct for child support.
The manager is responsible for the productivity of his department; the foreman is responsible for the work of his linemen.	Management is responsible for departmental productivity. Supervisors are responsible for their personnel.
The administrative assistant brought her boss his coffee.	The administrative assistant brought the boss's coffee.
The teacher must be sure her lesson plans are filed.	The teacher must file all lesson plans.

Sexist language disappears when you use pronouns and nouns that treat all people equally.

Pronouns. Pronouns such as *he, him,* or *his* are masculine. Sometimes you read disclaimers by manufacturers stating that although these masculine pronouns are used, they are not intended to be sexist. They're only used for convenience. This is an unacceptable statement. When *he, him,* and *his* are used, a masculine image is created, whether or not such companies want to admit it.

To avoid this sexist image, avoid masculine pronouns. Instead, use the plural, generic *they* or *their.* You also can use *he or she* and *his or her.* Sometimes you can solve the problem by omitting all pronouns.

BEFORE	AFTER
Sometimes the doctor calls on his patients in their homes.	Sometimes the doctor calls on patients in their homes.
The typical child does his homework after school.	Most children do their homework after school.
A good lawyer will make sure that his clients are aware of their rights.	A good lawyer will make sure that clients are aware of their rights.

Gender-Tagged Nouns. Use nouns that are nonsexist. To achieve this, avoid nouns that exclude women and denote that only men are involved.

BEFORE	AFTER
mankind	people
manpower	workers/personnel
the common man	the average citizen
wise men	leaders
businessmen	businesspeople
policemen	police officers
fireman	firefighter
foreman	supervisor
chairman	chairperson/chair
stewardess/steward	flight attendant
waitress/waiter	server

Consider the following examples of sexist and nonsexist writing in a letter advertising landscaping services. In the second example, the sexist terms are replaced with nonsexist boldfaced words.

BEFORE

DB and Sons Landscaping
1349 Elm
Oakland Hills, IA 20981

April 2, 2014

Owner
TurboCharge, Inc.
2691 Sommers Rd.
Iron Horse, IA 20992

Dear **Sir**:

Interested in beautifying your company property, with no care or worries? We have been in business for over 25 years helping **men** just like you. Here's what we can offer:

1. Shrub Care—your **workmen** will no longer need to water shrubs. We'll take care of that with a sprinkler system geared toward your business's unique needs.
2. Seasonal System Checks—don't worry about your **foreman** having to ask **his** workers to turn on the sprinkler system in the Spring or turn it off in the Winter. Our **repairmen** take care of that for you as part of our contract.
3. New Annual Plantings—we plant rose bushes and daffodils that are so pretty, your secretary will want to leave **her** desk and pick a bunch for **her** office. Of course, you might want to do that for **her** yourself ☺.
4. Trees—we don't just plant annuals. We can add shade to your entire property. Just think how beautiful your parking lot will look with elegant elms, oaks, and maples. Then, when you have that company picnic, your employees and their **wives** will be surrounded by nature.

Call today for prices. Let our skilled **craftsmen** work for you!

Sincerely,

Derek Barton

Derek Barton

AFTER

DB and Sons Landscaping
1349 Elm
Oakland Hills, IA 20981

April 2, 2014

Owner
TurboCharge, Inc.
2691 Sommers Rd.
Iron Horse, IA 20992

Subject: Sales Information

Interested in beautifying your company property, with no care or worries? We have been in business for over 25 years helping **business owners** just like you. Here's what we can offer:

- Shrub Care—your **employees** will no longer need to water shrubs. We'll take care of that with a sprinkler system geared toward your business's unique needs.
- Seasonal System Checks—don't worry about your **supervisor** having to **ask his or her** workers to turn on the sprinkler system in the Spring or turn it off in the Winter. Our **staff** takes care of that for you as part of our contract.
- New Annual Plantings—we plant rose bushes and daffodils that are so pretty, **all of your employees** will want vase-filled flowers on **their** desks.
- Trees—we don't just plant annuals. We can add shade to your entire property. Just think how beautiful your parking lot will look with elegant elms, oaks, and maples. Then, when you have that company picnic, your employees and **their families and friends** will be surrounded by nature.

Call today for prices. Let our skilled **experts** work for you!

Sincerely,

Derek Barton

Derek Barton

Audience Involvement

In addition to audience recognition, effective technical communication demands audience involvement. You not only need to know whom you are writing to in your technical correspondence (audience recognition), but also you need to involve your readers—draw them into your writing and keep them interested. Achieving audience involvement requires that you strive for personalized tone and reader benefit.

Personalized Tone

Companies do not write to companies; people write to people. Remember when you write your e-mail, letter, report, or procedure, another person will read it, so achieve a personalized, collaborative tone to involve your reader. Personalized tone is even more important in social media (Facebook, YouTube, Twitter, blogs, and so on) since this communication channel seeks to build community.

Pronouns. The best way to personalize correspondence is through pronoun usage. If you omit pronouns in your technical communication, the text will read as if it has been computer generated, absent of human contact. When you use pronouns in your technical communication, you humanize the text. You reveal that the memo, letter, report, or procedure is written by people, for people.

The generally accepted hierarchy of pronoun usage is as follows:

Pronoun	Focus
You Your	The reader
We Us Our	The team
I Me My	The ego

The first group of pronouns, *you* and *your,* is preferred. When you use *you* or *your,* you are speaking directly to your reader(s) on a one-to-one basis. The readers, whoever they are, read the word *you* or *your* and see themselves in the pronoun, envisioning that they are being spoken to, focused on, and singled out. In other words, *you* or *your* appeals to the reader's sense of self-worth.

The second group of pronouns (*we, us,* and *our*) uses team words to connote group involvement. These pronouns are especially valuable when writing to multiple audiences or when writing to subordinates. *We, us,* or *our* implies to the readers that "we're all in this together." Such a team concept helps motivate by making the readers feel an integral part of the whole.

The third group (*I, me,* and *my*) denotes the writer's involvement. If overused, however, these pronouns can connote egocentricity ("All I care about is *me, me, me*"). Because of this potential danger, emphasize *you* and *your* and downplay *I, me,* and *my*. Strive for a two-to-one ratio. For every *I, me,* or *my,* double your use of *you* or *your*.

Let's look at an automobile manufacturer's user manual, which omits pronouns and, thus, reads as if it is computer generated.

BEFORE

Claims Procedure

To obtain service under the Emissions Performance Warranty, take the vehicle to the company dealer as soon as possible after it fails an I/M test along with documentation showing that the vehicle failed an EPA-approved emissions test.

Without any pronouns, the version has no personality. It's dull and stiff, and it reads as if no human beings are involved.

Compare this flat, dry, dehumanized example with the more personalized version.

When pronouns are added in this version, the writing involves the reader on a personal level.

AFTER

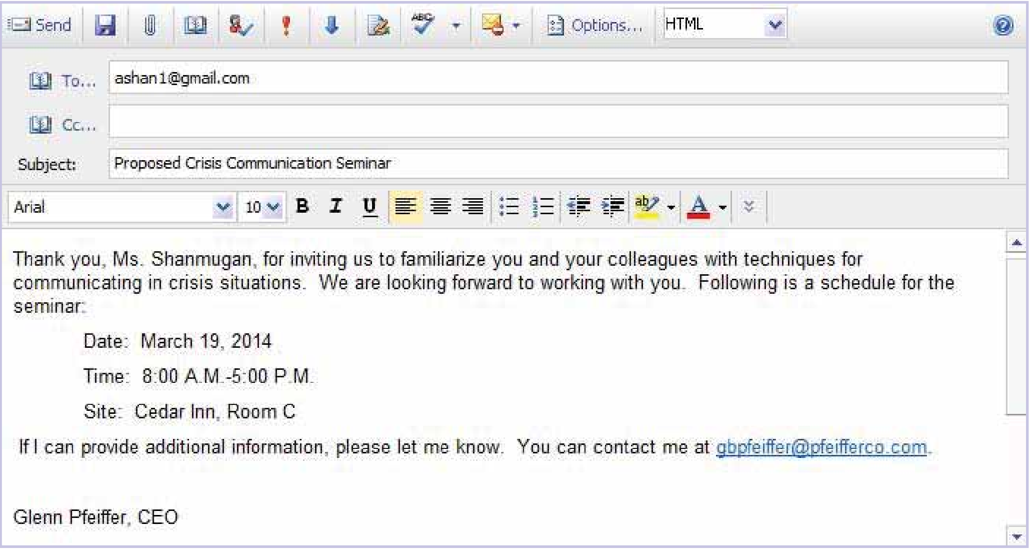
Claims Procedure

How do you get service under the Emissions Performance Warranty? To get service under this warranty, take your car to the dealer as soon as possible after it has failed an EPA-approved test. Be sure to bring along the document that shows your car failed the test.

Many writers believe that the first version is more professional. However, professionalism does not require that you write without personality. The pronoun-based writing in the second version is friendlier. Friendliness and humanism are positive attributes in technical communication. The second version also ensures reader involvement. As a professional, you want your readers (customers, clients, colleagues) to be involved, for without these readers no transaction occurs.

Names. Another way to personalize and achieve audience involvement is through use of names—incorporating the reader's name in your technical communication. By doing so, you create a friendly reading environment in which you speak directly to your audience.

EXAMPLE ▶


Send Options... HTML

To... ashan1@gmail.com

Cc...

Subject: Proposed Crisis Communication Seminar

Arial 10

Thank you, Ms. Shanmugan, for inviting us to familiarize you and your colleagues with techniques for communicating in crisis situations. We are looking forward to working with you. Following is a schedule for the seminar:

Date: March 19, 2014

Time: 8:00 A.M.-5:00 P.M.

Site: Cedar Inn, Room C

If I can provide additional information, please let me know. You can contact me at gbpfeiffer@pfeifferco.com.

Glenn Pfeiffer, CEO

When do you use first names versus last names? If you know your reader well, have worked with him or her for a while, and know your reader will not be offended, then use the first name. However, if you do not know the reader well, have not worked with this reader before, or worry that the reader might be offended, then use the surname instead. In either instance, calling a reader by name will involve that reader and personalize your writing.

Reader Benefit

A final way to achieve audience involvement is to motivate your readers by giving them what they want or need. Show your audience how they will benefit from your technical communication.

Explain the Benefit. Until you tell your readers how they'll benefit, they may not know. Therefore, in your letter, e-mail, report, or manual, state the benefit clearly. You can do this anywhere, but you're probably wise to place the statement of benefit either early (first paragraph or abstract/summary) or late (last paragraph or conclusion). Placing the benefit early in the writing will interest readers and help ensure that they continue to read. Placing the benefit at the end could provide a motivational close, leaving readers with a positive impression.

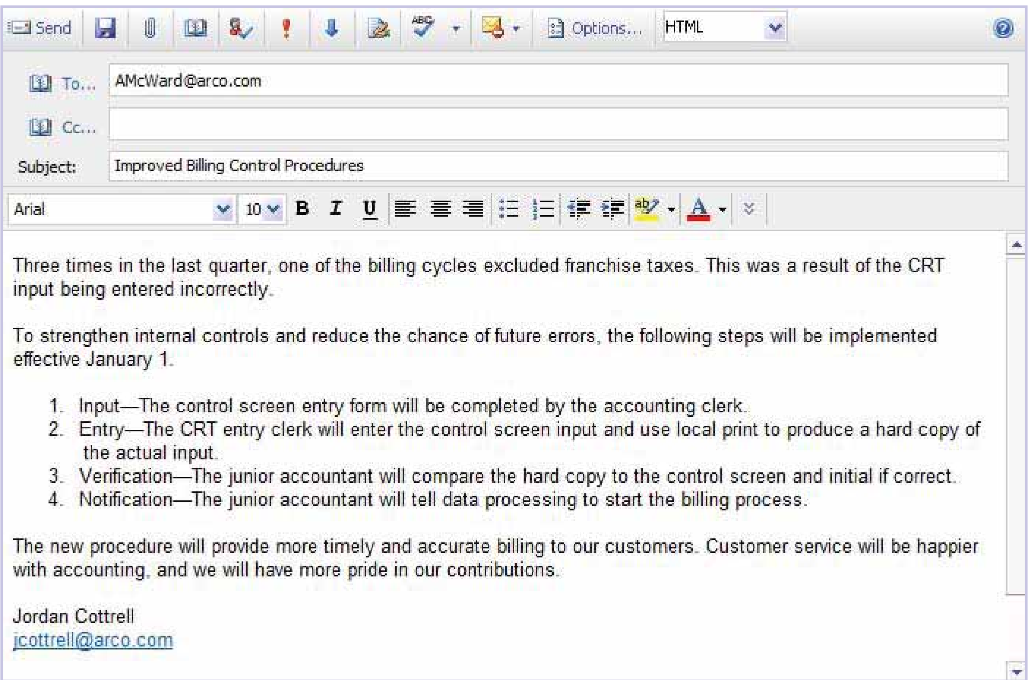
◀ EXAMPLE

> Instructions for Poured Foundations
> A poured foundation will provide a level surface for mounting both the pump and motor. Carefully aligned equipment will provide you a longer and more easily maintained operation.

This instruction conveys reader benefit.

E-mail messages can also develop reader benefit to involve audiences, as in the following example.

◀ EXAMPLE


Send | Options... | HTML

To... AMcWard@arco.com

Cc...

Subject: Improved Billing Control Procedures

Arial | 10

Three times in the last quarter, one of the billing cycles excluded franchise taxes. This was a result of the CRT input being entered incorrectly.

To strengthen internal controls and reduce the chance of future errors, the following steps will be implemented effective January 1.

1. Input—The control screen entry form will be completed by the accounting clerk.
2. Entry—The CRT entry clerk will enter the control screen input and use local print to produce a hard copy of the actual input.
3. Verification—The junior accountant will compare the hard copy to the control screen and initial if correct.
4. Notification—The junior accountant will tell data processing to start the billing process.

The new procedure will provide more timely and accurate billing to our customers. Customer service will be happier with accounting, and we will have more pride in our contributions.

Jordan Cottrell
jcottrell@arco.com

The benefit is evident in the postive words—*improved, strenghten, reduce, timely, accurate, happier, pride,* and *contributions*. These words motivate readers by suggesting how they will benefit from their actions.

Reader benefit is emphasized in the last paragraph. The pronouns *we* and *our* in the last sentence involve the readers in the activity. A team concept is implied.

Use Positive Words. In the preceding examples of achieving reader benefit, the motivation or value is revealed through positive words. One way to involve your audience is to use positive words throughout your correspondence.

POSITIVE WORDS

accomplish	coordinate	favorable	plan	serve
achieve	create	guide	please	succeed
advantage	develop	happy	produce	support
appreciate	educate	help	profit	thank you
asset	effective	improve	promote	value
assist	efficient	increase	raise	
benefit	enjoy	lead	recommend	
build	ensure	maintain	reduce	
confident	establish	organize	satisfy	

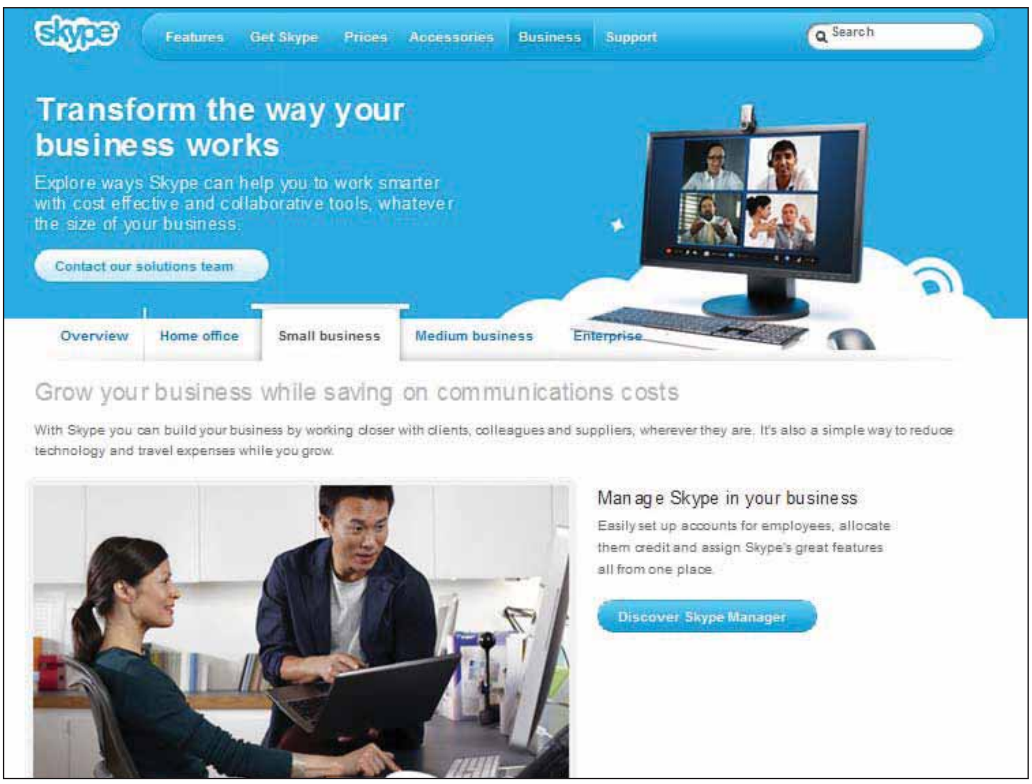
To clarify how important such words are, let's look at some examples of negative writing, followed by positive revisions.

BEFORE	AFTER
• We cannot process your request. You failed to follow the printed instructions. • The error is your fault. You keep your books incorrectly and cannot complain about our deliveries. If you would cooperate with us, we could solve your problem. • Your bill is now three weeks overdue. Failure to pay immediately will result in lower credit ratings.	• So that we may process your request rapidly, please fill in line 6 on the printed form. • To ensure prompt deliveries, let's get together to review our bookkeeping practices. Would next Tuesday be convenient? • If you're as busy as we are, you've probably misplaced our recent bill (mailed three weeks ago). Please send it in soon to maintain your high credit ratings.

Making something positive out of something negative is a challenge, but the rewards for doing so are great. If you attack your readers with negatives, you lose. When you involve your readers through positive words, you motivate them to work with you. See Figure 9 to learn how Skype involves audience through pronoun usage and positive words.

FIGURE 9 Skype Small Business

Skype uses positive words like *transform, help, smarter, cost effective, grow,* and *saving*. Pronouns *your* and *you* help to involve the audience. Finally, smiling workers make the site visually appealing and welcoming.



Source: Courtesy of Skype

AUDIENCE CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** What is my audience's level of understanding regarding the subject matter?
- High tech
- Low tech
- Lay
- Multiple

_____ **2.** Given my audience's level of understanding, have I written accordingly?
- Have I defined my acronyms, abbreviations, and jargon?
- Have I supplied enough background data?
- Have I used the appropriate types of graphics?

_____ **3.** Who else might read my correspondence?
- How many people?
- What are their levels of understanding?
  - High tech
  - Low tech
  - Lay
- Will my audience be multicultural?

_____ **4.** What is my role in relation to my audience?
- Do I work for the reader?
- Does the reader work for me?
- Is the reader a peer?
- Is the reader a client?

_____ **5.** What response do I want from my audience? Do I want my audience to act, respond, confirm, consider, decide, or file the information for future reference?

_____ **6.** Will my audience act according to my wishes? What is my audience's attitude toward the subject (and me)?
- Negative
- Positive
- Noncommittal
- Uninformed

_____ **7.** Is my audience in a position of authority to act according to my wishes? If not, who will make the decision?

_____ **8.** What are my audience's personality traits?
- Slow to act
- Eager
- Receptive
- Questioning
- Organized
- Disorganized
- Oppositional

_____ **9.** Have I motivated my audience to act?
- Have I involved my reader in the correspondence by using pronouns and his or her name?
- Have I shown my reader the benefit of the proposal by using positive words?
- Have I considered any questions or objections my audience might have?

_____ **10.** Have I considered my audience's preferences regarding style?
- Is use of a first name appropriate?

_____ **11.** Have I avoided sexist language?
- Have I used *their* or *his or her* to avoid sexist singular pronouns such as *his*?
- Have I used generic words such as *police officer* versus *policeman*?
- Have I avoided excluding women, writing sentences such as "All present voted to accept the proposal" versus "All the men voted to accept the proposal"?
- Have I avoided patronizing, writing sentences such as "Mr. Smith and Mrs. Brown wrote the proposal" versus "Mr. Smith and Judy wrote the proposal"?

_____ **12.** Have I considered diversity?
- Have I avoided any language that could offend various age groups, people of different sexual orientations, people with disabilities, or people of different cultures and religions?
- Have I considered that people from different countries and people for whom English is a second language will be involved in the communication? This might mean that I should do the following:
  - Clarify time and measurements.
  - Define abbreviations and acronyms.
  - Avoid figurative language and idiomatic phrases, unique to one culture.
  - Avoid humor and puns.
  - Consider each country's cultural norms.

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. High-tech readers understand acronyms, abbreviations, and jargon. However, not all of your readers will be high tech.
2. Low-tech readers need glossaries or parenthetical definitions of technical terms.
3. Lay readers usually will not understand technical terms. Consider providing these readers with extended definitions.

4. In addition to considering high-tech, low-tech, and lay audience levels, you also should consider issues of diversity, such as gender, race, religion, age, and sexual orientation.
5. Multiple audiences have different levels of technical knowledge. This fact affects the amount of technical content and terms you should include in your document.
6. The definition of a technical term usually includes its type and distinguishing characteristics but can also include examples, descriptions, and procedures.
7. For multicultural audiences, define terms, avoid jargon and idioms, and consider the context of the words you use. Avoid cultural biases, avoid slash marks, be careful with humor, and allow space for translation.
8. Half of your audience will be female, so you should avoid sexist language.
9. To get your audience involved in the text, personalize it by using pronouns and the reader's name.
10. Show your reader how he or she will benefit from your message or proposal.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

Home and Business Mortgage (HBM) has suffered several lawsuits recently. A former employee sued the company, contending that it practiced ageism by promoting a younger employee over him. In an unrelated case, another employee contended that she was denied a raise due to her ethnicity. To combat these concerns, HBM has instituted new human resources practices. The goal is to ensure that the company meets all governmental personnel regulations, including those required by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC), the Family Medical Leave Act (FMLA), and the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). HBM is committed to achieving diversity in its workplace.

HBM now needs to hire a new office manager for one of its branch operations. It has three outstanding candidates. Following are their credentials:

- **Carlos Gutierrez**—Carlos is a 27-year-old recent recipient of an MBA (masters in business administration) from an acclaimed business school. At this university, he learned many modern business applications, including capital budgeting, human resources management, organizational behavior, diversity management, accounting and marketing management, and team management strategies. He has been out of graduate school for only two years, but his work during that time has been outstanding. As an employee at one of HBM's branches, he has already impressed his bosses by increasing the branch's market share by 28 percent through innovative marketing strategies he learned in college. In addition, his colleagues enjoy working with him and praise his team-building skills. Carlos has never managed a staff, but he is filled with promise.
- **Cheryl Huff**—Cheryl is a 37-year-old employee of a rival mortgage company, Farm-Ranch Equity. She has a BGS (bachelor's degree in general studies) from a local university, which she acquired while working full time in the mortgage and real estate business. At Farm-Ranch, where she has worked for over 15 years, she has moved up the ladder, acquiring many new levels of responsibility. After working as an executive assistant for five years, she then became a mortgage payoff clerk for two years, a loan processor for two years, a mortgage sales manager for four years, and, most recently, a residential mortgage closing

coordinator for the last two years. In the last two positions, she managed a staff of five employees.

According to her references, she has been dependable on the job. Her references also suggest that she is a forceful taskmaster. Though she has accomplished much on the job, her subordinates have complained about her demanding expectations. Her references suggest, perhaps, that she could profit from some improved people skills.

- **Rose Massin—**Rose is 47 years old and has been out of the workforce for 12 years. During that absence, she raised a family of three children. Now, the youngest child is in school, and Rose wants to re-enter the job market. She has a bachelor's degree in business and was the former office manager of this HBM branch. Thus, she has management experience, as well as mortgage experience.

  While she was branch manager, she did an outstanding job. This included increasing business, working well with employees and clients, and maintaining excellent relationships with lending banks and realtors. She was a highly respected employee and was involved in civic activities and community volunteerism. In fact, she is immediate past-president of the local Rotary Club. Though she has been out of the workforce for years, she has kept active in the city and has maintained excellent business contacts. Still, she's a bit rusty on modern business practices.

Assignment

Whom will you hire from these three candidates? Based on the information provided, make your hiring decision. This is a judgment call. Be sure to substantiate your decision with as much proof as possible. Then share this finding as follows:

- **Oral Presentations—**Give a 3–5 minute presentation to share with your colleagues the results of your decision.
- **Written—**Write an e-mail, memo, or report about your findings.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

Avoiding Sexist Language

1. Revise the following sentences to avoid sexist language.
   a. All the software development specialists and their wives attended the conference.
   b. The foremen met to discuss techniques for handling union grievances.
   c. Every technician must keep accurate records for his monthly activity reports.
   d. The president of the corporation, a woman, met with her sales staff.
   e. Throughout the history of mankind, each scientist has tried to make his mark with a discovery of significant intellectual worth.

Achieving Audience Involvement

1. Revise the following sentences to achieve reader involvement and benefit, using positive words and pronouns.
   a. We cannot lay your cable until you sign the attached waiver.
   b. John, don't purchase the wrong program. If we continue to keep inefficient records, our customers will continue to complain.
   c. You have not paid your bill yet. Failure to do so might result in termination of services.
   d. If you incorrectly quote and paraphrase, you will receive an *F* on the assignment.
   e. Your team has lost 6 of their last 12 games.
2. Rewrite the following flawed correspondence. Its tone is too negative and commanding, regardless of the audience. Soften the tone to achieve better audience involvement and motivation.

To: Staff
Subject: Fourth Quarter Goals
Due to a severe lack of discipline, the company failed to meet third quarter goals. To avoid repeating this disaster for the fourth quarter, this is what I think you all must do—ASAP.

1. Demand that the sales department increase cold calls by 15 percent.
2. Require weekly progress reports by all sales staff.
3. Penalize employees when reports are not provided on time.
4. Tell managers to keep on top of their staff, pushing them to meet these goals.

Remember, when one link is weak in the chain, the entire company suffers. DON'T BE THE WEAK LINK!

Defining Terms for Different Audience Levels

1. Find examples of definitions provided in computer word processing programs, e-mail packages, Internet dictionaries, and online help screens. Determine whether these examples provide the *term,* its *type,* and its *distinguishing characteristics*. Are the definitions effective? If so, explain why. If not, rewrite the definitions for clarity.
2. In small groups composed of individuals from similar majors, list ten high-tech terms (jargon, acronyms, or abbreviations) unique to your degree programs. Then, envisioning a lay audience, parenthetically define and briefly explain these terms. To test the success of your communication abilities, orally share these high-tech terms with other students who have different majors.
   - State the high-tech term to see if they understand it.
   - If they don't, provide the parenthetical definition. How much does this help? Do they understand now?
   - If they still do not understand the definition, add the third step—the brief explanation. How much information do the readers need before they understand your high-tech terms?

Recognizing Issues of Diversity

1. Rewrite the following sentences for multicultural, cross-cultural audiences.
   a. Let's meet at 8:30 P.M.
   b. The best size for this new component is $16 \times 23 \times 41$.
   c. To keep us out of the red, we need to round up employees who can put their pedal to the metal and get us out of this hole.
   d. We need to produce fliers/brochures to increase business.
   e. The meeting is planned for 07/09/14.
2. Rewrite the following flawed correspondence. Be sure to consider your multicultural or cross-cultural audience's needs.

From: Nachman Sumani
Subject: Brainstorming
I need to pick your brain, guys. We've got a big one coming up, a killer deal with a major European player. Before I can make the pitch, however, let's brainstorm solutions. The client needs a proposal by December 5, so I need your input before that date. Give me your ideas about the following:

- What should we charge for our product, if the client buys in bulk?
- What's our turnaround time for production? I know that your people tend to work slowly, so can you hurry the team up if I promise delivery in six weeks?

E-mail me your feedback by tomorrow, 1:00 p.m., at the latest. Trust me, guys. If we blow this one, everyone's bonuses will be out the window.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECE

Dove Hill, GA, experienced severe thunderstorms on March 15. Goodwin & Associates Insurance Co. (GAI) insured much of the territory affected by this storm. Over 1,200 houses insured by GAI had water damage. As written, the homeowner's policy provided full-replacement coverage for water damage. In the homeowner's policies, water damage was limited to situations such as the following:

- A hailstorm smashes a window, permitting hail and rain to enter a home.
- A heavy rain soaks through a roof, allowing water to drip through a ceiling.
- A broken water pipe spews water into a home.

In contrast, homes that suffered water damage due to flooding were not covered, unless the homeowners also had taken out a separate flood damage policy from the National Flood Insurance Program. For insurance purposes, *flood* is defined as "the rising of a body of water onto normally dry land." For example, flood damage can include a river overflowing its banks or a heavy rain seeping into a basement. Of the 1,200 homes suffering water damage, only 680 homes qualified for full replacement coverage. The remaining homes suffered flood damage and were thus not covered.

Assignment

Write a letter or e-mail message from GAI to a homeowner denying coverage for their water damage claim. You are writing as a high-tech insurance professional to a lay reader. You want to maintain a good business relationship, despite the bad news. Build rapport while specifying in lay terms the denial.

WEB WORKSHOP

You are head of international relations at your corporation. Your company is preparing to go global. To ensure that your company is sensitive to multicultural concerns, research the cultural traits and business practices in five countries of your choice. To do so, access an online search engine and type in "multicultural business practices in ____________" (specify the country's name). Report your findings either orally or in an e-mail.

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 6 — SurveyMonkey with Spanish Language Options. Courtesy of SurveyMonkey.

Figure 9 — Skype Small Business. Courtesy of Skype.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Yuri Arcurs / Shutterstock

© Steven and Sharon Gerson

© goodluz / Fotolia

REFERENCES

Bannister, Linda. "Global Leaders May Benefit from Global Growth." *Edward Jones*. 2010. Web. 28 Feb. 2011.

Cardarella, Toni. "Business." *The Kansas City Star*. Sep. 2003. Web. 30 Sep. 2003.

Cerner. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

Courtis, John K., and Salleh Hassan. "Reading Ease of Bilingual Annual Reports." *Journal of Business Communication* 39 (Oct. 2002): 394–413. Print.

"Demographics of the United States." *Wikipedia*. 2011. Web. 28 Feb. 2011.

Flint, Patricia, *et al*. "Helping Technical Communicators Help Translators." *Technical Communication* 46 (May 1999): 238–248. Print.

Grimes, Diane Susan, and Orlando C. Richard. "Could Communication Form Impact Organizations' Experience with Diversity?" *Journal of Business Communication* 40 (Jan. 2003): 7–27. Print.

Horton, William. "The Almost Universal Language: Graphics for International Documents." *Technical Communication* 40 (Nov. 1993): 682–693. Print.

Jordan, Katrina. "Diversity Training: What Works, What Doesn't, and Why?" *Civil Right Journal* Fall 1999: 1. Print.

McInnes, R. "Workforce Diversity: Changing the Way You Do Business." *Diversity World*. Web. 12 Feb. 2003. Print.

Melgoza, Cesar M. "Geoscape Findings Confirm Hispanic Market Growth." *Hispanic MPR.com*. 2007. Web. 6 Mar. 2007.

Nethery, Kent. "Let's Talk Business." 2003. Web. 16 Feb. 2003.

"New Census Bureau Report Analyzes Nation's Linguistic Diversity." *U.S. Census*. 27 Apr. 2010. Web. 21 Mar. 2011.

Rains, Nancy E. "Prepare Your Documents for Better Translation." *Intercom* 41.5 (Dec. 1994): 12. Print.

Sanchez, Mary. "KC hospitals seek to overcome language barriers." *The Kansas City Star.* 7 Jan. 2003: A1, A4. Print.

Scott, Julie S. "When English Isn't English." *Intercom* May 2000: 20–21. Print.

"Set Up Windows XP for Multiple Languages." *Microsoft*. 7 Sep. 2006. Web. 29 Feb. 2011.

Skype. 2012. Web. 15 Nov. 2012.

St. Amant, Kirk R. "Communication in International Virtual Offices." *Intercom* Apr. 2003: 27–28. Print.

Swenson, Lynne V. "How to Make (American) English Documents Easy to Translate." *Proceedings: 34th International Technical Communication Conference*. 10 May 1987: WE-193–195. Print.

"Swiss Fight Encroachment of English." *The Kansas City Star.* 7 Dec. 2002: A16. Print.

Walmer, Daphne. "One Company's Efforts to Improve Translation and Localization." *Technical Communication* 46 (May 1999): 230–237. Print.

Weiss, Edmund H. "Twenty-five Tactics to 'Internationalize' Your English." *Intercom* May 1998: 11–15. Print.

"What Is the 'Business Case' For Diversity?" *Society for Human Resource Management*. 2003. Web. 12 Feb. 2003.

Research

Research

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

The Oak Springs, Iowa, scenario illustrates the use of primary and secondary research before writing construction plans for a new road.

The City of Oak Springs, Iowa, needs to improve a 10-mile stretch of road, Ironhorse Avenue, that runs east and west through the town. The winding, two-lane road was built in 1976. Since then, the city has grown from a population of 45,000 to 86,000. In 1976, the road primarily served farmers whose houses were separated by miles of privately owned land. Now, over 40 years later, many of the landowners have sold their land for development. Ironhorse Avenue is occupied by numerous housing subdivisions, apartment complexes, and strip malls. Due to this development, the road no longer is sufficient for the increased traffic load.

The city also built a middle school with access directly off Ironhorse Avenue. This middle school draws students from a two-mile radius including a new subdivision to the west of Ironhorse Avenue. The arrival at school of students in the morning and their departure in the afternoon necessitated the addition of pedestrian crosswalks to Ironhorse Avenue in two locations. Each crosswalk is patrolled morning and

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Research a topic either using secondary sources, such as books, periodicals, or the Internet; or primary sources, such as interviews or questionnaires
- Consider the audience's level of technical knowledge when you write a research report
- Conduct primary and secondary research to assist you in developing content for reports
- Narrow a topic to help you find sources of information
- Create a focus statement that lets you determine the direction of your document
- Use discrimination and consider the source when you research on the Internet
- Correctly format and document source citations to help you avoid plagiarism
- Cite sources using style manuals from The Council of Science Editors (CSE), Modern Language Association (MLA), and the American Psychological Association (APA)
- Quote accurately from sources or paraphrase by restating the original material in your own words without condensing
- Use the checklist to evaluate your research

afternoon by a crossing guard. Traffic on the street slows measurably during both times of the day. Because Ironhorse Avenue is the main artery to the downtown shopping and business areas, the city has to make certain that traffic flows steadily and safely.

Ironhorse Avenue must be expanded to four lanes and straightened. An expanded and straightened street will allow the city to provide better snow removal; quicker response time to emergencies by fire, police, and medical personnel; easier travel time for commuters; and safer travel for pedestrians taking into consideration middle school students. To accomplish these goals, the city must add new sewer lines, sidewalks, easements, esplanades, pedestrian crosswalks, bicycle lanes, and lighting. However, this construction will impact current homeowners (whose land, through eminent domain, can be expropriated without the owner's consent). In addition, part of the envisioned road construction will impact a wildlife refuge for waterfowl. This wildlife refuge is important to the ecosystem and is also used for field research by Oak Spring's schools' science classes.

Only after conducting primary and secondary research will the engineers be able to produce a construction plan for Oak Springs' city management for their consideration and approval.

Why Conduct Research?

Research skills are important in your school or work environment. You may want to perform research to better understand a technical term or concept; locate a magazine, journal, or newspaper article for your supervisor; or find data on a subject to prepare an oral or written report. Technology is changing so rapidly that you must know how to do research to stay up to date.

You can research information using online catalogs; electronic indexes and databases; reference books in print and online; and Internet search engines and directories. Reference sources vary and are numerous, so this chapter discusses only research techniques.

Research, a major component of long, formal reports, helps you develop your report's content. Often, your own comments, drawn from personal experience, will lack detail, development, and authority to be sufficiently persuasive. You need research for the following reasons:

- Create content
- Support commentary and content with details, quotes, paraphrases, and summaries
- Emphasize the importance of an idea
- Enhance the reliability of an opinion
- Show the importance of a subject to the larger business community
- Address the audience's need for documentation and substantiation

Research Including Secondary and Primary Sources

You can use researched material to support and develop content in your formal reports. Researched material generally breaks down into two categories: secondary and primary research.

Secondary Research

When you conduct secondary research, you rely on already printed and published information taken from sources including books, periodicals, newspapers, encyclopedias, reports, proposals, or other business documents. You might also rely on information taken from a Web site, blog, or YouTube instructional video. All of this research requires parenthetical source citations.

Primary Research/Field Research

Primary research is research performed or generated by you. You do not rely on books or periodicals for this type of research. With primary research, you will be generating the information based on data or information from a variety of sources that might include observations, tests of equipment, and laboratory experiments. Another type of primary research is called field research. This can entail the following:

- Preparing a survey or a questionnaire targeting a group of respondents
- Conducting face-to-face interviews
- Interviewing individuals through telephone calls and online surveys
- Using social media, such as Twitter, Facebook, and LinkedIn, to collect information
- Visiting job sites

You may perform this field research to determine for your company the direction a new marketing campaign should take, how to use social media in the workplace, the importance of diversity in the workplace, the economic impact of relocating the company to a new office site, the usefulness of a new product, or the status of a project.

You also may need to interview people for their input about a particular topic. For example, your company might be considering a new approach to take for increased security on employee computers. You could ask employees for a record of their logs which would highlight the problems they have encountered with their computer security.

Surveying for Primary Research. If you choose to use a survey for your primary research, consider doing the following to get other people's assistance:

- Schedule a convenient time for the interview.
- Explain why you need the interview and information.
- Tell the survey participants approximately how long the survey should take.
- Come prepared. Research the subject matter so you will be prepared to ask appropriate questions. Write your interview questions or the survey before you meet with the person. Take the necessary paper, forms, pencils, pens, laptop, tablets, or recording devices you will need for the meeting.
- Create survey questions that allow for quantifiable answers. In other words, try to avoid simple yes/no questions. Give survey participants a choice from a value-based scale, such as 4 = absolutely critical; 3 = important; 2 = somewhat important; 1 = not important.
- Ask the survey participant(s) for permission to use their responses in your research. You may need to ask the participants to sign a release form.
- Thank the participant for the interview and taking time to fill in the questionnaire.

Figure 1 is a sample survey. An information technology manager used this primary research to substantiate his long, formal report recommending that the company switch from a Microsoft Windows operating system to a Linux operating system.

FIGURE 1 Survey Used to Conduct Primary Research

User Survey on Computer Operating Systems

Our company is considering migrating from a Windows-based computing system to a Linux-based system. To help us make this decision, please answer the following questions, using a 4-pt. scale.

1. Would you like to customize your desktop, choosing your own GUI links to computer operations (graphical images that you choose as iconic buttons to click on)?

___ 4 = absolutely critical
___ 3 = important
___ 2 = somewhat important
___ 1 = not important

2. Windows impacts your departmental budget because Microsoft allows only a single copy of Windows to be used on only one computer. In contrast, if we purchased a Linux system, you can run it on any number of computers for no additional charge. Such a purchase would require training to help computer users learn the new system. Realizing that a change in systems would necessitate training, how important is this budgetary issue to your department?

___ 4 = absolutely critical
___ 3 = important

(Continued)

FIGURE 1 Survey Used to Conduct Primary Research (Continued)

___ 2 = somewhat important
___ 1 = not important

3. Windows comes with an operating system. Linux-based machines require that consumers install the operating system. Our company would provide you the software and hardware; an individual or individuals within your department would be required to perform this installation. Would this requirement make you vote ***against*** a purchase of a Linux system?

___ 4 = absolutely critical in a vote of "no"
___ 3 = important in a vote of "no"
___ 2 = somewhat important in a vote of "no"
___ 1 = not important—our department would not vote "no" due to this requirement

4. How important is it for departmental computers to be clustered for multiple use and networking?

___ 4 = absolutely critical
___ 3 = important
___ 2 = somewhat important
___ 1 = not important

5. How important is storing data, backing it up, and moving stored data from one computer to another?

___ 4 = absolutely critical
___ 3 = important
___ 2 = somewhat important
___ 1 = not important

Technology has made it easy to create and conduct surveys. Many online sites, such as SurveyMonkey, Zoomerang, Free Online Surveys, and Kwik Surveys, help you design and customize e-mail or Web site forms, polls, and surveys. See Figure 2 for a sample site for creating questionnaires.

Using Social Media for Research. If you can't perform fieldwork, try to "network" as a source of research. Social media can supplement your research by telling you what the large base of Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, and other social media users are thinking and saying. Social media provides an almost instantaneous focus group in the following ways:

1. **Monitor customer comments.** Sites like SocialMention, uberVu, and Spiral16 can help companies monitor what the public is saying about products and services (Fall and Deckers). If you don't want to use a secondary source for this information, you can access blog sites' "most commented" sections to learn what people are thinking.
2. **Pose research questions.** Use social media for crowdsourcing, getting information from the general public. Companies, using corporate social media sites like Facebook or Twitter, can ask their customers precise questions about products and services. Then, when customers respond, these answers can be collected, collated, and analyzed. Social media allows you to create almost synchronous surveys.

FIGURE 2 SurveyMonkey Web Site for Creating Questionnaires

Source: Courtesy of SurveyMonkey

3. **Develop infographics.** Infographics are tables and figures used for "data visualization" (Krum). You can use a social media site like Delicious.com to search for content. Then, after drilling down into topics of your choice, you can access statistics, usage, visuals, and more to help you support research contentions.
4. **Research the latest news.** Access breaking news by using Twitter's hashtags. By clicking on a hashtagged (#) word in a tweet, you can access other tweets in that category or topic. The hashtag, "community-driven . . . metadata," provides you additional, immediate content for your research project (Messina).
5. **Get quotes to support your ideas.** You can access http://search.twitter.com/, enter the hashtag #quotes or #quote, and type a keyword to find pertinent quotes (Gardner).
6. **Access academic and research blogs.** Social media doesn't have to depend solely on Facebook or Twitter. Many academic research blogs exist related to specific disciplines, like science, archeology, and history (Gray). Following are a few blog sites to review.

BLOG SITE	URL
Finds and Features	http://findsandfeatures.wordpress.com
Love of History	http://constantinakatsari.wordpress.com
MicrobiologyBytes	http://www.microbiologybytes.com/blog
Research Blogging	http://www.researchblogging.org
Science in the Open	http://cameronneylon.net
Science of the Invisible	http://scienceoftheinvisible.blogspot.com
Stanford Blog Directory	http://blog.stanford.edu
Starting out in Science	http://begsci.wordpress.com

Figure 3 is the home page for Delicious.com, a social media search engine that provides access to informatics, videos, pictures, tweets, blog posts, articles, and related tags.

FIGURE 3 Home Page for Delicious.com

Source: Courtesy of Delicious.com

SPOTLIGHT

Conducting Research to Find Solutions

Tom Woltkamp is senior manager of information solutions for Teva Neuroscience, a global leader in the "development, production and marketing of generic and proprietary branded pharmaceuticals"(http://www.tevapharm.com/). Teva Pharmaceutical Industries is home based in Israel; Teva Neuroscience, a subsidiary of Teva Pharmaceuticals, is based in Kansas City, Missouri, with branches in Florida, Pennsylvania, Texas, North Carolina, California, Minnesota, and Canada.

Approximately 20 employees and consultants report to Tom regarding computer infrastructure (computer networks, help desks, call centers, hardware/software purchases) and application development for programming, software integration, installation, configuration, Web programming, and customized documentation.

On an ongoing basis, Teva employees in finance, human resources, sales, and the company's call centers need new software applications. They ask Tom's group to find solutions to their needs. The research and documentation process for Teva's software development is as follows:

- **Project Charter.** These brief reports "drive the research." In a page or two, the Teva departments with which Tom works "write down what they want." They clarify their needs, as Tom says, by stating "here's my problem," "here's what I think I want to do about it," and "here's what I think the benefits will be."

That's when Tom begins his research into finding solutions for their software needs. Tom and his team conduct both primary and secondary research:

- **Questionnaires.** Tom and his group create FAQ checklists where they "play 20 questions to find what our end users want." They meet with their clients and discuss the project parameters.
- **Internet Searches.** After the initial questionnaire, which helps zero in on the client's needs, Tom and his team search the Internet for "knowledge and solutions." They want to find out more about the topic of research and see if any products already exist that can meet their needs or software they can "tweak" for customization.
- **Consultation.** Another avenue of research involves meeting with consultants—experts in the field—for their take on the topic.
- **Interviews.** Tom works with "key partners," including banks, vendors, professional organizations, and patients using the company's pharmaceuticals. By interviewing these constituents, Tom can learn more about how other entities might have solved similar problems or how the customers using a drug can be better served.
- **Online and Hard-copy Journals.** An excellent secondary source of research for Tom is professional journals, such as *PC Magazine, Call Center Magazine,* and *CRM Magazine* (which focuses on customer relations management).

Tom and his team spend approximately 20–30 percent of their work time on research. Why? Research allows Tom to make sure that the software solutions he and his team design and develop are correct. Research helps Tom ensure that his products are on target to meet the client's needs; will be time and cost efficient; and meet national, international, and industry standards. Research helps Tom make certain that he can achieve customer satisfaction and provide value to his organization.

The Writing Process at Work

Writing a research report, as with other types of technical correspondence, is easiest when you follow a process. Prewrite (determine objectives and conduct research to gather your data), write a draft, and rewrite to ensure that you meet your goals successfully.

Prewriting Research Techniques

Select a general topic (or the topic you have been asked to study). Your topic may be a technical term, phrase, innovation, or dilemma. If you're in biomedical technology, for example, you might want to focus on biohazards in the workplace. If you work in electronics, select a topic related to nanotechnologies. If your field is computer science, you could focus on developments in online gaming software.

Spot-check Sources of Information. Check a library or online sources to find material that relates to your subject. A quick review of your library's online periodical databases, such as Research Library from ProQuest or other equivalent sources, will help you locate periodical articles. Your library will have an electronic edition of the *Reader's Guide to Periodical Literature* and other similar specialized periodical indexes. A keyword search of Internet metasearch engines will give you an idea of how much information will be available through the Internet.

Establish a Focus. After you have chosen a topic for which you can find available source material, decide what you want to learn about your topic. A focus statement can guide you. In other words, if you are interested in biomedical technology, you might write a focus statement such as the following:

> I want to research current problems with biohazards in the workplace, including crisis management, disposal of hazardous materials, and training for employees.

◀ EXAMPLE

For electronics, you could write the following:

> I want to research the uses, expenses, and maintenance of nanotechnology.

◀ EXAMPLE

If you are in computer sciences, you might write the following:

> I want to discover the uses, impact on employment, and expenses of software for online gaming.

◀ EXAMPLE

With focus statements such as these, you can begin researching your topic, concentrating on articles pertinent to your topic.

Research Your Topic. You may feel overwhelmed by the prospect of research. But there are many sources that, once you know how to use them, will make the act of research less overwhelming.

Books. All books owned by a library are listed in online catalogs. Books can be searched in online catalogs in a variety of ways: title, author, subject, keyword, or using some combination of these.

Periodicals. Use electronic or print periodical indexes to find articles on your topic. Online indexes can be searched in a variety of ways: title, author, subject, keyword, or using a combination of these.

Indexes to general, popular periodicals. Three leaders in providing periodical material in a general database are Gale/Cengage's Academic OneFile, Ebsco's Academic Search Premier, and ProQuest's Research Library. All are general resources in that they present material on a wide range of subjects or disciplines. However, each of the three presents this content from scholarly/professional sources, popular magazines, and from news sources. The content can be segmented to represent these categories of periodicals. There are electronic and print counterparts for some of these. The electronic indexes provide the full text of many of the articles.

EXAMPLES ▶

- *Reader's Guide to Periodical Literature*
- *Research Library from ProQuest*
- *Academic Search Premier*
- *Newsbank*

Indexes to specialized, scholarly, or technical periodicals. Many libraries provide access to one or more specialized indexes covering the literature of a particular subject area. There are electronic and print counterparts for most of these. The electronic indexes provide the full text of many of the articles.

EXAMPLES ▶

- **Applied Science & Technology Index.** Covers engineering, aeronautics and space sciences, atmospheric sciences, chemistry, computer technology and applications, construction industry, energy resources and research, fire prevention, food and the food industry, geology, machinery, mathematics, metallurgy, mineralogy, oceanography, petroleum and gas, physics, plastics, the textile industry and fabrics, transportation, and other industrial and mechanical arts.
- **Business Periodicals Index.** Covers major U.S. publications in marketing, banking and finance, personnel, communications, computer technology, and so on.
- **ABI/Inform.** Covers business and management.
- **General Science Index.** Covers the pure sciences, such as biology and chemistry.
- **Social Sciences Index.** Covers psychology, sociology, political science, economics, and other social sciences topics.
- **ERIC (Education Resources Information Center).** Provides bibliography and abstracts about educational research and resources. Available for free through the Internet.
- **PubMed.** Covers medical journals and allied health publications.
- **PsycINFO.** Covers psychology and behavioral sciences.
- **LexisNexis.** Includes the full text of newspaper articles, reports, transcripts, law journals, and legal reports and other reference sources in addition to general periodical articles.

The Internet. Millions of documents from countless sources are found on the Internet. You can find material on the Internet published by government agencies, organizations, schools, businesses, or individuals (see Table 1). The list of options grows daily. For example, nearly all newspapers and news organizations have online Web sites.

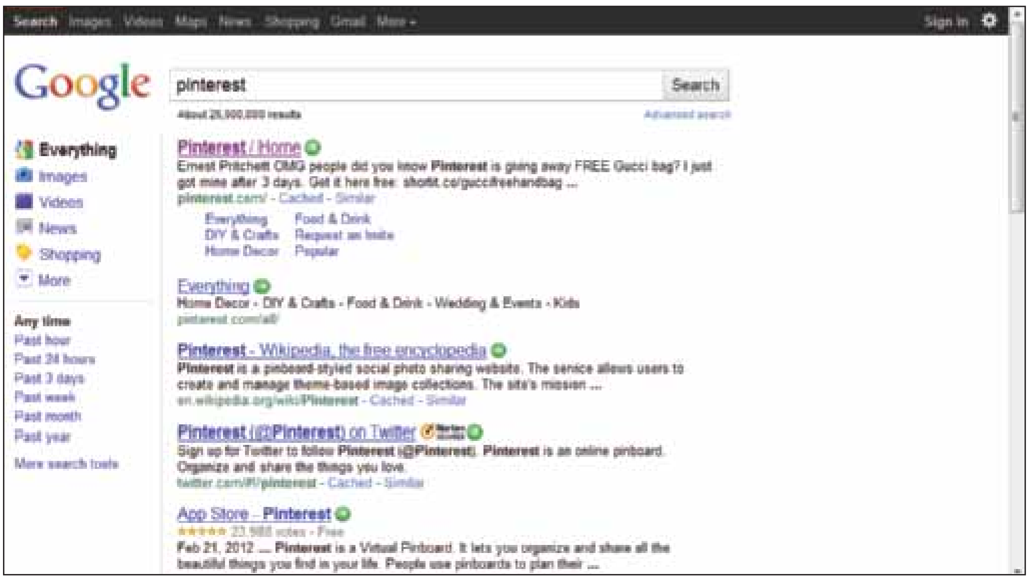
See Figure 4 for a sample of the Google search engine.

Accessing online newspapers and magazines. Many periodicals provide a current look at articles but charge for past articles or have otherwise limited offerings available on their Web sites. For example, the *Kansas City Star* stories generally reside on kansascity.com for seven

TABLE 1 A Sample of Internet Research Sources

Search Engines, Directories, Metasearch Engines	Online References	Online Libraries	Online Newspapers	Online Magazines	Online Government Sites
• Yahoo • Excite • Lycos • AltaVista • MetaSearch • MetaCrawler • Google • Britannica.com • Ask.com • Dogpile	• *Webster's Dictionary* • *Roget's Thesaurus* • *Britannica Online Encyclopedia* • *Encyclopedia Smithsonian* • *The Old Farmer's Almanac*	• Library of Congress • New York Public Library • Cleveland Public Library • Gutenberg Project • Most city and university libraries	• *New York Times* • CNN • *USA Today* • *Washington Post* • *Kansas City Star* • Most city newspapers	• *National Geographic* • *Atlantic* • *The New Republic* • *U.S. News Online* • *Time Magazine* • *Ebony Online* • *Slate*	• United Nations • The White House • The IRS • U.S. Postal Service • USA.gov • Most states' supreme courts, legislatures, executive offices, and local governments

FIGURE 4 Google Search Engine



Source: Google 2012 www.google.com

to fourteen days from the date of posting/publication. After that time, they move to the library archives. There is a fee to read stories in the archives. Although many articles are available online, you will have to access other newspaper or magazine articles in hard-copy format.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For a great, one-stop source for technical communication articles, visit http://www.articles911.com/, "an Internet Source For Finding Free Articles on all aspects of work life. Teams, management, performance appraisal, conflict, job hunting, human resources. Over 2,000 articles listed."

Finding Information Online

To find information online, use directories, search engines, or metasearch engines.

Directories. Directories, such as Yahoo, Librarians' Internet Index, Infomine, About.com, and Google Directory, let you search for information from a long list of predetermined categories, including the following:

Arts	Government	Politics and Law
Business	Health and Medicine	Recreation
Computers	Hobbies	Science
Education	Money and Investing	Society and Culture
Entertainment	News	Sports

FAQs: Ethical Considerations when Evaluating Online Sources

Q: Can I quote or paraphrase from any source? Aren't all sources on the Internet equally valid?

A: Not all information, even if it's published online, is valid. Before you quote or paraphrase information, ask yourself these questions:

- What are the author's credentials? Not everyone who publishes a blog entry, a Twitter comment, a Web site, or an editorial in an online newspaper necessarily is an expert in the field. Is the author a college professor, a noted scientist, a government official, or some unknown individual? If you are uncertain about the author's background, you can perform research about the author by going to a search engine, such as Google, to find out the author's level of education, affiliations, and other publications.
- Is the source of information reputable? Not all online publications are equal. Many blog entries, Twitter comments, Facebook pages, YouTube videos, or Web sites do not go through editorial review. Just because someone publishes a comment on their blog doesn't mean it is a valid source of information. In contrast, online journals, magazines, and newspapers generally hire professional writers, conduct research, cite sources, and verify information before it is published.
- Is the information up to date? Some information on the Internet is dated. If content is old, it might no longer be valid. Check the dates of publication to determine whether the content is still relevant and valid.
- Is the information biased? Much of what a person writes has a bias. However, some publications are more biased than others. To determine whether your source of information is biased, check to see who might have funded the research, who publishes the journal or magazine, or what affiliations the author might have.

To access any of these areas, click on the appropriate category and then "drill down," clicking on each subcategory until you get to a useful site.

Search Engines. Search engines, such as Google, Ask.com, Yahoo! search, and Exalead, let you search millions of Web pages by keywords. Type a word, phrase, or name in the appropriate blank space and press the Enter key. The search engine will search through documents on the Internet for "hits," documents that match your criteria. One of two things will happen: Either the search engine will report "no findings," or it will report that it has found many sites that contain information on your topic.

In the first instance, "no findings," you'll need to rethink your search strategy. You may need to check your spelling of the keywords or find synonyms. For example, if you want to research information about online writing, you could try typing "writing online," "online writing," "electronic writing," "writing electronically," and other similar terms. In the second instance, finding too many hits, you'll need to narrow your search. For example, if you are researching disasters in the workplace, you cannot type in "crisis management." That's too broad. Instead, try "crisis management planning," "crisis management jobs," "crisis management training," and so on.

Metasearch Engines. A metasearch engine, such as Ixquick and Clusty, lets you search for a keyword or phrase in a group of search engines at once, saving you the time of searching separately through each search engine. In addition to these sources, you can consult the following for help: U.S. government publications, databases, and your reference librarian.

Using Quotes, Paraphrases, and Summaries

Read your researched material and take notes by quoting, paraphrasing, and summarizing. Once you have researched and located a source (whether it is online, or a hard-copy book, magazine, journal, or newspaper article), study the material. For a book, use the index and the table of contents to locate your topic. When you have found information about your topic, refer to the pages indicated and skim, reading selectively.

For shorter documents, such as magazine or journal articles or online materials, you can read closely. Reading and rereading the source material is an essential step in understanding your researched information. After you have studied the document thoroughly, go through it page by page and find content to quote, paraphrase, and summarize. This information will help you develop your ideas.

Quoting. When you quote, type the words and punctuation exactly as they appear in the original source. You cannot haphazardly change a word, a punctuation mark, or the ideas conveyed. Whether you use a quote or a paraphrase, however, you must correctly cite the source . Following are three simple rules for correct quoting:

Quote the author word for word.

EXAMPLE

> "Corporate giants such as Comcast, JetBlue Airways, Whole Foods Market and others are beefing up direct communications with customers through social-media tools such as Twitter, Facebook, and YouTube" (Swartz, "Businesses Get Cheap Help," B1).

Delete unnecessary words by using ellipses—three spaced periods (. . .). Be sure not to change the author's content or correct grammatical structure if you delete text.

EXAMPLE

> "Corporate giants . . . Comcast, JetBlue Airways, Whole Foods Market . . . are beefing up direct communications with customers through social-media tools such as Twitter, Facebook, and YouTube" (Swartz, "Businesses Get Cheap Help," B1).

Use brackets to insert words for clarity.

EXAMPLE

> "Comcast, JetBlue Airways, Whole Foods Market and others [members of the Fortune 500] are beefing up direct communications with customers through social-media tools such as Twitter, Facebook, and YouTube" (Swartz, "Businesses Get Cheap Help," B1).

Paraphrasing. When you paraphrase, restate the original information using your own words and sentence structure. Note that you do not need to quote proper nouns like people's names, states, organizations, and companies.

EXAMPLE

> Many large corporations including Comcast, PepsiCo, JetBlue Airways, and Whole Foods Market use social media such as Twitter, Facebook, and YouTube to provide rapid customer service (Swartz, "Businesses Get Cheap Help," B1).

Summarizing. When you summarize content from an article, book, chapter, blog, or Web site, do the following:

- Provide the works cited or references information (documentation) for the material that you're summarizing.
- Begin with an introduction clearly stating the author's primary focus.
- Explain the author's primary contentions and omit secondary side issues.
- Explain the author's contentions through pertinent facts and figures while avoiding lengthy technicalities.

- Organize your discussion section according to the author's method of organization.
- Conclude the summary by reiterating the author's primary contentions, reveal the author's value judgment, or state the author's recommendations for future action.

The following two examples illustrate an original source of information from an architectural engineering company's Web site and a summary of the same information.

EXAMPLE ▶

Original Source of Information

"In the very competitive arena of site design, GBA strives for innovative, cost-effective, and functional design solutions that begin with a thorough understanding of the client's needs and goals for the project."

"Our approach may include but is not limited to consideration of traffic impact and transportation access, environmental constraints and opportunities, parking, storm water runoff, and the cost of infrastructure improvements, depending on the needs of the project. We are also experienced in the design of sustainable site features including Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Low Impact Development (LID)."

"When it comes to development, it's all about location and site accommodations. We have the ability to follow the critical path approach to obtaining planning and environmental permits, which enables our clients to start construction earlier. GBA focuses on identifying development issues early and creating an action plan to resolve these issues, which are then coordinated and executed concurrently with development of a site design package ("Site Development." GBA Architects and Engineers. 2012. Web. 14 Feb. 2012)."

EXAMPLE ▶

Summarized Content

GBA Architects and Engineers focuses on their clients' goals when designing affordable, practical, and unique facilities. A site development that meets client needs and construction deadlines must factor in traffic, environmental laws, sustainability, cost considerations, and the acquisition of necessary permits. How does GBA achieve these goals? They create a plan of action that can identify problems and solve construction issues in a timely and professional manner ("Site Development." GBA Architects and Engineers. 2012. Web. 14 Feb. 2012).

Achieving Focus

Isolate the Main Point. After you finish your research, isolate the main points discussed in the books or periodicals. Of the major points in an article or book, sometimes only three or four ideas will be relevant for your topic. Choose the ones discussed repeatedly or those that most effectively develop the ideas you want to pursue.

Write a Statement of Purpose. Once you have chosen two to four main ideas from your research, write a purpose statement that expresses the direction of your research. For example, one student wrote the following statement of purpose after performing research on social media.

EXAMPLE ▶

The purpose of this report is to reveal the future of social media in business including the application of YouTube instructional videos, tweets, and Facebook pages.

FIGURE 5 Topic Outline

I. Sensors used to help robots move
   A. Light
   B. Sound
   C. Touch
II. Touch sensor technology (microswitches)
   A. For gripping
   B. For maintaining contact with the floor
III. Optical sensors (LED/phototransistors)—Like bowling alley foul-line sensors
   A. Less bulky/connected to computer interface
   B. Not just for gripper, but for locating objects by following this sequence:
      1. Scan gripper to locate object
      2. Move gripper arm left and right to center object
      3. Move gripper forward to grasp
      4. Close gripper
   C. Problem—What force to use for gripping?
IV. Force sensors
   A. Spring and microswitch
   B. Optical encoder discs—Microprocessors determine speed of discs to determine force necessary
   C. Integrated circuits with strain gauge and pressure-sensitive paint
   D. Pressure sensors built with conductive foam
V. Conclusion

Create an Outline. After you have written a purpose statement, formulate an outline. An outline will help you organize your paragraphs and ensure that you stay on track as you develop your ideas through quotes and paraphrases. Figures 5 and 6 are examples of topic and sentence outlines.

Writing

You now are ready to write your research report. Provide an introductory paragraph, discussion (body) paragraphs, a conclusion or recommendation, and your works cited or references page(s).

Introduction. In one to three sentences or a short paragraph, tell your readers the purpose of your long report. This purpose statement informs your readers *why* you are writing or *what* you hope to achieve.

Discussion Section, Quoting, and Paraphrasing. The number of discussion paragraphs will depend on the number of divisions and the amount of detail necessary to develop your ideas. Use quotes and paraphrases to develop your content. Students often ask how much of a research report should be *their* writing, as opposed to researched information.

FIGURE 6 Sentence Outline

I. Because robots must move, they need sensors. These sensors could include light sensors, sound sensors, and touch sensors.

II. Touch sensors can have the following technology:
   A. Microswitches can be used for gripping.
   B. Microswitches can also be used for maintaining contact with the floor. This would keep the robot from falling down stairs, for example.

III. Optical sensors might be better than microswitches.
   A. LED/phototransistors are less bulky than switches.
   B. When connected to a computer interface, optical sensors also can help a robot locate an object as well as grip it.
   C. Here is the sequence followed when using optical sensors:
      1. The robot's grippers scan the object to locate it.
      2. The robot moves its gripper arms left and right to center the object.
      3. The robot moves forward to grip the object.
      4. The robot closes the gripper.
   D. The only problem faced is what force should be used when gripping.

IV. Force sensors can solve this problem.
   A. A combination spring and microswitch can be used to determine the amount of force required.
   B. Optical encoder discs can be used also. A microprocessor determines the speed of the disc to determine the required force.
   C. Integrated circuits with strain gauges and pressure-sensitive paint can be used to determine force.
   D. Another pressure sensor can be built from conductive foam.

V. To conclude, all these methods of tactile sensing comprise a field of inquiry important to robotics.

FAQs: The Ethics of Correct Source Citations

Q: Why is correct citation of sources so important?

A: It's all about avoiding plagiarism. Readers need to know where you found your information and from which sources you are quoting or paraphrasing. Therefore, you must document this information. Correct documentation is essential for several reasons:

- You must direct your readers to the books, periodical articles, and online reference sources that you have used in your research report or presentation. If your audience wants to find these same sources, they depend only on your documentation. If your documentation is incorrect, the audience will be confused. You want your audience to be able to rely on the correctness and validity of your research.
- Plagiarism is the appropriation (theft) of some other person's words and ideas without giving proper credit. Communicators are often guilty of unintentional plagiarism. This occurs when you incorrectly alter part of a quotation but still give credit to the writer. Even if you have cited your source, an incorrectly altered quotation constitutes plagiarism.
- On the other hand, if you intentionally use another person's words and claim them as your own, omitting quotation marks and source citations, you have committed theft. This is dishonest and

could raise questions about your credibility or the credibility of your research. Teachers, bosses, and colleagues will have little, if any, respect for a person who purposely takes another person's words, ideas, or visuals. It is essential, therefore, for you to cite your sources correctly.

- However, if you use "boilerplate" content (text that resides in your company's archive of research reports), you do not necessarily have to cite the source of the content.

Ethical technical communicators carefully cite the source of their material.

A general rule is to lead into and out of every quotation or paraphrase with your own writing. In other words,

- Make a statement (your sentence).
- Support this generalization with a quotation, paraphrase, or summary (referenced material from another source).
- Provide a follow-up explanation of the referenced material's significance (your sentence).
- Cite sources for all paraphrased and quoted content.

Conclusion/Recommendations. In a final paragraph, summarize your findings, draw a conclusion about the significance of these discoveries, and recommend future action.

Citing Sources. On a final page or in an appendix, provide an alphabetized list of your research sources.

Document your sources correctly. Your readers need to know where you found your information and from which sources you are quoting or paraphrasing. Therefore, you must document this information. Correct documentation is essential to avoid plagiarism.

To document your research correctly, you must provide parenthetical source citations following the quote or paraphrase within the text. Then, at the end of your document, supply a Works Cited page if you are using the Modern Language Association (MLA) style sheet. If you are using either the American Psychological Association (APA) or Council of Science Editors (CSE) style sheets, you will include a References page.

DOT.COM UPDATES

The following Web sites provide interactive tools for creating source citations:

- Easybib.com
- Citationmachine.net
- Bibme.org
- Workscited4u.com

Alternative Style Manuals Although APA, CSE, and MLA are popular style manuals, others are favored in certain disciplines. Refer to these if you are interested or required to do so.

- *U.S. Government Printing Office Style Manual.* Washington, DC: Government Printing Office, 2011.
- *The Chicago Manual of Style,* 16th edition. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2010.
- Turabian, Kate L. *A Manual for Writers of Term Papers, Theses, and Dissertations,* 7th edition. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007.

Rewriting

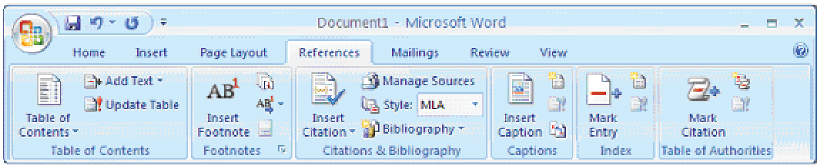
As with all types of writing, drafting the text of your research report is only the second stage of the writing process. To ensure that your report is effective, revise your draft as follows:

Add New Detail for Clarity and Persuasiveness. Too often, students and employees assume that they have developed their content thoroughly when, in fact, their assertions might be general and vague. This is especially evident in research reports. You might provide a quotation to prove a point, but is this documentation sufficient? Have you truly developed your assertions? If an idea within your report seems thinly presented, either add another quotation, paraphrase, or summary for additional support or explain the significance of the researched information.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

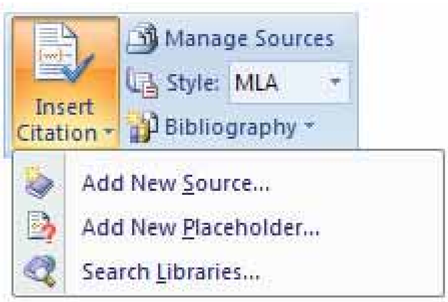
Using Microsoft Word 2010 for Documentation

Microsoft Word 2010 provides students and business employees many new tools related to research and documentation. When you click on the **References** tab, you will find ways to create tables of contents, insert footnotes, insert citations, and create either bibliographies or works cited notations.



For example, to create parenthetical and bibliographic citations, using MLA, follow these steps:

1. Click on the **Insert Citation** down arrow and **Add New Source.**



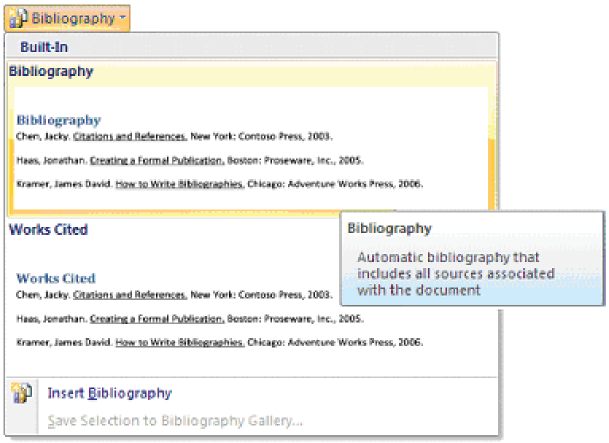
The following **Create Source** screen will pop up (the screen fields will be blank; we have added the appropriate information—author's name, title, publishing company, city, and date).

2. Click **OK** and the parenthetical source citation will be inserted.

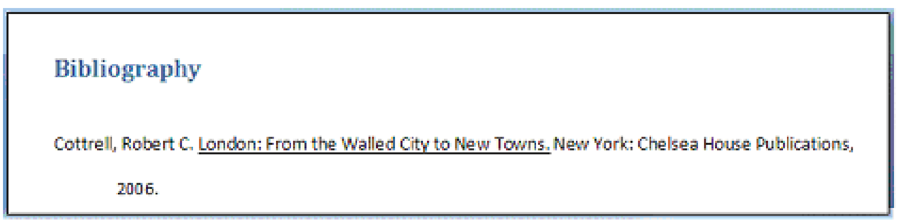
(Continued)

TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

3. To automatically insert the bibliographical information, click on the **Bibliography** down arrow and then on **Bibliography**.



The following will appear:



Bibliography

Cottrell, Robert C. London: From the Walled City to New Towns. New York: Chelsea House Publications, 2006.

Delete Dead Words and Phrases and Researched Information that Do Not Support Your Ideas Effectively. Good writing in a work environment is economical writing. Thus, as always, your goal is to communicate clearly and concisely. Delete words that serve no purpose to achieve conciseness. In addition, review your draft for clarity of focus. The goal of a research report is not to use whatever researched information you've found wherever it seems valid. Instead, you want to use quotations, paraphrases, and summaries only when they help develop your statement of purpose. If your research does not support your thesis, it is counterproductive and should be eliminated. In the rewriting stage, delete any documented research that is tangential or irrelevant.

Simplify Your Words for Easy Understanding. The goal of technical writing is to communicate, not to confuse. Write to be understood. Don't say *grain-consuming animal units* if you mean *chickens*. Don't call the July 2008 stock market crash a *fourth-quarter equity retreat*.

Move Information Within Your Report to Ensure Effective Organization. How have you organized your report? Did you use a problem/solution format? Did you use comparison/contrast or cause/effect? Is your report organized as a chronological narrative or by importance? Whichever method you've used, you want to be consistent. To ensure consistency, rewrite by moving any information that is misplaced.

Reformat Your Text for Reader-Friendly Ease of Access. Look at any technical journal. You will notice that the writers have guided their readers through the text by using

RESEARCH CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Have you considered your purpose and audience in choosing a research topic?

_____ **2.** Have you limited the focus of your research topic?

_____ **3.** Have you used primary and secondary research sources?

_____ **4.** Have you researched using secondary sources, such as books, periodicals, or the Internet; or primary sources, such as interviews and questionnaires?

_____ **5.** Do you have enough material to sufficiently develop your topic?

_____ **6.** Have you used an outline to organize your content?

_____ **7.** Have you used direct quotations, paraphrases, and summaries?

_____ **8.** Have you quoted and paraphrased correctly to avoid plagiarism?

_____ **9.** Have you documented your sources according to either the APA, CSE, or MLA formats to avoid plagiarism?

headings and subheadings. You will also notice that many journals use graphics (pie charts, bar graphs, line drawings, flowcharts, etc.) to clarify the writer's assertions. You should do the same. To help your readers follow your train of thought, reformat any blocks of wall-to-wall words. Add headings, subheadings, itemized lists, white space, and graphics.

Correct Any Errors. This represents your greatest challenge in writing a research report. You not only must be concerned with grammar and mechanics, as you are when writing an e-mail message, report, or proposal, but also with accurate quoting, paraphrasing, summarizing, parenthetical source citations, and works cited.

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. You can research a topic either using secondary sources, such as books, periodicals, or the Internet; or primary sources, such as interviews or questionnaires.
2. You need to consider the audience's level of technical knowledge when you write a research paper.
3. Primary and secondary research can be conducted to assist you in developing content for reports.
4. Narrowing a topic can help you find sources of information.
5. A focus statement lets you determine the direction of your document.
6. Use discrimination and consider the source when you research on the Internet.
7. Careful source citations help you avoid plagiarism.
8. The Council of Science Editors (CSE), Modern Language Association (MLA), and the American Psychological Association (APA) are three widely used style manuals for citing sources.
9. Quotations are taken word-for-word from the source.
10. Paraphrase by restating the original material in your own words without condensing.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. The City of Oak Springs, Iowa, needs to improve a 10-mile stretch of Ironhorse Avenue that runs east and west through the town. The winding, two-lane road was built in 1976. Since then, the city has grown with several businesses and new housing along this road, and the road no longer is sufficient for the increased traffic load. The road must be expanded to four lanes and straightened. To do so, new sewer lines, sidewalks, easements, esplanades, and lighting must be added. However, this construction will impact current homeowners (whose land, through eminent domain, can be expropriated without the owner's consent). In addition, part of the envisioned road construction will impact a wildlife refuge for waterfowl. Before construction plans can be made, city engineers must conduct research in order to determine needs and considerations of the public. Only after conducting primary and secondary research will the engineers be able to present a construction plan to Oak Springs' city management for their consideration and approval.

Assignment

a. Perform primary research. Create a questionnaire for interviewing city residents, as well as employees from the city's parks and recreation, police, fire, and transportation departments.
b. Conduct secondary research. Read statutes online for your city and state regarding eminent domain, real estate, environmental considerations, state wildlife refuges, zoning, planning, and land use. Summarize your findings for your professor either in an e-mail message or oral presentation.

2. You plan to create a new business, which you want to be designated as Minority and Women Owned (MWBD). Before you can incorporate your company, you must research the following:

- How you can become certified as MWBD
- The standards you must uphold
- The percentage of women and/or minorities that you must employ
- The benefits of operating such a business

Assignment

Research these topics (and any more that interest you) either online for secondary research or interview a MWBD business owner for primary research. Then, write an e-mail message or memo to your professor about your findings.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Summarize in one sentence any paragraph from this textbook. Provide a parenthetical source citation and documentation information.
2. Practice direct quotations by quoting from a source and citing the source parenthetically.
3. Select a technical topic from your major field or your job and write a research report. You might want to consider an area of interest such as the greenhouse effect, crisis management, online gaming, or nanotechnologies.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. Many communities have recycling projects that allow residents to recycle paper products, cans, and plastic. Not all businesses recycle, however. Research the benefits of recycling, determine how a business or businesses could implement a corporate recycling plan, and write a report recommending action based on your research.
2. In today's global economy, it is important to understand and accommodate multiculturalism and cross-culturalism in business. Research the following:
   - The unique challenges that cultural diversity presents to businesses
   - How companies have responded to these challenges

   Write a report recommending why and how a business or businesses can help employees develop cultural awareness.
3. Many companies track the time their employees spend either surfing the Web or sending and receiving Twitter messages, posting blog entries, or viewing Facebook and YouTube. Research the following:
   - Software that companies use to track employee electronic communication usage
   - Corporate guidelines for employee use of company-owned electronic communication hardware and software
   - The legal and ethical ramifications of an employee's private use of corporate-owned e-mail and Internet access
   - The legal and ethical ramifications of an employer eavesdropping on an employee's Web usage

   Write a research report on your findings and provide a corporate guideline for both employee and employer electronic communication responsibilities.
4. Entrepreneurialism is one of the fastest growing sectors in business. Many people are opening their own businesses. What does it take to open your own business? Before you can write an effective business plan and seek financing from a bank, you must research the project.

   Choose a new business venture, selling a product or service of your choice. What would it cost to open this business? What would be your best location, or should your business be online? What certifications or licensing is needed? How many personnel would you need? What equipment is necessary? Who would be your clientele?

   Based on research, write a proposal, appropriate for presentation to a bank. In this proposal, present your business plan for a new entrepreneurial opportunity.

WEB WORKSHOP

1. USA.gov allows you to research a wide variety of topics, such as education and jobs, benefits and grants, consumer protection, environment and energy, science and technology, and public safety and health. This Web site also provides information on breaking news. Access USA.gov and research a topic relevant to your career goals. Write an e-mail message or report to your instructor summarizing your findings.
2. Access a search engine such as Google, Ask.com, or Yahoo! search. Type in a topic relating to your major field. For example, for computer information technology, medical records and health information, or accounting, look for job openings in your field to learn about salary ranges, benefits, application requirements, and so forth. Report your findings either in an oral presentation to the class or in an e-mail message to your instructor.

PARENTHETICAL SOURCE CITATIONS AND DOCUMENTATION

To document research correctly, you must provide parenthetical source citations following the quote or paraphrase within the text. At the end of your document, supply a references page (American Psychological Association and Council of Science Editors) or a works cited page (Modern Language Association).

Parenthetical Source Citations

The American Psychological Association (APA), the Council of Science Editors (CSE), and the Modern Language Association (MLA) use a parenthetical form of source citations. If your boss or instructor requests footnotes or endnotes, you should still use these forms. However, the most modern approach to source citations according to MLA and APA requires only that you cite the source of your information parenthetically after the quotation or paraphrase. The CSE style manual uses a number after the quote or paraphrase to reference the source to the references page at the end of the document. CSE also uses an author-year sequence similar to APA.

APA Format

One Author. If you do not state the author's name or the year of the publication in the lead-in to the quotation, include the author's name, year of publication, and page number in parentheses, after the quotation.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints" (Cottrell, 2011, p. 118).

(Page numbers are included for quoted material. The writer determines whether page numbers are included for source citations of summaries and paraphrases.)

Two Authors. When you cite a source with two authors, always use both last names with an ampersand (&).

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (Gerson & Gerson, 2011, p. 158).

Three or More Authors. When your citation has more than two authors but fewer than six, use all the last names in the first parenthetical source citation. For subsequent citations, list the first author's last name followed by *et al.* (Latin for "and others"), the year of publication, and for a quotation, the page number.

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" (Conners et al., 2011, p. 2).

Anonymous Works. When no author's name is listed, include in the source citation the title or part of a long title and the year. Book titles are underlined or italicized, and periodical titles are placed in quotation marks.

> Flash drives have revolutionized data storage (*Electronic Databases,* 2011).

> Effective e-mail messages can be organized in three paragraphs ("Using Templates," 2011).

CSE Format

In-text citations for quoted or paraphrased material are in the form of superscript numbers. Sometimes, editors prefer that numbers are placed in parentheses or in brackets. The number refers to the numbered source citations on the references list at the end of the document. Many editors and publishers believe that a numbered form of citation is less intrusive to the reader than the method used by APA or MLA.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints."[1]

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (2).

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" [3].

MLA Format

One Author. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the author's last name and the page number of the information.

> "Viewing the molecular activity required state-of-the-art electron microscopes" (Heinlein 193).

Note that the period follows the parenthesis, not the quotation. Also note that no comma separates the name from the page number and that no lowercase *p* precedes the number.

Two Authors. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the authors' last names and the page number of the information.

> "Twitter has dramatically changed the way we write on the job" (Crider and Berry 292).

Three or More Authors. Writing a series of names can be cumbersome. To avoid this, if you have a source of information written by three or more authors, parenthetically cite one author's name, followed by *et al.* and the page number.

> "The development of gaming software is a growing industry" (Norwood et al. 93).

Anonymous Works. If your source has no author, parenthetically cite the shortened title and page number.

> "Robots are more accurate and less prone to errors caused by long hours of operation than humans" ("Useful Robots" 81).

Documentation of Sources

Parenthetical source citations are an abbreviated form of documentation. In parentheses, you tell your readers only the names of your authors and the page numbers on which the information can be found, or you provide a number that parallels the numbered source at the end of the document. Such documentation alone would be insufficient. Your readers would not know the names of the authors (in CSE numerical-sequence format), the titles of the books, the names of the periodicals, or the dates, volumes, or publishing companies. This more thorough information is found on the references page (APA) or works cited page (MLA), a listing of research sources alphabetized either by author's name or title (if anonymous). On the references page (CSE), you organize the citations numerically by the order in which the quote or paraphrase appeared in the text. This is the last page[s] of your research report.

Your entries should follow APA, CSE, and MLA standards. (Additional style manuals are available for many professions.) MLA no longer requires the use of URLs in source citations. Because Web addresses can change and documents sometimes appear in several different databases, MLA says that most readers can find electronic sources using title or author searches in Internet search engines. If you do include a URL, MLA says to put the URL in angle brackets after the date of access. Use slash marks to break a URL.

APA References

The APA style is commonly used in both engineering and scientific fields. The following are sample entries for the reference page, which is placed at the end of the document. Include on the reference page only sources from which you cited in the document. For a comprehensive illustration of reference page entries, use the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association* (2009) and the *APA Style Guide to Electronic References* (2009).

A book with one author

Cottrell, R. C. (2006). *Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II*. London: McFarland and Co., Inc.

A book with two authors

Heath, C. & Heath, D. (2007). *Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die*. New York: Random House.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell, J., McNeniman, L., & Langan, J. (1997). *The Macmillan writer.* Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends*. Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

A translated book

Phelps, R. (Ed.). (1983). *The collected stories of Colette* (M. Ward, Trans.). New York: Farrar, Straus & Giroux.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, K. (2005). What's in a Name? In R. Atwan (Ed.), *America now: short readings from recent periodicals* (pp. 12–20). NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, R. (2007, April). Getting—and keeping good clients. *Intercom,* 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, J. (2007, May 28). A question of honor. *Time,* 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

Internet. (2000). *The world book encyclopedia.* Chicago: World Book.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities [Computer software]. (2002–2004). Dell, Inc.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

E-mail

According to APA, do not include e-mail messages in the list of references. You should cite the message parenthetically in your text. (J. Millard, personal communication, April 2, 2011).

Blog

McWard, J. (2011, May 31). Graphics on-line. Message posted to http://www.jmcward.net.

Personal Web site

Mohr, E. (2011, Dec. 29). Home page of Ellen Mohr's Web site. Retrieved from http://emohr.edu.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. (2011, Jan. 5). Johnson County Community College. Retrieved from http://jccc.edu.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

APA References Page

Place the references page at the end of the document or in an appendix. The entries on the reference page are alphabetized by author's last name or title.

References

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends.* Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

CSE References

The CSE style guide shows two systems for organizing references at the end of the document. First, you can use the citation-sequence system that lists the numbered references in the order cited within the text (illustrated below). Second, you can follow the name-year system that lists references in alphabetical order by author's last name.

Personal e-mail messages, blog entries, personal Web sites, and entries to listservs should not automatically be included on a references list. According to the CSE style manual, the decision to include such references is left to publishers and editors.

The CSE style of documentation is used in the fields of biology and medicine. Following are sample entries using the numerical system for the references list. For a comprehensive

illustration of entries on the references list, use the *Scientific Style and Format: The CSE Manual for Authors, Editors, and Publishers* (2006).

A book with one author

Cottrell RC. Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II. London: McFarland and Co., Inc.; 2006. p 27–28.

A book with two authors

Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell J., McNeniman L., Langan J. The Macmillan writer. Boston: Allyn and Bacon; 1997. p 224.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends. Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central; 2007.

A translated book

Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton K. What's in a name? R. Atwan, editor. America now: short readings from recent periodicals. NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2005. p 12–20.

A signed article in a journal

Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007 April: 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe J. A question of honor. Time 2007 May 28: 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C: 3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. Technical Communication 2009 Sep 23; 22.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. [cited 2011 Jan 5]. Available from: http://jccc.edu.

CSE References Page

The references page in CSE style is placed either at the end of the document or in an appendix. List the sources in the order in which they appeared in the document.

References

1. Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007; April: 8–12.
2. Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.
3. Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.
4. Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.
5. Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C:3.

MLA Works Cited

MLA documentation format is used in the arts and humanities fields. Following are examples of entries on the works cited page. For a comprehensive illustration of MLA format for the works cited page, refer to the *MLA Style Manual and Guide to Scholarly Publishing* (2008). MLA also recently provided an abbreviated, updated style guide, *A Guide to MLA Style 2009 Update*.

A book with one author

Cottrell, Robert C. *Smoke Jumpers of the Civilian Public Service in World War II.* London: McFarland and Co., Inc., 2006. Print.

A book with two or three authors

Heath, Chip, and Dan Heath. *Made to Stick: Why Some Ideas Survive and Others Die.* New York: Random House, 2007. Print.

A book with four or more authors

Nadell, Judith, et al. *The Macmillan Writer.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1997. Print.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends.* Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

A translated book

Phelps, Robert, ed. *The Collected Stories of Colette.* Trans. Matthew Ward. New York: Farrar, Straus Giroux, 1983. Print.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, Kendra. "What's in a Name?" *America Now: Short Readings from Recent Periodicals.* Ed. Robert Atwan. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's, 2005. 12–20. Print.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, Rachel. "Getting—and Keeping Good Clients." *Intercom* (April 2007): 8–12. Print.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, Jason. "University to go wireless." *The Kansas City Star* 29 Mar. 2007: C3. Print.

An unsigned article

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

"Internet." *The World Book Encyclopedia.* 2000 ed. Chicago: World Book. Print.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities. Computer software. Dell, Inc., 2002–2004. Print.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

E-mail

Schneider, Max. "Re: Teaching Technical Communication." Message to Sharon Gerson. 2 Apr. 2011. Email.

Blog

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Personal Web site

Mohr, Ellen. Home page. 29 Dec. 2009. Web. 30 December 2011.

Professional web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. 5 Jan. 2009. Web. 14 Feb. 2011.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Ptsui [Peter Tsui]. "Questionnaire." *Society for Technical Communication Listserv.* 15 Sep. 2011. Web. 17 Sep. 2011.

MLA Works Cited Page

At the end of the document, include a works cited page or place this page in an appendix.

Works Cited

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends*. Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version*. National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 2 — SurveyMonkey Web Site for Creating Questionnaires. Courtesy of SurveyMonkey.

Figure 3 — Home Page for Delicious.com. Courtesy of Delicious.com.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Yuri Arcurs / Shutterstock

© Jupiterimages / Getty Images

REFERENCES

The American Psychological Association. 2012. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

Delicious.com. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

Fall, Jason, and Erik Deckers. "How to Use Social Media for Research and Development." *Entrepreneur*. 7 Dec. 2011. Web. 20 Feb. 2012.

Gardner, Oli. "10 Social Media Research Strategies to Inject Your Next Blog Post With 'Roids.'" *Social Media*. 20 Jul. 2011. Web. 20 Feb. 2012.

Google. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

Gray, Catherine. "Social Media: A Guide for Researchers." *Research Information Network*. 7 Feb. 2011. Web. 20 Feb. 2012.

Krum, Randy. *Cool Infographics*. 2007. Web. 20 Feb. 2012.

Messina, Chris. "Hashtags." 2010. Web. 20 Nov. 2011.

The Modern Language Association: MLA. 4 Oct. 2011. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

SurveyMonkey. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

This page intentionally left blank

Routine Correspondence

From Chapter 7 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

Routine Correspondence

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, a biotechnology company frequently corresponds through letters, memos, e-mail, instant messages, and text messages.

COMRMed, a wholesale provider of biotechnology equipment, is home-based in Reno, NV. COMRMed's CEO, Jim Goodwin, plans to capitalize on emerging nanotechnology to manufacture and sell the following:

- Extremely lightweight and portable heart monitors and ventilators
- Pacemakers and hearing aids, 1/10 the size of current products on the market
- Microscopic biorobotics which can be injected in the body to manage, monitor, and/or destroy blood clots, metastatic activities, arterial blockages, alveoli damage due to carcinogens or pollutants, and scar tissue creating muscular or skeletal immobility

COMRMed is a growing company with over 5,000 employees located in six cities and three states. To manage this business, supervisors and employees write on average over 5 letters, 10 memos, 50 e-mail messages, and numerous instant messages and text messages a day.

The letters are written to many different audiences and serve various purposes. COMRMed must write letters for employee files, to customers, job applicants, outside auditors,

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- **Understand that memos, letters, e-mail, instant messages, and text messages are an important part of your interpersonal communication on the job and differ in destination, purpose, format, audience, tone, delivery time, and security**
- **Use an effective subject line including a topic and a focus**
- **Follow the all-purpose template for memos, letters, and e-mail including an introduction where you state what you want and why you are writing; a body or discussion section for stating the details; and a conclusion where you tell the reader what to do next and when**
- **Write different types of routine messages including inquiry, response, cover (transmittal), complaint, adjustment, and confirmation**
- **Consider the audience whether you are writing a memo, letter, e-mail, instant message, or text message**
- **Use wizards to format memos and letters**
- **Follow techniques in this chapter to create effective instant messages and text messages**
- **Use checklists to evaluate the success of memos, letters, and e-mail**

governmental agencies involved in biotechnology regulation, insurance companies, and more. They write

- Letters of inquiry to retailers seeking product information (technical specifications, pricing, warranties, guarantees, credentials of staff, and so forth)
- Cover letters prefacing COMRMed's proposals
- Complaint letters written to manufacturers if and when faulty equipment and materials are received in shipping and adjustment letters to compensate retailers when problems occur

COMRMed's managers and employees also write memos to accomplish a variety of goals:

- Document work accomplished
- Call meetings and establish meeting agendas
- Request equipment from purchasing
- Preface internal proposals

To accomplish the majority of their routine correspondence, COMRMed's employees write many e-mail messages each day. These messages serve different purposes. Some e-mail messages are conversational. Other e-mail messages, however, must be professional in their style, organization, and content. This is especially true for e-mail messages sent to clients, vendors, and customers outside the company. These e-mail messages focus on timelines, deadlines, prices for service, meeting arrangements, cost breakdowns, procedural steps, and a host of other topics.

Finally, when COMRMed employees are working at distant locations, on the road, in hotels, or at the airport, they will use instant messages or text messages to ask each other quick questions or to casually check up on the status of a project.

Routinely, COMRMed employees spend a great deal of their time writing memos, letters, e-mail messages, instant messages, and text messages.

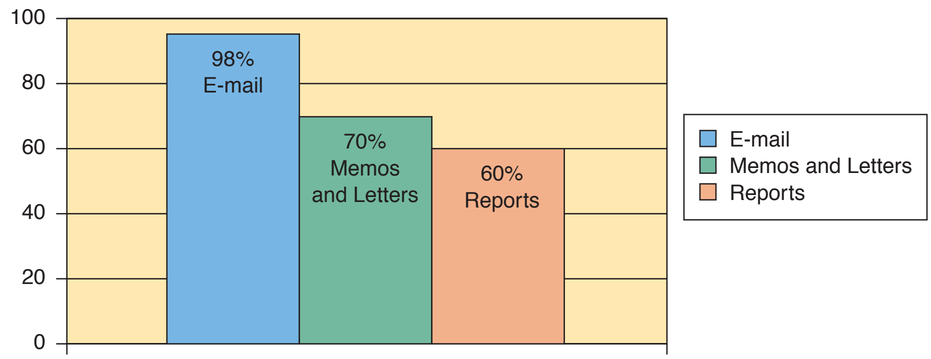
The Importance of Memos, Letters, E-Mail, Instant Messages, and Text Messages

On a day-to-day basis, employees routinely write memos, letters, e-mail messages, instant messages, reports, and text messages. The National Commission on Writing, in their *Writing: A Ticket to Work . . . Or a Ticket Out, A Survey of Business Leaders,* states that e-mail is "ubiquitous in the American economy" and that "more than half of all responding companies also report the following forms of communications as required 'frequently' or 'almost always': technical reports (59 percent), formal reports (62 percent), and memos and correspondence (70 percent)" (11). Figure 1 shows the significance of e-mail, memos, reports, and letters in the workplace.

This survey of "120 major American corporations employing nearly 8 million people" (National Commission on Writing) clearly states that you routinely can expect to write many e-mail messages, letters, memos, and reports on the job.

With the growing importance of mobile communication, instant messages and text messages also are written routinely on the job. According to Daniel Sieberg, reporter for CBS News, the number one use of smartphones is e-mail and texting. Talking on the phone actually ranks as the third function (Sieberg).

FIGURE 1 Percentage of Employees Who Consider E-mail, Memos, Letters, and Reports "Extremely Important"



Which Communication Channel Should You Use?

Memos, letters, and e-mail messages are three common types of communication channels. Other communication channels include reports, Web sites, blogs, PowerPoint presentations, oral communication, instant messages, text messages, and more. When should you write an e-mail message instead of a memo? When should you write a memo instead of a letter? Is an instant message or a text message appropriate to the situation? You will make these decisions based on your audience (internal or external), the complexity of your topic, the speed with which your message can be delivered, and security concerns.

For example, e-mail is a convenient communication channel. It is easy to write a short e-mail message, which can be sent almost instantaneously to your audience at the click of a button. However, e-mail might not be the best communication channel to use. If you are discussing a highly sensitive topic such as a pending merger, corporate takeover, or layoffs, an e-mail message would be less secure than a letter sent in a sealed envelope. You might need to communicate with employees working in a manufacturing warehouse. Not all of these employees will necessarily have an office or access to a computer. If you sent an e-mail message, how would they access this correspondence? A memo posted in the break room or a text message sent to their handhelds would be better choices of communication channels.

The Differences Among Routine Correspondence Channels

To clarify the distinctions among memos, letters, e-mail, instant messages (IM), and text messages (TM), review Table 1.

TABLE 1 Memos vs. Letters vs. E-mail vs. Instant Messages and Text Messages

Characteristics	Memos	Letters	E-mail	IM/TM
Destination	Internal: correspondence written to colleagues within a company.	External: correspondence written outside the business.	Internal *and* external: correspondence written to friends and acquaintances, coworkers within a company, and clients and vendors.	Internal *and* external: correspondence written to friends and acquaintances, coworkers within a company, and clients and vendors.
Format	Identification lines include "Date," "To," From," and "Subject." The message follows.	Includes letterhead address, date, reader's address, salutation, text, complimentary close, and signatures.	Identification lines: To and Subject. The Date and From are computer generated. Options include cc (complimentary copy), forwarding the e-mail message to others, and replying to numerous readers.	No format.
Audience	Generally high tech or low tech, mostly business colleagues.	Generally low-tech and lay readers, such as vendors, clients, stakeholders, and stockholders.	Multiple readers due to the internal and external nature of e-mail.	Multiple readers due to the internal and external nature of IM and TM.
Topic	Generally topics related to internal corporate information; abbreviations and acronyms often allowed.	Generally topics related to vendor, client, stakeholder, and stockholder interests; abbreviations and acronyms usually defined.	A wide range of diverse topics determined by the audience.	A wide range of diverse topics determined by the audience.
Complexity and Length of Communication	Memos usually are limited to a page of text. If you need to write longer correspondence and develop a topic in more detail, you might consider using a different communication channel, such as a short report.	Letters usually are limited to a page of text, though you might write a two- or three-page report using a letter format. If you need to develop a topic in greater detail than can be conveyed in one to three pages, you might want to use a different communication channel, such as a longer, formal report.	An effective e-mail message usually is limited to one viewable screen (requiring no scrolling) or two screens. E-mail, generally, is not the best communication channel to use for complex information or long correspondence. If your topic demands more depth than can be conveyed in a screen or two, you might want to write a report instead.	IM and TM are very brief communication channels with a limited number of characters—under 200.

(*Continued*)

TABLE 1 *(Continued)*

Characteristics	Memos	Letters	E-mail	IM/TM
Tone	Informal due to peer audience.	More formal due to audience of vendors, clients, stakeholders, and stockholders.	A wide range of tones due to diverse audiences. Usually informal when written to friends, informal to coworkers, more formal to management or external readers.	Very informal due to the limits placed on size.
Attachments or Enclosures	Hard-copy attachments can be stapled to the memo. Complimentary copies can be sent to other readers.	Additional information can be enclosed within the envelope. Complimentary copies can be sent to other readers.	Computer word processing files, HTML files and Web links, PDF files, RTF files, or downloadable graphics can be attached to e-mail. Complimentary copies can be sent to other readers.	Attachments can be sent using IM. You can send photo attachments with TM. However, sending file attachments with TM is limited.
Delivery Time	Determined by a company's in-house mail procedure.	Determined by the destination (within the city, state, or country). Letters could be delivered within three days but may take more than a week.	Often instantaneous, usually within seconds. Delays can be caused by system malfunctions or excessively large attachments.	Instantaneous.
Security	If a company's mail delivery system is reliable, the memo will be placed in the reader's mailbox. Then, what the reader sees on the hard copy page will be exactly what the writer wrote. Security depends on the ethics of coworkers and whether the memo was sent in an envelope.	The U.S. Postal Service is very reliable. Once the reader opens the envelope, he or she sees exactly what was written. Privacy laws protect the letter's content.	E-mail systems are not secure. E-mail can be tampered with, read by others, and sent to many people. E-mail stays within a company's computer backup system and is the property of the company. Therefore, e-mail is not private.	The same problems with e-mail security exist with TM and IM.

Reasons for Writing Memos, Letters, and E-Mail

You will write memos, letters, and e-mail to a wide range of readers. This includes your supervisors, coworkers, subordinates, vendors, stakeholders, customers, and multiple combinations of these audiences. Because of their frequency and widespread audiences, routine correspondence could represent a major component of your interpersonal communication skills within your work environment. Furthermore, memos, letters, and e-mail are flexible and can be written for many different purposes:

- **Documentation**—expenses, incidents, accidents, problems encountered, projected costs, study findings, hiring, and reallocations of staff or equipment.
- **Confirmation**—a meeting agenda, date, time, and location; decisions to purchase or sell; topics for discussion at upcoming teleconferences; conclusions arrived at; and fees, costs, or expenditures.
- **Procedures**—how to set up accounts, operate new machinery, use new software, or solve a problem.

FAQs: Why Write a Letter?

Q: Haven't letters been replaced by e-mail?

A: Though e-mail is quick, it might not be the best communication channel, for the following reasons:

1. E-mail might be too quick. In the workplace, you will write about topics that require a lot of thought. Because e-mail messages can be written and sent quickly, people too often write hurriedly and neglect to consider the impact of the message.
2. E-mail messages tend to be casual, conversational, and informal. Not all correspondence, however, lends itself to this level of informality. Formal correspondence related to contracts, for example, requires the more formal communication channel of a letter. The same applies to audience. You might want to write a casual e-mail to a coworker, but if you were writing to the president of a company, the mayor of a city, or a foreign dignitary, a letter would be a better, more formal choice of communication channel.
3. E-mail messages tend to be short. For content requiring more detail, a longer letter would be a better choice.
4. We get so many e-mail messages a day that they are easy to disregard—even easy to delete. Letters carry more significance. If you want to ensure that your correspondence is read and perceived as important, you might want to write a letter instead of an e-mail.
5. Letters allow for a "greater paper trail" than e-mail. Most employees' e-mail inboxes fill up quickly. To clean these inboxes up, people tend to delete messages that they don't consider important. In contrast, hard-copy letters are wonderful documentation.

- **Recommendations—**reasons to purchase new equipment, promote someone, award a contract to a vendor, or develop new software applications.
- **Feasibility—**studying the possibility of changes in the workplace (practices, procedures, locations, staffing, equipment, missions/visions).
- **Status—**daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, biannual, yearly statements about where you, the department, or the company is regarding many topics (sales, staffing, travel, practices, procedures, or finances).
- **Directive (delegation of responsibilities)—**informing subordinates of their designated tasks.
- **Inquiry—**asking questions about upcoming processes or procedures.
- **Cover—**prefacing a proposal, long report, or other attachments.

Using an All-Purpose Template for Memos, Letters, and E-mail

Memos, letters, and e-mail contain the following key components:

- Introduction
- Discussion
- Conclusion

Figure 2 shows an ideal, all-purpose organizational template that works well for routine correspondence.

Introduction. Get to the point in the introductory sentence(s). Write one or two clear introductory sentences which tell your readers *what* topic you are writing about and *why* you are writing. The following example invites the reader to a meeting, thereby communicating *what* the writer's intentions are. It also tells the reader that the meeting is one of a series of meetings, thus communicating *why* the meeting is being called.

EXAMPLE ▶

> In the third of our series of sales quota meetings this quarter, I'd like to review our productivity.

FIGURE 2 All-Purpose Template

Introduction:	Begin with a lead-in or overview stating *why* you are writing and *what* you are writing about.
Discussion:	Include detailed development, made accessible through highlighting techniques, explaining *exactly what* you want to say. * * *
Conclusion:	State *what* is next, *when* this will occur, and *why* the date is important.

Discussion. The discussion section allows you to develop your content specifically. Readers might not read every line of your routine correspondence (tending instead to skip and skim). Thus, traditional blocks of data (paragraphing) are not necessarily effective. The longer the paragraph, the more likely your audience is to avoid reading. Make your text more reader-friendly by itemizing, using white space, boldfacing, creating headings, or inserting graphics.

BEFORE	AFTER
This year began with an increase, as we sold 4.5 million units in January. In February we continued to improve with 4.6. March was not quite so good, as we sold 4.3. April was about the same with 4.2. May's sales increased to 5.6. June was our best month at 6 million units sold.	Monthly Sales (in Millions of Units) • January: 4.5 • February: 4.6 • March: 4.3 • April: 4.2 • May: 5.6 • June: 6.0

Conclusion. Conclude your correspondence with "thanks" and/or directive action. A pleasant conclusion could motivate your readers, as in the example below. A directive close tells your readers exactly what you want them to do next or what your plans are (and provides dated action).

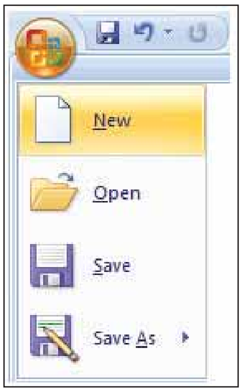
EXAMPLE ▶

> Congratulations! If our quarterly sales continue to improve at the current rate, we will double our sales expectations by 2014. Next Wednesday (12/22/14), please provide next quarter's sales projections and a summary of your sales team's accomplishments.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Using Memo and Letter Templates in Microsoft Word 2010

1. Click on the **Office** button located on the top left of your toolbar and scroll to **New**.



The following window will pop up.

2. Click on the type of document you want to write, such as Letters or Memos.

When you choose the communication channel, either of the following windows will pop up.

These templates and wizards are both good and bad. They remind you which components can be included in a memo or letter, make it easy for you to include these components, and let you choose ready-made formats. However, the templates also can create some problems. First, they are somewhat limiting in that they dictate what information you should include and where you should put this

(*Continued*)

TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

information. The content and placement of this information might contradict your teacher's or boss's requirements. Second, the templates are prescriptive, limiting your choice of font sizes and types. Our advice would be to use these templates and wizards with caution.

Essential Components of Memos

Memos, in addition to their introduction, body, and conclusion, must have identification lines. These include the date on which the memo is written, the name of the writer, the name or names of the readers, and a subject line, all followed by colons. See the example below:

EXAMPLE ▶

Date: March 15, 2014
To: John Staples
From: Marilyn Andrews
Subject: Sales Projections for Fiscal Year 2015

The subject line is especially important because it summarizes the memo's content. One-word subject lines do not communicate effectively, as in the following flawed subject line. The "Before" sample has a *topic* (a what) but is missing a *focus* (a what about the what).

BEFORE	AFTER
Subject: Sales	Subject: Report on Quarterly Sales

The Memo Checklist will give you the opportunity for self-assessment and peer evaluation of your writing.

MEMO CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Does the memo contain identification lines (Date, To, From, and Subject)?

_____ **2.** Does the subject line contain a topic and a focus?

_____ **3.** Does the introduction clearly state
- Why this memo has been written?
- What topic the memo is discussing?

_____ **4.** Does the body explain exactly what you want to say?

_____ **5.** Does the conclusion
- Tell when you plan a follow-up or when you want a response?
- Explain why this dated action is important?

_____ **6.** Are highlighting techniques used effectively for document design?

_____ **7.** Is the memo concise, limiting the length of words, sentences, and paragraphs?

_____ **8.** Is the memo clear,
- achieving specificity of detail?
- answering reporter's questions?

_____ **9.** Does the memo recognize audience,
- defining acronyms or abbreviations where necessary for various levels of readers (high tech, low tech, and lay)?

_____ **10.** Did you avoid grammatical errors? Errors will hurt your professionalism.

Essential Components of Letters

Your letter should be typed or printed on 8½" × 11" paper. Leave 1" to 1½" margins at the top and on both sides. Choose an appropriately business-like font (size and style), such as Times New Roman or Arial (12 point). Though "designer fonts," such as Comic Sans and Shelley Volante, are interesting, they tend to be harder to read and less professional. Your letter should contain the essential components shown in Figure 3.

FIGURE 3 Essential Letter Components

UNITED SPECTOGRAPH

Writer's address

19015 Lakeview Avenue
Columbus, OH 43212

Date

June 10, 2014

Reader's address

Kristy Pieburn
Corporate Communications, Inc.
1245 Grant
Chicago, IL 60611

Salutation

Dear Ms. Pieburn:

Letter text

Here is the schedule for your presentation during our Basic Information Training for Supervisors (BITS) seminar. You will hold your sessions in our Training Center at 19015 Lakeview Avenue.

The schedule and important information regarding your two, 8-hour seminars are as follows:

- Group 1, consisting of 15 employees, will meet Monday, from 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.
- Group 2, consisting of 18 employees, will meet Tuesday, from 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.

As you requested, the training room will have an overhead computer projector and laptop. During the morning sessions, coffee, juice, and rolls will be served. In the afternoon, seminar participants will be offered cold drinks and cookies. We look forward to working with you again. If I can answer any questions, please let me know.

Complimentary close

Sincerely,

Signed name

Martha Lee

Typed name

Martha Lee

Writer's Address. This section contains either your personal address or your company's address. If the heading consists of your address, you will include your street address and the city, state, and zip code. The state may be abbreviated with the appropriate two-letter abbreviation. If the heading consists of your company's address, you will include the company's name; street address; and city, state, and zip code.

Date. Document the month, day, and year when you write your letter. You can write your date in one of two ways: May 31, 2014, or 31 May 2014. Place the date one or two spaces below the writer's address.

Reader's Address. Place the reader's address two lines below the date.

- Reader's name (If you do not know the name of this person, begin the reader's address with a job title or the name of the department.)
- Reader's title (optional)
- Company name
- Street address
- City, state, and zip code

Salutation. The traditional salutation, placed two spaces beneath the inside address, is *Dear* and your reader's last name, followed by a colon (Dear Mr. Smith:). You can also address your reader by his or her first name if you are on a first-name basis with this person (Dear John:). If you are writing to a woman and are unfamiliar with her marital status, address the letter Dear Ms. Jones. However, if you know the woman's marital status, you can address the letter accordingly: Dear Miss Jones *or* Dear Mrs. Jones:

Letter Body. Begin the body of the letter two spaces below the salutation. The body includes your introductory paragraph, discussion paragraph(s), and concluding paragraph. The body should be single spaced with double spacing between paragraphs. Whether you indent the beginning of paragraphs or leave them flush with the left margin is determined by the letter format you employ.

Complimentary Close. Place the complimentary close, followed by a comma, two spaces below the concluding paragraph. The typical complimentary close is "Sincerely."

Signed Name. Sign your name legibly beneath the complimentary close.

Typed Name. Type your name four spaces below the complimentary close. You can type your title one space beneath your typed name. You also can include your title on the same line as your typed name, with a comma after your name.

Optional Components of Letters

In addition to the letter essentials, you can include the following optional components.

Subject Line. Place a subject line two spaces below the inside address and two spaces above the salutation.

EXAMPLE ▶

Dr. Ron Schaefer
Linguistics Department
Southern Illinois University
Edwardsville, IL 66205

Subject: Linguistics Conference Registration Payment

Dear Dr. Schaefer:

You also could use a subject line instead of a salutation.

EXAMPLE

Linguistics Department
Southern Illinois University
Edwardsville, IL 66205

Subject: Linguistics Conference Registration Payment

A subject line not only helps readers understand the letter's intent but also (if you are uncertain of your reader's name) helps you avoid such awkward salutations as "To Whom It May Concern," "Dear Sirs," and "Ladies and Gentlemen." In the simplified format, both the salutation and the complimentary close are omitted, and a subject line is included.

New-Page Notations. If your letter is longer than one page, cite your name, the page number, and the date on all pages after page 1. Place this notation either flush with the left margin at the top of subsequent pages or across the top of subsequent pages. (You must have at least two lines of text on the next page to justify another page.)

EXAMPLE

Left, margin, subsequent page notation	Across top of subsequent pages
Mabel Tinjaca Page 2 May 31, 2014	Mabel Tinjaca Page 2 May 31, 2014

Writer's and Typist's Initials. If the letter was typed by someone other than the writer, include both the writer's and the typist's initials two spaces below the typed signature. The writer's initials are capitalized, the typist's initials are typed in lowercase, and the two sets of initials are separated by a colon. If the typist and the writer are the same person, this notation is not necessary.

EXAMPLE

Sincerely,

W. T. Winnery

W. T. Winnery

WTW:mm

Enclosure Notation. If your letter prefaces enclosed information, such as an invoice or report, mention this enclosure in the letter and then type an enclosure notation two spaces below the typed signature (or two spaces below the writer and typist initials). The enclosure notation can be abbreviated "Enc."; written out as "Enclosure"; show the number of enclosures, such as "Enclosures (2)"; or specify what has been enclosed—"Enclosure: January Invoice."

Copy Notation. If you have sent a copy of your letter to other readers, show this in a copy notation. A complimentary copy is designated by a lowercase "cc." List the other readers' names following the copy notation. Type the copy notation two spaces below the typed signature or two spaces below either the writer's and typist's initials or the enclosure notation.

EXAMPLE ▶

Sincerely,
Brian Altman
Brian Altman
Enclosure: August Status Report
cc: Marcia Rittmaster and Larry Rochelle

The Letters Checklist will give you the opportunity for self-assessment and peer evaluation of your writing.

LETTERS CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Does your letter include the eight essential components (writer's address, date, reader's address, salutation, text, complimentary close, writer's signed name, and writer's typed name)?

_____ **2.** Does the introduction state *what* you are writing about and *why* you are writing?

_____ **3.** Does your discussion clearly state the details of your topic depending on the type of letter?

_____ **4.** Is your text accessible? To achieve reader-friendly ease of access, use headings, boldface, italics, bullets, numbers, underlining, or graphics (tables and figures). These add interest and help you readers navigate your letter.

_____ **5.** Have you helped your readers follow your train of thought by using appropriate modes of organization? These include chronology, importance, problem/solution, or comparison/contrast.

_____ **6.** Does your conclusion give directive action (tell what you want the reader to do next and when) and end positively?

_____ **7.** Is your letter clear, answering reporter's questions and providing specific details that inform, instruct, or persuade?

_____ **8.** Have you limited the length of your words, sentences, and paragraphs?

_____ **9.** Have you written appropriately to your audience? This includes avoiding biased language, considering the multicultural/cross-cultural nature of your readers, and your audience's role (supervisors, subordinates, coworkers, customers, or vendors). Have you created a positive tone to build rapport?

_____ **10.** Is your text grammatically correct? Errors will hurt your professionalism.

Essential Components of E-Mail

To convey your messages effectively and to ensure that your e-mail messages reflect professionalism, follow these tips for writing e-mail.

Identify Yourself. Identify yourself by name, affiliation, or title. You can accomplish this either in the "From" line of your e-mail or by creating a signature file or sig file. This sig file acts like an online business card. Once this identification is complete, readers will be able to open your e-mail without fear of corrupting their computer systems.

Provide an Effective Subject Line. Readers are unwilling to open unsolicited or unknown e-mail, due to fear of spam and viruses. In addition, corporate employees receive approximately 50 e-mail messages each day. They might not want to read every message sent to them. To ensure that your e-mail messages are read, avoid uninformative subject lines, such as "Hi," "What's New," or "Important Message." Instead, include an effective subject line, such as "Subject: Meeting Dates for Tech Prep Conference."

Keep Your E-mail Message Brief. Readers skim and scan. To help them access information quickly, "Apply the 'top of the screen' test. Assume that your readers will look at the first screen of your message only" (Munter, et al., 31). Limit your message to one screen (if possible).

SPOTLIGHT

How Is E-mail Used and Misused in Business Today?

Michael Smith, PE, President of George Butler Associates, Inc., an architectural-engineering consulting firm, supervises 270 employees, located in Kansas, Missouri, and Illinois. These include architects, engineers, scientists, and administrative support staff in human resources, marketing, information systems, and accounting.

Mike receives about 40 "meaningful e-mail" a day—and about 60 spam e-mail, attempting to tell him how to lose weight, buy gifts for his loved ones, make cost-effective travel arrangements, and so on. Mike deletes the spam, which is obvious at a glance in his e-mail in-box, and responds to the business-related correspondence.

He says that e-mail has been essential at GBA for at least two reasons:

The Good News:

1. **E-mail is fast and efficient.** For example, Mike finds that e-mail is ideal for setting up meetings with groups of individuals, including coworkers and clients. Before e-mail, he had to make multiple calls to his staff or customers, usually missing them while they were off-site. Or, he'd have to walk down the halls and up the stairs to leave messages on desks. Instead, with e-mail, Mike knows that the message will arrive at its intended location and that the recipients will respond.
2. **E-mail provides an "electronic record."** When GBA used to rely more heavily on the telephone, people had trouble remembering to document conversations. With e-mail, you have a communication trail: multiple e-mail messages reporting all communication that has occurred regarding a topic.

Unfortunately, Mike tells us that e-mail also has a few downsides.

The Bad News:

1. **E-mail lacks privacy.** Mike says that though phone calls made record keeping hard, they ensured privacy. All you needed to do was shut your office door or speak quietly. E-mail, in contrast, inadvertently can be sent to many people.
2. **E-mail can lead to inaccurate communication.** "Didn't I read somewhere that 65 percent of communication is body language?" Mike asks. This leads to a second problem. With e-mail, the people involved can't see each other's eyes, hand motions, shrugs, smiles, or frowns, nor can they hear the grunts, groans, or laughs. Much of this body language is lost with electronic communication.
3. **E-mail can be depersonalized.** Body language not only helps communication, but also it personalizes. E-mail, Mike notes, can be impersonal. In some instances, especially those regarding "contentious situations," Mike knows that a face-to-face discussion is the best way to solve a problem. In fact, Mike concludes that some people who are "conflict resistant" use e-mail as a way of avoiding person-to-person communication. To maintain good business relationships (with personnel as well as with customers), face-to-face talks often are needed.

Still, for speed and efficiency, e-mail is hard to beat.

FAQs: Professionalism in E-mail Messages

Q: Aren't e-mail messages just casual communication? Isn't it easy to write an e-mail message since you don't have to worry about grammar or correct style?

A: Nothing could be further from the truth. E-mail might be your major means of communication in the workplace. Therefore, you must pay special attention to correctness.

Listen to what managers at an engineering company say about e-mail messages:

- "Most workplace communication is now via e-mail. Business e-mail needs to be almost as formal and as carefully written as a letter because it is a formal and legal document. Never send an e-mail that you would not be comfortable seeing on the front page of a newspaper, because some day you may."
- "I see more and more new hires wanting to rely on e-mail. It is a totally ineffective way to resolve many issues on an engineering project. But they seem to feel it is okay for almost any communication. I suspect the general acceptance by their peers for this form of communication has led them to mistakenly assume the same is true for a business setting."

(*Continued*)

(FAQ Continued)

- "Many people tend to be very 'social' in e-mails. Your employer owns your e-mails written on your work computers. They are NOT private. They can be used not only against you, but against your firm in court. For example, if I send an e-mail to a coworker that states in it somewhere what a lousy job Frank is doing on the such-and-such project and that project goes bad, it is possible that e-mail could end up in court and be used against my employer. In my mind all I was doing was venting my frustrations to an understanding friend and coworker. But, in reality, I am creating a permanent record of anything I say."

(Gerson, et al. *Core Competencies*)

Organize Your E-mail Message. Successful writing usually contains an introductory paragraph, a discussion paragraph or paragraphs, and a conclusion. Although many e-mail messages are brief, only a few sentences, you can use the introductory sentences to tell the reader why you are writing and what you are writing about. In the discussion, clarify your points thoroughly. Use the concluding sentences to tell the reader what is next, possibly explaining when a follow-up is required and why that date is important.

Use Highlighting Techniques Sparingly. Many e-mail platforms will let you use highlighting techniques, such as boldface, italics, underlining, computer-generated bullets and numbers, centering, font color highlighting, and font color changes. Many other e-mail platforms will not display such visual enhancements. To avoid having parts of the message distorted, limit your highlighting to bullets, numbers, double spacing, and headings.

Be Careful When Sending Attachments. When you send attachments, tell your reader within the body of the e-mail message that you have attached a file. Specify the file name of your attachment and the software application that you have used (HTML, PowerPoint, PDF, RTF—rich text format—Word, or Works); and use compression (zipped) files to limit your attachment size.

Practice Netiquette. When you write your e-mail messages, observe the rules of "netiquette."

- **Be courteous.** Do not let the instantaneous quality of e-mail negate your need to be calm, cool, deliberate, and professional.
- **Be professional.** Occasionally, e-mail writers compose excessively casual e-mail messages. They will lowercase a pronoun like "i," use ellipses (. . .) or dashes instead of more traditional punctuation, use instant messaging shorthand language or "textese" such as "LOL" or "BRB," and depend on emoticons (☺ ☹). These e-mail techniques might not be appropriate in all instances. Don't forget that your e-mail messages represent your company's professionalism. Write according to the audience and communication goal.
- **Avoid abusive, angry e-mail messages.** Because of its quick turnaround abilities, e-mail can lead to negative correspondence called flaming. Flaming is sending angry e-mail, often TYPED IN ALL CAPS. Readers can perceive the all caps as yelling, such as in the following example.

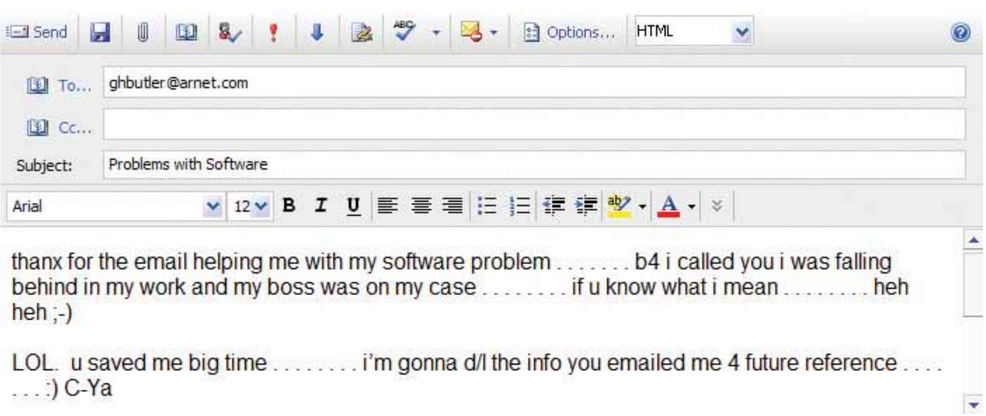
EXAMPLE ▶

Subject: EXCESSIVE PRINTER PAPER

I HAVE TALKED WITH SEVERAL PEOPLE AND THIS SEEMS TO BE A PROBLEM IN YOUR DEPARTMENT. SOMEONE PRINTS INFORMATION AND WON'T PICK IT UP AT THE PRINTER. THEN THE NEXT PERSON HAS TO

SORT THROUGH THE PRINTED MATERIAL TO FIND WHAT HE OR SHE WANTS. SOME PRINTOUTS ARE NEVER USED; THEY JUST SIT THERE FOR DAYS, GETTING IN OTHER PEOPLE'S WAY. PEOPLE SHOULD JUST PICK UP THEIR PRINTING AND GET IT OUT OF EVERYONE ELSE'S WAY. THAT'S ONLY COMMON COURTESY. BUT THE PEOPLE IN YOUR DEPARTMENT AREN'T EVEN REMOTELY CONSIDERATE OF OTHERS. IF YOU MANAGEMENT PEOPLE WOULD JUST DO YOUR JOBS, NONE OF THIS WOULD HAPPEN.

The following is an example of an unprofessional e-mail message.


To... ghbutler@arnet.com

Cc...

Subject: Problems with Software

thanx for the email helping me with my software problem . . . . b4 i called you i was falling behind in my work and my boss was on my case . . . . if u know what i mean . . . . heh heh ;-)

LOL. u saved me big time . . . . i'm gonna d/l the info you emailed me 4 future reference . . . . :) C-Ya

◀ EXAMPLE

This e-mail is flawed due to its use of instant messaging abbreviations, lowercase text, ellipses (. . .), slang, and emoticons. Though these techniques might be appropriate for personal communication, avoid overly casual e-mail messages for job-related communication.

Use the e-mail checklist to evaluate your correspondence.

E-MAIL CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Does the e-mail use the correct address?

_____ **2.** Have you identified yourself? Provide a sig (signature) line.

_____ **3.** Did you provide an effective subject line? Include a *topic* and a *focus*.

_____ **4.** Have you effectively organized your e-mail? Consider including the following:
- Opening sentence(s) telling *why* you are writing and *what* you are writing about.
- Discussion unit with itemized points telling *what exactly* the e-mail is discussing.
- Concluding sentence(s) *summing up* your e-mail message or telling your audience what to do next.

_____ **5.** Have you used highlighting techniques sparingly?
- Avoid boldface, italics, color, or underlining.
- Use bullets, numbers, headings, and double spacing for access.

_____ **6.** Did you practice netiquette?
- Be polite, courteous, and professional.
- Don't flame.
- Don't overuse textese.

_____ **7.** Is the e-mail concise, limiting the length of words, sentences, and paragraphs? Have you limited your e-mail to one or two screens?

_____ **8.** Did you identify and limit the size of attachments?
- Tell your reader(s) if you have attached files and what types of files are attached (PPT, PDF, RTF, Word, etc.).
- Zip large files.

_____ **9.** Does the e-mail recognize audience?
- Define acronyms or abbreviations where necessary.
- Consider a diverse audience (factoring in multiculturalism or gender).

_____ **10.** Did you avoid grammatical errors? Grammar errors will negate your professionalism.

Criteria for Different Types of Routine Correspondence

Choosing whether or not to write a memo, letter, or e-mail message will be determined by your audience. Since letters go outside your company, the audience is usually a low-tech or lay reader, demanding that you define your terms specifically. In a memo, your in-house audience is easy to address (usually high tech or low tech). You often can use more acronyms and abbreviations in memos than you can in letters. Because e-mail messages are sent to both internal and external audiences, you have to determine the amount and type of information based on your knowledge of the audience.

You will write many different types of correspondence on a daily basis to both internal and external audiences including memos, letters, and e-mail messages. Some of the different types of routine messages include the following:

- Inquiry
- Response
- Cover (Transmittal)
- Complaint
- Adjustment
- Confirmation

Inquiry

If you want information about degree requirements, equipment costs, performance records, turnaround time, employee credentials, or any other matter of interest to you or your company, you can request that information in a letter, memo, or e-mail. Inquiries demand specificity. For example, if you write, “Please send me any information you have on your computer systems,” you are in trouble. You will either receive any information the reader chooses to give you or none at all. Look at the following flawed example from a biochemical waste disposal company.

BEFORE

Please send us information about the following filter pools:

1. East Lime Pool
2. West Sulphate Pool
3. East Aggregate Pool

Thank you.

The reader replied as follows:

I would be happy to provide you with any information you would like. However, you need to tell me what information you require about the pools.

I look forward to your response.

The first writer, recognizing the error, rewrote as follows:

AFTER

Providing specific details saves your readers time by quantifying your request.

My company, Jackson County Hazardous Waste Disposal, Inc., needs to purchase new waste receptacles. One of our clients used your products in the past and recommended you. Please send us information about the following:

1. Lime Pool—costs, warranties, time of installation, and dimensions
2. Sulphate Pool—costs, material, and levels of acidity
3. Aggregate Pool—costs, flammability, maintenance, and discoloration

We plan to install our pools by March 12. We would appreciate your response by February 20. Thank you.

To compose your inquiry, include the following:

Introduction. Clarify your intent in the introduction. Until you tell your readers why you are writing, they do not know. It is your responsibility to clarify your intent and explain your rationale for writing. Also tell your reader immediately what you are writing about (the subject matter of your inquiry).

Discussion. Specify your needs in the discussion. To ensure that you get the response you want, ask precise questions or list specific topics of inquiry. You must quantify. For example, rather than vaguely asking about machinery specifications, you should ask more precisely about "specifications for the 12R403B Copier." Rather than asking, "Will the roofing material cover a large surface?" you need to quantify—"Will the roofing material cover 150' × 180'?"

Conclusion. Conclude precisely. First, explain when you need a response. Do not write, "Please respond as soon as possible." Tell the reader exactly when you need your answers. Second, to sell your readers on the importance of this date, explain why you need answers by the date given. Figure 4 is a sample inquiry letter.

FIGURE 4 Letter of Inquiry

COMRMed

8713 Hillview   Reno, NV 32901   1-800-551-9000   Fax: 1-816-555-0000

September 12, 2014

Sales Manager
OfficeToGo
7622 Raintree
St. Louis, MO 66772

Subject: Request for Product Pricing and Shipping Schedules

My medical technology company has worked well with OfficeToGo for the past five years. However, in August I received a letter informing me that OTG had been purchased by a larger corporation. I need to determine if OTG remains competitive with other major office equipment suppliers in the Reno area.

Please provide the following information:

1. What discounts will be offered for bulk purchases?
2. Which freight company will OTG now be using?
3. Who will pay to insure the items ordered?
4. What is the turnaround time from order placement to delivery?
5. Will OTG be able to deliver to all my satellite sites?
6. Will OTG technicians set up the equipment delivered, including desks, file cabinets, bookshelves, and chairs?
7. Will OTG be able to personalize office stationery onsite, or will it have to be outsourced?

Please respond to these questions by September 30 so I can prepare my quarterly orders in a timely manner. I continue to expand my insurance agency and want assurances that you can fill my growing office supply needs. You can contact me at the phone number provided above or by e-mail (jgood@COMRMed.com).

Jim Goodwin

Jim Goodwin
Owner and CEO

In the introduction, briefly explaining why you are writing establishes the context of the inquiry for the audience.

A detailed and itemized list informs the audience the exact questions you need answered. If you write precise questions, the audience will be able to provide the information you are requesting.

Pleasantly state when and why you need a response by a specific date to encourage your audience. In the conclusion, you can also include detailed contact information not provided in the letterhead.

Response

In a response, you provide information, details, or answers to an inquiry. For example, you or your company might need to answer questions about quotes on equipment costs, maintenance fees, delivery options, and technical specifications on makes and models from various vendors. You might need to write a response with information about room availability at your hotel, food arrangements, technology and presentation equipment rental fees, presentation room setups, entertainment options, and transportation from the airport. Maybe a client needs to change its insurance carrier. Your insurance company responds to the inquiry with quotes for insurance premium costs, levels of coverage, deductibles, and accessibility of claims adjusters.

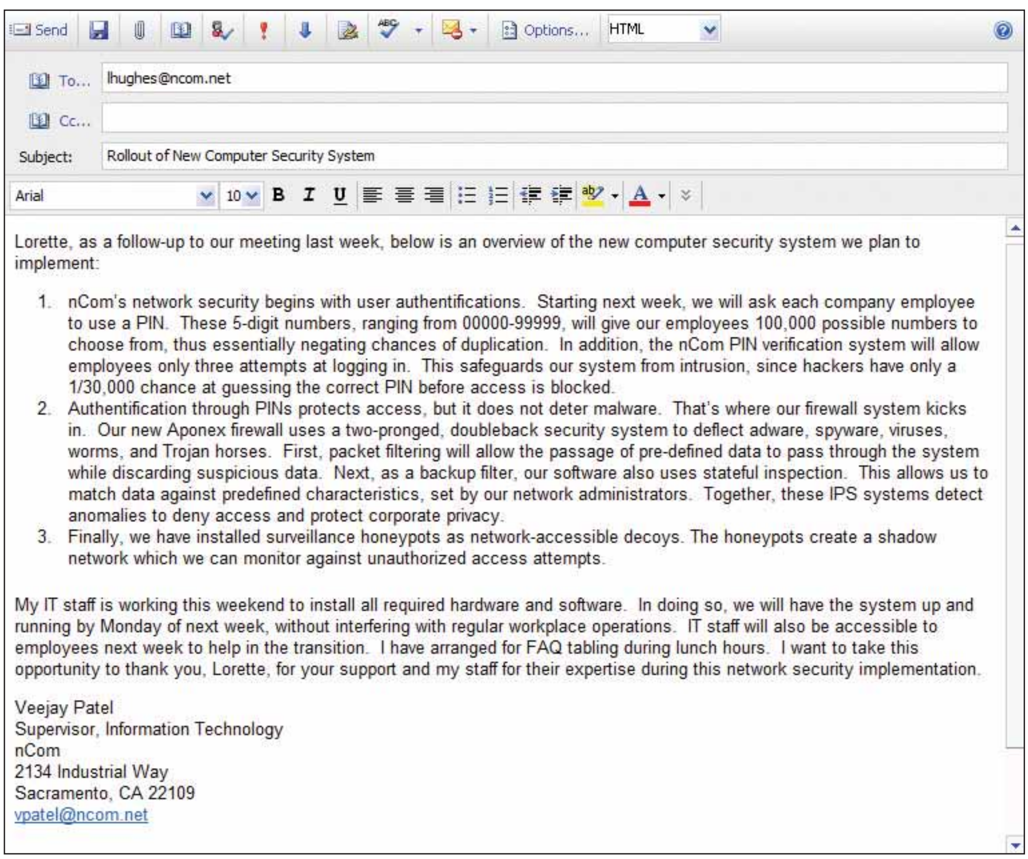
Introduction. Begin with a pleasant reminder of when you spoke with a person or heard from the audience. This explains *why* you are writing. Then, specifically state *what* topic you are writing about.

Discussion. Organize your discussion section into as many paragraphs as you need. When possible, remember to use bulleted or numbered lists for easier access. Include in this section the details or explanations needed. Consider including any of the following:

Times	Types of activities	Enrollment periods
Dates	Discounts	Enclosures
Amounts of people	Costs	Technology or equipment

Conclusion. End your response in an upbeat and friendly tone. You can also include your contact information (e-mail, phone number, address). See Figure 5 for a sample response e-mail.

FIGURE 5 E-mail Response



Send | Options... | HTML

To... lhughes@ncom.net

Cc...

Subject: Rollout of New Computer Security System

Arial 10

Lorette, as a follow-up to our meeting last week, below is an overview of the new computer security system we plan to implement:

1. nCom's network security begins with user authentifications. Starting next week, we will ask each company employee to use a PIN. These 5-digit numbers, ranging from 00000-99999, will give our employees 100,000 possible numbers to choose from, thus essentially negating chances of duplication. In addition, the nCom PIN verification system will allow employees only three attempts at logging in. This safeguards our system from intrusion, since hackers have only a 1/30,000 chance at guessing the correct PIN before access is blocked.
2. Authentification through PINs protects access, but it does not deter malware. That's where our firewall system kicks in. Our new Aponex firewall uses a two-pronged, doubleback security system to deflect adware, spyware, viruses, worms, and Trojan horses. First, packet filtering will allow the passage of pre-defined data to pass through the system while discarding suspicious data. Next, as a backup filter, our software also uses stateful inspection. This allows us to match data against predefined characteristics, set by our network administrators. Together, these IPS systems detect anomalies to deny access and protect corporate privacy.
3. Finally, we have installed surveillance honeypots as network-accessible decoys. The honeypots create a shadow network which we can monitor against unauthorized access attempts.

My IT staff is working this weekend to install all required hardware and software. In doing so, we will have the system up and running by Monday of next week, without interfering with regular workplace operations. IT staff will also be accessible to employees next week to help in the transition. I have arranged for FAQ tabling during lunch hours. I want to take this opportunity to thank you, Lorette, for your support and my staff for their expertise during this network security implementation.

Veejay Patel
Supervisor, Information Technology
nCom
2134 Industrial Way
Sacramento, CA 22109
vpatel@ncom.net

Anticipate questions the reader might have by including as much detail as possible. Using a list rather than sentences or paragraphs helps highlight key points.

Cover (Transmittal)

Cover or transmittal correspondence precedes attached or enclosed documents, informing the reader by giving an overview of the material that follows. In business, you are often required to send information to a client, vendor, or colleague. You might send the following kinds of attachments or enclosures prefaced by a cover letter, memo, or e-mail:

Reports	Invoices	Drawings
Maps	Contracts	Specifications
Instructions	Questionnaires	Proposals

Cover correspondence accomplishes two goals: tells readers up front what they are receiving and focuses your readers' attention on key points within the enclosures.

Introduction. What if the reader has asked you to send the documentation? Do you still need to explain why you are writing? The answer is yes. Although the reader requested the information, time has passed, other correspondence has been written, and your reader might have forgotten the initial request. Introductory sentences provide the reader information about why you are writing and what you are sending.

Discussion. In the body, accomplish two things. Either tell your reader exactly what you have enclosed or exactly what of value is within the enclosures. In both instances, you should provide an itemized list or easily accessible, short paragraphs. Page numbers are a friendly gesture toward your audience. You are helping the reader locate the important information. You are achieving audience recognition and involvement. However, including page numbers has a greater benefit than audience involvement. These page numbers also allow you to focus your reader's attention on what you want to emphasize.

Conclusion. Your conclusion should tell your readers what you want to happen next, when you want this to happen, and why the date is important. Figure 6 is an example of a successful cover memo.

FIGURE 6 Cover Memo Prefacing Attachments

Date: November 11, 2014
To: COMRMed Management
From: Bill Baker, Human Resources Director
Subject: Information about Proposed Changes to Employee Benefits Package

As of January 1, 2015, COMRMed will change insurance carriers. This will affect all 5,000 employees' benefits packages. I have attached a proposal, including the following:

1. Reasons for changing from our current carrier	page 2
2. Criteria for our selection of a new insurance company	pages 3–4
3. Monthly cost for each employee	pages 5–6
4. Overall cost to COMRMed	page 7
5. Benefits derived from the new healthcare plan	page 8

Please review the proposal, survey your employees' responses to our suggestions, and provide your feedback. We need your input by December 1, 2014. This will give the human resources department time to consider your suggestions and work with insurance companies to meet employee needs.

Enclosure: Proposal

A cover memo directs the reader to the content in an attachment, such as a proposal. You can summarize the most important parts of the proposal, providing page numbers. In addition, your memo can include dated action so that the reader knows what to do next.

Complaint Messages

To write a complaint message, include the following:.

Introduction. In the introduction, politely state the problem. To strengthen your assertions, include supporting details, such as the following: serial numbers, dates of purchase, invoice numbers, check numbers, names of salespeople involved in the purchase, and/or receipts. When possible, include copies documenting your claims.

Discussion. In the discussion paragraph(s), explain in detail the problems experienced. This could include dates, contact names, information about shipping, breakage information, an itemized listing of defects, or poor service.

Conclusion. End your letter positively. Remember, you want to ensure cooperation with the vendor or customer. You also want to be courteous, reflecting your company's professionalism. Your goal should be to achieve continued rapport with your reader. In this concluding paragraph, include your contact information and the times you can best be reached.

See Figure 7 for a sample complaint letter to an automotive supplies company.

Adjustment Messages

Responses to complaints, also called adjustment messages, can take three different forms.

- 100 percent Yes—you could agree 100 percent with the writer of the complaint.
- 100 percent No—you could disagree 100 percent with the writer of the complaint.
- Partial Adjustment—you could agree with some of the writer's complaints but disagree with other aspects of the complaint.

Table 2 shows you the differences among these three types of adjustment messages.

Writing a 100 percent yes response to a complaint is easy. You are telling your audience what they want to hear. The challenge, in contrast, is writing a 100 percent no response or a partial adjustment. Using a **buffer statement** delays bad news in written communication and gives you an opportunity to explain your position.

Buffers to Cushion the Blow. Use the following techniques to buffer the bad news:

- **Establish rapport with the audience through positive words to create a pleasant tone.** Instead of writing, "We received your complaint," be positive and say, "We always appreciate hearing from customers."

TABLE 2 Differences Among Adjustment Messages

	100 Percent Yes	100 Percent No	Partial Adjustment
Introduction	State the good news.	Begin with a buffer, a comment agreeable to both reader and writer.	State the good news.
Discussion	Explain what happened and what the reader should do and/or what the company plans to do next.	Explain what happened, state the bad news, and provide possible alternatives.	Explain what happened, state the bad news, and provide possible alternatives—what the reader and/or company should do next.
Conclusion	End upbeat and positive.	Resell (provide discounts, coupons, follow-up contact names and numbers, etc.) to maintain good will.	Resell (provide discounts, coupons, etc.) to maintain good will.

FIGURE 7 Complaint Letter

1234 18th Street
Galveston, TX 77001
May 10, 2014

Mr. Holbert Lang
Customer Service Manager
Gulfstream Auto
1101 21st Street
Galveston, TX 77001

Dear Mr. Lang:

On February 12, I purchased two shock absorbers in your automotive department. Enclosed are copies of the receipt and the warranty for that purchase. One of those shocks has since proved defective.

The introduction includes the date of purchase (to substantiate the claim) and the problems encountered.

I attempted to exchange the defective shock at your store on May 2. The mechanic on duty, Vernon Blanton, informed me that the warranty was invalid because your service staff did not install the part. I believe that your company should honor the warranty agreement and replace the part for the following reasons:

1. The warranty states that the shock is covered for 48 months and 48,000 miles.
2. The warranty does not state that installation by someone other than the dealership will result in warranty invalidation.
3. The defective shock absorber is causing potentially expensive damage to the tire and suspension system.

The body explains what happened, states what the writer wants done, and justifies the request. This letter develops its claim with warranty information.

I can be reached between 1 p.m. and 6 p.m. on weekdays at 763-9280 or at 763-9821 anytime on weekends. You also can email me at cdelatorre12@hotmail.com. I look forward to hearing from you. Thank you for helping me with this misunderstanding.

The letter concludes by providing contact information and an upbeat, pleasant tone.

Sincerely,

Carlos De La Torre

Carlos De La Torre

Enclosures (2)

- **Sway your reader to accept the bad news to come with persuasive facts.** "In the last quarter, our productivity has decreased by 16 percent, necessitating cost-cutting measures."
- **Provide information that both you and your audience can agree upon.** "With the recession, many jobs in business and industry have been lost."
- **Compliment your reader or show appreciation.** "Thank you for your June 9 letter commenting on fiscal year 2014."
- **Make your buffer concise, one to two sentences.** "Thank you for writing. Customer comments give us an opportunity to improve service."

- **Be sure your buffer leads logically to the explanation that follows.** Consider mentioning the topic, as in the following example about billing practices: "Several of our clients have noted changes in our corporate billing policies. Your letter was one that addressed this issue."
- **Avoid placing blame or offending the reader.** Rather than stating, "Your bookkeeping error cost us $9,890.00," write, "Mistakes happen in business. We are refining our bookkeeping policies to ensure accuracy."

See Figure 8, Figure 9, and Figure 10 for sample adjustment messages, which could be written as letters or e-mail.

Confirmation

In business, correspondence represents an official contract. Often, when clients and vendors make arrangements for the purchase of services or products, a confirmation letter, memo, or e-mail must be written to verify the details of the agreement.

FIGURE 8 100 Percent Yes Adjustment

Positive word usage ("Thank you") achieves audience rapport.

The introduction immediately states the good news.

The discussion explains what created the problem and provides an instruction telling the customer what to do next.

The conclusion ("We appreciate your business") resells to maintain customer satisfaction.

Thank you for your recent letter. Gulfstream will replace your defective shock absorber according to the warranty agreement.

The Trailhandler Performance XT shock absorber that you purchased was discontinued in April 2014. Mr. Blanton, the mechanic to whom you spoke, incorrectly assumed that Gulfstream was no longer honoring the warranty on that product. Because we no longer carry that product, we either will replace it with a comparable model or refund the purchase price. Ask for Mrs. Cottrell at the automotive desk on your next visit to our store. She is expecting you and will handle the exchange.

We appreciate your business, Mr. De La Torre. I'm glad you brought this problem to my attention. If I can help you in the future, please contact me at hlang@gulfstream.com.

FIGURE 9 100 Percent No Adjustment Beginning with a Buffer Statement

The introduction begins with a buffer. The writer establishes rapport with the audience through positive words to create a pleasant tone.

The discussion explains the company's position, states the bad news, and offers an alternative.

Thank you for your May 10 letter. Gulfstream Auto always appreciates hearing from its customers.

The Trailhandler Performance XT shock absorber that you purchased was discontinued in April 2014. Mr. Blanton, the mechanic to whom you spoke, correctly stated that Gulfstream was no longer honoring the warranty on that product. Because we no longer carry that product, we cannot replace it with a comparable model or refund the purchase price. Although we cannot replace the shock absorber for free, we want to offer you a 10 percent discount off of a replacement.

We appreciate your business, Mr. De La Torre. I'm glad you brought this problem to my attention. If I can help you in the future, please contact me at hlang@gulfstream.com.

FIGURE 10 Partial Adjustment Stating the Good News in the Introduction

> Thank you for your recent letter. Gulfstream will replace your defective shock absorber according to the warranty agreement.
>
> The Trailhandler Performance XT shock absorber that you purchased was discontinued in April 2014. Mr. Blanton, the mechanic to whom you spoke, incorrectly assumed that Gulfstream was no longer honoring the warranty on that product. However, we no longer carry that product. We will replace the shock absorber with a comparable model, but you will have to pay for installation.
>
> We appreciate your business, Mr. De La Torre. I'm glad you brought this problem to my attention. If I can help you in the future, please contact me at hlang@gulfstream.com.

Begin your letter with the good news.

Explain what happened, state the bad news, and provide a possible alternative.

For example, as head of corporate training, you met with a consulting firm to discuss services they could provide your company. After the meeting, you must summarize the results of the discussion, confirming payment, dates, and training content.

Introduction. In your introduction, remind the reader why the correspondence is being written and what topic is being discussed.

Discussion. The body clarifies the details of the agreement. Since this constitutes a legally binding document, you must specify anything agreed upon. Using highlighting techniques to make your content accessible, consider including any of the following:

Dates	Makes/models/serial numbers
Locations	Retainer fees
Times	Personnel and certification
Audiovisual equipment	Length of agreement
Costs	Menus and decorations
Parking	Room setup

Conclusion. The conclusion tells the reader what to do next. You might include a request for signature, payment due dates, or method of payment. See Figure 11 for a sample confirmation letter.

Instant Messages

Letters, memos, and e-mail could be too slow for today's fast-paced workplace. Instant messages are already providing businesses many benefits. A technical writer we know works for an international provider of business solutions and services. Her office is in Kansas City; her boss lives in Orlando and telecommutes. How do they collaborate while working on team projects from their dispersed work sites? They communicate by e-mail, telephone, teleconference, and an occasional face-to-face meeting when the boss travels to the writer's home office. However, for their required daily office "chats," they depend on instant messages.

Their IM of choice is IBM's Lotus Sametime Connect©. Sametime, their company's corporate standard for IM, allows the writer and her boss to see on their respective desktops two "floating screens," which can be moved around, minimized, or maximized as the reader chooses. The buddy list shows contacts by name and displays their status, whether

FIGURE 11 Confirmation Letter

The introduction explains why the letter is being written ("In response to your request"), specifies the type of letter (confirmation), and clarifies the topic ("training services" and "fees contracted").

The letter's discussion provides specific details regarding the agreement: costs, locations, and contact.

The conclusion ends positively and instructs the reader, stating what must be done next to confirm the agreement.

Metro Consulting
600 Broadway Albuquerque, NM 23006
510-234-1818 www.metrocon.com

January 23, 2014

Mr. Carl Meyers
ProfCom
1999 Saguaro Dr.
Santa Fe, NM 23012

Dear Mr. Meyers:

In response to your request, this letter confirms our discussion from last week. Below I summarize the agreement we reached regarding the training services your company will provide and the fees contracted.

ProfCom is scheduled to offer the following workshops in 2014:

- Fifteen days of "Customer Service" training to Albuquerque municipal employees. The workshops will be held throughout the city at locations to be determined later. Each location will provide technology, per your specifications. ProfCom will be paid $500 for each half-day workshop and $700 for each full-day workshop.
- Thirty days of "Managing Diversity" training to Albuquerque municipal employees. These workshops will be held in the Albuquerque Civic Center, 1800 Mountainview Dr. ProfCom will be paid $900 a day for each of these workshops. Please contact Mr. Silvio Hernandez, 1-800-ALCIVIC, to request your technology needs.
- Ten days of "Supervisor/Management" training, leading to a "Supervisor/Management Certificate." These workshops will be held in the Albuquerque City Hall, Conference Room A. ProfCom will be paid $1,000 a day for each workshop. Please contact Mary O'Sullivan, 1-510-222-5150, to request your technology needs.
- Undecided additional training workshops, including "Ethical Decision-Making," "Accounting for Non-Accountants," and "Dynamic Presentation Skills." We will work with you to schedule these as enrollment figures are calculated. MetroConsulting will pay ProfCom a monthly retainer fee of $3,000 to ensure your availability for these workshops. The $3,000 retainer will be adjusted against complete payment for services rendered.

Thank you for agreeing to provide us these services, Mr. Meyers. MetroConsulting is excited about the prospect of working with your firm. We hope to continue offering these workshops annually if both parties agree upon the success of the training. By signing and dating this letter of confirmation below, you indicate your agreement with the assigned services and compensation.

Rob Harken

Rob Harken, Director

______________________, Date: _______ ______________________, Date: _______

they are online, offline, available, unavailable, at a meeting, away for other purposes, and so on. The chat window displays the ongoing conversation (until it is closed, when it starts over).

Benefits of Instant Messages

Following are benefits of instant messages:

- Increased speed of communication.
- Improved efficiency for geographically dispersed workgroups.
- Collaboration by multiple users in different locations.
- Communication with colleagues and customers at a distance in real time.
- Avoidance of costly long distance telephone rates. Note: Voice over IP (VoIP) services, which allow companies to use the Internet for telephone calls, could be more cost-efficient than IM.
- More personal link than e-mail.
- Communication channel that is less intrusive than telephone calls.
- Communication channel that allows for multitasking. With IM, you can speak to a customer on the telephone or via an e-mail message and simultaneously receive product updates from a colleague via IM.
- Quick way to find out who is in the office, out of the office, available for conversation, or unavailable due to other activities.

(Hoffman; Shinder)

Challenges of Instant Messages

Instant messaging has potential problems in the workplace, including security, archiving, monitoring, and employee misuse (Hoffman; Shinder):

- **Security issues.** This is the biggest concern. IM users are vulnerable to hackers, electronic identity theft, and uncontrolled transfer of documents. With unsecured IM, a company could lose confidential documents, internal users could download copyrighted software, or external users could send virus-infected files.
- **Lost productivity.** Use of IM on the job can lead to job downtime. First, we tend to type more slowly than we talk. Next, the conversational nature of IM leads to "chattiness." If employees are not careful, or monitored, a brief IM conversation can lead to hours of lost productivity.
- **Employee abuse.** IM can lead to personal messages rather than job-related communication with coworkers or customers.
- **Distraction.** With IM, a bored colleague easily can distract you with personal messages, online chats, and unimportant updates.
- **Netiquette.** As with e-mail, due to the casual nature of IM, people tend to relax their professionalism and forget about the rules of polite communication. IM can lead to rudeness or just pointless conversations.
- **Spim.** IM lends itself to "spim," instant message spam—unwanted advertisements, pornography, pop-ups, and viruses.

Techniques for Successful Instant Messages

To solve potential problems, consider these five suggestions:

1. **Choose the correct communication channel.** Use IM for speed and convenience. If you need length and detail, other options—e-mail messages, memos, letters—are better choices. In addition, sensitive topics or bad news should never be

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about Instant Messaging, check out the following links:

- Instant Messaging: The next wave in business communications http://www.expressitpeople.com/20040524/cover.shtml
- 10 Tips for Using Instant Messages for Business http://www.microsoft.com/smallbusiness/resources/technology/communications/10-tips-for-using-instant-messaging-for-business.aspx
- IM for Business: Commercial Uses for the IM Community http://im.about.com/od/imforbusiness/IM_for_Business_Commercial_Uses_for_the_IM_Community.htm

handled through IM. These deserve the personal attention provided by telephone calls or face-to-face meetings.

2. **Summarize decisions.** IM is great for collaboration. However, all team members might not be online when decisions are made. Once conclusions have been reached that affect the entire team, the designated team leader should e-mail everyone involved. In this e-mail, the team leader can summarize the key points, editorial decisions, timetables, and responsibilities.
3. **Tune in, or turn off.** The moment you log on, IM software tells everyone who is active online. Immediately, your IM buddies can start sending messages. IM pop-ups can be distracting. Sometimes, in order to get your work done, you might need to turn off your IM system. Your IM product might give you status options, such as "on the phone," "away from my desk," or "busy." Turning on IM could infringe upon your privacy and time. Turning it off might be the answer.
4. **Limit personal use.** Your company owns the instant messages you write in the workplace. IM should be used for business purposes only.
5. **Never use IM for confidential communication.** Use another communication channel if your content requires security. As with e-mail, IM programs can let systems administrators log and review IM conversations (Hoffman; Shinder).

IM/TM Corporate Usage Policy

To clearly explain the role of IM and TM in the workplace, a company should establish a corporate IM and TM usage policy. Many industries already have such policies in place, in relation to existing restrictions established by Sarbanes-Oxley or HIPAA (Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act). Consider a policy as follows:

- Train employees to use IM and TM effectively for business.
- Explain which services are allowable in the workplace. For example, conversation between coworkers is acceptable, but chat between employees and outside individuals might not be advisable. File transfers of proprietary information need to be restricted and monitored.
- Do not allow employees to store IM or TM passwords on computer desktops or other sites easily accessed.
- Install appropriate security measures, including automated encryption, to protect against external threats, such as spam, spim, and viruses.
- Log and archive instant messages and text messages for compliance to company policy (Ollman; "How To"; Bradley).

Text Messages

Text messages, also known as SMS (short message service), are a growing presence in workplace communication. According to the United Nations International Telecommunications Union, "the total number of text messages sent across the world is expected to reach 1.6 trillion . . . meaning that roughly 200,000 texts are sent every second" (Toor).

A unique characteristic of TM is its demand for conciseness. Text messages over 160 characters are delivered in multiple segments. Each segment is billed as a separate message. That's why users try to limit messages to 160 characters—to save expenses.

"Pretty soon, you're going to have to teach text messaging in your classes," Robert Clark said. "Why's that?" we asked. He responded, "Thirty percent of my interaction with staff is through text messaging" (Clark). Robert, a facilities manager for a real estate company, drives between eight apartment complexes to supervise his staff at each location. Robert says that he depends on text messages instead of e-mail for the following reasons.

Reasons for Using TM

- **Cost.** Though Robert's cell phone is supplied by his employer, the staff that he supervises pays for their own cell phones. It's cheaper for them to use text messaging if their cell phone plans allow for unlimited TM.
- **Technological Access.** Staff members who work under Robert do not have computers at their work sites, nor does Robert have a computer in his car as he drives around town. However, all of Robert's employees have access to a cell phone.
- **Speed.** TM is a quick and easy way to communicate short messages, such as "John will be late for work today. Is it okay if I stay overtime?" That's 64 characters (counting the letters, spaces, and punctuation marks). Robert and his staff use other means of communication for longer correspondence.
- **Multitasking.** TM is a great way for Robert to multitask. Robert might be in a meeting, for example. He says, "If three of my staff need to attend training on a certain day, I can text all three employees right then and there and not disrupt the meeting. They'll respond quickly, allowing me to tell the meeting facilitator which of my employees can or can't attend. Then we can reschedule accordingly."
- **Decrease the "intimidation factor."** Many people don't like to write letters, memos, reports, or even e-mail messages. Many people don't like face-to-face communication, either. They're intimidated by writing or by bosses. Robert says that TM decreases this "intimidation factor" for his employees.
- **Documentation.** TM allows Robert to document his conversations, something that's not always possible with phone calls. TM is an instant record of a dialogue. A TM account saves incoming and outgoing calls for a few days until it's full. This allows an employee to clarify any later misconceptions.

The Writing Process at Work

The communication process is dynamic, with the three steps frequently overlapping. To clarify the importance of the communication process, look at how Jim Goodwin, the CEO of COMRMed, used prewriting, writing, and rewriting to write a memo to his employees.

Prewriting

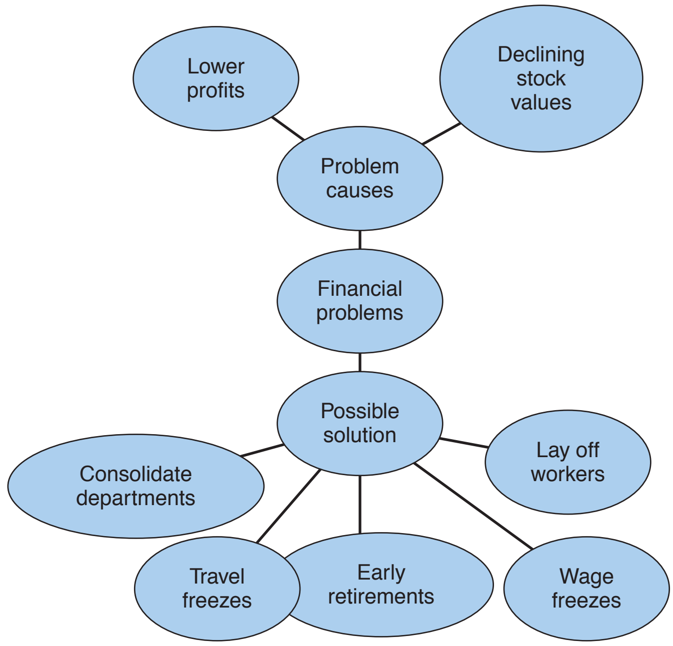
No single method of prewriting is more effective than another. Different types of prewriting techniques are geared uniquely for different types of communication. The goal of all prewriting is to help you overcome the blank page syndrome (writer's block). Prewriting will allow you to spend time before writing your document, gathering as much information as you can about your subject matter. In addition, prewriting lets you determine your objectives. Jim used mind mapping/clustering to gather data and determine objectives (Figure 12).

Writing

Once you have gathered your data and determined your objectives in prewriting, your next step is to draft your document. In doing so, you need to organize content.

Organize Your Ideas. If your supporting details are presented randomly, your audience will be confused. As a writer, develop your content logically. When you draft your

FIGURE 12 Mind Mapping/Clustering to Gather Data



Clustering helps you see the different parts of any subject. Clustering helps you develop ideas and see the relationship between these concepts. Because clustering is less restrictive and less structured than outlining, this prewriting technique might allow you to gather data creatively.

document, choose a method of organization that will help your readers understand your objectives. This could include comparison/contrast, problem/solution, chronology, cause/effect, and more. Jim drafted a memo, focusing on the information he discovered in prewriting and then received revision suggestions from his administrative assistant (Figure 13).

FIGURE 13 Rough Draft with Revision Suggestions

Add a focus to the subject line, such as "Problems with . . . ."

Date: October 14, 2014
To: COMRMed Employees
From: Jim Goodwin
Subject: Problems

I'd consider removing words like "as you know," "some," and "alot." Replace them with stronger words. Also, "alot" and "its" are spelled wrong.

As you know, we are experiencing some problems at COMRMed. These include lower profits and stock value declines. We have alot of unhappy stockholders. Its up to me to help everyone figure out how to solve our problems.

List these problems and solutions to make them more accessible. Also, could you add more details?

I have some ideas I want to share with you. I'm happy to have you share your ideas with me too. Here are my ideas: we need to consider consolidating departments and laying off some employees. We also might need to freeze wages and certainly its time to freeze travel.

Jim, I think you need to alter the tone of this memo. Is there some way to avoid talking about saving money by firing people?

The best idea I have is for some of you to take early retirement. If all of you who have over twenty years vested in the company would retire, that would save us around 2.1 million dollars over the next fiscal year. And, you know, saving money is good for all of us in the long run.

Rewriting

Jim factored in his administrative assistant's suggestions and rewrote the memo. See Figure 14 for the finished product.

FIGURE 14 Problem-Solution Memo Incorporating Revision Suggestions

Date: October 14, 2014
To: COMRMed Employees
From: Jim Goodwin
Subject: Suggestions for Improving Company Finances

COMRMed is experiencing lower profits and declining stock value. Consequently, stockholders are displeased with company performance. I have been meeting with the Board of Directors and division managers to determine the best course of action. Here are ideas to improve our company's financial situation.

1. Consolidating departments—By merging our marketing and advertising departments, for example, we can reduce redundancies. This could save COMRMed approximately $275,000 over a six-month period.
2. Reducing staff—We need to reduce employees by 15 percent. This does not necessarily mean that layoffs are inevitable. One way, for instance, to reduce staff is through voluntary retirements. We will be encouraging employees with over 20 years vested in the company to take our generous early-retirement package.
3. Freezing wages—For the next fiscal quarter, no raise increases will go into effect. Internal auditors will review the possibility of reestablishing raises after the first quarter.
4. Freezing travel—Conference attendance will be stopped for six months.

I encourage you to visit with me and your division managers with questions or suggestions. COMRMed is a strong company and will bounce back with your help. Thank you for your patience and understanding.

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Memos, letters, e-mail, instant messages, and text messages are an important part of your interpersonal communication on the job.
2. Memos, letters, e-mail, instant messages, and text messages differ in destination, purpose, format, audience, tone, delivery time, and security.
3. Use an effective subject line including a topic and a focus.
4. Follow the all-purpose template for memos, letters, and e-mail including an introduction, a body or discussion section, and a conclusion.
5. The introduction states what you want and why you are writing.
6. In the discussion section, you state the details.
7. Conclude by telling the reader what you plan to do next or what you expect him or her to do next. You can also date this action and thank the readers for their time.

8. Consider the audience whether you are writing a memo, letter, e-mail, instant message, or text message.
9. Wizards allow you to format your memos and letters but can be somewhat restrictive.
10. Follow techniques from this chapter to create effective instant messages and text messages.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

After reading the following case studies, write the appropriate correspondence required for each assignment.

1. As director of human resources at COMRMed biotechnology company, Andrew McWard helps employees create and implement their individual development plans (IDPs). Employees attend 360-degree assessment workshops where they learn how to get feedback on their job performance from their supervisors, coworkers, and subordinates. They also provide self-evaluations.

Once the 360-degree assessments are complete, employees submit them to Andrew, who, with the help of his staff, develops IDPs. Andrew sends the IDPs to the employees, prefaced by a cover letter. In this cover letter, he tells them why he is writing and what he is writing about. In the letter's body, he focuses their attention on the attachment's contents: supervisor's development profile; schedule of activities, which helps employees implement their plans; courses designed to increase their productivity; costs of each program; and guides to long-term professional development.

In the cover letter's conclusion, Andrew ends upbeat by emphasizing how the employees' IDPs help them resolve conflicts and make better decisions.

Assignment

Based on the information provided, write this cover letter for Andrew McWard. He is sending the letter to Sharon Baker, Account Executive, 1092 Turtle Hill Road, Evening Star, GA 20091.

2. ITCom is committed to increasing the diversity of its workforce and its clientele. ITCom realizes that a diverse population of employees and customers (in terms of gender, ages, races, and religions) makes good business sense.

To ensure that ITCom achieves diversity awareness, the company plans the following:

- Develop a diversity committee
- Focus on ways the company can be a responsible member of the community's diverse constituency
- Hire a diverse workforce
- Train employees to respect diversity
- Write corporate communication (Web sites, e-mail, letters, corporate reports) that accommodate the unique needs of a diverse audience

As CEO of ITCom, you want buy-in throughout the company. You want the company to realize that diversity is good for society and good for business.

Assignment

Write an e-mail message to your employees. In this e-mail, explain the company's diversity goals, highlight what the company plans to do to accomplish these goals, and ask the audience to participate in upcoming diversity workshops. Follow the criteria for effective e-mail provided in the textbook.

3. Mark Shabbot (mshabbot@Apex.com) works for Apex, Inc. at 1919 W. 23rd Street, Denver, CO 80204. Apex, a retailer of computer hardware, wants to purchase 125 new flat-screen monitors from a vendor, Omnico, located at 30467 Sheraton, Phoenix, AZ 85023. The monitors will be sold to Northwest Hills Educational Cooperative. However, before Apex purchases these monitors, Mark needs information regarding bulk rates, shipping schedules, maintenance agreements, equipment specifications, and technician certifications. Northwest Hills needs this equipment before the new term (August 15).

Assignment

Write an e-mail or letter of inquiry for Mr. Shabbot based on the preceding information.

4. Gregory Peña (gpena8@hotmail.com), 121 Mockingbird Lane, San Marcos, TX 77037, has written a complaint to Donya Kahlili (dkahl@TR.com), the manager of TechnoRad (4236 Silicon Dr., San Marcos, TX 77044). Mr. Peña purchased a computer from a TechnoRad outlet in San Marcos. The *San Marcos Tattler* advertised that the computer "came loaded with all the software you'll need to write effective letters and perform basic accounting functions." (Mr. Peña has a copy of this advertisement.) When Mr. Peña booted up his computer, he expected to access word processing software, multiple fonts, a graphics package, a grammar check, and a spreadsheet. All he got was a word processing package and a spreadsheet. Mr. Peña wants Ms. Kahlili to upgrade his software to include fonts, graphics, and a grammar check; a computer technician from TechnoRad to load the software on his computer; and TechnoRad to reimburse him $400 (the full price of the software) for his trouble.

Ms. Kahlili agrees that the advertisement is misleading and will provide Mr. Peña software including the fonts, graphics, and grammar check (complete with instructions for loading the software).

Assignment

Write Ms. Kahlili's 100 percent yes adjustment to Mr. Peña based on the information provided.

5. You are the manager of WhiteOut, a store that sells snowboarding equipment and clothing. You have seven employees. Since you believed that today would be a light day for sales, you asked only one employee to work. However, suddenly, more customers than you had expected showed up, and you and your employee are overwhelmed. You need help—fast. E-mailing your other employees might not work, since they aren't necessarily near a computer. In contrast, you know they all have smartphones. The fastest and most trustworthy way to communicate with them is through instant messaging or text messaging.

Assignment

Write an instant message or a text message to the employees. Tell them the circumstances at your store and ask them for assistance.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Write an inquiry. You might want to write to a college or university requesting information about a degree program or to a manufacturer for information about a product or service. Whatever the subject matter, be specific in your request.
2. Write a cover message. Perhaps your cover letter, e-mail, or memo will preface a report you are working on in school, a report you are writing at work, or documentation you will need to send to a client.

3. Write an adjustment message. Envision that a client has complained about a problem he or she has encountered with your product or service. Write a 100 percent yes letter or e-mail in response to the complaint.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

Northwest Regional Governmental Training Consortium (GTC) provides educational workshops for elected and appointed officials, as well as employees of city and state governmental offices.

One seminar participant, Mary Bloom, supervisor of the North Platte County Planning and Zoning Department, attended a GTC seminar entitled "Developing Leadership Skills" on February 12, 2014. Unfortunately, she was disappointed in the workshop and the facilitator. On February 16, Mary complained to GTC's director, Sue Randall, stating her dissatisfaction. Ms. Bloom said that the training facilitator's presentation skills were poor. According to Mary, Doug Aaron, the trainer, exhibited the following problems:

- Late arrival at the workshop
- Insufficient number of handouts for the participants
- Incorrect cables for his computer, so he could not use his planned PowerPoint presentation

Mary also noted that the seminar did not meet the majority of the seminar participants' expectations. She and the other government employees had expected a hands-on workshop with breakout sessions. Instead, Doug lectured the entire time. In addition, his information seemed dated and ignored the cross-cultural challenges facing today's supervisors.

Neither Sue nor her employees had ever attended this workshop. They offered the seminar based on the seemingly reliable recommendation of another state agency, the state data collection department. From Doug's course objectives and resume, he appeared to be qualified and current in his field.

However, Mary deserves consideration. Not only are her complaints justified by others' comments, but also she is a valued constituent. The GTC wants to ensure her continued involvement in their training program.

Assignments

1. Sue needs to write a 100 percent yes adjustment letter or e-mail. In this correspondence, Sue wants to recognize Mary's concern, explain what might have gone wrong, and offer satisfaction. Write the 100 percent yes adjustment letter or e-mail.
2. Sue needs to write an internal memo or e-mail to her staff. In this memo or e-mail, she will provide standards for hiring future trainers. Write the e-mail to her staff, explaining why the e-mail has been written, what standards are needed, and when the responses are needed.

WEB WORKSHOP

Research information about text messages by reading the following online articles. Then, summarize your findings in an e-mail message to your professor.

- Calvey, Mark. "RU Ready? Wells Initiates Banking by Text Message." *Kansas City Business Journal*.
- Kedrosky, Paul. "Why We Don't Get the (Text) Message." *CNN.Money*.
- Noguchi, Yuki. "Life and Romance in 160 Characters or Less: Brevity Gains New Meaning as Popularity of Cell Phone Text Messaging Soars." *Washington Post*.
- Tedeschi, Bob. "Reaching More Customers with a Simple Text Message." *The New York Times*.
- "Text Messaging: Frequently Asked Questions." *AT&T*.

GRAMMAR, PUNCTUATION, MECHANICS, AND SPELLING

Correct organization and development of your memos, letters, or reports is important for the success of your technical communication. However, no one will be impressed with the quality of your work, or with you, if your writing is riddled with errors in sentence construction or punctuation. Your written correspondence is often your first contact with business associates. Many people mistakenly believe that only English teachers notice grammatical errors and wield red pens, but businesspeople as well take note of such errors and may see the writer as less competent.

We were working recently with a young executive who is employed by a branch of the federal government. This executive told us that whenever his supervisor found a spelling error in a subordinate's report, this report was paraded around the office. Everyone was shown the mistake and had a good laugh over it, and the report was then returned to the writer for correction. Our acquaintance assured us that all of this was in good-natured fun. However, he also said that employees quickly learned to edit and proofread their written communication to avoid such public displays of their errors.

Your writing at work may not be exposed to such scrutiny by coworkers. Instead, your writing may go directly to another firm, and those readers will see your mistakes. To avoid this problem, you must evaluate your writing for grammar, punctuation, and spelling errors. If you don't, your customers, bosses, and colleagues will.

Grammar Rules

To understand the fundamentals of grammar, you must first understand the basic components of a sentence.

A correctly constructed sentence consists of a subject and a predicate (some sentences also include a phrase or phrases).

EXAMPLE ▶

The meeting	began	at 4:00 A.M.
subject	predicate	phrase

Subject: The *doer* of the action; the subject usually precedes the predicate.
Predicate: The *action* in the sentence

EXAMPLE ▶

He	ran	to the office to avoid being late.
doer	action	phrases

If the subject and the predicate (a) express a complete thought and (b) can stand alone, you have an *independent clause*.

EXAMPLE ▶

The meeting began	at 4:00 P.M.
independent clause	phrase

A *phrase* is a group of related words that does not contain a subject and a predicate and cannot stand alone or be punctuated as a sentence. The following are examples of phrases:

at the house
in the box
on the job
during the interview

If a clause is dependent, it cannot stand alone.

EXAMPLE

Although he tried to hurry,	he was late for the meeting.
dependent clause	independent clause

EXAMPLE

He was late for the meeting	although he tried to hurry.
independent clause	dependent clause

NOTE: When a dependent clause begins a sentence, use a comma before the independent clause. However, when an independent clause begins a sentence, do not place a comma before the dependent clause.

Agreement between Pronoun and Antecedent (Referent)

A pronoun has to agree in gender and number with its antecedent.

Susan went on *her* vacation yesterday.
The *people* who quit said that *they* deserved raises.

Problems often arise when a singular indefinite pronoun is the antecedent. The following antecedents require singular pronouns: *anybody, each, everybody, everyone, somebody,* and *someone*.

incorrect

Anyone can pick up *their* applications at the job placement center.

correct

Anyone can pick up *his* or *her* application at the job placement center.

Problems also arise when the antecedent is separated from the pronoun by numerous words.

incorrect

Even when the best *employee* is considered for a raise, *they* often do not receive it.

correct

Even when the best *employee* is considered for a raise, *he* or *she* often does not receive it.

Agreement between Subject and Verb

Writers sometimes create disagreement between subjects and verbs, especially if other words separate the subject from the verb. To ensure agreement, ignore the words that come between the subject and verb.

incorrect

Her *boss* undoubtedly *think* that all the employees want promotions.

correct

Her *boss* undoubtedly *thinks* that all the employees want promotions.

incorrect

The *employees* who sell the most equipment *is* going to Hawaii for a week.

correct

The *employees* who sell the most equipment *are* going to Hawaii for a week.

If a sentence contains two subjects (a compound subject) connected by *and,* use a plural verb.

incorrect

Joe and Tiffany *was* both selected employee of the year.

correct

Joe and Tiffany *were* both selected employees of the year.

incorrect

The bench workers and their supervisor *is* going to work closely to complete this project.

correct

The bench workers and their supervisor *are* going to work closely to complete this project.

Add a final *s* or *es* to create most plural subjects or singular verbs, as follows:

PLURAL SUBJECTS	SINGULAR VERBS
bosses hire	a boss hires
employees demand	an employee demands
experiments work	an experiment works
attitudes change	the attitude changes

If a sentence has two subjects connected by *either . . . or, neither . . . nor,* or *not only . . . but also,* the verb should agree with the closest subject. This also makes the sentence less awkward.

EXAMPLE ▶

Either the salespeople or the warehouse worker deserve*s* raises.
Not only the warehouse worker but also the salespeople deserve raises.
Neither the salespeople nor the warehouse worker deserve*s* raises.

Singular verbs are used after most indefinite pronouns such as the following:

another	everything
anybody	neither
anyone	nobody
anything	no one
each	nothing
either	somebody
everybody	someone
everyone	something

Anyone who works here *is* guaranteed maternity leave.
Everybody wants the company to declare a profit this quarter.

Singular verbs often follow collective nouns such as the following:

class	organization
corporation	platoon
department	staff
group	team

The *staff is* sending the boss a bouquet of roses.

Comma Splice

A *comma splice* occurs when two independent clauses are joined by a comma rather than separated by a period or semicolon.

incorrect

Sue was an excellent employee, she got a promotion.

Several remedies will correct this error.

1. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee; she got a promotion.

2. Separate the two independent clauses with a period.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee. She got a promotion.

3. Separate the two independent clauses with a comma and a *coordinating conjunction* (*and, but, or, for, so, yet*).

correct

Sue was an excellent employee, *so* she got a promotion.

4. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon (or a period), a conjunctive adverb, and a comma. *Conjunctive adverbs* include *also, additionally, consequently, furthermore, however, instead, moreover, nevertheless, therefore,* and *thus*.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee; *therefore,* she got a promotion.

or

Sue was an excellent employee. *Therefore,* she got a promotion.

5. Use a *subordinating conjunction* to make one of the independent clauses into a dependent clause. Subordinating conjunctions include *after, although, as, because, before, even though, if, once, since, so that, though, unless, until, when, where,* and *whether*.

correct

Because Sue was an excellent employee, she got a promotion.

Faulty or Vague Pronoun Reference

A pronoun must refer to a specific noun (its antecedent). Problems arise when (a) there is an excessive number of pronouns (causing vague pronoun reference) and (b) there is no specific noun as an antecedent. Notice that there seems to be an excessive number of pronouns in the following passage, and the antecedents are unclear.

EXAMPLE ▶

Although Bob had been hired over two years ago, *he* found that *his* boss did not approve *his* raise. In fact, *he* was also passed over for *his* promotion. The boss appears to have concluded that *he* had not exhibited zeal in *his* endeavors for their business. Instead of being a highly valued employee, *he* was not viewed with pleasure by those in authority. Perhaps it would be best if *he* considered *his* options and moved to some other company where *he* might be considered in a new light.

The excessive and vague use of *he* and *his* causes problems for readers. Do these words refer to Bob or to his boss? You are never completely sure. To avoid this problem, limit pronoun usage, as in the following revision.

EXAMPLE ▶

Although Bob had been hired over two years ago, he found that his boss, Joe, did not approve his raise. In fact, Bob was also passed over for promotion. Joe appears to have concluded that Bob had not exhibited zeal in his endeavors for their business. Instead of being a highly valued employee, Bob was not viewed with pleasure by those in authority. Perhaps it would be best if Bob considered his options and moved to some other company where he might be considered in a new light.

To make the preceding paragraph more precise, we have replaced vague pronouns (*he* and *his*) with exact names (*Bob* and *Joe*).

Fragments

A *fragment* occurs when a group of words is incorrectly used as an independent clause. Often the group of words begins with a capital letter and has end punctuation but is missing either a subject or a predicate.

incorrect

Working with computers.
(lacks a predicate and does not express a complete thought)

The group of words may have a subject and a predicate but be a dependent clause.

incorrect

Although he enjoyed working with computers.

(has a subject, *he,* and a predicate, *enjoyed,* but is a dependent clause because it is introduced by the subordinate conjunction *although*)

It is easy to remedy a fragment by doing one of the following:

- Add a subject.
- Add a predicate.
- Add both a subject and a predicate.
- Add an independent clause to a dependent clause.

correct

Joe found that working with computers used his training.
(subject, *Joe,* and predicate, *found,* have been added)

correct

Although he enjoyed working with computers, he could not find a job in a computer-related field.

(independent clause, *he could not find a job,* added to the dependent clause, *Although he enjoyed working with computers*)

Fused Sentence

A *fused sentence* occurs when two independent clauses are connected with no punctuation.

incorrect

The company performed well last quarter its stock rose several points.

There are several ways to correct this error.

1. Write two sentences separated by a period.

correct

The company performed well last quarter. Its stock rose several points.

2. Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction to separate the two independent clauses.

correct

The company performed well last quarter, *so* its stock rose several points.

3. Use a subordinating conjunction to create a dependent clause.

correct

Because the company performed well last quarter, its stock rose several points.

4. Use a semicolon to separate the two independent clauses.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; its stock rose several points.

5. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon, a conjunctive adverb or a transitional word or phrase, and a comma.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; *therefore,* its stock rose several points.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; *for example,* its stock rose several points.

The following are transitional words and phrases, listed according to their use.

TO ADD

again	in addition
also	moreover
besides	next
first	second
furthermore	still

TO COMPARE/CONTRAST

also	nevertheless
but	on the contrary
conversely	still
in contrast	

TO PROVIDE EXAMPLES

for example	of course
for instance	put another way
in fact	to illustrate

TO SHOW PLACE

above	here
adjacent to	nearby
below	on the other side
elsewhere	there
further on	

To Reveal Time

afterward	second
first	shortly
meanwhile	subsequently
presently	thereafter

To Summarize

all in all	last
finally	on the whole
in conclusion	therefore
in summary	thus

Modification

A *modifier* is a word, phrase, or clause that explains or adds details about other words, phrases, or clauses.

Misplaced Modifiers. A *misplaced modifier* is one that is not placed next to the word it modifies.

incorrect

He had a heart attack *almost* every time he was reviewed by his supervisor.

correct

He almost had a heart attack every time he was reviewed by his supervisor.

incorrect

The worker had to *frequently* miss work.

correct

The worker frequently had to miss work.

Dangling Modifiers. A *dangling modifier* is a modifier that is not placed next to the word or phrase it modifies. To avoid confusing your readers, place modifiers next to the word(s) they refer to. Don't expect your readers to guess at your meaning.

incorrect

While working, tiredness overcame them.
(Who was working? Who was overcome by tiredness? *While working* should modify *staff,* but the word *staff* does not appear in the sentence.)

correct

While working, the staff became tired.

incorrect

After soldering for two hours, the equipment was ready for shipping. (Who had been soldering for two hours? Not the equipment!)

correct

After soldering for two hours, the technicians prepared the equipment for shipping.

Parallelism

All items in a list should be parallel in grammatical form. Avoid mixing phrases and sentences (independent clauses).

incorrect

We will discuss the following at the department meeting:

1. Entering mileage in logs (phrase)
2. All employees have to enroll in a training seminar. (sentence)
3. Purpose of quarterly reviews (phrase)
4. Some data processors will travel to job sites. (sentence)

correct

We will discuss the following at the department meeting:

1. Entering mileage in logs
2. Enrolling in training seminars
3. Reviewing employee performance quarterly
4. Traveling to job sites

phrases

correct

At the department meeting, you will learn how to do the following:

1. Enter mileage in logs.
2. Enroll in training seminars.
3. Review employee performance quarterly.
4. Travel to job sites.

sentences

Punctuation

Apostrophe (’)

Place an *apostrophe* before the final *s* in a singular word to indicate possession.

EXAMPLE ▶ Jim’s tool chest is next to the furnace.

Place the apostrophe after the final *s* if the word is plural.

EXAMPLE ▶ The employees’ reception will be held next week.

Don’t use an apostrophe to make singular abbreviations plural.

incorrect

The EXT’s will be shipped today.

correct

The EXTs will be shipped today.

Colon (:)

Use a *colon* after a salutation.

EXAMPLE

Dear Mr. Harken:

In addition, use a colon after an emphatic or cautionary word if explanations follow.

EXAMPLE

Note: Hand-tighten the nuts.
Caution: Wash thoroughly if any mixture touches your skin.

Finally, use a colon after an independent clause to precede a quotation, list, or example.

EXAMPLE

She said the following: "No comment."
These supplies for the experiment are on order: a plastic hose, two batteries, and several chemicals.
The problem has two possible solutions: Hire four more workers, or give everyone a raise.

NOTE: In the preceding examples, the colon follows an independent clause.

A common mistake is to place a colon after an incomplete sentence. Except for salutations and cautionary notes, whatever precedes a colon *must* be an independent clause.

incorrect

The two keys to success are: earning money and spending wisely.

correct

The two keys to success are earning money and spending wisely.

or

The two keys to success are as follows: earning money and spending wisely.

or

The two keys to success are as follows:

1. Earning money
2. Spending wisely

Comma (,)

Writers often get in trouble with *commas* when they employ one of two common words of wisdom.

- When in doubt, leave it out.
- Use a comma when there is a pause.

Both rules are inexact. Writers use the first rule to justify the complete avoidance of commas; they use the second rule to sprinkle commas randomly throughout their writing. On the contrary, commas have several specific conventions that determine usage.

1. Place a comma before a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, or, for, so, yet*) linking two independent clauses.

EXAMPLE ▶

You are the best person for the job, *so* I will hire you.
We spent several hours discussing solutions to the problem, *but* we failed to decide on a course of action.

2. Use commas to set off introductory comments.

EXAMPLE ▶

First, she soldered the components.
In business, people often have to work long hours.
To work well, you need to get along with your coworkers.
If you want to test equipment, do so by 5:25 P.M.

3. Use commas to set off sentence interrupters.

EXAMPLE ▶

The company, started by my father, did not survive the last recession.
Mrs. Patel, the proprietor of the store, purchased a wide array of merchandise.

4. Set off parenthetical expressions with commas.

EXAMPLE ▶

A worker, it seems, should be willing to try new techniques.
The highway, by the way, needs repairs.

5. Use commas after each item in a series of three or more.

EXAMPLE ▶

Prakash, Mirren, and Justin were chosen as employees of the year.
We found the following problems: corrosion, excessive machinery breakdowns, and power failures.

6. Use commas for long numbers.

EXAMPLE ▶

She earns $100,000 before taxes.

NOTE: Very large numbers are often written as words.

EXAMPLE ▶

Our business netted over $2 million in 2014.

7. Use commas to separate the day and year when they are part of a sentence.

EXAMPLE ▶

The company hired her on September 7, 2014, to be its bookkeeper.

NOTE: If the year is used as an adjective, do not follow it with a comma.

EXAMPLE ▶

The 2014 corporate report came out today.

8. Use commas to separate the city from the state and the state from the rest of the sentence.

The new warehouse in Austin, Texas, will promote increased revenues.

◀ EXAMPLE

NOTE: If you omit either the city or the state, you do not need commas.

The new warehouse in Austin will promote increased revenues.

◀ EXAMPLE

Dash (—)

A *dash,* typed as two consecutive hyphens with no spaces before or after, is a versatile punctuation mark. Most word processing programs now include an em dash character. Use dashes in the following ways.

1. After a heading and before an explanation.

Forecasting—Joe and Joan will be in charge of researching fourth-quarter production quotas.

◀ EXAMPLE

2. To indicate an emphatic pause.

You will be fired—unless you obey company rules.

◀ EXAMPLE

3. To highlight a new idea.

Here's what we can do to improve production quality—provide on-the-job training, salary incentives, and quality controls.

◀ EXAMPLE

4. Before and after an explanatory or appositive series.

Three people—Sue, Luci, and Tom—are essential to the smooth functioning of our office.

◀ EXAMPLE

Ellipses (. . .)

Ellipses (three spaced periods) indicate omission of words within quoted materials.

"Six years ago, prior to incorporating, the company had to pay extremely high federal taxes."

"Six years ago, . . . the company had to pay extremely high federal taxes."

◀ EXAMPLE

Exclamation Point (!)

Use an *exclamation point* after strong statements, commands, or interjections.

You must work harder!
Do not use the machine!
Danger!

◀ EXAMPLE

Hyphen (-)

A *hyphen* is used in the following ways.

1. To indicate the division of a word at the end of a typed line. Remember, this division must occur between syllables.
2. To create a compound adjective.

EXAMPLE ▶

> He is a well-known engineer.
> Until her death in 2014, she was a world-renowned chemist.
> Tom is a 24-hour-a-day student.

3. To join the numerator and denominator of fractions.

EXAMPLE ▶

> Four-fifths of the company want to initiate profit sharing.

4. To write out two-word numbers.

EXAMPLE ▶

> Twenty-six people attended the conference.

Parentheses ( )

Parentheses enclose abbreviations, numbers, words, or sentences for the following reasons.

1. To define a term or provide an abbreviation for later use.

EXAMPLE ▶

> We belong to the Society for Technical Communication (STC).

2. To clarify preceding information in a sentence.

EXAMPLE ▶

> The people in attendance (all regional sales managers) were proud of their accomplishments.

3. To number items in a series.

EXAMPLE ▶

> The company should initiate (1) new personnel practices, (2) a probationary review board, and (3) biannual raises.

Period (.)

A *period* must end a declarative sentence (independent clause).

EXAMPLE ▶

> I found the business trip rewarding.

Periods are often used with abbreviations.

D.C.	Mrs.	A.M. or a.m.
e.g.	Ms.	P.M. or p.m.
Mr.		

It is incorrect to use periods with abbreviations for organizations and associations.

incorrect

S.T.C. (Society for Technical Communication)

correct

STC (Society for Technical Communication)

State abbreviations do not require periods if you use two capital letters. (Continue to use a period after a capital letter and a lowercase letter such as Tx., Ks., or Mo.)

incorrect

KS. (Kansas)
MO. (Missouri)
TX. (Texas)

correct

KS
MO
TX

Question Mark (?)

Use a *question mark* after direct questions.

EXAMPLE

Do the lab results support your theory?
Will you work at the main office or at the branch?

Quotation Marks (" ")

Quotation marks are used in the following ways.

1. When citing direct quotations.

EXAMPLE

He said, "Your division sold the most compressors last year."

NOTE: When you are citing a quotation within a quotation, use double quotation marks (" ") and single quotation marks (' ').

EXAMPLE

Kim's supervisor, quoting the CEO, said the following to explain the new policy regarding raises: "'Only employees who deserve them will receive merit raises.'"

2. To note the title of an article or a subdivision of a report.

EXAMPLE ▶

The article "Robotics in Industry Today" was an excellent choice as the basis of your speech.
Section III, "Waste Water in District 9," is pertinent to our discussion.

When using quotation marks, abide by the following punctuation conventions:

- Commas and periods always go *inside* quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

She said, "Our percentages are fixed."

- Colons and semicolons always go *outside* quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

He said, "The supervisor hasn't decided yet"; however, he added that the decision would be made soon.

- Exclamation points and question marks go inside the quotation marks if the quoted material is either exclamatory or a question. However, if the quoted material is not exclamatory or a question, then these punctuation marks go outside the quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

John said, "Don't touch that liquid. It's boiling!"

(Although the sentence isn't exclamatory, the quotation is. Thus, the exclamation point goes inside the quotation marks.)

EXAMPLE ▶

How could she say, "We haven't purchased the equipment yet"?

(Although the quotation isn't a question, the sentence is. Thus, the question mark goes outside the quotation marks.)

Semicolon (;)

Semicolons are used in the following instances.

1. Between two independent clauses *not* joined by a coordinating conjunction.

EXAMPLE ▶

The light source was unusual; it emanated from a crack in the plastic surrounding the cathode.

2. To separate items in a series containing internal commas.

EXAMPLE ▶

When the meeting was called to order, all members were present, including Susan Johnson, the president; Jewel Smith, the vice president; Harold Holbert, the treasurer; and Linda Hamilton, the secretary.

Mechanics

Abbreviations

Never use an abbreviation that your reader will not understand. A key to clear technical writing is to write on a level appropriate to your reader. You may use the following familiar abbreviations without explanation: *Mrs.*, *Dr.*, *Mr.*, *Ms.*, and *Jr.*

A common mistake is to abbreviate inappropriately. For example, some writers abbreviate *and* as follows:

EXAMPLE

> I quit my job & planned to retire young.

This is too colloquial for professional technical writing. Spell out *and* when you write.

The majority of abbreviation errors occur when writers incorrectly abbreviate states and technical terms.

States. Writers often abbreviate the names of states incorrectly. Use the U.S. Postal Service abbreviations in addresses.

Abbreviations for States

AL	Alabama	MT	Montana
AK	Alaska	NC	North Carolina
AZ	Arizona	ND	North Dakota
AR	Arkansas	NE	Nebraska
CA	California	NV	Nevada
CO	Colorado	NH	New Hampshire
CT	Connecticut	NJ	New Jersey
DE	Delaware	NM	New Mexico
FL	Florida	NY	New York
GA	Georgia	OH	Ohio
HI	Hawaii	OK	Oklahoma
IN	Indiana	OR	Oregon
IA	Iowa	PA	Pennsylvania
ID	Idaho	RI	Rhode Island
IL	Illinois	SC	South Carolina
KS	Kansas	SD	South Dakota
KY	Kentucky	TN	Tennessee
LA	Louisiana	TX	Texas
ME	Maine	UT	Utah
MD	Maryland	VT	Vermont
MA	Massachusetts	VA	Virginia
MI	Michigan	WA	Washington
MN	Minnesota	WV	West Virginia
MS	Mississippi	WI	Wisconsin
MO	Missouri	WY	Wyoming

Technical Terms. Units of measurement and scientific terms must be abbreviated accurately to ensure that they will be understood. Writers often use such abbreviations incorrectly. For example, "The unit measured 7.9 cent." is inaccurate. The correct abbreviation for centimeter is *cm*, not *cent*. Use the following abbreviation conventions.

Technical Abbreviations for Units of Measurement and Scientific Terms

absolute	abs	current (electric)	I
alternating current	AC	cycles per second	CPS
American wire gauge	AWG	decibel	dB
ampere	amp	decigram	dg
ampere-hour	amp-hr	deciliter	dl
amplitude modulation	AM	decimeter	dm
angstrom unit	Å	degree	deg
atmosphere	atm	dekagram	dkg
atomic weight	at wt	dekaliter	dkl
audio frequency	AF	dekameter	dkm
azimuth	az	dewpoint	DP
barometer	bar.	diameter	dia
barrel, barrels	bbl	direct current	DC
billion electron volts	BeV	dozen	doz (or dz)
biochemical oxygen demand	BOD	dram	dr
board foot	bdft	electromagnetic force	emf
Brinell hardness number	BHN	electron volt	eV
British thermal unit	Btu	elevation	el (or elev)
bushel	bu	equivalent	equiv
calorie	cal	Fahrenheit	F
candela	cd	farad	F
Celsius	C	faraday	f
center of gravity	cg	feet, foot	ft
centimeter	cm	feet per second	ft/sec
circumference	cir	fluid ounce	floz
cologarithm	colog	foot board measure	fbm
continuous wave	CW	foot-candle	ft-c
cosine	cos	foot-pound	ftlb
cotangent	cot	frequency modulation	FM
cubic centimeter	cc	gallon	gal
cubic foot	cu ft (or ft2)	gallons per day	GPD
cubic feet per second	cfs	gallons per minute	GPM
cubic inch	cu in. (or in.3)	grain	gr
cubic meter	cu m (or m3)	grams	g (or gm)
cubic yard	cu yd (or yd3)	gravitational acceleration	g

(*continued*)

hectare	ha	maximum	max
hectoliter	hl	megacycle	mc
hectometer	hm	megahertz	MHz
henry	H	megawatt	MW
hertz	Hz	meter	m
high frequency	HF	microampere	µamp
horsepower	hp	microinch	µin.
horsepower-hours	hp-hr	microsecond	µsec
hour	hr	microwatt	µw
hundredweight	cwt	miles per gallon	mpg
inch	in.	milliampere	mA
inch-pounds	in.-lb	millibar	mb
infrared	IR	millifarad	mF
inner diameter or inside dimensions	ID	milligram	mg
		milliliter	ml
intermediate frequency	IF	millimeter	mm
international unit	IU	millivolt	mV
joule	J	milliwatt	mW
Kelvin	K	minute	min
kilocalorie	kcal	nautical mile	NM
kilocycle	kc	negative	neg or –
kilocycles per second	kc/sec	number	no.
kilogram	kg	octane	oct
kilohertz	kHz	ounce	oz
kilojoule	kJ	outside diameter	OD
kiloliter	kl	parts per billion	ppb
kilometer	km	parts per million	ppm
kilovolt	kV	pascal	pas
kilovolt-amperes	kVa	positive	pos or +
kilowatt-hours	kWH	pound	lb
lambert	L	pounds per square inch	psi
latitude	lat	pounds per square inch absolute	psia
length	l	pounds per square inch gauge	psig
linear	lin	quart	qt
linear foot	linft	radio frequency	RF
liter	l	radian	rad
logarithm	log.	radius	r
longitude	long.	resistance	r
low frequency	LF	revolution	rev
lumen	lm	revolutions per minute	rpm
lumen-hour	lm-hr	second	s (or sec)

Technical Abbreviations for Units of Measurement and Scientific Terms (continued)

secant	sec	ultra high frequency	UHF
specific gravity	sp gr (or SG)	vacuum	vac
square foot	ft2	very high frequency	VHF
square inch	in.2	volt-ampere	VA
square meter	m2	volt	V
square mile	mi2	volts per meter	V/m
tablespoon	tbs (or tbsp)	volume	vol
tangent	tan	watt-hour	whr
teaspoon	tsp	watt	W
temperature	t	wavelength	WL
tensile strength	ts	weight	wt
thousand	m	yards	y (or yd)
ton	t	years	y (or yr)

Capital Letters

Capitalize the following:

1. Proper nouns.

EXAMPLE ▶

people	cities	countries	companies	schools	buildings
Susan	Houston	Italy	Bendix	Harvard	Oak Park Mall

2. People's titles (only when they precede the name).

EXAMPLE ▶

Governor Sally Renfro
or
Sally Renfro, governor
Technical Supervisor Todd Blackman
or
Wes Schneider, the technical supervisor

3. Titles of books, magazines, plays, movies, television programs, and CDs (excluding the prepositions and all articles after the first article in the title).

EXAMPLE ▶

Mad Men
The Colbert Report
The Catcher in the Rye
The Twilight Saga: Breaking Dawn
American Idol

4. Names of organizations.

EXAMPLE

Girl Scouts
Phoenix, AZ, Regional Home Care Association
Kansas City Regional Council for Higher Education
Programs for Technical and Scientific Communication
American Civil Liberties Union
Students for a Democratic Society

5. Days of the week, months, and holidays.

EXAMPLE

Monday
December
Thanksgiving

6. Races, religions, and nationalities.

EXAMPLE

American Indian
Jewish
Polish

7. Events or eras in history.

EXAMPLE

the Gulf War
the Vietnam War
World War II

8. North, South, East, and West (when used to indicate geographic locations).

EXAMPLE

Atlanta is one of the fastest growing cities in the South.

NOTE: Don't capitalize these words when giving directions.

EXAMPLE

We were told to drive south three blocks and then to turn west.

9. The first word of a sentence.
10. Don't capitalize any of the following:

EXAMPLE

Seasons—spring, fall, summer, winter
Names of classes—sophomore, senior
General groups—middle management, infielders, surgeons

Numbers

Write out numbers one through nine. Use numerals for numbers 10 and above.

10	12
104	2,093
536	5,550,286

Although the preceding rules cover most situations, there are exceptions.

1. Use numerals for all percentages.

EXAMPLE ▶

2 percent   18 percent   25 percent

2. Use numerals for addresses.

EXAMPLE ▶

12 Elm   935 W. Harding

3. Use numerals for miles per hour.

EXAMPLE ▶

5 mph   225 mph

4. Use numerals for time.

EXAMPLE ▶

3:15 A.M.

5. Use numerals for dates.

EXAMPLE ▶

May 31, 2014

6. Use numerals for monetary values.

EXAMPLE ▶

$45 $.95 $2 million

7. Use numerals for units of measurement.

EXAMPLE ▶

14 feet   6 3/4 inches   16 mm 10 V

8. Do not use numerals to begin sentences.

incorrect

568 people were fired last August.

correct

Five hundred sixty-eight people were fired last August.

9. Do not mix numerals and words when writing numbers. When two or more numbers appear in a sentence and one of them is 10 or more, figures are used.

EXAMPLE
We attended 4 meetings over a 16-day period.

10. Use numerals and words in a compound number adjective to avoid confusion.

EXAMPLE
The worker needed six 2-inch nails.

Spelling

The following is a list of commonly misspelled or misused words. You can avoid many common spelling errors if you familiarize yourself with these words. Remember to run spell check; also remember that spell check will not understand context. The incorrect word contextually could be spelled correctly.

accept, except	council, counsel	personal, personnel
addition, edition	desert, dessert	principal, principle
access, excess	disburse, disperse	quiet, quite
advise, advice	fiscal, physical	rite, right, write
affect, effect	forth, fourth	stationery, stationary
all ready, already	incite, insight	their, there, they're
assistants, assistance	its, it's	to, too, two
bare, bear	loose, lose	whose, who's
brake, break	miner, minor	your, you're
coarse, course	passed, past	
cite, site, sight	patients, patience	

Apply Your Knowledge

Spelling

In the following sentences, circle the correctly spelled words within the parentheses.

1. Each of the employees attended the meeting (accept except) the line supervisor, who was out of town for job-related travel.
2. The (advise advice) he gave will help us all do a better job.
3. Management must (affect effect) a change in employees' attitudes toward absenteeism.
4. Let me (site cite sight) this most recent case as an example.
5. (Its It's) too early to tell if our personnel changes will help create a better office environment.
6. If we (lose loose) another good employee to our competitor, our production capabilities will suffer.
7. I'm not (quite quiet) sure what she meant by that comment.
8. (Their There They're) budget has gotten too large to ensure a successful profit margin.
9. We had wanted to attend the conference (to too two), but our tight schedule prevented us from doing so.
10. (You're Your) best chance for landing this contract is to manufacture a better product.

In the following letter, correct the misspelled words.

March 5, 2014

Joanna Freeman
Personel Director
United Teletype
1111 E. Street
Kansas City, MO 68114

Dear Ms. Freeman:

Your advertizmemt in the Febuary 18, 2014, Kansas City Star is just the opening I have been looking for. I would like to submit my quallifications.

As you will note in the inclosed resum, I recieved an Enginneering degree from the Missouri Institute of Technology in 2005 and have worked in the electronic enginneering department of General Accounts for three years. I have worked a great deal in design electronics for microprocesors, controll systems, ect.

Because your company has invented many extrordinary design projects, working at your company would give me more chances to use my knowlege aquired in school and through my expirences. If you are interested in my quallifications, I would be happy to discuss them futher with you. I look foreward to hearing from you.

Sincerly,

Bob Cottrell

Bob Cottrell

Fragments and Comma Splices

In the following sentences, correct the fragments and comma splices by inserting the appropriate punctuation or adding any necessary words.

1. She kept her appointment with the salesperson, however, the rest of her staff came late.
2. When the CEO presented his fiscal year projections, he tried to motivate his employees, many were not excited about the proposed cuts.
3. Even though the company's sales were up 25 percent.
4. The supervisor wanted the staff members to make suggestions for improving their work environment, the employees, however, felt that any grievances should be taken directly to their union representatives.
5. Which he decided was an excellent idea.
6. Because their machinery was prone to malfunctions and often caused hazards to the workers.
7. They needed the equipment to complete their job responsibilities, further delays would cause production slowdowns.
8. Their client who was a major distributor of high-tech machinery.
9. Robotics should help us maintain schedules, we'll need to avoid equipment malfunctions, though.
10. The company, careful not to make false promises, advertising their product in media releases.

In the following letter, correct the fragments and comma splices.

May 12, 2014

Maurene Pierce
Dean of Residence Life
Mann College
Mannsville, NY 10012

Subject: Report on Dormitory Damage Systems

Here is the report you authorized on April 5 for an analysis of the current dormitory damage system used in this college.

The purpose of the report was to determine the effectiveness of the system. And to offer any concrete recommendations for improvement. To do this, I analyzed in detail the damage cost figures for the past three years, I also did an extensive study of dormitory conditions. Although I had limited manpower. I gathered information on all seven dormitories, focusing specifically on the men's athletic dorm, located at 1201 Chester. In this dorm, bathroom facilities, carpeting, and air conditioning are most susceptible to damage. Along with closet doors.

Nonetheless, my immediate findings indicate that the system is functioning well, however, improvements in the physical characteristics of the dormitories, such as new carpeting and paint, would make the system even more efficient.

I have enjoyed conducting this study, I hope my findings help you make your final decision. Please contact me. If I can be of further assistance.

Rob Harken

Rob Harken

Punctuation

In the following sentences, circle the correct punctuation marks. If no punctuation is needed, draw a slash mark through both options.

1. John took an hour for lunch (, ;) but Joan stayed at her desk to eat so she could complete the project.
2. Sally wrote the specifications (, ;) Randy was responsible for adding any needed graphics.
3. Manufacturing maintained a 93.5 percent production rating in July (, ;) therefore, the department earned the Golden Circle Award at the quarterly meeting.
4. In their year-end requests to management (, ;) supervisors asked for new office equipment (, ;) and a 10 percent budget increase for staffing.
5. The following employees attended the training session on stress management (, :) Steve Janasz, purchasing agent (, ;) Jeremy Kreisler, personnel director (, ;) and Prakash Patel, staff supervisor.
6. Promotions were given to all sales personnel (, ;) secretaries, however, received only cost-of-living raises.
7. The technicians voted for better work benefits (, ;) as an incentive to improve morale.
8. Although the salespeople were happy with their salary increases (, ;) the technicians felt slighted.
9. First (, ;) let's remember that meeting schedules should be a priority (, ;) and not an afterthought.
10. The employee (, ;) who achieves the highest rating this month (, ;) will earn 10 bonus points (, ;) therefore (, ;) competition should be intense.

In the letter below, no punctuation has been added. Instead, there are blanks where punctuation might be inserted. First, decide whether any punctuation is needed (not every blank requires punctuation). Then, insert the correct punctuation—a comma, colon, period, semicolon, or question mark.

January 8_ 2014

Mr_ Ron Schaefer
1324 Homes
Carbondale_ IL_ 34198

Dear Mr_ Schaefer_

Yesterday_ my partners_ and I read about your invention in the Herald Tribune_ and we want to congratulate you on this new idea_ and ask you to work with us on a similar project_

We cannot wait to begin our project_ however_ before we can do so_ I would like you to answer the following questions_

- Has your invention been tested in salt water_
- What is the cost of replacement parts_
- What is your fee for consulting_

Once_ I receive your answers to these questions_ my partners and I will contact you regarding a schedule for operations_ We appreciate your design concept_ and know it will help our business tremendously_ We look forward to hearing from you_

Sincerely_

Elias Agamenyon

Elias Agamenyon

Agreement (Subject/Verb and Pronoun/Antecedent)

In the following sentences, circle the correct choice to achieve agreement between subject and verb or pronoun and antecedent.

1. The employees, though encouraged by the possibility of increased overtime, (was were) still dissatisfied with their current salaries.
2. The supervisor wants to manufacture better products, but (they he) doesn't know how to motivate the technicians to improve their work habits.
3. The staff (was were) happy when the new manager canceled the proposed meeting.
4. Anyone who wants (his or her their) vote recorded must attend the annual board meeting.
5. According to the printed work schedule, Susan and Tom (work works) today on the manufacturing line.
6. According to the printed work schedule, either Susan or Tom (work works) today on the manufacturing line.
7. Although Tamara is responsible for distributing all monthly activity reports, (she they) failed to mail them.
8. Every one of the engineers asked if (he or she they) could be assigned to the project.
9. Either the supervisor or the technicians (is are) at fault.
10. The CEO, known for her generosity to employees and their families, (has have) been nominated for the humanitarian award.

In the following memo, find and correct the errors in agreement.

MEMO

DATE: October 30, 2014
TO: Tammy West
FROM: Susan Lisk
SUBJECT: REPORT ON AIR HANDLING UNIT

There has been several incidents involving the unit which has resulted in water damage to the computer systems located below the air handler.

The occurrences yesterday was caused when a valve was closed creating condensation to be forced through a humidifier element into the supply air duct. Water then leaked from the duct into the room below causing substantial damage to four disc-drive units.

To prevent recurrence of this type of damage, the following actions has been initiated by maintenance supervision:

- Each supervisor must ensure that their subordinates remove condensation valves to avoid unauthorized operation.
- Everyone must be made aware that they are responsible for closing condensation valves.
- The supply air duct, modified to carry away harmful sediments, are to be drained monthly.

Maintenance supervision recommend that air handlers not be installed above critical equipment. This will avoid the possibility of coil failure and water damage.

Capitalization

In the following memo, nothing has been capitalized. Capitalize those words requiring capitalization.

date: december 5, 2014
to: jordan cottrell
from: richard davis
subject: self-contained breathing apparatus (scba) and negative pressure respirator evaluation and fit-testing report

the evaluation and fit-testing have been accomplished. the attached list identifies the following:

- supervisors and electronic technicians who have used the scba successfully.
- the negative pressure respirators used for testing in an isoamyl acetate atmosphere.

fit-testing of waste management personnel will be accomplished annually, according to president chuck carlson. new supervisors and technicians will be fit-tested when hired.

all apex corporation personnel located in the new york district (12304 parkview lane) must submit a request form when requesting a respirator or scba for use. any waste management personnel in the north and south facilities not identified on the attached list will be fit-tested when use of scba is required. if you have any questions, contact chuck carlson or me (richard davis, district manager) at ext. 4036.

Grammar Quiz

The following sentences contain errors in spelling, punctuation, verb and pronoun agreement, sentence structure (fragments and fused sentences), and modification. Circle the letter corresponding to the section of the sentence containing the error.

EXAMPLE

When you recieve the salary increase, your family will celebrate the occasion.
A B C

1. Each department manager should <u>his</u> (A) tell subordinates to <u>advise</u> (B) of any negative <u>occurrences</u> (C) regarding <u>in-house</u> (D) training.

2. The <u>lawyers'</u> (A) new offices were similar to <u>their</u> (B) former ones ________ (C) the offices were on a <u>quiet</u> (D) street.

3. New York City is <u>divided</u> (A) into five <u>boroughs</u> (B) <u>;</u> (C) Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens, Brooklyn, <u>and</u> (D) Staten Island.

4. Fashion consultants explain that <u>clothes</u> (A) create a strong impression ________ (B) so they advise executives ________ (C) to <u>choose</u> (D) wardrobes carefully.

5. Everyone should make sure that <u>they are</u> (A) well represented in union meetings <u>;</u> (B) otherwise <u>,</u> (C) management could become <u>too</u> (D) powerful.

6. The employment agency <u>,</u> (A) <u>too</u> (B) busy to return the telephone calls from prospective clients <u>,</u> (C) <u>are</u> (D) harming business opportunities.

7. The supervisory staff <u>are</u> (A) making decisions based on scheduling <u>,</u> (B) but all <u>employees</u> (C) want to <u>ensure</u> (D) quality control.

8. Because the price of cars has risen dramatically ________ (A) most people keep <u>their</u> (B) cars longer ________ (C) to save <u>capital</u> (D) expenditures.

9. The <u>department's</u> (A) manager heard that a merger was possible ________ (B) but he decided <u>to</u> (C) keep the news <u>quiet.</u> (D)

10. The manager of the department believed that her <u>employee's</u> (A) were excellent <u>,</u> (B) but she decided that no raises could be given ________ (C) because the price of stocks <u>was</u> (D) falling.

11. The detailed report from the audit ____________ of the department gave good advise
A B
about how to restructure , so we are all ready to do so.
C D

12. When my boss and I looked at the books , we found these problems ; lost invoices,
A B C
unpaid bills , and late payments.
D

13. The most dedicated staff members are accepted for the on-site training sessions
A B
because : they are responsive to criticism, represent the company's future, and strive
C D
for improvements.

14. Despite her assurances to the contrary , there is still three unanswered questions : who
A B C
will make the payments, when will these payments occur, and why is there a delay?
D

15. The reputation of many companies often depend on one employee who represents
A B C D
that company.

16. Either my monthly activity report or my year - end report are due today , but my
A B C
computer is broken ; therefore, I need to use yours.
D

17. Today's American manpower , according to many foreign governments, suffers
A B C D
from lack of discipline.

18. Rates are increasing next year because : fuel, maintenance, and insurance are
A B C
all higher than last year.
D

19. Many colleges have long-standing football rivalries , one of the most famous ones
A B
is between KU and KSU (two universities in Kansas).
C D

20. Everyone who wants to enroll in the business school should do so before June
A B
if they can to ensure getting the best classes.
C D

21. Because John wanted high visibility for his two business , he paid top dollar
A B
____________ and spent long hours looking for appropriate cites.
C D

22. Many people apply for jobs at Apex , however , only a few are accepted.
A B C D

23. Because most cars break down <u>occasionally</u> <u>,</u> all drivers should know how to change
A B
a flat tire <u>,</u> and how to signal for <u>assistance.</u>
C D

24. Arriving on time, working <u>diligently,</u> and closing the office securely <u>—</u> everyone
A B
<u>needs</u> to know that <u>they are</u> responsible for these job duties.
C D

25. Mark McGwire not only hit the ball <u>further</u> <u>than</u> other players, but also he hit
A B
more dingers than other players <u>who</u> hit <u>fewer</u> homers.
C D

LETTER FORMATS

Three common types of letter formats include **full block** (Figure 1), **full block with subject line** (Figure 2), and **simplified** (Figure 3). Two popular and professional formats used in business are full block and full block with subject line. With both formats, you type all information at the left margin without indenting paragraphs, the date, the complimentary close, or signature. The full block with subject line differs only with the inclusion of a subject line.

Another option is the simplified format. This type of letter layout is similar to the full block format in that all text is typed margin left. The two significant omissions include no salutation ("Dear _____:") and no complimentary close ("Sincerely,"). Omitting a salutation is useful in the following instances:

- You do not know your reader's name (NOTE: Avoid the trite salutation, "To Whom It May Concern:").
- You are writing to someone with a non-gender specific name (Jesse, Terry, Stacy, Chris, etc.) and you do not know whether to use "Mr.," "Mrs.," or "Ms."

The Administrative Management Society (AMS) suggests that if you omit the salutation, you also should omit the complimentary close. Some people feel that omitting the salutation and the complimentary close will make the letter cold and unfriendly. However, the AMS says that if your letter is warm and friendly, these omissions will not be missed. More importantly, if your letter's content is negative, beginning with "Dear" and ending with "Sincerely" will not improve the letter's tone or your reader's attitude toward your comments. The simplified format includes a subject line to aid the letter's clarity.

FIGURE 1 Full Block Format

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Dear Mr. McGraw:

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

<u>Within 30 days</u> of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

1 to 1½ in margins on all sides of the letter

Two to four spaces above and below the date

Two to four spaces above and below the salutation

Single space within the paragraphs.

Double space between the paragraphs.

Two spaces before "Sincerely"

Four spaces between "Sincerely" and the typed signature

FIGURE 2 Full Block Format with Subject Line

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

Dear Mr. McGraw:

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

FIGURE 3 Simplified Format Omitting "Dear . . ." and "Sincerely"

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

<u>Within 30 days</u> of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

REFERENCES

Bradley, Tony. "Policing Instant Messaging: Create A Policy To Govern IM Applications." *Processor* 5 Aug. 2005. Web. 12 Apr. 2008.

Clark, Robert. Interview. June 2010.

Gerson, Steven M., *et al*. "Core Competencies." Survey. Prentice Hall Publishing Company, 2004. Print.

Hoffman, Jeff. "Instant Messaging in the Workplace." *Intercom* Feb. 2004: 16–17. Print. "How To: Instant Messaging Security." *PC World* 14 Jul. 2006. Web. 12 Apr. 2008.

Munter, Mary, *et al*. "Business E-mail: Guidelines for Users." *Business Communication Quarterly* 66 (March 2003): 29. Print.

Ollman, Gunter. "Instant Message Security." *Technical Info*. Mar. 2004. Web. 12 Apr. 2008.

Sieberg, Daniel. "How apps are changing our phones - and us." CBS News. 13 Mar. 2011. Web. 13 Mar. 2011.

Shinder, Deb. "Instant Messaging: Does it Have a Place in Business Networks?" *WindowSecurity.com*. 2005. Web. 8 Jun. 2005.

Toor, Amar. "200,000 Text Messages Are Sent Every Second, U.N. Agency Says." *Switched.com*. 20 Oct. 2010. Web. 15 Mar. 2011.

"Writing: A Ticket to Work . . . Or A Ticket Out, A Survey of Business Leaders." *National Commission on Writing*. Sep. 2004. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

Social Media

Social Media

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In the Spiral16 scenario, Whitney Mathews explains how she uses social media in her position as social media manager.

Spiral16 is an informatic software company that builds products related to social media monitoring and analysis. One of the company's products, Spark©, monitors what people say online to help companies

- manage and protect their brands
- determine customer opinions
- spot potential public relations crises
- understand "language trends" through semantic analysis

Spiral16 helps companies make sense of the immense social media space by mapping the terrain of the Internet. This is done by visualizing near real-time results pulled from all categories of Web sites, including blogs, forums, news organizations, and videos. Spark assesses social media trends by accessing, studying, and reporting on public data on the Web. Some examples of Web sites Spark gathers information from include

- blogs
- online news organizations

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Understand that social media can take many different forms, including Internet discussion forums, blogs, vlogs, podcasts, online pictures, videos, and wikis
- Understand that companies should create guidelines and ethical standards for employee use of social media
- Know that a blog, the shortened version of the words Web log, is created online and can include text, graphics, links to other Web sites, and video
- Use YouTube for presentations, announcements, news releases, training, video instructions, and marketing
- Ensure proper production values when shooting YouTube videos
- Follow rules for Twittetiquette
- Know that thousands of companies have Facebook sites
- Know that on their Facebook site, companies can host a corporate blog, provide access to Twitter entries, post company YouTube videos, show photographs of corporate employees, list upcoming events and/or product releases, and provide access to discussion forums
- Use social media in a company to communicate during a crisis situation
- Use the checklist to ensure correct use of social media on the job

- social network communities, including Facebook, MySpace, Flickr, Ning, and LinkedIn
- YouTube and Vimeo
- Reference Web sites, such as MSNMoney, YahooFinance, and Wikipedia
- Twitter

Spiral16 effectively uses social media to grow its business as it helps other companies and organizations connect with their audience's needs and interests.

Whitney Mathews, social media manager at Spiral16, has an interesting and varied job with numerous responsibilities. She often works 55 hours or more each week and rarely turns off her iPhone. "I even watch television with the remote in one hand and my iPhone in the other!" For Whitney, a typical workday consists of

- Researching Spiral16 every morning when she gets to work using "our software Spark." Whitney performs this research to find out what is being said about Spiral16 and to find out who is talking about the company. She then leaves blog posts in response to the commentary and thanks the people who have communicated about Spiral16. She also likes to let her coworkers know about the comments and "flags" entries for them.
- Updating case study research about clients.
- Writing entries on the company's blog or working on current projects. One recent project was a PowerPoint presentation for Spiral16's president who was making the presentation at a meeting in Chicago.
- Attending social networking events. These events include blog meetups or Tweetups with business professionals she has met through her social media connections.
- Participating in sponsorships with other companies or individuals through bartering. Whitney will monitor other events for free "as long as they put our logo in their literature." In this way, Whitney advertises her company.
- Attending social media conferences to network and to acquire content for the company blog.

According to Whitney, organization is a critical part of performing her job. She finds that the following tools are critical to her success:

- iPhone allows 24/7 access for Whitney.
- Spark gives Whitney the software capability to study the information found on the Web.
- She says, "My laptop has my whole work life on it."
- TweetDeck is an application designed around Twitter that filters Twitter information.

Why Is Social Media Important in the Workplace?

Social media has a growing impact in today's workplace. "Social network or blog sites are visited by three quarters of global consumers who go online" (Owyang). Many companies are discovering "the benefits of blogs, online video and social-networking sites" (Ranii). According to Marius Ciortea, senior manager of project management and office Web architecture at Oracle, using social media in the workplace makes employees approachable, allowing for transparent conversations with customers and quick response to customer concerns. Michael Brito, social media strategist for Intel, says that with social media, companies can "humanize their brand" and achieve a sense of community and participation with customers.

Sun Microsystems is one example of a company that is using social media channels to connect its customers and employees. According to Sumaya Kazi, senior social media manager at Sun Microsystems, employees at Sun are expected to participate in social networking (wikis, blogs, tweets, and Facebook). "It's part of their jobs" to build community, listen, share, learn, and communicate with each other and with their customers. Social media is such a large part of life at Sun that the company has created "social media ecosystems"—multiple avenues of connectivity. Recently, Sun employees participated in social media as follows:

- 5,426 Sun bloggers
- 4,437 Sun blogs (including group blogs)
- 71,000 contributors to wikis.sun.com
- 946,000 contributors to forums.sun.com
- 200 communities on Sun's Facebook site
- 5,240 followers on Sun's Twitter site

According to a study performed by the University of Massachusetts Dartmouth Center for Marketing Research, "500 of the fastest growing companies in the US [have] found that familiarity with and use of blogs, podcasting, wikis, online video and social networking has skyrocketed." Seventy-seven percent of the businesses that responded to this marketing research survey used social media in their business (Kirkpatrick).

Another important use of social media is crisis communication. The FBI states, "Social media is rivaling 911 services in crisis response and reporting. . . . Social media has emerged to be the first instance of communication about a crisis, trumping . . . police, firefighters, EMT, and journalists" (Wohlsen).

Here are two one-stop sites for breaking news about social media: *Social Media Today* (http://socialmediatoday.com/) provides "insight and host[s] lively debate about the tools, platforms, companies and personalities that are revolutionizing the way we consume information"; *Mashable* (http://mashable.com) provides "social media news and web tips."

What Is Social Media?

Social media can take many different forms, including Internet discussion forums, blogs, vlogs, podcasts, online videos, and wikis. A company can use a blog to transmit information about the company, its personnel, and its products and services. This communication can be delivered quickly and efficiently to an individual's smartphone, tablet, or laptop computer—anytime, anywhere. Social media, in combination with mobile communication, allows for real-time video instructions to be delivered through YouTube and information delivered through Twitter, Facebook, or LinkedIn, among others.

Through a Facebook wall, customers can post directly to the company and communicate with many different levels of management. Bill Brelsford, owner of Rebar Business Builders, says, "I believe the 'cool' factor lies not in the technology but in the fact that now I can have a conversation with someone like the president of a large corporation, something I would probably not be able to do without social media tools" (Goforth). Whitney Mathews, social media manager at Spiral16, says social media is the "new customer help line" (Mathews). See Table 1 for examples of social media.

TABLE 1 Examples of Social Media

Blogger—a blog publishing system	**Friendster**—a social networking Web site	**LinkedIn**—a business-oriented social networking site
Delicious—a social bookmarking or social tagging Web service for storing and sharing Web bookmarks	**Google Groups**—a service from Google allowing discussions about common interests	**LiveJournal**—a blog publishing system
Digg—a social news Web site allowing users to submit Internet links and stories, vote, and comment on submitted stories	**Jaiku**—a social networking, microblogging service	**Meetup**—an online social networking site that facilitates group meetings and allows members to find and join groups unified by common interests
Facebook—a social networking Web site	**Justin.tv**—a network of channels for online live video streaming	**MySpace**—a social networking Web site
Open Diary—a blog publishing system	**Second Life**—a virtual world	**vBulletin**—an Internet site for forums and community blogs
Photobucket—an image and video hosting Web site	**Skype**—a software application that lets users make telephone calls over the Internet	**Vimeo**—a social networking site that supports video sharing, video storage, and user comments
Pinterest—a social photo and information sharing Web site	**SmugMug**—a digital photo sharing Web site	**Wikis**— community Web sites, such as Wetpaint, PBWiki, and Wikispaces, that allow for collaborative creation and editing of Web pages
Plaxo—an online address book and social networking service	**Twitter**—a social networking, microblogging service	**WordPress**—an open source blog publishing application
Plurk—a social networking, microblogging service	**TypePad**—a blog publishing service	**Yelp**—a social networking online opinion site for user reviews
Revver—a video sharing Web site	**Ustream.tv**—a network of channels for live video streaming of online events	**Zooomr**—a Web site for sharing digital photos and text messages
Yahoo! Groups—an electronic mailing list and Internet forum	**YouTube**—a video sharing Web site allowing users to upload and share video clips	
Flickr—an image and video hosting Web site		

Guidelines of Social Media Usage on the Job

Companies might hope that their employees' use of social media will be ethical and professional. However, this assumption could lead to problems. Without precise social media guidelines, employees could disclose confidential information or trade secrets, create public relations problems, or damage a company's image.

To avoid such situations, companies should create guidelines for employee use of social media. Following is a suggested social media policy adapted from the *National Law Journal* (Jackson).

EXAMPLE ▶

Corporate Social Media Policy

- Not following the company's guidelines for social media can lead to disciplinary action, including termination.
- Disclosing your employer's trade secrets or confidential and proprietary information is not allowed.
- Keep company logos and registered trademarks off your blogs.
- Do not mention your company in social media unless it is required as part of your job responsibilities.
- Do not post social media entries during business hours, unless this is part of your job responsibilities.
- Do not post work-related complaints.
- Do not use your company e-mail address when registering for social media sites. This could lead to viruses, spam, or illegal hacking.
- Do not post false information about your company, colleagues, or customers.
- Never use social media to harass, disparage, discriminate, or defame the company, colleagues, or customers.
- Take professional responsibility for your social media postings.
- If you mention your company in any social media postings, include a disclaimer stating that the views expressed are personal and do not reflect the opinions or policies of the company.

Types of Social Media

Although social media involves many different channels of delivery, this chapter focuses on the following:

- blogging
- YouTube
- Twitter
- Facebook

Understanding these types of social media will allow you to participate in online communities and incorporate social media into your workplace.

Blogging for Business

Jonathan Schwartz, president and chief operating officer of Sun Microsystems, says that blogging is a "must-have tool for every executive," as important as a smartphone and an e-mail account (Kharif). Bill Gates, Microsoft's CEO, says that blogs could be a better way for firms to communicate with customers, staff, and partners than e-mail and Web sites. "More than 700 Microsoft employees are already using blogs to keep people up to date with their projects" ("Gates backs blogs for business"). Marc Cuban, owner of the Dallas Mavericks basketball team, has a blog (Ray). IBM created "the largest corporate blogging initiative" by encouraging its 320,000 employees to become active bloggers with the goal of achieving "thought leadership" in the global information technology market (Foremski). Nike launched an "adverblog" to market its products. What is "blogging," and why are so many influential companies and business leaders becoming involved in this social media channel?

Blogging—A Definition. A blog, the shortened version of the words Web log, is created online and can include text, graphics, links to other Web sites, and video. Blogs not only allow but also encourage input from many readers. Daily, millions of people use blogs to publish their thoughts. Though many blogs feature text, blogs take different forms, including the following:

- vlogs—the posting of videos through RSS feeds (Really Simple Syndication or Rich Site Summary) to create miniprograms, such as seen on YouTube.
- podcasting—news, market information, product announcements, public service announcements, how-to videos, photographs, audio files, and more can be conveyed through podcast blogs. The term "podcast" is a combination of the words "iPod" and "broadcast."
- microblogging—brief text, usually less than 200 characters. Facebook and MySpace, two popular blog sites, include microblogging features.
- Twitter—a free microblogging service. Users can send short tweets or updates limited to 140 characters to cell phones or other blog sites.

Reasons for Blogging. Following are reasons why companies blog.

Communicate with colleagues. Chris Winfield, president of an online marketing company, says that he uses blogging to improve "communication flow to his employees" (Ray). Many companies encourage their employees to use blogging for project updates, issue resolutions, and company announcements. The engineering department at Disney ABC Cable Networks Group uses blogs "to log help desk inquiries" (Li).

Communicate with customers. In contrast to private, intranet-based blogs used for internal corporate communication, companies also have public blogs. Through public blogs, a company can initiate question/answer forums, respond to customer concerns, allow customers to communicate with each other, create interactive newsletters, introduce new products and services, and build rapport with customers, vendors, and stakeholders.

Improve search engine rankings. Marketing is a key attraction of corporate blogs. A blog post using keywords, allowing for comments and responses, and providing references and links to other sites, tends to rank in the top 10 to 20 listings in Internet search engines (Ray).

Network through syndication. To access a Web site, a reader must know the URL or use a search engine, such as Google. In contrast, blogs can be distributed directly to the end users through a Web feed. The writers of a blog can syndicate their content. Then, through the Web feed, readers can subscribe to the blog. Syndication makes Web feeds available for people to access. By using feed programs, such as RSS or Atom, bloggers can syndicate their blogs or be notified when topics of interest are published. Thus, blogs can be very personalized, essentially delivered to your door on a moment's notice.

Track public opinion. Trackback features, available from many blog services, let companies track blog usage. Tracking lets companies monitor their brand impact and learn what customers are saying (good news or bad news) about their products or services.

Guidelines for Effective Corporate Blogging. If you and your company decide to enter the blogosphere, the world of blogging, follow these guidelines.

Identify your audience. As with all technical communication, audience recognition and involvement are crucial. Before blogging, decide what topics you want to focus on, what your unique spin will be, what your goals are in using a blog, and who your blog might appeal to.

Achieve customer contact. Blogs are innately personal. Take advantage of this feature. Make your blogs fun and informal. You can give your blog personality and encourage customer outreach by including corporate news, personnel biographies, question/answer forums, updates, an opportunity to add comments, as well as information about products and services (Ray). In addition, make sure the blog is interactive, allowing for readers to comment, check out new links, or add links.

Start blogrolling. Once you have determined audience and blog location, it's time to start blogrolling. Start talking. Not only do you need to start the dialogue by adding content to your blog, but also you want to link your blog to other sites (Wuorio "Blogging").

Keep it fresh. Avoid a stale blog. By posting frequently (daily or weekly) and responding quickly to comments and criticism, you encourage readers to access your site and return to it often.

Develop guidelines for corporate blog usage. Because blogs encourage openness from customers as well as employees, a company must establish guidelines for corporate blog usage.

Figure 1 is a sample blog from Spiral16.

FIGURE 1 Sample Blog

spiral16 informatic software

Home | Search | Blog | Engage | Client Login

BIG Omaha: @Jeffrey on transparency

Do you classify your online strategy as **"transparent?"** How so? What elements go into your version of transparency? I think of a few elements when it comes to being transparent on the Web. **Honesty. Openness. Humility.**

Jeffrey Kalmikoff from Threadless gave a great presentation at BIG Omaha on what it means to be transparent online. Listen to the audio of his speech and follow along with the slides from SlideShare. They are posted on Flickr, too.

As a bonus, I included the panel that preceded Jeffrey. It was a Q&A with Jeffrey, Jason Fried, Gary Vaynerchuk and Micah Baldwin.

Warning: These podcasts contain graphic language that some may find offensive.

Published by whitney on 14 May in Content Of Interest, Industry Buzz, Resources, Shared Content

Tagged:

2 Responses to "BIG Omaha: @Jeffrey on transparency"

1. Jeffrey
   - 3:48 pm on May 14
   Thanks for putting this up! One weird thing is that some of the slides in that presentation are flip-flopped, so if it doesn't make a ton of sense - that's why. Also, you can view my slides up on slideshare…
   http://www.slideshare.net/fancyjeffrey/big-omaha
2. whitney
   - 4:12 pm on May 14
   Awesome, Jeffrey! I'll switch out the slideshare w/ the Flickr so it makes more sense.

Source: Courtesy of Spiral16

YouTube and Business

YouTube is increasingly important in business to communicate with a technologically adept consumer.

Why Should Businesses Have a YouTube Presence? Another social media opportunity for a business is YouTube. YouTube is a way for a company to connect with the customer. Because television, radio, and print advertising have become very expensive, companies can benefit from a more affordable means of advertising and marketing products and services. YouTube videos can be posted for free and allow businesses to reach millions of potential customers. "YouTube is a video sharing website allowing members to upload, share, and comment on a large database of videos. In one month alone, YouTube had a staggering 2.4 billion page views. Online video is hot" (Zahorsky). Research performed by the Kelsey Group "revealed that 59 percent of survey respondents watch online video. Emarketer estimates online video ad spending to reach over $700 million" annually (Zahorsky).

What Should Businesses Post on YouTube? A business can benefit from posting the following on YouTube:

- Presentations from executives to discuss finances, corporate activities, company performance, and so forth
- Announcements of important corporate news
- News releases of company activities
- Training for purchasers of products
- Videotapes of consumer questions and help-desk answers with procedural steps
- Marketing of new products with pictures
- Events such as corporate celebrations, meetings, and other activities
- Instructional videos showing how to use products

Guidelines for Shooting Videos to Post on YouTube. You have to shoot a video that people actually want to watch. A picture might be worth a thousand words, but if no one sees the picture, then you've wasted time. To shoot a successful video and ensure "proper production values," do the following (Miller):

- Title your video and use appropriate subtitles periodically in the video.
- Include the company name and contact information such as a telephone number and the Web site URL.
- Use onscreen graphics to enliven the video.
- Edit a longer video into short segments. YouTube allows videos 10 minutes long.
- Keep focused "on one key message with the strongest lead benefit," and avoid attempting to cover all your products or all your services (Zahorsky).
- Avoid plagiarism by creating your own content. "Before using music clips, television clips, or movie clips, you need to get permission to do so. If you fail to get permission, you are, essentially, stealing someone's work" (Brewer).

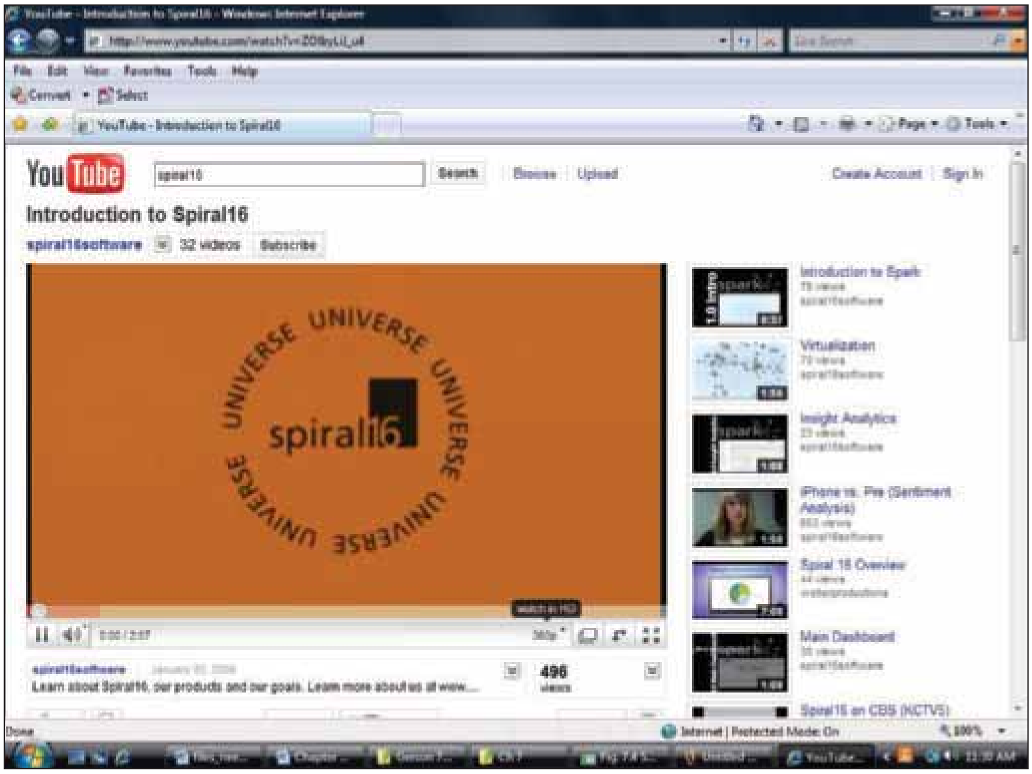
See Figure 2 for a sample YouTube screen courtesy of Spiral16.

Tweeting for Business

Businesses rely increasingly on Twitter for corporate communication and to reach the consumer.

What's Twitter? What's a Tweet? To use Twitter, you tweet. According to Wikipedia, "Twitter is a social networking and micro-blogging service that allows its users to send and read other users' updates." These messages are called tweets. Each tweet is a text-based post of up to 140 characters. Twitter is a free service that lets you subscribe to, share, or follow as many Twitter messages as you like.

FIGURE 2 YouTube Screen



Source: Courtesy of Spiral16

Jessica Vascellaro of the *Wall Street Journal* writes, "Email has had a good run as king of communications. But its reign is over. In its place, a new generation of services is starting to take hold—services like Twitter…[promise] to profoundly rewrite the way we communicate" (Vascellaro R1). The primary reason for this change is access. Twitter is a distributed communication system, and you don't need to open a Web browser to access this service. Instead, you and your readers (called "followers") can receive tweets in a variety of ways. "People download . . . programs like Twitterific, Feedalizr or Twinkle, they get the updates on their cellphones as text messages, or they use something like PocketTweets, Tweetie or iTweet for the iPhone" (Pogue). If you want to access tweets through your desktop or laptop, Twitterific opens up as a "tall, narrow window at the side of the screen. Incoming tweets scroll up" (Pogue).

Tweets don't have to be intrusive, either. Not everyone needs to read what you tweet. You can be more discerning by sending a direct message, which only one follower sees versus responding with a public tweet. Tweets can be sent directly to your RSS reader, and you can republish (retweet) a stream of content on your Web site or blog. Figure 3 defines commonly used Twitter terms.

Why Do Companies Use Twitter? Restaurants can tweet their daily specials, realtors can tweet new homes on the market, and a chamber of commerce could tweet about local city events and promotions. Companies can accomplish the following with Twitter:

- Direct people's attention to corporate news, products, services, and events.
- Give customers and coworkers a forum, allowing a company to study concerns, manage issues, initiate discussions, answer questions, and respond to complaints.
- Assist with business development—promotional and marketing collateral.

FIGURE 3 Definitions of Commonly Used Twitter Terms

Follower	People who read your tweets on Twitter
Retweet	When you copy someone else's tweet or republish a stream of tweets
Tweet	A single Twitter message
Tweetdeck	Software that runs on your desktop. You can post tweets from it, respond to tweets, set up searches, and get updates in real time.
Tweetie	The Twitter application for iPhone and iPod Touch
Tweet scan	Twitter's search tool
Tweeple	People who tweet
Twellow	A Twitter directory (something like the Yellow pages)
Twhirl	A desktop application that updates incoming tweets
Twitturly	A service for tracking URLs that people are talking about

- Add to and improve customer service. Through Twitter, you can send service updates and respond to customer concerns. Best Buy, for example, has created "Twelpforce," a customer-service team to answer customer questions about products and services.
- Help you show the "human" side of your company (tell what employees are doing and show how your company is involved in charitable activities).
- Allow dispersed work teams to communicate quickly with each other. For example, Handmark is a leading developer of mobile apps. Handmark employees work in Kansas City, Dallas, and Palo Alto. Due to their dispersed work locales, employees can't just walk down the hall to discuss projects. Paul Reddick, CEO of Handmark, says he and his coworkers use Twitter for "virtual cube talk" (Reddick).

Which Companies Have Twitter Sites? Table 2 shows companies with Twitter sites, their uses of these sites, and a few examples of tweets.

Rules for Twittetiquette. The bottom line to etiquette of any sort is treating people with respect. After that essential consideration, following are rules for etiquette when using Twitter—Twittetiquette.

1. Use services like Twitter Search to find who might be writing about you or your company.
2. Don't tweet all day while at work. That's not an effective use of your time or corporate time.
3. Don't use Twitter just as another channel for advertising. It should have a more personal, social media component—people talking to people.

DOT.COM UPDATES

Check out these URLs to learn more about Twitter:

- Brogan, Chriss. "50 Ideas on Using Twitter for Business." http://www.chrisbrogan.com/50-ideas-on-using-twitter-for-business/
- Brooks, Rich. "How to Use Twitter For Business." http://www.flyte.biz/resources/newsletters/08/06-twitter-for-business.php
- King, Rachael. "How Companies Use Twitter to Bolster Their Brands." http://www.businessweek.com/technology/content/sep2008/tc2008095_320491.htm
- Pogue, David. "Twittering Tips for Beginners." http://www.nytimes.com/2009/01/15/technology/personaltech/15pogue-email.html?_r=2&sq=Pogue%20twitter&st=Search&scp=4&pagewanted=all

TABLE 2 Companies Using Twitter

Companies Using Twitter	Purposes	Tweet Examples
JetBlue (http://twitter.com/jetblue).	Respond to customers' questions	Q: "Which destination would you pick for a short vacation?: Las Vegas (1) or New Orleans (2)?" A: "2 to 1 in favor of Vegas for a short trip after the initial volley of replies."
TheHomeDepot (http://twitter.com/thehomedepot)	Respond to customer concerns	"Sorry you didn't get the attention you deserved. We'd still like to help with your project. Can I help?"
Dell (www.dell.com/twitter)	Highlight individual Dell employee activities	"RT@LionelatDell Dell donates $5 to Susan G. Komen for the Cure for each Promise Pink laptop we sell. Lots of options (http://twitter.com/richardatdell)."
SouthwestAir (http://twitter.com/SouthwestAir)	Provide links to online articles for more information	"Did you know Southwest Pilots mentor thousands of students in science, math, geography, and writing? Read more: http://tinyurl.com/bpf6wb."
GM (http://twitter.com/GMblogs)	Share customer comments	"Retweeting @WarLordwrites: I've been using the GM OnStar Navigation system. I'm pleased. GM got this very right!"
M&Ms (http://twitter.com/msgreen)	Update company promotional activities	"Need a little va-va-voom in your love life? Tell me why over at www.mms.com/green and you could win a romantic Paris getaway!"
HRBlock (http://twitter.com/hrblock)	Build rapport	"Happy to hear it went well! It's a relief to have your taxes filed isn't it? You're ahead of me ;)"

4. Separate business from fun. Have two Twitter accounts: one that is strictly business and one that is for friends, family, and fun.
5. Don't tweet in anger. A tweet sent in anger can be read by thousands of people. They might not appreciate your haste and negativity. In contrast, positive interaction with a company representative could have a more positive impact (Brogan, Mathews).

See Figure 4 for a sample Twitter page courtesy of Spiral16.

Facebook

In addition to other social media sites, businesses use Facebook for corporate communications.

Business Uses for Facebook. Why would a business want to have a Facebook presence? Perhaps the greatest reason for companies to use Facebook is the enormous growth of this social media site, as shown in Table 3.

"Facebook's user base has expanded beyond college students" (Goforth D15). As shown in Figure 5, though the largest increase in total Facebook users is the 18 to 25 year cohort, the second largest rise is in the 26 to 34 age range. In fact, "45% of Facebook's US audience is now 26 years old or older," and the "fastest growing segment" of Facebook users is "women over 55" ("Fastest Growing Demographic on Facebook: Women Over 55").

With such large numbers of potential customers, a company can use Facebook as a one-stop location to market products or services, create brand recognition, recruit new employees, and connect with the customer on a personal basis. On their Facebook site, companies can host their corporate blog, provide access to their Twitter entries, post company YouTube videos, show photographs of corporate employees, list upcoming events

FIGURE 4 Sample Twitter Page

Source: Courtesy of Spiral16

TABLE 3 Facebook Statistics

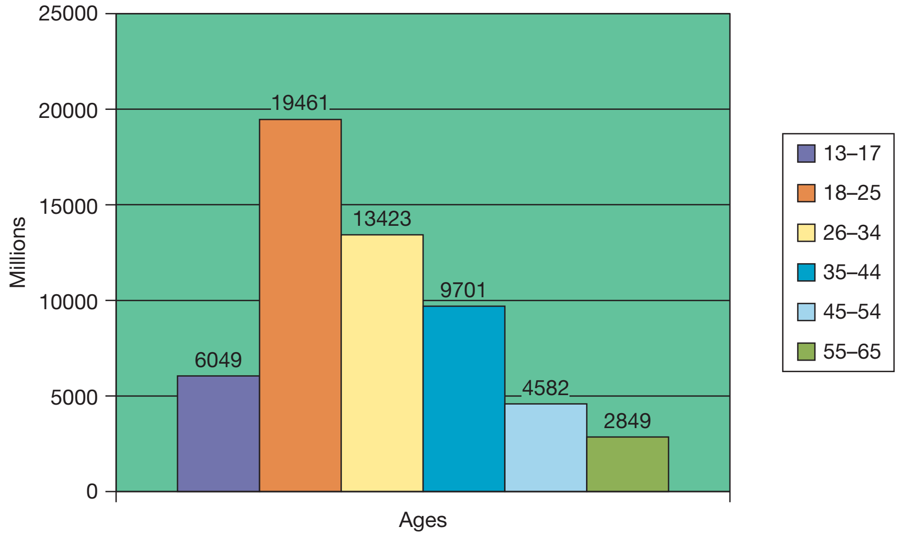
People on Facebook	Facebook has more than 845 million active users.
Activity on Facebook	Over one billion Facebook posts per day 2.7 billion likes/comments per day Over 100 billion friendships 250 million photos uploaded each day (Pring)
Global Reach	More than 70 translations are available on the site. About 70% of Facebook users are outside the United States. ("Statistics")

and product releases, and provide access to discussion forums. Businesses use Facebook in a variety of ways, including the following:

- Collaborating in teams—sharing documents and tasks and collaborating on projects
- Uploading PowerPoint slides to share presentations, tutorials, and demonstrations
- Conducting polls to find out end-user needs and preferences
- Managing a crisis by providing updates and responding to customer concerns

Guidelines for Businesses Participating on Facebook. For you and your company to participate on Facebook, follow these guidelines.

FIGURE 5 Total Facebook Users in the United States by Age Cohort



Create a clear business goal. What do you hope to accomplish in your company's Facebook site? Do you want to sell, promote charitable activities, share information about employees, show videos of how-to tutorials, allow for give-and-take with customers through blog entries, and so forth? Determine a plan before going online on Facebook ("Bosses").

FAQs: Virtual Worlds in the Workplace

Q: What's Second Life?

A: Created by Linden Research, Inc., Second Life® is a 3-D virtual world, a digital, social media continent populated by avatars. To access this virtual world, all you need to do is download a free Second Life (SL) viewer application, which runs on Macs, PCs, and Linux servers. You create your avatar (your virtual self) and "teleport" into alternative worlds.

Q: Why would you want to enter this virtual world?

A: SL provides its end users and its host organizations a multitude of technical communication values. Here's a list of reasons why organizations use SL.

- **Marketing.** Companies use SL to tell customers about new products and hold virtual events with guest speakers. In SL, a company can build brand recognition.
- **Training.** With SL, you and your avatar can be involved in virtual hands-on tutorials. SL is an especially valuable tool for training when employees and clients are geographically dispersed, when actual equipment is expensive, and when situations are dangerous. In a virtual world, machines can't break and no one can be injured following a procedure.
- **Modeling, monitoring, and product testing.** Whether it's a new car, software product, machine, or a hotel resort, it can be cheaper to create an SL version and get feedback from potential end users than it would be to build an actual prototype in RL (real life).
- **Providing customer service.** IBM has opened an SL business center staffed by an international core of IBM sales representatives. In this virtual business center, customers can buy hardware and software. Plus, these avatars of actual clients can get answers to their computing questions and solutions to their business problems.
- **Virtual conferencing.** You can travel to off-site conferences, engage in webinars, participate in teleconferences, or attend a virtual conference in SL.

SOCIAL MEDIA CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Have you considered your audience's needs in your social media communication?

_____ **2.** If you are using social media, how will you engage your audience and encourage participation in the blog, tweet, or Facebook site?

_____ **3.** If you are tweeting, have you limited your tweet to 140 characters?

_____ **4.** If you are using Facebook, have you developed a corporate plan?

_____ **5.** If you have created a video to post to YouTube, have you followed the guidelines, such as limited length, appropriate subject matter, titles and subtitles, contact information, and so forth?

_____ **6.** Have you considered ethical standards when using social media?

_____ **7.** Did you review your communication for grammar, punctuation, or spelling errors?

_____ **8.** If you have used material such as pictures, video, or words created by someone other than yourself, have you linked to the source or provided copyright information?

_____ **9.** Are you updating your blog posts frequently to keep the information fresh and current?

_____ **10.** Do you avoid spending excessive amounts of work time communicating via social media?

Keep it fresh. You should update your Facebook profile consistently. Add new videos, new blog postings, new tweets, new information about company products and services, and news about company activities.

Add links to social media tools. Your company's Facebook site will be enhanced by other social media tools such as Twitter, YouTube videos, your company's blog, LinkedIn, etc.

Create reasonable conduct policies with employees. Write down and disseminate corporate policies for Facebook usage regarding security, confidentiality, and personal conduct online. "This way staff will be less likely to get an unpleasant surprise when they find out their employer doesn't approve of something they said or did" ("Facing").

When using social media sites such as Facebook, you must be ethical, honest, and represent your company respectfully. Consider the following guidelines before you post on Facebook:

- Always write truthfully about yourself or your company.
- Do not disclose confidential information about the company.
- Post photographs that represent employees in a professional manner.
- Avoid links to unprofessional, inappropriate, or personal sites.
- Post videos that are short and professional.
- Respond to public inquiries on the site immediately (within 24 hours of the posting).
- Update the work-related information on the Facebook site frequently.
- Avoid wasting work time with frequent postings of a personal nature.
- Avoid endorsing other people or companies unless your company approves.
- Do not post other people's writing without getting permission.

The Writing Process at Work

Effective communication follows a process of prewriting, writing, and rewriting. To illustrate the importance of the writing process in social media, look at how Whitney Mathews used prewriting, writing, and rewriting to create an effective blog entry for Spiral16.

Prewriting

Figure 6 illustrates Whitney Mathews' listing to gather and organize data for her blog entry for Spiral16.

FIGURE 6 Listing for a Blog Entry

1. What do I want the readers to learn about social media from my blog?
2. Where should people begin when they use social media?
3. What can the different departments in a company contribute to the use of social media?
4. What questions should be asked of the different departments to learn more about their use of social media with customers?
5. What do we hope to accomplish with social media?

Writing

Figure 7 is Whitney's draft of the blog entry that she wrote. She then thought about redesign issues to revise the text.

FIGURE 7 Whitney's Draft of the Blog Entry with Her Thoughts on Revision

I'll add headings and subheadings to help our readers navigate the text more easily.

I'll add hypertext links to help our readers find the original sources.

I'll break the text into smaller chunks, smaller paragraphs for easier access.

This paragraph would be much more reader friendly if I bulletized the questions.

A graphic would be a great way to show how we at Spiral16 help our readers visualize data. I'll try one of our bubble charts that show connections between data points.

One of the toughest things for companies to grasp when building a social media strategy is that they need to write the definition for their own success. When it comes to social media, objectives are different for everyone. That's the point. You can take your message to your audience in a way that fits what you want to achieve. We've talked about this before on the blog, but it's becoming more important as more companies create legit strategies.

So, if we come to a demo and ask what you are looking for when it comes to social media monitoring, take a second to think it through. Define your own goals and objectives. If you have no idea where to start, head to the whiteboard and have an old-fashioned brainstorming session. Bring a representative from every department. They will all have different ideas and voices on the value of your results. If they (or you) need a better understanding of why social media and monitoring matters. Also, if each department with a valuable interest has access to your data, it can keep your company on the same page while satisfying individual needs. Sales can identify potential clients, marketing can form strategy around results, communications can respond quickly to crises, and HR can police potential problems with employees. All these different departments can get these insights from the same data set.

Ask the group questions like the following: Do you respond to your audience online? If yes, are you satisfied with your response time? Do you want to improve customer service? What about sales? Do you want to increase your brand loyalty? Should you monitor specific campaigns or just your overall presence? What are some of your goals? What are suggestions you give to clients when it comes to developing strategy?

Rewriting

See Figure 8 for Whitney's successful blog entry from Spiral16.

FIGURE 8 Whitney's Blog Entry for Spiral16

New rule: You must define your objectives. In my experience, one of the toughest things for companies to grasp when building a social media strategy is that they need to write the definition for their own success.

When it comes to social media, **objectives are different for everyone**. That's the point. You can take your message to your audience in a way that fits what you want to achieve.

We've talked about this before on the blog (see Three Steps for SocMed Solution Shopping), but it's becoming more important as more companies create legit strategies.

So, if we come to a demo and ask what you are looking for when it comes to social media monitoring, take a second to think it through. **Define your own goals and objectives.**

If you have no idea where to start, head to the whiteboard and have an old-fashioned brainstorming session. **Bring a representative from every department** (sales, marketing, HR, etc.). They will all have different ideas and voices on the value of your results. If they (or you) need a better understanding of why social media and monitoring matters, check out our recent presentation given at Magnet Interactive.

Also, if each department with a valuable interest has access to your data, it can keep your company on the same page while satisfying individual needs. Sales can identify potential clients, marketing can form strategy around results, communications can respond quickly to crises, and HR can police potential problems with employees. All these different departments can get these insights from the same data set.

Ask the group questions like . . .

- Do you respond to your audience online?
- If yes, are you satisfied with your response time?
- Do you want to improve customer service?
- What about sales?
- Do you want to increase your brand loyalty?
- Should you monitor specific campaigns or just your overall presence?
- . . . Or both?

The list goes on . . .

Make it clear what you want, and your monitoring software should be flexible enough to give you what you need.

What are some of your goals? What are suggestions you give to clients when it comes to developing strategy?

Source: Published by Whitney on 18 May in *Content Of Interest, Industry Buzz*

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Social media can take many different forms, including Internet discussion forums, blogs, vlogs, podcasts, online pictures, videos, and wikis.
2. Companies should create guidelines for employee use of social media.
3. A blog, the shortened version of the words Web log, is created online and can include text, graphics, links to other Web sites, and video.
4. YouTube is good for presentations, announcements, news releases, training, video instructions, and marketing.
5. Ensure proper production values when shooting YouTube videos.
6. Follow rules for Twittetiquette.
7. Thousands of companies have Facebook sites.
8. Link to your sources so you can avoid plagiarizing content.
9. On their Facebook site, companies can host their corporate blog, provide access to their Twitter entries, post company YouTube videos, show photographs of corporate employees, list upcoming events and/or product releases, and provide access to discussion forums.
10. Companies can use social media to communicate during a crisis situation.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

S&L Engineering has been working on the construction of a multi-purpose site that would inhabit five blocks in downtown Los Angeles. The proposed site includes a boutique hotel, office space, condos, and retail shops. However, the project has met financial and legal problems that have negatively impacted the construction schedule. The project is two years behind schedule. Although 60 percent complete, the construction company that S&L hired has filed for bankruptcy. S&L has hired a new construction company that promises to complete the project in 18 months.

S&L Engineering needs to bring the community up to date on the status of the project. This includes damage control, because S&L wants to be a good neighbor to other businesses and residents who work and live near the construction site.

To accomplish their communication goals, S&L plans to do the following:

a. Post a YouTube video of S&L's CEO speaking to the public about the project's challenges.
b. Write a tweet announcing the status of the project.
c. Post a blog entry from the construction manager of the building site, detailing plans for the project's completion.
d. Post a Facebook wall entry about the new construction company (its local reputation and its plans for hiring from the local labor force).

Assignment

What content should be included in each of the above communication channels? Write the scripts for a, b, c, and d.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

Facebook

1. Create a Facebook site for your college or technical communication class.
2. Review the Facebook sites of various businesses, governmental organizations, or industries. What do these sites have in common? What is unique to each site you visit? What is each company trying to accomplish in their Facebook site? How would you improve a site if you were the social media manager of this organization or company?

Twitter

After reading the following scenarios, respond to each companies' communication need by writing a 140-character tweet.

1. Your bank, Hearth and Home Savings and Loan, has new, low rates for mortgages (3.5 percent for 30-year loans—this is the lowest rate for home loans in over 30 years) and high rates for certificates of deposit (2.5 percent for three year CDs—CDs have been higher in the past, but recent rates have been much lower). Market these benefits to your bank's customers by sending a tweet.
2. At a recent X-Games motorcycle jumps and tricks competition, hosted by the EnVi Hotel in Las Vegas, Nevada, a rider, Jason Whitworth, performed a first-ever trick, which he called the "double loop Superman kick out." Jason rides your company's top-of-the-line motorcycle, the Turbo ZZ210, and wears your company's gear (helmet, boots, gloves, knee pads, and jumpsuit). To inform your company's audience of this new trick and to market your brand, send a tweet.
3. Four employees of your internationally marketed fast-food restaurant Hot Wings & Cool Things, created a video of themselves acting inappropriately in one of your restaurants. Posted on YouTube, they can be seen eating food from customers' trays and using cooking utensils in an unhealthy manner. Yes, you fired the employees and created new rules of appropriate behavior, incorporated into your training manuals, but still, you must manage this publicity crisis. Write a tweet to your international audience in which you confront bad publicity quickly and show how you manage poor employee behavior.
4. Your software company is rolling out a new product, a software program that will help potential college students apply for college loans, write their letters of application, and gather all application materials in a single portfolio file. To help customers use this new software, your company is planning a free-to-the-public informational webinar on March 11. The webinar will provide hands-on tutorials for using the new software and provide a "virtual" help desk for questions and answers. Share this update with potential customers by writing a tweet.
5. Today at 11:00 a.m., your city of Greenwood Springs experienced a major explosion at a chemical plant downtown. This led to over 50 injuries, closed streets (Elm Street going north and south from 45th Street to 91st Street), a portion of a closed highway (from Highway 62 to the I-48 southbound exit), and pollution problems due to heavy smoke. As city manager, you want to quickly inform your city residents of this crisis situation. Write a tweet to share the news, to warn residents, and to provide updates on traffic detours.

YouTube

1. Access a YouTube instructional video and analyze ways in which it succeeds or could be improved. Base your comments on the guidelines provided in this chapter. Write an e-mail message to your professor with a summary of your findings.
2. Create a company, product, or service. Write a script for a YouTube video that introduces or markets the new company, product, or service.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. Check out Stonyfield Farm's blog site at http://stonyfield.typepad.com/bovine/. This site says, "Welcome to the bovine bugle."

Assignment

Read entries from the blog site. Then answer these questions:

- What are Stonyfield's goals in creating this blog?
- How does this blog relate to corporate business?
- If you were hired by a company of your choice, what storylines would your blogs feature and why?

2. Sanya Guptel is attending a social media conference in San Francisco. She is presenting a speech about her company's use of YouTube for customer service training. In addition, she has attended workshops on ethics regarding the use of social media in the workplace, how to target audience demographics through social media, and the development of new social media channels of communication. To bring her colleagues up to date on her experiences at the conference, Sanya can write on her company's Facebook wall, send a tweet, post a blog entry, or make a YouTube video.

Assignment

Explain the benefits and drawbacks for each of Sanya's options. Then, write the text for Sanya, using the social media option that you consider best. Create any additional text you would like to complete this task.

WEB WORKSHOP

1. Bloggers provide up-to-date information on newsbreaking events and ideas.
   - For e-commerce news, visit http://blog.clickz.com/ (ClickZ Network—Solution for Marketers).
   - For business blogging, visit http://www.businessweek.com/the_thread/blogspotting/ (Business Week Online) to learn where the "worlds of business, media and blogs collide."
   - For technology news (information technology, computer information systems, biomedical informatics, and more), visit http://blogs.zdnet.com/. Once in this site, use their search engine to find a technology topic that interests you.
   - Every news agency, such as ABC, NBC, CBS, CNBC, has a news blog.

   To see what's new in your field of interest, check out a blog. Then, report key findings to your instructor in an e-mail message.
2. There are many published guidelines for accepted use of social media. Review the following links to learn what these guidelines entail. Then write an e-mail message to your professor reporting your findings.
   - "Social Media Guide's Top 10 Twitter Tips." http://mashable.com/2009/06/25/twitter-seo-tips/
   - "IBM Social Computing Guidelines: Blogs, wikis, social networks, virtual worlds and social media." http://www.ibm.com/blogs/zz/en/guidelines.html
   - "Sun Microsystems's Guidelines on Public Discourse." http://www.sun.com/communities/guidelines.jsp
   - "Intel Social Media Guidelines." www.intel.com/sites/sitewide/en_us/social-media.htm

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 1 — Sample Blog. Courtesy of Spiral 16.

Figure 2 — YouTube Screen. Courtesy of Spiral 16 and YouTube.

Figure 4 — Sample Twitter Page. Courtesy of Spiral 16.

Figure 6 — Listing for a Blog entry. Courtesy of Spiral 16.

Figure 7 — Whitney's Draft of the Blog Entry with her Thoughts on Revision. Courtesy of Whitney Mathews.

Figure 8 — Whitney's Blog Entry for Spiral16. Courtesy of Whitney Mathews.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Steven and Sharon Gerson

© auremar / Shutterstock

REFERENCES

"Bosses 'should embrace Facebook.'" *BBC News*. 29 Oct. 2008. Web. 21 May 2009.

Brewer, Melissa. "YouTube Marketing Basics - Know and Follow the Rules." 2011. Web. 24 Feb. 2012.

Brito, Michael. Presentation. Social Networking Conference. 25 Jun. 2009.

Brogan, Chriss. "50 Ideas on Using Twitter for Business." 20 Apr. 2008. Web. 4 Feb. 2009.

Ciortea, Marius. Presentation. Social Networking Conference. 25 Jun. 2009.

"Facing Up to Facebook." *British Trade Union*. Aug. 2007. Web. 21 May 2009.

"Fastest Growing Demographic on Facebook: Women Over 55." *Insidefacebook.com*. 2 Feb. 2009. Web. May 2009.

Foremski, Tom. "IBM is preparing to launch a massive corporate wide blogging initiative." *Silicon Valley Watcher*. 13 May 2005. Web. 23 May 2005.

"Gates backs blogs for businesses." *BBC News*. 21 May 2004. Web. 23 May 2005.

Goforth, Alan. "Firms Find Friend in Facebook." *The Kansas City Star*. 19 May 2009: D:15, D:17. Print.

Jackson, Renee M. "Social Media Permeate the Employment Life Cycle." *The National Law Journal*. 18 Mar. 2011. Web. 28 Mar. 2011.

Kazi, Sumaya. Presentation. Social Networking Conference. 25 Jun. 2009.

Kharif, Olga. "Blogging for Business." *BusinessWeek Online*. 9 Aug. 2004. Web. 23 May 2005.

Kirkpatrick, Marshall. "Study: Fastest Growing US Companies Rapidly Adopting Social Media." *Read Write Web*. 15 Aug. 2008. Web. May 2009.

Li, Charlene. "Blogging: Bubble or Big Deal?" *Forrester*. 5 Nov. 2004. Web. 23 May 2005.

Mathews, Whitney. Interview. 4 May 2009.

Miller, Michael. "Using YouTube to Promote Your Business." *InformIT*. 28 Sep. 2007. Web. 4 Feb. 2009.

Owyang, Jeremiah. "A Collection of Social Network Stats for 2010." *Web-Strategist.com*. 19 Jan. 2010. Web. 14 Apr. 2011.

Pogue, David. "Twittering Tips for Beginners." *New York Times*. 15 Jan. 2009. Web. 24 Feb. 2012.

Pring, Cara. "100 More Social Media Statistics for 2012." *The Social Skinny*. 13 Feb. 2012. Web. 24 Feb. 2012.

Ranii, David. "More companies use social media for marketing." *The News & Observer*. 12 Dec. 2008. Web. 4 Feb. 2009.

Ray, Ramon. "Blogging for Business." *Inc.com*. Sep. 2004. Web. 23 May 2005.

Reddick, Paul. Interview. 15 Oct. 2009.

"Statistics." *Facebook.com*. 2011. Web. 16 Apr. 2011.

Vascellaro, Jessica E. "Why Email No Longer Rules." *The Wall Street Journal* 12 Oct. 2009: R1, R3. Print.

Wohlsen, Marcus. "Mining our Messages." *Kansas City Star* 13 February 2012, A2. Print.

Wuorio, Jeff. "Blogging for business: 7 tips for getting started." *Microsoft*. 9 Sep. 2007. Web. 23 May 2005.

Zahorsky, Darrel. "YouTube Your Business With Online Video." About.com. 20 Apr. 2009. Web. 18 Apr. 2011.

The Job Search

From Chapter 9 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

The Job Search

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, a business owner interviews potential job applicants.

The job search involves at least two people—the applicant and the individual making the hiring decision. Usually more than two people are involved, however, because companies typically hire based on a committee's decision. That is the case at **DiskServe**. This St. Louis-based company is hoping to hire a customer service representative for its computer technology department. DiskServe is eager to hire a new employee because one of its best workers has just advanced to a new position in the company. DiskServe asked applicants to apply using e-mail. Thus, the applicants submitted an application by way of a cover e-mail message, an attached resume, and an attached portfolio.

DiskServe advertised this opening in the career placement centers at local colleges, through online search engines, and in its Web site: http://www.DiskServe.com.

In addition to DiskServe's chief executive officer (CEO), Sarah Beske, the hiring committee will consist of two managers from other DiskServe departments, the former employee

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- **Use many different resources to locate possible jobs, such as college placement centers, instructors, friends, professional affiliations, want ads, social media, and the Internet**
- **Use either a reverse chronological resume or a functional resume**
- **Write a traditional hard-copy resume, a resume attached to an e-mail message, or a scannable resume**
- **Include a summary of qualifications on your resume**
- **Write a letter of application or cover e-mail message so that it targets a specific job**
- **Prepare before an interview so you can anticipate possible questions**
- **Use a follow-up letter or e-mail message to impress the interviewer and remind him or her of your strengths**
- **Know that over 60 percent of jobs are found through networking**
- **Use the Internet to help you job search**
- **Use the job search checklists to evaluate your resume, cover letter or e-mail message, interview, follow-up letter or e-mail message, job acceptance letter or e-mail message**

whose job is being filled, and two coworkers in the computer technology department.

Ten candidates were considered for the position. All candidates first had teleconference interviews. While Sarah talked with the candidates, the other hiring committee members listened on a speaker phone. After the telephone interviews, four candidates were invited to DiskServe's work site for personal interviews—Macy Heart, Aaron Brown, Rosemary Lopez, and Robin Scott.

Sarah Beske, who has worked hard to create a family-oriented environment at DiskServe, values three traits in her employees: technology know-how, an ability to work in teams, and a positive attitude toward customers and coworkers. When the candidates arrived at DiskServe, Sarah gave them a tour of the facilities, introducing them to many employees. Then the interviews began.

Each job candidate was asked a series of questions that included the following:

- What is your greatest strength? Give an example of how this reveals itself on the job.
- What did you like most and least about your previous jobs?
- How have you handled customer complaints in the past?
- Where do you see yourself in five years?

Then, each candidate was taken to the computer repair lab and confronted with an actual hardware or software problem. The candidates were asked to solve the problem, and their work was timed. Finally, the applicants were allowed to ask questions about DiskServe and their job responsibilities.

Sarah is a stickler for good manners and business protocol. She waited 48 hours after the final interview to make her hiring decision. The wait time allowed her to check references. More important, she wanted to see which of the candidates wrote follow-up thank you notes, and she planned to assess the quality of their writing. Sarah takes the hiring process seriously. She wants to hire the best people because she hopes those employees will stay with the company a long time. Hiring well is a good corporate investment.

The Three Rs of Searching for a Job

When beginning your job search, consider the three Rs: research yourself, research the company, and research the position. By performing this research, you will improve the focus of your job search. Learning more about your goals, the company's culture, and the specifics of the position will help you determine your goals, decide if the company and job meet your needs, and prepare you for an interview.

Research Yourself

You are not right for every job, and every job is not right for you. To ensure that you are applying for the correct position, ask yourself the following questions:

- What are your skills, attributes, and accomplishments?
- What can you bring to the company that is unique?
- How do your qualifications meet the position's requirements?
- What interests you about this company and the position?

Research the Company

By researching the company, you educate yourself about the company's culture, values, products, and services. To research the company, view the employer's Web site, read annual reports, speak with an employee, or go online to a site like Glassdoor.com to read employee reviews. Consider these questions:

- What is the employer's product or service?
- What is the company's vision or mission statement?
- What are the needs or problems of the employer?
- What role does the employer play in the community?
- Is the employer expanding?

Research the Position

When you consider the job opening, go online to the Occupational Outlook Handbook (http://www.bls.gov/oco/ooh_index.htm) to learn about a career field's salary range and job outlook. When you consider a specific company, review advertised job requirements and duties. This will help you determine if the job is right for you. Ask yourself these questions:

- What are the job responsibilities?
- What are the pay and benefits for this job?
- What skills and talents are needed for the position?
- What is the growth opportunity for this field?

("Resume Guidelines")

Researching the Internet to Find Job Openings

You should make the Internet part of your job search strategy. Internet job search engines, like those listed in Table 1, provide excellent job search resources, such as the following:

- **Resumes**—explaining the difference between resumes and curriculum vitae (CV), addressing gaps in your career history, avoiding typical resume mistakes, and writing winning resumes.

TABLE 1 Online Job Search Links

Search Engines for Jobs in the United States

- http://www.monster.com—lets you post resumes and search for jobs, and provides career advice
- http://www.careerbuilder.com—lets you search for jobs by company, industry, and job type
- http://www.twitjobsearch.com—lets you use Twitter for your job search
- http://www.collegerecruiter.com—lists the latest job postings, "coolest career resources, and most helpful employment information"
- http://www.careerjournal.com—the *Wall Street Journal*'s career search site; provides salary and hiring information, a resume database, and job hunting advice
- http://hotjobs.yahoo.com/—lets you search for jobs by keyword, city, and state
- http://www.dice.com/—focuses on technology careers
- http://www.job-hunt.org/—called by *PC Magazine* and *Forbes* the Internet's best Web site for job hunting and resources
- http://usajobs.opm.gov/—a site dedicated to government job searches and advice

Search Engines for International Jobs

- http://www.monster.com/geo/siteselection.aspx—allows you to select the country and search for jobs worldwide
- http://www.careerbuilder.com/JobSeeker/Jobs/jobfindil.aspx—allows you to select the country and search for jobs
- http://www.job-hunt.org/international.shtml—provides a listing of Web sites with jobs located outside of the United States

- **Interviews—**interviewing to get the job and handling illegal questions.
- **Cover letters and thank-you letters—**providing sample cover letter techniques and ways to write a better thank-you letter.
- **Job search tips—**employing the correct netiquette and job search techniques.

Using Social Media to Find Jobs

In the past, networking was primarily achieved face to face. Now, you can network virtually through social media. Twitter, for example, allows you "to connect directly with recruiters and employees at companies you want to work for" (Schawbel "7 Secrets"). You also can use blogs to search for job openings. Technorati provides you access to "over 130 million blogs" (Schawbel "7 Secrets"), which you can search to find information about job openings. In addition, search engines like Pipl, PeekYou, and Wink can help you find people to contact at companies you're interested in.

Social media isn't just for the job seeker. The Society for Human Resource Management, the world's largest association of hiring managers, reports that a significant number of employers use social media to research job candidates. According to a SelectMinds survey, "72% of Companies Use Social Media to Recruit Candidates"; according to a CareerBuilder.com India survey, 73% of "employers reported . . . that they use social networking sites to research job candidates."

Problems with Digital Dirt in the Job Search

If you're like most people, you have a Facebook site. You post photographs of yourself having fun while on vacations or at parties. You list your favorite bands, restaurants, television shows, and movies. You chat with friends, state your relationship status, and post intimate information. Some of the information might be unflattering. That's called "digital dirt." Do you want a prospective employer to see your life in such detail? Information that you consider harmless might, in fact, hurt your job chances. Therefore, be careful about what you post. Treat your social media sites as reflections of your professionalism.

Who Uses LinkedIn?

To enhance your job search profile, consider joining LinkedIn, a social media site for professionals. LinkedIn not only lets you post your own profile, but also through this social media site, you can find information about other professionals in your work environment. Fortune 500 companies, including Yahoo, Kraft, Microsoft, Lockheed Martin, EBay, EMC, Intuit, Netflix, Allstate, Target, and ConAgra, use LinkedIn to recruit, find, and hire new employees. The site has registered users in over 200 countries and is available in many languages, including English, French, German, Italian, Portuguese, and Spanish. A mobile version of the site provides access over a smartphone (*LinkedIn*).

Why Should a Prospective Employee or a Company Seeking Employees Create a LinkedIn Site Profile? LinkedIn Jobs lets members of LinkedIn search for or post jobs by keyword, country, and postal code. In addition, human resource managers can access a network of over 65 million professionals to find candidates with specific skills and required experience. Job seekers can use their connections at potential employers to help them land a job within the company. In their LinkedIn sites, job seekers can post a profile of their experiences, talents, and professional references. Job seekers also can review a company's profile to learn more about its products, services, projects, clients, employees, ratings, community involvement, and corporate contacts. Finally, Google tends to rank LinkedIn profiles high, usually within the first five Google hits. This is dependent on the LinkedIn participant using key words and using his or her name instead of a URL or company name.

How to Create an Effective LinkedIn Profile Page. When building a profile, focus on the following:

- **Enhance your headline.** List your full name, title, primary job responsibility, and company name. This headline is the first thing the audience sees, so make a clear statement.
- **Add a photo.** Include a headshot, making sure it's small (around 80 × 80 pixels).
- **Summarize and sell.** In the summary, engage the audience quickly. To do so, pinpoint your primary industry (this aids another company's search), focus on your key areas of interest, highlight your experiences, and clarify your achievements.
- **Detail your work experience.** Include dates of employment, the names of the companies for which you have worked, and a detailed listing of your job activities and achievements.
- **Provide keywords and skills.** Include keywords and skills to help others (recruiters, colleagues, clients, etc.) easily search for and find your profile.
- **Add links to your LinkedIn site.** Help your connections find out more about you. Link your LinkedIn site to your company Web site, blog, alternative e-mail addresses, Facebook site, Twitter account, etc.
- **Get recommendations.** List others with whom you have worked and for whom you have worked. This is how connections are made and how your value is quantified. (Brogan, Doyle)

FAQs: LinkedIn's Features

Q: Besides helping me with my job search, what other benefits does LinkedIn offer?

A: LinkedIn isn't just a social networking site that allows you to post a profile. Look at its many interesting features:

- LinkedIn Answers—Lets you ask business-related questions to the large LinkedIn community. The identities of both the person who poses the question and those who answer are made public.
- LinkedIn Groups—allows users to form like-minded groups of peers within an organization or industry.
- LinkedIn Polls—helps you find answers to questions and research topics. LinkedIn analyzes results, factoring in age, gender, job function, and company demographics (for a small fee).
- LinkedIn DirectAds—lets you connect with a large audience by geography, job function, age, gender, industry, and company size.
- LinkedIn Blog —shares posts from professionals in many industries.

Q: Is Linked In secure?

A: LinkedIn assures the security of your personal data by participating in the United States and European Union's International Safe Harbor Privacy Principles. LinkedIn protects private and sensitive information and assures users that they will be able to correct errors and delete information.

Using Mobile Apps in the Job Search

For the job search candidate on the go, use mobile apps to find job openings and to network with recruiters. Following are apps that can "help you own your online identity, build a strong database of professional contacts, and locate a job in your area in a flash" (Schawbel "10 iPhone Apps").

- Jobs by CareerBuilder
- JobCompass
- JobFinder
- ABContacts
- BeKnown
- Beyond.com Search Jobs

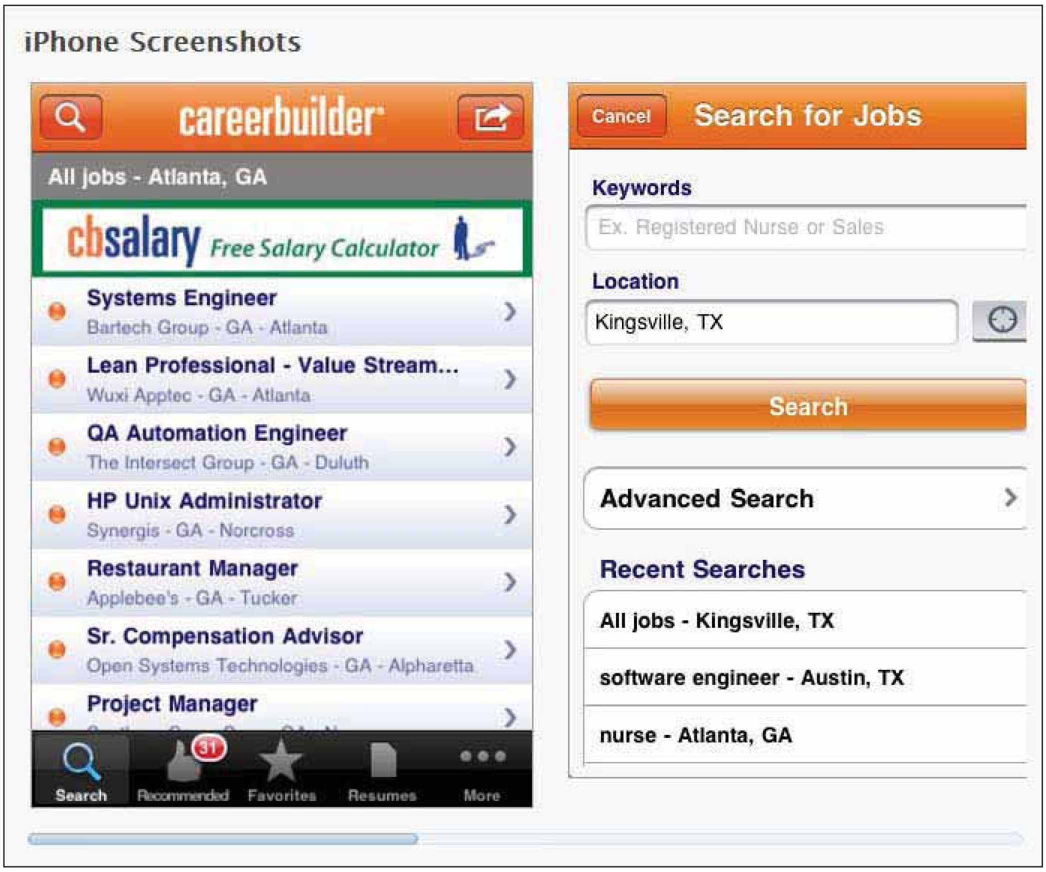
See Figure 1 for a screenshot of the Jobs by CareerBuilder app.

Using Traditional Job Search Techniques

In addition to using the Internet, social media, and apps, also use other, more traditional ways to find jobs, as follows:

- Network with friends and past employers. A *Smart Money* magazine article reported that 62 percent of job searchers find employment through "face-to-face networking" (Bloch 12).
- Visit your college or university job placement center.
- Attend a job fair.
- Talk to your instructors.

FIGURE 1 Jobs by CareerBuilder App



Source: Courtesy of CareerBuilder 2012

- Get involved in your community by volunteering for a community committee, pursuing religious affiliations, joining community clubs, or participating in fund-raising events.
- Access job postings from professional affiliations or business journals.
- Read the want ads.
- Take a "temp" job that will pay you while you look for a job, help you acquire new skills, allow you to network, and could lead to full-time employment.
- Get an internship to network, acquire additional skills, and improve your resume.
- Shadow a mentor on a job to learn about job responsibilities in a certain field.
- Set up an informational interview with a professional in your field to learn about career opportunities.

Criteria for Effective Resumes

Once you have found a job that interests you, it is time to apply. Your job application will start when you send the prospective employer your resume. Resumes are usually the first impression you make on a prospective employer. If your resume is effective, you have opened the door to possible employment—you have given yourself the opportunity to sell your skills during an interview. If, in contrast, you write an ineffective resume, you have closed the door to opportunity.

Your resume should present an objective, easily accessible, detailed biographical sketch. However, do not try to include your entire history. Because the primary goal of your resume, together with your letter of application, is to get an interview, you can use your interview to explain in more detail any pertinent information that does not appear on your resume. When writing a resume, you have two optional approaches. You can write either a reverse chronological resume or a functional resume.

Reverse Chronological Resume

Write a reverse chronological resume if you

- Are a traditional job applicant (a recent high-school or college graduate, aged 18 to 25)
- Hope to enter the profession in which you have received college training or certification
- Have made steady progress in one profession (promotions or salary increases)
- Plan to stay in your present profession

Functional Resume

Write a functional resume if you

- Are a nontraditional job applicant (returning to the workforce after a lengthy absence, older, or not a recent high-school or college graduate)
- Plan to enter a profession in which you have not received formal college training or certification
- Have changed jobs frequently
- Plan to enter a new profession

Ethical Considerations When Writing a Resume

If your resume contains inaccurate information, your potential employer can find out. Prospective employers can perform follow-up reference checks, contacting your previous bosses to verify your resume's assertions. In addition, it is very easy to perform Internet background checks related to a job candidate's credit issues, prior criminal offenses, driving records, military history, or even presence on terrorism watch lists. Many employers use social networking sites, such as Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter, to learn details about a job candidate.

Due to the ease with which an employer can verify your resume's assertions, you must honestly present your qualifications. Make sure that your resume is ethical and honest. Following are examples of resume fraud that you must avoid:

- Including a degree that you have not earned
- Listing colleges or universities that you have not attended
- Inflating your job title
- Inflating your job responsibilities
- Inflating your job achievements
- Listing jobs that you have not held
- Claiming technical knowledge that you do not have
- Omitting large amounts of time from your school and job histories
- Including military rank you have not earned

Failing to follow ethical standards and being completely honest on your resume could result in your not being offered a job or being fired from your current job.

Key Resume Components

Whether you write a reverse chronological or a functional resume, include the following key components.

Identification. Begin your resume with the following:

- **Name (full first name, middle initial, and last name).** Your name can be in boldface and printed in a larger type size (14 point, 16 point, etc.).
- **Contact information.** Include your street address, your city, state (use the correct two-letter abbreviation), and zip code. If you are attending college or serving in the armed forces, you might also want to include a permanent address. By including alternative addresses, you help your prospective employer contact you more easily.
- **Area code and phone numbers.** Limit yourself to two phone numbers, and don't provide a work phone. Having prospective employers call you at your present job is not appropriate. First, your current employer will not appreciate your receiving this sort of personal call. Second, your future employer might believe that you often receive personal calls at work and will continue to do so if he or she hires you.
- **E-mail, Web site address, or fax number.** Be sure that your e-mail address is professional sounding. An e-mail address, such as "ILuvDaBears," "Hotrodder," or "HeavyMetalDude," is not likely to inspire a company to interview you.

Career Objectives. The career objectives line is like a subject line in a memo, e-mail, or report. Your career objective informs the reader of your resume's focus. Be sure your career objective is precise. Too often, career objectives are so generic that their vagueness does more harm than good. In addition, a successful career objective emphasizes how hiring you will benefit the company.

This poorly constructed career objective provides no focus. What kind of business? What kind of opportunities for professional growth? Employers don't want to hire people who have only vague notions about their skills and objectives.

BEFORE

Flawed Career Objective

Career Objective: Seeking employment in a business environment offering an opportunity for professional growth.

This improved career objective not only specifies which job the applicant is seeking but also how he or she will benefit the company.

AFTER

Improved Career Objective

Career Objective: To market financial planning programs and provide financial counseling to ensure positive client relations.

Summary of Qualifications. After the career objectives, provide your audience a summary of qualifications. According to Monster.Com, "resumes normally get less than a 15-second glance at the first screening" (Isaacs). A summary of qualifications allows the employer an immediate opportunity to see how you can add value to the company.

A summary of qualifications should include the following:

- An overview of your skills, abilities, accomplishments, and attributes
- Your strengths in relation to the position for which you are applying
- How you will meet the employer's goals

To write an effective summary of qualifications, list your top three to seven most marketable credentials.

FAQs: Resume Guidelines

Q: Do I really need to limit my resume to one page?

A: Do not worry about limiting yourself to the traditional one-page resume. Conciseness is important in all technical communication, but if your education, work experience, and professional skills merit more than a page, you must show your accomplishments. In addition, if you submit your resume as part of an e-mail message, readers will scroll. However, don't pad the resume. Limit yourself to jobs within the last ten years and skills that fit the job you're seeking.

Q: In my resume, which should I list first, my work experience or my education?

A: It's all about location, location, location. You should present your most important section first. If education is your strength and will help you get the job, lead with education. If, in contrast, your work experience is stronger, begin your resume with work.

Q: Can I omit jobs that I didn't like?

A: Yes and no. You can not have any large gaps in your resume, such as a missing year or more. If you have any large gaps, you must either explain the gap or fill it with other activities (education, volunteerism, or childrearing, for instance). However, a missing month or so is not a problem. If you worked a job for a month, left that job, and then found other employment, you do not need to list the short-term job.

EXAMPLE

Summary of Qualifications

- Over four years combined experience in marketing and business
- Developed a winning bid package for promotional brochures
- Promoted to manager in less than two years
- Maintained a database of over 1,000 customers, special ordered merchandise, and tracked inventory
- Managed over ten employees

Employment. The employment section lists the jobs you've held. This information must be presented in reverse chronological order (your current job listed first, previous jobs listed next). This section must include the following:

- Your job title (if you have or had one)
- The name of the company you worked for
- The location of this company (city and state)
- The time period during which you worked at this job
- Your job duties, responsibilities, and accomplishments

This last consideration is important. This is your chance to sell yourself. Merely stating where you worked and when you worked there will not get you a job. Instead, what did

EXAMPLE

Listing your job title, company name, location, and dates of employment merely shows where you were in a given period of time. To prove your contributions to the company, provide specific details highlighting achievements.

Assistant Manager
McConnel Oil Change, Beauxdroit, LA
2012 to present

- Track and maintain over $25,000 in inventory
- Train a minimum of four new employees quarterly
- Achieved a 10 percent growth in service performed for three consecutive years
- Developed a user manual for hazardous waste disposal, earning a "Citizen's Recognition Award" from the Beauxdroit City Council

you achieve on the job? In this part of the resume, you should detail how you met deadlines, trained employees, cut expenses, exceeded sales expectations, decreased overage, managed money, and so forth. Plus, you want to quantify your accomplishments.

Education. In addition to work experience, you must include your education. Document your educational experiences in reverse chronological order (most recent education first; previous schools, colleges, universities, military courses, and training seminars next). When listing your education, provide the following information:

- Degree. If you have not yet received your degree, you can write "Anticipated date of graduation June 2014" or "Degree expected in 2014."
- Area of specialization.
- School attended. Do not abbreviate. Although you might assume that everyone knows what *UT* means, your readers won't understand this abbreviation. Is UT the University of Texas, the University of Tennessee, the University of Tulsa, or the University of Toledo?
- Location. Include the city and state.
- Year of graduation or years attended.

As you can see, this information is just the facts and nothing else. Many people might have the same educational history as you. For instance, just imagine how many of your current classmates will graduate from your school, in the same year, with the same degree. Why are you more hirable than they are? The only way you can differentiate yourself from other job candidates with similar degrees is by highlighting your unique educational accomplishments. These might include any or all of the following:

Grade point average (generally if over 3.0 on a 4.0 scale)

Academic club memberships and leadership offices held

Unique coursework

Special class projects

Academic honors, scholarships, and awards

Fraternity or sorority leadership offices held

Number of hours you worked while attending school

Software and hardware certifications or technical equipment you can operate

Please note a key concern regarding your work experience and education. You should have no chronological gaps when all of your work and education are listed. You can't omit a year without a very good explanation. (A missing month or so is not a problem.)

Professional Skills. If you are changing professions or reentering the workforce after a long absence, you will write a functional resume. Therefore, rather than beginning with education or work experience, which won't necessarily help you get a job, focus your reader's attention on your unique skills. These could include any of the following:

Proficiency with computer hardware and software

Procedures you can perform

Special accomplishments and awards you have earned

On-the-job training you have received

Training you have provided

New techniques you have invented or implemented

Numbers of and types of people you have managed

Machinery you can operate

Certifications you have earned

Languages you speak, read, and write

These professional skills are important because they help show how you are different from all other applicants. In addition, they show that although you have not been trained in the job for which you are applying, you can still be a valuable employee.

Professional Skills

- Proficient in Microsoft Word, Excel, Publisher, and PowerPoint
- Knowledge of HTML, Java, Visual Basic, and C++
- Certified OSHA Hazardous Management Safety Trainer
- Fluent in Spanish and English
- Completed Second Shift Administration Certificate

◀ EXAMPLE

Highlight professional skills that will set you apart from other potential employees.

Military Experience. If you served for several years in the military, you might want to describe this service in a separate section. You would state the following:

Rank	Discharge status
Service branch	Special clearances
Location (city, state, country, ship, etc.)	Achievements and professional skills
Years in service	Training seminars attended and education received

Professional Affiliations. If you belong to regional, national, or international clubs or have professional affiliations, you might want to mention these. Such memberships might include the Rotarians, Lions Club, Big Brothers and Big Sisters, or Junior League. Maybe you belong to the Society for Technical Communication, the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, the National Office Machine Dealers Association, or the American Helicopter Society. Listing such associations emphasizes your social consciousness and your professional sincerity. Also include any offices you've held in these organizations.

References. Avoid a reference line that reads "Supplied on request," "Available on request," or "Furnished on request." Every employer knows that you will provide references if asked. Instead of wasting valuable space on your resume with unnecessary text, use this space to develop your summary of qualifications, education, work experience, or professional skills more thoroughly. Create a second page for references, and bring this reference page to your interview. On the reference page, list three or four colleagues, supervisors, teachers, or community individuals who will recommend you for employment (Note: Obtain their permission before listing them as references.). Provide their names, titles, addresses, and phone numbers. By bringing the reference page to your interview, you will show your prospective employer that you are proactive and organized.

Personal Data. Do not include any of the following information: birth date, race, gender, religion, height, weight, religious affiliation, marital status, or pictures of yourself. Equal opportunity laws disallow employers from making decisions based on these factors.

Effective Resume Style

The preceding information suggests *what* you should include in your resume. Your next consideration is *how* this information should be presented. As mentioned throughout this textbook, page layout is essential for effective technical communication. The same holds true for your resume.

Choose Appropriate Font Types and Sizes. As with most technical communication, the best font types are Times New Roman and Arial. These are readable and professional looking. Avoid designer fonts, such as Comic Sans, and cursive fonts, such as Shelley Vollante. In addition, use a 10- to 12-point font for your text. Smaller font sizes are hard to read; larger font sizes look unprofessional. Headings can be boldface and 14- to 16-point font size. Limit your resume to no more than two font types: one for headings and one for text.

Avoid Sentences. Sentences create three problems in a resume. First, if you use sentences, the majority of them will begin with the first-person pronoun *I*. You'll write, "I have . . . ," "I graduated . . . ," or "I worked. . . . " Such sentences are repetitious and egocentric. Second, if you choose to use sentences, you'll run the risk of committing grammatical errors: run-ons, dangling modifiers, agreement errors, and so forth. Third, sentences will take up room in your resume, making it longer than necessary.

Format Your Resume for Reader-Friendly Ease of Access. Instead of sentences, highlight your resume with easily accessible lists. Set apart your achievements by bulletizing your accomplishments, awards, unique skills, and so on. In addition to bullets, make your resume accessible by boldfacing headings and indenting subheadings to create white space. Avoid underlining headings or italicizing text. Studies show that most people find underlined text and italics hard to read (Vogt).

Begin Your Lists with Verbs. To convey a positive, assertive tone, use verbs when describing your achievements. Use present tense verbs for current jobs and education; use past tense verbs for past jobs and education. Following is a list of verbs you might use (Table 2).

TABLE 2 Active Verbs to Highlight Achievements

Accomplished	Designed	Initiated	Planned
Achieved	Developed	Installed	Prepared
Analyzed	Diagnosed	Led	Presented
Awarded	Directed	Made	Programmed
Built	Earned	Maintained	Reduced
Completed	Established	Managed	Resolved
Conducted	Expanded	Manufactured	Reviewed
Coordinated	Gained	Negotiated	Sold
Created	Implemented	Ordered	Supervised
Customized	Improved	Organized	Trained

Quantify Your Achievements. Your resume should not tell your readers how great you are; it should prove your worth. To do so, quantify by precisely explaining your achievements.

BEFORE	AFTER
Maintained positive customer relations with numerous clients.	Maintained positive customer relations with 5,000 retail and 90 wholesale clients.
Improved field representative efficiency through effective training.	Improved field representative efficiency by writing corporate manuals for policies and procedures.
Achieved production goals.	Achieved 95 percent production, surpassing the company's desired goal of 90 percent.
Trained employees.	Trained 20 employees annually in methods for safely removing hazardous waste from the workplace.

Make It Perfect. You cannot afford to have an error in your resume. Remember, your resume is the first impression you'll make on your prospective employer. Errors in your resume will create a poor first impression.

Portfolios

As an enhanced component for your job search, consider using a portfolio. Resumes tell; portfolios show. A resume tells an employer what you can do and how you'll benefit the company. Portfolios prove your resume's assertions by showing examples of your skills, providing evidence of your accomplishments, and documenting your achievements.

If you are in technical writing, corporate communication, fashion merchandizing, heating/ventilation/air conditioning (HVAC), engineering, drafting, architecture, nursing, accounting, or graphic design, for example, you might want to provide the best examples of your work. These examples could include any of the following:

Schematics	Published articles
Screenshots of PowerPoint presentations	Report samples
Outstanding performance reviews	Photographs
Outlines of presentations	Testimonials or letters of recommendation
CAD/CAM drawing	Brochures or fliers
Training and award certificates	Short video and audio files

Avoid sending an unsolicited portfolio to prospective employers. They will already be overwhelmed with resumes from job candidates and will not necessarily want to open additional documents. However, if an employer asks for a portfolio or when you go in for an interview, take your portfolio in hardcopy, on a CD, on a flash drive, or provide a URL link to an online site.

You can create a portfolio in at least four ways:

- Hardcopy
- PDF format
- PowerPoint format
- Web-based, online format (webfolios)

Hardcopy

You can place your documents in a binder and bring it to the interview. Make the contents accessible by providing a title page, cover letter, table of contents, and tabs. Be sure your hardcopy portfolio examples are printed clearly and neatly on good quality paper—no blurred images, no wrinkled certificates, no smeared text from a printer low on ink.

PDF Format

Portable document formats (PDFs) start with a Word document. To create a PDF portfolio, include all items you want to highlight (publications, schematics, outlines, etc.) in your order of preference. Then, convert the document to a PDF format. A PDF ensures that your readers see your document exactly as you see it; formatting, layout, visuals, and fonts will not change dependent upon your audience's software. Free PDF downloads include Adobe Reader, Cute PDF, PrimoPDF, PDFlite, Nitro PDF, and others.

Within your PDF portfolio, you can create links from portfolio tables of contents or resume items. Then, if you e-mail a PDF portfolio to potential employers, they can click on the links to access individual pages or sections of the portfolio without having to scroll through the entire document. Figure 2 illustrates how PDF links are created by simply highlighting relevant text and right-clicking.

PowerPoint Format

Your PowerPoint (PPT) portfolio can be dynamic with video, audio, and motion. Save your PPT portfolio on either a CD or flash drive so the audience gets the full benefit of PPT's capabilities. As with the PDF portfolio, you can add hypertext links to a PPT portfolio, which allows your audience to access examples as they choose. See Figure 3 to learn how to create a hyperlink in a PPT portfolio by highlighting relevant text and right-clicking.

FIGURE 2 Creating a PDF Link on a Resume

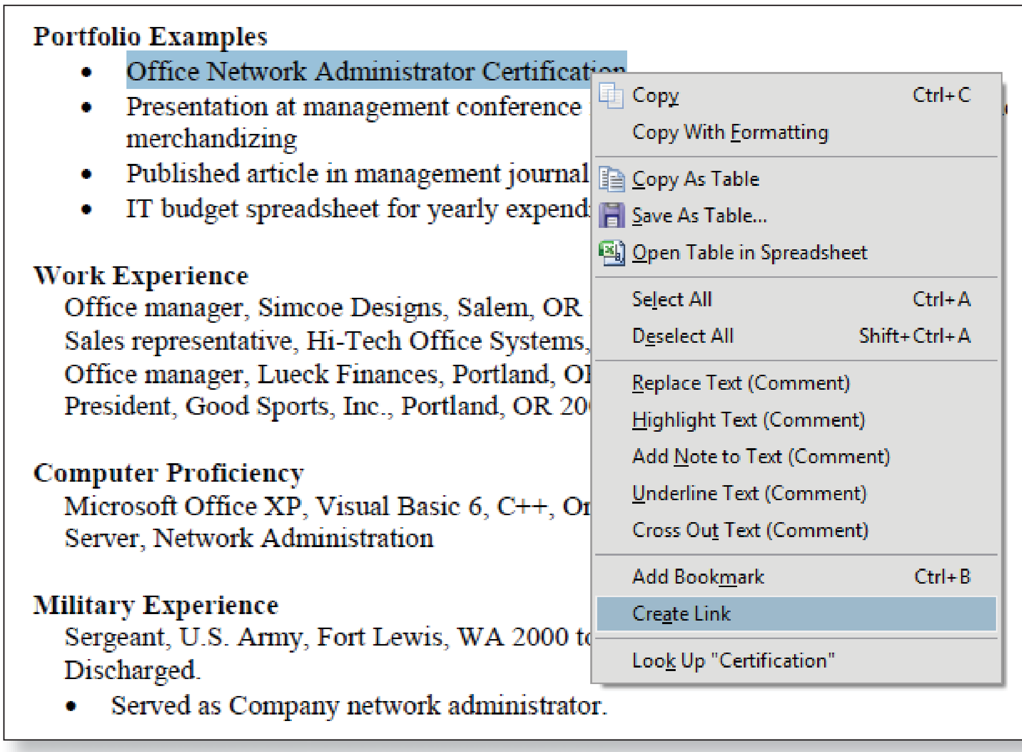
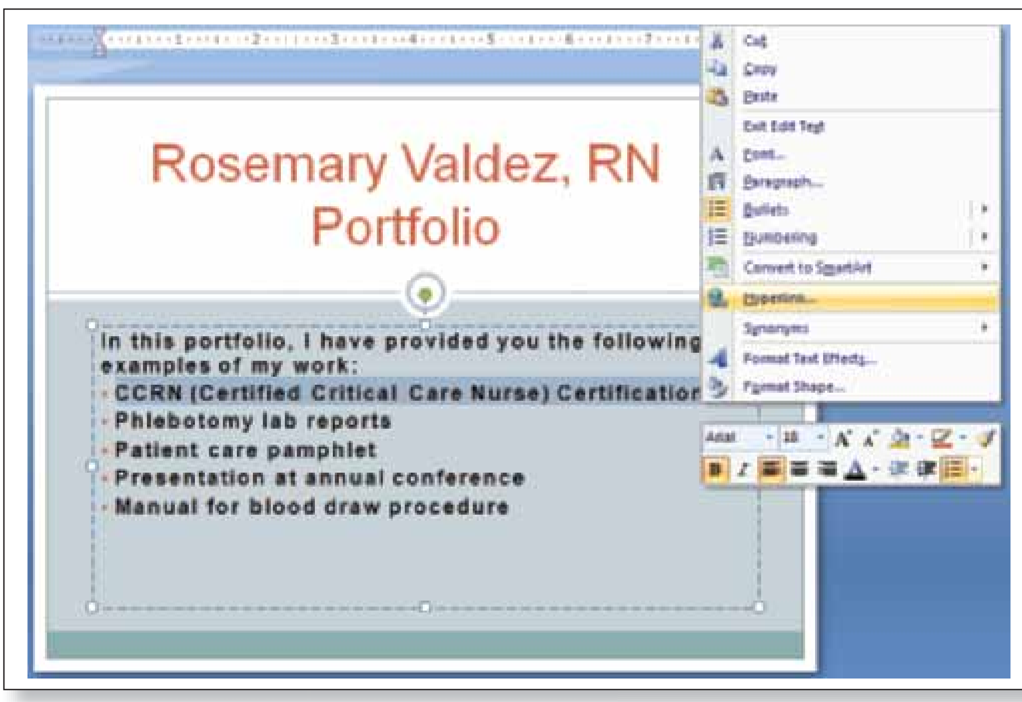


FIGURE 3 Hyperlink to Examples in a PowerPoint Portfolio



Web-based, Online Format

If you have a Web site or plan to create one, provide your audience a link to your online portfolio. With a Web-based portfolio, you can offer hypertext links to

- PDF files
- PowerPoint files
- Word documents
- Video and audio files (vesumes)
- Web pages

An online portfolio proves to an employer that you have valuable technology skills.

Methods of Delivery

When writing either a reverse chronological or a functional resume, you can deliver your document in several ways.

Mail Version

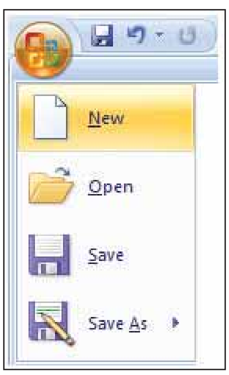
You can deliver a resume by mailing it through the United States Postal Service. This resume can be highly designed, using bullets, boldface, horizontal rules, indentations, and

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

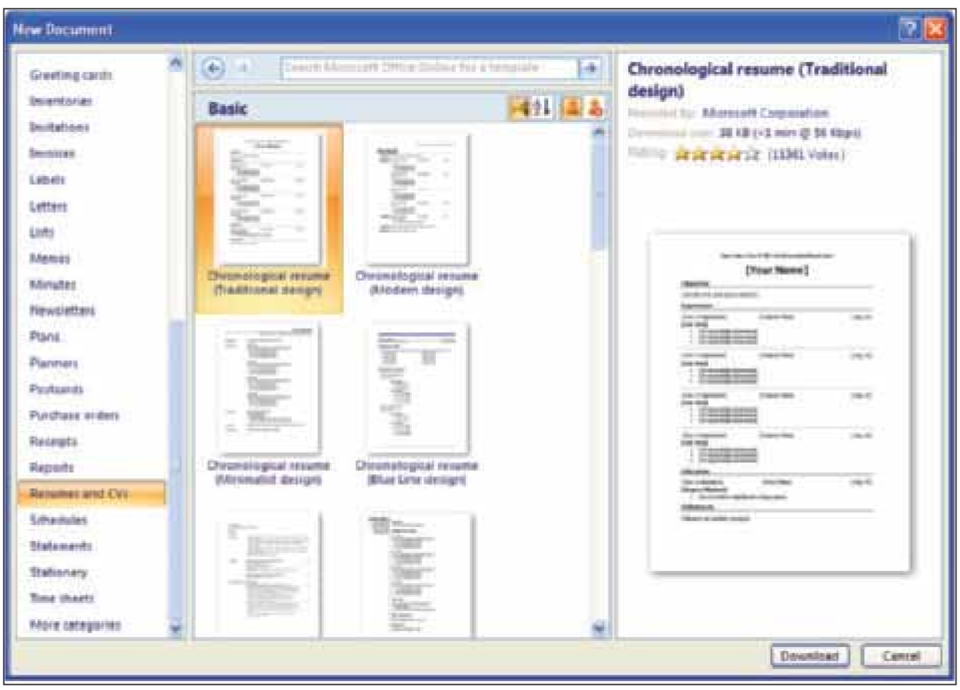
Using Resume Templates in Microsoft Word 2010

Microsoft Word 2010 provides you a resume template if you want help getting started.

1. Click on the **Office Button** located on the top left of your toolbar and scroll to **New**.



The following **New Document** window will pop up.



(Continued)

TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

2. Click on the **Resumes and CVs tab** to find optional resume layouts ("Traditional" chronological resume design, "Modern" chronological resume design, "Minimalist" chronological resume design, etc.).

These resume templates provide benefits as well as create a few problems. On the positive side, the templates are great reminders of what to include in your resume, such as objectives, work experience, education, and skills. In contrast, the templates also limit you and perhaps suggest that you include information that isn't needed. First, the templates mandate font sizes and page layout. Second, a few of the templates suggest that you include information about "Interests" and "References." Rarely should you include "Interests," such as hobbies. Furthermore, most experts suggest that you omit the "References" line, saving valuable resume space for more important information. You can include references on a separate page, especially for interviews. More important, if you use the same templates that everyone else does, then how will your resume stand out as unique? A good compromise is to review the templates for ideas and then create your own resume with your unique layout.

different font sizes. Because this document will be a hard copy, what the reader sees will be exactly what you mail. Do not be tempted to over design your resume, however. For example, avoid decorative fonts, clip art, borders, or photos. Do not print your resume on unusual colors, like salmon, baby blue, tangerine, or yellow. Instead, stick to heavy white paper and standard fonts, like Times New Roman and Arial.

Figures 4 and 5 are excellent examples of traditional resumes, ready to be mailed.

E-mail Resume

Delivering your resume by mail can take several days. The quickest way to get your resume to the prospective employer is as an e-mail attachment. Speed isn't the only issue. "Hiring managers and recruiters have become as addicted to e-mail as everyone else. More than one-third of human-resource professionals reported a preference for e-mailed resumes, according to . . . the Society for Human Resource Management" (Dixson).

Scannable Resume

Many companies use computers to screen resumes with a technique called electronic applicant tracking. The company's computer program scans resumes as raster (or bitmap) images. Next, the software uses artificial intelligence to read the text, scanning for keywords. If your resume contains a sufficient number of these keywords, the resume will then be given to someone in the human resources department for follow-up.

A scannable resume can be e-mailed or sent through the mail. To create a scannable resume, type your text using Notepad for Windows, Simpletext for Macintosh, or Note Tab, which is available as freeware. You also could type your resume using Microsoft Word and save the document as a text file, with a *.txt* extension (Dikel 3).

To create a successful scannable resume, try these techniques:

- Use Courier, Helvetica, or Arial typeface (10- to14-point type).
- Place your name at the top of the page. "Scanners assume that whatever is at the top is your name. If your resume has two pages, place your name and a 'page two' designation on the second page, and attach with a paper clip—no staples" (Kendall).
- Avoid italics, underlining, colors, horizontal and vertical bars, and iconic bullets.
- White space is still important, but do not use your Tab key for spacing. Tabs will be interpreted differently in different computer environments. Use your space bar instead.
- Avoid organizing information in columns.
- Do not center text.
- Use headings and place your text below the headings, spacing for visual appeal.
- Create bullets using an asterisk (*) or a hyphen (-).
- Use keywords in your summary of qualifications, work experience, and professional skills.

FIGURE 4 Chronological Resume

Sharon J. Barenblatt

1901 Rosebud Avenue
Boston, MA 12987
Cell phone: 202-555-2121
E-mail: sharonbb@juno.com

Objective

Employment as an account manager in public relations, using my education, work experience, and interpersonal communication skills to generate business.

Summary of Qualifications

- Over five years customer service experience
- Experience in public relations, writing public service announcements
- Proven record of written and interpersonal communication abilities in technical writing
- Outstanding leadership skills, shown by my management background
- Fluent in Spanish

Education

List your education and work experience in reverse chronological order.

BS, Business. Boston College. Boston, MA 2014

- 3.2 GPA
- Social Justice Chair, Sigma Delta Tau, 2014
- Study Abroad Program, Madrid, Spain 2012
- Internship, Ace Public Relations, Boston, MA 2012

Frederick Douglas High School. Newcastle, MA 2010

- 3.5 GPA
- Member, Honor Society
- Captain, Frederick Douglas High School tennis team

List current jobs using present tense verbs and previous jobs using past tense verbs.

Work Experience

Salesperson/assistant department manager. Jessica McClintock Clothing Store. Boston, MA 2013 to present.

- Prepare nightly deposits, input daily receipts of up to $5,000
- Open and close the store
- Provide customer service to over 100 clients a day
- Trained six new employees

Do not only list where you worked and when you worked there. Also include your job responsibilities.

Salesperson. GAP Clothing. Newcastle, MA 2012 to 2013

- Assisted customers
- Stocked shelves

Professional Skills

- Made oral presentations to the Pan-Hellenic Council to advertise sorority philanthropic activities
- Helped plan community-wide “Paul Revere’s Ride Day”
- Created advertising brochures and fliers for college-wide philanthropy netting over $25,000 donated to United Way

FIGURE 5 Functional Resume

In a functional resume, emphasize skills you have acquired which relate to the advertised position. Also quantify your accomplishments.

In a functional resume, list education and work experience in reverse chronological order.

A functional resume is organized by importance. Begin with the skills or accomplishments that will get you the job. Place less important information lower in the resume.

JODY R. SEACREST
1944 W. 112th Street
Salem, OR 64925
(513) 451-4978
jseacrest12@hotmail.com

Objectives

Management position using my expertise in marketing, administration, interpersonal communication, and computer skills to help a company meet its revenue goals

Professional Skills

- Operated a sporting goods/sportswear mail-order house. Business began as home-based but experienced 125 percent growth and was purchased by a national retail sporting goods chain.
- Managed a retail design studio producing over $500,000 annually.
- Hired, trained, and supervised an administrative staff of 15 employees for a financial planning institution.
- Provided purchaser training for office equipment, reducing labor costs by 25 percent.

Work Experience

Office manager, Simcoe Designs, Salem, OR 2012 to present.
Sales representative, Hi-Tech Office Systems, Salem, OR 2008 to 2012.
Office manager, Lueck Finances, Portland, OR 2006 to 2008.
President, Good Sports, Inc., Portland, OR 2004 to 2006.

Computer Proficiency

Microsoft Office XP, Visual Basic 6, C++, Oracle, Microsoft SQL Server, Network Administration

Military Experience

Corporal, U.S. Army, Fort Lewis, WA 1998-2004. Honorably Discharged.
- Served as Company network administrator.
- Planned and budgeted all IT purchases.

Education

BA, General Studies, Portland State University, Portland, OR 1998.

Keywords are the most important feature of scannable resumes. OCR (optical character recognition) searches focus on keywords and phrases specifically related to the job opening. The keywords include job titles, skills and responsibilities, corporate buzzwords, acronyms and abbreviations related to hardware and software, academic degrees, and certifications.

You can find which keywords to focus on by carefully reading the following:

- Job advertisements
- Your prospective employer's Web site
- Government job descriptions

- Industry-specific Web sites
- The *Occupational Outlook Handbook* (found online at http://www.bls.gov/oco/)
- Career-related discussion groups or blogs
- Sample resumes found online

When using keywords, be specific; avoid vague words and phrases.

BEFORE	AFTER
Knowledge of various software products	Can create online help using Author-iT and have expertise with PageMaker and Quark

BEFORE	AFTER
Familiar with computer technology	Proficient in multimedia, HTML, and Windows and Macintosh platforms

Figure 6 shows an excellent example of a scannable resume.

Video Resume

Union Square Ventures, a venture-capital firm, had an opening for an investment analyst. The company requested "applicants to send links representing their 'Web presence,' such as a Twitter account or Tumblr blog. Applicants also had to submit short videos [vesumes] demonstrating their interest in the position. Union Square says its process nets better-quality candidates" when asking for video profiles (Silverman).

To create an effective video resume (or what some call a "vesume"), consider these five tips:

1. **Video Quality.** The video must have clear resolution, excellent sound, and no background distractions (noises or images).
2. **Appearance and Diction.** Just as you would strive to dress and behave professionally in an interview, you must also present a professional appearance in your video resume. See our tips for professional appearance discussed later in this chapter. In addition to appearance, prospective employers will judge you on the content of your comments, what you say, and how you say it. Speak with confidence, clarity, and professionalism. Avoid mumbling, looking down, shuffling notes, or checking smartphones.
3. **Content.** Your video resume, just like your hard-copy or electronic resume, must focus on your objectives, education, work history, and special skills. Begin your video with an introductory overview introducing yourself and your goals; end the video resume with a conclusion, summing up your value to the organization.
4. **Length.** A video resume isn't a movie. Limit your video resume to three to five minutes.
5. **Editing.** To achieve the desired length and to ensure that your video has a high quality, edit for errors, distractions, noises, and content. Review your video numerous times to make sure you haven't missed any problems. Then, if you need to, shoot the video again so you are an appealing job candidate (Nale).

FIGURE 6 Scannable Resume

Place your name at the top of a scannable resume and avoid centering text.

Use key words to summarize your accomplishments.

Type your scannable resume in Courier, Arial, Verdana, or Helvetica. Avoid designer fonts like Comic Sans, Lucida, or Corsiva.

Rochelle J. Kroft
1101 Ave. L
Tuscaloosa, AL 89403
Home: (313) 690-4530
Cell: (313) 900-6767
E-mail: rkroft90@aol.com

Objectives

To use HAZARDOUS WASTE MANAGEMENT experience and knowledge to ensure company compliance and employee safety.

Summary of Qualifications

* Hazardous waste management with skills in teamwork, end-user support, OSHA quality and written documentation (minimum of 10 reports weekly).
* Five years experience working with international and national businesses and regulatory agencies, including the Environmental Protection Agency and the Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry.
* Skilled in assessing environmental needs and implementing hazardous waste improvement projects.
* Able to communicate effectively with multinational teams, consisting of clients, vendors, coworkers, and local and regional stakeholders.
* Excellent customer service (three-time winner of "Employee of the month").

Computer Proficiency

Microsoft Windows XP, PowerPoint, C++, Visual Basic, Java, CAD/CAM

Experience

Hazardous Waste Manager
Shallenberger Industries, Tuscaloosa, AL (2012 to present)

* Assess client needs for root cause analysis and recommend strategic actions.
* Oversee waste management improvements, using project management skills.
* Conduct and document follow-up quality assurance testing for over 25 clients monthly.
* Develop training manuals to ensure team and stakeholder safety. Shallenberger has had NO injuries throughout my management.
* Manage a staff of 25 employees.
* Achieved "Citizen's Recognition" Award from Tuscaloosa City Council for safety compliance record.

Hazardous Waste Technician
CleanAir, Montgomery, AL (2010–2012)

* Developed innovative solutions to improve community safety, including presentation at local K-12 public schools.
* Created new procedure manuals to ensure regulatory compliance.

Education

B.S., Biological Sciences, University of Alabama, Tuscaloosa, AL (2010)

* Biotechnology Honor Society, President (2009)
* Golden Key National Honor Society

Affiliations

Member, Hazardous Waste Society International

Criteria for Effective E-mail Cover Messages or Letters of Application

Your resume, whether hard-copy or electronic, will be prefaced by an e-mail or letter of application. The letter or e-mail serves different purposes than the resume.

The resume is fairly generic. You'll write a resume, use it over and over again, modifying it for different positions. In contrast, the e-mail or letter of application is specific. Each e-mail or letter of application will be customized specifically for each job.

Content of Cover Messages

Letters contain certain mandatory components: your address, the date, your reader's address, a salutation, the letter's body, a complimentary close, your signed name, your typed name, and an enclosure notation if applicable. If you are submitting an electronic resume along with an e-mail cover message, you will not need these letter essentials. Both an e-mail message and letter of application include the following.

Introduction. In your introductory paragraph, include the following:

- Tell where you discovered the job opening. You might write, "In response to your advertisement in *CareerBuilder* . . ." or "Bob Ward, manager of human resources, informed me that . . . ."
- State which specific job you are applying for. Often, a company will advertise several jobs. You must clarify which of those jobs you're interested in. For example, you could write, "Your advertisement for a computer maintenance technician is just what I have been looking for."
- Sum up your best credentials. "My BS in chemistry and five years of experience working in a hazardous materials lab qualify me for the position."

Discussion. In the discussion paragraph(s), sell your skills. To do so, describe your work experience, your education, and your professional skills. This section of your e-mail or letter of application, however, is not meant to be merely a replication of your resume. In the discussion, follow these guidelines:

- State that you've attached a resume for the e-mail message or enclosed a hard-copy resume with the letter.
- Focus on your assets uniquely applicable to the advertised position. Select only those skills from your resume that relate to the advertisement and will benefit the prospective employer.
- Don't explain how the job will make you happy: "I will benefit from this job because it will teach me valuable skills." Instead, using the pronouns *you* and *your,* show reader benefit: "My work with governmental agencies has provided me a wide variety of skills from which your company will benefit."
- Quantify your abilities. Don't just say you're great ("I have outstanding customer service skills and communication abilities"). Instead, prove your assertions with quantifiable facts: "I won the 2012 Employee of the Year for providing solutions to customer concerns and working well with teammates."

Conclusion. Your final paragraph should be a call to action. You could say, "I am looking forward to discussing my application with you in greater detail. Then I can explain ways I could benefit your company." In addition, mention that you have enclosed a resume. You can do this either in the introduction, discussion, or conclusion. Select the place that best lends itself to doing so. See Figure 7 for a letter of application example, written to preface Jody Seacrest's functional resume shown in Figure 5.

FIGURE 7 Letter of Application

1944 W. 112th Street
Salem, OR 64925
(513) 451-4978
jseacrest12@hotmail.com

February 11, 2014

Bill Baker
Human Resources Department
Eazi Marketing
10289 Ocean View
Portland, OR 67440

Subject: Application for Marketing Manager

On your website, I saw the posting for the position of marketing manager. As a dedicated business professional with expertise in marketing, I was excited to see this opening.

While I have enclosed my resume, including education, work experience, and professional skills, allow me to elaborate on how I would be a positive addition to your organization.

Jody highlights the skill set and positive attributes that will benefit the company in this letter of application. Note the quantification such as "125 percent," "$75,000," and "Employee of the Month."

- My marketing expertise is revealed through the 125 percent growth in revenues I helped achieve at my current job. In addition to face-to-face communication with customers and vendors, I also created and maintain the company's blog site and Facebook page.
- In my current position as manager at Simcoe Designs, I oversee 25 employees, a quarterly budget of $75,000, and a product line of over 1,000 different products. My job requires that I order, maintain stock, and troubleshoot delivery issues.
- My professional skill set includes proficiency with varied software languages, such as C++ and Visual Basic. I also have hardware management capabilities acquired through continuing education classes and workplace experience.
- At my current job, I recently won "Employee of the Month" for service exceeding the company's expectations.

Above all, I am a self-starter, dedicated to any task at hand, reliable, and knowledgeable about marketing and business. I would like to have the opportunity to discuss the position and my applicable attributes further. Additionally, I would be happy to provide the selection committee with further information if needed. Thank you for your time and consideration.

Sincerely,

Jody Seacrest

Jody Seacrest
Enclosure: Seacrest Resume

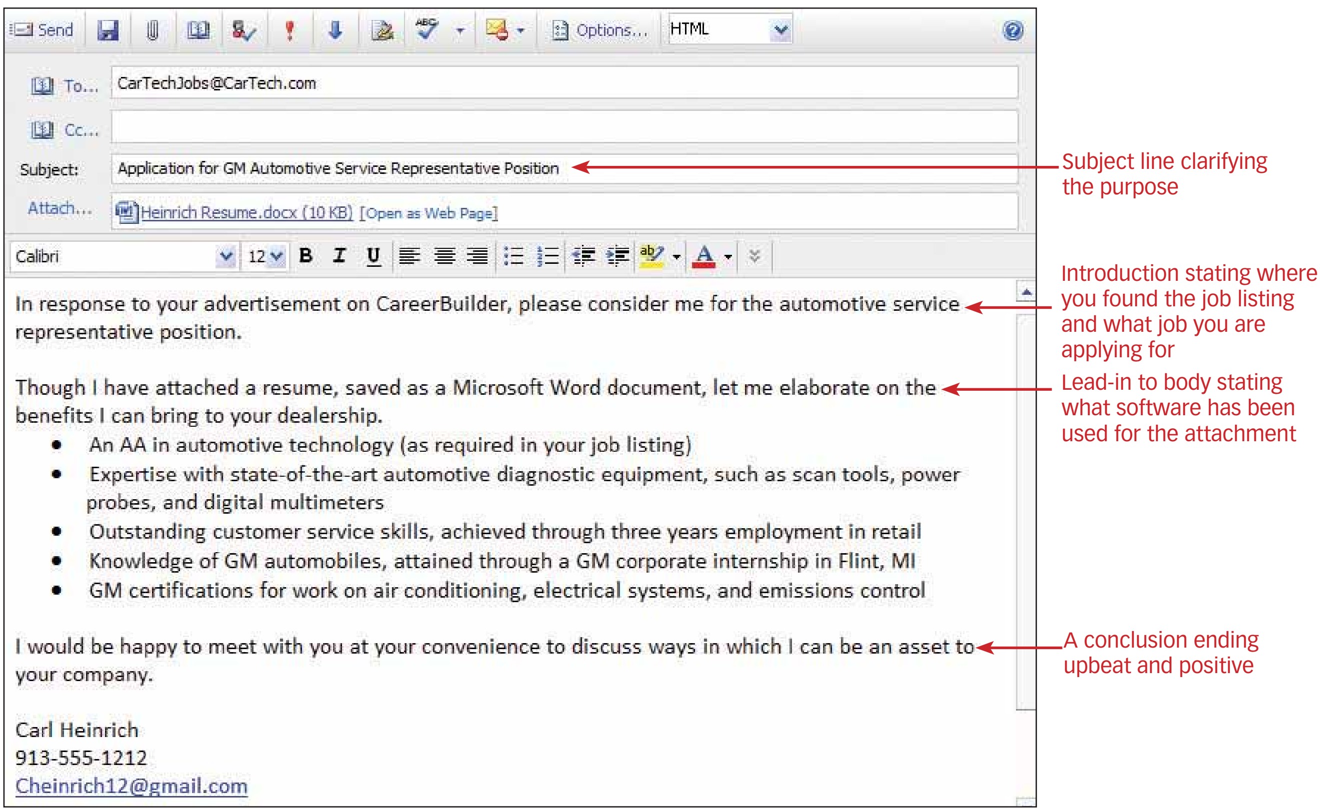
Online Application Etiquette

If you send your resume as an attachment to an e-mail message, be sure to follow online etiquette:

- **Do not use your current employer's e-mail system.** That clearly will tell your prospective employer that you misuse company equipment and company time.
- **Avoid unprofessional e-mail addresses.** Addresses such as Mustang65@aol.com, Hangglider@yahoo.com, or HotWheels@juno.com are inappropriate for business use. When you use e-mail to apply for a job, it is time to change your old e-mail address and become more professional. Use your initials or your name instead.
- **Send one e-mail at a time to one prospective employer.** Do not mass mail resumes. No employer wants to believe that he or she is just one of hundreds to whom you are writing.
- **Include a clear subject line.** Announce your intentions or the contents of the e-mail: "Resume—Vanessa Diaz" or "Response to Accountant Job Opening."
- **Tell the reader how you have saved the attached resume.** Specify whether the resume is a Word, Works, RTF, or PDF file, for example.

Figure 8 shows an effective e-mail message prefacing an attached resume.

FIGURE 8 Effective E-mail Message Prefacing an Attached Resume



In response to your advertisement on CareerBuilder, please consider me for the automotive service representative position.

Though I have attached a resume, saved as a Microsoft Word document, let me elaborate on the benefits I can bring to your dealership.

- An AA in automotive technology (as required in your job listing)
- Expertise with state-of-the-art automotive diagnostic equipment, such as scan tools, power probes, and digital multimeters
- Outstanding customer service skills, achieved through three years employment in retail
- Knowledge of GM automobiles, attained through a GM corporate internship in Flint, MI
- GM certifications for work on air conditioning, electrical systems, and emissions control

I would be happy to meet with you at your convenience to discuss ways in which I can be an asset to your company.

Carl Heinrich
913-555-1212
Cheinrich12@gmail.com

Job Package: Advertisement, E-mail, and Resume

The following examples (Figures 9, 10, and 11) show how one individual responded to a job advertisement found online by submitting a cover e-mail and attached resume. Note the ways in which the applicant customized his resume and e-mail to meet the advertisement's requirements.

FIGURE 9 Job Advertisement Found in an Online Site

Hi-Tech Industries
Employee Type: Full Time
Industry: Computer Software
Job Type: Entry Level

Description

Our company wants to hire a full-time Entry Level Software Engineer for the development of Aviation Engineering Tools.

Position Summary

Our company is looking for self-motivated, passionate, and creative software engineers to develop tools that will reduce manual overhead, improve processes, and automate where possible. As a member of this team, you will participate in planning, design, development, and testing. Our ideal candidate should be able to help us work even more efficiently and allow us to deliver the highest quality software products to our customers.

Responsibilities

- Develop and maintain tools to be used by product development engineers, including all phases of the SDLC
- Develop and maintain tools and plug-ins using C and C++
- Maintain servers used, including those for continuous builds

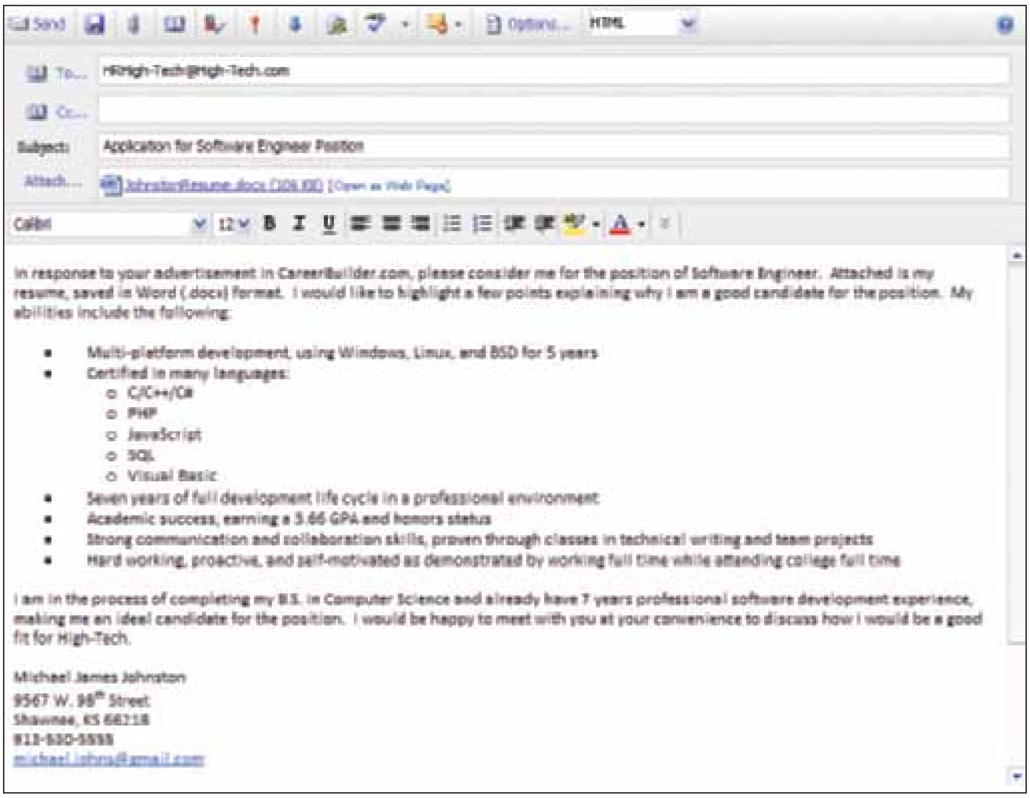
Skills & Qualifications Required

- Strong academics (cumulative GPA greater than or equal to 3.5 as a general rule)
- Bachelor of Science in Computer Science, Computer Engineering, Aerospace Engineering, Math, or Physics from a four-year college or university, or a minimum of four years of work experience performing a role substantially similar to the essential functions of this job description
- Relevant experience and/or training in programming languages such as C and C++
- Some exposure to and coursework in Java, as well as scripting languages such as Python and Perl
- Detail-oriented, able to manage multiple tasks proactively and effectively with minimal supervision
- Demonstrated strong and effective verbal, written, and interpersonal communication skills with a collaborative development style

Skills & Qualifications Preferred

- Previous experience working in a team environment
- More than two years of C/C++ and/or Java, and object oriented design experience
- Experience with software testing

FIGURE 10 E-mail Cover Message Prefacing Attached Resume in Response to Job Advertisement in CareerBuilder



To... HR@High-Tech@High-Tech.com

Cc...

Subject: Application for Software Engineer Position

Attach... JohnstonResume.docx (106 KB) [Open as Web Page]

In response to your advertisement in CareerBuilder.com, please consider me for the position of Software Engineer. Attached is my resume, saved in Word (.docx) format. I would like to highlight a few points explaining why I am a good candidate for the position. My abilities include the following:

- Multi-platform development, using Windows, Linux, and BSD for 5 years
- Certified in many languages:
  - C/C++/C#
  - PHP
  - JavaScript
  - SQL
  - Visual Basic
- Seven years of full development life cycle in a professional environment
- Academic success, earning a 3.66 GPA and honors status
- Strong communication and collaboration skills, proven through classes in technical writing and team projects
- Hard working, proactive, and self-motivated as demonstrated by working full time while attending college full time

I am in the process of completing my B.S. in Computer Science and already have 7 years professional software development experience, making me an ideal candidate for the position. I would be happy to meet with you at your convenience to discuss how I would be a good fit for High-Tech.

Michael James Johnston
9567 W. 98th Street
Shawnee, KS 66218
913-530-5555
michael.johns@gmail.com

An applicant can rarely meet every job requirement listed in a job advertisement. However, Michael shows that he meets many of the advertised requirements.

Although Michael has not completed his bachelor of science, a requirement for the job, he explains that his years of experience and other attributes outweigh the issue.

FIGURE 11 Reverse Chronological Resume Responding to Job Advertisement in CareerBuilder

Michael J. Johnston
9567 W. 98th St.
Shawnee, KS 66218
913-530-5555
michael.johns@gmail.com

Objective

Employment in software development where I can use my work experience and computer language skills to help a company work efficiently and deliver high-quality software products to customers.

Summary of Qualifications

- Experienced developer, total of seven years in professional software development
- Capable of multi-platform development with five years programming for Windows, Linux, and BSD platforms
- Four years of experience with relational database programming and database table design

Michael's objective line uses words taken from the job advertisement to customize his resume.

(Continued)

FIGURE 11 *(Continued)*

- Proficient in over ten programming languages, including the following:
  - C/C++ — Knowledge of procedural and object oriented paradigms with three years of experience
  - Java — Developed Android based applications for one year
  - C# .Net — Well-versed with five years of professional experience making various applications
  - PHP — Experience in conjunction with Android application development for one year
  - JavaScript — Self-taught
  - SQL — Over five years of professional experience of T-SQL for MS-SQL server experience
  - Visual Basic — One year of experience in an ASP.Net environment
- Seven years of full development life cycle in a professional environment

Employment

Lead Developer

Harken Law Group Kansas City, MO 2007 to present

- Independently design, develop, document, and deploy applications including the following:
  - More than 30 applications for data extraction, transform, and load (ETL)
  - Over 20 applications for data manipulation and reporting
- Promoted to Lead Developer after three years as an EDI Programmer
- Managed two programmers during the last three years

Refurbish Specialist

Tech and U Lenexa, KS 2004 to 2007

- Upgraded existing software for printer testing
- Built, repaired, and cleaned corporate class printers, including Hewlett Packard, Lexmark, and Epson

His qualifications accent the ways in which he meets the company's advertised needs.

Education

A.S., General Science
Kingston Community College Overland Park, KS Anticipated Date of Graduation 2013

- GPA of 3.66
- Member, Dean's List
- Member, Phi Theta Kappa honor society
- Working 40 hours weekly while attending college full time (6 to 15 credit hours)

Professional Skills

- Proficient with Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, Excel, Access, Microsoft SQL Server Manager, and Visual Studio
- Capable of writing technical documentation due to acquired college education in technical writing
- Two years of experience teaching basic C# programming to three coworkers
- One year of working with network penetration testing

Techniques for Interviewing Effectively

The goal of writing an effective resume and letter of application or cover e-mail message is to get an interview. The resume and letter of application or e-mail may open the door; only a successful interview will win you the job. In fact, some sources suggest that the interview is the most important stage of your job search. The Society for Human Resource Management states that 95 percent of respondents ranked "interview performance" as a "very influential" factor when deciding to hire an employee. "Interview performance [is] more influential than 17 other criteria, including years of relevant work experience, resume quality, education levels, test scores or references" (Stafford, L1). To interview successfully, consider the following suggestions.

Dress professionally. Professionalism starts with your appearance. The key to successful dressing is to wear clean, conservative clothing. No one expects you to spend money on high-fashion, stylish clothes, but everyone expects you to look neat and acceptable. Business suits are still best for both men and women.

Be on time. Plan to arrive at your interview at least twenty to thirty minutes ahead of schedule. That way, you won't have to worry about unexpected traffic, crowded parking lots, or finding the correct building.

Watch your body language. To make the best impression, don't slouch, chew your fingernails, play with your hair or jewelry, or check your watch. These actions will make you look edgy and impatient. Sit straight in your chair, even leaning forward a little to show your enthusiasm and energy. Look your interviewer in the eye. Smile and shake your interviewer's hand firmly.

Don't chew gum, smoke, or drink beverages during the interview. The gum might distort your speech; the cigarette will probably offend the interviewer, particularly if he or she is a non-smoker; and you might spill the beverage.

Turn off your smartphone. Today, smartphones are commonplace. However, the interview room is one place where this device must be avoided. Taking a call while you are being interviewed is rude and will ensure that you will not be hired. Reading a text message or sending one during an interview is not appropriate. Your interviewer will not appreciate it if your smartphone rings during your meeting.

Watch what you say and how you say it. Speak slowly, focus on the conversation, and don't ramble. Once you have answered the questions satisfactorily, stop.

Bring supporting documents to the interview. Supporting documents can include extra copies of your resume, a list of references, letters of recommendation, employer performance appraisals, a portfolio (hard copies and electronic version), or transcripts.

Research the company. Show the interviewer that you are sincerely interested in and knowledgeable about the company. Dr. Judith Evans, Vice President of Right Management Consultants of New York, says that the most successful job candidates show interviewers that they "know the company inside and out" (Kallick D1).

Be familiar with typical interview questions. You want to anticipate questions you will be asked and be ready with answers. Some typical questions include the following:

What are your strengths and weaknesses?

Why do you want to work for this company?

Why are you leaving your present employment?

What did you like least about your last job?

What computer hardware are you familiar with, and what computer languages do you know?

Can you travel for work-related activities?

Will you relocate?

What do you want to be doing in five years? Ten years?

How would you handle this (hypothetical) situation?

What was your biggest accomplishment in your last job or while in college?

What machines can you use?

What special techniques do you know, or what special skills do you have?

What did you like most about your last job?

What about this job appealed to you?

What starting salary would you expect?

How do you get along with colleagues and with management?

When answering questions, focus on the company's specific need. For example, if the interviewer asks if you have experience using RoboHelp or C++, explain your expertise in that area, focusing on recent experiences or achievements. Be specific. In fact, you might want to tell a brief story to explain your knowledge. This is called "behavioral description interviewing" (Ralston, et al. 9). It allows an interviewer to learn about your speaking abilities, organization, and relevant job skills. To respond to a behavioral description interview question, answer as follows (Ralston, et al. 11):

- Organize your story chronologically.
- Tell who did what, when, why, and how.
- Explain what came of your actions (the result of the activity).
- Depict scenes, people, and actions.
- Make sure your story relates exactly to the interviewer's needs.
- Stop when you are through—do not ramble. Get to the point, develop it, and conclude. If, however, you do not have the knowledge required, then "explain how you can apply the experience you *do* have" (Hartman 24). You could say, "Although I've never used RoboHelp, I have created online help using HTML coding. Plus, I'm a quick learner. I was able to learn FlashHelp and XML well enough to create online help screens in only a week. Our customer was very happy with the results." This will show that you understand the job and can adapt to any task you might be given.

SPOTLIGHT

How Do Human Resource Professionals Conduct a Job Search?

Maria Levit, Human Resources Director, says that for each open staff position at DeVry University, Kansas City, over 100 people apply. How do you find the best applicant out of so many possibilities?

Maria follows a step-by-step approach, which includes

- reviewing the resumes
- following with a prescreen telephone call to the top 10 to 15 applicants
- inviting between six and eight individuals to face-to-face interviews
- calling references

Ms. Levit looks for two strengths above all others in the resumes. First, she wants to see "evidence of skills and credentials applicable to the job." Next, Maria needs proof. "I look for evidence of success. I want concrete examples that prove the applicant's accomplishments. For example, I want a resume to read something like, 'reduced turnover by a specific percent within such and such a time.'"

If an applicant's resume meets the job's criteria, Maria conducts the phone prescreen. In these phone calls, she wants evidence of good communication skills and a positive attitude. Maria wants to hear that the applicant "cares about people, wants to make a positive impact on students and coworkers, and has a passion" for the job. Most importantly, Maria uses the phone prescreen to detect "red flags." She is wary of applicants who make negative comments about current coworkers, bosses, or work environment.

In the face-to-face interview, Maria looks for applicants who come prepared with extra copies of resumes, names and telephone numbers of references, or transcripts. In contrast, if they "have poor posture, speak in a monotone, don't make eye contact, and dress inappropriately," then their general day-to-day job preparedness might be lacking as well.

Maria's most challenging activity is the follow-up reference call. Current and past employers are cautious about discussing employees. To overcome this reticence, Maria begins with a non-threatening question: "What was John's basic job description?" Next, she moves on to more challenging probes, like "identify two to three of John's strengths and weaknesses." Whatever Maria does, it must be working. Many faculty and staff have worked at the Kansas City DeVry for over ten years. Hiring the right person for the right job leads to continuity in the workplace.

Criteria for Effective Follow-Up Correspondence

Once you have interviewed, don't just sit back and wait, hoping that you will be offered the job. Write a follow-up letter or e-mail message. This follow-up accomplishes three primary goals: It thanks your interviewers for their time, keeps your name fresh in their memories, and gives you an opportunity to introduce new reasons for hiring you.

A follow-up letter or e-mail message contains an introduction, discussion, and conclusion.

- **Introduction.** Tell the readers how much you appreciated meeting them. Be sure to state the date on which you met and the job for which you applied.
- **Discussion.** In this paragraph, emphasize or add important information concerning your suitability for the job. Add details that you forgot to mention during the interview, clarify details that you covered insufficiently, and highlight your skills that match the job requirements. In any case, sell yourself one last time.
- **Conclusion.** Thank the readers for their consideration, or remind them how they can get in touch with you for further information. Don't, however, give them any deadlines for making a decision.

> Thank you for allowing me to interview with Acme Corporation on July 8. I enjoyed meeting you and the other members of the team to discuss the position of account representative.
>
> You stated in the interview that Acme is planning to expand into international marketing. With my Spanish speaking ability and my study-abroad experience, I would welcome the opportunity to become involved in this exciting expansion.
>
> Again, thank you for your time and consideration. I look forward to hearing from you. Please e-mail me at gfiefer21@aol.com.

◀ EXAMPLE

For an e-mail follow-up, you would include your reader's e-mail address and a subject line, such as "Thank You for the July 8 Interview" or "Follow-up to July 8 Interview."

For a hard-copy follow-up letter, you would include all letter components: writer's address, date, reader's address, salutation, complimentary close, and signature.

This example succeeds for several reasons. First, it is short, merely reminding the reader of the writer's interest, instead of overwhelming him or her with too much new information. Second, the message is positive, using words such as *enjoyed, ability, welcome, opportunity, exciting,* and *thank you*. Finally, the correspondence provides the reader an e-mail address for easy follow-up.

Job Acceptance Letter or E-mail Message

Great news! After working hard to find a job, your efforts have paid off. You've just received a job offer. Now what? Sometimes, accepting the offer over the phone isn't enough. Your new employer might want you to write and sign an official acceptance letter or submit an e-mail message. In this brief correspondence, you will want to accomplish the following goals:

- Thank the company for the job opportunity
- Officially accept the job offer
- Restate the terms of employment (salary, benefits, location, position, job responsibilities, and/or start date)

Address the letter or e-mail to the individual who offered you the position for a more personalized touch. Be sure to include your phone number, e-mail address, or mailing address, just in case the company needs to contact you. This acceptance correspondence actually could be seen as your first day on the job. Therefore, take as much care in writing this letter or e-mail as you did in applying for the job. Make sure your letter or e-mail is grammatically correct, well organized, and conveys a positive tone. Show your new boss or colleagues that you are a professional asset to the company. Figure 12 provides a sample job acceptance letter.

FIGURE 12 Job Acceptance Letter

Amy Zhang
9103 Stonefield Rd.
Georgetown, TX 77829

May 15, 2014

George Smithson
Dell Computers
2134 Silicon Way
Round Rock, TX 77112

Dear Mr. Smithson:

In response to your phone call yesterday (5/14/14), I am happy to accept the position as a Technical Sales Representative II at Dell Computers. I know that with my education, experience, and energy, I will be an asset to your workforce.

As we discussed, my salary will be $35,000 with health and life insurance benefits provided after 90 days of employment. I will work in your Round Rock, Texas, facility, where my job will entail working with a team to meet the schedules, budgets, product costs, and production ramp rates for projects assigned to my team and me. In addition, I will manage small to medium platform/peripheral development programs.

I look forward to joining the Dell team on June 10, 2014. If you have any questions or need additional information, please let me know. Thank you, Mr. Smithson, for this outstanding opportunity.

Sincerely,

Amy Zhang

Amy Zhang
713-555-0112
azhang@gt.edu

The Writing Process at Work

Effective communication in the job search follows a process of prewriting, writing, and rewriting. To illustrate the importance of the writing process in the job search, look at how LaShanda E. Brown used prewriting, writing, and rewriting to create an effective resume so she could apply for a job in the field of human resources.

Prewriting

Before writing a resume, use prewriting to help you begin a job search and determine your objectives. Beginning with a list of goals, audience, channels of communication, and material to include will get you started. LaShanda used reporter's questions to plan her job search (Figure 13):

FIGURE 13 LaShanda's Reporter's Questions

- **Who** should I send my resume to?
- **What** should I include about my experience in human resources? What should I include about education?
- **When** is the resume due?
- **Where** should I send the resume (what's the city/state address, e-mail address, or URL)?
- **Why** am I interested in this job posting?
- **What** have I learned about the company's culture?
- **How** should I send the resume—by e-mail, online form, or hard copy?
- **How** can I show benefit to the company hiring me?

JOB SEARCH CHECKLIST

Job Openings

_____ **1.** Did you visit your college or university job placement center?

_____ **2.** Did you talk to your professors about job openings?

_____ **3.** Have you networked with friends or previous employers, and have you considered using social media for networking?

_____ **4.** Have you checked with your professional affiliations or looked for job openings in trade journals?

_____ **5.** Did you search the Internet for job openings?

Resume

_____ **1.** Are your name, address, and phone number correct?

_____ **2.** Is your job objective specific?

_____ **3.** Have you included a summary of qualifications?

_____ **4.** Is all information within your education, work experience, and military experience sections accurate?

_____ **5.** Have you used lists beginning with verbs?

_____ **6.** Have you quantified each of your achievements?

_____ **7.** Have you avoided using sentences and the word *I*?

_____ **8.** Does your resume use bullets, headings, and no more than two different font types and sizes to make it reader friendly?

_____ **9.** Have you proofread your resume to find grammatical and mechanical errors?

_____ **10.** Have you decided whether you should write a reverse chronological resume or a functional resume?

Cover Letter or E-mail Message

_____ **1.** Have you included all of the letter essentials for a cover letter?

_____ **2.** Does your introductory paragraph state where you learned of the job, which job you are applying for, and your interest in the position?

_____ **3.** Does your message's discussion unit pinpoint the ways in which you will benefit the company?

_____ **4.** Does your letter or e-mail message concluding paragraph end cordially and explain what you hope your reader will do next?

_____ **5.** Is your cover letter or e-mail free of all errors?

Interview

_____ **1.** Will you dress appropriately?

_____ **2.** Will you arrive ahead of time?

_____ **3.** Have you practiced answering potential questions?

_____ **4.** Have you researched the company so you can ask informed questions?

_____ **5.** Will you bring to the interview additional examples of your work or copies of your resume? Will you bring either an electronic or hard-copy portfolio?

Follow-up Letter or E-mail Message

_____ **1.** Have you included all the letter essentials if you wrote a letter?

_____ **2.** Does your introductory paragraph remind the readers when you interviewed and what position you interviewed for?

_____ **3.** Does the discussion unit highlight additional ways in which you might benefit the company?

_____ **4.** Does the concluding paragraph thank the readers for their time and consideration?

_____ **5.** Does your letter or e-mail avoid all errors?

(Continued)

Job Acceptance Letter or E-mail Message

_____ **1.** Have you included all the letter essentials if you wrote a letter?

_____ **2.** Does your introductory paragraph explain why you are writing (in response to a job offer) and what you are writing about (accepting the job)?

_____ **3.** Does the discussion unit confirm the particulars of the offer (salary, benefits, job duties, location, start date, and so on)?

_____ **4.** Does the concluding paragraph thank the reader for the job opportunity?

_____ **5.** Does your letter or e-mail message avoid errors and show your professionalism?

Writing

After determining objectives by prewriting, you can begin drafting your resume. LaShanda went to her husband's military career center for help writing her resume. They told her to use a functional resume because that's what they tended to suggest for people leaving the military. LaShanda drafted her resume, creating a functional resume that used information she discovered in prewriting (Figure 14).

Rewriting

Editing and revising a resume will help you make it look professional and achieve the desired result of getting an interview. After getting no job interviews, LaShanda realized that her functional resume wasn't working. She had to consider the following aspects of her resume that needed revision:

- Her career objective's line did not match her new search for a job in human resources.
- The functional resume listed jobs in one part of the resume and then responsibilities in another part of the text.
- Directors of human resources could not match dates and duties.
- The functional resume did not clarify her achievements and education.
- She needed to delete information from past employment that was not relevant for her current job search.
- She needed to include courses and professional development that proved she was up to date in the field of human resources.

She changed strategies and restructured the functional resume into a reverse chronological resume. With the revised resume (Figure 15), LaShanda got an interview. Today she works in her desired field of human resources and gets to review job applicants' resumes and interview them.

FIGURE 14 Draft of a Functional Resume

LaShanda E. Brown
833 Hampton Rd., Apt. 1
Virginia Beach, VA 23460
757-555-5555
labrown10@yahoo.com

Objective: Retail Management

HIGHLIGHTS OF QUALIFICATIONS

- 2 years retail management and recruiting experience.
- Expertise in oral and written communications. Able to present ideas and goals clearly.
- Motivated team player that thrives in a fast-paced, multi-faceted environment.
- Proficient in Microsoft Office (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Outlook, Access), as well as basic office hardware (fax, copiers, cash registers)
- Familiar with most video game consoles (PS1, PS2, Xbox, NES, etc.)

EXPERIENCE

Management

- Supervised 5 management trainees and taught them all aspects of the rental car industry to include accounts receivable, marketing accounts as well as competition, managing a rental fleet, etc.
- Oversee 4 telemarketers and 2 sales representatives. Managed training and quality customer service when representing the company via telephone.
- Improved loss prevention programs within a retail setting by breaking the store up into teams and zones so that all areas were covered at all times. Loss prevention decreased 6% in 3 months.
- Earned All-stars sales award 4 months in a row. Average of 91% optional coverage sales on rentals within that four-month period.

Customer Service

- Implemented new strategies for customer satisfaction, such as interactive games to give customers an opportunity to win coupons on current and future rentals. Customer satisfaction increased 15%.
- Greeted customers enthusiastically and efficiently to provide a positive company image and impression.
- Researched and provided solutions to customer service issues, ensuring customer needs were met and they were satisfied.
- Coordinated customer follow-ups, ensuring they had a good rental experience with us and would return if they needed our rental services again.

EMPLOYMENT

2012–Present	Office Manager	Best Value Remodeling
2010–2012	Insurance Sales Agent	Geico Direct
2010	Management Assistant	Enterprise Rent-A-Car

EDUCATION AND TRAINING

- **Bachelors in Communication, emphasis in Public Relations**
  Missouri Western State College, St. Joseph, MO
- Elite Sales Training, Enterprise Rent-a-car
- Effective Management Training, Best Value Remodeling

FIGURE 15 Revised Reverse Chronological Resume

LaShanda E. Brown
833 Hampton Rd., Apt. 1
Virginia Beach, VA 23460
757-555-5555
labrown10@yahoo.com

Career Objective

To work in the field of human resources management, using my communication skills to help an organization meet its goals

Summary of Qualifications

- Screened and hired over two dozen applicants for employment
- Conducted annual performance reviews as an office manager
- Presented at college job fairs as a management assistant
- Made PowerPoint presentations
- Proficient at interpersonal communication and public speaking, as evident from my coursework in communication studies

LaShanda emphasizes her skills as they relate to a job search in human resources.

Education

Bachelor of Science in Communication, Public Relations emphasis, May 2012
Missouri Western State College, St. Joseph, MO

- Related courses: small group communication, presentational communication, consumer marketing, persuasive speech, media in communications, public relations communication analysis, human resources management, nonverbal communication, advertising, desktop publishing

The education section highlights human resource experience, allowing the city's human resources department to see that LaShanda meets the requirements for a position.

Employment

Office Manager
Best Value Remodeling Virginia Beach, VA 2012–Present

- Make spreadsheets using MS Excel to track sales by outside sales teams and manage commissions
- Update Microsoft Access database to track results from sales calls
- Create PowerPoint presentations for general manager to use when going on corporate sales leads
- Oversee 4 telemarketers and 2 sales representatives

Insurance Sales Agent
Geico Direct Virginia Beach, VA 2010–2012

- Provided excellent customer service on the phone
- Performed data entry by setting up insurance policies

Management Assistant
Enterprise Rent-a-Car Oklahoma City, OK 2010

- Won award as "Best New Hire 2010"
- Supervised 5 management trainees
- Created advertisements locally for the branch
- Improved loss prevention programs by 6% in 3 months
- Earned All-stars sales award 4 months in a row. Average of 91% optional coverage sales on rentals within that four-month period

Software Knowledge

- Proficient with Microsoft Office programs, including MS Word, MS Excel, MS Access, MS PowerPoint, MS Outlook, and MS Project
- Proficient with PeopleSoft program (HR module)
- Proficient with Lotus programs, including Lotus Notes, Lotus 1-2-3

The reverse chronological resume better suits her needs in that it matches job responsibilities with specific jobs and dates.

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Use many different resources to locate possible jobs, such as college placement centers, instructors, friends, professional affiliations, want ads, social media, and the Internet.
2. Over 60 percent of jobs are found through networking.
3. Use the Internet to help you job search.
4. Use either a reverse chronological resume or a functional resume.
5. Write a traditional hard-copy resume, a resume attached to an e-mail message, or a scannable resume.
6. Include a summary of qualifications on your resume.
7. On your resume, place education first if that is your strongest asset, or begin with work experience if this will help you get the job.
8. Write your letter of application or cover e-mail message so that it targets a specific job.
9. Prepare before your interview so you can anticipate possible questions.
10. Your follow-up letter or e-mail message will impress the interviewer and remind him or her of your strengths.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

DiskServe, a St. Louis-based company, is hoping to hire a customer service representative for their computer technology department. In addition to DiskServe's CEO, Sarah Beske, the hiring committee will consist of two managers from other DiskServe departments and two coworkers in the computer technology department.

The position requires a Bachelor's degree in Information Technology (or a comparable degree) and/or four years of experience working with computer technology. Candidates must have knowledge of C++, Visual Basic, SQL, Oracle, and Microsoft Office applications. In addition, customer service skills are mandatory. Four candidates were invited to DiskServe's work site for personal interviews—Macy Heart, Aaron Brown, Rosemary Lopez, and Robin Scott.

Macy has a Bachelor's degree in Computer Information Systems. He has worked two years part time in his college's technology lab helping faculty and students with computer hardware and software applications, including Microsoft Office and Visual Basic. He worked for two years at a computer hardware/software store as a salesperson. His supervisor considers Macy to be an outstanding young man who works hard to please his supervisors and to meet customer needs. According to the supervisor, Macy's greatest strength is customer service, since Macy is patient, knowledgeable, and respectful.

Aaron has an Information Technology certificate from Microsoft, where he has worked for five years. Aaron began his career at Microsoft as a temporary office support assistant, but progressed to a full-time salesperson. When asked where he saw himself in five years, Aaron stated, "The sky's the limit." References proved Aaron's lofty goals by calling him "a self-starter, very motivated, hardworking, and someone with excellent customer service skills." He is taking programming courses at night from the local community college, focusing on C++, Visual Basic, and SQL.

Rosemary has an Associate's degree in Information Technology. She has five years of experience as the supervisor of Oracle application. Prior to that, Rosemary worked with C++, Visual Basic, and SQL. She also has extensive knowledge of Microsoft Office. Rosemary was asked "How have you handled customer complaints in the past?" and responded "I rarely handle customer complaints. In my last job, I assigned that work to my subordinates."

Robin has a Bachelor's degree in Information Technology. To complete her degree, Robin took courses in C++, Visual Basic, Oracle, and SQL. She is very familiar with Microsoft Office. Since Robin just graduated from college, she has no full-time experience in the computer industry. However, she worked in various retail jobs (food services, clothing stores, and book stores) during high school, summers, and in her senior year. She excelled in customer service, winning the "Red Dragon Employee of the Month Award" from her last job as a server in a Chinese Restaurant.

Assignment

Who would you hire? Give an oral presentation or write an e-mail or memo to Sarah Beske, Disk-Serve's CEO, explaining which of the candidates she should hire.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Practice a job search. To do so, find examples of job openings. Bring these job possibilities to class for group discussions. From this job search, you and your peers will get a better understanding of what employers want in new hires.
2. An informational interview can help you learn about the realities of a specific job or work environment. Interview a person currently working in your field of interest. Once you find an employee willing to help, visit with him or her and find out the following:
   - What job opportunities exist in your field?
   - What does a job in your field require, in terms of writing, education, interpersonal communication skills, teamwork, and so on? What are the primary job responsibilities?

   After gathering this information, write a thank-you letter or e-mail to the employee who helped you. Then, write an e-mail to your professor, documenting your findings, and give an oral presentation to your classmates.
3. Write a resume. To do so, follow the suggestions provided in this chapter. Once you have constructed this resume, bring it to class for peer review. In small groups, discuss each resume's successes and areas needing improvement.
4. Write a letter of application or cover e-mail message according to the suggestions provided in this chapter. Next, in small groups, review your correspondence for suggested improvements.
5. Practice a job interview in small groups, designating one student as the job applicant and other students as the interview committee. Ask the applicant the sample interview questions provided in this chapter or any others you consider valid. This will give you and your peers a feel for the interviewing process.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. You need to submit a resume for a job opening. However, you have problems with your work history, such as the following:
   - You have had no jobs.
   - You have been fired from a job.
   - You've been out of the workforce for five years raising a family.
   - You have had three (or more) jobs in one year.
   - You want to apply for a job that requires a degree but you have not earned one yet.

   Consider how you would meet the challenges of your job history.
2. During an interview, you are asked to describe a problem you encountered at work and explain how you handled that challenge. How do you answer this typical question, but avoid giving an answer that paints a negative picture of a boss, coworker, or your work environment?

WEB WORKSHOP

1. Using an Internet search engine, find job openings in your area of interest. Which companies are hiring, what skills do they want from prospective employees, and what keywords are used to describe preferred skills in this work field? Report your findings to your instructor by writing a memo or e-mail or give an oral presentation to your class about the job market in your field.
2. Research your career field by going to the Occupational Outlook Handbook (http://www.bls.gov/oco/ooh_index.htm). Learn about your field's educational requirements, salary range, job requirements, and job opportunities. Report the findings to your instructor by writing a memo or e-mail, or give an oral presentation to your class.
3. Social media is a resource for the job search. Go to a search engine and type in "social media+job search" or "social networking+job search." Find articles related to the importance of social media and employment. Summarize your findings in an e-mail message to your instructor or in an oral presentation to your class.

GRAMMAR, PUNCTUATION, MECHANICS, AND SPELLING

Correct organization and development of your memos, letters, or reports is important for the success of your technical communication. However, no one will be impressed with the quality of your work, or with you, if your writing is riddled with errors in sentence construction or punctuation. Your written correspondence is often your first contact with business associates. Many people mistakenly believe that only English teachers notice grammatical errors and wield red pens, but businesspeople as well take note of such errors and may see the writer as less competent.

We were working recently with a young executive who is employed by a branch of the federal government. This executive told us that whenever his supervisor found a spelling error in a subordinate's report, this report was paraded around the office. Everyone was shown the mistake and had a good laugh over it, and the report was then returned to the writer for correction. Our acquaintance assured us that all of this was in good-natured fun. However, he also said that employees quickly learned to edit and proofread their written communication to avoid such public displays of their errors.

Your writing at work may not be exposed to such scrutiny by coworkers. Instead, your writing may go directly to another firm, and those readers will see your mistakes. To avoid this problem, you must evaluate your writing for grammar, punctuation, and spelling errors. If you don't, your customers, bosses, and colleagues will.

Grammar Rules

To understand the fundamentals of grammar, you must first understand the basic components of a sentence.

A correctly constructed sentence consists of a subject and a predicate (some sentences also include a phrase or phrases).

EXAMPLE ▶

The meeting	began	at 4:00 A.M.
subject	predicate	phrase

Subject: The *doer* of the action; the subject usually precedes the predicate.
Predicate: The *action* in the sentence

EXAMPLE ▶

He	ran	to the office to avoid being late.
doer	action	phrases

If the subject and the predicate (a) express a complete thought and (b) can stand alone, you have an *independent clause*.

EXAMPLE ▶

The meeting began	at 4:00 P.M.
independent clause	phrase

A *phrase* is a group of related words that does not contain a subject and a predicate and cannot stand alone or be punctuated as a sentence. The following are examples of phrases:

at the house
in the box
on the job
during the interview

If a clause is dependent, it cannot stand alone.

EXAMPLE

Although he tried to hurry, he was late for the meeting.
dependent clause independent clause

EXAMPLE

He was late for the meeting although he tried to hurry.
independent clause dependent clause

NOTE: When a dependent clause begins a sentence, use a comma before the independent clause. However, when an independent clause begins a sentence, do not place a comma before the dependent clause.

Agreement between Pronoun and Antecedent (Referent)

A pronoun has to agree in gender and number with its antecedent.

Susan went on *her* vacation yesterday.
The *people* who quit said that *they* deserved raises.

Problems often arise when a singular indefinite pronoun is the antecedent. The following antecedents require singular pronouns: *anybody, each, everybody, everyone, somebody,* and *someone.*

incorrect

Anyone can pick up *their* applications at the job placement center.

correct

Anyone can pick up *his* or *her* application at the job placement center.

Problems also arise when the antecedent is separated from the pronoun by numerous words.

incorrect

Even when the best *employee* is considered for a raise, *they* often do not receive it.

correct

Even when the best *employee* is considered for a raise, *he* or *she* often does not receive it.

Agreement between Subject and Verb

Writers sometimes create disagreement between subjects and verbs, especially if other words separate the subject from the verb. To ensure agreement, ignore the words that come between the subject and verb.

incorrect

Her *boss* undoubtedly *think* that all the employees want promotions.

correct

Her *boss* undoubtedly *thinks* that all the employees want promotions.

incorrect

The *employees* who sell the most equipment *is* going to Hawaii for a week.

correct

The *employees* who sell the most equipment *are* going to Hawaii for a week.

If a sentence contains two subjects (a compound subject) connected by *and,* use a plural verb.

incorrect

Joe and Tiffany *was* both selected employee of the year.

correct

Joe and Tiffany *were* both selected employees of the year.

incorrect

The bench workers and their supervisor *is* going to work closely to complete this project.

correct

The bench workers and their supervisor *are* going to work closely to complete this project.

Add a final *s* or *es* to create most plural subjects or singular verbs, as follows:

PLURAL SUBJECTS	SINGULAR VERBS
bosses hire	a boss hires
employees demand	an employee demands
experiments work	an experiment works
attitudes change	the attitude changes

If a sentence has two subjects connected by *either . . . or, neither . . . nor,* or *not only . . . but also,* the verb should agree with the closest subject. This also makes the sentence less awkward.

EXAMPLE ▶

Either the salespeople or the warehouse worker deserv*es* raises.
Not only the warehouse worker but also the salespeople deserv*e* raises.
Neither the salespeople nor the warehouse worker deserv*es* raises.

Singular verbs are used after most indefinite pronouns such as the following:

another	everything
anybody	neither
anyone	nobody
anything	no one
each	nothing
either	somebody
everybody	someone
everyone	something

Anyone who works here *is* guaranteed maternity leave.
Everybody wants the company to declare a profit this quarter.

Singular verbs often follow collective nouns such as the following:

class	organization
corporation	platoon
department	staff
group	team

The *staff is* sending the boss a bouquet of roses.

Comma Splice

A *comma splice* occurs when two independent clauses are joined by a comma rather than separated by a period or semicolon.

incorrect

Sue was an excellent employee, she got a promotion.

Several remedies will correct this error.

1. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee; she got a promotion.

2. Separate the two independent clauses with a period.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee. She got a promotion.

3. Separate the two independent clauses with a comma and a *coordinating conjunction* (*and, but, or, for, so, yet*).

correct

Sue was an excellent employee, *so* she got a promotion.

4. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon (or a period), a conjunctive adverb, and a comma. *Conjunctive adverbs* include *also, additionally, consequently, furthermore, however, instead, moreover, nevertheless, therefore,* and *thus*.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee; *therefore,* she got a promotion.

or

Sue was an excellent employee. *Therefore,* she got a promotion.

5. Use a *subordinating conjunction* to make one of the independent clauses into a dependent clause. Subordinating conjunctions include *after, although, as, because, before, even though, if, once, since, so that, though, unless, until, when, where,* and *whether*.

correct

Because Sue was an excellent employee, she got a promotion.

Faulty or Vague Pronoun Reference

A pronoun must refer to a specific noun (its antecedent). Problems arise when (a) there is an excessive number of pronouns (causing vague pronoun reference) and (b) there is no specific noun as an antecedent. Notice that there seems to be an excessive number of pronouns in the following passage, and the antecedents are unclear.

EXAMPLE ▶

Although Bob had been hired over two years ago, *he* found that *his* boss did not approve *his* raise. In fact, *he* was also passed over for *his* promotion. The boss appears to have concluded that *he* had not exhibited zeal in *his* endeavors for their business. Instead of being a highly valued employee, *he* was not viewed with pleasure by those in authority. Perhaps it would be best if *he* considered *his* options and moved to some other company where *he* might be considered in a new light.

The excessive and vague use of *he* and *his* causes problems for readers. Do these words refer to Bob or to his boss? You are never completely sure. To avoid this problem, limit pronoun usage, as in the following revision.

EXAMPLE ▶

Although Bob had been hired over two years ago, he found that his boss, Joe, did not approve his raise. In fact, Bob was also passed over for promotion. Joe appears to have concluded that Bob had not exhibited zeal in his endeavors for their business. Instead of being a highly valued employee, Bob was not viewed with pleasure by those in authority. Perhaps it would be best if Bob considered his options and moved to some other company where he might be considered in a new light.

To make the preceding paragraph more precise, we have replaced vague pronouns (*he* and *his*) with exact names (*Bob* and *Joe*).

Fragments

A *fragment* occurs when a group of words is incorrectly used as an independent clause. Often the group of words begins with a capital letter and has end punctuation but is missing either a subject or a predicate.

incorrect

Working with computers.
(lacks a predicate and does not express a complete thought)

The group of words may have a subject and a predicate but be a dependent clause.

incorrect

Although he enjoyed working with computers.

(has a subject, *he,* and a predicate, *enjoyed,* but is a dependent clause because it is introduced by the subordinate conjunction *although*)

It is easy to remedy a fragment by doing one of the following:

- Add a subject.
- Add a predicate.
- Add both a subject and a predicate.
- Add an independent clause to a dependent clause.

correct

Joe found that working with computers used his training.
(subject, *Joe,* and predicate, *found,* have been added)

correct

Although he enjoyed working with computers, he could not find a job in a computer-related field.

(independent clause, *he could not find a job,* added to the dependent clause, *Although he enjoyed working with computers*)

Fused Sentence

A *fused sentence* occurs when two independent clauses are connected with no punctuation.

incorrect

The company performed well last quarter its stock rose several points.

There are several ways to correct this error.

1. Write two sentences separated by a period.

correct

The company performed well last quarter. Its stock rose several points.

2. Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction to separate the two independent clauses.

correct

The company performed well last quarter, *so* its stock rose several points.

3. Use a subordinating conjunction to create a dependent clause.

correct

Because the company performed well last quarter, its stock rose several points.

4. Use a semicolon to separate the two independent clauses.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; its stock rose several points.

5. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon, a conjunctive adverb or a transitional word or phrase, and a comma.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; *therefore,* its stock rose several points.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; *for example,* its stock rose several points.

The following are transitional words and phrases, listed according to their use.

TO ADD

again	in addition
also	moreover
besides	next
first	second
furthermore	still

TO COMPARE/CONTRAST

also	nevertheless
but	on the contrary
conversely	still
in contrast	

TO PROVIDE EXAMPLES

for example	of course
for instance	put another way
in fact	to illustrate

TO SHOW PLACE

above	here
adjacent to	nearby
below	on the other side
elsewhere	there
further on	

To Reveal Time

afterward	second
first	shortly
meanwhile	subsequently
presently	thereafter

To Summarize

all in all	last
finally	on the whole
in conclusion	therefore
in summary	thus

Modification

A *modifier* is a word, phrase, or clause that explains or adds details about other words, phrases, or clauses.

Misplaced Modifiers. A *misplaced modifier* is one that is not placed next to the word it modifies.

incorrect

He had a heart attack *almost* every time he was reviewed by his supervisor.

correct

He almost had a heart attack every time he was reviewed by his supervisor.

incorrect

The worker had to *frequently* miss work.

correct

The worker frequently had to miss work.

Dangling Modifiers. A *dangling modifier* is a modifier that is not placed next to the word or phrase it modifies. To avoid confusing your readers, place modifiers next to the word(s) they refer to. Don't expect your readers to guess at your meaning.

incorrect

While working, tiredness overcame them.
(Who was working? Who was overcome by tiredness? *While working* should modify *staff,* but the word *staff* does not appear in the sentence.)

correct

While working, the staff became tired.

incorrect

After soldering for two hours, the equipment was ready for shipping. (Who had been soldering for two hours? Not the equipment!)

correct

After soldering for two hours, the technicians prepared the equipment for shipping.

Parallelism

All items in a list should be parallel in grammatical form. Avoid mixing phrases and sentences (independent clauses).

incorrect

We will discuss the following at the department meeting:

1. Entering mileage in logs (phrase)
2. All employees have to enroll in a training seminar. (sentence)
3. Purpose of quarterly reviews (phrase)
4. Some data processors will travel to job sites. (sentence)

correct

We will discuss the following at the department meeting:

1. Entering mileage in logs
2. Enrolling in training seminars
3. Reviewing employee performance quarterly
4. Traveling to job sites

phrases

correct

At the department meeting, you will learn how to do the following:

1. Enter mileage in logs.
2. Enroll in training seminars.
3. Review employee performance quarterly.
4. Travel to job sites.

sentences

Punctuation

Apostrophe (')

Place an *apostrophe* before the final *s* in a singular word to indicate possession.

EXAMPLE ▶ Jim's tool chest is next to the furnace.

Place the apostrophe after the final *s* if the word is plural.

EXAMPLE ▶ The employees' reception will be held next week.

Don't use an apostrophe to make singular abbreviations plural.

incorrect

The EXT's will be shipped today.

correct

The EXTs will be shipped today.

Colon (:)

Use a *colon* after a salutation.

Dear Mr. Harken:

◀ EXAMPLE

In addition, use a colon after an emphatic or cautionary word if explanations follow.

Note: Hand-tighten the nuts.
Caution: Wash thoroughly if any mixture touches your skin.

◀ EXAMPLE

Finally, use a colon after an independent clause to precede a quotation, list, or example.

She said the following: "No comment."
These supplies for the experiment are on order: a plastic hose, two batteries, and several chemicals.
The problem has two possible solutions: Hire four more workers, or give everyone a raise.

◀ EXAMPLE

NOTE: In the preceding examples, the colon follows an independent clause.

A common mistake is to place a colon after an incomplete sentence. Except for salutations and cautionary notes, whatever precedes a colon *must* be an independent clause.

incorrect

The two keys to success are: earning money and spending wisely.

correct

The two keys to success are earning money and spending wisely.

or

The two keys to success are as follows: earning money and spending wisely.

or

The two keys to success are as follows:

1. Earning money
2. Spending wisely

Comma (,)

Writers often get in trouble with *commas* when they employ one of two common words of wisdom.

- When in doubt, leave it out.
- Use a comma when there is a pause.

Both rules are inexact. Writers use the first rule to justify the complete avoidance of commas; they use the second rule to sprinkle commas randomly throughout their writing. On the contrary, commas have several specific conventions that determine usage.

1. Place a comma before a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, or, for, so, yet*) linking two independent clauses.

EXAMPLE ▶

You are the best person for the job, *so* I will hire you.
We spent several hours discussing solutions to the problem, *but* we failed to decide on a course of action.

2. Use commas to set off introductory comments.

EXAMPLE ▶

First, she soldered the components.
In business, people often have to work long hours.
To work well, you need to get along with your coworkers.
If you want to test equipment, do so by 5:25 P.M.

3. Use commas to set off sentence interrupters.

EXAMPLE ▶

The company, started by my father, did not survive the last recession.
Mrs. Patel, the proprietor of the store, purchased a wide array of merchandise.

4. Set off parenthetical expressions with commas.

EXAMPLE ▶

A worker, it seems, should be willing to try new techniques.
The highway, by the way, needs repairs.

5. Use commas after each item in a series of three or more.

EXAMPLE ▶

Prakash, Mirren, and Justin were chosen as employees of the year.
We found the following problems: corrosion, excessive machinery breakdowns, and power failures.

6. Use commas for long numbers.

EXAMPLE ▶

She earns $100,000 before taxes.

NOTE: Very large numbers are often written as words.

EXAMPLE ▶

Our business netted over $2 million in 2014.

7. Use commas to separate the day and year when they are part of a sentence.

EXAMPLE ▶

The company hired her on September 7, 2014, to be its bookkeeper.

NOTE: If the year is used as an adjective, do not follow it with a comma.

EXAMPLE ▶

The 2014 corporate report came out today.

8. Use commas to separate the city from the state and the state from the rest of the sentence.

The new warehouse in Austin, Texas, will promote increased revenues.

◀ EXAMPLE

NOTE: If you omit either the city or the state, you do not need commas.

The new warehouse in Austin will promote increased revenues.

◀ EXAMPLE

Dash (—)

A *dash*, typed as two consecutive hyphens with no spaces before or after, is a versatile punctuation mark. Most word processing programs now include an em dash character. Use dashes in the following ways.

1. After a heading and before an explanation.

Forecasting—Joe and Joan will be in charge of researching fourth-quarter production quotas.

◀ EXAMPLE

2. To indicate an emphatic pause.

You will be fired—unless you obey company rules.

◀ EXAMPLE

3. To highlight a new idea.

Here's what we can do to improve production quality—provide on-the-job training, salary incentives, and quality controls.

◀ EXAMPLE

4. Before and after an explanatory or appositive series.

Three people—Sue, Luci, and Tom—are essential to the smooth functioning of our office.

◀ EXAMPLE

Ellipses (. . .)

Ellipses (three spaced periods) indicate omission of words within quoted materials.

"Six years ago, prior to incorporating, the company had to pay extremely high federal taxes."
"Six years ago, . . . the company had to pay extremely high federal taxes."

◀ EXAMPLE

Exclamation Point (!)

Use an *exclamation point* after strong statements, commands, or interjections.

You must work harder!
Do not use the machine!
Danger!

◀ EXAMPLE

Hyphen (-)

A *hyphen* is used in the following ways.

1. To indicate the division of a word at the end of a typed line. Remember, this division must occur between syllables.
2. To create a compound adjective.

EXAMPLE ▶

> He is a well-known engineer.
> Until her death in 2014, she was a world-renowned chemist.
> Tom is a 24-hour-a-day student.

3. To join the numerator and denominator of fractions.

EXAMPLE ▶

> Four-fifths of the company want to initiate profit sharing.

4. To write out two-word numbers.

EXAMPLE ▶

> Twenty-six people attended the conference.

Parentheses ( )

Parentheses enclose abbreviations, numbers, words, or sentences for the following reasons.

1. To define a term or provide an abbreviation for later use.

EXAMPLE ▶

> We belong to the Society for Technical Communication (STC).

2. To clarify preceding information in a sentence.

EXAMPLE ▶

> The people in attendance (all regional sales managers) were proud of their accomplishments.

3. To number items in a series.

EXAMPLE ▶

> The company should initiate (1) new personnel practices, (2) a probationary review board, and (3) biannual raises.

Period (.)

A *period* must end a declarative sentence (independent clause).

EXAMPLE ▶

> I found the business trip rewarding.

Periods are often used with abbreviations.

D.C.	Mrs.	A.M. or a.m.
e.g.	Ms.	P.M. or p.m.
Mr.		

It is incorrect to use periods with abbreviations for organizations and associations.

incorrect

S.T.C. (Society for Technical Communication)

correct

STC (Society for Technical Communication)

State abbreviations do not require periods if you use two capital letters. (Continue to use a period after a capital letter and a lowercase letter such as Tx., Ks., or Mo.)

incorrect

KS. (Kansas)
MO. (Missouri)
TX. (Texas)

correct

KS
MO
TX

Question Mark (?)

Use a *question mark* after direct questions.

EXAMPLE

Do the lab results support your theory?
Will you work at the main office or at the branch?

Quotation Marks (" ")

Quotation marks are used in the following ways.

1. When citing direct quotations.

EXAMPLE

He said, "Your division sold the most compressors last year."

NOTE: When you are citing a quotation within a quotation, use double quotation marks (" ") and single quotation marks (' ').

EXAMPLE

Kim's supervisor, quoting the CEO, said the following to explain the new policy regarding raises: "'Only employees who deserve them will receive merit raises.'"

2. To note the title of an article or a subdivision of a report.

EXAMPLE ▶

The article "Robotics in Industry Today" was an excellent choice as the basis of your speech.
Section III, "Waste Water in District 9," is pertinent to our discussion.

When using quotation marks, abide by the following punctuation conventions:

- Commas and periods always go *inside* quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

She said, "Our percentages are fixed."

- Colons and semicolons always go *outside* quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

He said, "The supervisor hasn't decided yet"; however, he added that the decision would be made soon.

- Exclamation points and question marks go inside the quotation marks if the quoted material is either exclamatory or a question. However, if the quoted material is not exclamatory or a question, then these punctuation marks go outside the quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

John said, "Don't touch that liquid. It's boiling!"

(Although the sentence isn't exclamatory, the quotation is. Thus, the exclamation point goes inside the quotation marks.)

EXAMPLE ▶

How could she say, "We haven't purchased the equipment yet"?

(Although the quotation isn't a question, the sentence is. Thus, the question mark goes outside the quotation marks.)

Semicolon (;)

Semicolons are used in the following instances.

1. Between two independent clauses *not* joined by a coordinating conjunction.

EXAMPLE ▶

The light source was unusual; it emanated from a crack in the plastic surrounding the cathode.

2. To separate items in a series containing internal commas.

EXAMPLE ▶

When the meeting was called to order, all members were present, including Susan Johnson, the president; Jewel Smith, the vice president; Harold Holbert, the treasurer; and Linda Hamilton, the secretary.

Mechanics

Abbreviations

Never use an abbreviation that your reader will not understand. A key to clear technical writing is to write on a level appropriate to your reader. You may use the following familiar abbreviations without explanation: *Mrs.*, *Dr.*, *Mr.*, *Ms.*, and *Jr.*

A common mistake is to abbreviate inappropriately. For example, some writers abbreviate *and* as follows:

I quit my job & planned to retire young.

◀ EXAMPLE

This is too colloquial for professional technical writing. Spell out *and* when you write.

The majority of abbreviation errors occur when writers incorrectly abbreviate states and technical terms.

States. Writers often abbreviate the names of states incorrectly. Use the U.S. Postal Service abbreviations in addresses.

Abbreviations for States

AL	Alabama	MT	Montana
AK	Alaska	NC	North Carolina
AZ	Arizona	ND	North Dakota
AR	Arkansas	NE	Nebraska
CA	California	NV	Nevada
CO	Colorado	NH	New Hampshire
CT	Connecticut	NJ	New Jersey
DE	Delaware	NM	New Mexico
FL	Florida	NY	New York
GA	Georgia	OH	Ohio
HI	Hawaii	OK	Oklahoma
IN	Indiana	OR	Oregon
IA	Iowa	PA	Pennsylvania
ID	Idaho	RI	Rhode Island
IL	Illinois	SC	South Carolina
KS	Kansas	SD	South Dakota
KY	Kentucky	TN	Tennessee
LA	Louisiana	TX	Texas
ME	Maine	UT	Utah
MD	Maryland	VT	Vermont
MA	Massachusetts	VA	Virginia
MI	Michigan	WA	Washington
MN	Minnesota	WV	West Virginia
MS	Mississippi	WI	Wisconsin
MO	Missouri	WY	Wyoming

Technical Terms. Units of measurement and scientific terms must be abbreviated accurately to ensure that they will be understood. Writers often use such abbreviations incorrectly. For example, "The unit measured 7.9 cent." is inaccurate. The correct abbreviation for centimeter is *cm*, not *cent*. Use the following abbreviation conventions.

Technical Abbreviations for Units of Measurement and Scientific Terms

absolute	abs	current (electric)	I
alternating current	AC	cycles per second	CPS
American wire gauge	AWG	decibel	dB
ampere	amp	decigram	dg
ampere-hour	amp-hr	deciliter	dl
amplitude modulation	AM	decimeter	dm
angstrom unit	Å	degree	deg
atmosphere	atm	dekagram	dkg
atomic weight	at wt	dekaliter	dkl
audio frequency	AF	dekameter	dkm
azimuth	az	dewpoint	DP
barometer	bar.	diameter	dia
barrel, barrels	bbl	direct current	DC
billion electron volts	BeV	dozen	doz (or dz)
biochemical oxygen demand	BOD	dram	dr
board foot	bdft	electromagnetic force	emf
Brinell hardness number	BHN	electron volt	eV
British thermal unit	Btu	elevation	el (or elev)
bushel	bu	equivalent	equiv
calorie	cal	Fahrenheit	F
candela	cd	farad	F
Celsius	C	faraday	f
center of gravity	cg	feet, foot	ft
centimeter	cm	feet per second	ft/sec
circumference	cir	fluid ounce	floz
cologarithm	colog	foot board measure	fbm
continuous wave	CW	foot-candle	ft-c
cosine	cos	foot-pound	ftlb
cotangent	cot	frequency modulation	FM
cubic centimeter	cc	gallon	gal
cubic foot	cu ft (or ft^2)	gallons per day	GPD
cubic feet per second	cfs	gallons per minute	GPM
cubic inch	cu in. (or $in.^3$)	grain	gr
cubic meter	cu m (or m^3)	grams	g (or gm)
cubic yard	cu yd (or yd^3)	gravitational acceleration	g

(*continued*)

hectare	ha	maximum	max
hectoliter	hl	megacycle	mc
hectometer	hm	megahertz	MHz
henry	H	megawatt	MW
hertz	Hz	meter	m
high frequency	HF	microampere	µamp
horsepower	hp	microinch	µin.
horsepower-hours	hp-hr	microsecond	µsec
hour	hr	microwatt	µw
hundredweight	cwt	miles per gallon	mpg
inch	in.	milliampere	mA
inch-pounds	in.-lb	millibar	mb
infrared	IR	millifarad	mF
inner diameter or inside dimensions	ID	milligram	mg
		milliliter	ml
intermediate frequency	IF	millimeter	mm
international unit	IU	millivolt	mV
joule	J	milliwatt	mW
Kelvin	K	minute	min
kilocalorie	kcal	nautical mile	NM
kilocycle	kc	negative	neg or –
kilocycles per second	kc/sec	number	no.
kilogram	kg	octane	oct
kilohertz	kHz	ounce	oz
kilojoule	kJ	outside diameter	OD
kiloliter	kl	parts per billion	ppb
kilometer	km	parts per million	ppm
kilovolt	kV	pascal	pas
kilovolt-amperes	kVa	positive	pos or +
kilowatt-hours	kWH	pound	lb
lambert	L	pounds per square inch	psi
latitude	lat	pounds per square inch absolute	psia
length	l	pounds per square inch gauge	psig
linear	lin	quart	qt
linear foot	linft	radio frequency	RF
liter	l	radian	rad
logarithm	log.	radius	r
longitude	long.	resistance	r
low frequency	LF	revolution	rev
lumen	lm	revolutions per minute	rpm
lumen-hour	lm-hr	second	s (or sec)

Technical Abbreviations for Units of Measurement and Scientific Terms (continued)

secant	sec	ultra high frequency	UHF
specific gravity	sp gr (or SG)	vacuum	vac
square foot	ft^2	very high frequency	VHF
square inch	$in.^2$	volt-ampere	VA
square meter	m^2	volt	V
square mile	mi^2	volts per meter	V/m
tablespoon	tbs (or tbsp)	volume	vol
tangent	tan	watt-hour	whr
teaspoon	tsp	watt	W
temperature	t	wavelength	WL
tensile strength	ts	weight	wt
thousand	m	yards	y (or yd)
ton	t	years	y (or yr)

Capital Letters

Capitalize the following:

1. Proper nouns.

EXAMPLE ▶

people	cities	countries	companies	schools	buildings
Susan	Houston	Italy	Bendix	Harvard	Oak Park Mall

2. People's titles (only when they precede the name).

EXAMPLE ▶

Governor Sally Renfro
or
Sally Renfro, governor
Technical Supervisor Todd Blackman
or
Wes Schneider, the technical supervisor

3. Titles of books, magazines, plays, movies, television programs, and CDs (excluding the prepositions and all articles after the first article in the title).

EXAMPLE ▶

Mad Men
The Colbert Report
The Catcher in the Rye
The Twilight Saga: Breaking Dawn
American Idol

4. Names of organizations.

EXAMPLE

Girl Scouts
Phoenix, AZ, Regional Home Care Association
Kansas City Regional Council for Higher Education
Programs for Technical and Scientific Communication
American Civil Liberties Union
Students for a Democratic Society

5. Days of the week, months, and holidays.

EXAMPLE

Monday
December
Thanksgiving

6. Races, religions, and nationalities.

EXAMPLE

American Indian
Jewish
Polish

7. Events or eras in history.

EXAMPLE

the Gulf War
the Vietnam War
World War II

8. North, South, East, and West (when used to indicate geographic locations).

EXAMPLE

Atlanta is one of the fastest growing cities in the South.

NOTE: Don't capitalize these words when giving directions.

EXAMPLE

We were told to drive south three blocks and then to turn west.

9. The first word of a sentence.
10. Don't capitalize any of the following:

EXAMPLE

Seasons—spring, fall, summer, winter
Names of classes—sophomore, senior
General groups—middle management, infielders, surgeons

Numbers

Write out numbers one through nine. Use numerals for numbers 10 and above.

10	12
104	2,093
536	5,550,286

Although the preceding rules cover most situations, there are exceptions.

1. Use numerals for all percentages.

EXAMPLE ▶

2 percent 18 percent 25 percent

2. Use numerals for addresses.

EXAMPLE ▶

12 Elm 935 W. Harding

3. Use numerals for miles per hour.

EXAMPLE ▶

5 mph 225 mph

4. Use numerals for time.

EXAMPLE ▶

3:15 A.M.

5. Use numerals for dates.

EXAMPLE ▶

May 31, 2014

6. Use numerals for monetary values.

EXAMPLE ▶

$45 $.95 $2 million

7. Use numerals for units of measurement.

EXAMPLE ▶

14 feet 6 3/4 inches 16 mm 10 V

8. Do not use numerals to begin sentences.

incorrect

568 people were fired last August.

correct

Five hundred sixty-eight people were fired last August.

9. Do not mix numerals and words when writing numbers. When two or more numbers appear in a sentence and one of them is 10 or more, figures are used.

We attended 4 meetings over a 16-day period.

◄ EXAMPLE

10. Use numerals and words in a compound number adjective to avoid confusion.

The worker needed six 2-inch nails.

◄ EXAMPLE

Spelling

The following is a list of commonly misspelled or misused words. You can avoid many common spelling errors if you familiarize yourself with these words. Remember to run spell check; also remember that spell check will not understand context. The incorrect word contextually could be spelled correctly.

accept, except	council, counsel	personal, personnel
addition, edition	desert, dessert	principal, principle
access, excess	disburse, disperse	quiet, quite
advise, advice	fiscal, physical	rite, right, write
affect, effect	forth, fourth	stationery, stationary
all ready, already	incite, insight	their, there, they're
assistants, assistance	its, it's	to, too, two
bare, bear	loose, lose	whose, who's
brake, break	miner, minor	your, you're
coarse, course	passed, past	
cite, site, sight	patients, patience	

Apply Your Knowledge

Spelling

In the following sentences, circle the correctly spelled words within the parentheses.

1. Each of the employees attended the meeting (accept except) the line supervisor, who was out of town for job-related travel.
2. The (advise advice) he gave will help us all do a better job.
3. Management must (affect effect) a change in employees' attitudes toward absenteeism.
4. Let me (site cite sight) this most recent case as an example.
5. (Its It's) too early to tell if our personnel changes will help create a better office environment.
6. If we (lose loose) another good employee to our competitor, our production capabilities will suffer.
7. I'm not (quite quiet) sure what she meant by that comment.
8. (Their There They're) budget has gotten too large to ensure a successful profit margin.
9. We had wanted to attend the conference (to too two), but our tight schedule prevented us from doing so.
10. (You're Your) best chance for landing this contract is to manufacture a better product.

In the following letter, correct the misspelled words.

March 5, 2014

Joanna Freeman
Personel Director
United Teletype
1111 E. Street
Kansas City, MO 68114

Dear Ms. Freeman:

Your advertizmemt in the Febuary 18, 2014, Kansas City Star is just the opening I have been looking for. I would like to submit my quallifications.

As you will note in the inclosed resum, I recieved an Enginneering degree from the Missouri Institute of Technology in 2005 and have worked in the electronic enginneering department of General Accounts for three years. I have worked a great deal in design electronics for microprocesors, controll systems, ect.

Because your company has invented many extrordinary design projects, working at your company would give me more chances to use my knowlege aquired in school and through my expirences. If you are interested in my quallifications, I would be happy to discuss them futher with you. I look foreward to hearing from you.

Sincerly,

Bob Cottrell

Bob Cottrell

Fragments and Comma Splices

In the following sentences, correct the fragments and comma splices by inserting the appropriate punctuation or adding any necessary words.

1. She kept her appointment with the salesperson, however, the rest of her staff came late.
2. When the CEO presented his fiscal year projections, he tried to motivate his employees, many were not excited about the proposed cuts.
3. Even though the company's sales were up 25 percent.
4. The supervisor wanted the staff members to make suggestions for improving their work environment, the employees, however, felt that any grievances should be taken directly to their union representatives.
5. Which he decided was an excellent idea.
6. Because their machinery was prone to malfunctions and often caused hazards to the workers.
7. They needed the equipment to complete their job responsibilities, further delays would cause production slowdowns.
8. Their client who was a major distributor of high-tech machinery.
9. Robotics should help us maintain schedules, we'll need to avoid equipment malfunctions, though.
10. The company, careful not to make false promises, advertising their product in media releases.

In the following letter, correct the fragments and comma splices.

May 12, 2014

Maurene Pierce
Dean of Residence Life
Mann College
Mannsville, NY 10012

Subject: Report on Dormitory Damage Systems

Here is the report you authorized on April 5 for an analysis of the current dormitory damage system used in this college.

The purpose of the report was to determine the effectiveness of the system. And to offer any concrete recommendations for improvement. To do this, I analyzed in detail the damage cost figures for the past three years, I also did an extensive study of dormitory conditions. Although I had limited manpower. I gathered information on all seven dormitories, focusing specifically on the men's athletic dorm, located at 1201 Chester. In this dorm, bathroom facilities, carpeting, and air conditioning are most susceptible to damage. Along with closet doors.

Nonetheless, my immediate findings indicate that the system is functioning well, however, improvements in the physical characteristics of the dormitories, such as new carpeting and paint, would make the system even more efficient.

I have enjoyed conducting this study, I hope my findings help you make your final decision. Please contact me. If I can be of further assistance.

Rob Harken

Rob Harken

Punctuation

In the following sentences, circle the correct punctuation marks. If no punctuation is needed, draw a slash mark through both options.

1. John took an hour for lunch (, ;) but Joan stayed at her desk to eat so she could complete the project.
2. Sally wrote the specifications (, ;) Randy was responsible for adding any needed graphics.
3. Manufacturing maintained a 93.5 percent production rating in July (, ;) therefore, the department earned the Golden Circle Award at the quarterly meeting.
4. In their year-end requests to management (, ;) supervisors asked for new office equipment (, ;) and a 10 percent budget increase for staffing.
5. The following employees attended the training session on stress management (, :) Steve Janasz, purchasing agent (, ;) Jeremy Kreisler, personnel director (, ;) and Prakash Patel, staff supervisor.
6. Promotions were given to all sales personnel (, ;) secretaries, however, received only cost-of-living raises.
7. The technicians voted for better work benefits (, ;) as an incentive to improve morale.
8. Although the salespeople were happy with their salary increases (, ;) the technicians felt slighted.
9. First (, ;) let's remember that meeting schedules should be a priority (, ;) and not an afterthought.
10. The employee (, ;) who achieves the highest rating this month (, ;) will earn 10 bonus points (, ;) therefore (, ;) competition should be intense.

In the letter below, no punctuation has been added. Instead, there are blanks where punctuation might be inserted. First, decide whether any punctuation is needed (not every blank requires punctuation). Then, insert the correct punctuation—a comma, colon, period, semicolon, or question mark.

January 8_ 2014

Mr_ Ron Schaefer
1324 Homes
Carbondale_ IL_ 34198

Dear Mr_ Schaefer_

Yesterday_ my partners_ and I read about your invention in the Herald Tribune_ and we want to congratulate you on this new idea_ and ask you to work with us on a similar project_

We cannot wait to begin our project_ however_ before we can do so_ I would like you to answer the following questions_

- Has your invention been tested in salt water_
- What is the cost of replacement parts_
- What is your fee for consulting_

Once_ I receive your answers to these questions_ my partners and I will contact you regarding a schedule for operations_ We appreciate your design concept_ and know it will help our business tremendously_ We look forward to hearing from you_

Sincerely_

Elias Agamenyon

Elias Agamenyon

Agreement (Subject/Verb and Pronoun/Antecedent)

In the following sentences, circle the correct choice to achieve agreement between subject and verb or pronoun and antecedent.

1. The employees, though encouraged by the possibility of increased overtime, (was were) still dissatisfied with their current salaries.
2. The supervisor wants to manufacture better products, but (they he) doesn't know how to motivate the technicians to improve their work habits.
3. The staff (was were) happy when the new manager canceled the proposed meeting.
4. Anyone who wants (his or her their) vote recorded must attend the annual board meeting.
5. According to the printed work schedule, Susan and Tom (work works) today on the manufacturing line.
6. According to the printed work schedule, either Susan or Tom (work works) today on the manufacturing line.
7. Although Tamara is responsible for distributing all monthly activity reports, (she they) failed to mail them.
8. Every one of the engineers asked if (he or she they) could be assigned to the project.
9. Either the supervisor or the technicians (is are) at fault.
10. The CEO, known for her generosity to employees and their families, (has have) been nominated for the humanitarian award.

In the following memo, find and correct the errors in agreement.

MEMO

DATE: October 30, 2014
TO: Tammy West
FROM: Susan Lisk
SUBJECT: REPORT ON AIR HANDLING UNIT

There has been several incidents involving the unit which has resulted in water damage to the computer systems located below the air handler.

The occurrences yesterday was caused when a valve was closed creating condensation to be forced through a humidifier element into the supply air duct. Water then leaked from the duct into the room below causing substantial damage to four disc-drive units.

To prevent recurrence of this type of damage, the following actions has been initiated by maintenance supervision:

- Each supervisor must ensure that their subordinates remove condensation valves to avoid unauthorized operation.
- Everyone must be made aware that they are responsible for closing condensation valves.
- The supply air duct, modified to carry away harmful sediments, are to be drained monthly.

Maintenance supervision recommend that air handlers not be installed above critical equipment. This will avoid the possibility of coil failure and water damage.

Capitalization

In the following memo, nothing has been capitalized. Capitalize those words requiring capitalization.

date: december 5, 2014
to: jordan cottrell
from: richard davis
subject: self-contained breathing apparatus (scba) and negative pressure respirator evaluation and fit-testing report

the evaluation and fit-testing have been accomplished. the attached list identifies the following:

- supervisors and electronic technicians who have used the scba successfully.
- the negative pressure respirators used for testing in an isoamyl acetate atmosphere.

fit-testing of waste management personnel will be accomplished annually, according to president chuck carlson. new supervisors and technicians will be fit-tested when hired.

all apex corporation personnel located in the new york district (12304 parkview lane) must submit a request form when requesting a respirator or scba for use. any waste management personnel in the north and south facilities not identified on the attached list will be fit-tested when use of scba is required. if you have any questions, contact chuck carlson or me (richard davis, district manager) at ext. 4036.

Grammar Quiz

The following sentences contain errors in spelling, punctuation, verb and pronoun agreement, sentence structure (fragments and fused sentences), and modification. Circle the letter corresponding to the section of the sentence containing the error.

EXAMPLE

When you recieve the salary increase, your family will celebrate the occasion.
A B C

1. Each department manager should his tell subordinates to advise of any negative
   A B
   occurrences regarding in-house training.
   C D

2. The lawyers' new offices were similar to their former ones ____________ the offices
   A B C
   were on a quiet street.
   D

3. New York City is divided into five boroughs ; Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens,
   A B C
   Brooklyn, and Staten Island.
   D

4. Fashion consultants explain that clothes create a strong impression ____________ so
   A B
   they advise executives ____________ to choose wardrobes carefully.
   C D

5. Everyone should make sure that they are well represented in union meetings ;
   A B
   otherwise , management could become too powerful.
   C D

6. The employment agency , too busy to return the telephone calls from prospective
   A B
   clients , are harming business opportunities.
   C D

7. The supervisory staff are making decisions based on scheduling , but all employees
   A B C
   want to ensure quality control.
   D

8. Because the price of cars has risen dramatically ____________ most people
   A
   keep their cars longer ____________ to save capital expenditures.
   B C D

9. The department's manager heard that a merger was possible ____________ but he
   A B
   decided to keep the news quiet.
   C D

10. The manager of the department believed that her employee's were excellent , but she
    A B
    decided that no raises could be given ____________ because the price of stocks was falling.
    C D

11. The detailed report from the audit ____________ of the department gave good advise
A B
about how to restructure , so we are all ready to do so.
C D

12. When my boss and I looked at the books , we found these problems ; lost invoices,
A B C
unpaid bills , and late payments.
D

13. The most dedicated staff members are accepted for the on-site training sessions
A B
because : they are responsive to criticism, represent the company's future, and strive
C D
for improvements.

14. Despite her assurances to the contrary , there is still three unanswered questions : who
A B C
will make the payments, when will these payments occur, and why is there a delay?
D

15. The reputation of many companies often depend on one employee who represents
A B C D
that company.

16. Either my monthly activity report or my year - end report are due today , but my
A B C
computer is broken ; therefore, I need to use yours.
D

17. Today's American manpower , according to many foreign governments, suffers
A B C D
from lack of discipline.

18. Rates are increasing next year because : fuel, maintenance, and insurance are
A B C
all higher than last year.
D

19. Many colleges have long-standing football rivalries , one of the most famous ones
A B
is between KU and KSU (two universities in Kansas).
C D

20. Everyone who wants to enroll in the business school should do so before June
A B
if they can to ensure getting the best classes.
C D

21. Because John wanted high visibility for his two business , he paid top dollar
A B
____________ and spent long hours looking for appropriate cites.
C D

22. Many people apply for jobs at Apex , however , only a few are accepted.
A B C D

23. Because most cars break down <u>occasionally</u> <u>,</u> all drivers should know how to change
A B
a flat tire <u>,</u> and how to signal for <u>assistance.</u>
C D

24. Arriving on time, working <u>diligently,</u> and closing the office securely <u>—</u> everyone
A B
<u>needs</u> to know that <u>they are</u> responsible for these job duties.
C D

25. Mark McGwire not only hit the ball <u>further</u> <u>than</u> other players, but also he hit
A B
more dingers than other players <u>who</u> hit <u>fewer</u> homers.
C D

LETTER FORMATS

Three common types of letter formats include **full block** (Figure 1), **full block with subject line** (Figure 2), and **simplified** (Figure 3). Two popular and professional formats used in business are full block and full block with subject line. With both formats, you type all information at the left margin without indenting paragraphs, the date, the complimentary close, or signature. The full block with subject line differs only with the inclusion of a subject line.

Another option is the simplified format. This type of letter layout is similar to the full block format in that all text is typed margin left. The two significant omissions include no salutation ("Dear _____:") and no complimentary close ("Sincerely,"). Omitting a salutation is useful in the following instances:

- You do not know your reader's name (NOTE: Avoid the trite salutation, "To Whom It May Concern:").
- You are writing to someone with a non-gender specific name (Jesse, Terry, Stacy, Chris, etc.) and you do not know whether to use "Mr.," "Mrs.," or "Ms."

The Administrative Management Society (AMS) suggests that if you omit the salutation, you also should omit the complimentary close. Some people feel that omitting the salutation and the complimentary close will make the letter cold and unfriendly. However, the AMS says that if your letter is warm and friendly, these omissions will not be missed. More importantly, if your letter's content is negative, beginning with "Dear" and ending with "Sincerely" will not improve the letter's tone or your reader's attitude toward your comments. The simplified format includes a subject line to aid the letter's clarity.

FIGURE 1 Full Block Format

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

1 to 1½ in margins on all sides of the letter

June 6, 2014

Two to four spaces above and below the date

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Dear Mr. McGraw:

Two to four spaces above and below the salutation

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Single space within the paragraphs.

Double space between the paragraphs.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28^{th} of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Two spaces before "Sincerely"

Harvey Haddix

Four spaces between "Sincerely" and the typed signature

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

FIGURE 2 Full Block Format with Subject Line

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

Dear Mr. McGraw:

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

FIGURE 3 Simplified Format Omitting "Dear . . ." and "Sincerely"

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

TEXT CREDIT

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 1 — Jobs by CareerBuilding App. Courtesy CareerBuilding. © vgstudio / Shutterstock

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Yuri Arcurs / Shutterstock
© Steven and Sharon Gerson
© vgstudio / Shutterstock

REFERENCES

Bloch, Janel M. "Online Job Searching: Clicking Your Way to Employment." *Intercom* Sep./Oct. 2003: 11–14. Print.

Brogan, Chris. "Write Your LinkedIn Profile for Your Future." *Chris Brogan.com*. 9 Aug. 2008. Web. 16 Mar. 2011.

CareerBuilder. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

Dikel, Margaret F. "The Online Job Application: Preparing Your Resume for the Internet." 1999. Web. Sep. 1999.

Dixson, Kirsten. "Crafting an E-mail Resume." *BusinessWeek Online.* 13 Nov. 2001. Web. 22 Mar. 2011.

Doyle, Alison. "LinkedIn Profile: Use Your LinkedIn Profile as a Resume." About.Com. 2011. Web. 22 Mar. 2011.

Hartman, Peter J. "You Got the Interview. Now Get the Job!" *Intercom* Sep./Oct. 2003: 23–25. Print.

Isaacs, Kim. "Resume Critique Checklist." *MonsterTRAK Career Advice Archives*. 2012. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

Kallick, Rob. "Research Pays Off During Interview." *The Kansas City Star,* March 23, 2003: D1. Print.

Kendall, Pat. "Electronic Resumes." 9 Dec. 2003. Web. 22 Mar. 2011.

LinkedIn. 2011. Web. 22 Mar. 2011.

Mathews, Whitney. *LinkedIn*. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

Nale, Mike. "10 Things That Make Up a Good Video Resume." *ere.net*. 8 Feb. 2008. Web. 20 Jul. 2009.

Ralston, Steven M., *et al*. "Helping Interviewees Tell Their Stories." *Business Communication Quarterly* 66 (Sep. 2003): 8–22. Print.

"Resume Guidelines." *Career Services Center.* Overland Park, KS: Johnson County Community College, 2003. Print.

Schawbel, Dan. "7 Secrets to Getting Your Next Job Using Social Media." *Mashable*. 5 Jan. 2009. Web. 20 Jul. 2009.

Schawbel, Dan. "10 iPhone Apps to Manage Your Job Search." *Mashable*. 26 Mar. 2009. Web. 25 Feb. 2012.

"SelectMinds Survey: 72% of Companies Use Social Media to Recruit Candidates." *SelectMinds*. 2012. Web. 26 Feb. 2012.

"72% of Employers Use Social Networking Sites to Research Job Candidates." *CareerBuilder.com.in.* 2010. Web. 27 Feb. 2012.

Silverman, Rachel Emma. "No More Resumes, Say Some Firms." *The Wall Street Journal*. 25 Jan. 2012. Web. 25 Jan. 2012.

Stafford, Diane. "Show Up Armed with Answers." *The Kansas City Star.* 3 Aug. 2003: L1. Print.

Stafford, Diane. "LinkedIn: a must-have tool for job hunters." *Kansas City Star.* March 13, 2010. Print.

Vogt, Peter. "Your Resume's Look Is as Important as Its Content." *MonsterTRAK Career Advice Archives*. 19 Mar. 2009. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

"Writing: A Powerful Message from State Government." *Report of the National Commission on Writing*. College Board, 2005. Print.

This page intentionally left blank

Document Design

Document Design

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, Roger Traver relies on meeting minutes to record information for his company.

DesignGlobal Incorporated (DGI), an engineering consulting company, holds monthly meetings at the Carriage Club, a privately owned banquet facility. To communicate to its 3,750 employees located internationally, these meetings are simulcast through videoconferences. Roger Traver, CEO of DGI, invites speakers to make presentations related to news of interest to his employees. Last month, Roger invited George Smith, a university chancellor, to speak about the connection between industry and academia. George hopes to attract more professionals, such as the engineers at DGI, to mentor students.

Figure 1 shows you the meeting minutes taken at the monthly meeting where George Smith spoke. These minutes are clear, answering reporter's questions such as who, what, when, where, why, and how. The minutes also are concise in terms of word usage and sentence length. However, the minutes are unsuccessful technical communication. The wall-to-wall words not only are visually unappealing but also disallow easy access to information. An improved document design would help readers understand the meeting minutes. This flawed document design causes readability challenges.

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Understand the importance of document design in technical communication
- Understand that effective layout makes text accessible, highlights damages and dangers, reveals corporate identity, and saves time and money
- Know that effective document design provides readers visual organization, order, access, and variety
- Break text into smaller chunks of information to help create a readable document
- Help your audience access information through highlighting techniques including white space, bullets, numbering, underlining, and text boxes
- Vary the appearance of a document by using columns, varying gutter widths, and printing in portrait or landscape orientation
- Prioritize technical information by ordering ideas
- Use headings and talking headings effectively
- Add variety to technical communication through effective layout
- Evaluate document design with the checklist

FIGURE 1 Flawed Document Design

MINUTES

The meeting at the Carriage Club was attended by thirty members and guests. After the dinner, Roger Traver introduced the guest speaker, George Smith, university chancellor, and noted his accomplishments and experiences prior to education—U.S. Navy commander, Oak Ridge Laboratory researcher, and politician. Dr. Smith's talk, "Industry and Education Collaboration," was very interesting and included a history of special projects enjoyed by both academics and corporate heads. Dr. Smith suggested that we engineers could work with education to (1) provide training seminars, (2) help in urban development, and (3) provide intern opportunities. Recent industry–education collaborations include training seminars in computers, fiber optics, and human resource options. The chancellor's primary thrust was a request for $100,000 in financial aid for urban development. He said money had already been donated from three sources: a large realty firm, Capital Homes, had given $20,000; a philanthropic group, We Care, had donated a matching $20,000; Dr. Smith's university gave a matching $20,000. The remaining $40,000, Dr. Smith hoped, would come from industry donations. Finally, the chancellor noted that industry could help itself, as well as the community, by providing internships for university undergraduate majors. These internships could either be semester- or year-long arrangements, whereby students would work for minimum wage to learn more about the day-to-day aspects of their chosen fields. The chancellor said that these internships would not only increase the students' theoretical knowledge of engineering by giving them hands-on experience but also make them better future employees for the host engineering companies. Everyone would benefit. Dr. Smith noted that the students would receive a grade and credit for their work. After the speech, our VP introduced new business, calling for nominations for next year's officers; gave us the agenda for our next meeting; and adjourned the meeting.

Importance of Document Design

In technical communication, words are not your only concern. What you write is important, but how the text looks on the page is equally important. If you give your readers excessively long paragraphs, or pages full of wall-to-wall words, you have made a mistake. Ugly blocks of unappealing text negatively impact readability. In contrast, effective technical communication allows readers rapid access to the information, highlights important information, and graphically expresses your company's identity.

The Technical Communication Context

Why do people read correspondence? Although individuals read poetry, short stories, novels, and drama for enjoyment, few people read memos, letters, reports, or instructions for fun. They read these types of technical communication for information about a product or service. They read this correspondence while they talk on the telephone, commute to work, or walk to meetings.

Given these contexts, readers want information quickly, information they can understand at a glance. Reading word after word, paragraph after paragraph takes time and effort, which most readers cannot spare. Therefore, if your technical communication is visually unappealing, your audience might not even read your words. Readers will either give up before they have begun or be unable to remember what they have read. You cannot assume they will labor over your text to uncover its worth. Good technical communication allows readers rapid access to information.

Damages and Dangers

If your intended readers fail to read your text because it is visually inaccessible, imagine the possible repercussions. They could damage equipment by not recognizing important information that you have buried in dense blocks of text. The readers could give up on the text and call your company's toll-free hotline or send an e-mail message for assistance. This wastes your readers' and your coworkers' time and energy. Worse, your readers might hurt themselves and sue your company for failing to highlight potential dangers in a user manual.

Corporate Identity

Your document—whether a memo, letter, report, instruction, Web site, or brochure—is a visual representation of your company, graphically expressing your company's identity. It might be the only way you meet your clients. If your text is unappealing, that is the corporate image your company conveys to the customer. If your text is not reader-friendly, that is how your company will appear to your client. Visually unappealing and inaccessible correspondence can negatively affect your company's sales and reputation. In today's competitive workplace, any leverage you can provide your company is a plus. Document design is one way to appeal to a client.

Time and Money

Successful technical communication involves the audience. Your goal is to help the readers understand the organization of your text, recognize its order, and access information at a glance. You also want to use varied types of communication, including graphics, for readers who absorb information better visually, rather than through words. What's the payoff? Studies tell us that effective document design saves money and time. One international customs department, after revising the design of its lost-baggage forms, reduced its error rate by over 50 percent. When a utilities company changed the look of its billing statements, customers asked fewer questions, saving the company approximately $250,000 per year. The U.S. Department of Commerce, Office of Consumer Affairs, reported that when several companies improved their documents' visual appeal, the companies increased business and reduced customer complaints (Schriver 250–251). Document design isn't a costly frill. Effective document design is good for your company's business.

To clarify how important document design is, look at the inaccessible meeting minutes in this chapter's opening "Communication at Work" scenario (see Figure 1). The meeting minutes are neither clear nor concise. You are given so much data in such an unappealing format that your first response upon seeing the correspondence probably is to say, "I'm not going to read that."

How can you make these minutes more inviting? How can you break up the wall-to-wall words and make key points more accessible? To achieve effective document design, you should provide your readers visual

- Organization
- Order
- Access
- Variety

Organization

The easiest way to organize your document's design is to break text into smaller chunks of information, a technique called *chunking*. When you use chunking to separate blocks of text, you help your readers understand the overall organization of your correspondence. They can see which topics go together and which are distinct.

Chunking to organize your text is accomplished by using any of the following techniques:

- *White space* (horizontal spacing between paragraphs, created by double- or triple-spacing)
- *Rules* (horizontal lines typed across the page to separate units of information)
- *Section dividers and tabs* (used in longer reports to create smaller units)
- *Headings and talking headings*

Headings and Talking Headings

To improve your page layout and make content accessible, use headings and talking headings. Headings—words or phrases such as "Introduction," "Discussion," "Conclusion," "Problems with Employees," or "Background Information"—highlight the content in a particular section of a document. When you begin a new section, you should use a new heading. In addition, use subheadings if you have a long section under one heading. This will help you break up a topic into smaller, more readable units of text.

Talking headings, in contrast, are more informative than headings. A heading helps your readers navigate the text by guiding them to key parts of a document. However, headings such as "Introduction," "Discussion," and "Conclusion," do not tell the readers what content is included in the section. Talking headings, such as "Human Resources Committee Reviews 2014 Benefits Packages," informatively clarify the content that follows.

One way to create a talking heading is to use a subject (someone or something performing the action), a verb (the action), and an object (something acted upon).

◀ EXAMPLE

Human Resources Committee Reviews 2014 Benefits Packages

Subject — Verb — Object

Another way to create talking headings is to use informative phrases, such as "Problems Leading to Employee Dissatisfaction," "Uses of Company Cars for Personal Errands," and "Cost Analysis of Technology Options for the Accounting Department."

Table 1 provides examples of informative talking headings.

TABLE 1 Talking Headings

Sentences Used as Talking Heads	Phrases Used as Talking Heads
Rude Customer Service Leads to Sales Losses	Budget Increases to be Frozen until 2014
Accounting Department Requests Feedback on Benefits Package	Outsourced Workers Leading to Corporate Layoffs
Corporate Profit Sharing Decreases to 27 Percent	Harlan Cisneros—New Departmental Supervisor Announced
Parking Lot Congestion Angers Employees	EEOC: Questions about Company Hiring Practices

Notice how using headings, white space, and horizontal rules improves the document design of the meeting minutes in Figure 2.

Order

Once a wall of unbroken words has been separated through chunking to help the reader understand the text's organization, the next thing a reader wants from your text is a sense of order. What's most important on the page? What's less important? What's least important? You can help your audience prioritize information by ordering—or *queuing*—ideas. The primary way to accomplish this goal is through a hierarchy of headings set apart from each other through various techniques.

- **Typeface.** There are many different *typefaces* (or *fonts*), including Times New Roman, Courier, Verdana, Helvetica, Arial, Bauhaus 93, Comic Sans MS, *Lucida Calligraphy*, **Cooper Black,** and **STENCIL**. Whichever typeface you choose, it will either be a *serif* or *sans serif* typeface. Serif type has "feet," or decorative strokes, at the edges of each letter. This typeface is commonly used in text because it is easy to read, allowing the reader's eyes to glide across the page.

  Serif ← decorative feet

  Sans Serif is a block typeface that omits the feet or decorative lines. This typeface is best used for headings.

  Sans Serif ← no decorative feet

  Though you have many font typefaces to choose from, all are not appropriate for every technical document. Times New Roman, Arial, and Calibri are best to use for letters, memos, e-mail, reports, resumes, and proposals, because these font types are most professional looking and are easiest to read. Arial and Verdana are considered best for Web sites since these fonts are very readable online. If you want to use "designer fonts," limit them to brochures and sales letters, for example.

DOT.COM UPDATES

To access hundreds of designer fonts, check out the following link: http://flamingtext.com/.

FIGURE 2 Document Design to Organize the Information

MINUTES

The meeting at the Carriage Club was attended by 30 members and guests. After the dinner, Roger Traver introduced the guest speaker, George Smith, university chancellor, and noted his accomplishments and experiences prior to education—U.S. Navy commander, Oak Ridge Laboratory researcher, and politician. Dr. Smith's talk "Industry and Education Collaboration" was very interesting and included a history of special projects enjoyed by both academics and corporate heads. Dr. Smith suggested that we engineers could work with education to accomplish three goals.

Training Seminars

Recent industry–education collaborations include training seminars in computers, fiber optics, and human resource options.

Urban Development

The chancellor's primary thrust was a request for $100,000 in financial aid for urban development. He said money had already been donated from three sources: a large realty firm, Capital Homes, had given $20,000; a philanthropic group, We Care, had donated a matching $20,000; Dr. Smith's university gave a matching $20,000. The remaining $40,000, Dr. Smith hoped, would come from industry donations.

Internships

The chancellor noted that industry could help itself, as well as the community, by providing internships for university undergraduate majors. These internships could either be semester- or year-long arrangements, whereby students would work for minimum wage to learn more about the day-to-day aspects of their chosen fields. The chancellor said that these internships would not only increase the students' theoretical knowledge of engineering by giving them hands-on experience but also make them better future employees for the host engineering companies. Everyone would benefit. Dr. Smith noted that the students would receive a grade and credit for their work.

Conclusion

After the speech, our VP introduced new business, calling for nominations for next year's officers; gave us the agenda for our next meeting; and adjourned the meeting.

First-level heading

Horizontal rule

Second-level heading

- **Type size.** Another way of queuing for your readers is through the size of your type. A primary, first-level heading should be larger than subsequent, less important headings: second level, third level, and so forth. For example, a first-level heading could be in 18-point type. The second-level heading would then be set in 16-point type, the third-level heading in 14-point type, and the fourth-level heading in 12-point type.

Figure 3 shows examples of different typefaces and type sizes.

FIGURE 3 Examples of Typefaces and Type Sizes

Sans Serif Typefaces

Avant Garde 12 point
Avant Garde 14 point
Avant Garde 18 point
Futura 12 point
Futura 14 point
Futura 18 point
Helvetica 12 point
Helvetica 14 point
Helvetica 18 point

Serif Typefaces

Courier 12 point
Courier 14 point
Courier 18 point
Bookman 12 point
Bookman 14 point
Bookman 18 point
Goudy 12 point
Goudy 14 point
Goudy 18 point

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about typography (links and news about font selection), check out the following link: http://www.microsoft.com/typography/default.mspx

- **Density.** The *weight* of the type also prioritizes your text. Type *density* is created by boldfacing words.
- **Spacing.** Another queuing technique to help your readers order their thoughts is the amount of horizontal space used after each heading. You can emphasize headings with white space.
- **Position.** Your headings can be centered, aligned with the left margin, indented, or outdented (*hung heads*). No one approach is more valuable or more correct than another. The key is consistency. If you center your first-level heading, for example, and then place subsequent heads at the left margin, this should be your model for all chapters or sections of that report.

Figure 4 shows an *outdented* first-level heading with *indented* subsequent headings. Figure 5 shows a *centered* heading with subsequent headings aligned with the left margin.

FIGURE 4 Outdented and Indented Headings

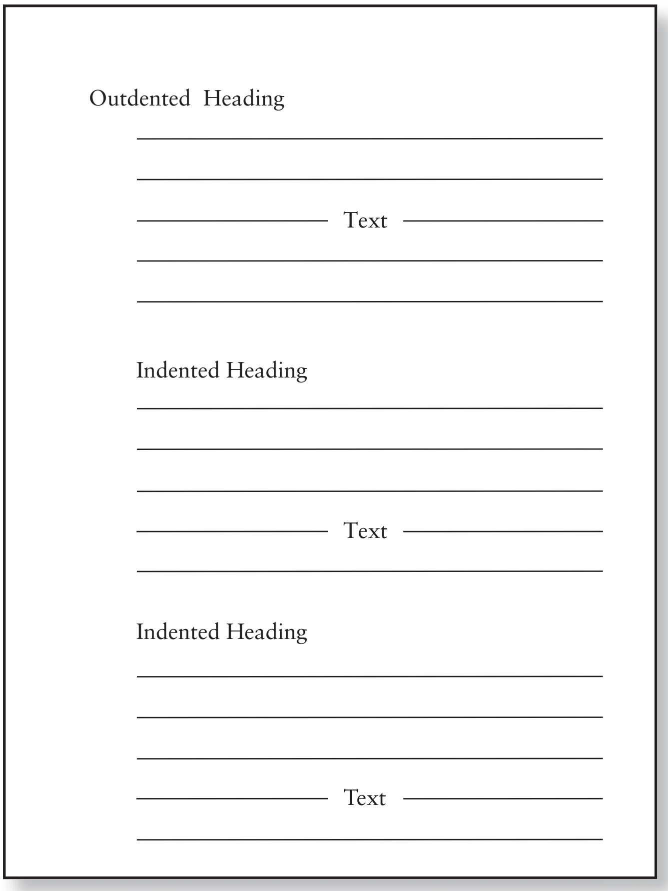


FIGURE 5 Centered and Left-margin Aligned Headings

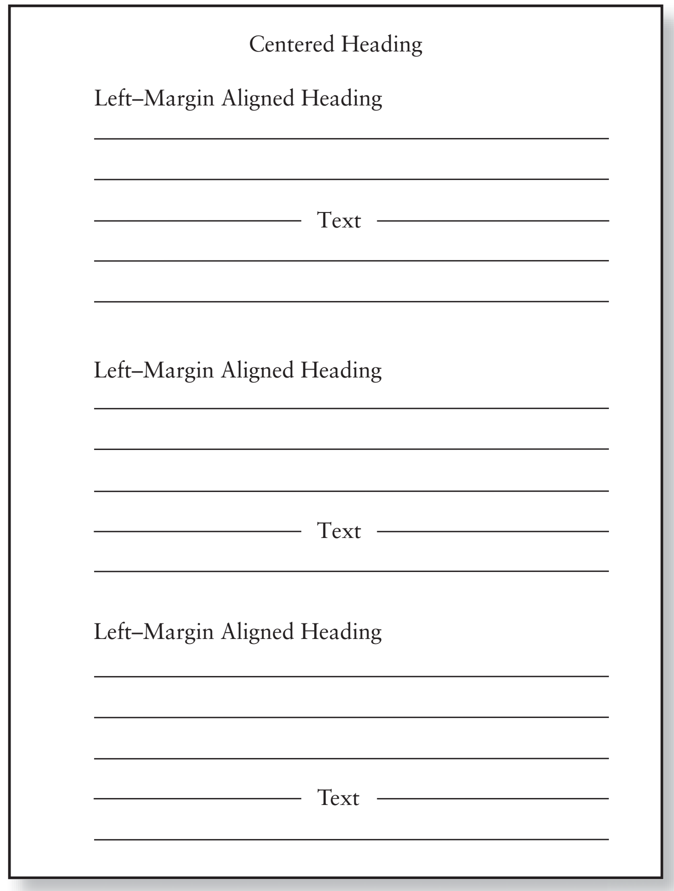


Figure 6 reformats the meeting minutes seen in Figure 1 and uses queuing to order the hierarchy of ideas. The outdented first-level heading is set in a 12-point bold sans serif typeface, all caps. The second-level heading is set in a 10-point bold serif typeface and is separated from the preceding text by horizontal white space. The third-level heading is set in a 10-point bold serif typeface and is separated from the preceding text by double-spacing. It is also set on the same line as the following text. Hierarchical heading levels shown in Figure 6 allow the readers to visualize the order of information to see clearly how the writer has prioritized text.

FIGURE 6 Document Design Using a Hierarchy of Heading Levels to Order the Information

This hanging head is set in all caps and a sans serif font.

Create a hierarchy of headings by changing font size and style.

Headings create accessible content.

MINUTES

The meeting at the Carriage Club was attended by 30 members and guests. After the dinner, Roger Traver introduced the guest speaker, George Smith, university chancellor, and noted his accomplishments and experiences prior to education—U.S. Navy commander, Oak Ridge Laboratory researcher, and politician. Dr. Smith's talk, "Industry and Education Collaboration," was very interesting and included a history of special projects enjoyed by both academics and corporate heads. Dr. Smith suggested that we engineers could work with education to accomplish three goals.

Urban Development

The chancellor's primary thrust was a request for $100,000 in financial aid for urban development. He said money had already been donated from three sources: a large realty firm, Capital Homes, had given $20,000; a philanthropic group, We Care, had donated a matching $20,000; Dr. Smith's university gave a matching $20,000. The remaining $40,000, Dr. Smith hoped, would come from industry donations.

Internships

The chancellor noted that industry could help itself, as well as the community, by providing internships for university undergraduate majors. These internships could either be semester- or year-long arrangements, whereby students would work for minimum wage to learn more about the day-to-day aspects of their chosen fields. The chancellor said that these internships would not only increase the students' theoretical knowledge of engineering by giving them hands-on experience but also make them better future employees for the host engineering companies. Everyone would benefit. Dr. Smith noted that the students would receive a grade and credit for their work.

Training Seminars. Recent industry–education collaborations include training seminars in computers, fiber optics, and human resource options.

Conclusion

After the speech, our VP introduced new business, calling for nominations for next year's officers, gave us the agenda for our next meeting, and adjourned the meeting.

Access

Chunking helps the reader see which ideas go together, and a hierarchy of headings helps the reader understand the relative importance of each unit of information. Nonetheless, the document design in Figure 6 needs improvement. The reader still must read every word carefully to see the key points within each chunk of text. Readers are not that generous with their time. As the writer, you should make your reader's task easier.

A third way to assist your audience is by helping them *access* information rapidly—at a glance. You can use any of the following highlighting techniques to help the readers filter extraneous or tangential information and focus on key ideas.

- **White space.** In addition to horizontal space, created by double- or triple-spacing, you also can create *vertical space* by indenting. This vertical white space breaks up the monotony of wall-to-wall words and gives your readers breathing room. White space invites your readers into the text and helps the audience focus on the indented points you want to emphasize.
- **Bullets.** Bullets, used to emphasize items within an indented list, are created by using asterisks (*), hyphens (-), a lowercase *o,* degree signs (°), typographic symbols (■, ❑, •, or ♦), or iconic webdings and wingdings (☞, ☺, or ✓).
- **Numbering.** *Enumeration* creates itemized lists that can show sequence or importance and allow for easy reference.
- **Boldface.** Boldface text emphasizes a key word or phrase.
- **All caps.** The technique of capitalizing text is an excellent way to highlight a WARNING, DANGER, CAUTION, or NOTE. However, capitalizing other types of information is not suggested because reading lowercase words is easier for your audience. Capitalized text creates a block of letters in which individual letters aren't easily distinguished from each other. Avoid using all caps in correspondence since typing in all caps can create a negative tone. Readers might think you are yelling at them or "flaming."
- **Underlining.** Underlining should be used cautiously. If you underline too frequently, none of your information will be emphatic. One underlined word or phrase will call attention to itself and achieve reader access. Several underlined words or phrases will overwhelm your readers.
- **Italics.** Italics and underlining are used similarly as highlighting techniques.
- **Text boxes.** Place key points in a text box for emphasis. You can also italicize and use all caps within the text box, as shown in the example below.

◀ **EXAMPLE**

NOTE: Only place glass containers in the *red recycle bins.*

Use *green bins* for paper and plastic.

- **Fills.** You can further highlight text boxes through fills (color, gradients, and shadings).
- **Inverse type.** You can help readers access information by using inverse type—printing white on black—versus the usual black on white.
- **Color.** Another way to make key words and phrases leap off the page is to color them. *Danger* would be red, for example, *Warning* orange, and *Caution* yellow. You can also use color to help a reader access the first-level heading, a header, or a footer. (Headers contain information placed along the top margin of text; footers contain information placed along the bottom margin of text.) For instance, if your text is typed in a black font, then headings typed in a blue font would stand out more effectively. However, as with all highlighting techniques, a little bit goes a long way. Do not overuse color. Do not type several headings in different colors. Doing so could produce a very unprofessional impression.

EXAMPLE ▼

Effective Use of Colored Headings

Committee Action
The Budget and Personnel Committee will vote to approve the audit report at the July meeting.

Recommendation
The committee will recommend that a proposal be submitted to improve roadway construction.

Staff Contacts
Mel Henderson
Sean Thomson

EXAMPLE ▼

Ineffective Use of Colored Headings

Committee Action
The Budget and Personnel Committee will vote to approve the audit report at the July meeting.

Recommendation
The committee will recommend that a proposal be submitted to improve roadway construction.

Staff Contacts
Mel Henderson
Sean Thomson

All colors are not equal in visual value. Generally, dark colored fonts provide the most contrast against light colored backgrounds, or vice versa. For example, a black font on a white background (or a white font on a black background) creates optimum contrast. On the other hand, a light-colored font on a light background does not improve access.

EXAMPLE ►

Good Contrast Helps Improve Access

Committee Action
The Budget and Personnel Committee will vote to approve the audit report at the July meeting.

Recommendation
The committee will recommend that a proposal be submitted to improve roadway construction.

Staff Contacts
Mel Henderson
Sean Thomson

Inverse print (white on black) creates optimum contrast

EXAMPLE ►

A Lack of Contrast Hurts Access

Committee Action
The Budget and Personnel Committee will vote to approve the audit report at the July meeting.

Recommendation
The committee will recommend that a proposal be submitted to improve roadway construction.

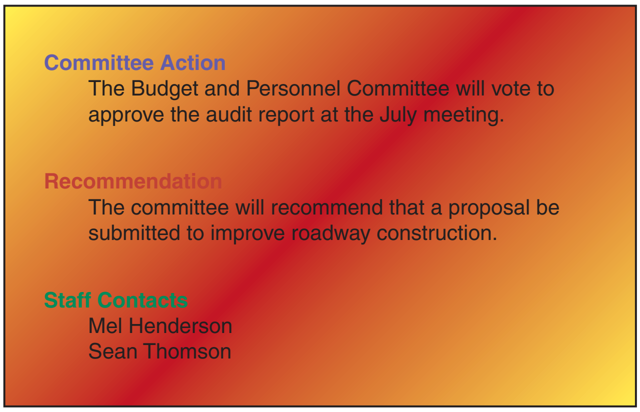
Staff Contacts
Mel Henderson
Sean Thomson

Light-colored text on a light-colored background harms readability.

You also should use colors tastefully. Avoid garish color combinations in graphics or backgrounds (red and orange, pink and green, or purple and yellow, and so forth). Colors that clash will distract the reader more than aid access.

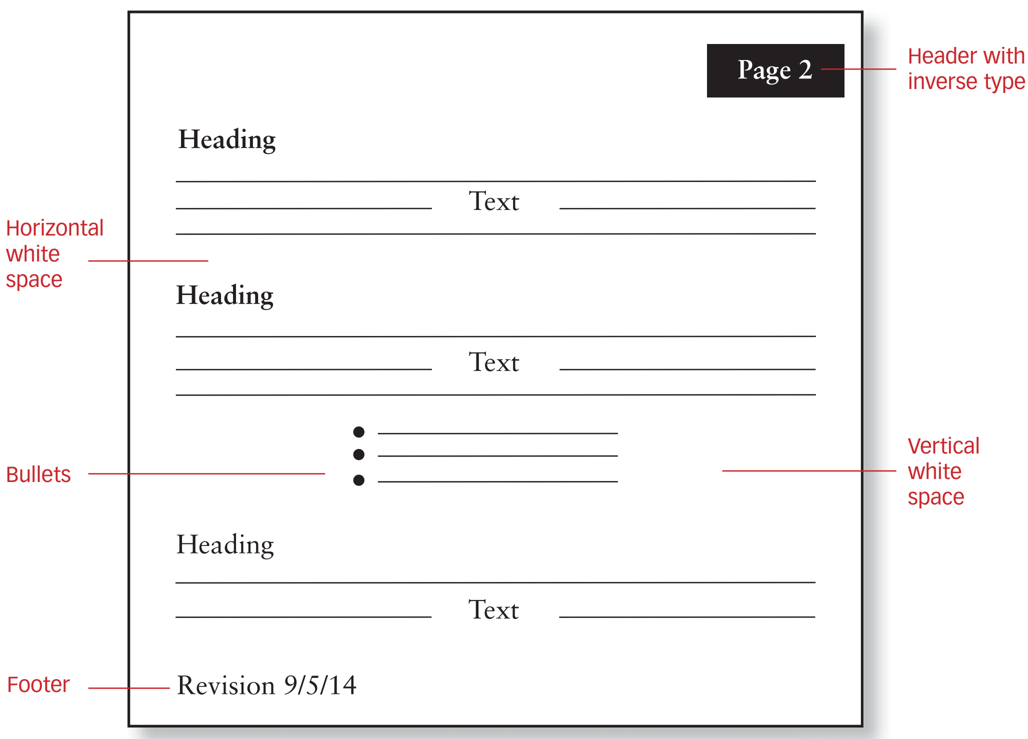
Clashing Color Combinations that Hurt Access

EXAMPLE



Here is a very important consideration: When it comes to using highlighting techniques, *more is not better.* A few highlighting techniques help your readers filter background data and focus on key points. Too many highlighting techniques are a distraction and clutter the document design. Be careful not to overdo a good thing. Figure 7 gives examples of several highlighting methods. Notice how Figure 8 uses highlighting techniques to help the readers access information in the meeting minutes.

FIGURE 7 Highlighting Techniques for Access



Variety

Each of the document designs in Figures 2, 6, and 8 uses one column and is printed vertically on a traditional 8½ × 11-inch page (a type of printing called portrait; see Figure 9).

FIGURE 8 Document Design Using Highlighting Techniques to Help Readers Access Key Ideas

MINUTES The meeting at the Carriage Club was attended by 30 members and guests. After the dinner, Roger Traver introduced the guest speaker, George Smith, university chancellor, and noted his accomplishments and experiences prior to education:

Bulletized list

- U.S. Navy commander
- Oak Ridge Laboratory researcher
- Politician

Dr. Smith's talk, "Industry and Education Collaboration," was very interesting and included a history of special projects enjoyed by both academics and corporate heads. Dr. Smith suggested that we engineers could work with education to accomplish three goals.

Urban Development
The chancellor's primary thrust was a request for $100,000 in financial aid for urban development. He said money had already been donated from three sources:

Numbered list

1. A large realty firm, Capital Homes, had given $20,000.
2. A philanthropic group, We Care, had donated a matching $20,000.
3. Dr. Smith's university also gave $20,000.

The remaining $40,000 would come from industry.

Internships
The chancellor noted that industry could help itself, as well as the community, by providing internships for university undergraduate majors:

1. Semester-long internships
2. Year-long internships

Students would work for minimum wage to learn more about the day-to-day aspects of their chosen fields. The chancellor said that these internships would not only increase the students' theoretical knowledge of engineering by giving them hands-on experience but also make them better future employees for the host engineering companies. <u>Everyone would benefit.</u> Dr. Smith noted that the students would receive a grade and credit for their work.

Underlining

Training Seminars. Recent industry–education collaborations include training seminars in computers, fiber optics, and human resource options.

Conclusion
After the speech, our VP introduced new business, calling for nominations for next year's officers, gave us the agenda for our next meeting, and adjourned the meeting.

This is not your only option. Your reader might profit from more variety. For example, you might want to use smaller or larger paper; vary the weight of your paper (for example, 10-pound, 12-pound, or heavier card stock), or even print your text on colored paper.

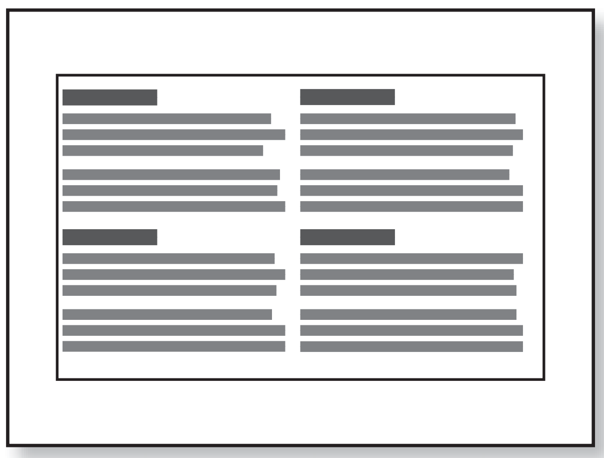
More important, you can vary the document design as follows:

- **Choose a different page orientation.** Rather than use portrait orientation (8½ × 11-inch), you could choose landscape orientation (11 × 8½-inch).
- **Use more columns.** Provide your reader two to five columns of text.
- **Vary gutter width.** Columns of text are separated by vertical white space called the gutter.
- **Use ragged-right margins.** Some text is fully justified (both right and left margins are aligned). Once this was considered professional, giving the text a clean look. Now, however, studies confirm that right-margin-justified text is harder for the audience to read. It's too rigid. In contrast, *ragged-right* type (the right margin is not justified) is easier to read and more pleasing to the eye. You can use this method to vary page layout.

Figure 10 shows how you can use columns, landscape orientation, and ragged-right margins to vary your document design.

FIGURE 9 Portrait Orientation with One Column Fully Justified

FIGURE 10 Landscape Orientation with Two Columns and Ragged-Right Margins



Although you can vary your document design through page orientation and columns, the audience is still confronted by words, words, and more words. The majority of readers do not want to wade through text. Luckily, words are not your only means of communication. You can reach a larger audience with different learning styles by varying your method of communication. Graphics are an excellent alternative. Many people are more comfortable grasping information visually than verbally. Although it's a cliché, a picture is often worth a thousand words.

To clarify our point about the value of variety, see Figure 11, which adds a graphic to the meeting minutes.

FIGURE 11 Document Design Using a Pie Chart to Add Variety

Bulleted list for accessibility

MINUTES The meeting at the Carriage Club was attended by 30 members and guests. After the dinner, Roger Traver introduced the guest speaker, George Smith, university chancellor, and noted his accomplishments and experiences prior to education:

- U.S. Navy commander
- Oak Ridge Laboratory researcher
- Politician

Dr. Smith's talk, "Industry and Education Collaboration," was very interesting and included a history of special projects enjoyed by both academics and corporate heads. Dr. Smith suggested that we engineers could work with education to accomplish three goals.

Urban Development
The chancellor's primary thrust was a request for $100,000 in financial aid for urban development. He said money had already been donated from three sources, but business and industry can still help significantly. The following pie chart clarifies what money has been encumbered and how industry donations are still needed.

Internships
The chancellor noted that industry could help itself, as well as the community, by providing internships for university undergraduate majors:

1. Semester-long internships
2. Year-long internships

Students would work for minimum wage to learn more about the day-to-day aspects of their chosen fields. The chancellor said that these internships would not only increase the students' theoretical knowledge of engineering by giving them hands-on experience but also make them

Graphic for visual appeal and accessible data

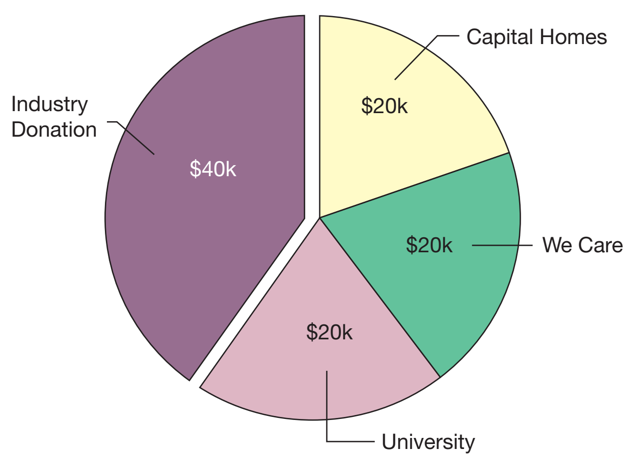


Figure 1 Donations

better future employees for the host engineering companies. Everyone would benefit. Dr. Smith noted that the students would receive a grade and credit for their work.

(Continued)

FIGURE 11 *(Continued)*

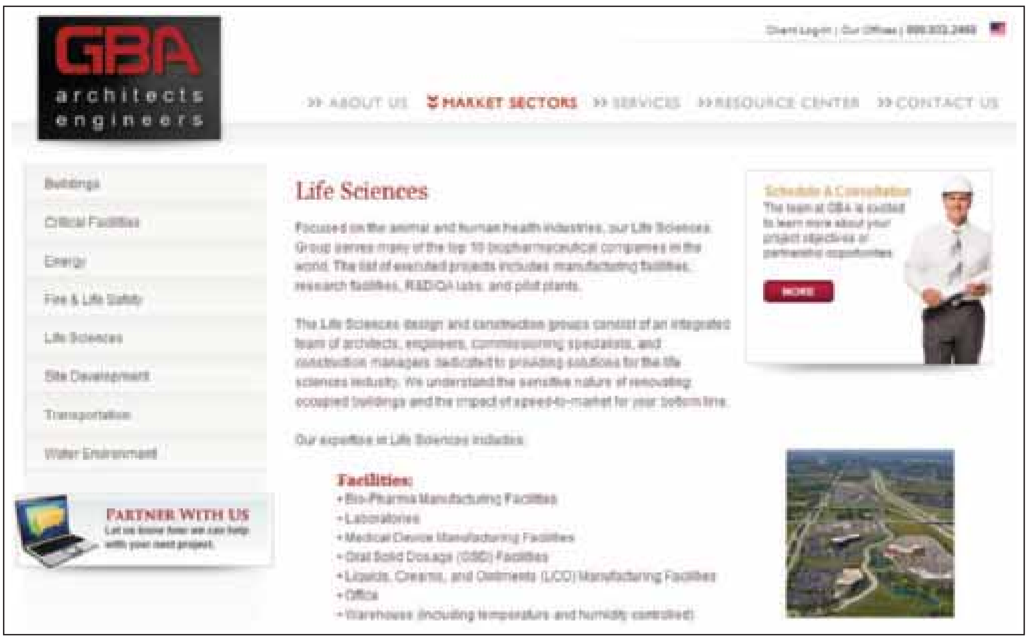
Training Seminars. Recent industry–education collaborations include training seminars in computers, fiber optics, and human resource options.

Conclusion
After the speech, our VP introduced new business, calling for nominations for next year's officers, gave us the agenda for our next meeting, and adjourned the meeting.

Web Sites Showing Design Elements

Figure 12, a Web page from GBA Architects/Engineers, and Figure 13, a Web page from the Missouri Department of Transportation, show the importance of graphics, white space, bullets, headings, and subheadings to enhance page layout.

FIGURE 12 GBA Architects/Engineers Web Page



Source: Courtesy of GBA

The GBA Web site uses a readable sans-serif font on a white background with red headings to match the color of the company logo. Note the effective use of short paragraphs, bullets, and visual aids to enhance readability.

FIGURE 13 MoDOT Web Page

MoDOT's Web page shows effective design elements including color, graphics, white space, and bullets.

Source: Courtesy of MoDOT

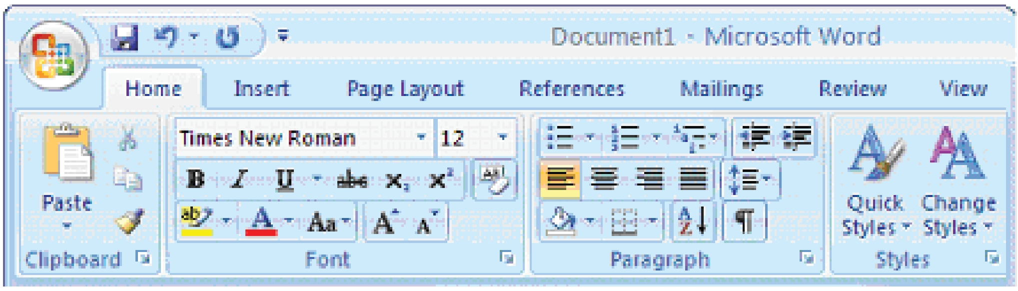
TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Document Design Using Microsoft Word

When it comes to document design, you have a world of options at your fingertips. Not only does your word processing software offer you possibilities to enhance page layout, but also the Internet provides unlimited resources.

Word Processing

In a word processing software program like Microsoft Office Word, you enhance your document's design in many ways. From the **Home** tab ribbon, you can make changes to **Font**, **Paragraphs**, and **Styles**.

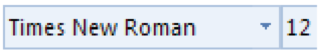


(Continued)

TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

Font Category

- Choose your **FONT TYPE** and **SIZE**



- **Bold face,** *italicize,* and underline the text

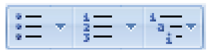
- ~~strikethrough~~, create $_{\text{subscripts}}$ and $^{\text{superscripts}}$

- Highlight the color of text, change the font color, or change the case of selected text to uppercase or lowercase

- Increase or decrease the font size

Paragraph Category

- Create bulleted, numbered, or multilevel lists (as with outlines)



- Decrease or increase an indentation

- Change the margins (ragged right, centered, block right, or full block)

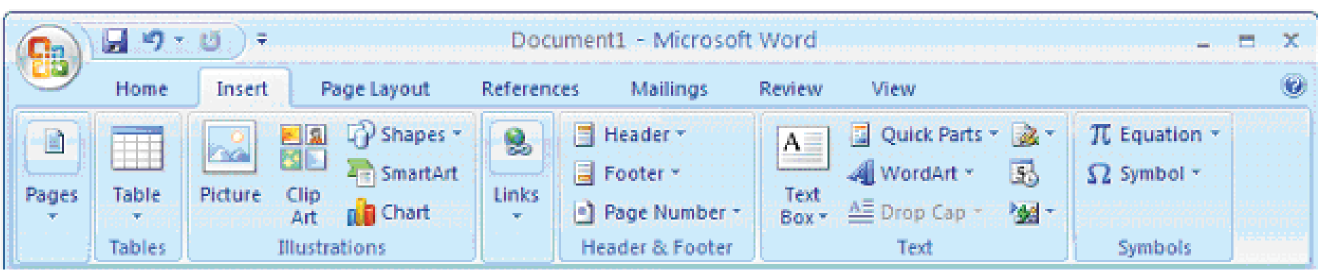
- Change the spacing between lines

- Color background behind selected text, create borders, alphabetize, and show or hide paragraphing

Styles Category

- Format text (Quick Styles) and change colors and fonts throughout a document (Change Styles)

From the **Insert** tab on the ribbon shown below, you can add **Tables, Illustrations, Links, Headers & Footers,** enhance **Text**, and include mathematical **Symbols:**



The **Illustrations** category lets you insert pictures, clip art, and charts (pie charts, bar charts, line charts, etc.). **SmartArt** provides access to more complex charts such as Venn diagrams and organizational charts. The **Shapes** pull down menu lets you insert lines, arrows, flowchart symbols, callouts, and stars and banners.

The **Text** category lets you insert the following:

- 36 different kinds of text boxes including sidebars

> Text boxes can be enhanced further by changing the color of the lines or fill. You also can create shadows, as shown in this example.

- **WordArt**

DOCUMENT DESIGN CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Have you broken up the text in your document into smaller chunks (units of information)?

_____ **2.** Have you added white space to enhance readability of the text?

_____ **3.** Did you use headings or talking headings to improve page layout and make content accessible?

_____ **4.** Did you prioritize information by ordering (queuing) ideas?

_____ **5.** Did you create a hierarchy of headings by relying on different typefaces and sizes, boldface, spacing, and varied positions?

_____ **6.** Have you relied on a variety of highlighting techniques (indented text, bullets, numbers, boldface text, all caps, underlining or italicizing, textboxes, or color) to make content accessible?

_____ **7.** Have you avoided overuse of highlighting techniques?

_____ **8.** Have you added variety to your technical document through landscape versus portrait orientation, columns, margin alignments, or graphics?

_____ **9.** Have you considered using a different weight, size, or color paper?

_____**10.** Have you used color sparingly and avoided overloading the document with excessive variety?

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Breaking your text into smaller chunks of information will help you create a more readable document.
2. When you organize items in a document through use of typeface and type size, your audience can more easily prioritize the information.
3. Your reader should be able to glance at the document and easily pick out the key ideas. Highlighting techniques will help accomplish this goal.
4. Vary the appearance of your document by using columns, varying gutter widths, and printing in portrait or landscape orientation.
5. Your audience will access the content easily if you use white space, bullets, numbering, underlining, and text boxes.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. In teams, reformat the following memo to improve its document design.

Date: November 30, 2014
To: Jan Hunt
From: Tom Langford
Subject: Cleaning Procedures for Manufacturing Walk-in Ovens #98731, #98732, and #98733

The above mentioned ovens need extensive cleaning. To do so, vacuum and wipe all doors, walls, roofs, and floors. All vents and dampers need to be removed, and a tack cloth must be used to remove all loose dust and dirt. Also, all filters need to be replaced.

I am requesting this because loose particles of dust and dirt are blown onto wet parts when placed in the air-circulating ovens to dry. This causes extensive rework. Please perform this procedure twice per week to ensure clean production.

2. In teams, reformat the following summary to improve its document design.

SUMMARY
The City of Waluska wants to provide its community with a safe and reliable water treatment facility. The goal is to protect Waluska's environmental resources and to ensure community values.

To achieve these goals, the city has issued a request for proposal to update the Loon Lake Water Treatment Plant (LLWTP). The city recognizes that meeting its community's water treatment needs requires overcoming numerous challenges. These challenges include managing changing regulations and protection standards, developing financially responsible treatment services, planning land use for community expansion, and upholding community values.

For all of the above reasons, DesignGlobal, Inc. (DGI) Engineering is your best choice. We understand the project scope and recognize your community's needs.

We have worked successfully with your community for a decade, creating feasibility studies for LoonLaketoxic control, developing odor-abatement procedures for your streams and creeks, and assessing your water treatment plant's ability to meet regulatory standards.

DGI personnel are not just engineering experts. We are members of your community. Our dynamic project team has a close working relationship with your community's regulatory agencies. Our Partner in Charge, Julie Schopper, has experience with similar projects worldwide, demonstrated leadership, and the ability to communicate effectively with clients.

DGI offers the City of Waluska an integrated program that addresses all your community's needs. We believe that DGI is your best choice to ensure that your community receives a water treatment plant ready to meet the challenges of the twenty-first century.

3. The following short report is poorly formatted. The text is so dense that readers would have difficulty understanding the content easily. Improve the document's design to aid access. Use highlighting techniques discussed in this chapter to revise the text.

Date: May 18, 2014
To: Martha Collins
From: Richard Davis
Subject: 2014 Switch Port Carriers

Attached are the supplemental 2014 Switch Port Carriers that are required to support this year's growth patterns. As we have discussed in previous phone conversations, the May numbers show a decrease in traffic, but forecasts still suggest increased traffic. Therefore, the ports being placed in the network via these plans will support our future growth except for areas where growth cannot be predicted. Some areas, for example, are too densely populated for forecasting because the company did not hire enough survey personnel to do a thorough job.

Following is an update of our suggested port additions. For Port 12ABR, add 16 ports in Austin. For Port 13RgX, add 27 ports in Houston. For Port 981D, add 35 ports in San Antonio. For Port 720CT, add 18 ports in Dallas. The total port additions will be 96 and cost $3,590,625.

After working long hours on these suggestions, I learned that port additions should be considered mandatory. However, follow-up forecasts are probably needed due to the short time we were provided to do these studies. If you are going to perform these follow-up forecasts, do so before September 1. The survey teams, if you want a successful forecast, need at least three months. Twenty-five team members should be sufficient.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Bring samples of technical communication to class. These could include letters, brochures, fliers, instructions, proposals, or reports. In small groups, assess the document design of each sample. Determine which samples have successful document designs and which samples have poor document designs. Base your decisions on the criteria provided in this chapter: organization, order, access, and variety. Either orally or in writing, share your findings with other teams in the class. Rewrite any samples that you can improve.
2. Read the following headings and make them more accessible by creating a hierarchy using different font sizes and font types:

    Meeting Minutes
    Agenda
    Discussion of Ongoing Projects
    Recommendations
    Pricing
    Cost of Equipment
    Cost of Facilities Update
    Cost of Insurance Benefits
    New Hiring Policies
    Job Requirements
    Employee Credentials
    Licensing
3. Revise the following headings into talking headings by changing them to phrases or complete sentences. To do so, add any information you choose to clarify your content.
    - Computer Problems
    - WiFi Compatibility
    - Biotechnology Advances
    - Accounting Regulations
    - Facilities Update

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. The following two lists need to highlight the information more clearly. But which highlighting technique should you use for each list—bullets or numbers? Explain why you would use bullets versus numbers, or vice versa for both lists.

List 1	List 2
To access your online course, follow these steps:	To choose the right car for your family and business needs, consider these factors:
Turn on the computer.	Price
Double click the Internet icon on your desktop.	Options
Type in the following URL:	Fuel economy
http://webct.acc.edu.	Cost of repairs
Type your username and password.	Availability of dealerships
Click on the online course of your choice.	Financing
Complete assignment 1.	Capacity

2. Look at the following two lists with headings. Both use Comic Sans and colored headings, but should they? Assessing the two lists below, explain when and why it's correct to use designer fonts and color or when and why you shouldn't.

EXAMPLE 1 RESUME

Objective

Use my information technology skills to improve a company's network capabilities, computer security, and troubleshooting.

Qualifications

- Four years experience in information technology
- BS in Computer Science
- Security certified

Work History

Information Technologist Pantheon Corp. St. Louis, MO 2010–present

- Networked 24 computer stations
- Created computer passwords for all employees
- Installed Spam and Virus protection on all systems

EXAMPLE 2 BROCHURE

Prices

- Buy one, get one free
- Guaranteed lowest in the market
- Last year's prices—*today!*

Options

- Sizes—4″ × 2″, 3″ × 2″, and 2″ × 2″
- Colors—red, green, black, and silver
- WiFi compatible

Service

- 24/7
- On site or online help

WEB WORKSHOP

On the Internet, access corporate Web sites. Study them and make a list of the techniques used for visual communication. Which Web sites are successful, and why? Which Web sites are unsuccessful, and why? How would you redesign the less successful Web sites to achieve better visual communication?

TEXT CREDIT

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 12 — GBA Architects/Engineers Web Page. Courtesy of GBA.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

REFERENCE

Schriver, Karen A. "Quality in Document Design." *Technical Communication* Second Quarter 1993: 250–251. Print.

Using Visual Aids

Using Visual Aids

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

To help his clients understand complex figures, Bert Lang includes visual aids in his proposals.

Bert Lang is an investment banker at Country Commercial Bank. He is writing a proposal to a potential client, Sylvia Light, a retired public health nurse. Sylvia is 58 years old and worked for the Texas Public Health Department for 36 years. She has earned her State of Texas retirement and Social Security benefits. She now has $315,500 in savings allocated as follows: $78,000 in an individual retirement account (IRA), $234,000 in a low-earning certificate of deposit (CD), and $3,500 in her checking account.

Sylvia contacted Bert, asking him to help her organize her portfolio for a comfortable retirement. Bert has studied Sylvia's various accounts and considered her lifestyle and expenditures. Now, he is ready to write the proposal.

In this proposal, Bert wants to show Sylvia how to reallocate her funds. She should keep some ready money available and invest a portion of capital for long-term returns. Currently,

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Use graphics to create a more concise document
- Understand that graphics add cosmetic appeal to text, breaking up wall-to-wall words
- Understand that color and 3-D graphics can be effective, but color choices might not be reproduced exactly as you planned, and a 3-D graphic could be misleading rather than informative
- Know that tables are effective for presenting numbers, dates, and columns of figures
- Use figures, such as bar charts, pie charts, line charts, flowcharts, and organizational charts, to highlight and supplement important parts of text
- Know that online graphics are protected by U.S. and International copyright laws
- Know that icons can communicate effectively to multicultural audiences
- Understand that graphics, such as line graphs, pie charts, and bar charts, show trends, percentages, and comparisons
- Evaluate visual aids with the checklist

too much of her money is tied up in a CD earning 1.1 percent. Bert plans to propose that Sylvia could reallocate her funds as follows:

- $110,000 in an annuity
- $78,000 in an IRA
- $45,000 in municipal bonds
- $37,000 in a stock fund
- $42,000 in CDs
- $3,500 in a checking account

Like most people, Sylvia is unfamiliar with financial planning. Though she was an expert in her health field, tuberculosis treatment, money matters confuse her. Numbers alone will not explain Bert's vision for her money management.

To make this proposal visually appealing and more readily understandable to Sylvia, Bert will use visual aids. He will provide Sylvia a pie chart to show how he wants to invest her money. Bert will use a line graph to predict how much more money she can earn by reallocating her assets. Finally, he will create a table to clarify the types of investments, the amount in each investment, the interest to be earned, and the fees.

Although Sylvia has always been fiscally conservative, Bert hopes that he can explain the need for growth of capital even in retirement. The graphic aids will visually enhance his written explanation.

The Benefits of Visual Aids

Although your writing may have no grammatical or mechanical errors and you may present valuable information, you won't communicate effectively if your information is inaccessible. Consider the following paragraph (Figure 1).

FIGURE 1 Inaccessible Content

> According to research from eMarketer, two out of three Americans in 2013 used social networking sites, like Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube. Over the last four years, this percentage has grown for all age cohorts. For example, in 2010, approximately 83 percent of people aged 12 to 24 used social networking sites. This percentage grew to 86 percent in 2011, 88 percent in 2012, and 89 percent in 2013. In 2010, 71 percent of Americans between the ages of 25 to 44 visited social media sites. This percentage grew to 77 percent in 2011, 80 percent in 2012, and 81 percent in 2013. For the 45-to-64-year-old cohort, social media visitation was 51 percent in 2010. This percentage grew to 55 percent in 2011. In 2012, 59 percent of people aged 45 to 64 visited social media sites. Finally, in 2013, this percentage grew to 61 percent. Overall, in 2013, 67 percent of Americans visited social networking sites. ("2 out of 3")

If you read the preceding paragraph in its entirety, you are an unusually dedicated reader. Such wall-to-wall words mixed with statistics do not create readable writing. The goal of effective technical communication is accessible information. The example paragraph fails to meet this goal. No reader can digest the data easily or see clearly the comparative changes in social media usage from year to year.

To present large blocks of data or reveal comparisons, you can supplement, if not replace, your text with graphics. In technical communication, visual aids accomplish several goals. Graphics will help you achieve conciseness, clarity, and cosmetic appeal.

Conciseness

Visual aids allow you to provide large amounts of information in a small space. Words used to convey data (such as Figure 1) double, triple, or even quadruple the space needed to report information. By using graphics, you can also delete many unnecessary words and phrases.

Clarity

Visual aids can clarify complex information, such as trends, comparison, percentages, and facts and figures. See Table 1 for examples of how you can use graphics to clarify content.

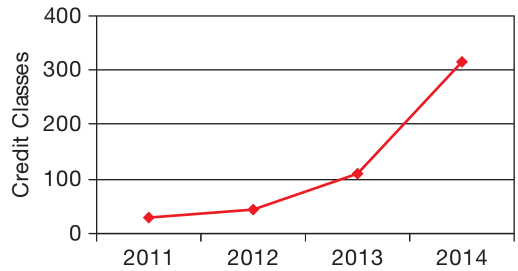
Cosmetic Appeal

Visual aids help you break up the monotony of wall-to-wall words. If you give only unbroken text, your reader might tire, lose interest, and overlook key concerns. Graphics help you sustain your reader's interest. Let's face it; readers like to look at pictures.

TABLE 1 Use of Graphics to Clarify Content

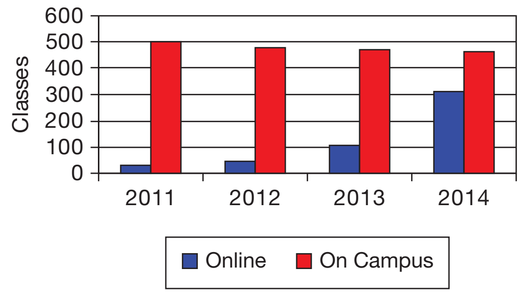
<table>
<tr><th>Use of Visual Aid</th><th>Sample Graphic</th></tr>
<tr><td>Trends—Certain trends, such as increasing or decreasing sales figures, enrollment numbers, revenues, stock prices, and so on, are most evident in line graphs.</td><td>

Figure 1 Online Class Growth



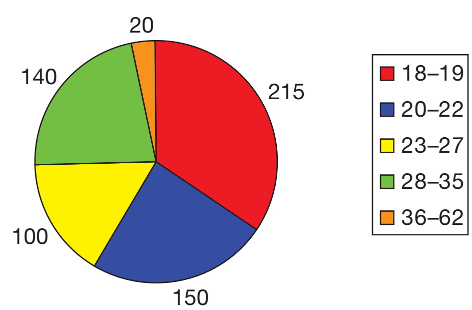
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Comparisons between like components—Comparisons of sizes, costs, or amounts can be seen in grouped bar charts.</td><td>

Figure 2 Online Classes vs. On-Campus Classes



</td></tr>
<tr><td>Percentages—Pie charts help readers discern the parts of a whole.</td><td>

Figure 3 Ages of Online Students



</td></tr>
<tr><td>Facts and figures—A table states statistics/numbers more clearly than a wordy paragraph.</td><td>

TABLE 1 Online Student Facts

<table>
<tr><th>Student Age Cohort</th><th>Number of Online Students</th><th>Number of Online Credit Hours</th></tr>
<tr><td>18–19</td><td>215</td><td>1290</td></tr>
<tr><td>20–22</td><td>150</td><td>900</td></tr>
<tr><td>23–27</td><td>100</td><td>600</td></tr>
<tr><td>28–35</td><td>140</td><td>840</td></tr>
<tr><td>36–62</td><td>20</td><td>120</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total</td><td>625</td><td>3750</td></tr>
</table>

</td></tr>
</table>

Color

All graphics look best in color, don't they? Not necessarily. Without a doubt, a graphic depicted in vivid colors will attract your reader's attention. However, the colors might not aid communication. For example, colored graphics could have these drawbacks (Reynolds and Marchetta 5–7):

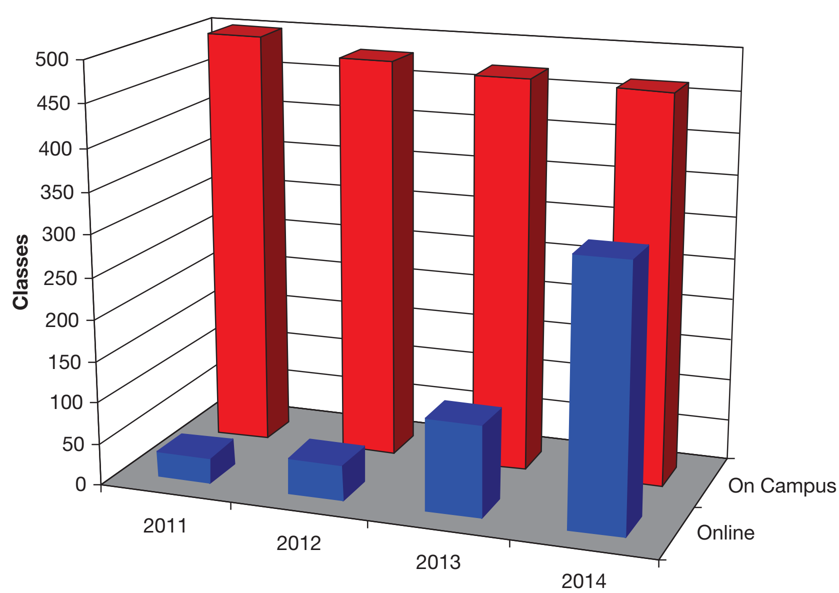
1. The colors might be distracting (glaring orange, red, and yellow combinations on a bar chart would do more harm than good).
2. Colors that look good today might go out of style in time.
3. Colored graphics increase production costs.
4. Colored graphics consume more disk space and computer memory than black-and-white graphics.
5. If your reader prints out the text in black and white, your original colors will have no meaning. In fact, colors, when printed in black and white, will not be distinguishable.

FAQs: Three-Dimensional Graphics

Q: Three-dimensional graphics look more interesting than one-dimensional graphics, don't they? Shouldn't we use them to add excitement to our text?

A: Many people are attracted to three-dimensional (3-D) graphics. After all, they have obvious appeal. Three-dimensional graphics are more interesting and vivid than flat, one-dimensional graphics. However, 3-D graphics have drawbacks. A 3-D graphic is visually appealing, but it does not convey information quantifiably. The reader has difficulty distinguishing amounts because the gridlines do not "touch" the bars. A word of caution: Use 3-D graphics sparingly. Better yet, if you use a 3-D graphic to create an impression, include a table to quantify your data.

3-D Bar Chart and Data Table



	2011	2012	2013	2014
Online	30	42	110	315
On Campus	500	480	470	465

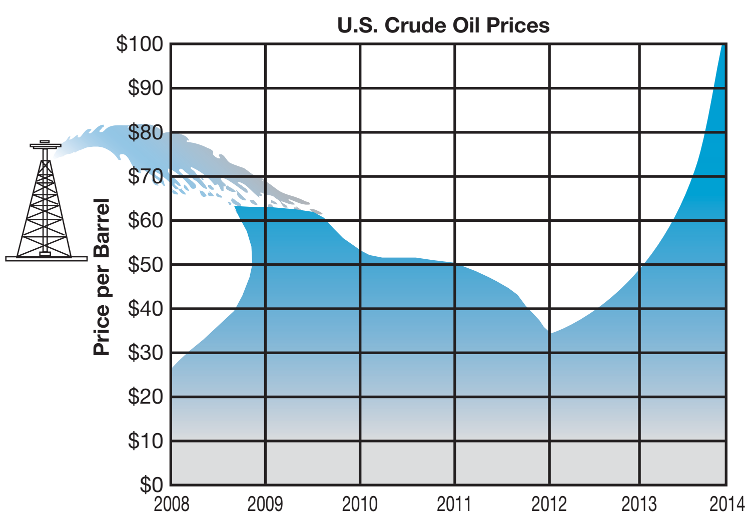
Criteria for Effective Graphics

Figure 2 is an example of a cosmetically appealing, clear, and concise graphic. At a glance, the reader can pinpoint the comparative prices per barrel of crude oil between 2008 and 2014. Thus, the line graph is clear and concise. In addition, the writer has included an interesting artistic touch. The oil gushing out of the tower shades parts of the graph to emphasize the dollar amounts. Envision this graph without the shading. Only the line would exist. The shading provides the right touch of artistry to enhance the information communicated.

The graph shown in Figure 2 includes the traits common to effective visual aids. Successful tables and figures have these characteristics:

1. Integrated with the text (i.e., the graphic complements the text; the text explains the graphic).
2. Appropriately located (preferably immediately following the text referring to the graphic and not a page or pages later).
3. Enhance the material explained in the text (without being redundant).
4. Communicate important information that could not be conveyed easily in a paragraph or longer text.
5. Do not contain details that detract from rather than enhance the information.
6. Sized effectively (large enough to be readable but not so large as to overwhelm the page).
7. Correctly labeled (with numbers, titles, legends, and headings).
8. Follow the style of other figures or tables in the text (same font size, font style, color, size of the graphic, and so on).

FIGURE 2 Line Graph with Shading



Types of Graphics

Graphics can be broken down into two basic types: tables and figures. Tables provide columns and rows of information. You should use a table to make factual information, such as numbers, percentages, and monetary amounts, easily accessible and understandable. Figures, in contrast, are varied and include bar charts, line graphs, photographs, pie charts, schematics, line drawings, and more.

Tables

Let's tabulate the information about social media usage from 2010 to 2013 presented earlier in Figure 1. Because effective technical communication integrates text and graphics, you will want to provide an introductory sentence prefacing Table 2, as follows:

EXAMPLE ▶

Table 2 compares the use of social media by age cohort from 2010 to 2013.

TABLE 2 Percentage of Social Media Usage

Age Cohort	2010	2011	2012	2013
12–24	83%	86%	88%	89%
25–44	71%	77%	80%	81%
45–64	51%	55%	59%	61%

Source: ("2 out of 3")

Table 2 has advantages for both the writer and the reader. First, the headings eliminate needless repetition of words, thereby making the text more readable. The example paragraph in Figure 1 contains 160 words; the table consists of only 31 words and numbers. Second, the audience can see easily the comparison between the use of social media by age. Thus, the table highlights the content's significant differences. Finally, if this information is included in a report, the writer will reference the table in the list of illustrations. This creates ease of access for the reader.

Criteria for Effective Tables. To construct tables correctly, do the following:

1. Number tables in order of presentation (i.e., Table 1, Table 2, Table 3).
2. Title every table. In your writing, refer to the table by its number, not its title. Simply say, "Table 1 shows . . . ," "As seen in Table 1," or "The information in Table 1 reveals . . . ."
3. Present the table as soon as possible after you have mentioned it in your text. Preferably, place the table on the same page as the appropriate text, not on a subsequent, unrelated page or in an appendix.
4. Don't present the table until you have mentioned it.
5. Use an introductory sentence or two to lead into the table.
6. After you have presented the table, explain its significance. You might write, "Thus, social media usage has grown exponentially since 2010. The peak year for social media usage by age cohort is projected to be in 2013."
7. Write headings for each column. Choose terms that summarize the information in the columns. For example, you could write "% of Error," "Length in Ft.," or "Amount in $."
8. Because the size of columns is determined by the width of the data or headings, you may want to abbreviate terms or use symbols ("%" for "percent," "$" for "dollars," etc.). If you use abbreviations or symbols, however, be sure your audience understands your terminology.
9. Center tables between right and left margins. Don't crowd them on the page.
10. Separate columns with ample white space, vertical lines, or dashes.

11. Show that you have omitted information by printing two or three periods or a hyphen or dash in an empty column.
12. Be consistent when using numbers. Use either decimals or numerators and denominators for fractions. You could write 3¼ and 3¾ or 3.25 and 3.75. If you use decimal points for some numbers but other numbers are whole, include zeroes. For example, write 9.00 for 9.
13. If you do not conclude a table on one page, on the second page write *Continued* in parentheses after the number of the table and the table's title.
14. Cite the source of your information, if you have taken content from primary or secondary sources.

Table 3 is an excellent example of a correctly prepared table.

TABLE 3 Student Headcount Enrollment by Age Group and Student Status, Fall 2014

Table number and title

Age Group	New Students	Continuing Students	Readmitted	Other	Total
15–17	453	33	2	2	490
18–20	1,404	1,125	132	__	2,661
21–23	339	819	269	__	1,427
24–26	263	596	213	__	1,072
27–29	250	436	134	__	820
30–39	524	1,168	372	__	2,064
40–49	271	510	186	__	967
50–59	76	121	54	__	251
60+	19	48	16	__	83
Unknown	109	92	27	2	230
Total	3,708	4,948	1,405	4	10,065

Source: "City Community College Enrollment Statistics." Office of Institutional Research. Dec. 2014

Column headings

Indicate if no data is available by using a dash, periods, or hyphens.

Provide a final row for totals when necessary.

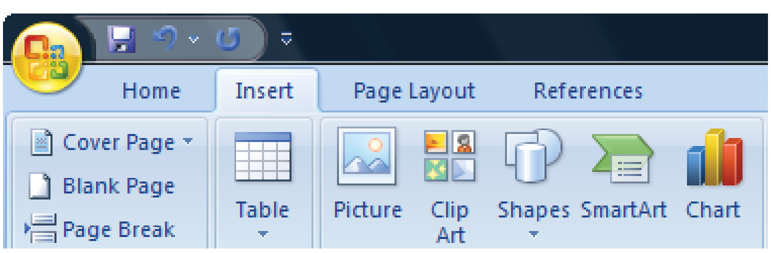
Include a source of information when possible.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Creating Graphics in Microsoft Word 2010 (Pie Charts, Bar Charts, Line Graphs, etc.)

You can create customized graphics in Microsoft Office Word as follows:

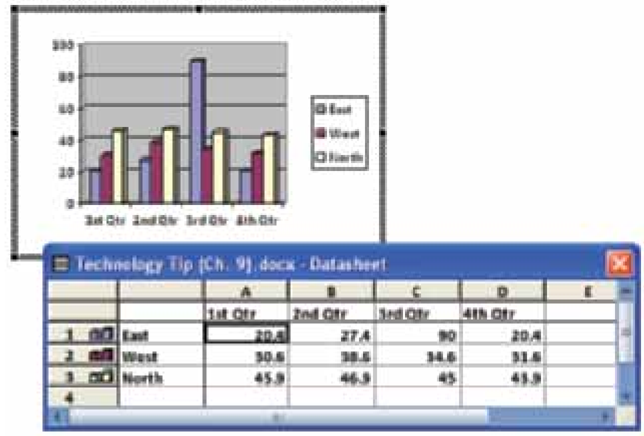
1. Click **Insert** on the menu bar.



(*Continued*)

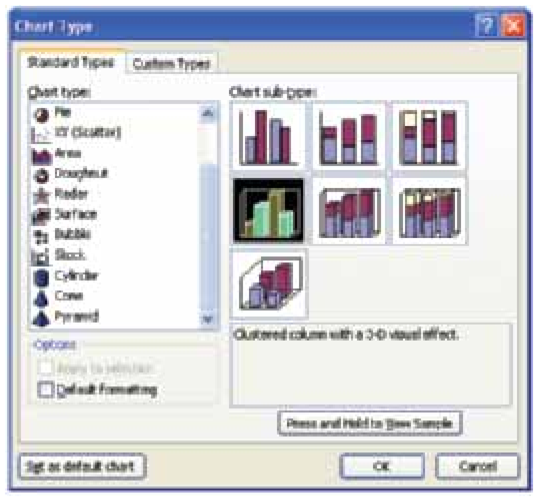
TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

2. Click **Chart**. Word will open a datasheet and bar chart template that you can customize by inserting your own text and numbers.

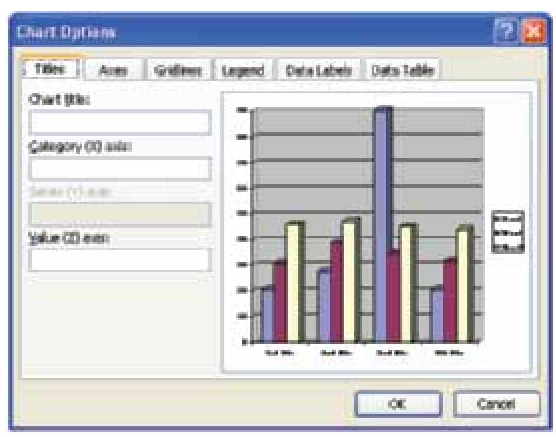


Once you have opened Word's graphic's datasheet and template, you can customize the graphic further as follows:

3. Choose the type of graphic you want by clicking **Chart** on the menu bar and scrolling to and selecting **Chart Type**. The **Chart Type** dialog box displays, allowing you to select a chart type.



4. To add figure numbers, figure titles, legends, gridlines, data labels, and data tables, click **Chart** and then select **Chart Options**.



Figures

Another way to enhance your technical communication is to use figures. Whereas tables eliminate needless repetition of words and clarify quantifiability, figures highlight and supplement important points in your writing. Types of figures include the following:

- Bar charts
  - Grouped bar charts
  - Horizontal bar charts
  - Vertical bar charts
  - Pictographs
  - Gantt charts
- Pie charts
- Line charts
  - Broken line charts
  - Curved line charts
- Combination charts
- Flowcharts
- Organizational charts
- Schematics
- Geologic maps
- Line drawings
  - Exploded views
  - Cutaway views
  - Renderings
  - Virtual reality drawings
- CAD drawings
- Photographs
- Icons
- Internet downloadable graphics

Criteria for Effective Figures. To construct figures correctly, do the following:

1. Number figures in order of presentation (i.e., Figure 1, Figure 2, Figure 3).
2. Title each figure. When you refer to the figure, use its number rather than its title: "Figure 1 shows the relation between the average estimated price for houses and the actual sales prices."
3. Preface each figure with an introductory sentence.
4. Avoid using a figure until you have mentioned it in the text.
5. Present the figure as soon as possible after mentioning it instead of several paragraphs or pages later.
6. After you have presented the figure, explain its significance. Don't let the figure speak for itself. Remind the reader of the important facts you want to highlight.
7. Label the figure's components. For example, if you are using a bar or line chart, label the horizontal and vertical axes clearly. If you're using line drawings, pie charts, or photographs, use clear *callouts* (names or numbers that indicate particular parts) to label each component.
8. When necessary, provide a legend or key at the bottom of the figure to explain information. For example, a key in a bar or line chart will explain what each differently colored line or bar means. In line drawings and photographs, you can use numbered callouts in place of names. If you do so, you will need a legend at the bottom of the figure explaining what each number means.
9. If you abbreviate any labels, define these in a footnote. Place an asterisk (*) or a superscript number (^{1}, ^{2}, ^{3}) after the term and then at the bottom of the figure where you explain your terminology.
10. If you have drawn information from another source, note this at the bottom of the figure.
11. Frame the figure. Center it between the left and right margins or place it in a text box.
12. Size figures appropriately. Don't make them too small or too large.

Bar Charts. Bar charts show either vertical bars (as in Figure 3) or horizontal bars (as in Figure 4). These bars are scaled to reveal quantities and comparative values. You can shade, color, or crosshatch the bars to emphasize the contrasts. If you do so, include a legend explaining what each bar represents, as in Figure 4. *Pictographs* (as in Figure 5) use picture symbols instead of bars to show quantities. To create effective pictographs, do the following:

1. The picture should be representative of the topic discussed.
2. Each symbol equals a unit of measurement. The size of the units depends on your value selection as noted in the key or on the *x* and *y* axes.
3. Use more symbols of the same size to indicate a higher quantity; do not use larger symbols.

Figure number and title → **FIGURE 3** Vertical Grouped Bar Chart

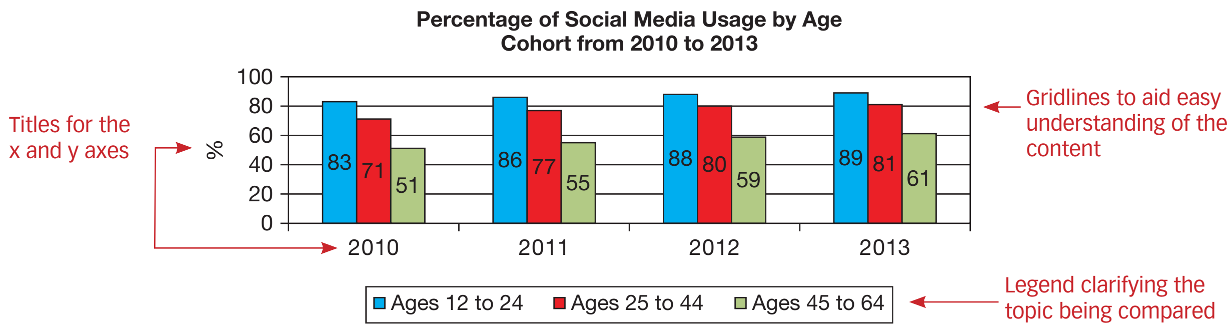


FIGURE 4 Horizontal Grouped Bar Chart for High-Tech Readers

The bar chart in Figure 4, geared toward office supply sales managers, is as factual as the pictograph in Figure 5. However, Figure 4, which omits the drawings of the PCs, keeps the graphic more businesslike for the intended audience of peers who are high-tech readers.

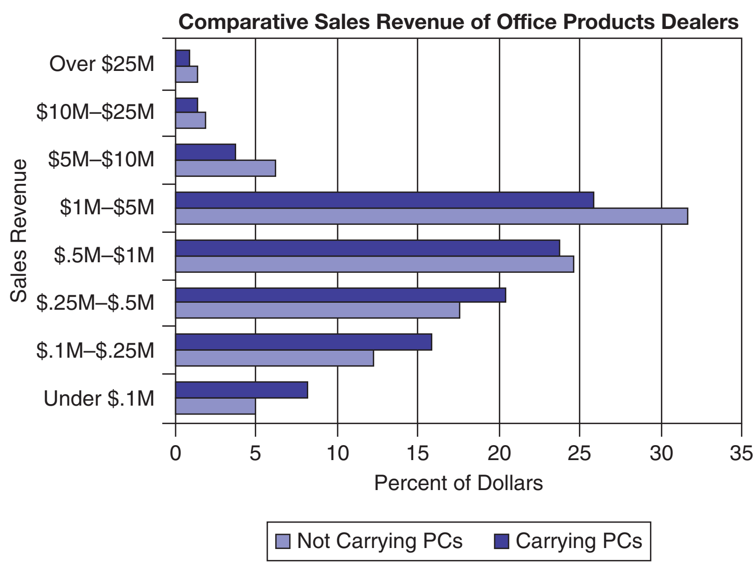
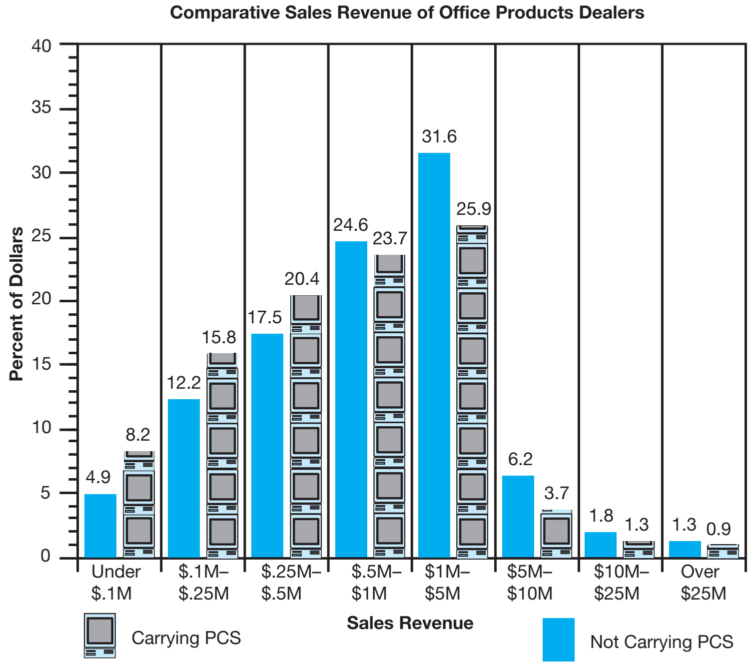


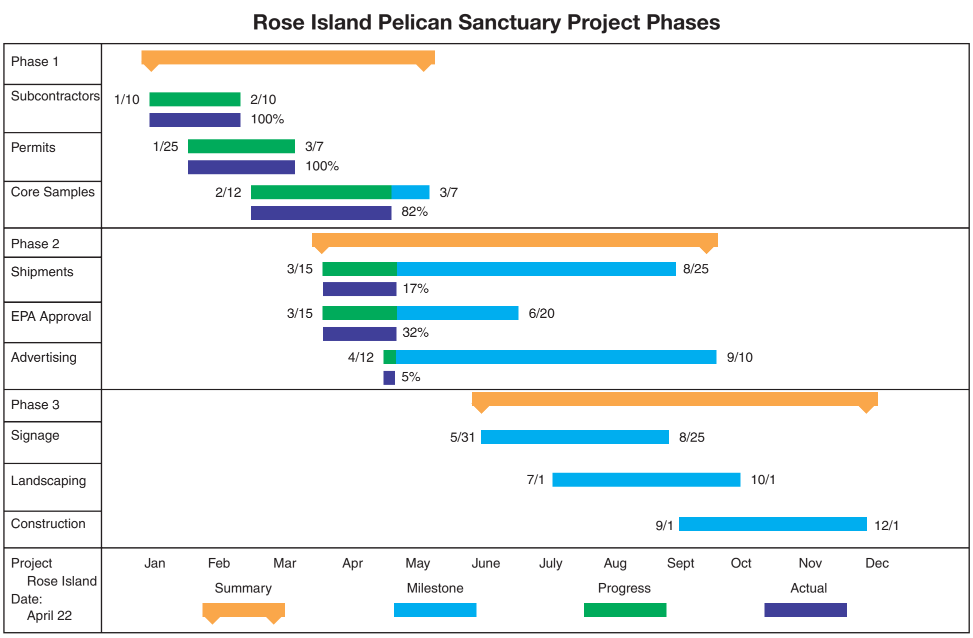
FIGURE 5 Pictograph for a Lay Audience



The pictograph is as factual as the bar chart in Figure 4. However, since the pictograph is designed for lay readers, it uses symbols of PCs to enhance the visual appeal of this topic. In addition, the PCs make the subject matter more interesting for the audience.

Gantt Charts. Gantt charts, or schedule charts (as in Figure 6), use bars to show chronological activities. For example, your goal might be to show phases of a project to a client. This could include planned start dates, planned reporting milestones, planned completion dates, actual progress made toward completing the project, and work remaining. Gantt charts are an excellent way to represent these activities visually. They are often

FIGURE 6 Gantt Chart



The Gantt chart shows the schedule of activities, including start and stop dates, plus percentage of completion.

included in proposals to project schedules or in reports to show work completed. To create successful Gantt charts, do the following:

1. Label your horizontal and vertical axes. For example, the vertical axis represents the various activities scheduled, and then the horizontal axis represents time (days, weeks, months, or years).
2. Provide gridlines (either horizontal or vertical) to help your readers pinpoint the time accurately.
3. Label your bars with exact dates for start or completion.
4. Quantify the percentages of work accomplished and work remaining.
5. Provide a legend to differentiate between planned activities and actual progress.

3-D Topographical Charts. Three-dimensional contour representations are not limited to land elevations. A 3-D surface chart could be used to represent many different forms of data. These 3-D "topos" (as shown in Figure 7) are used in industries as varied as aerospace, defense, education, research, oil, gas, and water. Applications include CAD/CAM, statistical analysis, and architectural design.

FIGURE 7 Topographical Chart

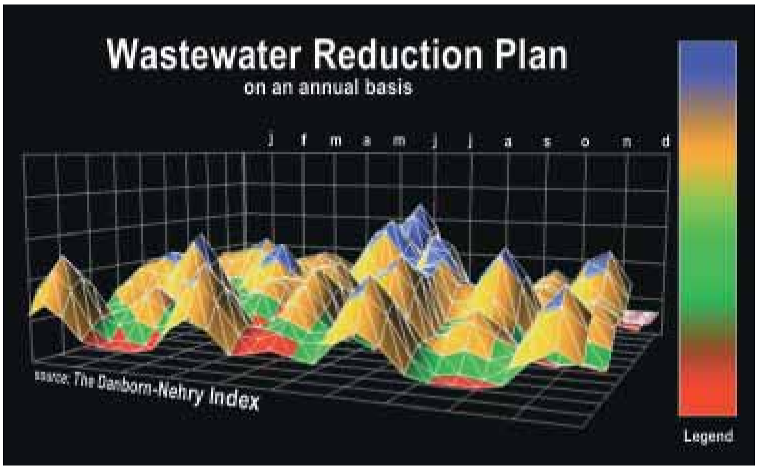
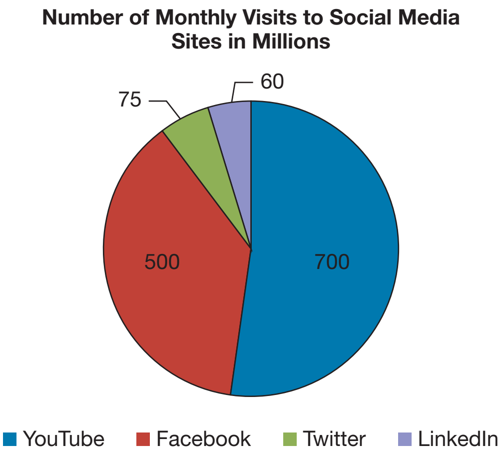


FIGURE 8 Pie Chart



Pie Charts. Use pie charts (as in Figure 8) to illustrate portions of a whole. The pie chart represents information as pie-shaped parts of a circle. The entire circle equals 100 percent or 360 degrees. The pie pieces (the wedges) show the various divisions of the whole.

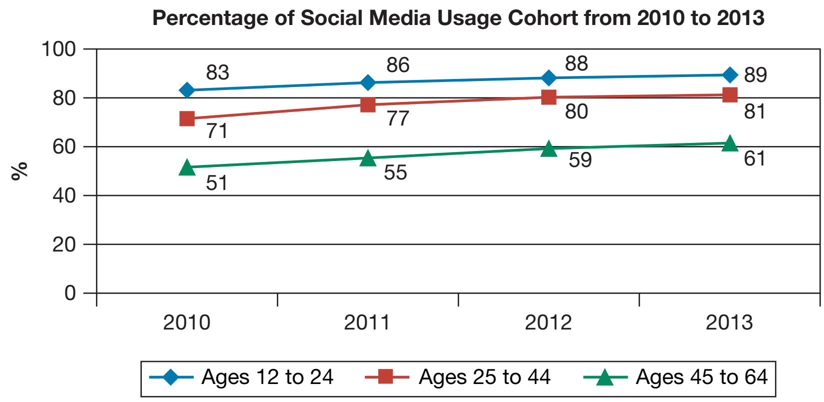
To create effective pie charts, do the following:

1. Be sure that the complete circle equals 100 percent or 360 degrees.
2. Begin spacing wedges at the twelve o'clock position.
3. Use shading, color, or crosshatching to emphasize wedge distributions.
4. Use horizontal writing to label wedges.
5. If you don't have enough room for a label within each wedge, provide a legend defining what each shade, color, or crosshatching symbolizes.

6. Provide percentages for wedges when possible.
7. Do not use too many wedges—this would crowd the chart and confuse readers.

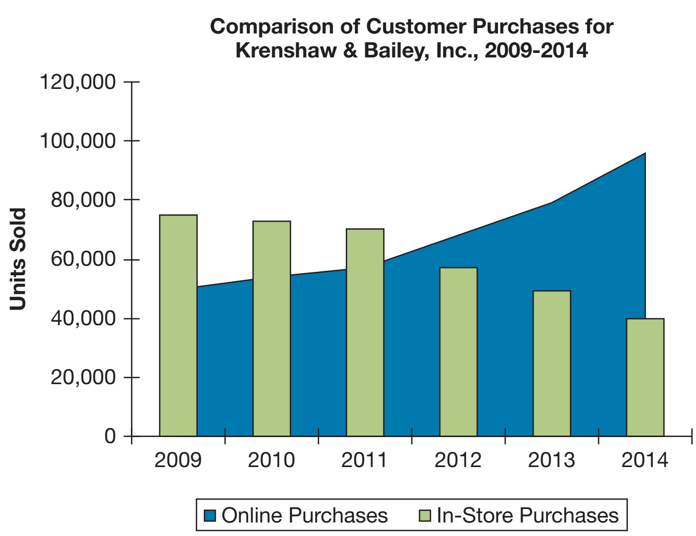
Line Charts. Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures. To make a line chart, plot sets of numbers and connect the sets with lines. These lines create a picture showing the upward and downward movement of quantities. Line charts of more than one line (see Figure 9) are useful for showing comparisons between two sets of values. However, avoid creating line charts with too many lines, which will confuse your readers.

FIGURE 9 Line Chart



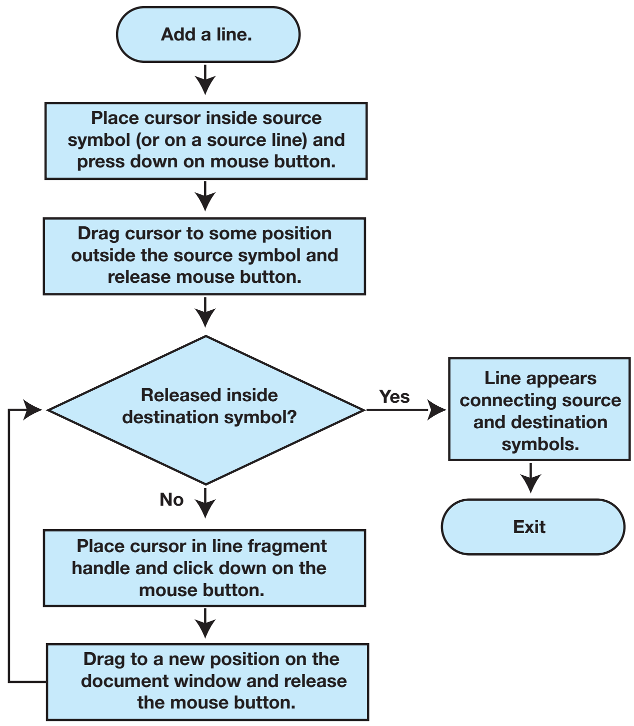
Combination Charts. A combination chart reveals relationships between two sets of figures. To do so, it uses a combination of figure styles, such as a bar chart and a line chart (as shown in Figure 10). The value of a combination chart is that it adds interest and distinguishes the two sets of figures by depicting them differently.

FIGURE 10 Combination Bar and Line Chart



Flowcharts. You can show chronological sequence of activities using a flowchart. Flowcharts are especially useful for writing technical instructions. When using a flowchart, remember that ovals represent starts and stops, rectangles represent steps, and diamonds equal decisions (see Figure 11).

FIGURE 11 Flowchart



Organizational Charts. The chart in Figure 12 shows the chain of command in an organization. An organizational chart helps your readers see where individuals work within a business and their relation to other workers.

Schematics. Schematics are useful for presenting abstract information in technical fields such as electronics and engineering. A schematic diagrams the relationships among the parts of something such as an electrical circuit. The diagram uses symbols and abbreviations familiar to highly technical readers. The schematic in Figure 13 shows various electronic parts (resistors, diodes, condensers) in a radio.

Geologic Maps. Maps help us understand locations. Usually these show cities, streets, roads, highways, rivers, lakes, mountains, and so forth. Geologic maps do more. They also show terrain, contours, heat ranges, the surface features of a place or object, or an analysis of an area. Often, to help readers orient themselves, these maps are printed on top of a regular map (called a base map). The base map is black and white. The geologic map, in contrast, uses colors, contact and fold lines, and special symbols to reveal the geology of an area. These features are then defined on a map legend (as in Figure 14).

FIGURE 12 Organizational Chart

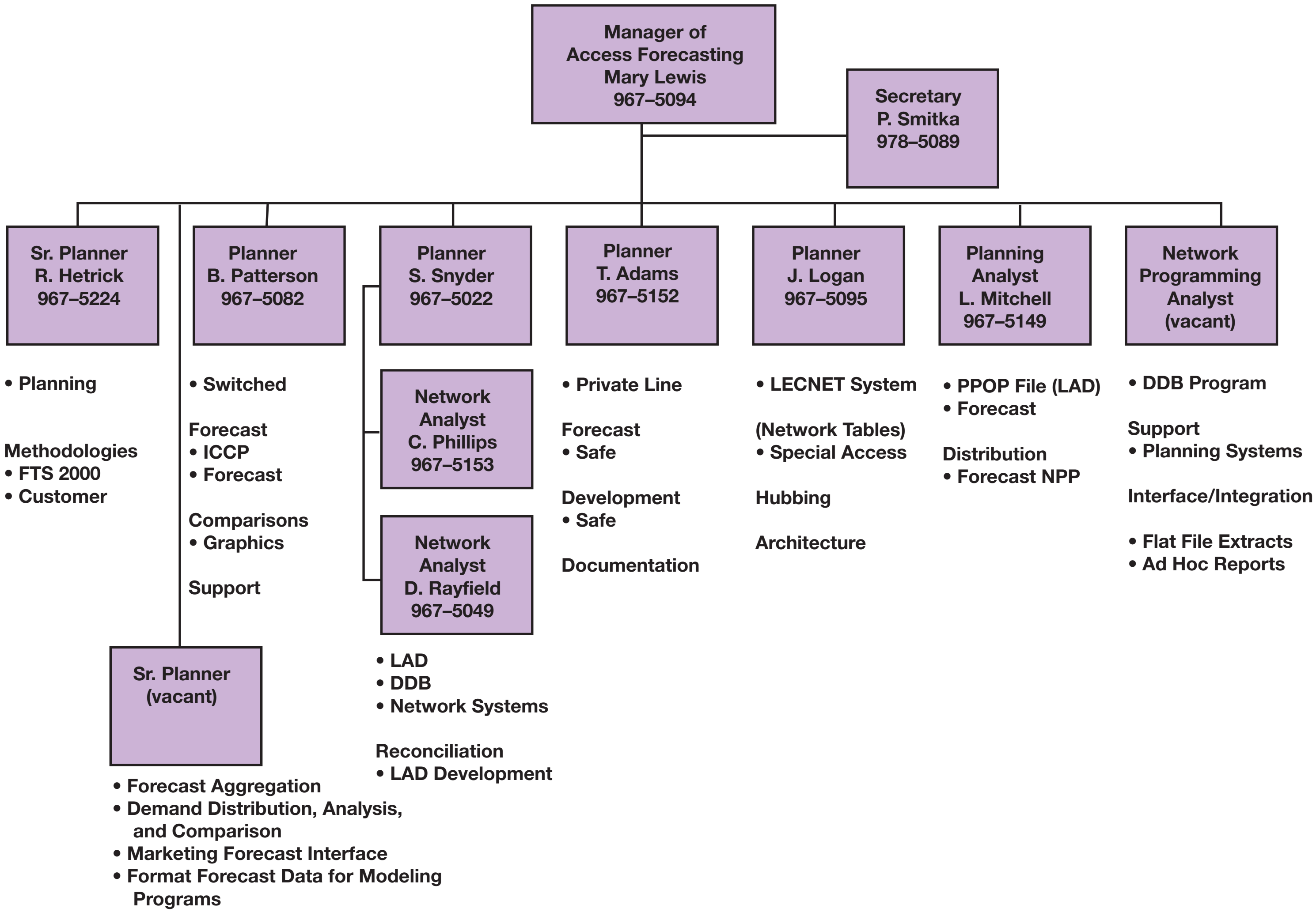


FIGURE 13 Schematic of a Radio

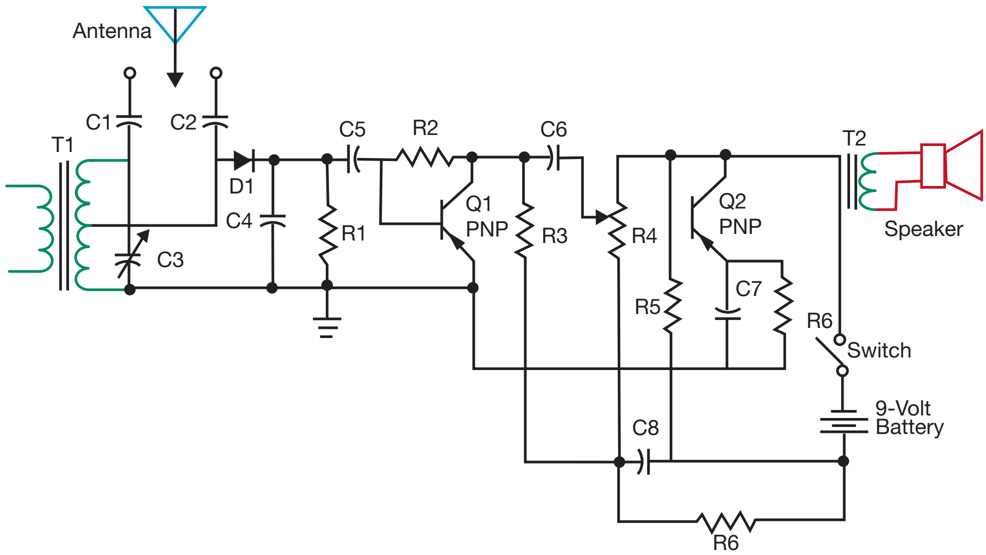
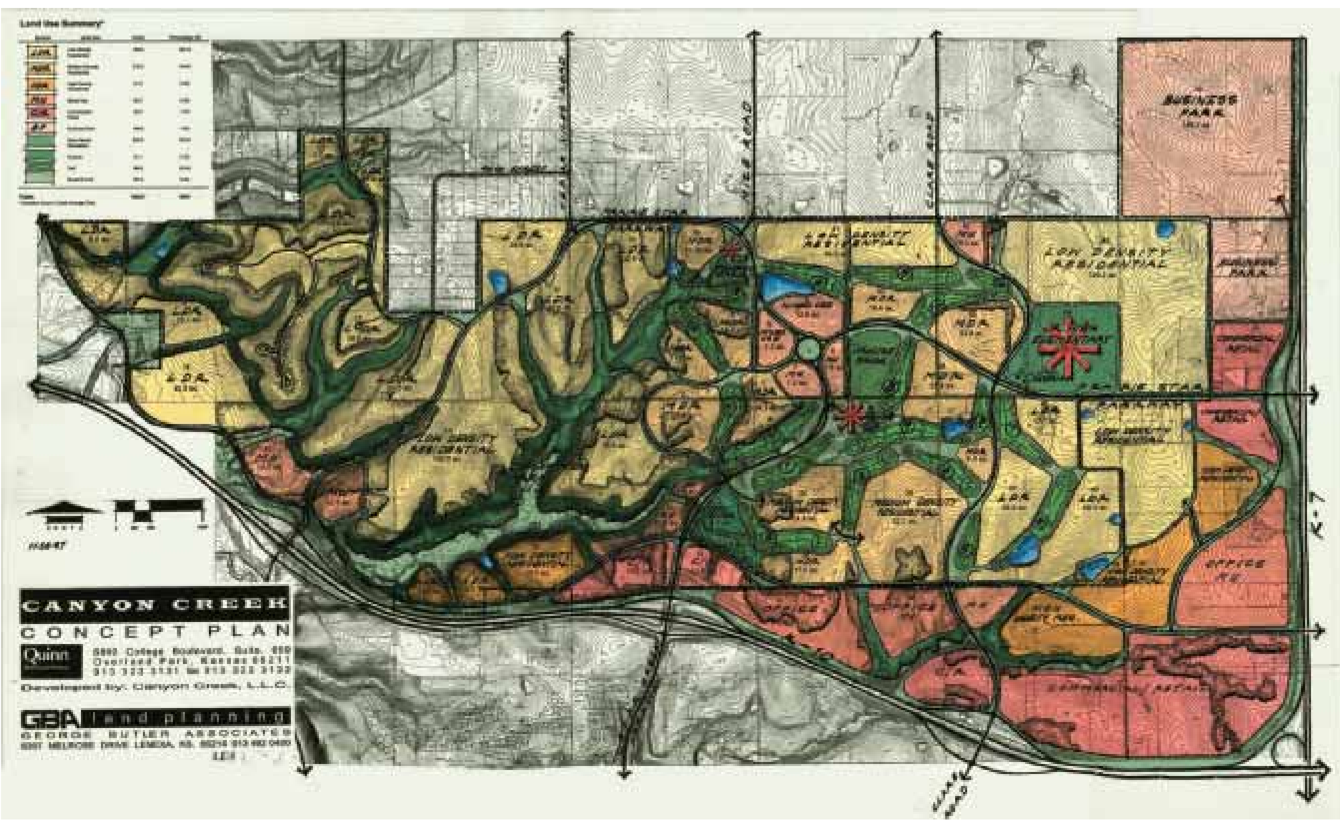


FIGURE 14 Geologic Map

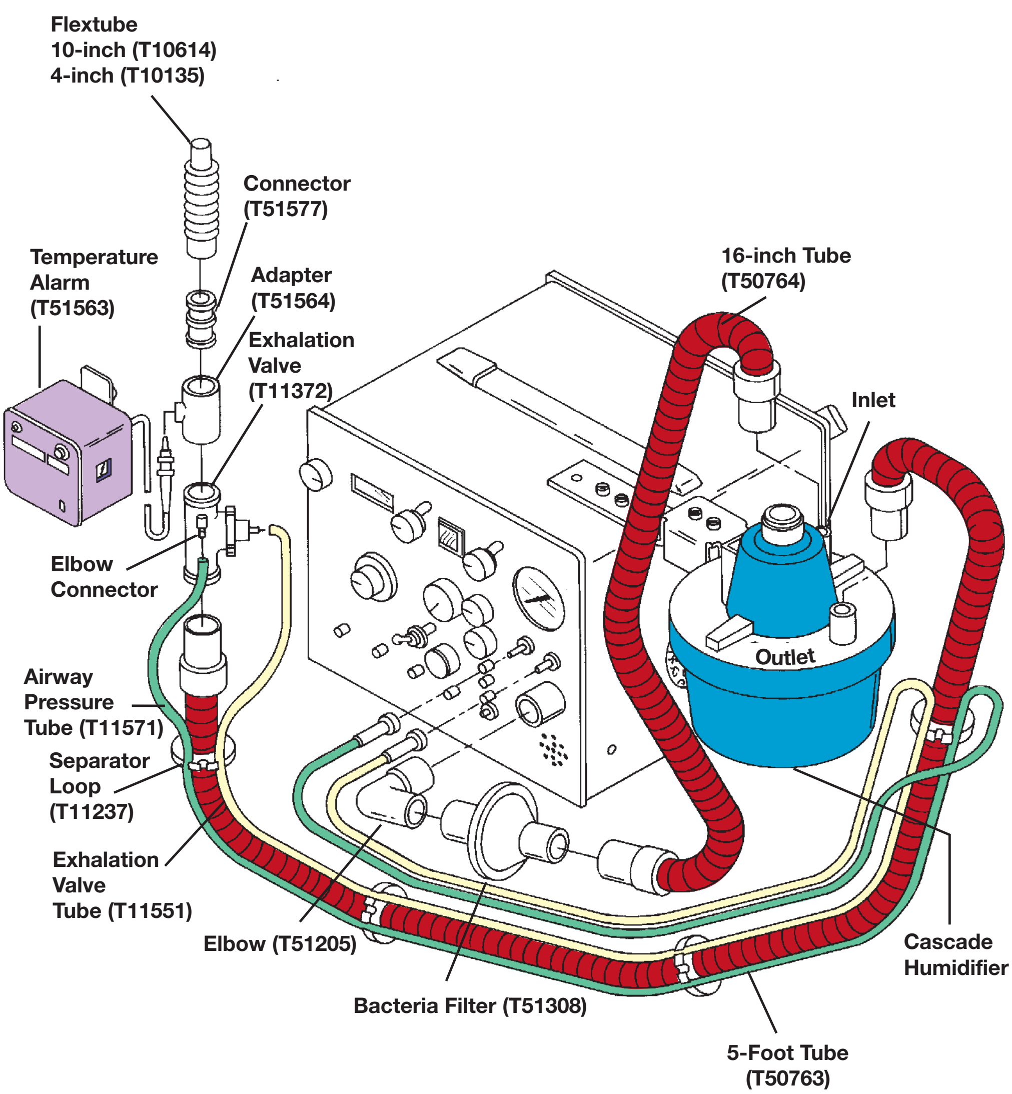


Source: Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

Line Drawings. Use line drawings to show the important parts of a mechanism. To create line drawings, do the following:

1. Maintain correct proportions in relation to each part of the object drawn.
2. If a sequence of drawings illustrates steps in a process, place the drawings in left-to-right or top-to-bottom order.
3. Using callouts to name parts, label the components of the object drawn (see Figure 15).
4. If there are numerous components, use a letter or number to refer to each part. Then reference this letter or number in a key or legend (see Figure 16).
5. Use exploded views (Figures 15 and 16) or cutaways (figures to highlight a particular part of the drawing, as in Figures 17 and 18).

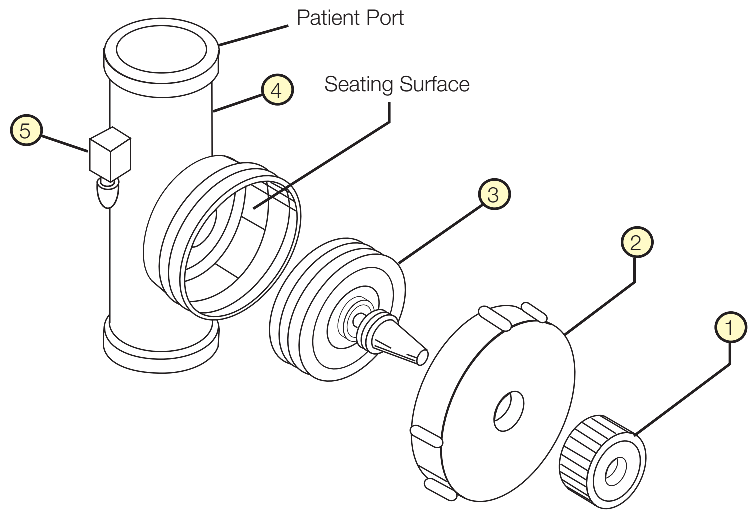
FIGURE 15 Line Drawing of Ventilator (Exploded View with Callouts)



Source: Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

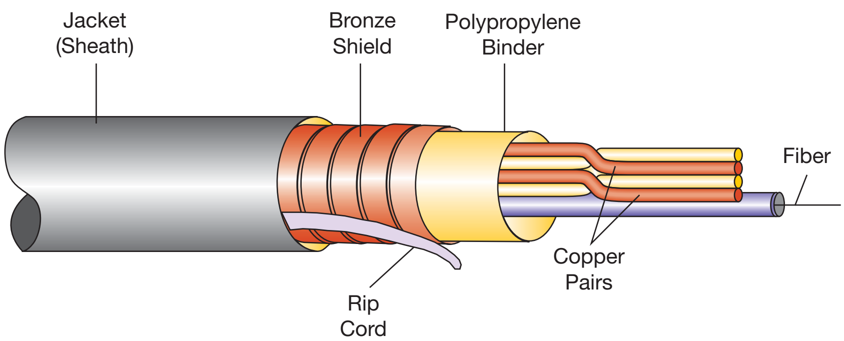
FIGURE 16 Line Drawing of Exhalation Valve (Exploded View with Legend)

Exhalation Valve Parts List		
Item	Part Number	Description
1	000723	Nut
2	003248	Cap
3	T50924	Diaphragm
4	Reference	Valve Body
5	Reference	Elbow Connector
—	T11372	Exhalation Valve



Source: Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

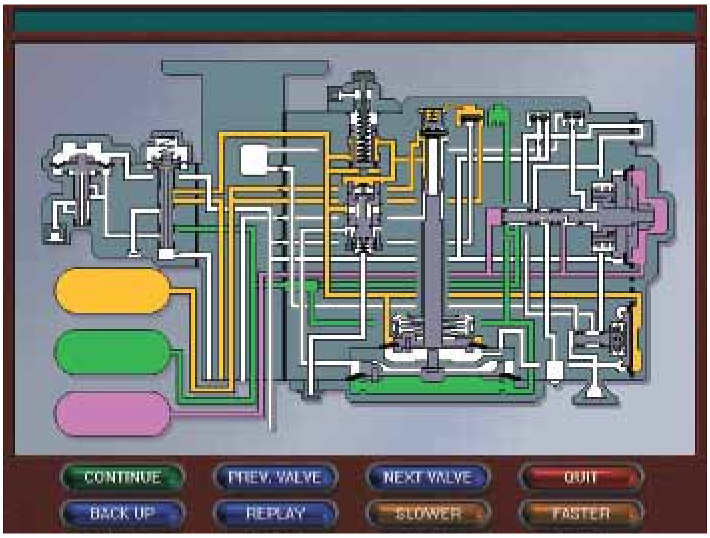
FIGURE 17 Line Drawing of Cable (Cutaway View)



Source: Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

Renderings, Virtual Reality Drawings, and Section Elevations. Three different types of line drawings are renderings, virtual reality views, and section elevations. They offer 3-D representations of buildings, sites, or objects. Often used in the architectural/engineering industry, these 3-D drawings (as shown in Figures 19, 20, and 21) help clients get a visual idea of the services your company provides. Renderings, virtual reality drawings, and section elevations add lighting, materials, and shadow reflection mapping to mimic the real world and allow customers to see what a building or site will look like in a photorealistic setting.

FIGURE 18 Cutaway View of a Railcar Braking System



Source: Courtesy of Burlington Northern Santa Fe Railroad

FIGURE 19 Architectural Rendering

Source: Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

CAD Drawings. Computer-aided design (CAD) drawings, such as the site plan in Figure 22, use geometric shapes and symbols to provide a graphic view of a setting drawn to a particular scale. CAD drawings include *notations* to define scale and a *title block*. The title block gives the date of completion, name of the draftsperson, company, client, and project name.

Photographs. A photograph can illustrate your text effectively. Like a line drawing, a photograph can show the components of a mechanism. If you use a photo for this purpose, you will need to label (name), number, or letter parts and provide a key. Photographs are

FIGURE 20 Virtual Reality Drawing

Source: Courtesy of Johnson County Community College

FIGURE 21 Section Elevation of Pharmacy for Lay Audience of City Council Members

The 3-D section elevation drawing provides an impressionistic view of what the site will potentially look like. It not only factors in elevation and landscaping but also allows the audience to relate to and envision the design.

Source: Courtesy of Landplan

excellent visual aids because they emphasize all parts equally. Their primary advantage is that they show something as it truly is. See Figure 23.

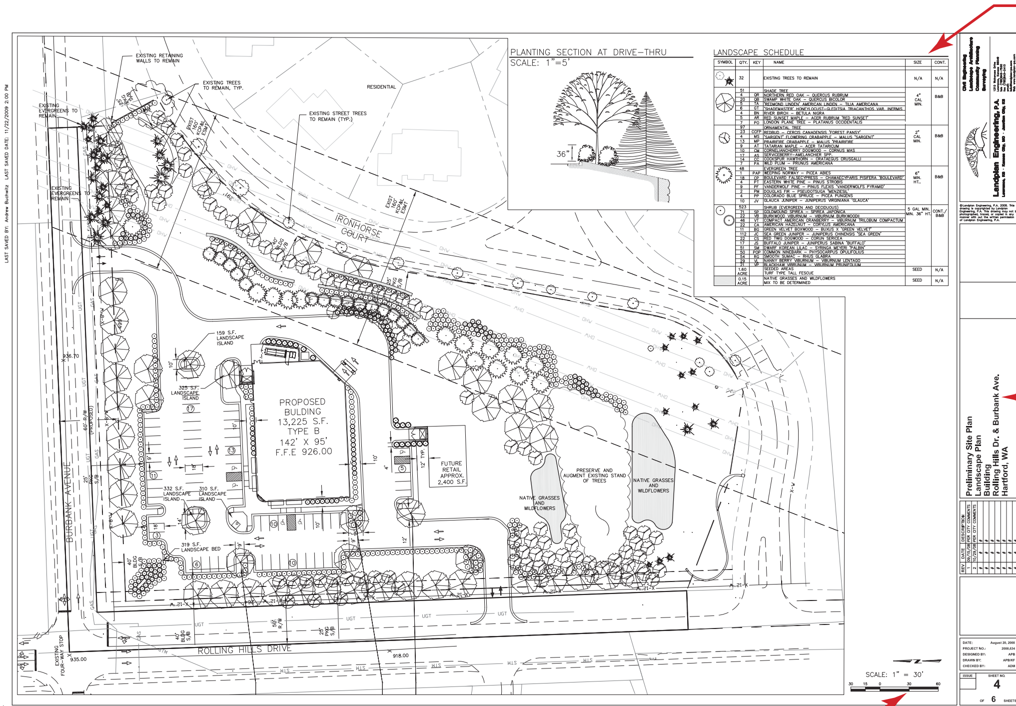
Icons. Approximately 22 percent of America's population is functionally illiterate (Labbe B9). In today's global economy, consumers speak diverse languages. Given these two facts, how can technical writers communicate to people who cannot read and to people who speak different languages? Icons offer one solution. Icons (as in Figures 24, 25, 26, and 27) are visual representations of a capability, a danger, a direction, an acceptable behavior, or an unacceptable behavior.

When used correctly, icons can save space, communicate rapidly, and help readers with language problems understand the writer's intent. To create effective icons, follow these suggestions:

1. **Keep it simple.** You should try to communicate a single idea. Icons are not appropriate for long discourse.

FIGURE 22 CAD/CAM Site Plan of Pharmacy for High-Tech Audience of Engineers

In contrast to the 3-D section elevation in figure 21, this CAD/CAM site plan for the same construction project provides an objective depiction of the project, specifying the limits of the land (streets, right of way, property lines, and boundaries).



Landscape schedule including types of plantings

Title block

Notation showing the scale of the drawing

Source: Courtesy of Landplan

2. **Create a realistic image.** This could be accomplished by representing the idea as a photograph, drawing, caricature, outline, or silhouette.
3. **Make the image recognizable.** A top view of a computer monitor or a side view of a smartphone is uninformative. Select the view of the object that best communicates your intent.
4. **Avoid cultural and gender stereotyping.** If you are drawing a hand, you should avoid showing any skin color, and you should stylize the hand so it is neither clearly male nor female.
5. **Strive for universality.** Stick figures of men and women are recognizable worldwide. In contrast, letters—such as *P* for *parking*—will mean very little in China, Africa, or the Mideast. Even colors can cause trouble. In North America, red represents danger, but red is a joyous color in China. Yellow calls for caution in North America, but this color equals happiness and prosperity in the Arab culture (Horton 682–693).

Downloading Existing Online Graphics

The Internet contains thousands of Web sites that contain graphics, including photographs, line drawings, cartoons, icons, animated images, arrows, buttons, horizontal lines, balls, letters, bullets, hazard signs, and more. You can download images from any Web site. To download graphics, place the cursor on the graphic and right-click on the mouse. A pop-up menu will appear. Click either “Copy” or “Save Picture.” You can save your image in the file of your choice. The images from the Internet will already be GIF (graphics interchange format) or JPEG (joint photographic experts group) files.

FIGURE 23 Photograph of Mechanical Piping

Source: Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

FIGURE 24 Icon of Explosives

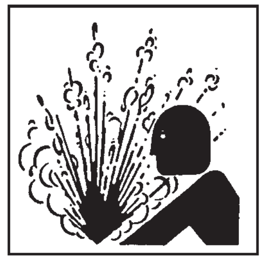


FIGURE 25 Icon of Dangerous Machinery

FIGURE 26 Icon of Electric Shock

FIGURE 27 Icon of Corrosive Material

However, when downloading images, you must abide by copyright laws and ethical considerations. Can you ethically download any image? Can you make changes to a graphic taken from your own company's archives or from boilerplate documents? Do these graphics need a source citation? If your company owns these images, you can modify them and use the changed graphics without citing the source.

Modifying or Creating New Graphics

To modify graphics, you can download them in two ways. First, you can print the screen by pressing the Print Screen key (usually found on the upper right of your keyboard). This captures the entire screen image on a clipboard. Then you can open a graphics program and paste the captured image.

Second, you can save the image in a file and then open the graphic in a graphics package. Most graphics programs will allow you to customize a graphic. Popular programs include Paint, Paint Shop Pro, PhotoShop, Corel Draw, and Illustrator. In these graphics programs, you can manipulate the images by changing colors, adding text, reversing the images, cropping, resizing, redimensioning, rotating, retouching, deleting or erasing parts of the images, overlaying multiple images, joining multiple images, and so forth. See Figures 28 and 29 for examples of original and modified photographs taken from a company's archives.

Another option is to create your own graphic. If you are artistic, draw your graphic in a graphics program. This option might be more challenging and time consuming. However, creating your own graphic gives you more control over the finished product, provides a graphic precisely suited to your company's needs, and helps avoid infringement of copyright laws.

FIGURE 28 Original Photograph with Two Men and Pipe

This photograph includes two men working on a pipe. Note the writing on the pipe.

Source: Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

FIGURE 29 Modified Photograph (with the Two Men and *PLO5* Removed)

In this computer-altered photograph, the two men and the writing on the pipe have been digitally erased.

Source: Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

VISUAL AID CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Will a visual aid add to your technical communication and make the document concise, clear, and add cosmetic appeal?

_____ **2.** Should you use color or 3-D graphics in your visual aids?

_____ **3.** Are visuals integrated with the text?

_____ **4.** Do the visuals add to the text and enhance it without being redundant?

_____ **5.** Do the graphics communicate information visually that could not easily be conveyed in text?

_____ **6.** Are the visuals the correct size, labeled, readable, and similar in style?

_____ **7.** Did you use a table when you presented factual information, such as numbers, percentages, or monetary amounts?

_____ **8.** Have you used a figure to highlight and supplement important points in your writing?

_____ **9.** Have you included a figure or table number and titles for your graphics?

_____ **10.** Have you cited your source of information?

The Writing Process at Work

Now that you know the criteria for creating different types of visual aids, you next need to create the visual aid. How do you begin? As always, *prewrite*, *write*, and *rewrite*. Remember that the process is dynamic and the steps frequently overlap.

Prewriting

Prewrite to gather data and determine your goals and audience. Bert Lang, highlighted in this chapter's "Communication at Work" scenario, worked for the trust department of a bank and was going to make a presentation to a client, Sylvia Light, about asset allocations. Bert considered the following:

- Audience—high-tech (bank employees) and lay reader (client)
- Channels—financial proposal to be reviewed by both the client and the bank
- Data—specific client financial information, including assets

Figure 30 shows Bert's list for planning asset allocations.

FIGURE 30 Planning List of Asset Allocations

Reallocate funds as follows:

- $110,000 in an annuity
- $78,000 in an Individual Retirement Account (IRA)
- $45,000 in municipal bonds
- $37,000 in a stock fund
- $42,000 in certificates of deposit (CD)
- $3,500 in a checking account

Writing

Draft the document. Bert had to decide how to present his information to Sylvia. Bert wrote the following rough draft of the asset allocation in paragraph form (Figure 31):

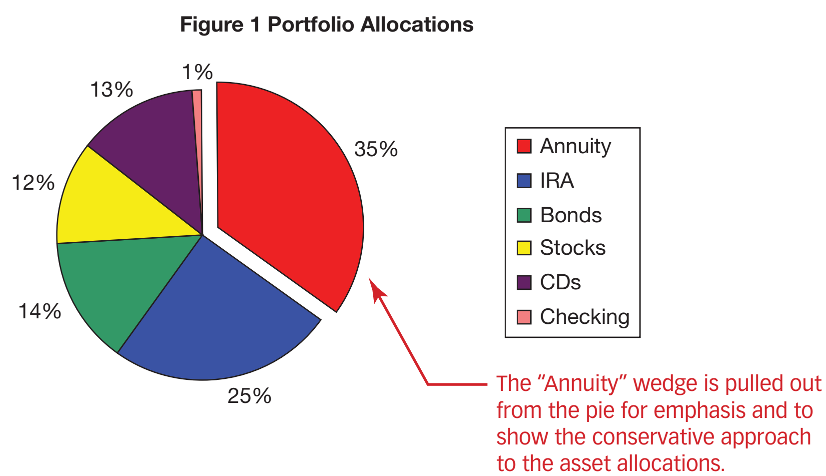
FIGURE 31 Rough Draft of Asset Allocation

After reviewing your financial situation and considering your lifestyle, you should consider reallocating your assets in the following way. Put $110,000 in an annuity, $78,000 in an Individual Retirement Account (IRA), $45,000 in municipal bonds, $37,000 in a stock fund, $42,000 in certificates of deposit (CD), and $3,500 in a checking account. This will allow you to have a higher overall rate of return, yet remain almost risk free in regards to your capital. I know that preservation of capital is of paramount importance at this time in your life.

Rewriting

Revise and rewrite the rough draft. Bert realized that a paragraph would not communicate asset allocations easily to the customer, so he revised the paragraph into a pie chart for the presentation. Figure 32 shows Bert's pie chart of asset allocation.

FIGURE 32 Revised Pie Chart of Asset Allocation



CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Use graphics to create a more concise document.
2. Graphics add cosmetic appeal to your text, breaking up wall-to-wall words.
3. Color and 3-D graphics can be effective. However, these two design elements also can cause problems. Your color choices might not be reproduced exactly as you planned, and a 3-D graphic could be misleading rather than informative.
4. Tables are effective for presenting numbers, dates, and columns of figures.
5. Figures, such as bar charts, pie charts, line charts, flowcharts, and organizational charts, highlight and supplement important parts of your text.
6. Online graphics are protected by copyright laws.
7. Icons can communicate effectively to multicultural audiences.
8. Graphics, such as line graphs, pie charts, and bar charts, show trends, percentages, and comparisons.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. Bert Lang is an investment banker at Country Commercial Bank, as noted in this chapter's beginning scenario. He is writing a proposal to a potential client, Sylvia Light, a retired public health nurse. She now has $315,500 in savings, allocated as follows: $78,000 in an individual retirement account (IRA); $234,000 in a low-earning certificate of deposit (CD); and $3,500 in her checking account.

   Sylvia contacted Bert, asking him to help her organize her portfolio for a comfortable retirement. Bert has studied Sylvia's various accounts and considered her lifestyle and expenditures. Now, he is ready to write the proposal. Bert plans to propose that Sylvia could reallocate her funds as follows:
   - $110,000 in an annuity
   - $78,000 in an IRA
   - $45,000 in municipal bonds
   - $37,000 in a stock fund
   - $42,000 in CDs
   - $3,500 in a checking account

   To make this proposal visually appealing and more readily understandable to Sylvia, Bert will use visual aids.

Assignment

- Create a table to show how Bert wants to invest Sylvia's money.
- Create a bar chart comparing Sylvia's current allocations versus Bert's proposed allocations.

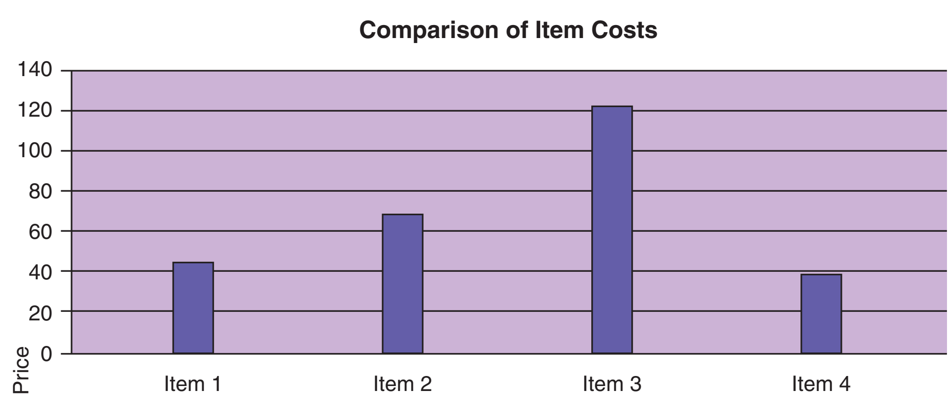
2. Jim Goodwin owns an insurance agency, Goodwin and Associates Insurance (GAI). Correspondence is a major part of his technical communication with vendors, clients, and his insurance company's home office. However, many of Jim's employees fail to recognize the importance of communication. To prove how important their communication is to the company, Jim plans to summarize the amount of writing they do on the job. He has determined that they write the following each week:
   - 38 inquiry letters
   - 56 response letters
   - 43 e-mail messages
   - 25 adjustment letters
   - 17 reports

Assignment

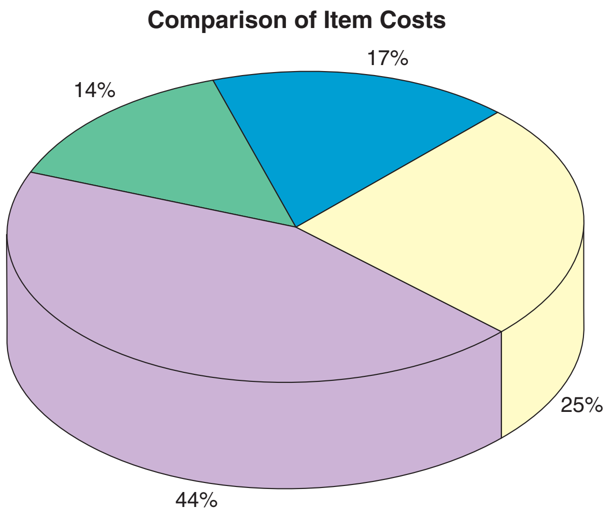
To show his employees the importance of technical communication, Jim wants to create a visual aid depicting this data. Create the appropriate graphic for GAI's employees.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

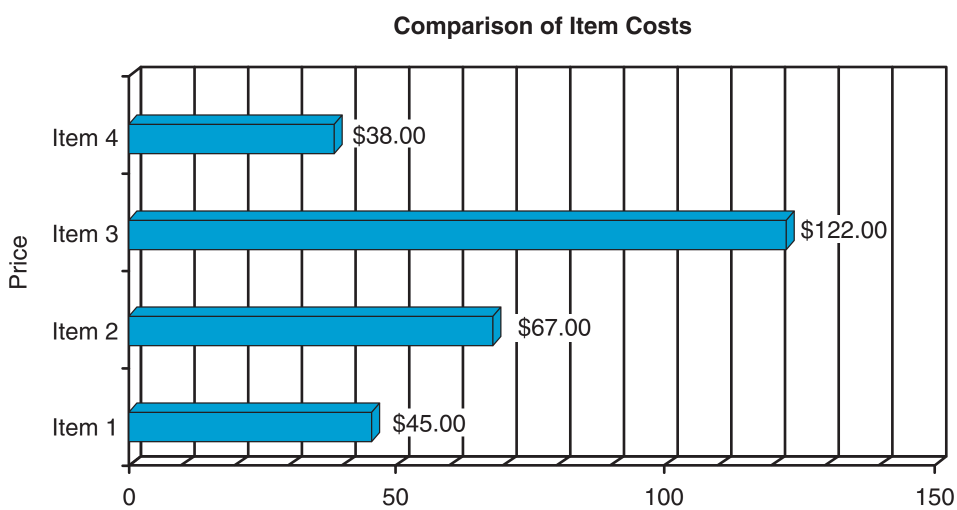
1. Present the following information in a pie chart, a bar chart, and a table.
   In 2013, the Interstate Telephone Company bought and installed 100,000 relays. It used these for long-range testing programs that assessed failure rates. It purchased 40,000 Nestor 221s; 20,000 VanCourt 1200s; 20,000 Macro R40s; 10,000 Camrose Series 8s; and 10,000 Hardy SP6s.
2. Using the information presented in activity 1 and the following revised data, show the comparison between 2013 and 2014 purchases through two pie charts, a grouped bar chart, and a table.
   In 2014, after assessing the success and failure of the relays, the Interstate Telephone Company made new purchases of 200,000 relays. It bought 90,000 VanCourt 1200s; 50,000 Macro R40s; 30,000 Camrose Series 8s; and 30,000 Hardy SP6s. No Nestors were purchased.
3. Analyze the following graphics and explain which ones succeed and which ones fail.
   a. Vertical Bar Chart



b. Pie Chart



c. Horizontal Bar Chart



d. Table

TABLE 1 Comparison of Item Costs

	Price	Percentage
Item 1	$ 45.00	17%
Item 2	$ 67.00	25%
Item 3	$122.00	44%
Item 4	$ 38.00	14%
Total	$272.00	100%

4. Based on the criteria provided in this chapter, revise any of the poor graphics from the preceding assignment (number 3). Add any additional information necessary to correct the graphics.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. Angel Guerrero, computer information systems technologist at HeartHome Insurance, was responsible for making an inventory of his company's hardware. He learned the following: The company had 75 laptops, 159 PCs, 27 printers, 10 scanners, and 59 smartphones.

   To write his inventory report, Angel needs to chart the above data. Which type of visual aid should Angel use? Explain your answer, based on the information provided in this chapter. Create the appropriate visual aid.
2. Sally Jones works in the marketing department at Thrill-a-Minute Entertainment Theme Park (TET). Sally and her project team need to study entry prices, ride prices, food and beverage prices, and attendance of their park versus their primary competitor, Carnival Towne (CT).

   Sally and her team have found that TET charges $16.50 admission, while CT charges $24.95. Most of TET's rides are included in the entry price, but special rides (the Horror, the Bomber, the Avenger, and Peter Pan's Train) cost an additional $2.50 each. At CT, the entry fee covers many rides, excluding Alice's Teacup, Top-of-the-World Ferris Wheel, and the Zinger, which cost an additional $2.00 each. Food and beverages at TET cost $1.95 for a hot dog, $2.50 for a hamburger, $3.95 for nachos, and $1.50 and $2.50 for drinks. At CT, food and beverages cost $1.75 for hot dogs, $2.75 for hamburgers, $2.50 for nachos, and $1.50 and 2.50 for drinks. Attendance at TET last year was 250,000, while attendance at CT was 272,000.

   What type of visual aid should Sally and her team use to convey this information? Explain your decision, based on the criteria for graphics provided in this chapter. Create the appropriate visual aid.
3. Toby Hebert is human resource manager at Crab Bayou Industries, the world's largest wholesaler of frozen Cajun food. Toby and her management team are concerned about the company's hiring trends. A prospective employee complained about discriminatory hiring practices at Crab Bayou.

   To prove that the company has not practiced discriminatory hiring practices, Toby has studied the last eleven years' hires by age. She found that in 2004, the average age per employee was 48; in 2005, the average age was 51; in 2006, the average age was 47; in 2007, the average age was 52; in 2008, the average age was 45; in 2009, the average age per employee was 47; in 2010, the average age was 42; in 2011, the average age was 39; in 2012, the average age rose to 42; in 2013 and 2014, the average age fell to 29 and 30 respectively (due to a large number of early retirements).

   What type of visual aid should Toby use to convey this information? Explain your decision, based on the criteria for graphics provided in this chapter. Create the appropriate visual aid.
4. Yasser El-Akiba is a member of his college's International Students' Club. Yasser is a native of Lebanon. Other members of the club are from other countries: three from Australia, two from Ecuador, eight from Mexico, five from Kenya, two from England, three from Canada, four from the Dominican Republic, and nine from China.

   What kind of visual aid could Yasser create to show his club members' homelands? Defend your decision based on criteria for graphics in this chapter. Create the appropriate visual aid.

WEB WORKSHOP

Using an Internet search engine, type in phrases such as “automobile sales+line graph,” “population distribution by age+pie chart,” or “California+organizational chart.” Create similar phrases for bar charts, pictographs, flowcharts, tables, and so forth. Open several links from your Web search and study the examples you have found. Which examples of graphics are successful and why? Which examples of graphics are unsuccessful and why? Explain your reasoning, based on this chapter’s criteria.

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 14 — Geologic Map. Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

Figure 15 — Line Drawing of Ventilator (Exploded View with Callouts). Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

Figure 15 — Line Drawing of Ventilator (Exploded View with Callouts). Courtesy of Covidien, LLC.

Figure 16 — Line Drawing of Exhalation Valve (Exploded View with Legend). Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

Figure 16 — Line Drawing of Exhalation Valve (Exploded View with Legend). Courtesy of Covidien, LLC.

Figure 17 — Line Drawing of Cable (Cutaway View). Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

Figure 18 — Cutaway View of a Railcar Braking System. Courtesy of Burlington Northern Santa Fe Railroad.

Figure 19 —Architectural Rendering. Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

Figure 20 — Virtual Reality Drawing. Courtesy of Johnson Community College.

Figure 21 — Section Elevation of Pharmacy for Lay Audience of City Council Members. Courtesy of Landplan.

Figure 22 — CAD/CAM Site Plan of Pharmacy for High-Tech Audience of Engineers. Courtesy of Landplan.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Yuri Arcurs / Alamy

© George Butler Associates, Inc.

© George Butler Associates, Inc.

© Yuri Arcurs / Alamy

REFERENCES

Horton, William. "The Almost Universal Language: Graphics for International Documents." *Technical Communication* Nov. 1993: 682–693. Print.

Reynolds, Michael, and Liz Marchetta. "Color for Technical Documents." *Intercom* Apr. 1998: 5–7. Print.

"2 out of 3 Americans Use Social Networking Sites." *Corporate Eye*. 23 Mar. 2011. Web. 30 Mar. 2011.

Communicating to Persuade

Communicating to Persuade

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, TechToolshop relies on persuasive writing to expand business.

TechToolshop provides sales, service, maintenance, installation, and data recovery for PC and Mac hardware and software tools. They install, repair, and maintain workstations, servers, printers, and peripherals. Through an online catalogue and storefront site, they sell printers, desktops, mainframes, mini-towers, software, accessories, and encryption devices. Located in Big Springs, Iowa, this business of 1,200 employees began as a small computer store in 2005. Now, however, the company wants to expand its business.

As director of marketing communications at TechToolshop, Amanda Carroll's job is to communicate information to the public about product offerings, company product-line changes, environmentally responsible products, and warranty changes. Many of Amanda's written documents and oral presentations depend on persuasion. To be persuasive, she relies on the traditional methods of argument by appealing to the emotions, being logical, and maintaining ethical standards. She wants to communicate effectively to ensure that information contributes to "product branding" and, in turn, enhances the profitability of the company.

Amanda will use e-mail messages, text messages, instant messages, sales letters, brochures, and fliers to promote Tech-Toolshop's expansion plans. To persuade new customers to

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Know that persuasive technical communication consists of a combination of ethos, logos, and pathos
- Use the ARGU technique to create persuasive routine correspondence, electronic communication, fliers, brochures, sales letters, or press releases
- Avoid logical fallacies when communicating persuasively
- Use many communication channels, including social media, routine correspondence, electronic communication, sales letters, brochures, and fliers to market services and products
- Understand that fliers should be short, focused on one idea, titled, have limited text, and be visually appealing
- Recognize your audience and their needs when you write persuasive documents
- Design the front panel of a brochure with a title and a graphic that depicts the topic; interior panels with information about the topic; and a back panel with mailing directions, maps, or discounts
- Understand that document design is important when you create persuasive routine correspondence, electronic communication, a flier, brochure, sales letter, or press release
- Evaluate persuasive documents using the checklist

visit the store and online sites, Amanda is conducting a multifaceted viral marketing campaign. This will include:

- **Full-color brochures.** Brochures focus on the company's primary functions: computer hardware and software sales and maintenance, data recovery, installation, and repair.
- **Fliers.** To advertise what's on sale this month, fliers show recent industry news that affects the computer user, innovative software information, repair and replacement steps for software updates, best prices for used computer parts, and so on. In contrast to the brochures, the company's single-sided, postcard-sized fliers are more cost effective. These fliers, which can be produced quickly, will focus on individual topics where quick turnaround is important.
- **A corporate Facebook site.** On this social media site, TechToolshop will encourage customer involvement. The company's Facebook site will post photographs of customers who have used TechToolshop's products. In addition, TechToolshop will advertise time-sensitive events, such as holiday specials or limited-time sales, to encourage return visits to the site. Customers who invite their friends to visit the TechToolshop Facebook site will receive discounts on future purchases.
- **Twitter updates.** Through 140-character tweets, TechToolshop will update customers on the arrival of new products, advertise daily specials, and notify followers of upcoming events. Through retweets, messages sent by TechToolshop customers to their friends, the company will benefit from an electronic mass marketing plan.
- **Web site and company blog**. The Web site and blog will allow customers to interact with the company. In the blog, customers can suggest additional parts or services the company can offer as it expands.

One of Amanda's major goals is maintaining excellent customer relations. Hard work and client referrals obviously help contribute to this goal. However, Amanda has found that continuous communication is another way to build client rapport and persuade people to do business with TechToolshop. Though TechToolshop's business is increasing, the company wants to keep adding customers. Outstanding technical communication through persuasive sales letters, social media, brochures, and fliers equals more business for TechToolshop.

The Importance of Argument and Persuasion in Technical Communication

When communicating technical information, you will write and speak for many reasons. You might write a memo, letter, e-mail message, tweet, text message, or instant message to *inform* about an upcoming meeting, a job opportunity, a new product release, or a facilities change. You might give an oral presentation to local businesses, government, or educational organizations in which you hope to *build rapport*. In writing a user manual, your goal will be to *instruct*. When you write a proposal, your goal is to *recommend* changes. If you write a technical specification, you will *analyze* components of a piece of equipment.

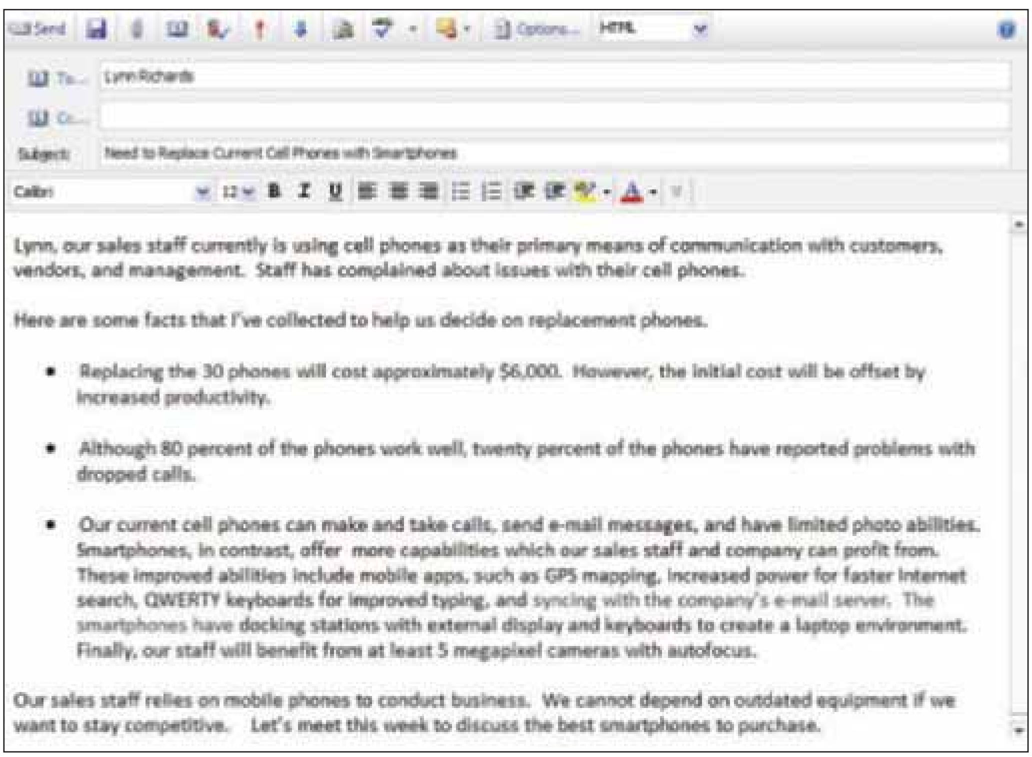
Persuasive Writing Requesting Action

In addition to informing, building rapport, instructing, recommending, and analyzing, you also will need to communicate persuasively. Let's say you are a customer who has purchased a faulty product. You might want to write a letter of complaint or an e-mail message to the manufacturer of this product. To make your case strongly, you will need to convince your audience, clarifying how the product failed. If your argument is effective, then you will persuade the company to give you a refund or new product.

Professionally, you will need to use argument and persuasion daily. As a manager, you might need to argue the merits of a company policy to an unhappy customer. If your colleagues have decided that the department should pursue a course of action, you might need to persuade your boss to act accordingly. Maybe you are asking your boss for a raise or promotion, for office improvements, or for changes to the work schedule. Your task is to persuade the boss to accept your suggestions. In these instances, you will communicate persuasively using any of the following communication channels: routine correspondence (memos, letters, or e-mail); social media (blogs); reports; proposals; or oral presentations.

Figure 1 is a persuasive e-mail from a subordinate to a boss, documenting a problem and suggesting a course of action.

FIGURE 1 Persuasive E-mail



To... Lynn Richards

Subject: Need to Replace Current Cell Phones with Smartphones

Lynn, our sales staff currently is using cell phones as their primary means of communication with customers, vendors, and management. Staff has complained about issues with their cell phones.

Here are some facts that I've collected to help us decide on replacement phones.

- Replacing the 30 phones will cost approximately $6,000. However, the initial cost will be offset by increased productivity.
- Although 80 percent of the phones work well, twenty percent of the phones have reported problems with dropped calls.
- Our current cell phones can make and take calls, send e-mail messages, and have limited photo abilities. Smartphones, in contrast, offer more capabilities which our sales staff and company can profit from. These improved abilities include mobile apps, such as GPS mapping, increased power for faster Internet search, QWERTY keyboards for improved typing, and syncing with the company's e-mail server. The smartphones have docking stations with external display and keyboards to create a laptop environment. Finally, our staff will benefit from at least 5 megapixel cameras with autofocus.

Our sales staff relies on mobile phones to conduct business. We cannot depend on outdated equipment if we want to stay competitive. Let's meet this week to discuss the best smartphones to purchase.

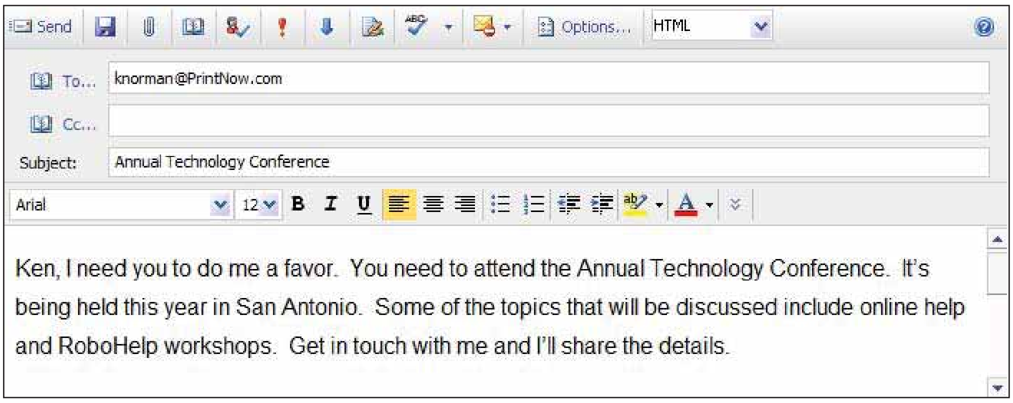
The body develops the argument persuasively by providing facts and figures. In doing so, the writer reveals his knowledge of the subject matter.

The conclusion emphasizes persuasively the urgency of action.

Persuasive Writing within Organizations

Frequently, you will write e-mail messages to supervisors and colleagues, persuading these readers to accept your point of view. Topics could range from requests for promotion, equipment needs, days off from work, assistance with projects, or financial assistance for job-related travel. The following "Before" and "After" e-mail messages seek to persuade a colleague to attend a work-related conference instead of the e-mail writer. The "Before" sample is not effectively persuasive. It reads more like a command and fails to consider the audience's reaction. The "After" sample is more persuasive.

BEFORE

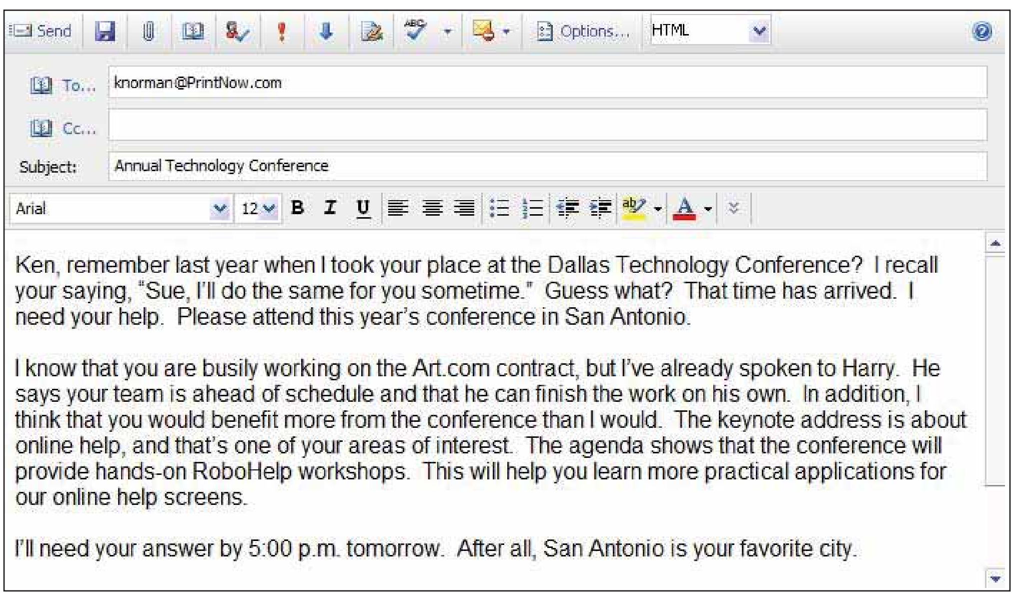


To... knorman@PrintNow.com
Cc...
Subject: Annual Technology Conference

Ken, I need you to do me a favor. You need to attend the Annual Technology Conference. It's being held this year in San Antonio. Some of the topics that will be discussed include online help and RoboHelp workshops. Get in touch with me and I'll share the details.

This e-mail message is not persuasive for a number of reasons: the verb "need" is too commanding. The e-mail fails to arouse the reader's interest or provide sufficient detail to convince the reader of the conference's worth. It also fails to urge the reader to action.

AFTER



To... knorman@PrintNow.com
Cc...
Subject: Annual Technology Conference

Ken, remember last year when I took your place at the Dallas Technology Conference? I recall your saying, "Sue, I'll do the same for you sometime." Guess what? That time has arrived. I need your help. Please attend this year's conference in San Antonio.

I know that you are busily working on the Art.com contract, but I've already spoken to Harry. He says your team is ahead of schedule and that he can finish the work on his own. In addition, I think that you would benefit more from the conference than I would. The keynote address is about online help, and that's one of your areas of interest. The agenda shows that the conference will provide hands-on RoboHelp workshops. This will help you learn more practical applications for our online help screens.

I'll need your answer by 5:00 p.m. tomorrow. After all, San Antonio is your favorite city.

The introductory paragraph arouses reader interest with an anecdote and a question.

The e-mail body begins by refuting any objections. Then, the following sentences show audience benefit.

The conclusion urges action by giving a due date and highlighting reader enjoyment.

FAQs: Marketing and Technical Communication

Q: How does marketing fit in with technical communication?

A: Technical communication is more than hard, cold memos, letters, reports, user manuals, and technical descriptions. Technical communication also has a soft side—*marketing*. The bottom line is every company is in business to make money. Thus, every employee should perceive themselves as marketing personnel.

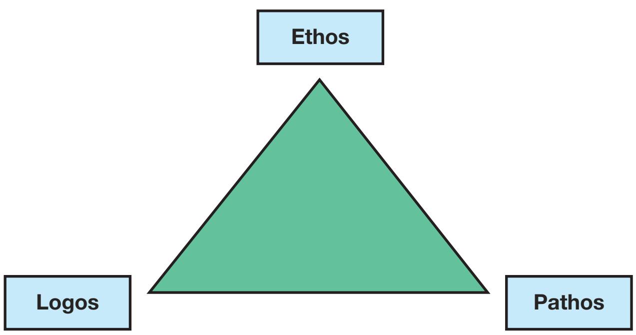
Examples: George Butler Associates (GBA), an architectural and engineering company in Kansas, Missouri, and Illinois, asks every one of its employees to take marketing classes on site. The goal is to help GBA employees work well with clients, vendors, and partners.

The Society for Technical Communication also recognizes the importance of marketing for technical writers. STC's Web site (stc.org) provides links to "Special Interest Groups." One such group is entitled "Marketing Communication." In addition, two recent links for general news included articles about the importance of marketing for technical communicators: "Tech writers as sales reps? Interface Software's award-winning docs boost brand, revenues, and customer satisfaction" and "Technical writers turn to marketing to survive." Persuasive marketing materials are essential to technical communication.

Traditional Methods of Argument and Persuasion

To argue a point persuasively, you can use any of the traditional methods of argumentation: *ethos* (ethical), *pathos* (emotional), and *logos* (logical) appeals. These three appeals to an audience are called the rhetorical triangle, as shown in Figure 2.

FIGURE 2 The Rhetorical Triangle



This equilateral triangle suggests that each part of a persuasive appeal is as important as any other part. In addition, it emphasizes the need for balance of all three appeals or types of proof. Excess emotion, for example, might detract from the logical appeal of your argument. Cold, hard facts might fail to persuade your audience.

Ethical Argumentation (Ethos)

Arguments based on ethics (ethos) depend on your character. If you make arguments based on personal experiences, you must appear to be trustworthy and credible as a writer or speaker. Your reliability can be based on years of experience, education, certifications, publications, job title, client base, and more. To accomplish ethical argumentation, present information that is unbiased, reliable, and evenhanded. In Figure 3 SurveyMonkey establishes credibility by listing its international clientele.

FIGURE 3 SurveyMonkey's Web Site Showing Clients' Names to Establish Credibility

Source: Courtesy of SurveyMonkey

SurveyMonkey, a company that allows users to create online surveys, emphasizes its trustworthiness and credibility through ethos by listing some of its clients.

Emotional Argumentation (Pathos)

Arguments based on emotion (pathos) seek to change an audience's attitudes and actions by focusing on feelings. If you want to move an audience emotionally, you would appeal to passion. You can do this either positively or negatively. To sway an audience positively, you would focus on positive concepts like joy, hope, honor, pleasure, happiness, success, and achievement. You would use positive words to create an appealing message. In contrast, you also can appeal to emotions negatively. Fear, horror, anger, and unhappiness can be powerful tools in an argument.

Notice how the Center for Disease Control warns about the dangers of carbon monoxide: "Carbon monoxide is a silent killer. This colorless, odorless, poisonous gas kills nearly 500 U.S. residents each year, five times as many as West Nile virus" ("CDC and CPSC Warn of Winter Home Heating Hazards"). To highlight the dangers associated with carbon monoxide, the Center for Disease Control uses emotional words, such as *killer* and *poisonous,* and compares this problem to the frightening West Nile virus.

Logical Argumentation (Logos)

Argumentation based on logic (logos) depends on rationality, reason, and proof. You can persuade people logically when you provide them the following:

- Facts—statistics, evidence, data, and research
- Testimony—citing customer or colleague comments, expert authorities, and results of interviews
- Examples—anecdotes, instances, and personal experiences
- Strong, clear claims—including warranties and guarantees
- Acknowledgement of the opposing points of view to ensure that information is balanced

Figure 4 is an e-mail message that argues a case for a raise by focusing on ethics. The writer refers to his work-related achievements to support his credibility. He uses logic—facts and testimony. Also note how the e-mail factors in an opposing point of view. In addition, the e-mail uses emotion to persuade the reader through positive words.

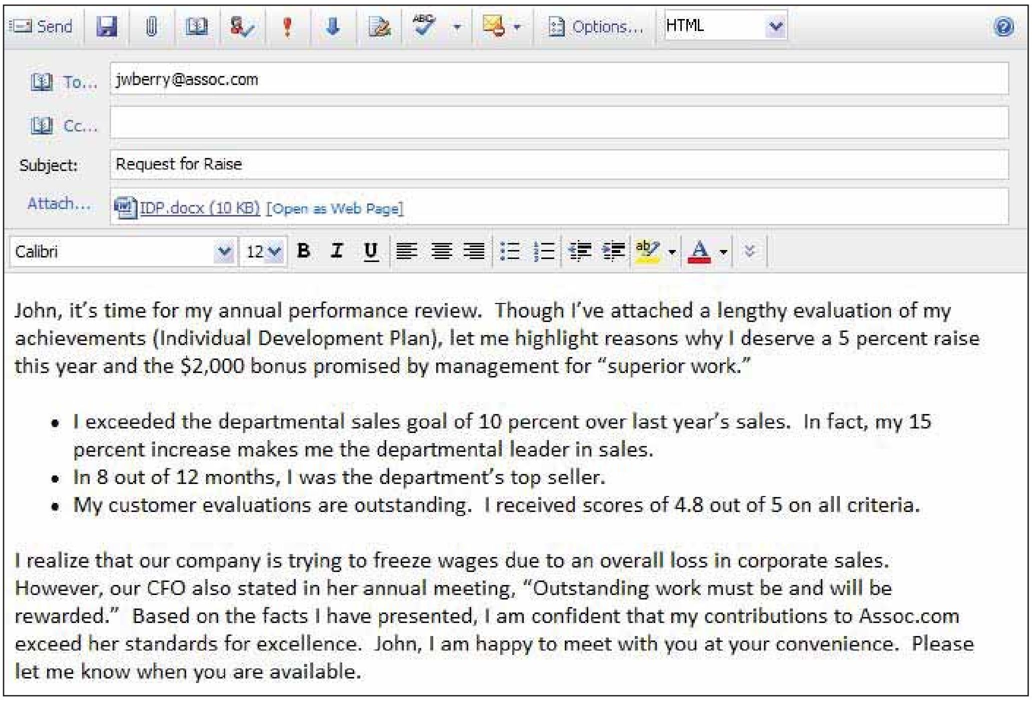
FIGURE 4 Persuasive E-mail Effectively Using Ethos, Pathos, and Logos

Ethics (ethos) is shown when the writer references his achievements at work.

Facts ("4.8 out of 5") and testimony from customer evaluations support the writer's case logically (logos).

Note the use of positive words, such as *achievements*, *highlight*, *exceeded*, and *outstanding*. These are examples of pathos—emotional words to persuade the reader.

The e-mail addresses the opposing point of view ("freeze wages") to present a balanced argument.



John, it's time for my annual performance review. Though I've attached a lengthy evaluation of my achievements (Individual Development Plan), let me highlight reasons why I deserve a 5 percent raise this year and the $2,000 bonus promised by management for "superior work."

- I exceeded the departmental sales goal of 10 percent over last year's sales. In fact, my 15 percent increase makes me the departmental leader in sales.
- In 8 out of 12 months, I was the department's top seller.
- My customer evaluations are outstanding. I received scores of 4.8 out of 5 on all criteria.

I realize that our company is trying to freeze wages due to an overall loss in corporate sales. However, our CFO also stated in her annual meeting, "Outstanding work must be and will be rewarded." Based on the facts I have presented, I am confident that my contributions to Assoc.com exceed her standards for excellence. John, I am happy to meet with you at your convenience. Please let me know when you are available.

ARGU to Organize Your Persuasion

Effective persuasive communication entails ethical, logical, and emotional appeals. Understanding the importance of this rhetorical triangle is only part of your challenge as a persuasive communicator. The next step is deciding how best to present your argument. Using our *ARGU* approach will help you organize your argument:

- *Arouse* audience involvement—grab the audience's attention in the introduction of your communication.
- *Refute* opposing points of view in the body of your communication.
- *Give* proof to develop your thoughts in the body of your communication.
- *Urge* action—motivate your audience in the conclusion.

Arouse Audience Involvement

You have only about five to eight seconds to grab your readers' attention in a sales letter, persuasive e-mail message, marketing brochure, speech, or any persuasive communication. You must arouse the audience's interest imaginatively in the first few sentences of your document or oral presentation. Try any of the following attention grabbers in the introduction of your persuasive message.

- **Use an anecdote—a brief, dramatic story relating to the topic.** Stories engage your audience. You can involve your readers or listeners by recounting an interesting story to which they can relate. The story should be specific in time, place, person, and action. The drama should highlight an event. However, this must be a short scenario, since your time is limited. If you do not capture their interest quickly, the audience might lose interest.

E-mail Message Persuading a Manager to Take Action

Sam, last week, a customer fell down in our parking lot, cutting her knee, tearing her slacks, and requiring medical attention. We can't let this happen again. Please consider hiring a maintenance crew to salt and sand our lot during icy weather.

◀ EXAMPLE

This anecdote is specific in time, place, person, and action.

- **Start with a question to interest your audience.** By asking a question, you involve your audience. Questions imply the need for an answer. A question can make readers or listeners ask themselves, "How would I answer that?" This encourages their participation.

Sales Letter from a Financial Planner

Where will I get money for my kid's college education? How can I afford to retire? Will my insurance cover all medical bills? You have asked yourself these questions. Our estate planning video has the answers.

◀ EXAMPLE

By asking questions, you involve your audience.

- **Begin with a quotation to give your communication the credibility of authority.** By quoting specialists in a field or famous people, you enhance your credibility and support your assertions. A quote from Warren Buffett, world-renowned investor and businessman, about economics, for example, gives credence to a financial topic. Similarly, quotes from Bill Gates, founder of Microsoft, about the computer industry are trustworthy.

An Oral Presentation about Stock Performance to Shareholders

As Warren Buffett says, "Our favorite holding period is forever." Though our stock prices are down now, don't panic and sell. The company will rebound.

◀ EXAMPLE

Use a quote from an authority to lend credence to your argument.

- **Let facts and figures enhance your credibility.** Factual information (percentages, sales figures, amounts, or dates) catches the audience's attention and lays the groundwork for your persuasion.

Sales Letter about Computer Technology

Eighty-seven percent of all college students own a computer. Don't go off to college unprepared. Buy your laptop or PC at CompuRam today.

◀ EXAMPLE

Facts and figures help persuade your reader to your point of view.

- **Appeal to the senses.** You can involve your audience by letting them hear, taste, smell, feel, or visualize a product.

Marketing Flier Advertising a New Restaurant

Hickory-smoked goodness and fire-flamed Grade A beef—let Roscoe's BBQ bring the taste of the South to your neighborhood.

◀ EXAMPLE

An appeal to the senses can involve your reader.

- **Use comparison or contrast to highlight your message.** Comparison/contrast lets you make your point more persuasively. For example, you might want to show a client that your computer software is superior to the competition. You might want to show a boss that following one plan for corporate restructuring is better than an alternative plan. You could justify why an employee has not received a raise by comparing or contrasting his or her performance to the departmental norm.

EXAMPLE ▶

Comparing one year to another provides a benchmark for the writer's argument.

E-mail from Management to Subordinates Proposing Changes in Procedures

Last year our department fell short of corporate sales goals. This year we must surpass expectations. To do so, I propose a seven-step procedure.

- **Begin with poetic devices.** Advertising has long used alliteration (the repetition of sounds), similes (comparisons), and metaphors to create audience interest. Poetic devices are memorable, clever, fun, and catchy.

EXAMPLE ▶

Use alliteration, the repetition of sounds, to appeal to an audience.

Sales Letter from a Bank

Looking for a low-loan lease? Let US Bank take care of your car leases. Our 2 percent loans beat the best.

- **Create a feeling of comfort, ease, or well-being.** To welcome your audience, making them feel calm and peaceful, invoke nostalgia or good times.

EXAMPLE ▶

Interest your audience by making them feel comfortable and welcomed.

Slogan from a Mortgage Company Brochure

Come home again to Countryside Mortgage. We treat our customers like neighbors.

- **Create a feeling of discomfort, fear, or anxiety.** Another way to involve your audience is through stress. Beginning communication by highlighting a problem allows you to persuade the audience that you offer the solution.

EXAMPLE ▶

A negative example can incite an audience to action.

Sales Letter from an Apartment Complex

Why pay too much? If you paid over $300 a month for your apartment last semester, you got robbed. We'll charge 20 percent less—guaranteed.

Refute Opposing Points of View

You can strengthen your argument by considering opposing opinions. Doing so shows your audience that you have considered your topic thoroughly. Rather than looking at the subject from only one perspective, you have considered alternatives and discarded them as lacking in merit. In addition, by refuting opposing points of view, you anticipate negative comments an audience might make and defuse their argument.

To refute opposing points of view in the discussion (body) of your communication, follow these steps:

- Recognize and admit conflicting views.
- Let the audience know that you understand their concerns.
- Provide evidence.
- Allow for alternatives.

FIGURE 5 Letter of Application using Refutation

1901 West King's Highway
San Antonio, TX 77910

February 27, 2014

Marissa Lee
Manager, Human Resources
PMBR Marketing
20944 Wildrose Dr.
San Antonio, TX 78213

Dear Ms. Lee:

In response to your advertisement in the *San Antonio Daily Register*, please consider me for the position of marketing accounts associate. I have enclosed a resume elaborating on ways I can benefit your company.

Your advertisement requires someone with a BA in marketing. Though I do not have this degree, my experience and skills prepare me for this position:

- Worked for ten years in marketing.
- Prepared press releases and created public service announcements.
- Created 30-second spots for local radio and television stations.
- Participated in press conferences providing corporate information about declining stock values and company layoffs.
- Created PowerPoint presentations for local governmental agencies.
- Enrolled in a Marketing class at the University of Texas.

My experience and abilities will make me an asset in your marketing department. I would be happy to meet with you to discuss ways in which I can benefit PMBR. Please contact me at arosa22@hotmail.com.

Sincerely,
Armondo Rosa
Armondo Rosa

Attachment: Resume

The writer's refutation anticipates negative comments the audience might have and defuses the argument through proof and alternatives.

The writer refutes the job requirement for a BA.

The first five bullets provide evidence to show that the writer has skills appropriate for the job versus a degree.

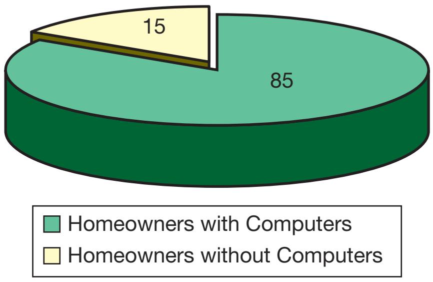
The current enrollment provides an alternative to the degree requirement.

Figure 5 shows a letter of application that successfully uses refutation as part of its persuasion.

Give Proof to Develop Your Thoughts

In the body of your communication, develop your argument with proof. Arousing an audience's interest and refuting opposing points of view will not necessarily persuade the audience. Most people require details and supporting evidence before making decisions. You can provide specific details to support your argument using any of the techniques in Table 1.

TABLE 1 Techniques for Supporting an Argument

Provide facts and figures to document your assertions.	Eighty-five percent of the homeowners contend that . . . or Seven out of ten buyers said they would . . .
Persuade through graphics.	
Give testimony from satisfied customers, vendors, or coworkers.	The Job Corps of Blue Valley, Titan Co., and Amex Inc. have used our product for over ten years. or Julie Jones, sales associate, attests to my effective interaction with customers.
Document your credentials—years in business or certification of employees.	In business since 2000 . . . or All of our staff members are certified public accountants.
Give examples.	For example, I attended three continuing education seminars this year. These included training workshops on Microsoft Office Word applications, Effective Business Writing, and Listening Skills. Because of my continuing education, I have the credentials needed to be an effective project manager. Please consider me for promotion.
Cite rules and regulations.	Section II.a of the State Waste Management Act specifies that wood debris, railroad ties, and used tires must be disposed of.
Attach an expert's name.	Linda Freeman, certified public accountant, suggests that allocating $12,500 to a Self-Employment Pension (SEP) account will lower your federal taxes.

Urge Action—Motivate Your Audience

Throughout your communication, you have worked to persuade the audience to accept your point of view. In the conclusion, you need to motivate the audience to action. This could include any of the following: attend a meeting, purchase new equipment, invite you to interview for a position, vote on a proposition, promote you, give you a raise, allow you to work a flexible schedule, or change a company policy.

To urge the audience to action, consider the techniques in Table 2.

The following paragraph concludes a persuasive letter from a governmental agency to a business owner.

EXAMPLE ▶

This conclusion provides a due date, explains why the date is important, shows negative consequences, and tells the reader what to do next. This information helps to motivate the reader.

> Your business has not been in compliance for over 16 months. We have written three letters to give you guidance and information necessary to get the facility into compliance. You have not responded to our efforts, with the exception of last week's phone call. The deadline for the pending abatement order is 30 days. Please reply to this letter in a timely manner to avoid fines. We are open to having a meeting at our regional office to discuss the corrective measures you can take to address the pending order. Thank you for considering your options.

TABLE 2 Techniques for Motivating an Audience to Action

Give due dates.	Please respond by January 15.
Explain why a date is important.	Your response by January 15 will give me time to prepare a quarterly review and meet with you if I have additional questions.
Provide contact information for follow up.	Please submit your proposal to Hank Green, project director. You can e-mail him at hgreen@modernco.com.
Suggest the next course of action.	We need to plan our presentation before the next City Council meeting, so please attend Tuesday's meeting at 9:00 a.m.
Show negative consequences.	You must repair your sidewalk within 30 days to comply with city laws regarding pedestrian safety. Failure to do so will result in a $150 fine.
Reward people for following through.	Following these ten simple steps will help you load the software easily and effectively.

SPOTLIGHT

Writing Persuasively in Business and Industry

Logos, ethos, and pathos—these argumentation devices are ancient, but they're everyday communication tools in modern marketing. Here's what Ron Dubrov says about persuasive communication.

"Where words appeal primarily to rationality, the graphics and sound help to create emotional impact." To build trust, faith, and credibility in a product or service, Ron believes that words provide descriptive detail and supportive facts, while graphics, music, rhyme, and rhythm add interest.

Ron is CEO of RonDubrovCreative, an advertising/marketing company that utilizes creative copywriting, audio, video, and graphic design techniques to help clients develop their corporate identity and achieve their marketing communications objectives.

Words Provide Rational Proof

For example, in developing the Kansas Department of Transportation's "Kansas Clicks"© campaign to raise awareness and emphasize the importance of wearing seat belts, Ron created messages for radio, television, billboards, and print media based on the use of persuasive logic. To arouse the audience's interest, he used a variety of traditional techniques:

- **Questions** ("Hear it 'click?' Your seat belt is trying to tell you something. Listen. It's the first sound of a responsible driver.")
- **Facts** ("If you want your kids to be safe, let them hear your seat belt. Because when you click, they click!")
- **Startling images** (headline superimposed over a shattered windshield: "What's going to stop you from not wearing a seat belt?")

Statistical facts also served as the basis of the seat belt campaign message directed toward drivers of pickup trucks. Research showed that over half the people in Kansas who drive pickup trucks fail to wear their seat belt—the one safety feature that could save their lives.

To urge action on the part of his audience, Ron uses "classic retail techniques"—reward for action, such as gifts or incentives. These include "limited time offers and coupon redemption." In the "Kansas Clicks" and "Click It or Ticket" campaigns, the rewards or benefits of taking positive action become even more emphatic—avoiding fines, being able to keep your license and continue to drive, and ensuring safety by surviving a car crash.

Graphics and Sound Create Emotional Context

To add interest and build emotional impact in his radio advertisements, Ron appeals to the "mind's eye" and memorable rhythm. For the "Kansas Clicks" campaign, these included a custom audio track with seat belt clicking sound; street/traffic sounds; driving on rough, gravel roads; automobile doors opening and slamming shut; and screeching tires and crashes.

Many of the radio commercials were written in Spanish and English, and the audio effects helped to maintain a cohesive campaign as well as maintain emotional impact. "It's a powerful tool," Ron says. "Sound transcends language."

Valuing the Audience

How does Ron judge the success of his persuasive documents? He offers value to his clients by being "the voice" of the customer, by reacting as the customer would, and by searching for and promoting the "real truth and value to the end user." These are attributes that not only abide by the Society for Technical Communication's ethical guidelines but also contribute to Ron's success as a professional.

Avoiding Unethical Logical Fallacies

In a corporate environment, you must persuade your audience not only logically but also ethically. Your persuasive communication must be honest and reasonable. Honesty demands that you avoid the following logical fallacies.

Inaccurate Information

Facts and figures must be accurate. One way in which dishonest appeals are made in communication is through inaccurate graphics. Look at Figures 6 and 7. Figure 6 shows a $25,000 deficit in the third quarter. So does Figure 7. However, the size of the bar in Figure 7 is misleading and imprecise, visually suggesting that the loss is less. This is an inaccurate depiction of information.

FIGURE 6 Accurate Depiction of Information

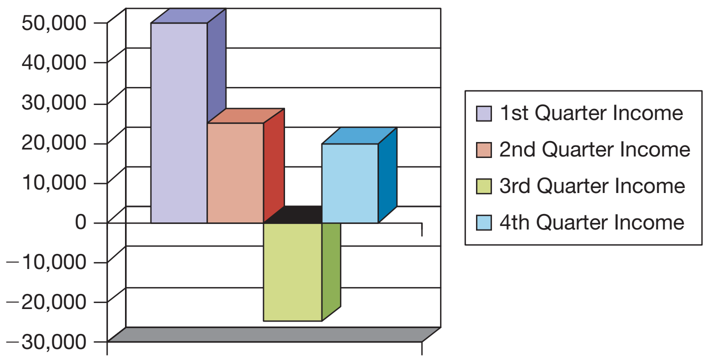
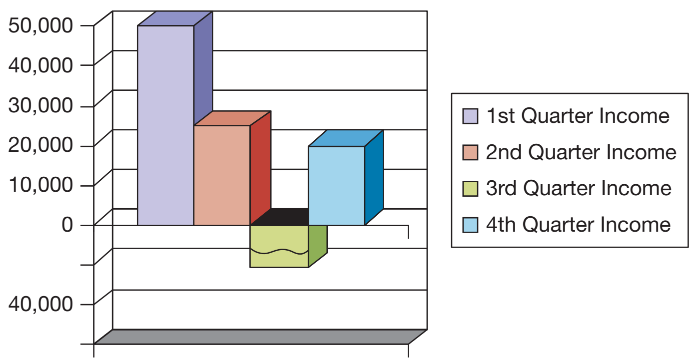


FIGURE 7 Inaccurate Depiction of Information



Unreliable Sources

Being an expert in one field does not mean you are an expert in all fields. For example, quoting a certified public accountant to support an important healthcare issue is illogical. Not all specialists are reliable in all situations.

Sweeping Generalizations

Avoid exaggerating. Allow for exceptions. For instance, it is illogical to say that "***All*** marketing experts believe that newsletters are effective." Either qualify this with a word like *some* or quantify with specific percentages.

Either . . . Or

Suggesting that a reader has only two options is deceitful if other options exist. Allow for other possibilities. It is wrong to write, "Either all employees must come to work on time, or they will be fired." This blanket statement excludes alternatives or exceptions. Is the "either . . . or" statement true if an employee has a car accident, if an employee's child is sick, or if the employee is caught in heavy traffic due to a snowstorm?

Circular Reasoning (Begging the Question)

"Some advertising executives are ambitious because they are motivated to succeed." This statement is illogical and uses circular reasoning because it states the same thing twice. *Ambitious* and *motivated* are essentially synonyms. The writer fails to prove the assertion.

Inaccurate Conclusions

When communicating persuasively, consider all possible causes and effects. Exact causes of events often are difficult to determine.

- A condition that *precedes* another is not necessarily the *cause* of it. This error is called *post hoc, ergo propter hoc.*

◀ EXAMPLE

> The contractor lost the bid, so he cannot expect to have increased revenues this fiscal year.

Yes, the contractor lost a bid, but this does not necessarily mean that the contractor won't increase revenues in some other way. To say so is to make a hasty conclusion based on too little information.

- A condition that *follows* is not necessarily the *effect* of another. This is called a *non sequitur.*

◀ EXAMPLE

> Because the manager is inexperienced, the report will be badly written.

Again, this is a hasty conclusion. Lack of experience in one area does not necessarily lead to a lack of ability in another area.

Red Herrings

If you focus on an irrelevant issue to draw attention from a central issue, this is called a red herring. For instance, you have failed to pay fines following citations for the mishandling of hazardous wastes. You contact the state environmental agency and complain about state taxes being too high. This is an irrelevant issue. By focusing on high taxes, you are merely avoiding the central issue.

To write effective persuasive documents, you must develop your assertions correctly, avoiding logical fallacies.

Types of Persuasive Documents

You have manufactured a new product (a mobile app, a mini digital camera, a paper-thin plasma computer monitor, a fiber optic cable, or a microfiber rain jacket). Perhaps you have just created a new service (home visitation healthcare, a mobile accounting business, a Web design consulting firm, or a gourmet food preparation and delivery service). Congratulations!

However, if your product sits in your basement gathering dust or your service exists only in your imagination, what have you accomplished? To benefit from your labors, you must market your product or service.

To convince potential customers to purchase your merchandise, you could write any of the following persuasive documents:

- Sales letters
- Fliers
- Brochures
- Press releases

Sales Letters

When writing your sales letter, include the letter essentials (letterhead address, date, reader's address, salutation, text, complimentary close, and signature). Your sales letter should accomplish the following objectives relating to effective persuasion.

***A*rouse Reader Interest.** The introductory paragraph of your sales letter tells your readers why you are writing (you want to increase their happiness or reduce their anxieties, for example). Your introduction should highlight a reader problem, need, or desire. If the readers do not need your services, then they will not be motivated to purchase your merchandise. The introductory sentences also should mention the product or service you are marketing, stating that this is the solution to their problems. Arouse your readers' interest with anecdotes, questions, quotations, or facts.

***R*efute Opposing Points of View.** Your audience will not always agree with your assertions. To persuade the reader to accept your point of view, anticipate disagreements or alternative points of view. Consider opposing comments about your new product or service. Think about what your competitors offer as alternatives to your company. By mentioning competitors or alternative ideas and refuting them, you emphasize your product's value.

***G*ive Proof to Develop Your Thoughts.** In the discussion paragraph(s), specify exactly what you offer to benefit your audience or how you will solve your readers' problems. You can do this in a traditional paragraph. In contrast, you might want to itemize your suggestions in a numbered or bulleted list. Whichever option you choose, the discussion should provide data to document your assertions, give testimony from satisfied customers, or emphasize your credentials.

***U*rge Action.** Make readers act. If your conclusion says, "We hope to hear from you soon," you have made a mistake. The concluding paragraph of a sales letter should motivate the reader to act.

Conclude your sales letter in any of the following ways:

- Provide your Web site URL; online help desk e-mail address; and social media links to the company blog, Twitter account, or Facebook site.
- Give directions (with a map) to your business location.
- Provide a tear-out to send to you for further information.
- Supply a self-addressed, stamped envelope for customer response.
- Offer a discount if the customer responds within a given period of time.
- Give your name or a customer-contact name and a phone number (toll free if possible).

Figure 8 provides a sample sales letter using the *ARGU* method of persuasion.

FIGURE 8 Sales Letter Using *ARGU* Method of Persuasion

ConnectionNet
9516 Pecan St.
Santa Clara, CA 66321

November 10, 2014

GamesterLine
8821 Wilkes Way
Houston, TX 77300

Subject: Leveraging Social Media to Increase Your Customer Base

Is your business growing as fast as you'd like? Are you only depending on word of mouth and repeat customers to increase company sales? It's time to reach a new and larger clientele. Let *ConnectionNet* help you reach the world's largest consumer base. Join the 77 percent of businesses who use social media to increase their market share.

The introduction arouses reader interest by asking questions. The questions highlight a reader problem: the need to increase business.

The introduction states that *ConnectionNet* can solve the problems.

ConnectionNet's IBM-trained information technologists will help you with the following options:

- Create Twitter and Facebook accounts to introduce new products and services.
- Start "blogrolling"—create a corporate blog to initiate topics of discussion and provide answers to customer questions.
- Use Twitter as an online help line for quick and personalized responses to customer concerns.
- Allow customers to communicate with each other through your blog site.
- Provide customer support with YouTube video instructional manuals.
- Use our "Trackback" options to monitor what customers are saying about your products and services.

The letter provides specific proof to sway the reader and build credibility: *77 percent, IBM-trained,* and *63 percent*. The letter also uses alliteration ("power to propel profits").

According to statistics, three quarters of global customers who use the Internet also visit social network sites. Studies show that social media links improve your search engine rankings by 63 percent. With our help, you can harness this power to propel profits. Act today! Cyber Monday is coming soon, when online shoppers spend billions of dollars. If you contact us this week, we'll build your social media sites for a one-time only 20 percent discount.

The conclusion urges action by giving a seasonal discount.

Sam Greenberg

Sam Greenberg

CEO, ConnectionNet

sgreen@connectionnet.com www.connectionnet.com 800-555-CONN

Fliers

Corporations and companies; educational institutions; religious organizations; museums, zoos, and amusement parks; cities and states—they all need to communicate with their constituencies (clients, citizens, members). An effective way for these organizations to communicate persuasively is with a one- or two-page flier, electronic or hardcopy.

Fliers provide the following benefits:

- **Cost effective.** A flier costs less than an expensive advertising campaign and can be produced in-house.
- **Time efficient.** Creating a flier can take only a few hours of work or less by the company's employees.
- **Responsive to immediate needs.** Different fliers can be created for different audiences and purposes to meet unique, emerging needs.
- **Personalized.** Fliers can be created with a specific market or client in mind. Then, these fliers either can be mailed or e-mailed to that client or hand-delivered for more personalization.
- **Persuasive.** In a compact format, fliers concisely communicate audience benefit.

Flier Criteria. When writing your flier, follow these criteria.

Determine the length of the flier. Though one page might be preferable, you could create a two-page flier, using the front and back of an 8½" × 11" piece of paper. If you keep your flier to one page (front only), then you can save money by folding the flier in thirds, stapling it, and using the blank side for mailing purposes (addresses and stamp). A flier even could be smaller, the size of a postcard, for example. Many companies create electronic fliers, transmitted via their Web sites or through e-mail. This is more cost effective than a hard-copy flier, since no postage is needed.

Focus on one idea, topic, or theme per flier. A flier should make one key point. This is how you make the flier's content relevant to your audience, fulfilling that audience's unique needs. For example, if your company's focus is automotive parts, avoid writing a flier covering every car accessory. Write the flier with one accessory in mind, such as windshield wipers, batteries, or custom rims.

Use a title at the top of your flier to identify its theme. The title can be one or two words long, you could use a phrase, or you might want to write an entire sentence at the top of the flier. An effective persuasive approach is to begin your flier with a question to immediately arouse reader interest: "Is your software giving you a headache?" or "How usable is your Web site?"

Limit your text. Using few words, provide reader benefit, involve the audience, and motivate them to act. The action could be to purchase a product, attend an event, or contact you for additional information. By limiting your text, you avoid overwhelming either the flier's appearance or the audience's attention span. Getting to the point in a flier is a key concern. Limiting your text helps you achieve this goal.

Increase font size. In a flier you can use a 16-point font and up for text, and a 20-point font and up for titles. This will make the text more readable and dramatic. Your heading must be eye catching. To accomplish this goal, make sure the heading's font size and style are emphatic—at a glance, even from across a room.

Use graphics. One graphic, at least, will emphasize your theme and visually make your point memorable. Another graphic could include your company logo (for corporate identity and namesake recognition). In addition, the logo should be accompanied by a street address, e-mail address, Web site URL, fax number, or phone number so clients can contact you or visit your site.

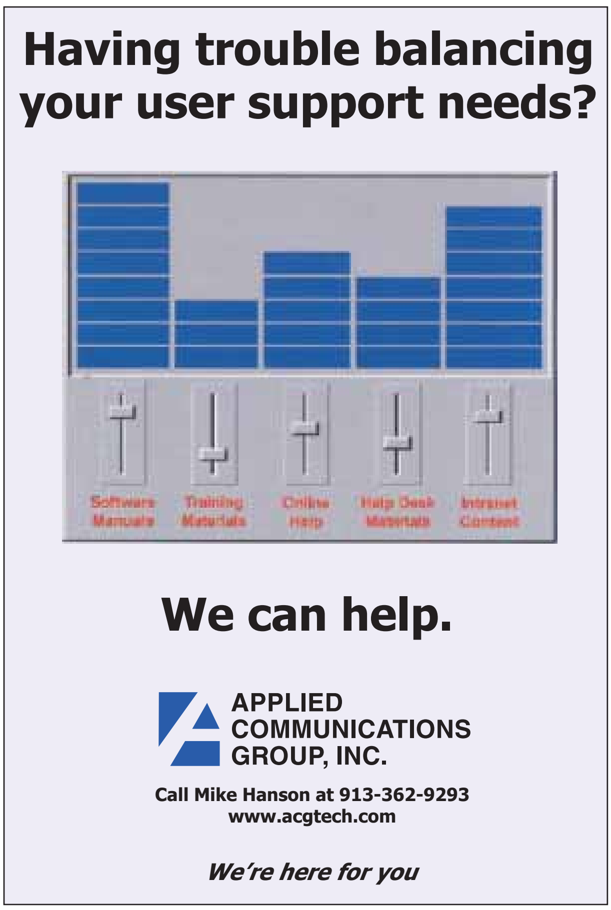
Use color for audience appeal. Pick one dominant color to emphasize key points. Use a color in your company logo to remind your reader of your company's identity. However, don't overuse color. Excess will distract your reader.

Use highlighting techniques. Bullets, white space, tables, boldface, italics, headings, text boxes, or subheadings will help your reader access information. A little highlighting goes a long way, especially on a one-page flier. Too much makes a jumble of your text and distracts from the message.

Find the phrase. Select a catchy phrase, which you can use continually in all your fliers, to personify your company's primary focus. For example, McDonald's repeats the line "We love to make you smile"; Pepsi uses "The Joy of Cola"; Nike says "Just Do It"; and Ford asserts "Quality is Job #1." What phrase captures your company's personality?

Recognize your audience. You want to show the readers how your product or service will benefit them. Understand your audience's needs and direct the flier to meet those concerns. In addition, you want to engage the reader. To do this, use pronouns that speak to the reader on a personal level and positive words that motivate the reader to action. Remember to speak at the reader's level of understanding, defining terms as necessary. Figure 9 provides a sample persuasive flier.

FIGURE 9 Sample Persuasive Flier



An introductory question appeals to the reader's needs.

A graphic adds visual appeal to make the flier more persuasive. The graphic also develops how the company can meet the audience's need.

This sentence answers the introductory question.

The contact name and number are provided to motivate the reader.

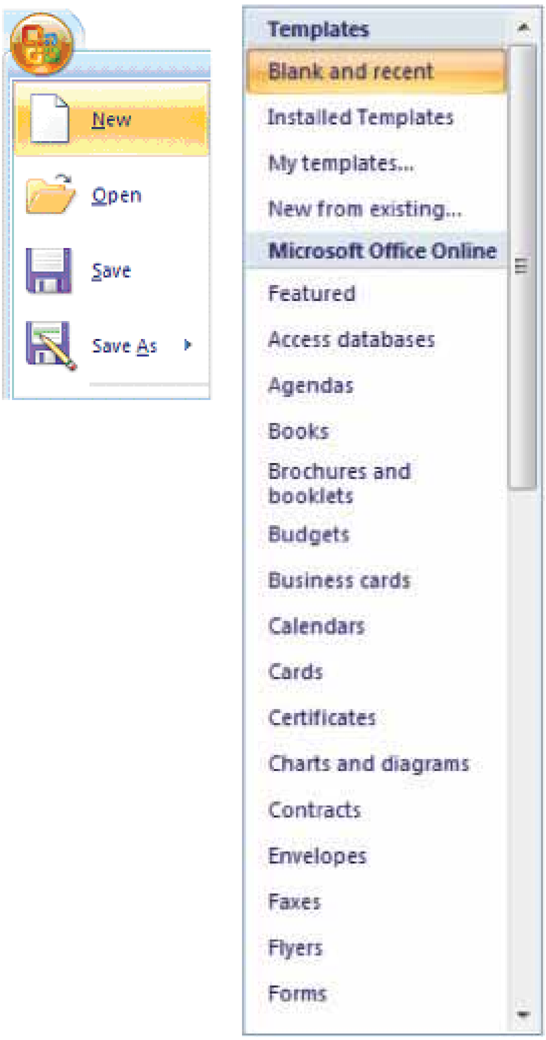
The last sentence uses empathy to persuade the audience.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Using Microsoft Office Word 2010 for Flier and Brochure Design Templates

You can access many design templates for fliers and brochures using your word processing software. For example, in Microsoft Office Word 2010, try this approach:

1. On the menu bar, click the **File** tab and scroll to **New**. You will see **Available Templates** pop up.



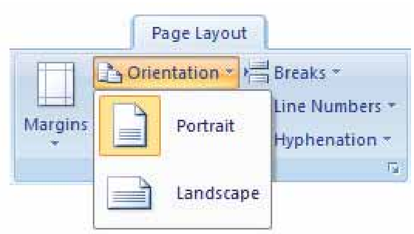
2. Click on the document type of your choice (**Flyers** or **Brochures**). Word gives you 51 different brochure options for healthcare, business, event marketing, real estate, and more. These include templates for 8½" × 11" landscape with three folds, 8½" × 14" landscape with three and four folds, and 8½" × 11" portrait letter folds. When you click on **Flyers,** you get templates for 67 different events fliers, 64 marketing options, 3 real estate choices, and numerous other flyers.

Note: The templates will not tell you what to write in each panel. Instead, Word provides you a design layout, a shell for you to fill with your content.

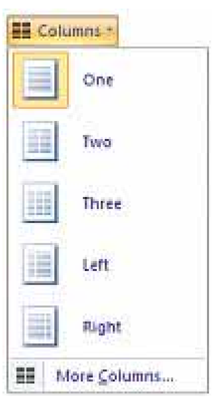
Creating Your Own Brochure Layout

Instead of using a predetermined template, you can create your own as follows:

1. Change from **Portrait** to **Landscape** by clicking the **Page Layout** tab and then clicking **Orientation**.



2. Create three panels for your brochure by clicking the **Columns** icon.



Brochures

A flier *must* be short—one or two pages. If you have more information to convey than can fit on a one-page flier, then a brochure might be a good option. Brochures offer you a detailed overview of products, services, options, and opportunities, complete with photographs, maps, or charts. Brochures persuade in the following ways:

- Create awareness of your company, product, or service
- Increase understanding of a product, service, or your company's mission
- Advertise new aspects about your company, product, or service
- Change negative attitudes
- Show ways in which your company, product, or service surpasses your competition
- Increase frequency of use, visit, or purchase
- Increase market share

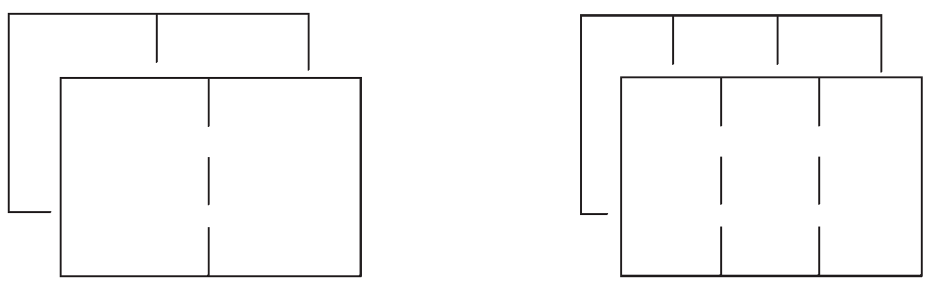
DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about creating brochures, check out the following links:

- http://www.hp.com/sbso/productivity/howto/marketing_main/marketing_brochure/
- www.smallbusinessnotes.com/operating/marketing/brochures.html

Criteria for Writing Brochures. Brochures come in many shapes and sizes. They can range from a simple front and back, four-panel, 8½" × 5½" brochure (one landscape 8½" × 11" page folded in half vertically) to six-, eight-, or even 12-panel brochures printed on any size paper you choose. See Figure 10 for two ways to fold paper to create panels in a brochure. Brochures, like fliers, also can be transmitted electronically. Your topic and the amount of information you are delivering will determine your brochure's size and means of transmission.

FIGURE 10 Four- and Six-Panel Brochures



To determine what you will write in each panel of your brochure and how the brochure should look, follow these criteria for writing an effective persuasive brochure.

Title page (Front panel). Usually, the title page includes at least three components:

- **Topic.** In the top third of the title panel, name the topic. This includes a product name, a service, a location (such as "Rocky Mountain Park" or "San Diego Zoo"), or the subject of your brochure.
- **Graphic.** In the middle third of the panel, include a graphic to appeal to your reader's need for a visual representation of your topic. The graphic will sell the value of your subject (its beauty, its usefulness, its location, or its significance) or visually represent the focus of your brochure.
- **Contact Information.** In the bottom third of the panel, place contact information. Include your name, your company's name, street address, city, state, zip code, telephone number, Web site, or e-mail address.

Back panel. The back panel could include the following:

- **Conclusion.** Summarize your brochure's content. Restate the highlights of your topic or suggest a next step for your readers to pursue.
- **Mailing.** The back panel could be used like the face of an envelope. On this panel, when left blank, you could provide a return address, a place for a stamp or paid postage, and your reader's address.
- **Coupons.** As a tear-out, this panel could be an incentive for your readers to visit your site or use your service. Here you could urge action by providing discounts or complimentary tickets.
- **Location.** A final consideration would be to provide your reader with your address, hours of operation, phone numbers, e-mail, and a map to help them locate you.

Body panels (Fold-in and Inside). The following are some suggestions for creating the brochure's text:

- **Provide headings and subheadings.** These act as navigational tools to guide your readers, direct their attention, and help them find the information they need. The headings and subheadings should follow a consistent pattern of font type and size. First-level headings should be larger and more emphatic than second-level subheadings. The headings must be parallel to each other grammatically.

  For example, if your first heading is entitled "Introduction," a noun, all subsequent headings must be nouns, like "Location," "Times," "Payment Options," and "Technical Specifications." If your first heading is a complete sentence, like "This is where it all began," then your subsequent headings must also be complete sentences: "It's still beautiful," "Here's how to find us," and "Prices are affordable."
- **Use graphics.** Use photographs, maps, line drawings, tables, or figures to vary the page layout, for visual appeal, and to enhance your text.
- **Develop your ideas.** Consider including locations, options, prices, credentials, company history, personnel biographies, employment opportunities, testimonials from satisfied customers, specifications, features, uses of the product or service, payment schedules, or payment plans.
- **Persuade your audience.** Review the tips provided in this chapter for persuasive arguments. Use ethics, logic, and emotion to sway your reader.

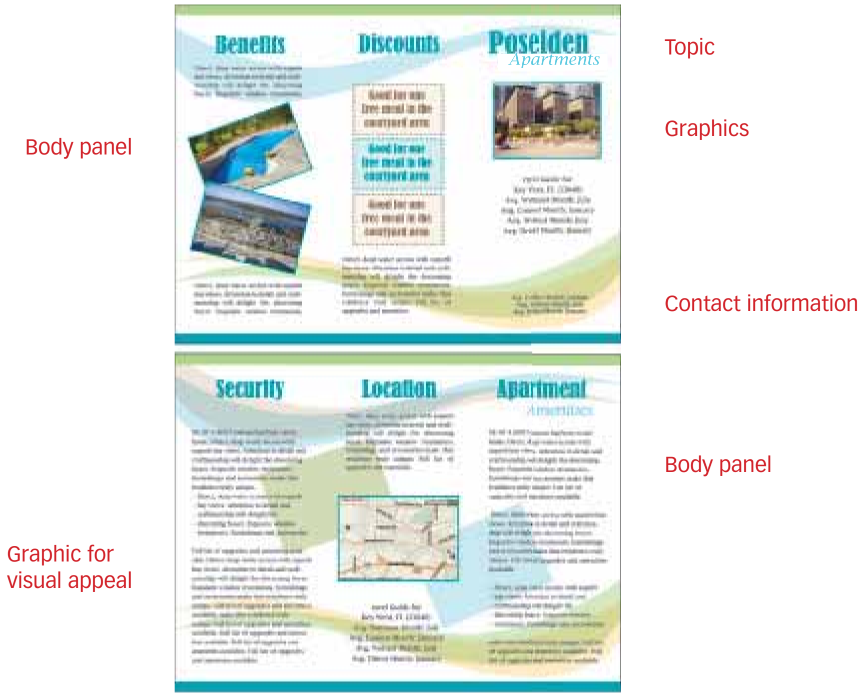
Document design. Visual appeal helps to interest and persuade an audience. Compelling graphics, for example, can help to convince an audience. Use pie charts, bar charts, tables, or photographs to highlight key concerns. In addition to graphics, make your brochure visually appealing by doing the following:

- Limit sentence length to 10 to 12 words and paragraph length to 4 to 6 lines. When you divide paper into panels, text can become cramped very easily. Long sentences and long paragraphs then become difficult to read. By limiting the length of your text, you will help your readers access the information.
- Use white space instead of wall-to-wall words. Indent and itemize information so readers won't have to wade through too much detail.
- Use color for interest, variety, and emphasis. For example, you can use a consistent color for your headings and subheadings.
- Bulletize key points.
- Boldface or underline key ideas.
- Do not trap yourself within one panel. For variety and visual appeal, let text and graphics overlap two or more of the panels.

- Place graphics at angles (occasionally) or alternate their placement at either the center or the right or left margin of a panel. Panels can become very rigid if all text and graphics are square. Find creative ways to achieve variety.

See Figure 11 to get a better idea of what a typical brochure looks like.

FIGURE 11 Sample of a Brochure



Press Releases

Press releases are written to persuade an audience that a company has new information to offer. Press releases can be written using many channels of communication, including hard-copy newspapers, social media, Web sites, blogs, and e-mail. A company will use press releases to announce new products, services, locations, product options, management changes, promotions, or any topic of interest to the public.

When writing your press release, include the following:

- A headline to concisely summarize the topic, focusing on one key point. Use techniques discussed earlier in this chapter to grab the reader's attention.
- A subhead for clarity. While your heading arouses reader interest, the subhead provides more specific details about the topic.
- An introductory lead-in answering who, what, when, why, where, and how. Present the most important information early in the press release where the audience's attention is greatest.
- Development in the press release's body. Create interest in the topic by giving supporting evidence.
- A conclusion urging follow-up action.
- Persuasive tone and word usage.
- An effective technical communication style, focusing on objectivity and conciseness.
- A visually appealing format (headings, subheadings, bullets, font changes, and more).

See Figure 12 for a successfully written press release.

FIGURE 12 Handmark Press Release

HANDMARK

About | Partners | News | Store

Press and Media

TweetCaster for Twitter Spreads its Wings, Lands on the App Store

Social app delivers innovative Twitter experience to iPhone and iPod touch users

KANSAS CITY, MO—(March 3, 2011)—Leading mobile application developer Handmark® today announced its new TweetCaster for Twitter App for iPhone and iPod touch is available on the App Store.

TweetCaster is fast, intuitive, and features all the essential Twitter functionality, including multiple Twitter account support and Facebook integration, plus a variety of unique features:

- "Zip It"—exclusive feature enables users to hide annoying tweets from their timeline by zipping a person, hashtag or keyword without unfollowing
- iTunes integration makes it easy for users to click on a song link and preview or purchase it
- Multiple themes for customizing the app, including the ability to load custom backgrounds and designs
- Instapaper and Read It Later support allows users to save articles to read later

"Our TweetCaster App delivers a simple, intuitive user interface for iPhone and iPod touch that leverages key iOS features to bring users a one-of-kind Twitter experience," said Evan Conway, Handmark EVP.

The TweetCaster App is available for free from the App Store on iPhone and iPod touch or at www.itunes.com/appstore. An ad-free "Pro" version is also available for $4.99.

For more information about TweetCaster, visit www.tweetcaster.com.

Source: Courtesy of Handmark

PERSUASIVE COMMUNICATION CHECKLIST

_____ **1. Ethical argumentation:** Have you made an ethical argument based on character? You must be trustworthy and credible as a writer or speaker.

_____ **2. Emotional argumentation:** Have you used emotion to change an audience's attitudes? You can appeal to an audience's emotions either positively or negatively.

_____ **3. Logical argumentation:** Have you developed your persuasion by depending on rationality, reason, and proof? You can persuade people logically by providing facts, testimony, and examples.

_____ **4. Arouse audience interest:** Have you used questions, quotes, anecdotes, comparison/contrast, poetic language, or an appeal to senses to interest your audience?

_____ **5. Refute opposing points of view:** Have you presented a balanced argument? To do so, recognize and admit conflicting views, let the audience know that you understand their concerns, and allow for alternatives.

_____ **6. Give proof.** Have you provided evidence to prove your point?

_____ **7. Urge to action:** Have you motivated your audience to act? To do so, provide incentives, give discounts, mention warranties, provide contact information, or suggest a follow-up action.

_____ 8. **Highlighting/Page layout:** Is your text accessible? To achieve reader-friendly ease of access, use headings, boldface, italics, bullets, numbers, underlining, or graphics (tables and figures). These add interest and help your readers navigate your text.

_____ 9. **Conciseness:** Have you limited the length of your sentences, words, and paragraphs?

_____ 10. **Audience recognition:** Have you written appropriately to your audience? This includes avoiding biased language, considering the multicultural/cross-cultural nature of your readers, and analyzing your audience's role (supervisors, subordinates, coworkers, customers, or vendors).

_____ 11. **Correctness:** Is your text grammatically correct? Errors will hurt your professionalism. Have you avoided logical fallacies?

The Writing Process at Work

Now that you know how to write persuasively, let's see how Georgia Nesselrode, Director of Government Training for Mid-America Regional Council's (MARC) Government Training Institute, follows the writing process to create a flier. She is going to write a flier to advertise training workshops being offered to members of MARC's consortium of city and county employees. The best way to accomplish any technical communication challenge is by following a process: *Prewrite* to gather data and determine objectives, *write* a rough draft of your document, and *rewrite* to revise.

Prewriting

To create an effective persuasive document, first prewrite to determine goals, audience, channel of communication, and data. To plan her communication, Georgia considered the following:

- Goal—help communities meet their infrastructure needs
- Audience—small-town city councils
- Channels—informative and persuasive flier, mailed as hard-copy text and posted on MARC's Web site
- Data—specific workshop topics of discussion

The challenge at MARC is communicating to a diverse audience in different-sized cities. To prewrite, Georgia brainstormed and created a list (Figure 13).

FIGURE 13 Georgia's Brainstorming List

1. Brainstorm topics with internal staff and advisory committee (made up of planners and community development representatives).
2. Narrow the topics to three or four workshops.
3. Draft course descriptions.
4. Recruit instructors.
5. Determine dates and times.
6. Secure locations.
7. Provide draft information to public affairs to create the flier.
8. Proofread and finalize marketing materials.
9. Send e-mail announcements with flier attachment to targeted audiences.
10. Hand out fliers at MARC-sponsored events.
11. Post the flier on our Web site.
12. Send fliers electronically to our customer list serves.

Writing

After prewriting, write a draft of the document. Georgia's rough draft (Figure 14) included all of the information she needed to share with her intended audience. One goal was to provide answers to reporter's questions: who, what, when, where, why, and how.

FIGURE 14 Georgia's Rough Draft for the Flier

Master Plans for Smaller Communities
Thursday, May 17, 2014
6:00–8:30 p.m.
Grandview Community Center—The View
13500 Byars Road
Grandview, MO

Moderator: Bob Linder, Planning Commissioner

Panelists: Chase Simpson, Real Estate Attorney; William Shane, Shane Appraisal, Inc.; Scott Mitchell, Vice President, Mitchell Engineering

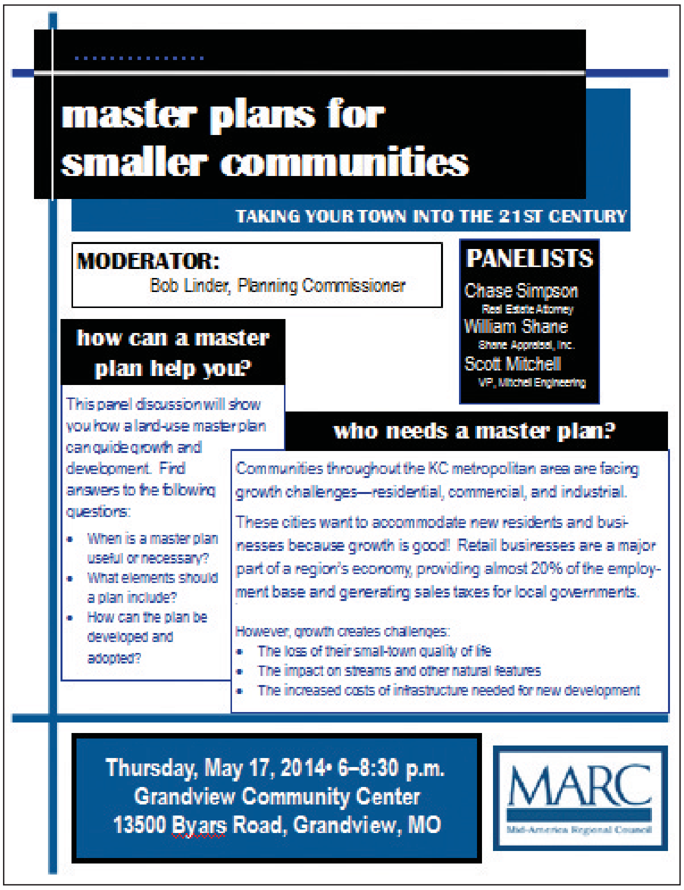
Smaller communities throughout the Kansas City metropolitan area are facing growth challenges—residential, commercial, and industrial. Our smaller cities are eager to accommodate new residents and businesses, but are concerned about losing the small-town quality of life, impacting streams and other natural features, and paying for infrastructure to support new development. The preparation and adoption of a master plan or land use plan provides communities with an important citizen engagement opportunity and new tools to guide growth and development.

The two presenters will describe the conditions under which a master plan is useful or necessary; the elements that might be included in a master plan; the various ways that master plans might be developed, including ways to involve residents and other stakeholders; the adoption process; and how the planning commission uses the adopted plan in making decisions on development applications.

Rewriting

After prewriting and writing a draft of the persuasive document, you then rewrite by considering goals, audience, document design, and completeness of the content. You add highlighting techniques to emphasize key points in the flier. Because a flier is short, you want to offer the audience a visually appealing document filled with relevant content. See Georgia's rewritten flier in Figure 15.

FIGURE 15 Georgia's Revised Flier



Source: Courtesy of Georgia Nesselrode, MARC

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Persuasive technical communication consists of a combination of ethos, logos, and pathos.
2. Use the *ARGU* technique to create persuasive routine correspondence, electronic communication, fliers, brochures, sales letters, or press releases.
3. Avoid logical fallacies when communicating persuasively.
4. Use many communication channels, including social media, routine correspondence, electronic communication, sales letters, brochures, fliers, and press releases, to market services and products.
5. Fliers should be short, focused on one idea, titled, have limited text, and be visually appealing.
6. Recognize your audience and their needs when you write persuasive documents.
7. The front panel of a brochure contains a title and a graphic that depicts the topic.
8. The interior panels of a brochure contain information about the topic.
9. The back panel of a brochure can be used for mailing purposes, maps, or discounts.
10. Document design is important when you create persuasive routine correspondence, electronic communication, a flier, brochure, sales letter, or press release.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

A company has just expanded into your city. Having been in business in the Midwest since 2005, TechToolshop provides sales, service, maintenance, installation, and data recovery for PC and Mac hardware and software tools.

They install, repair, and maintain workstations, servers, printers, and peripherals. Through an online catalogue and storefront site, they sell printers, desktops, mainframes, mini-towers, software, accessories, and encryption devices. TechToolshop has proudly worked with many large companies, including McDonald's, Pepsi, Ford, Sprint, Transamerica, GE, JCPenney, and Chase Manhattan Bank. For their latest venture, this company will help you create your own corporate Web page and maintain the site, with fees determined by the number of screens, plug-ins, and graphics.

TechToolshop's home office is in Big Springs, Iowa, at 11324 Elm, where over 1,200 employees work. Their phone number at this site is 212-345-6666, and their e-mail address is ToolHelp@TechTools.com. This company's Web site can be found at www.TechTools.com. TechToolshop's new local address in your city is 5110 Nueces Avenue. The phone number is 345-782-8776.

TechToolshop is most proud of its product support and performance guarantees. The company offers free product support, 24 hours a day at 1-800-TechHelp, online help from the Web site, and 24/7 help through TweetForce. In addition, they warrant all products and services—money back—for 90 days, covering defects in material and workmanship.

The company is owned by James Wilcox Oleander (President) and his brother, Harold Robert Oleander (CEO). They started this company after graduating from Midwestern State University, with degrees in IT, IS, and CPCA. Their first store had only three employees, but through hard work, their business grew 45 percent in the first two years of operation. Expert recruiting of the best college graduates increased their workforce, as did the Oleanders' philosophy of "employee ownership." TechToolshop's workers take pride in their work, since their success increases their stock options (TechToolshop's stock at NASDAQ opened in 2005 at $18 a share but has listed as high as $45). The Oleanders plan to open at least 12 new stores each year throughout the United States, as well as pursue franchise options. They have high hopes for their future success.

Write either a persuasive sales letter, flier, brochure, or press release about TechToolshop, based on the information provided. Follow the criteria in this chapter.

INDIVIDUAL OR TEAM PROJECTS

ARGU

For the *ARGU* method of organization, you *a*rouse reader interest, *r*efute opposing arguments, *g*ive proof to support your argument, and *u*rge reader action. Read the following situations and complete the assignments.

- You plan to sell a mobile app. For a sales letter, write five different introductions to arouse reader interest using any of the options provided in the chapter.
- Write a body that refutes opposing arguments (too expensive, easily damaged, easily lost, etc.) and that gives proof to support your product claims.
- In the sales letter for the mobile app, conclude by urging reader action. Use at least two of the methods discussed in this chapter.

Analysis of Persuasive Writing

Find examples of persuasive writing (e-mail messages, sales letters, fliers, brochures, or press releases). Bring these to class, and in small groups or individually, accomplish the following:

1. Decide which methods of persuasion have been used. Where in the documents do the writers appeal to logic, emotion, and ethics? Give examples and explain your reasoning, either in writing or orally.
2. Have the writers aroused reader interest? Give examples and explain your reasoning, either in writing or orally. If the writers have not aroused reader interest, should they have? Explain why. Rewrite the introductions using any of the techniques discussed in this chapter to arouse reader interest.
3. Have the writers refuted opposing points of view? Give examples and explain your reasoning, either in writing or orally. If the writers have not negated opposing points of view, should they have? Explain why. Rewrite the text using any of the techniques discussed in this chapter to negate opposing points of view.
4. Have the writers developed their arguments persuasively? Give examples and explain your reasoning, either in writing or orally. If the writers have not provided persuasive proof, rewrite the text using any of the techniques discussed in this chapter to improve the arguments.
5. Do any of the examples you have found use logical fallacies to persuade the readers? Give examples and explain your reasoning, either in writing or orally. If the writers have used logical fallacies, rewrite the text using any of the techniques discussed in this chapter to improve the arguments.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

Logical, Emotional, and Ethical Appeals

Read the following situations and determine whether the persuasive arguments appeal to logic, emotion, or ethics. These argumentation techniques can overlap. Explain your answers.

1. If you purchase this product, you can benefit from a healthier, happier, and longer life!
2. Seventy-two percent of SUV owners say that high gas prices will influence their next car purchases.
3. CEO Jim Snyder, an expert in the field of sports management, says, “Building a downtown sports arena enhances a city’s image.”
4. Style-tone Hair Gel improves your hair quality by preventing split ends, generating new hair growth, and inhibiting “frizzies.”
5. Failure to recycle will cause 52 percent more dangerous hydrofluoric carbons to be released into the atmosphere, leading to harmful decreases in the ozone layer.

Logical Fallacies

Read the following logical fallacies and revise them, ensuring that the sentences provide logical, ethical, and correct argumentation.

1. All marketing experts believe that social media is an effective way to communicate persuasively.
2. Either all employees must come to work on time, or they will be fired.
3. Some accountants are ambitious because they wish to succeed.
4. The contractor lost the bid, so he cannot expect to have increased revenues this fiscal year.
5. Because the manager is inexperienced, the report will be badly written.

WEB WORKSHOP

You can find electronic brochures and fliers on the Internet. Using a search engine of your choice, type in phrases like “online brochure,” “e-brochure,” “online flier,” “e-flier,” “electronic brochure,” or “electronic flier.” Once you find examples of these online persuasive documents, do the following:

- Compare and contrast the electronic documents with hard-copy brochures and fliers.
- Compare and contrast the electronic documents with the criteria provided in this chapter.
- Decide how the online communication is similar and different from the criteria and from hard-copy versions.
- If you decide that the online versions can be improved, print them out and revise them.

LETTER FORMATS

Three common types of letter formats include **full block** (Figure 1), **full block with subject line** (Figure 2), and **simplified** (Figure 3). Two popular and professional formats used in business are full block and full block with subject line. With both formats, you type all information at the left margin without indenting paragraphs, the date, the complimentary close, or signature. The full block with subject line differs only with the inclusion of a subject line.

Another option is the simplified format. This type of letter layout is similar to the full block format in that all text is typed margin left. The two significant omissions include no salutation ("Dear _____:") and no complimentary close ("Sincerely,"). Omitting a salutation is useful in the following instances:

- You do not know your reader's name (NOTE: Avoid the trite salutation, "To Whom It May Concern:").
- You are writing to someone with a non-gender specific name (Jesse, Terry, Stacy, Chris, etc.) and you do not know whether to use "Mr.," "Mrs.," or "Ms."

The Administrative Management Society (AMS) suggests that if you omit the salutation, you also should omit the complimentary close. Some people feel that omitting the salutation and the complimentary close will make the letter cold and unfriendly. However, the AMS says that if your letter is warm and friendly, these omissions will not be missed. More importantly, if your letter's content is negative, beginning with "Dear" and ending with "Sincerely" will not improve the letter's tone or your reader's attitude toward your comments. The simplified format includes a subject line to aid the letter's clarity.

FIGURE 1 Full Block Format

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Dear Mr. McGraw:

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

1 to 1½ in margins on all sides of the letter

Two to four spaces above and below the date

Two to four spaces above and below the salutation

Single space within the paragraphs.

Double space between the paragraphs.

Two spaces before "Sincerely"

Four spaces between "Sincerely" and the typed signature

FIGURE 2 Full Block Format with Subject Line

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

Dear Mr. McGraw:

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

FIGURE 3 Simplified Format Omitting "Dear . . ." and "Sincerely"

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 3 — SurveyMonkey's Web Site Shows Clients' Names to Establish Credibility. Courtesy of SurveyMonkey.

Figure 12 — Handmark Press Release. Courtesy of Handmark.

Figure 13 — Georgia's Brainstorming List. Courtesy of Mid-America Regional Council (MARC).

Figure 14 — Georgia's Rough Draft for the Flier. Courtesy of Mid-America Regional Council (MARC).

Figure 15 — Georgia's Revised Flier. Courtesy of Mid-America Regional Council (MARC).

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Ablestock.com / Getty Images

© Steven and Sharon Gerson

© Yuri Arcurs / Fotolia

REFERENCES

"CDC and CPSC Warn of Winter Home Heating Hazards." *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.* 7 Jan. 2009. Web. 29 Feb. 2012.

Handmark. 2012. Web. 11 Mar. 2012.

Technical Descriptions and Process Analyses

Technical Descriptions and Process Analyses

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

The information technology scenario shows the importance of technical descriptions and process analyses in the engineering profession.

Alpha Beta Consulting (A/B/C) specializes in creating software for public service engineering purposes, such as storm water, water distribution, transportation and traffic control, parks and recreation, facility and building management, and inventory of fleets and equipment.

The city of Maple Valley, Texas, is interested in purchasing one of A/B/C's software suites related to storm water maintenance. The suite focuses on accurate and easy-to-use inventory and inspection tools for maintaining and improving storm water systems. A/B/C's software will help Maple Valley inspect and test all components of the city's storm water system including conduits, structures, detention basins, pump stations, and pumps.

Before A/B/C can sell the software to Maple Valley, the company's information technology director, Neeha Patel, must do the following:

- Determine the city's unique needs—Neeha will interview city residents, city council members, and

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Understand that technical descriptions are often used in user manuals, product specifications, construction designs, reports, and sales literature
- Understand that process analyses tell how a tool, mechanism, piece of equipment, product, or service works
- Use the introduction of a technical description or process analysis to specify and define the topic; explain the topic's functions, capabilities, or processes; and include a list of components, parts, or equipment
- Know that graphics with callouts make a technical description and process analysis easier to understand for the reader
- Follow a spatial pattern of organization in a technical description
- Follow a chronological order of organization when describing how a process works
- Use words for descriptions and processes that are photographic and/or impressionistic
- Use headings and subheadings to organize the content of your description or process analysis
- Use line drawings, schematics, CAD/CAM drawings, photographs, architectural renderings, clip art, exploded views, or sectional cutaway views of your topic for the technical description or process analysis
- Evaluate your description or process by using the checklist

city government officials. To accomplish this goal, Neeha will create a questionnaire focusing on infrastructure needs. Then, through a combination of hard-copy mailers and online social media (Maple Valley's Facebook site and Twitter account), Neeha will collect constituent responses.

- Research software options—Based on the interviews, Neeha will determine if the city's current software is failing to meet the city's needs and what A/B/C software options exist.
- Create or adapt software to meet the city's technical specifications—If new software is needed, Neeha will work with her colleagues in IT to customize software for Maple Valley.
- Write technical descriptions of the hardware—Based on her analysis of hardware requirements, Neeha will write the technical descriptions of hardware needed to run the software. These descriptions will accompany the operations manual A/B/C will give Maple Valley employees.
- Provide process analyses—To clarify how the software will solve Maple Valley's infrastructure problems, Neeha will write a process analysis. This process analysis will show how the software will improve storm water, transportation, and traffic flow.

Once Neeha creates this documentation, she can provide it to Maple Valley's Planning Commission, which will decide whether or not to purchase the software and work with A/B/C.

Defining Technical Descriptions

A *technical description* is a part-by-part depiction of the components of a mechanism, tool, or piece of equipment. Technical descriptions are important features in several types of technical communication.

Types of Technical Descriptions

Technical writers use technical descriptions in a variety of documents.

Operations Manuals

Manufacturers often include an *operations manual* in the packaging of a mechanism, tool, or piece of equipment. This manual helps the end-user construct, install, operate, and service the equipment. Operations manuals also can contain technical descriptions.

Technical descriptions provide the end-user with information about the mechanism's features or capabilities. For example, this information may tell the user which components are enclosed in the shipping package, clarify the quality of these components, specify what function these components serve in the mechanism, or allow the user to reorder any missing or flawed components. Following is a brief technical description found in an operations manual.

EXAMPLE ▶

> The Modern Electronics Tone Test Tracer, Model 77A, is housed in a yellow, high-impact plastic case that measures 1¼ inch { 2 inch { 2¼ inch, weighs 4 ounces, and is powered by a 1604 battery. Red and black test leads are provided. The 77A has a standard four-conductor cord, a three-position toggle switch, and an LED for line polarity testing. A tone selector switch located inside the test set provides either solid tone or dual alternating tone. The Tracer is compatible with the EXX, SetUp, and Crossbow models.

Product Demand Specifications

Sometimes a company needs a piece of equipment that does not currently exist. To acquire this equipment, the company writes a *product demand* specifying its exact needs. The following product demand specification example is written for a high-tech audience. It assumes knowledge on the part of the reader, such as definitions for "high-speed" and "deep-hole," which a lay reader would not understand. In addition, the high-tech abbreviation "AISI" is not defined.

EXAMPLE ▶

> Subject: Pricing for EDM Microdrills
>
> Please provide us with pricing information for the construction of 50 EDM Microdrills capable of meeting the following specifications:
>
> - Designed for high-speed, deep-hole drilling
> - Capable of drilling to depths of 100 times the diameter using 0.012-inch to 0.030-inch diameter electrodes
> - Able to produce a hole through a 1.000-inch-thick piece of AISI D2 or A6 tool steel in 1.5 minutes, using a 0.020-inch diameter electrode
>
> We need your response by January 13, 2014.

Study Reports Provided by Consulting Firms

Companies hire a consulting engineering firm to study a problem and provide a descriptive analysis. The resulting *study report* is used as the basis for a product demand specification requesting a solution to the problem. One firm, when asked to study crumbling cement walkways, provided the following technical description in its study report.

◀ EXAMPLE

> The slab construction consists of a wearing slab over a ½-inch-thick waterproofing membrane. The wearing slab ranges in thickness from 3½ inches to 8½ inches, and several sections have been patched and replaced repeatedly in the past. The structural slab varies in thickness from 5½ inches to 9 inches with as little as 2 inches over the top of the steel beams. The removable slab section, which has been replaced since original construction, is badly deteriorated and should be replaced. Refer to Appendix A, Photo 9, and Appendix C for shoring installed to support the framing prior to replacement.

Construction Design

Prior to building any structure, architectural companies must clarify the construction design for the city and the clients. This requires a legal technical description of the property limits (location and dimensions). Once this description is written and drawn, the architectural company will use the text and graphics for a variety of purposes. These can include presentations of the design to a city council or homeowner's association, requests for a change of zoning, requests for special use permits, and re-platting of the site if a property line must be relocated. Finally, based on the legal technical description, the architectural firm can obtain city approval. See Figure 1 for a layout and landscaping plan and the legal technical description that accompanies it.

Sales Literature

Companies want to make money. One way to market equipment or services is to describe the product. Such descriptions are common in sales letters, proposals, and on Web sites. Figure 2 is a technical description in sales literature from Hewlett-Packard.

Defining Process Analysis

What is a process analysis? A process analysis is comparable to an instruction. Instructions provide a step-by-step explanation of how to do something. For example, in an instruction, you explain how to change the oil in a car, how to connect a printer to a computer, how to make polenta, or how to put together a child's toy. In an instruction, the audience wants to know how to do a job. A process analysis, in contrast, focuses not on how to do something but on how something works. For instance, a process analysis might explain how viruses attack our bodies, how airbags save lives, how metal detectors work, or how e-mail messages are transmitted.

Examples of Process Analyses

A discussion of process is a common part of many technical descriptions.

- **Engineering.** Dubai, second largest emirate of the United Arab Emirates, plans to develop several islands off its coast. To increase tourism, these islands will have

DOT.COM UPDATES

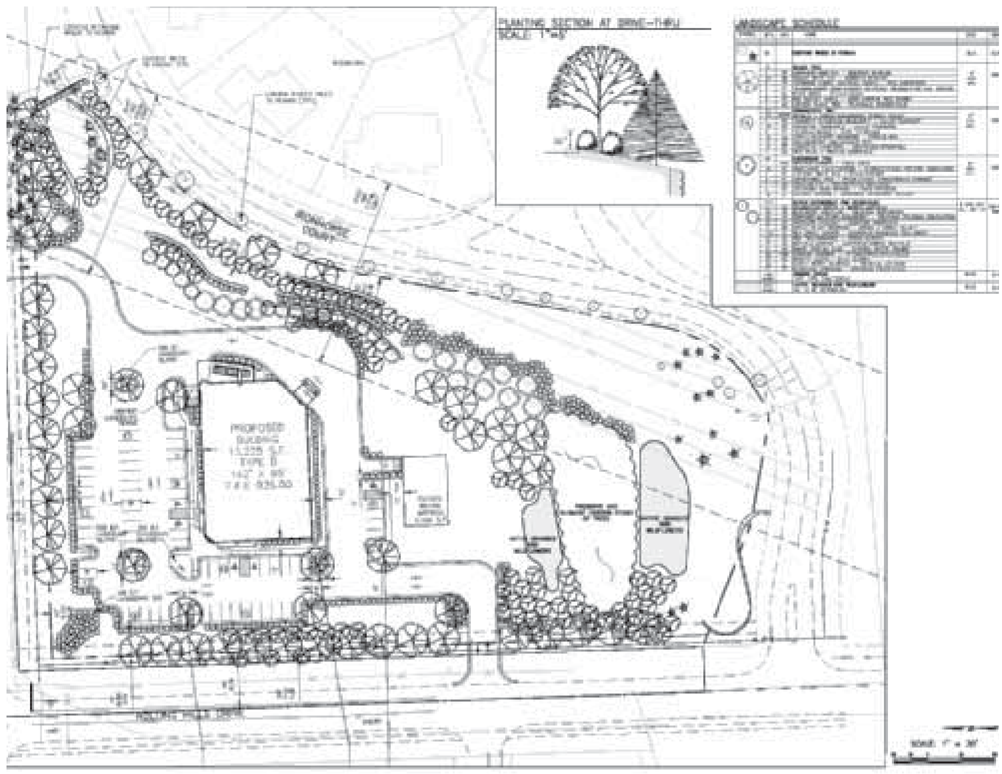
For examples of technical descriptions, check out the following links:

- Palm Pre Smartphone technical specifications
  http://www.palm.com/us/products/phones/pre/index.html
- iPod Nano technical specifications
  http://www.apple.com/ipodnano/specs.html
- Technical specifications for Garmin's GPS system
  http://www.garmin.com/manuals/425_TechnicalSpecification.pdf
- Technical specifications for the Boeing 757
  http://www.boeing.com/commercial/757family/technical.html
- Original Xbox technical specifications
  http://www.xbox.com/en-US/support/familysettings/resources/consolespecs.htm
- Nintendo Wii technical specifications
  http://www.nwiizone.com/nintendo-wii/nwii/nintendo-wii-technical-specifications/

FIGURE 1 Layout and Landscaping Plan with Legal Technical Description for a High-Tech Audience

This landscape plan describes the construction design for section 10, township 14, range 25, located in the city of Hartford, Johnson County, Washington. The plot of land includes the following coordinates and distances:

- north 87°38'42" east, along the north line of the northwest quarter, a distance of 539.17 feet
- south 2°21'18" east, along a line perpendicular to the north line of the northwest quarter, a distance of 60.00 feet
- west 51°29'37", a distance of 314.56 feet, to a point of tangency
- south 09°56'20" west, along the westerly right-of-way line, a distance of 264.15 feet, to a point of curvature
- east 59°29'39", a distance of 129.80 feet, to the most easterly corner of tract "c" and east of the right-of-way line of Rolling Hills Drive



Source: Courtesy of Landplan

both private residences and hotels. Your engineering company has been hired to build bridges connecting the islands to the coastline. Your options include beam bridges, arch bridges, and suspension bridges. To clarify which type of bridge will best meet your client's needs, you provide a PowerPoint presentation explaining how each bridge works.

FIGURE 2 Technical Description for a Lay Audience

HP Officejet Pro K550 series color printer

1 Ink cartridge cover provides quick access to four snap-in ink cartridges.

2 Top cover flips open for easy troubleshooting or maintenance.

3 User-friendly control panel includes graphical icons on the buttons and lights. It provides printer and wireless networking status at-a-glance and simplifies wireless configuration with SecureEasySetup™.

4 150-sheet output tray with extender.

5 250-sheet and 350-sheet input trays for high-volume printing.

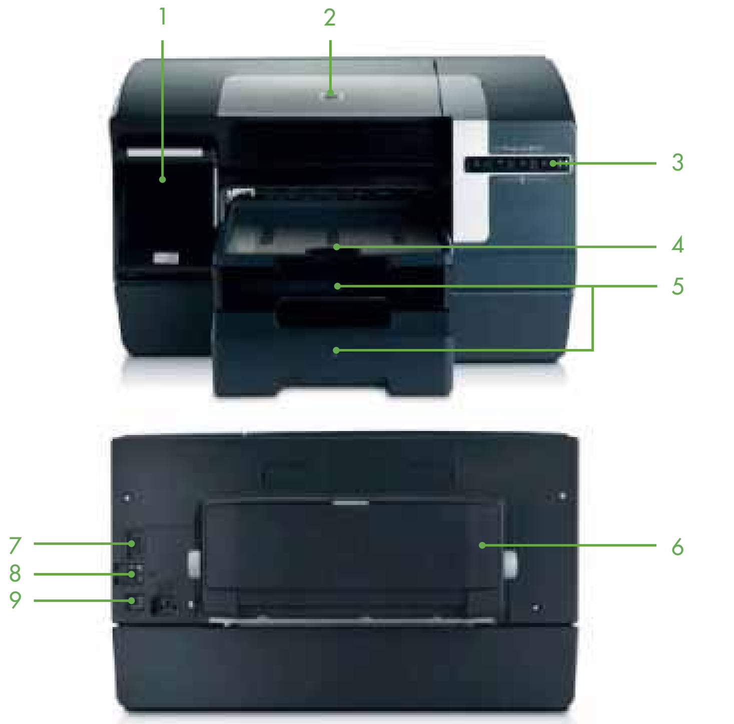
6 Automatic two-sided printing accessory for professional, two-sided documents.

7 Built-in (Full Speed) USB host connector enables wireless configuration through Windows® Connect Now.

8 Built-in wired Ethernet networking.

9 Built-in Hi-Speed USB 2.0 port enables fast and easy direct connections.

HP Officejet Pro K550dtwn color printer shown



Source: Courtesy of Hewlett-Packard

The title identifies the equipment to be described.

Impressionistic words such as “quick access,” “easy troubleshooting,” and “User-friendly control panel” are used for sales purposes to the lay audience.

Numbered callouts refer to the text and help the readers locate parts of the equipment.

- **Automotive sales.** A potential customer wants to buy a new car. This customer is concerned about the environment and is interested in buying a hybrid, knowing that these cars are energy efficient and ecologically friendly. However, the customer doesn’t understand how hybrids work. Your job is to explain the process of how gasoline-electric hybrid cars work.
- **Biomedical technology.** You and a team of scientists have been working on new treatments for diabetes, a health problem in the United States that affects approximately 20.8 million Americans. One possible treatment is pancreatic islet transplantation. Islets are injected through a catheter into a diabetic’s liver. In time, the islets begin releasing insulin. This treatment has great potential for diabetics, but research is ongoing. You are writing a proposal requesting additional funding for research. In this proposal, you provide a process analysis of how diabetes affects a patient and how the pancreatic islet transplantation will work to treat this disease.

SPOTLIGHT

How to Use Technical Descriptions in Landscape Architecture

Landplan, a multidisciplinary firm that specializes in surveying, civil engineering, landscape architecture, and planning, designs sites that conform to local city and county codes. As a landscape architect with Landplan, **Andrew Buchwitz** works with one of their larger corporate accounts to develop commercial sites. According to Andrew, "I lay out the best possible location for the building, parking, and landscaping while conforming to the local municipalities' City Development Code."

Communicating effectively is a major part of Andrew's job. He writes technical descriptions that accompany his architectural renderings, and he makes oral presentations at city planning commission meetings, city council meetings, and neighborhood meetings.

Andrew says that Landplan has "to write legal descriptions depicting the property size and location." Technical and legal descriptions are important for every project Andrew designs to

- clarify the plan for the city and the client
- meet legal description/property limits
- meet city requirements for landscaping
- obtain city approval so the client can build

Andrew's challenge is conforming to the local cities' development codes while still meeting his clients' needs. "Many times it becomes a compromise when the client wants the project to look a certain way, but the city does not," states Andrew.

For example, the city planners could review the renderings, technical specifications, technical descriptions, and documents Andrew designs but refuse to accept the plans as they have been drafted. The city might suggest site revisions including additional landscape screening around trash enclosures and additional upgrades to the exterior such as brick rather than stucco. In those instances, Andrew has to revise the plans to meet both the city and the client's needs.

Every site is unique in that it requires a different plan of attack. This could include requesting a change of zoning, requesting a special use permit, or having to re-plat the site because a property line needs to be relocated. "Some of these require public notice. In this case, Landplan would have to send a mail notification to residents living in a 200- to 500-foot buffer area surrounding the site."

According to Andrew, "Mail notices also usually require a neighborhood meeting for the general public. This is basically a Q & A session notifying the public of the changes that are being proposed for the particular area and hearing about any concerns they may have."

At these neighborhood meetings, Andrew often makes oral presentations. According to Andrew, "Some of the challenges may be getting the general public to back our plan. If the city commission sees that the general consensus of the plans for the buffered public area is against this development, it may be even harder to get approval. The city may not like the proposed development and want us to have another meeting with city planners to come up with another layout or design."

Once the City Planning Commission approves all of Andrew's site revisions, the Commission takes the plans to the City Council Community Development Committee for final approval. Andrew then returns the approved documents to the client who gives the "go-ahead" for the project. Throughout the multi-step process, Andrew faces many challenges communicating both orally and in writing with the client, the city, and other concerned parties. Carefully written technical and legal descriptions, as well as effective oral presentations, help to ensure approval of Landplan's proposed site development.

Figure 3 is a process analysis of why, when, and how automobile air bags inflate.

Criteria for Writing Technical Descriptions and Process Analyses

As with any type of technical communication, there are certain criteria for writing technical descriptions and process analyses.

Title

Preface your text with a title precisely stating the topic. This could be the name of the mechanism, tool, piece of equipment, landform, product, or service you are describing or analyzing.

FIGURE 3 Why, When, and How Does an Air Bag Inflate?

Air bags save lives. Driver and passenger air bags are designed to inflate in frontal or side crashes. Steering wheel, right front instrument panel, or side-panel air bags will not inflate on all occasions. If a car drives over a bump or if a crash is "minor," such as hitting an object while driving at a slow speed, an air bag will not deflate. However, when cars hit walls (or trucks or cars or trees), air bags inflate to minimize injury and to save people's lives.

The introduction explains what the topic is, why it is important, and where the mechanism is located.

Before Inflation

How does the air bag detect whether the car has hit a bump versus being involved in a collision?

The airbag system's crash sensor can differentiate between head-on collisions and simple bumps in the road as follows:

1. A steel ball slides inside a smooth bored cylinder.
2. The ball is secured by a magnet or by a stiff spring. This inhibits the ball's motion when the car encounters minor motion changes, such as bumps or potholes.
3. If the car comes to a dramatic and rapid stop, a force equal to running into a brick wall at about 10 to 15 miles per hour, such as in a head-on crash, the ball quickly moves forward. This closes a contact and completes an electrical circuit, which initiates the process of inflating the airbag.

Parts of an Air Bag

Air bag systems consist of the following:

- **Air bag:** made of thin nylon. A nontoxic powder (cornstarch or talcum powder) inside the air bag keeps it flexible and ensures the parts of the air bag do not stick together.
- **Air bag holding compartment:** the steering wheel, dashboard, seat, or door.
- **Sensor:** a device that tells the bag to inflate.
- **Inflator canister:** consisting of sodium azide (NaN_3), potassium nitrate (KNO_3), and silicon dioxide (SiO_2), which produce nitrogen gas (N_2).

This technical description discusses the parts of the mechanism, the materials used, the location of these components, and the chemical compounds required for activation.

During Inflation

In a severe impact, the air bag sensing system will deploy in milliseconds. The following occurs:

1. The air bag's crash sensor triggers a switch that energizes a wire, sending electricity into a heating element in the propellant that releases gas from the inflator canister.
2. A pellet of sodium azide (NaN_3) is ignited, generating nitrogen gas (N_2).
3. A nylon air bag, folded into the dashboard, steering wheel, and/or side panels of the door, inflates at a speed of 150–250 mph, taking only about 40 milliseconds (about 1/20 of a second) for the inflation to be complete.

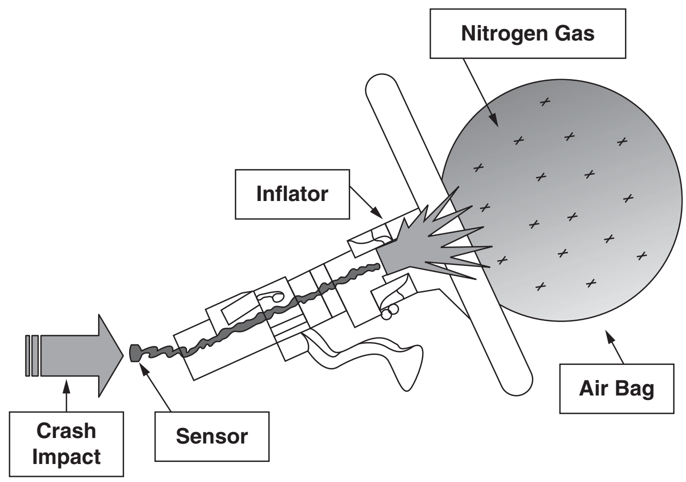
Here, providing the mechanism's process, the text explains how an air bag works. Note the specificity of detail: 150–250 mph and 1/20 of a second.

(*Continued*)

FIGURE 3 Why, When, and How Does an Air Bag Inflate? *(Continued)*

4. The sodium azide inside the air bag produces sodium metal, which is highly reactive, potentially explosive, and harmful when in contact with eyes, nose, or mouth. To render this harmless, the sodium azide reacts with potassium nitrate (KNO_3) and silicon dioxide (SiO_2)—also inside the air bag—to produce silicate glass, a harmless and stable compound.

This illustration graphically depicts the process in action. When the crash sensor is triggered, it activates the inflator. Nitrogen gas explodes, inflating the air bag.



After Inflation

Air bag vents, minute holes in the bag, allow the deployed air bags to deflate immediately after impact. This ensures that the car's inhabitants do not smother.

Though air bags were first used in 1973, they have only been mandatory in all cars since 1998. Have air bags made a difference? Absolutely! The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration says air bags saved an estimated 1,043 lives in 1998 alone.

The conclusion sums up the process analysis by quantifying the significance of air bags as a means of saving lives.

Overall Organization

In the **introduction**, specify and define your topic, and explain the topic's functions, capabilities, or processes. You can also include a list of components, parts, or equipment.

EXAMPLE ▶

Technical Description

The Apex Latch (#12004), a mechanism used to secure core sample containers, is composed of three parts: the hinge, the swing arm, and the fastener.

EXAMPLE ▶

Technical Description and Process Analysis

The DX 56 DME (Distance Measuring Equipment) is a vital piece of aeronautical equipment. Designed for use at altitudes up to 30,000 feet, the DX 56 electronically converts elapsed time to distance by measuring the length of time between your transmission and the reply signal. The DX 56 DME contains the transmitter, receiver, power supply, and range and speed circuitry.

In the **discussion**, describe each of the mechanism's components and how the mechanism works—its process. Focus on details, word usage, and an organizational pattern that helps your audience easily understand the text.

- **Details.** To develop your discussion, include the following details:

Weight	Density	Make/model
Size (dimensions)	Parts	Texture
Color	Materials (composition)	Capacity
Shape	Identifying numbers	Procedural steps

- **Word usage.** Your word usage in the technical description and process analysis depends on your purpose. For factual, objective technical descriptions or process analyses, use photographic words. For subjective, sales-oriented descriptions or process analyses, use impressionistic words. Photographic words are denotative, quantifiable, and specific. Impressionistic words are vague and connotative. Table 1 shows the difference between photographic and impressionistic words.

TABLE 1 Photographic versus Impressionistic Word Usage

Photographic	Impressionistic
6′9″	tall
350 lb	heavy
gold	precious metal
6,000 shares of United Can	major holdings
700 lumens	bright
0.030 mm	thin
1966 XKE Jaguar	impressive classic car

- **Internal organization.** When describing your topic in the discussion portion of the technical description or process analysis, itemize the topic in some logical sequence. For a technical description, use spatial organization. When a topic is spatially organized, you literally lay out the components as they exist in space. You describe the components as they are seen either from left to right, right to left, top to bottom, bottom to top, inside to outside, or outside to inside. In contrast, when writing your process analysis, you will use chronological organization to show how the product or service works in sequence.

Your **conclusion** depends on your purpose in describing the topic or analyzing how the process works. Some options are as follows:

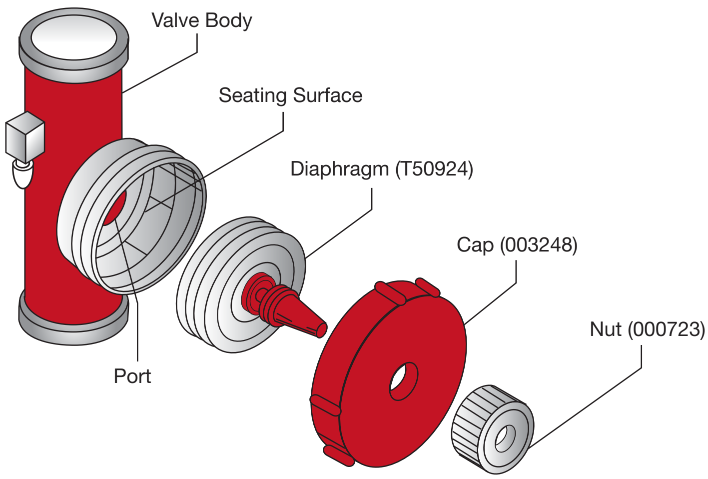
Sales—"Implementation of this product will provide you and your company . . ."	**Guarantees**—"The product carries a 15-year warranty against parts and labor."	**Comparison/contrast**—"Compared to our largest competitor, this product is three times more weather resistant." . . .
Uses—"After implementation, you will be able to use this product to . . ."	**Testimony**—"Our satisfied customers include . . ."	**Reiteration of introductory comments**—"Thus, the product is composed of the above interchangeable parts and works according to the process explained."

Highlighting Techniques

To aid understanding and allow for easy access, use highlighting techniques, including headings, itemization, and graphics.

You can use line drawings, schematics, CAD/CAM drawings, photographs, architectural renderings, clip art, exploded views, or sectional cutaway views of your topic, each accompanied by *callouts* (labels identifying key components of the mechanism). An example of an exploded view with callouts can be seen in Figure 4.

FIGURE 4 Exhalation Valve with Labeled Callouts



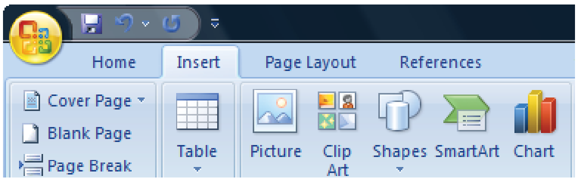
Source: Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

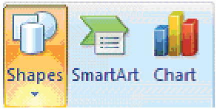
How to Make Callouts Using Microsoft Office Word 2010

Callouts are a great way to label mechanism components in your technical descriptions or process analyses. Follow these steps to create callouts.

1. Click **Insert** on the Menu bar.



2. Click **Shapes.** You will see a dropdown box.

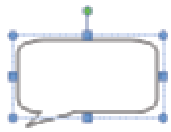


(*Continued*)

TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

3. Select the type of callout you want to use, such as the **Rounded Rectangular Callout** as shown.

4. When you choose the callout, a crosshair will appear. Use it to draw your callout, as shown.



Note: When you draw the callout, Word opens up the **Format** tab, as shown.

From the **Format** tab, you can change the color of the text box (from **Text Box Styles**), change its line type and density (from **Shape Outline**), create shadow effects, 3-D effects, and add content.

TECHNICAL DESCRIPTIONS AND PROCESS ANALYSIS CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Does the technical description or process analysis have a title noting your topic's name (and any identifying numbers)?

_____ **2.** Does the technical description or process analysis's introduction (a) state the topic, (b) mention its functions or the purpose, and (c) list the components?

_____ **3.** Does the technical description or process analysis's discussion use headings to itemize the components for reader-friendly ease of access?

_____ **4.** Do you need to define the mechanism and its main parts?

_____ **5.** Does the discussion portion of the description or process analysis specify the following?

Colors	Capacities
Sizes	Textures
Materials	Identifying numbers
Shapes	Weight
Density	Make/model
Parts	Process

_____ **6.** Are all of the calculations, measurements, or process steps correct?

_____ **7.** Do you sum up your discussion using any of the optional conclusions discussed in this chapter?

_____ **8.** Does your technical description or process analysis provide graphics that are correctly labeled, appropriately placed, and appropriately sized?

_____ **9.** Do you write clearly and concisely, using a personalized tone?

_____ **10.** Have you avoided biased language and grammatical and mechanical errors?

The Writing Process at Work

The following student-written technical description shows how this student used the writing process to create his document.

Prewriting

We asked students to describe a piece of equipment, tool, or mechanism of their choice. One student chose to describe a cash register pole display. To do so, he first had to gather data using brainstorming/listing. He provided the list shown in Figure 5.

FIGURE 5 Prewriting List

Pole PCB

- length—15 mm
- width—5.1 mm
- tube length—10.8 mm
- face plate width—2.3 mm
- thick—1.7 mm
- PCB thickness—0.2 mm
- 10 inch stranded wire with female connectors
- fiberglass and copper construction

Pole Case Assembly

- long—15.5 mm
- bottom width—2.5 mm
- top width—0.9 mm
- mounting pole—5 mm high × 3.2 mm diameter
- tongue for mounting—3.1 mm
- lower mounting tongue—1.5 mm
- side mounting tongue—0.8 mm high
- high—6.1 mm
- almond-colored plastic

Filter

- long—15.6 mm
- high—6.2 mm
- thick—0.7 mm
- plastic, blue

Writing

After the prewriting activity, we asked students to draft a technical description. Focusing on overall organization, highlighting, detail, and a hand-drawn graphic, this student wrote a rough draft. He had peer group evaluators suggest revisions (Figure 6).

Rewriting

The student incorporated these suggestions and prepared the finished copy (Figure 7).

FIGURE 6 Student's Rough Draft of a Pole Display with Suggested Revisions from Peer Group Review

No Title define awkward

The QL169 Customer Pole Display provides the viewing of ~~all transaction data~~ for the customer. The display consist of a printed circuit board, a case assembly, and a filter display.

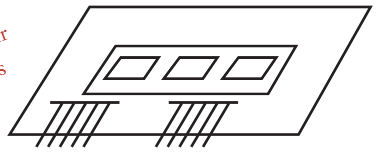
SP

Display Circuit Board

Make All Caps

- length—15 mm
- width—5.1 mm
- tube length—10.8 mm
- face plate width—2.3 mm
- thick—1.7 mm thickness
- PCB thickness—0.2 mm
- 10 inch stranded wire with female connectors
- fiberglass and copper construction

Number your components



Too vague (specify)

Display Case Assembly

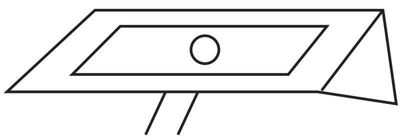
Make All Caps

Number your components

- long—15.5 mm length
- bottom width—2.5 mm
- top width—0.9 mm
- mounting pole—
  5 mm high × 3.2 mm diameter
- tounge for mounting—3.1 mm
- lower mounting tounge—1.5 mm wide
- side mounting tounge—0.8 mm high
- high—6.1 mm height
- almond-colored plastic

SP

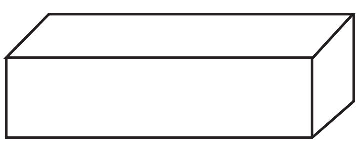
vague



Display Filter

- long—15.6 mm length
- high—6.2 mm height
- thick—0.7 mm thickness
- plastic, blue

what



Add a conclusion

FIGURE 7 Student's Revised Technical Description

Include a definition in the introduction.

QL169 Pole Display

The QL169 pole is an electronic mechanism that provides an alphanumeric display for customer viewing of cash register sales. The display consists of a printed circuit board (PCB) assembly, a case assembly, and a display filter.

Item Description

1. PCB ASSEMBLY
2. CASE ASSEMBLY
3. DISPLAY FILTER

Exploded graphics help readers visualize the topic.

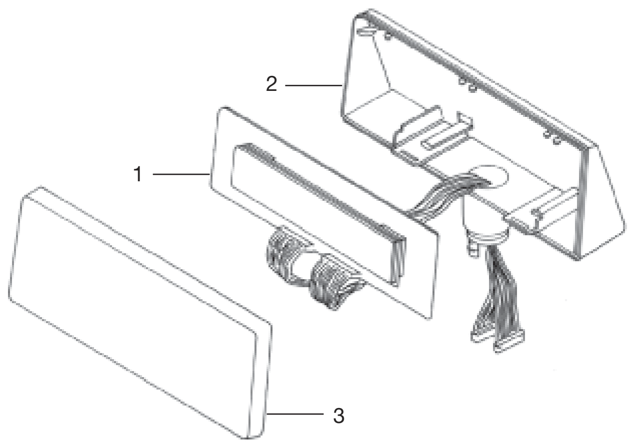


Figure 1. QL169

1.0 PCB Assembly

The printed circuit board, containing the display's electrical circuitry, is constructed of fiberglass with copper etchings.

The board consists of the following features:

Specificity of detail adds clarity.

1.1 Length—15 mm
1.2 Width—5.1 mm
1.3 Tube length—10.8 mm
1.4 Tube faceplate width—2.3 mm
1.5 Tube total width—2.8 mm
1.6 Tube thickness—1.7 mm
1.7 PCB thickness—0.2 mm
1.8 20 conductor 10" 22-gauge stranded wire with two AECC female connectors (AECC part #7214-001)
1.9 American Display Company blue phosphor display tube (ADC part #1172177)

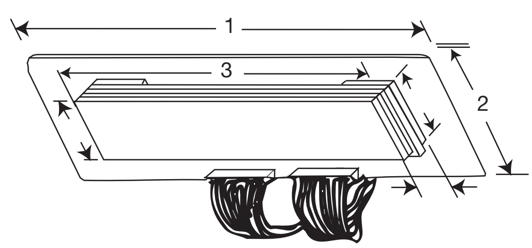


Figure 2. PCB

FIGURE 7 *(Continued)*

2.0 Case Assembly

Almond-colored ABS plastic, used to construct the case assembly, protects the PCB.

2.1 Length—15.5 mm

2.2 Bottom width—2.5 mm

2.3 Top width—0.9 mm

2.4 Mounting pole—5 mm high and 3.2 mm in diameter

2.5 Mounting tongue inside width—3.1 mm from side of assembly

2.6 Lower mounting tongue—1.5 mm wide

2.7 Side mounting tongue—0.8 mm high

2.8 Tongue thickness—0.2 mm

2.9 Height—6.1 mm

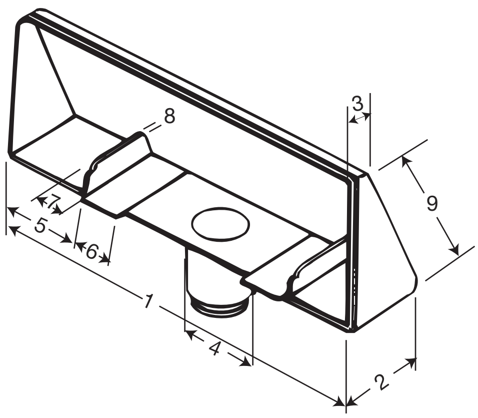


Figure 3. Case Assembly

3.0 Display Filter

3.1 Length—15.6 mm

3.2 Height—6.2 mm

3.3 Thickness—0.7 mm

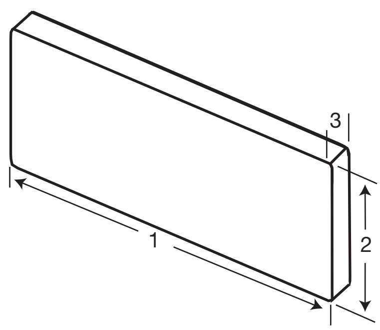


Figure 4. Display Filter

Transparent blue plastic, used to construct the display filter, allows the customer to view the readings. The QL169 pole provides easy viewing of clerk transactions and ensures cashier accuracy.

The conclusion focuses on the end-user benefits.

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Technical descriptions are often used in user manuals, product specifications, construction designs, reports, and sales literature.
2. Process analyses tell how a tool, mechanism, piece of equipment, product, or service works.
3. The introduction of a technical description or process analysis specifies and defines the topic; explains the topic's functions, capabilities, or processes; and might include a list of components, parts, or equipment.
4. Graphics with callouts make a technical description and process analysis easier to understand for the reader.
5. Follow a spatial pattern of organization in a technical description.
6. Follow a chronological order of organization when describing a process.
7. Word usage for descriptions and processes will be photographic and/or impressionistic.
8. Use headings and subheadings to organize the content of your description or process analysis.
9. Use line drawings, schematics, CAD/CAM drawings, photographs, architectural renderings, clip art, exploded views, or sectional cutaway views of your topic for the technical description or process analysis.
10. Preface your text with a title precisely stating the topic. This could be the name of the mechanism, tool, piece of equipment, landform, product, or service you are describing or analyzing.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

Nitrous Systems Biotechnology, Inc. plans to expand its company. Part of this expansion includes the need to hire 50 new biotechnicians. Each will need a tablet PC. But what kind of tablet PC best meets the biotechnicians' needs: one with a touch screen or a pen-enabled interface requiring a digital stylus? You have been asked to research tablet PCs. Your manager wants a brief comparison/contrast, complete with a product description and a process analysis explaining the differences between touch screens and pen-enabled interfaces requiring a digital stylus. What are the technical specifications for each interface, and how does each interface work? Research this topic and write the technical description, complete with process analysis, to meet your manager's request.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Write a technical description, either individually or as a team. To do so, first select a topic. You can describe any tool, mechanism, or piece of equipment. However, don't choose a topic too large to describe accurately. To provide a thorough and precise description, you will need to be exact and minutely detailed. A large topic, such as a computer, an oscilloscope, a respirator, or a Boeing airliner, would be too demanding for a two- to four-page description. On the other hand, do not choose a topic that is too small, such as a paper clip, a nail, or a shoestring. Choose a topic that provides you with a challenge but that is manageable. You might write about any of the following topics:

USB Flash Drive	Backpack	DVD remote control
Wrench	Computer mouse	Mechanical pencil
Screwdriver	Light bulb	Ballpoint pen
Pliers	Calculator	Computer monitor
Wall outlet	Automobile tire	Smartphone

2. Write a process analysis, either individually or as a team, on one of the following topics:
   - How does blood coagulate?
   - How does an X-ray machine work?
   - How do Wi-Fi connections work?
   - How do rotary engines work?
   - How do fuel gauges work?
   - How is metal welded?
   - How does a metal detector work?
   - How do browsers work?
   - How do computer viruses work?
   - How does a wireless mouse work?
3. Select a simple topic for description, such as a pencil, coffee cup, toothbrush, or textbook (you can use brainstorming/listing to come up with additional topics). Describe this item without mentioning what it is or providing any graphics. Then, read your description to a group of students/peers and ask them to draw what you have described. If your verbal description is good, their drawings will resemble your topic. If their drawings are off base, you haven't succeeded in providing an effective description.
4. In degree-specific teams, choose a topic from your area of interest and expertise to describe (including a process analysis). For example, students majoring in HVAC could describe a humidifier and explain how it works. Biotech and nursing students could describe and provide a process analysis for a nebulizer, blood pressure monitor, or glucometer. EMT students could write about defibrillators. Automotive technicians could describe and include a process analysis for jumper cables, battery chargers, or hydraulic jacks. Welding students could write about MIG, TIG, or Stick welding.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECE

Read the following process analysis and reorganize the numbered sentences to achieve a clear, chronological order. If necessary, research this process to learn more about how blood clots.

How Does Blood Clot?

1. In our bodies, blood can clot due to platelets and the thrombin system.
2. When bleeding occurs, chemical reactions make the surface of the platelet "sticky." These sticky platelets adhere to the wall of blood vessels where bleeding has occurred.
3. Platelets, tiny cells created in our bone marrow, travel in the bloodstream and wait for a bleeding problem.
4. Soon, a "white clot" is formed, so called because the clotted platelets look white.
5. Blood clots consist of both platelets and fibrin. The fibrin strands bind the platelets and make the clot stable.
6. In the thrombin system, several blood proteins become active when bleeding occurs. Clotting reactions produce fibrin, long, sticky strings. These sticky strands catch red blood cells and form a "red clot."
7. Primarily, arteries clot due to platelets, while veins clot due to our thrombin system.

WEB WORKSHOP

1. You are ready to purchase a product. This could include printers, monitors, smartphones, scanners, PCs, tablet PCs, speakers, cables, adapters, automotive engine hoists, generators, battery chargers, jacks, power tools, truck boxes, screws, bolts, nuts, rivets, hand tools, and more. A great place to shop is online. By going to an online search engine, you can find not only prices for your products but also technical descriptions or technical specifications. These will help you determine if the product has the size, shape, materials, and capacity you are looking for.

    Go online to search for a product of your choice and review the technical description or specifications provided. Using the criteria in this chapter and your knowledge of effective technical communication techniques, analyze your findings.

    - Are graphics used to help you visualize the product?
    - Are callouts used to help you identify parts of the product?
    - Are high-tech terms defined?
    - Is the use of the product explained?
        a. Report your findings, either in an oral presentation or in writing (e-mail message, memo, letter, or report).
        b. Rewrite any of the technical descriptions that need improvement according to the criteria provided in this textbook.

2. HowStuffWorks (http://www.howstuffworks.com/index.htm) is an extensive online library of process analyses. Revise a process analysis in this Web site.

GRAMMAR, PUNCTUATION, MECHANICS, AND SPELLING

Correct organization and development of your memos, letters, or reports is important for the success of your technical communication. However, no one will be impressed with the quality of your work, or with you, if your writing is riddled with errors in sentence construction or punctuation. Your written correspondence is often your first contact with business associates. Many people mistakenly believe that only English teachers notice grammatical errors and wield red pens, but businesspeople as well take note of such errors and may see the writer as less competent.

We were working recently with a young executive who is employed by a branch of the federal government. This executive told us that whenever his supervisor found a spelling error in a subordinate's report, this report was paraded around the office. Everyone was shown the mistake and had a good laugh over it, and the report was then returned to the writer for correction. Our acquaintance assured us that all of this was in good-natured fun. However, he also said that employees quickly learned to edit and proofread their written communication to avoid such public displays of their errors.

Your writing at work may not be exposed to such scrutiny by coworkers. Instead, your writing may go directly to another firm, and those readers will see your mistakes. To avoid this problem, you must evaluate your writing for grammar, punctuation, and spelling errors. If you don't, your customers, bosses, and colleagues will.

Grammar Rules

To understand the fundamentals of grammar, you must first understand the basic components of a sentence.

A correctly constructed sentence consists of a subject and a predicate (some sentences also include a phrase or phrases).

EXAMPLE ▶

The meeting	began	at 4:00 A.M.
subject	predicate	phrase

Subject: The *doer* of the action; the subject usually precedes the predicate.
Predicate: The *action* in the sentence

EXAMPLE ▶

He	ran	to the office to avoid being late.
doer	action	phrases

If the subject and the predicate (a) express a complete thought and (b) can stand alone, you have an *independent clause*.

EXAMPLE ▶

The meeting began	at 4:00 P.M.
independent clause	phrase

A *phrase* is a group of related words that does not contain a subject and a predicate and cannot stand alone or be punctuated as a sentence. The following are examples of phrases:

at the house
in the box
on the job
during the interview

If a clause is dependent, it cannot stand alone.

EXAMPLE

Although he tried to hurry, he was late for the meeting.
dependent clause independent clause

EXAMPLE

He was late for the meeting although he tried to hurry.
independent clause dependent clause

NOTE: When a dependent clause begins a sentence, use a comma before the independent clause. However, when an independent clause begins a sentence, do not place a comma before the dependent clause.

Agreement between Pronoun and Antecedent (Referent)

A pronoun has to agree in gender and number with its antecedent.

Susan went on *her* vacation yesterday.
The *people* who quit said that *they* deserved raises.

Problems often arise when a singular indefinite pronoun is the antecedent. The following antecedents require singular pronouns: *anybody, each, everybody, everyone, somebody,* and *someone*.

incorrect

Anyone can pick up *their* applications at the job placement center.

correct

Anyone can pick up *his* or *her* application at the job placement center.

Problems also arise when the antecedent is separated from the pronoun by numerous words.

incorrect

Even when the best *employee* is considered for a raise, *they* often do not receive it.

correct

Even when the best *employee* is considered for a raise, *he* or *she* often does not receive it.

Agreement between Subject and Verb

Writers sometimes create disagreement between subjects and verbs, especially if other words separate the subject from the verb. To ensure agreement, ignore the words that come between the subject and verb.

incorrect

Her *boss* undoubtedly *think* that all the employees want promotions.

correct

Her *boss* undoubtedly *thinks* that all the employees want promotions.

incorrect

The *employees* who sell the most equipment *is* going to Hawaii for a week.

correct

The *employees* who sell the most equipment *are* going to Hawaii for a week.

If a sentence contains two subjects (a compound subject) connected by *and*, use a plural verb.

incorrect

Joe and Tiffany *was* both selected employee of the year.

correct

Joe and Tiffany *were* both selected employees of the year.

incorrect

The bench workers and their supervisor *is* going to work closely to complete this project.

correct

The bench workers and their supervisor *are* going to work closely to complete this project.

Add a final *s* or *es* to create most plural subjects or singular verbs, as follows:

PLURAL SUBJECTS	SINGULAR VERBS
bosses hire	a boss hires
employees demand	an employee demands
experiments work	an experiment works
attitudes change	the attitude changes

If a sentence has two subjects connected by *either . . . or, neither . . . nor,* or *not only . . . but also*, the verb should agree with the closest subject. This also makes the sentence less awkward.

EXAMPLE ▶

Either the salespeople or the warehouse worker deserv*es* raises.
Not only the warehouse worker but also the salespeople deserv*e* raises.
Neither the salespeople nor the warehouse worker deserv*es* raises.

Singular verbs are used after most indefinite pronouns such as the following:

another	everything
anybody	neither
anyone	nobody
anything	no one
each	nothing
either	somebody
everybody	someone
everyone	something

Anyone who works here *is* guaranteed maternity leave.
Everybody wants the company to declare a profit this quarter.

Singular verbs often follow collective nouns such as the following:

class	organization
corporation	platoon
department	staff
group	team

The *staff is* sending the boss a bouquet of roses.

Comma Splice

A *comma splice* occurs when two independent clauses are joined by a comma rather than separated by a period or semicolon.

incorrect

Sue was an excellent employee, she got a promotion.

Several remedies will correct this error.

1. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee; she got a promotion.

2. Separate the two independent clauses with a period.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee. She got a promotion.

3. Separate the two independent clauses with a comma and a *coordinating conjunction* (*and, but, or, for, so, yet*).

correct

Sue was an excellent employee, *so* she got a promotion.

4. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon (or a period), a conjunctive adverb, and a comma. *Conjunctive adverbs* include *also, additionally, consequently, furthermore, however, instead, moreover, nevertheless, therefore,* and *thus*.

correct

Sue was an excellent employee; *therefore,* she got a promotion.

or

Sue was an excellent employee. *Therefore,* she got a promotion.

5. Use a *subordinating conjunction* to make one of the independent clauses into a dependent clause. Subordinating conjunctions include *after, although, as, because, before, even though, if, once, since, so that, though, unless, until, when, where,* and *whether*.

correct

Because Sue was an excellent employee, she got a promotion.

Faulty or Vague Pronoun Reference

A pronoun must refer to a specific noun (its antecedent). Problems arise when (a) there is an excessive number of pronouns (causing vague pronoun reference) and (b) there is no specific noun as an antecedent. Notice that there seems to be an excessive number of pronouns in the following passage, and the antecedents are unclear.

EXAMPLE ▶

> Although Bob had been hired over two years ago, *he* found that *his* boss did not approve *his* raise. In fact, *he* was also passed over for *his* promotion. The boss appears to have concluded that *he* had not exhibited zeal in *his* endeavors for their business. Instead of being a highly valued employee, *he* was not viewed with pleasure by those in authority. Perhaps it would be best if *he* considered *his* options and moved to some other company where *he* might be considered in a new light.

The excessive and vague use of *he* and *his* causes problems for readers. Do these words refer to Bob or to his boss? You are never completely sure. To avoid this problem, limit pronoun usage, as in the following revision.

EXAMPLE ▶

> Although Bob had been hired over two years ago, he found that his boss, Joe, did not approve his raise. In fact, Bob was also passed over for promotion. Joe appears to have concluded that Bob had not exhibited zeal in his endeavors for their business. Instead of being a highly valued employee, Bob was not viewed with pleasure by those in authority. Perhaps it would be best if Bob considered his options and moved to some other company where he might be considered in a new light.

To make the preceding paragraph more precise, we have replaced vague pronouns (*he* and *his*) with exact names (*Bob* and *Joe*).

Fragments

A *fragment* occurs when a group of words is incorrectly used as an independent clause. Often the group of words begins with a capital letter and has end punctuation but is missing either a subject or a predicate.

incorrect

Working with computers.
(lacks a predicate and does not express a complete thought)

The group of words may have a subject and a predicate but be a dependent clause.

incorrect

Although he enjoyed working with computers.

(has a subject, *he,* and a predicate, *enjoyed,* but is a dependent clause because it is introduced by the subordinate conjunction *although*)

It is easy to remedy a fragment by doing one of the following:

- Add a subject.
- Add a predicate.
- Add both a subject and a predicate.
- Add an independent clause to a dependent clause.

correct

Joe found that working with computers used his training.
(subject, *Joe,* and predicate, *found,* have been added)

correct

Although he enjoyed working with computers, he could not find a job in a computer-related field.

(independent clause, *he could not find a job,* added to the dependent clause, *Although he enjoyed working with computers*)

Fused Sentence

A *fused sentence* occurs when two independent clauses are connected with no punctuation.

incorrect

The company performed well last quarter its stock rose several points.

There are several ways to correct this error.

1. Write two sentences separated by a period.

correct

The company performed well last quarter. Its stock rose several points.

2. Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction to separate the two independent clauses.

correct

The company performed well last quarter, *so* its stock rose several points.

3. Use a subordinating conjunction to create a dependent clause.

correct

Because the company performed well last quarter, its stock rose several points.

4. Use a semicolon to separate the two independent clauses.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; its stock rose several points.

5. Separate the two independent clauses with a semicolon, a conjunctive adverb or a transitional word or phrase, and a comma.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; *therefore,* its stock rose several points.

correct

The company performed well last quarter; *for example,* its stock rose several points.

The following are transitional words and phrases, listed according to their use.

TO ADD

again	in addition
also	moreover
besides	next
first	second
furthermore	still

TO COMPARE/CONTRAST

also	nevertheless
but	on the contrary
conversely	still
in contrast	

TO PROVIDE EXAMPLES

for example	of course
for instance	put another way
in fact	to illustrate

TO SHOW PLACE

above	here
adjacent to	nearby
below	on the other side
elsewhere	there
further on	

To Reveal Time

afterward	second
first	shortly
meanwhile	subsequently
presently	thereafter

To Summarize

all in all	last
finally	on the whole
in conclusion	therefore
in summary	thus

Modification

A *modifier* is a word, phrase, or clause that explains or adds details about other words, phrases, or clauses.

Misplaced Modifiers. A *misplaced modifier* is one that is not placed next to the word it modifies.

incorrect

He had a heart attack *almost* every time he was reviewed by his supervisor.

correct

He almost had a heart attack every time he was reviewed by his supervisor.

incorrect

The worker had to *frequently* miss work.

correct

The worker frequently had to miss work.

Dangling Modifiers. A *dangling modifier* is a modifier that is not placed next to the word or phrase it modifies. To avoid confusing your readers, place modifiers next to the word(s) they refer to. Don't expect your readers to guess at your meaning.

incorrect

While working, tiredness overcame them.
(Who was working? Who was overcome by tiredness? *While working* should modify *staff,* but the word *staff* does not appear in the sentence.)

correct

While working, the staff became tired.

incorrect

After soldering for two hours, the equipment was ready for shipping. (Who had been soldering for two hours? Not the equipment!)

correct

After soldering for two hours, the technicians prepared the equipment for shipping.

Parallelism

All items in a list should be parallel in grammatical form. Avoid mixing phrases and sentences (independent clauses).

incorrect

We will discuss the following at the department meeting:

1. Entering mileage in logs (phrase)
2. All employees have to enroll in a training seminar. (sentence)
3. Purpose of quarterly reviews (phrase)
4. Some data processors will travel to job sites. (sentence)

correct

We will discuss the following at the department meeting:

1. Entering mileage in logs
2. Enrolling in training seminars
3. Reviewing employee performance quarterly
4. Traveling to job sites

phrases

correct

At the department meeting, you will learn how to do the following:

1. Enter mileage in logs.
2. Enroll in training seminars.
3. Review employee performance quarterly.
4. Travel to job sites.

sentences

Punctuation

Apostrophe (')

Place an *apostrophe* before the final *s* in a singular word to indicate possession.

EXAMPLE ▶ Jim's tool chest is next to the furnace.

Place the apostrophe after the final *s* if the word is plural.

EXAMPLE ▶ The employees' reception will be held next week.

Don't use an apostrophe to make singular abbreviations plural.

incorrect

The EXT's will be shipped today.

correct

The EXTs will be shipped today.

Colon (:)

Use a *colon* after a salutation.

EXAMPLE

Dear Mr. Harken:

In addition, use a colon after an emphatic or cautionary word if explanations follow.

EXAMPLE

Note: Hand-tighten the nuts.
Caution: Wash thoroughly if any mixture touches your skin.

Finally, use a colon after an independent clause to precede a quotation, list, or example.

EXAMPLE

She said the following: "No comment."
These supplies for the experiment are on order: a plastic hose, two batteries, and several chemicals.
The problem has two possible solutions: Hire four more workers, or give everyone a raise.

NOTE: In the preceding examples, the colon follows an independent clause.

A common mistake is to place a colon after an incomplete sentence. Except for salutations and cautionary notes, whatever precedes a colon *must* be an independent clause.

incorrect

The two keys to success are: earning money and spending wisely.

correct

The two keys to success are earning money and spending wisely.

or

The two keys to success are as follows: earning money and spending wisely.

or

The two keys to success are as follows:

1. Earning money
2. Spending wisely

Comma (,)

Writers often get in trouble with *commas* when they employ one of two common words of wisdom.

- When in doubt, leave it out.
- Use a comma when there is a pause.

Both rules are inexact. Writers use the first rule to justify the complete avoidance of commas; they use the second rule to sprinkle commas randomly throughout their writing. On the contrary, commas have several specific conventions that determine usage.

1. Place a comma before a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, or, for, so, yet*) linking two independent clauses.

EXAMPLE ▶

You are the best person for the job, *so* I will hire you.
We spent several hours discussing solutions to the problem, *but* we failed to decide on a course of action.

2. Use commas to set off introductory comments.

EXAMPLE ▶

First, she soldered the components.
In business, people often have to work long hours.
To work well, you need to get along with your coworkers.
If you want to test equipment, do so by 5:25 P.M.

3. Use commas to set off sentence interrupters.

EXAMPLE ▶

The company, started by my father, did not survive the last recession.
Mrs. Patel, the proprietor of the store, purchased a wide array of merchandise.

4. Set off parenthetical expressions with commas.

EXAMPLE ▶

A worker, it seems, should be willing to try new techniques.
The highway, by the way, needs repairs.

5. Use commas after each item in a series of three or more.

EXAMPLE ▶

Prakash, Mirren, and Justin were chosen as employees of the year.
We found the following problems: corrosion, excessive machinery breakdowns, and power failures.

6. Use commas for long numbers.

EXAMPLE ▶

She earns $100,000 before taxes.

NOTE: Very large numbers are often written as words.

EXAMPLE ▶

Our business netted over $2 million in 2014.

7. Use commas to separate the day and year when they are part of a sentence.

EXAMPLE ▶

The company hired her on September 7, 2014, to be its bookkeeper.

NOTE: If the year is used as an adjective, do not follow it with a comma.

EXAMPLE ▶

The 2014 corporate report came out today.

8. Use commas to separate the city from the state and the state from the rest of the sentence.

The new warehouse in Austin, Texas, will promote increased revenues.

◀ EXAMPLE

NOTE: If you omit either the city or the state, you do not need commas.

The new warehouse in Austin will promote increased revenues.

◀ EXAMPLE

Dash (—)

A *dash*, typed as two consecutive hyphens with no spaces before or after, is a versatile punctuation mark. Most word processing programs now include an em dash character. Use dashes in the following ways.

1. After a heading and before an explanation.

Forecasting—Joe and Joan will be in charge of researching fourth-quarter production quotas.

◀ EXAMPLE

2. To indicate an emphatic pause.

You will be fired—unless you obey company rules.

◀ EXAMPLE

3. To highlight a new idea.

Here's what we can do to improve production quality—provide on-the-job training, salary incentives, and quality controls.

◀ EXAMPLE

4. Before and after an explanatory or appositive series.

Three people—Sue, Luci, and Tom—are essential to the smooth functioning of our office.

◀ EXAMPLE

Ellipses (. . .)

Ellipses (three spaced periods) indicate omission of words within quoted materials.

"Six years ago, prior to incorporating, the company had to pay extremely high federal taxes."
"Six years ago, . . . the company had to pay extremely high federal taxes."

◀ EXAMPLE

Exclamation Point (!)

Use an *exclamation point* after strong statements, commands, or interjections.

You must work harder!
Do not use the machine!
Danger!

◀ EXAMPLE

Hyphen (-)

A *hyphen* is used in the following ways.

1. To indicate the division of a word at the end of a typed line. Remember, this division must occur between syllables.
2. To create a compound adjective.

EXAMPLE ▶

He is a well-known engineer.
Until her death in 2014, she was a world-renowned chemist.
Tom is a 24-hour-a-day student.

3. To join the numerator and denominator of fractions.

EXAMPLE ▶

Four-fifths of the company want to initiate profit sharing.

4. To write out two-word numbers.

EXAMPLE ▶

Twenty-six people attended the conference.

Parentheses ( )

Parentheses enclose abbreviations, numbers, words, or sentences for the following reasons.

1. To define a term or provide an abbreviation for later use.

EXAMPLE ▶

We belong to the Society for Technical Communication (STC).

2. To clarify preceding information in a sentence.

EXAMPLE ▶

The people in attendance (all regional sales managers) were proud of their accomplishments.

3. To number items in a series.

EXAMPLE ▶

The company should initiate (1) new personnel practices, (2) a probationary review board, and (3) biannual raises.

Period (.)

A *period* must end a declarative sentence (independent clause).

EXAMPLE ▶

I found the business trip rewarding.

Periods are often used with abbreviations.

D.C.	Mrs.	A.M. or a.m.
e.g.	Ms.	P.M. or p.m.
Mr.		

It is incorrect to use periods with abbreviations for organizations and associations.

incorrect

S.T.C. (Society for Technical Communication)

correct

STC (Society for Technical Communication)

State abbreviations do not require periods if you use two capital letters. (Continue to use a period after a capital letter and a lowercase letter such as Tx., Ks., or Mo.)

incorrect

KS. (Kansas)
MO. (Missouri)
TX. (Texas)

correct

KS
MO
TX

Question Mark (?)

Use a *question mark* after direct questions.

Do the lab results support your theory?
Will you work at the main office or at the branch?

◀ EXAMPLE

Quotation Marks (“ ”)

Quotation marks are used in the following ways.

1. When citing direct quotations.

He said, “Your division sold the most compressors last year.”

◀ EXAMPLE

NOTE: When you are citing a quotation within a quotation, use double quotation marks (“ ”) and single quotation marks (‘ ’).

Kim’s supervisor, quoting the CEO, said the following to explain the new policy regarding raises: “‘Only employees who deserve them will receive merit raises.’”

◀ EXAMPLE

2. To note the title of an article or a subdivision of a report.

EXAMPLE ▶

> The article "Robotics in Industry Today" was an excellent choice as the basis of your speech.
> Section III, "Waste Water in District 9," is pertinent to our discussion.

When using quotation marks, abide by the following punctuation conventions:

- Commas and periods always go *inside* quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

> She said, "Our percentages are fixed."

- Colons and semicolons always go *outside* quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

> He said, "The supervisor hasn't decided yet"; however, he added that the decision would be made soon.

- Exclamation points and question marks go inside the quotation marks if the quoted material is either exclamatory or a question. However, if the quoted material is not exclamatory or a question, then these punctuation marks go outside the quotation marks.

EXAMPLE ▶

> John said, "Don't touch that liquid. It's boiling!"

(Although the sentence isn't exclamatory, the quotation is. Thus, the exclamation point goes inside the quotation marks.)

EXAMPLE ▶

> How could she say, "We haven't purchased the equipment yet"?

(Although the quotation isn't a question, the sentence is. Thus, the question mark goes outside the quotation marks.)

Semicolon (;)

Semicolons are used in the following instances.

1. Between two independent clauses *not* joined by a coordinating conjunction.

EXAMPLE ▶

> The light source was unusual; it emanated from a crack in the plastic surrounding the cathode.

2. To separate items in a series containing internal commas.

EXAMPLE ▶

> When the meeting was called to order, all members were present, including Susan Johnson, the president; Jewel Smith, the vice president; Harold Holbert, the treasurer; and Linda Hamilton, the secretary.

Mechanics

Abbreviations

Never use an abbreviation that your reader will not understand. A key to clear technical writing is to write on a level appropriate to your reader. You may use the following familiar abbreviations without explanation: *Mrs.*, *Dr.*, *Mr.*, *Ms.*, and *Jr.*

A common mistake is to abbreviate inappropriately. For example, some writers abbreviate *and* as follows:

I quit my job & planned to retire young.

◀ EXAMPLE

This is too colloquial for professional technical writing. Spell out *and* when you write.

The majority of abbreviation errors occur when writers incorrectly abbreviate states and technical terms.

States. Writers often abbreviate the names of states incorrectly. Use the U.S. Postal Service abbreviations in addresses.

Abbreviations for States

AL	Alabama	MT	Montana
AK	Alaska	NC	North Carolina
AZ	Arizona	ND	North Dakota
AR	Arkansas	NE	Nebraska
CA	California	NV	Nevada
CO	Colorado	NH	New Hampshire
CT	Connecticut	NJ	New Jersey
DE	Delaware	NM	New Mexico
FL	Florida	NY	New York
GA	Georgia	OH	Ohio
HI	Hawaii	OK	Oklahoma
IN	Indiana	OR	Oregon
IA	Iowa	PA	Pennsylvania
ID	Idaho	RI	Rhode Island
IL	Illinois	SC	South Carolina
KS	Kansas	SD	South Dakota
KY	Kentucky	TN	Tennessee
LA	Louisiana	TX	Texas
ME	Maine	UT	Utah
MD	Maryland	VT	Vermont
MA	Massachusetts	VA	Virginia
MI	Michigan	WA	Washington
MN	Minnesota	WV	West Virginia
MS	Mississippi	WI	Wisconsin
MO	Missouri	WY	Wyoming

Technical Terms. Units of measurement and scientific terms must be abbreviated accurately to ensure that they will be understood. Writers often use such abbreviations incorrectly. For example, "The unit measured 7.9 cent." is inaccurate. The correct abbreviation for centimeter is *cm*, not *cent*. Use the following abbreviation conventions.

Technical Abbreviations for Units of Measurement and Scientific Terms

absolute	abs	current (electric)	I
alternating current	AC	cycles per second	CPS
American wire gauge	AWG	decibel	dB
ampere	amp	decigram	dg
ampere-hour	amp-hr	deciliter	dl
amplitude modulation	AM	decimeter	dm
angstrom unit	Å	degree	deg
atmosphere	atm	dekagram	dkg
atomic weight	at wt	dekaliter	dkl
audio frequency	AF	dekameter	dkm
azimuth	az	dewpoint	DP
barometer	bar.	diameter	dia
barrel, barrels	bbl	direct current	DC
billion electron volts	BeV	dozen	doz (or dz)
biochemical oxygen demand	BOD	dram	dr
board foot	bdft	electromagnetic force	emf
Brinell hardness number	BHN	electron volt	eV
British thermal unit	Btu	elevation	el (or elev)
bushel	bu	equivalent	equiv
calorie	cal	Fahrenheit	F
candela	cd	farad	F
Celsius	C	faraday	f
center of gravity	cg	feet, foot	ft
centimeter	cm	feet per second	ft/sec
circumference	cir	fluid ounce	floz
cologarithm	colog	foot board measure	fbm
continuous wave	CW	foot-candle	ft-c
cosine	cos	foot-pound	ftlb
cotangent	cot	frequency modulation	FM
cubic centimeter	cc	gallon	gal
cubic foot	cu ft (or ft^2)	gallons per day	GPD
cubic feet per second	cfs	gallons per minute	GPM
cubic inch	cu in. (or in.^{3})	grain	gr
cubic meter	cu m (or m^3)	grams	g (or gm)
cubic yard	cu yd (or yd^3)	gravitational acceleration	g

(*continued*)

hectare	ha	maximum	max
hectoliter	hl	megacycle	mc
hectometer	hm	megahertz	MHz
henry	H	megawatt	MW
hertz	Hz	meter	m
high frequency	HF	microampere	µamp
horsepower	hp	microinch	µin.
horsepower-hours	hp-hr	microsecond	µsec
hour	hr	microwatt	µw
hundredweight	cwt	miles per gallon	mpg
inch	in.	milliampere	mA
inch-pounds	in.-lb	millibar	mb
infrared	IR	millifarad	mF
inner diameter or inside dimensions	ID	milligram	mg
intermediate frequency	IF	milliliter	ml
international unit	IU	millimeter	mm
joule	J	millivolt	mV
Kelvin	K	milliwatt	mW
kilocalorie	kcal	minute	min
kilocycle	kc	nautical mile	NM
kilocycles per second	kc/sec	negative	neg or –
kilogram	kg	number	no.
kilohertz	kHz	octane	oct
kilojoule	kJ	ounce	oz
kiloliter	kl	outside diameter	OD
kilometer	km	parts per billion	ppb
kilovolt	kV	parts per million	ppm
kilovolt-amperes	kVa	pascal	pas
kilowatt-hours	kWH	positive	pos or +
lambert	L	pound	lb
latitude	lat	pounds per square inch	psi
length	l	pounds per square inch absolute	psia
linear	lin	pounds per square inch gauge	psig
linear foot	linft	quart	qt
liter	l	radio frequency	RF
logarithm	log.	radian	rad
longitude	long.	radius	r
low frequency	LF	resistance	r
lumen	lm	revolution	rev
lumen-hour	lm-hr	revolutions per minute	rpm
		second	s (or sec)

Technical Abbreviations for Units of Measurement and Scientific Terms (continued)

secant	sec	ultra high frequency	UHF
specific gravity	sp gr (or SG)	vacuum	vac
square foot	ft^2	very high frequency	VHF
square inch	$in.^2$	volt-ampere	VA
square meter	m^2	volt	V
square mile	mi^2	volts per meter	V/m
tablespoon	tbs (or tbsp)	volume	vol
tangent	tan	watt-hour	whr
teaspoon	tsp	watt	W
temperature	t	wavelength	WL
tensile strength	ts	weight	wt
thousand	m	yards	y (or yd)
ton	t	years	y (or yr)

Capital Letters

Capitalize the following:

1. Proper nouns.

EXAMPLE ▶

people	cities	countries	companies	schools	buildings
Susan	Houston	Italy	Bendix	Harvard	Oak Park Mall

2. People's titles (only when they precede the name).

EXAMPLE ▶

Governor Sally Renfro
or
Sally Renfro, governor
Technical Supervisor Todd Blackman
or
Wes Schneider, the technical supervisor

3. Titles of books, magazines, plays, movies, television programs, and CDs (excluding the prepositions and all articles after the first article in the title).

EXAMPLE ▶

Mad Men
The Colbert Report
The Catcher in the Rye
The Twilight Saga: Breaking Dawn
American Idol

4. Names of organizations.

◀ EXAMPLE

Girl Scouts
Phoenix, AZ, Regional Home Care Association
Kansas City Regional Council for Higher Education
Programs for Technical and Scientific Communication
American Civil Liberties Union
Students for a Democratic Society

5. Days of the week, months, and holidays.

◀ EXAMPLE

Monday
December
Thanksgiving

6. Races, religions, and nationalities.

◀ EXAMPLE

American Indian
Jewish
Polish

7. Events or eras in history.

◀ EXAMPLE

the Gulf War
the Vietnam War
World War II

8. North, South, East, and West (when used to indicate geographic locations).

◀ EXAMPLE

Atlanta is one of the fastest growing cities in the South.

NOTE: Don't capitalize these words when giving directions.

◀ EXAMPLE

We were told to drive south three blocks and then to turn west.

9. The first word of a sentence.
10. Don't capitalize any of the following:

◀ EXAMPLE

Seasons—spring, fall, summer, winter
Names of classes—sophomore, senior
General groups—middle management, infielders, surgeons

Numbers

Write out numbers one through nine. Use numerals for numbers 10 and above.

10	12
104	2,093
536	5,550,286

Although the preceding rules cover most situations, there are exceptions.

1. Use numerals for all percentages.

EXAMPLE ▶

2 percent   18 percent   25 percent

2. Use numerals for addresses.

EXAMPLE ▶

12 Elm   935 W. Harding

3. Use numerals for miles per hour.

EXAMPLE ▶

5 mph   225 mph

4. Use numerals for time.

EXAMPLE ▶

3:15 A.M.

5. Use numerals for dates.

EXAMPLE ▶

May 31, 2014

6. Use numerals for monetary values.

EXAMPLE ▶

$45 $.95 $2 million

7. Use numerals for units of measurement.

EXAMPLE ▶

14 feet   6 3/4 inches   16 mm 10 V

8. Do not use numerals to begin sentences.

incorrect

568 people were fired last August.

correct

Five hundred sixty-eight people were fired last August.

9. Do not mix numerals and words when writing numbers. When two or more numbers appear in a sentence and one of them is 10 or more, figures are used.

We attended 4 meetings over a 16-day period.

◀ **EXAMPLE**

10. Use numerals and words in a compound number adjective to avoid confusion.

The worker needed six 2-inch nails.

◀ **EXAMPLE**

Spelling

The following is a list of commonly misspelled or misused words. You can avoid many common spelling errors if you familiarize yourself with these words. Remember to run spell check; also remember that spell check will not understand context. The incorrect word contextually could be spelled correctly.

accept, except	council, counsel	personal, personnel
addition, edition	desert, dessert	principal, principle
access, excess	disburse, disperse	quiet, quite
advise, advice	fiscal, physical	rite, right, write
affect, effect	forth, fourth	stationery, stationary
all ready, already	incite, insight	their, there, they're
assistants, assistance	its, it's	to, too, two
bare, bear	loose, lose	whose, who's
brake, break	miner, minor	your, you're
coarse, course	passed, past	
cite, site, sight	patients, patience	

Apply Your Knowledge

Spelling

In the following sentences, circle the correctly spelled words within the parentheses.

1. Each of the employees attended the meeting (accept except) the line supervisor, who was out of town for job-related travel.
2. The (advise advice) he gave will help us all do a better job.
3. Management must (affect effect) a change in employees' attitudes toward absenteeism.
4. Let me (site cite sight) this most recent case as an example.
5. (Its It's) too early to tell if our personnel changes will help create a better office environment.
6. If we (lose loose) another good employee to our competitor, our production capabilities will suffer.
7. I'm not (quite quiet) sure what she meant by that comment.
8. (Their There They're) budget has gotten too large to ensure a successful profit margin.
9. We had wanted to attend the conference (to too two), but our tight schedule prevented us from doing so.
10. (You're Your) best chance for landing this contract is to manufacture a better product.

In the following letter, correct the misspelled words.

March 5, 2014

Joanna Freeman
Personel Director
United Teletype
1111 E. Street
Kansas City, MO 68114

Dear Ms. Freeman:

Your advertizmemt in the Febuary 18, 2014, Kansas City Star is just the opening I have been looking for. I would like to submit my quallifications.

As you will note in the inclosed resum, I recieved an Enginneering degree from the Missouri Institute of Technology in 2005 and have worked in the electronic enginneering department of General Accounts for three years. I have worked a great deal in design electronics for microprocesors, controll systems, ect.

Because your company has invented many extrordinary design projects, working at your company would give me more chances to use my knowlege aquired in school and through my expirences. If you are interested in my quallifications, I would be happy to discuss them futher with you. I look foreward to hearing from you.

Sincerly,

Bob Cottrell

Bob Cottrell

Fragments and Comma Splices

In the following sentences, correct the fragments and comma splices by inserting the appropriate punctuation or adding any necessary words.

1. She kept her appointment with the salesperson, however, the rest of her staff came late.
2. When the CEO presented his fiscal year projections, he tried to motivate his employees, many were not excited about the proposed cuts.
3. Even though the company's sales were up 25 percent.
4. The supervisor wanted the staff members to make suggestions for improving their work environment, the employees, however, felt that any grievances should be taken directly to their union representatives.
5. Which he decided was an excellent idea.
6. Because their machinery was prone to malfunctions and often caused hazards to the workers.
7. They needed the equipment to complete their job responsibilities, further delays would cause production slowdowns.
8. Their client who was a major distributor of high-tech machinery.
9. Robotics should help us maintain schedules, we'll need to avoid equipment malfunctions, though.
10. The company, careful not to make false promises, advertising their product in media releases.

In the following letter, correct the fragments and comma splices.

May 12, 2014

Maurene Pierce
Dean of Residence Life
Mann College
Mannsville, NY 10012

Subject: Report on Dormitory Damage Systems

Here is the report you authorized on April 5 for an analysis of the current dormitory damage system used in this college.

The purpose of the report was to determine the effectiveness of the system. And to offer any concrete recommendations for improvement. To do this, I analyzed in detail the damage cost figures for the past three years, I also did an extensive study of dormitory conditions. Although I had limited manpower. I gathered information on all seven dormitories, focusing specifically on the men's athletic dorm, located at 1201 Chester. In this dorm, bathroom facilities, carpeting, and air conditioning are most susceptible to damage. Along with closet doors.

Nonetheless, my immediate findings indicate that the system is functioning well, however, improvements in the physical characteristics of the dormitories, such as new carpeting and paint, would make the system even more efficient.

I have enjoyed conducting this study, I hope my findings help you make your final decision. Please contact me. If I can be of further assistance.

Rob Harken

Rob Harken

Punctuation

In the following sentences, circle the correct punctuation marks. If no punctuation is needed, draw a slash mark through both options.

1. John took an hour for lunch (, ;) but Joan stayed at her desk to eat so she could complete the project.
2. Sally wrote the specifications (, ;) Randy was responsible for adding any needed graphics.
3. Manufacturing maintained a 93.5 percent production rating in July (, ;) therefore, the department earned the Golden Circle Award at the quarterly meeting.
4. In their year-end requests to management (, ;) supervisors asked for new office equipment (, ;) and a 10 percent budget increase for staffing.
5. The following employees attended the training session on stress management (, :) Steve Janasz, purchasing agent (, ;) Jeremy Kreisler, personnel director (, ;) and Prakash Patel, staff supervisor.
6. Promotions were given to all sales personnel (, ;) secretaries, however, received only cost-of-living raises.
7. The technicians voted for better work benefits (, ;) as an incentive to improve morale.
8. Although the salespeople were happy with their salary increases (, ;) the technicians felt slighted.
9. First (, ;) let's remember that meeting schedules should be a priority (, ;) and not an afterthought.
10. The employee (, ;) who achieves the highest rating this month (, ;) will earn 10 bonus points (, ;) therefore (, ;) competition should be intense.

In the letter below, no punctuation has been added. Instead, there are blanks where punctuation might be inserted. First, decide whether any punctuation is needed (not every blank requires punctuation). Then, insert the correct punctuation—a comma, colon, period, semicolon, or question mark.

January 8_ 2014

Mr_ Ron Schaefer
1324 Homes
Carbondale_ IL_ 34198

Dear Mr_ Schaefer_

Yesterday_ my partners_ and I read about your invention in the Herald Tribune_ and we want to congratulate you on this new idea_ and ask you to work with us on a similar project_

We cannot wait to begin our project_ however_ before we can do so_ I would like you to answer the following questions_

- Has your invention been tested in salt water_
- What is the cost of replacement parts_
- What is your fee for consulting_

Once_ I receive your answers to these questions_ my partners and I will contact you regarding a schedule for operations_ We appreciate your design concept_ and know it will help our business tremendously_ We look forward to hearing from you_

Sincerely_

Elias Agamenyon

Elias Agamenyon

Agreement (Subject/Verb and Pronoun/Antecedent)

In the following sentences, circle the correct choice to achieve agreement between subject and verb or pronoun and antecedent.

1. The employees, though encouraged by the possibility of increased overtime, (was were) still dissatisfied with their current salaries.
2. The supervisor wants to manufacture better products, but (they he) doesn't know how to motivate the technicians to improve their work habits.
3. The staff (was were) happy when the new manager canceled the proposed meeting.
4. Anyone who wants (his or her their) vote recorded must attend the annual board meeting.
5. According to the printed work schedule, Susan and Tom (work works) today on the manufacturing line.
6. According to the printed work schedule, either Susan or Tom (work works) today on the manufacturing line.
7. Although Tamara is responsible for distributing all monthly activity reports, (she they) failed to mail them.
8. Every one of the engineers asked if (he or she they) could be assigned to the project.
9. Either the supervisor or the technicians (is are) at fault.
10. The CEO, known for her generosity to employees and their families, (has have) been nominated for the humanitarian award.

In the following memo, find and correct the errors in agreement.

MEMO

DATE: October 30, 2014
TO: Tammy West
FROM: Susan Lisk
SUBJECT: REPORT ON AIR HANDLING UNIT

There has been several incidents involving the unit which has resulted in water damage to the computer systems located below the air handler.

The occurrences yesterday was caused when a valve was closed creating condensation to be forced through a humidifier element into the supply air duct. Water then leaked from the duct into the room below causing substantial damage to four disc-drive units.

To prevent recurrence of this type of damage, the following actions has been initiated by maintenance supervision:

- Each supervisor must ensure that their subordinates remove condensation valves to avoid unauthorized operation.
- Everyone must be made aware that they are responsible for closing condensation valves.
- The supply air duct, modified to carry away harmful sediments, are to be drained monthly.

Maintenance supervision recommend that air handlers not be installed above critical equipment. This will avoid the possibility of coil failure and water damage.

Capitalization

In the following memo, nothing has been capitalized. Capitalize those words requiring capitalization.

date: december 5, 2014
to: jordan cottrell
from: richard davis
subject: self-contained breathing apparatus (scba) and negative pressure respirator evaluation and fit-testing report

the evaluation and fit-testing have been accomplished. the attached list identifies the following:

- supervisors and electronic technicians who have used the scba successfully.
- the negative pressure respirators used for testing in an isoamyl acetate atmosphere.

fit-testing of waste management personnel will be accomplished annually, according to president chuck carlson. new supervisors and technicians will be fit-tested when hired.

all apex corporation personnel located in the new york district (12304 parkview lane) must submit a request form when requesting a respirator or scba for use. any waste management personnel in the north and south facilities not identified on the attached list will be fit-tested when use of scba is required. if you have any questions, contact chuck carlson or me (richard davis, district manager) at ext. 4036.

Grammar Quiz

The following sentences contain errors in spelling, punctuation, verb and pronoun agreement, sentence structure (fragments and fused sentences), and modification. Circle the letter corresponding to the section of the sentence containing the error.

EXAMPLE ▶

When you recieve the salary increase, your family will celebrate the occasion.
A B C

1. Each department manager should his tell subordinates to advise of any negative
A B
occurrences regarding in-house training.
C D

2. The lawyers' new offices were similar to their former ones ____________ the offices
A B C
were on a quiet street.
D

3. New York City is divided into five boroughs ; Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens,
A B C
Brooklyn, and Staten Island.
D

4. Fashion consultants explain that clothes create a strong impression ____________ so
A B
they advise executives ____________ to choose wardrobes carefully.
C D

5. Everyone should make sure that they are well represented in union meetings ;
A B
otherwise , management could become too powerful.
C D

6. The employment agency , too busy to return the telephone calls from prospective
A B
clients , are harming business opportunities.
C D

7. The supervisory staff are making decisions based on scheduling , but all employees
A B C
want to ensure quality control.
D

8. Because the price of cars has risen dramatically ____________ most people
A
keep their cars longer ____________ to save capital expenditures.
B C D

9. The department's manager heard that a merger was possible ____________ but he
A B
decided to keep the news quiet.
C D

10. The manager of the department believed that her employee's were excellent , but she
A B
decided that no raises could be given ____________ because the price of stocks was falling.
C D

11. The detailed report from the audit ___________ of the department gave good advise
A B
about how to restructure , so we are all ready to do so.
C D

12. When my boss and I looked at the books , we found these problems ; lost invoices,
A B C
unpaid bills , and late payments.
D

13. The most dedicated staff members are accepted for the on-site training sessions
A B
because : they are responsive to criticism, represent the company's future, and strive
C D
for improvements.

14. Despite her assurances to the contrary , there is still three unanswered questions : who
A B C
will make the payments, when will these payments occur, and why is there a delay?
D

15. The reputation of many companies often depend on one employee who represents
A B C D
that company.

16. Either my monthly activity report or my year - end report are due today , but my
A B C
computer is broken ; therefore, I need to use yours.
D

17. Today's American manpower , according to many foreign governments, suffers
A B C D
from lack of discipline.

18. Rates are increasing next year because : fuel, maintenance, and insurance are
A B C
all higher than last year.
D

19. Many colleges have long-standing football rivalries , one of the most famous ones
A B
is between KU and KSU (two universities in Kansas).
C D

20. Everyone who wants to enroll in the business school should do so before June
A B
if they can to ensure getting the best classes.
C D

21. Because John wanted high visibility for his two business , he paid top dollar
A B
___________ and spent long hours looking for appropriate cites.
C D

22. Many people apply for jobs at Apex , however , only a few are accepted.
A B C D

23. Because most cars break down <u>occasionally</u> <u>,</u> all drivers should know how to change
A B
a flat tire <u>,</u> and how to signal for <u>assistance</u>.
C D

24. Arriving on time, working <u>diligently,</u> and closing the office securely <u>—</u> everyone
A B
<u>needs</u> to know that <u>they are</u> responsible for these job duties.
C D

25. Mark McGwire not only hit the ball <u>further</u> <u>than</u> other players, but also he hit
A B
more dingers than other players <u>who</u> hit <u>fewer</u> homers.
C D

LETTER FORMATS

Three common types of letter formats include **full block** (Figure 1)**, full block with subject line** (Figure 2)**,** and **simplified** (Figure 3)**.** Two popular and professional formats used in business are full block and full block with subject line. With both formats, you type all information at the left margin without indenting paragraphs, the date, the complimentary close, or signature. The full block with subject line differs only with the inclusion of a subject line.

Another option is the simplified format. This type of letter layout is similar to the full block format in that all text is typed margin left. The two significant omissions include no salutation ("Dear _____:") and no complimentary close ("Sincerely,"). Omitting a salutation is useful in the following instances:

- You do not know your reader's name (NOTE: Avoid the trite salutation, "To Whom It May Concern:").
- You are writing to someone with a non-gender specific name (Jesse, Terry, Stacy, Chris, etc.) and you do not know whether to use "Mr.," "Mrs.," or "Ms."

The Administrative Management Society (AMS) suggests that if you omit the salutation, you also should omit the complimentary close. Some people feel that omitting the salutation and the complimentary close will make the letter cold and unfriendly. However, the AMS says that if your letter is warm and friendly, these omissions will not be missed. More importantly, if your letter's content is negative, beginning with "Dear" and ending with "Sincerely" will not improve the letter's tone or your reader's attitude toward your comments. The simplified format includes a subject line to aid the letter's clarity.

FIGURE 1 Full Block Format

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Dear Mr. McGraw:

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

<u>Within 30 days</u> of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

1 to 1½ in margins on all sides of the letter

Two to four spaces above and below the date

Two to four spaces above and below the salutation

Single space within the paragraphs.

Double space between the paragraphs.

Two spaces before "Sincerely"

Four spaces between "Sincerely" and the typed signature

FIGURE 2 Full Block Format with Subject Line

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

Dear Mr. McGraw:

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Sincerely,

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

FIGURE 3 Simplified Format Omitting "Dear . . ." and "Sincerely"

State Health Department
1890 Clark Road
Jefferson City, MO 67220

June 6, 2014

Dale McGraw, Manager
Elmwood Mobile Home Park
Elmwood, MO 64003

Subject: Pollution Control Inspection

On April 19, 2014, Ryan Duran and I, environmental specialists from the Health Department, conducted an inspection of the Elmwood Mobile Home Park Wastewater Treatment Facility. The purpose was to assess compliance with the following: the state's Clean Water Law, Clean Water Commission regulations, and your facility's plan for pollution control. The inspection also would allow the state to promote proper operation of Wastewater Facilities and to provide technical assistance where needed to the Elmwood Mobile Homes management.

Though the Elmwood Mobile Home pollution control plan had expired in 2013, a consent judgment was issued by the state's Attorney General's Office. The county court stipulated a timeline for correction by connection to an available sewer system. Your mobile home park's wastewater system has continually discharged to the Little Osage River. A copy of the abatement order, which requires that monthly discharge monitoring reports (DMRs) be submitted by the 28th of the month following the reporting periods, is attached. All DMRs for the previous twelve months have been received, and reported pollution parameters are not within limits. Due to the plant's performance, the stream was placed on the 2012 303 (d) stream for impairment by the Elmwood Mobile Home.

As part of the inspection, a review of the facility's DMR was conducted. Twenty-four-hour composite samples were collected using a composite sampler. Attached are the results of the 24-hour composite samples collected on April 20, 2014. Every one of the problems documented is an infraction that must be addressed.

Within 30 days of receipt of this letter, please submit to the Health Department written documentation describing steps taken to correct each of the concerns identified in the attachments. Also include engineering reports, and submit a timeframe to eliminate the problems. Thank you for your cooperation.

Harvey Haddix

Harvey Haddix
Environmental Manager

Attachment

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 1 — Layout and Landscaping Plan with Legal Technical Description for High Tech Audience. Courtesy of LandPlan.

Figure 1 — Landscape image within figure. Courtesy of Landplan.

Figure 2 — Technical Description for a Lay Audience. Copyright © 2012 by Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P. Reproduced with permission.

Figure 4 — Exhalation Valve with Labeled Callouts. Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett Corp.

Figure 4 — Exhalation Valve with Labeled Callouts. Courtesy of Covidien, LLC.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Jupiterimages / Getty Images

© Steven and Sharon Gerson

© auremar / Fotolia

This page intentionally left blank

Instructions, User Manuals, and Standard Operating Procedures

From Chapter 14 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

Instructions, User Manuals, and Standard Operating Procedures

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

This scenario shows the importance of effective instructions in the biomedical industry and various communication channels used to convey step-by-step procedures.

As the baby-boom generation ages, medical needs are expanding—sometimes faster than medical care facilities and medical professionals can manage. One area in which this has been felt most acutely is in medical laboratories. Thousands of medical technicians need to be trained to accommodate increased demand.

PhlebotomyDR is a medical consulting firm seeking to solve this problem. Its primary area of concern is training newly hired technicians responsible for performing blood collection. PhlebotomyDR facilitates training workshops to teach venipuncture standards and venipuncture procedures.

PhlebotomyDR focuses on the following venipuncture instructions:

- Proper patient identification procedures
- Proper equipment selection, sterilization, use, and cleaning
- Proper labeling procedures
- Order of phlebotomy draw

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Organize your instruction effectively, including an introduction, table of contents, and discussion of sequenced steps
- Number your steps, and start each step with a verb
- Understand that hazard alerts are important to protect your reader and your company, so place these alerts early in your instruction or before the appropriate step
- Follow a chronological sequence in the instruction
- Know that screencasting, with a mixture of animated screen visuals, voiceovers, and captioned text, benefits your audience by allowing the audience to see the procedure in action
- Know that an SOP is a set of written instructions documenting routine or repetitive technical or administrative activities followed by business and industry to ensure accurate job performance, consistent quality, integrity of the end product, and adherence to governmental regulations
- Use highlighting techniques to emphasize important points, thus minimizing damage to equipment or injury to users
- Know that SOPs are used in many fields, including science, healthcare, biomedical technology, government, military, the computer industry, and others
- Consider usability testing to determine if your procedure is valid
- Evaluate instructions using the checklist

- Patient care before, during, and following venipuncture
- Safety and infection control procedures
- Procedures to follow when meeting quality assurance regulations

Each of the instructions mentioned requires numerous steps, complete with visual aids.

PhlebotomyDR offers its audience various communication channels. Hospitals, labs, and treatment centers can access PhlebotomyDR's instructions as follows:

- Hard-copy instructional manuals
- Online instructions, accessible at http://www.phlebotomydr.com
- Videos showing step-by-step performances of blood collection, complete with case studies enacted by technicians, patients, and supervisors
- Standard Operating Procedures used to achieve uniformity and efficiency
- Smartphone apps for individual tutorials
- One-on-one tutorials with trained phlebotomists
- Instructional workshops designed for groups of seminar participants

PhlebotomyDR's outstanding staff realizes that trained technicians make an enormous difference. Training, achieved through instructional manuals, electronic aids, and individual facilitation, ensures the health and safety of patients. Of equal importance, excellent training also benefits many stakeholders. Untrained technicians make errors that cost us all. Medical errors create insurance problems, the need to redo procedures, increased medical bills, the potential involvement of regulators and legislators, and dangerous repercussions for patients.

In contrast, effective communication, achieved through successful instruction, saves lives, time, and money.

DOT.COM UPDATES

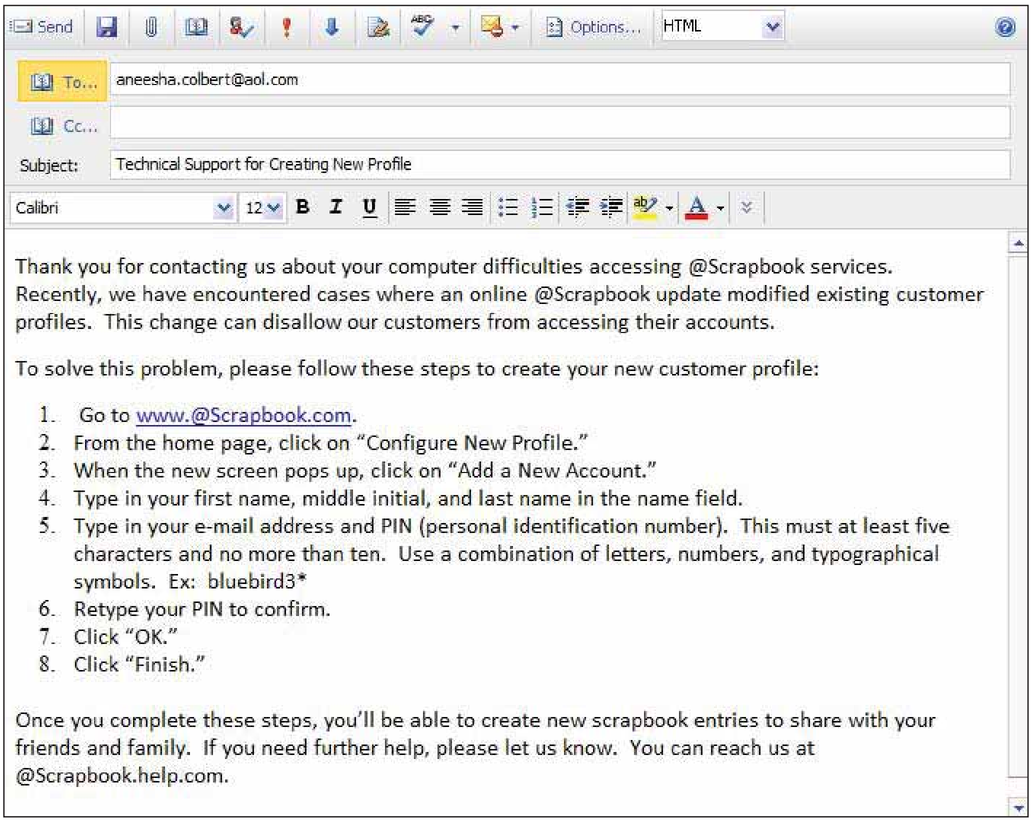
For excellent examples of instructions about home improvement, automobiles, gardening, crafts, and more, check out the following Do It Yourself Network link: http://www.diynetwork.com/.

Why Write an Instruction?

Almost every manufactured product comes complete with instructions. You will receive instructions for baking brownies; making pancakes; assembling children's toys; or changing a tire, the oil in your car, or the coolant in your engine. Instructions help people set up iPod and MP3 systems, construct electronic equipment, maintain computers, and operate fighter planes.

We frequently see short instructions about computer-related problems. If you are at home or in the office, for example, and you can't figure out how to operate one of your computer's applications, you can access online help or dial a 1-800 hotline to speak to a computer technician. Figure 1 is an e-mail message giving a customer the steps to follow for computer technical support.

FIGURE 1 Instructions for Computer Technical Support



Send Options... HTML

To... aneesha.colbert@aol.com

Cc...

Subject: Technical Support for Creating New Profile

Calibri 12

Thank you for contacting us about your computer difficulties accessing @Scrapbook services. Recently, we have encountered cases where an online @Scrapbook update modified existing customer profiles. This change can disallow our customers from accessing their accounts.

To solve this problem, please follow these steps to create your new customer profile:

1. Go to www.@Scrapbook.com.
2. From the home page, click on "Configure New Profile."
3. When the new screen pops up, click on "Add a New Account."
4. Type in your first name, middle initial, and last name in the name field.
5. Type in your e-mail address and PIN (personal identification number). This must at least five characters and no more than ten. Use a combination of letters, numbers, and typographical symbols. Ex: bluebird3*
6. Retype your PIN to confirm.
7. Click "OK."
8. Click "Finish."

Once you complete these steps, you'll be able to create new scrapbook entries to share with your friends and family. If you need further help, please let us know. You can reach us at @Scrapbook.help.com.

Include instructions or user manuals whenever your audience needs to know how to

Operate a mechanism	Collect lab specimens
Install equipment	Use an autoclave
Manufacture a product	Service equipment
Package a product	Troubleshoot a system
Perform lab experiments	Use software
Test components	Set up a product
Maintain equipment	Implement a procedure
Clean a product	Assemble a product
Draw blood	Repair a system

Criteria for Writing Instructions

Odds are good that you've read a badly written instruction. You've probably encountered an instruction that failed to define unfamiliar terminology, didn't tell you what equipment you needed to perform the task, didn't warn you about dangers, didn't clarify how to perform certain steps, and didn't provide you enough graphics or a video to complete the job successfully. Usually, such poorly written instructions occur because writers fail to consider their audience's needs. Successful instructions, in contrast, start with audience recognition.

Audience Recognition

The instruction tells you to "place the belt on the motor pulley," but you don't know what a "motor pulley" is nor do you know how to "place the belt" correctly. You are told to "discard the used liquid in a safe container," but you don't know what is safe for this specific type of liquid. You are told to "size the cutting according to regular use," but you have never regularly performed this activity before.

Here is a typical instruction written without considering the audience.

◀ EXAMPLE

> To overhaul the manual starter, proceed as follows: Remove the engine's top cover. Untie the starter rope at the anchor and allow the starter rope to slowly wind onto the pulley. Tie a knot on the end of the starter rope to prevent it from being pulled into the housing. Remove the pivot bolt and lift the manual starter assembly from the power head.

Although many high-tech readers might be able to follow these instructions, many more readers will be confused. How do you remove the engine's top cover? Where is the anchor? Where is the pivot bolt, and how do you remove it? What is the power head?

The problem is caused by writers who assume that their readers have high-tech knowledge. This is a mistake for several reasons. First, even high-tech readers often need detailed information because technology changes daily. You cannot assume that every high-tech reader is up-to-date on these technical changes. Thus, you must clarify. Second, low-tech and lay readers—and that's most of us—carefully read each and every step, desperate for clear and thorough assistance.

As the writer, you should provide your readers with the clarity and thoroughness they require. To do this, recognize accurately who your readers are and give them what they want, whether that amounts to technical updates for high-tech readers or precise, even simple, information for low-tech or lay readers. The key to success as a writer of instructions is the following: Don't assume anything. Spell it all out—clearly and thoroughly.

Ethical Instructions

Your job as technical writer is to meet your audience's needs. This not only entails clarity in an instruction, but also it demands ethical behavior. User manuals and instructions are perfect examples of the importance of ethical communication.

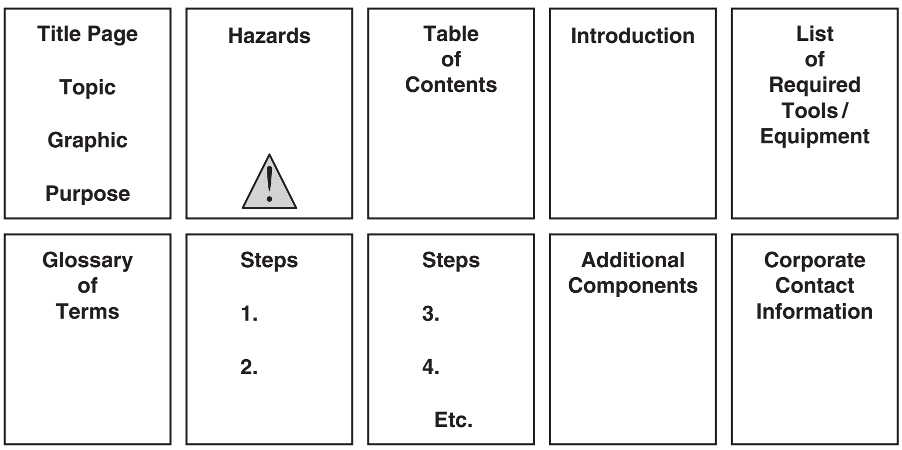
Legalities in User Manuals. As a corporate employee, you never want your writing to lead to customer injuries or to cause a customer to damage equipment. Instead, to avoid issues of liability, your communication must identify the potential for harm. Clearly stated hazard notations, warranties, and disclaimers, discussed later in this chapter, allow you to warn your audience of potential dangers and to set limits and exceptions for product guarantees. By doing so, you adhere to your legal responsibilities to the company and to the client.

Practicalities in User Manuals. Ethical writing doesn't just keep customers safe. It also satisfies your customer's need for up-to-date information, and that's just good business. For example, let's say that a decade ago, your company wrote a technical specification for a product. The product has changed over the years, improving through numerous iterations. However, your company's customer support (training manuals, online help, user manuals, and troubleshooting guides) have not been revised to reflect these changes. Management says that the company doesn't have the time or budget to update the customer support. This can lead to many problems in the manuals, including inconsistencies, inaccuracies, irregularities, and customer complaints. If a client stops buying your products because the supporting documents are flawed, the company loses money. The practical solution, then, is to revise the manuals, bringing them up to date. Doing so is a company's ethical responsibility to its customers.

Components of Instructions

Not every instruction will contain the same components. Some very short instructions will consist of nothing more than a few, numbered steps. Other instructions, however, will consist of the components shown in Figure 2.

FIGURE 2 Key Components of Instructional Manuals



Title Page. Preface your instruction with a title page that consists of the *topic* about which you are writing, the *purpose* of the instruction, and a *graphic* depicting your product or service. For example, to merely title your instruction "iPod" would be uninformative. This title names the product, but it does not explain why the instruction is being written. Will the text discuss operating instructions, troubleshooting, service, or maintenance? A better title would be "Operating Instructions for the iPod." Adding a graphical representation lets your audience see what the finished product will look like and helps you market your product or service.

Safety Requirements. You can place safety requirements anywhere throughout your text. If a particular step presents a danger to the reader, call attention to this hazard just before asking the reader to perform the step. Similarly, to help your audience complete an action, place a note before the step, suggesting the importance of using the correct tool, not overtightening a bolt, or wearing protective equipment.

In addition to placing safety requirements before a step, consider prefacing your entire instructions with hazard notations. By doing so, you make the audience aware of possible dangers, warnings, cautions, or notes in advance of performing the instructions. This is important to avoid potentially harming an individual or damaging equipment and to prevent costly lawsuits. Correctly using hazard notations will avoid expensive liability issues and adhere to ethical communication standards.

Access. Make the hazard notations obvious. To do so, vary your typeface and type size, use white space to separate the warning or caution from surrounding text, box the warning or caution, and call attention to the hazards through graphics.

Definitions. What does *caution* mean? How does it differ from *warning, danger,* or *note*?

Four primary organizations that seek to provide a standardized definition of terms are the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), the U.S. military (MILSPEC), the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), and the MSDS (material safety data sheets) search national repository. To avoid confusion, we suggest the following hierarchy of definitions, which clarifies the degree of hazard:

1. **Note.** Important information, necessary to perform a task effectively or to avoid loss of data or inconvenience.
2. **Caution.** The potential for damage or destruction of equipment.
3. **Warning.** The potential for serious personal injury.
4. **Danger.** The potential for death.

Colors. Another way to emphasize your hazard message is through a colored window or text box around the word. Usually, *Note* is printed in blue or black, *Caution* in yellow, *Warning* in orange, and *Danger* in red.

Text. To further clarify your terminology, provide the readers text to accompany your hazard alert. Your text should have the following three parts:

1. **A one- or two-word identification alerting the reader.** Words such as "High Voltage," "Hot Equipment," "Sharp Objects," or "Magnetic Parts," for example, will warn your reader of potential dangers, warnings, or cautions.
2. **The consequences of the hazards, in three to five words.** Phrases like "Electrocution can kill," "Can cause burns," "Cuts can occur," or "Can lead to data loss," for example, will tell your readers the results stemming from the dangers, warnings, or cautions.
3. **Avoidance steps.** In three to five words, tell the readers how to avoid the consequences noted: "Wear rubber shoes," "Don't touch until cool," "Wear protective gloves," or "Keep disks away."

Icons. Equipment is manufactured and sold globally; people speak different languages. Your hazard alert should contain an icon—a picture of the potential consequence—to help everyone understand the caution, warning, or danger.

Figure 3 shows an effective page layout and the necessary information to communicate hazard alerts.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For samples of hazard icons, check out the following link:

- http://www.speedysigns.com/signs/osha_readymade.asp

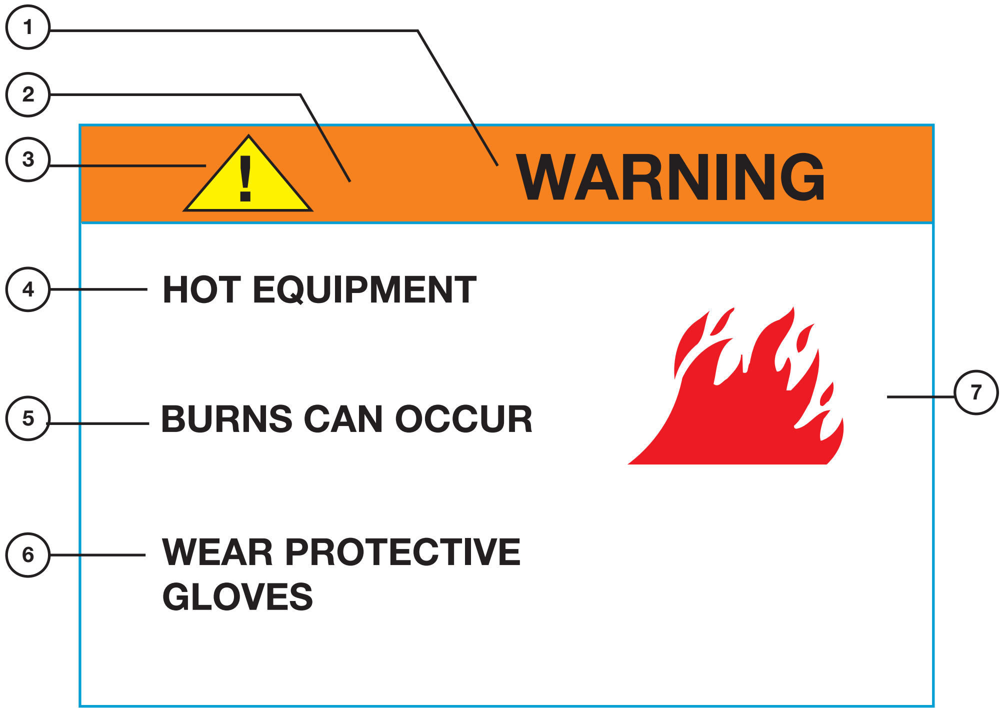
Table of Contents. Your instruction might have several sections. In addition to the actual steps, the instructional manual could include technical specifications, warranties, guarantees, FAQs, troubleshooting tips, and customer service contact numbers. An effective table of contents will allow your readers to access any of these sections individually on an as-needed basis.

Introduction. Companies need customers. A user manual might be the only contact a company has with its customer. Therefore, instructions often are reader-friendly and seek to achieve audience recognition and audience involvement. The manuals try to reach customers in a personalized way. Look at the following introduction from a user manual:

EXAMPLE

> Thank you for your purchase. Installation and operating procedures are contained in this manual about your new 3-D TV. The minutes you spend reading these instructions will contribute to hours of viewing pleasure.

FIGURE 3 Hazard Alert



1	Hazard alert word
2	Hazard alert color
3	Alert symbol
4	Identification—what is the specific hazard?
5	Consequence—what are the potential results?
6	Avoidance steps—what should you do?
7	Hazard icon

This introduction uses pronouns (*you* and *your*) to personalize the manual. The introduction also uses positive words, such as *Thank you* and *pleasure* to achieve positive customer contact. An effective introduction promotes good customer-company relationships.

Glossary. If your instruction uses the abbreviations *BDC, CCW,* or *CPR,* will the readers know that you are referring to "bottom dead center," "counterclockwise," or "continuing property records"? If your audience is not familiar with your terminology, they might miss important information and perform an operation incorrectly.

To avoid this problem, define your abbreviations, acronyms, or technical terms. You can define your terms early in the instruction, throughout the manual, or in a glossary located at the end of your manual. The following example defines terms alphabetically in a glossary:

◀ EXAMPLE

GLOSSARY

BDC	Bottom dead center
CCW	Counterclockwise
Danger	This hazard alert designates the possibility of death. Be extremely careful when performing an operation.
RMS	Root mean square

Required Tools or Equipment. What tools or equipment will the audience need to perform the procedures? You don't want your audience to be in the middle of performing a step and suddenly realize that they need a missing piece of equipment. Provide this important information either through a list or graphics depicting the tools or equipment necessary to complete the tasks.

◀ EXAMPLE

Tools Required
1—2 mm hex wrench

1—pliers

Instructional Steps. The instructional steps are the most important part of your manual—the actual actions required of the audience to complete a task. To successfully write your instruction, follow these steps.

Organize the Steps Chronologically. You cannot tell your readers to do step 6, then go back to step 2, then accomplish step 12, and then do step 4. Such a distorted sequence would fail to accomplish the task. To operate machinery, monitor a system, troubleshoot equipment, or perform a standard operating procedure, your readers must follow a chronological sequence. Be sure that your instruction is chronologically accurate.

Number Your Steps. Do not use bullets or the alphabet. Numbers, which you can never run out of, help your readers refer to the correct step. In contrast, if you used bullets, your readers would have to count to locate steps—seven bullets for step 7, and so on. If you used the alphabet, you'd be in trouble when you reached step 27.

Use Highlighting Techniques. You can use boldface, different font sizes and styles, text boxes, emphatic warning words, color, or italics to call attention to special concerns. A danger, caution, warning, or specially required technique must be evident to your reader. If this special concern is buried in a block of unappealing text, it will not be read. This could be dangerous to your reader or costly to you and your company. To avoid lawsuits or to help your readers see what is important, call it out through formatting.

Limit the Information within Each Step. Don't overload your reader by writing lengthy steps.

BEFORE	AFTER
Overloaded Steps Start the engine and run it to idling speed while opening the radiator cap and inserting the measuring gauge until the red ball within the glass tube floats either to the acceptable green range or to the dangerous red line.	**Separated Steps** 1. Start the engine. 2. Run the engine to idling speed. 3. Open the radiator cap. 4. Insert the measuring gauge. 5. Determine whether the red ball within the glass tube floats to the acceptable green range or up to the dangerous red line.

Develop Your Points Thoroughly. Avoid vague content by clarifying directions, needed equipment, and cautions.

The After example clarifies what is meant by correct rotating and approved lubricant. The steps are also separated for enhanced readability.

BEFORE	AFTER
After rotating the discs correctly, grease each with an approved lubricant.	1. Rotate the disks clockwise so that the tabs on the outside edges align. 2. Lubricate the discs with 2 oz of XYZ grease.

Use Short Words, Sentences, and Paragraphs. Help your audience complete the task quickly and easily. People read instructions because they need help. It's hard to complete a task when they are unfamiliar with equipment, tools, dangers, and technical concepts. You don't want to compound their challenge with long words, sentences, and paragraphs.

Begin Your Steps with Verbs. Note that each of the numbered steps in the following example begins with a verb.

EXAMPLE ▶

Verbs Begin Steps

1. *Organize* the steps chronologically.
2. *Number* the steps.
3. *Use* highlighting techniques.
4. *Limit* the information within each step.
5. *Develop* the points thoroughly.
6. *Use* short words and phrases.
7. *Begin* the steps with verbs

Do Not Omit Articles. Articles, such as *a, an,* and *the,* are part of standard English. Although you might see instructions that omit these articles, please don't do so yourself. Articles do not take up much room in your text, but they make your sentences grammatically correct.

BEFORE	AFTER
1. Press right arrow button to scroll through list of programs. 2. Select program to scan. 3. Place item to scan face down on scanner glass in upper left corner.	1. Press <u>the</u> right arrow button to scroll through <u>a</u> list of programs. 2. Select <u>the</u> program you want to scan. 3. Place <u>an</u> item to scan face down on <u>the</u> scanner glass in <u>the</u> upper left corner.

Additional Components. Your instruction might include the following additional components.

Technical descriptions. In addition to the step-by-step instructions, many manuals contain technical descriptions of the product or system. A description could be a part-by-part explanation or labeling of a product or system's components. Such a description helps readers recognize parts when they are referred to in the instruction. For example, if the user manual tells the reader to lay shingles with the tabs pointing up, but the reader doesn't know what a "tab" is, the step cannot be performed. In contrast, if a description with appropriate callouts is provided, then the reader's job has been simplified.

Perhaps the user manual will contain a list of the product's specifications, such as size, shape, capacity, capability, and materials of construction. Specifications allow the user to decide whether the product meets the reader's needs. Does it have the desired resolution? Is it the preferred weight and size? The specification for a smartphone in the following example answers these questions.

◀ EXAMPLE

Smartphone Specifications

Height:	114 mm (4.48 inches)
Width:	66 mm (2.6 inches)
Depth:	15 mm (0.59 inches)
Weight:	136 grams (4.8 ounces)
Monitor Resolution:	480 × 320 pixel color display

Finally, a user manual might include a schematic, depicting the product or system's electrical layout. This would help the readers troubleshoot the mechanism.

Warranties. Warranties protect the customer and the manufacturer. Many warranties tell the customer, "This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state." A warranty protects the customer if a product malfunctions sooner than the manufacturer suggests it might: "This warrants your product against defects due to faulty material or installation." In such a case, the customer usually has a right to free repairs or a replacement of the product.

However, the warranty also protects the manufacturer. No product lasts forever, under all conditions. If the product malfunctions after a period of time designated by the manufacturer, then the customer is responsible for the cost of repairs or a replacement product. The designated period of time differs from product to product. Furthermore, many warranties tell the customers, "This warranty does not include damage to the product resulting from normal wear, accident, or misuse."

Disclaimers are another common part of warranties that protect the manufacturer. For example, some warranties include the following disclaimers:

- Note: Any changes or modifications to this system not expressly approved in this manual could void your warranty.
- Proof of purchase with a receipt clearly noting that this unit is under warranty must be presented.
- The warranty is only valid if the serial number appears on the product.
- The manufacturer of this product will not be liable for damages caused by failure to comply with the installation instructions enclosed within this manual.

Accessories. A company always tries to increase its income. One way to do so is by selling the customer additional equipment. A user manual promotes such equipment in an accessories list. This equipment isn't mandatory, required for the product's operation. Instead, an accessories list offers customers equipment such as extra-long cables or cords, carrying cases, long-life rechargeable batteries, belt clips and cases, wireless headsets, automotive chargers, and memory cards. Often the specifications are also provided for these accessories.

Frequently asked questions. Why take up your customer support employees' valuable time by having them answer the same questions over and over? By including a frequently asked questions (FAQs) page in the user manual, common consumer concerns can be addressed immediately. This will save your company time and money while improving customer relations.

Corporate contact information. Conclude your manual by providing your company's street, city, and state address; 1-800 hotline telephone number; Web site URL; e-mail address; fax number; social media sites; or other ways your audience could contact the company with questions or requests for more information.

Graphics. Clarify your points graphically. Use drawings, photographs, and screen captures that are big, simple, clear, keyed to the text, and labeled accurately. Not only do these graphics make your instructions more visually appealing, but also they help your readers and you. What the reader has difficulty understanding, or you have difficulty writing clearly, your graphic can help explain pictorially.

A company's use of graphics often depends on the audience. With a high-tech reader, the graphic might not be needed. However, with a low-tech reader, the graphic is used to help clarify. Look at the examples of instructions for the same procedure. Table 1 uses text without graphics for the high-tech audience. Figure 4 uses text with graphics to help the low-tech audience better understand the required steps.

TABLE 1 Text without Graphics for High-Tech Readers

Location Item	Action	Remarks
Note: For additional operating instructions, refer to Companion 2800 operator's manual.		
1. MODE switch	Set to POWER OFF.	
2. Rear panel	Ensure that instructions on all labels are observed.	
3. Patient tubing circuit	Assemble and connect to the unit.	See Table 2, step 3.
4. Power cord	Connect to a 120/220 V AC grounded outlet.	If the power source is an external battery, connect the external battery cable to the unit per Table 2, step 4.
5. Cascade I humidifier	Connect to the unit.	See Table 2, step 2.

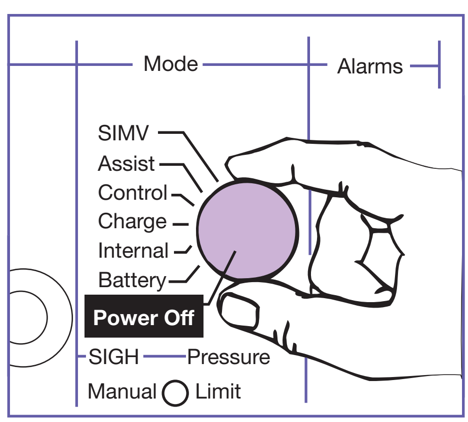
Source: Courtesy of Puritan Bennett Corp.

FIGURE 4 Instructions with Large, Bold Graphics for Low-Tech Audience

Presetting Ventilation Controls and Alarms

Begin by setting ventilator controls and alarms as follows, prior to connecting patient to ventilator.

(1) Set Mode Selector Switch at the "Power Off" position.



TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Using Screen Captures to Visually Depict Steps

Here's a good, simple way to visually depict steps in your instruction—screen captures. A screen capture lets you copy any image present on your computer monitor. To make screen captures, follow these steps.

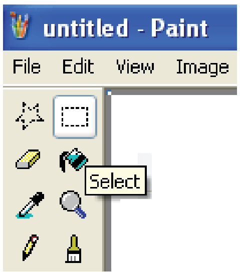
Capturing the Image

1. Find the graphic you want to include in your instructions.
2. Press the **Print Screen** key on your computer keyboard.

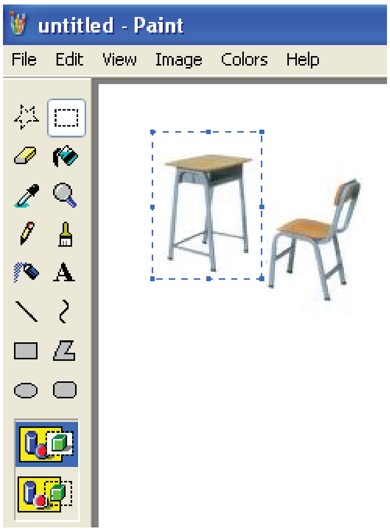
Cropping the Image

Pressing the print screen key captures the entire image seen on the monitor. This might include images that you do not want to include in your instruction. To crop your image, follow these steps:

1. Paste the **Print Screen** image into a graphics program like Microsoft Paint.
2. Click the **Select** icon.



3. Click and drag the **Select** tool to choose the part of the captured graphic you want to crop.



4. Copy and paste this cropped image into your user manual.

"Selected" portion of the graphic chosen for cropping

Note: When capturing screen shots, be careful to avoid infringing upon a company's copyright to the image. Make sure that your use of the image meets the principle of "fair use" (which permits the use of images for criticism, comment, news reporting, teaching, scholarship, or research—Copyright Act of 1976, 17 U.S.C. § 107).

Collaboration to Create User Manuals

Collaboration is essential for team members who write user manuals. User manuals are often long and complex, requiring input from a variety of individuals, each with a different job function. Stacy Gerson, technical writer for GBA Master Series (gbaMS), works collaboratively with multiple team members when writing her user manuals. Her team consists of three separate cohorts: other writers, clients, and a project team of subject matter experts.

The subject matter experts are headed by a project manager. This person is in charge of the budget and schedule for the user manual creation. The manager oversees the following:

- Account specialists, who liaison with the clients to determine customer needs
- Business analysts, who determine what software changes need to be made to meet the clients' expectations
- Software developers, who code the software programs
- Quality assurance personnel, who make sure the coding is correct

Stacy takes the information from the above team members and writes the manual. If the manual is very long, she might work with a team of writers, most of whom are dispersed in various cities. Team members collaborate virtually through online chats, text messages, e-mail, and telephone calls. They discuss how the manual will look, mock up parts of the project, decide how to delegate responsibilities, work on their individual parts, proofread each other's work, and then merge the components for the finished project.

Finally, Stacy meets with a representative group of clients who complete the steps within the manual for usability testing. By gauging the challenges her test group might encounter, Stacy can correct glitches and fine tune the manual. Once this is completed, the manual is ready for publication, either in hard-copy or electronic form.

Instructional Videos

Another way to depict your instructional steps graphically is through videos. Screencasting, a mixture of animated screen visuals, voiceovers, and captioned text, will benefit your audience in the following ways:

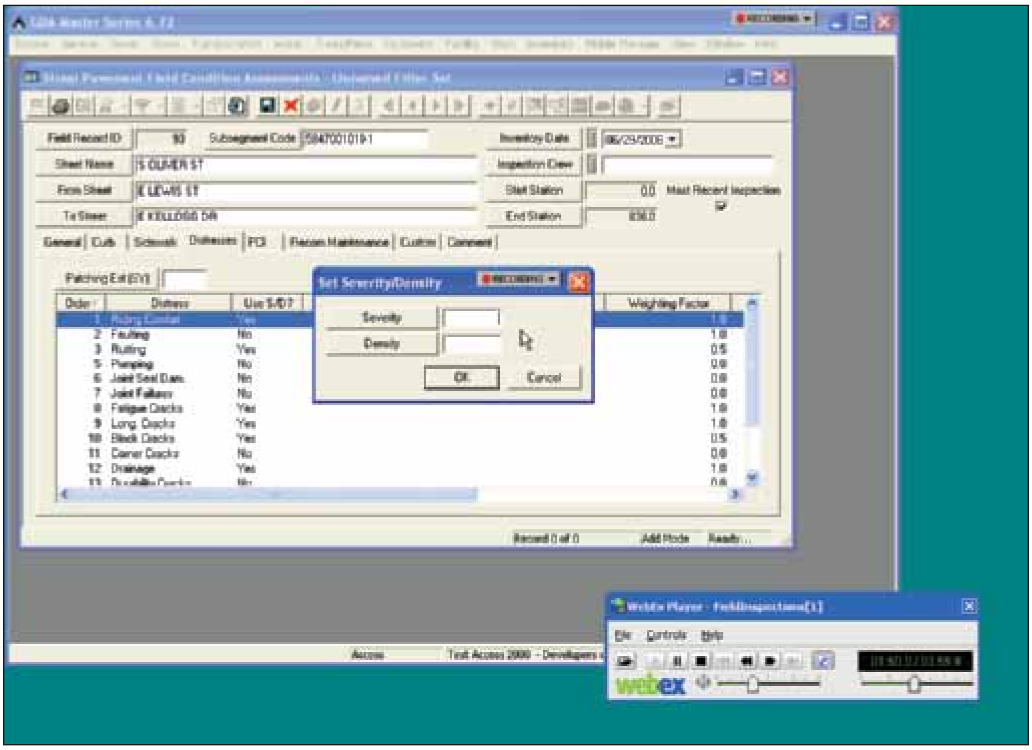
- Animated videos show the end-user how to perform a step more successfully than static text might.
- Videos are an excellent communication channel for visual learners.
- Through podcasting and smartphone apps, instructional videos can be downloaded anywhere, anytime by mobile users.
- A company can enhance its marketing strategy by advertising its instructional videos as an alternative communication channel to hard-copy text. YouTube is an excellent social networking tool for sharing instructional videos and for marketing a company's product.
- Instructional videos allow for end-user interaction. The audience can fast forward, slow down, go backward, or freeze screens to learn how to perform tasks at their own pace.
- A video can be more informative than static text and photography. A video screencast shows how an end-user interacts with machinery, equipment, tools, and more.
- Video instructions help end-users see the consequences of hazard alerts. For example, the user can see a short animation showing the results of pushing the wrong button, using the incorrect equipment, or putting the wrong chemical in a test tube.

- You can make instructional videos using a variety of tools that are supported by Windows, Mac, or Linux. These include WebEx, Camtasia, Captivate, CamStudio, iShowU, SnapzPro, Wink, and Encorder.

(Tietjen; Sharp)

Figure 5 shows a screen capture of one step in a video instruction.

FIGURE 5 Video Instruction with Voiceover Narration



Voiceover Narration: The first step in assessing street pavement field conditions is to determine the level of riding comfort. Click on **Riding Comfort** to select this option. The **Set Severity/Density** box drops down. Now, fill in the **Severity** and **Density** fields and click **OK**. This takes you to the next step.

At the bottom of the video instruction, GBA Master Series provides a WebEx Player control box. With these buttons and slides, the end-user can control the sound, fast forward, rewind, or pause the video. The video counter allows the end-user to skip ahead or return to other portions of the video.

SPOTLIGHT

How GBA Master Series Uses Screencasting for Instructions

Technical writer Stacy Gerson writes online user manuals and training guides in hard-copy and online video formats. Her audience includes office workers, dispatchers, maintenance supervisors, field workers, engineers, and employees of citizen complaint call centers.

These manuals and videos help her clients use gbaMS's software related to public works preventative maintenance scheduling, work orders, asset inventory, asset inspections, employee timesheets, and administrative modules for city, county, and state planning and budgeting.

To write her user manuals and online videos, Stacy

- Interacts with her programmers, asking questions to clarify challenging content.
- Watches WebEx movies created by the software developers. These movies walk through programs and provide voiceover explanations of the content. Stacy uses the movies for the basis of her text for both the hard-copy manuals and video scripts.
- Digs through the complex coding, provided by the subject matter experts to find what will be most useful for her lay readers.
- "Learns how to use the software by using it."

Stacy focuses on the big picture when she creates her online manuals and videos. Her goals are to create easy-to-read text, easy-to-follow steps, and material that "is not just well written but content that will help the end-user." As she adapts her scripts to online video instruction, she adds screen shots and provides a voiceover narration to explain which fields to fill in on the screens and what step to perform next.

Stacy has found that she needs to write well, have grammatical abilities, and empathize with the end-users' needs. She also has to consider whether or not her online videos use enough narration to explain the screen shots.

Her number one task is to make things easily understandable for gbaMS's customers. The software can be complex at times, so if an instruction is unclear, Stacy says, "the customer can't do the job." To make the instructions understandable, Stacy explains, "I try to write text for the manuals and the videos that is logical, clear, simple, and visually appealing. If I look at something and say, 'What's that?' then I have to assume that it won't be clear to the client either."

Standard Operating Procedures

Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) are a common form of instruction in many scientific and technological fields.

Why Write an SOP?

An SOP is a set of written instructions that documents routine or repetitive technical or administrative activities followed by business and industry. SOPs ensure accurate job performance and consistent quality and integrity of the end product. SOPs also ensure that governmental regulations are followed. SOPs must be reviewed and enforced by management. Employees need to reference SOPs for accuracy of procedures, so SOPs must be available as hard-copy documents and in electronic formats. Annual reviews of SOPs by both management and employees are necessary to ensure that they are being followed.

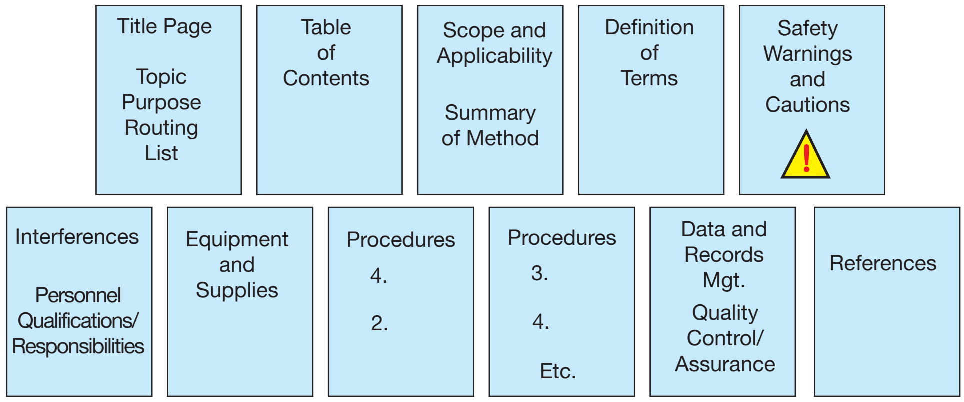
SOPs are used in many fields, including science, healthcare, biomedical technology, government, military, the computer industry, and others. These industries use SOPs to document how to do the following:

- Calibrate and standardize instruments
- Collect lab samples
- Handle and preserve food
- Analyze test data
- Troubleshoot equipment, machinery, and procedures
- List mathematical steps to follow for acquiring data and making calculations
- Assess hardware and software analytical data

Components of SOPs

SOPs contain many of the same components as user manuals already discussed in this chapter, such as procedural steps. However, several of the parts of an SOP are different. Figure 6 shows the key components of an SOP.

FIGURE 6 Key Components of SOPs



Title Page. Preface your SOP with a title page that consists of the topic about which you are writing, the date of the SOP, the purpose of the SOP, and the routing list of people who have to sign off on this procedure.

◀ EXAMPLE

> **Standard Operating Procedure**
>
> **January 14, 2014**
> **Preparing and Processing Algae Samples to Ensure Proper pH**
>
> Author: ______________________________
> Date Approved: ______________________________
> Manager: ______________________________
> Date Approved: ______________________________
> Quality Assurance Manager: ______________________________
> Date Approved: ______________________________

Scope and Applicability. This section of the SOP can be limited to approximately three to five sentences. However, some SOPs, due to the complexity of the subject matter, can have Scope and Applicability sections that are several paragraphs long. This section of the SOP provides an overview for the audience. To do so, explain why the SOP has been written, show how it meets regulatory requirements, specify any limits for the use of the procedure, and state the applicability of the procedure.

◀ EXAMPLE

> *Scope*
>
> The purpose of this SOP is to establish uniform procedures for water compliance inspections (WCIs) performed by the Georgia Science and Assessment Division (GSAD). The WCIs evaluate the effectiveness and reliability of the state agency's inspection procedures to meet regulations of the Clean Water Act (CWA). The SOP will ensure thoroughness of all water compliance inspections and reports. The inspector may alter SOPs due to unexpected or unique problems in the field. Deviations from the SOP must be reported.
>
> *Applicability*
>
> The policies and procedures of the SOP apply to all personnel who take part in the WCIs.

Summary of Method. In this brief summary of the procedure (three to five sentences or short paragraphs), you might focus on any of the following, determined by the topic of the SOP:

- Title of people involved
- Their roles and duties
- Sequence of their involvement
- Sequence of activities performed

◀ EXAMPLE

> *Summary of the Method*
>
> During the WCI, the state inspector is the lead person supervising all tests. The state inspector manages a staff of scientists who gather water samples either manually or automatically with a portable compositor. Once the samples are collected, the state scientists divide the collection into containers, preserve the samples in ice, and ship the collection to a state laboratory for analysis. The laboratory technicians compare

the test results to acceptable limits to determine compliance. The state inspector must sign off on all parts of the procedure.

Once these tests are completed, the WCI inspector and the United States EPA inspector discuss procedures, findings, variances, and corrective actions. The EPA inspector fills out the Water Compliance Overview Inspection Checklist. Both inspectors are required to sign this form, which is kept on file in the state and national archives.

Interferences. Interferences include any components of the process that may interfere with the accuracy of the final product. This can include but is not limited to the following:

- Humidity
- Temperature
- Depth
- Altitude
- Weather
- Cleanliness
- Carelessness
- Sample size
- Contamination

EXAMPLE ▶

Interferences

If the water has high concentrations of chlorine, this can interfere with test results. Therefore, if the inspector determines that chlorine is present, add sodium sulfide to the sample bottle before autoclaving.

Personnel Qualifications/Responsibilities. This section lists the required experience and certifications of the individuals performing the SOP. These qualifications can include education, years of experience, courses taken, continuing education hours completed, and more.

EXAMPLE ▶

Personnel Qualifications/Responsibilities

This SOP is written specifically for water compliance inspections (WCIs) performed by the Georgia Science and Assessment Division (GSAD). All personnel who perform this activity must have the Basic Inspector Training for Water Compliance certification and have taken the state-required, 8-hour continuing education class. Additional training qualifications include GSAD regulation certification as well as on-the-job training.

Personnel performing this SOP have the following responsibilities:

1. WCI inspector—this person must have a minimum of a Bachelor of Science in chemistry (or related discipline), five years field work experience, three years laboratory work, and must be certified in state water compliance regulations. This inspector is responsible for coordinating staff and conducting the WCI test to meet deadlines. The inspector must be able to enforce the policies and procedures outlined in this SOP.
2. Scientists and laboratory technicians—these employees must have a minimum of an Associate of Science in chemistry, biotechnology, or a related field. These employees also must have passed state-level training in water compliance regulations. Scientists and laboratory technicians must meet deadlines for the WCI, submit all samples in accordance with regulatory policies, and adhere to the SOP.

Equipment and Supplies. This section can include the following items necessary to perform the SOP:

- Tools
- Equipment
- Reagents needed for the procedure
- Standards for the chemicals
- Biological specimens

If the steps in the process break down into multiple sections, you can divide the equipment and supplies into the units in a chronological pattern of organization. Remember to include quantities of items if needed to perform different tests in the process.

◀ EXAMPLE

Equipment and Supplies

1.1 Sample Collection
  1.1.1 Sterile sample jars
  1.1.2 Syringes with carbon filters
  1.1.3 Sterile screw-top lids
1.2 Lab Analysis
  1.2.1 Air incubator
  1.2.2 Water bath
  1.2.3 Disposable sterile pipettes
  1.2.4 Sterile applicator sticks
  1.2.5 Sterile culture tubes
  1.2.6 Sterile screw-cap tops
  1.2.7 Pyrex graduated cylinders
  1.2.8 Culture tube racks

Data and Records Management. Include the following information in this unit of the SOP:

- Calculations to be performed during the procedure
- Forms for the reports
- Required reports
- Reporting intervals
- Report recipients
- Process to follow for recording and storing data and information generated by the SOP

◀ EXAMPLE

Records Management

1. Appropriate SOPs will be kept in the laboratory library in black binders. All SOPs will be available to management and employees. When an SOP is removed from the library, sign your name and add the checkout date on the posted SOP inventory sheet.
2. No SOPs can leave the laboratory area.
3. The laboratory director will update the SOP binders as procedures or regulations change.
4. Staff will read all revised SOPs within five working days and sign and date the updated SOP list.

Quality Control and Quality Assurance. Quality control activities help you ensure that you are checking for the highest quality and consistency of the procedure.

- Explain how you will verify your work through quality control. What self-checks will you implement? Will you retest, recount, or recalibrate findings?
- Include the specific process to follow for retesting the procedure, recounting to determine the performance level of the procedure, or recalibrating the machinery.
- Include the self-check intervals for retesting, recounting, or recalibrating. Detail the procedure for dealing with divergent results found through the self-checks.
- State how and to whom you will report the results of the quality control activities.

EXAMPLE ▶

Quality Control

To achieve quality assurance, the laboratory will follow this procedure:

- Sterility—each sample is incubated for 24 hours at 0.5°C and examined for contaminants. If a sample tests positive for contaminants, the entire lot is discarded.
- pH—if the pH does not meet manufacturer's specifications prior to autoclaving, pH can be adjusted according to EPA specifications. If the pH does not meet specifications after autoclaving, the entire sample must be discarded.
- Testing—the laboratory will test samples twice a year (January and June).

References. In this unit, cite the documents or procedures used in or referred to in your SOP. You should include documentation of additional SOPs referenced, literature used for research, and any additional instruction manuals used for reference. Attach copies of the documents if they are not readily available to your potential audience.

Test for Usability

You've written the instruction or SOP, but is it usable? If the instruction doesn't help your audience complete the task, what have you accomplished? To determine the success of your manual, test the usability of the instruction or SOP as follows:

1. **Select a test audience.** The best audience for usability testing would include a representative sampling of individuals with differing levels of expertise. A review team composed only of high-tech readers would skew your findings. In contrast, a review team consisting of high-tech, low-tech, and lay readers would give you more reliable feedback.
2. **Ask the audience to test the instructions.** The audience members would attempt to complete the instructions, following the procedure step by step.
3. **Monitor the audience.** What challenges do the instructions seem to present? For example, has the audience completed all steps easily? Are the correct tools and equipment listed? Are terms defined as needed and presented where they are necessary? Has the test audience abided by the hazard notations? Are any steps overloaded and, thus, too complicated? Has each step been explained specifically?
4. **Time the team members.** How long does it take each member to complete the procedure? More important, why has it taken some team members longer to complete the task?
5. **Quantify the audience's responses.** Once your test audience has completed the procedure, debrief these individuals to determine what problems they encountered.

Use the Instruction, User Manual, and SOP Usability Checklist to help gather quantifiable information about the instruction's usability.

INSTRUCTION, USER MANUAL, AND SOP USABILITY CHECKLIST

Audience Recognition

_____ **1.** Are technical terms defined?

_____ **2.** Are graphics used to explain difficult steps at the reader's level of understanding?

_____ **3.** Do the graphics depict correct completion of difficult steps at the reader's level of understanding?

_____ **4.** Are the tone and word usage appropriate for the intended audience?

_____ **5.** Does the introduction involve the audience, clarify how the reader will benefit, or provide the scope and applicability of the procedure?

Development

_____ **1.** Are steps precisely developed?

_____ **2.** Is all required information provided, including hazards, technical descriptions, warranties, accessories, and required equipment or tools?

Conciseness

_____ **1.** Are words, sentences, and paragraphs concise and to the point?

_____ **2.** Does each step specify one action versus overloading the reader?

Consistency

_____ **1.** Is a consistent and parallel hierarchy of headings used?

_____ **2.** Are graphics presented consistently (same location, same use of figure titles and numbers, similar sizes, etc.)?

_____ **3.** Does wording mean the same throughout (technical terms, cautions, warnings, notes, etc.)?

_____ **4.** Is the same system of numbering used throughout?

Ease of Use

_____ **1.** Can readers easily find what they want through the following?

- Table of contents
- Glossary
- Hierarchical headings
- Headers and footers
- Index
- Cross-referencing or hypertext links
- Frequently asked questions (FAQs)

Document Design

_____ **1.** Do graphics depict how to perform steps?

_____ **2.** Is white space used to make information accessible?

_____ **3.** Does color emphasize hazards, key terms, or important parts of a step?

_____ **4.** Do numbers or bullets divide steps into manageable chunks?

_____ **5.** Are hazards (dangers, warnings, cautions, and notes) boldfaced, typed in appropriate colors, and/or placed in textboxes to emphasize importance?

Sample Instructions

See Figure 7, Hewlett Packard OfficeJet Pro, for a sample instruction.

The Writing Process at Work

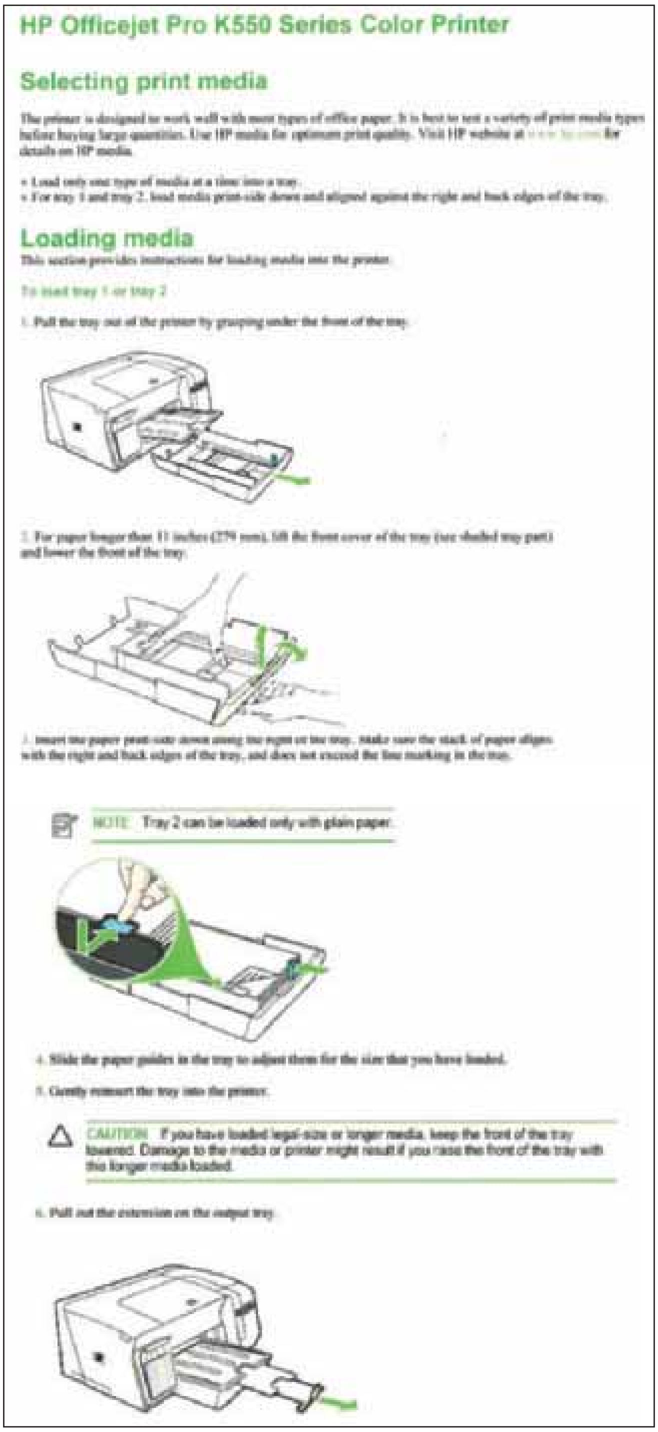
Now that you know what should be included in an instruction or SOP, it is time to write. The best way to accomplish your technical communication challenge is by following a process: Prewrite to gather data and determine objectives, write a rough draft of your instruction, and rewrite to revise.

Following is an example of an instruction written by Stacy Gerson, technical writer at gbaMS. To write this instruction, Stacy gathered data, determined objectives and sequenced the instruction through prewriting, drafted an instruction in writing, and finally revised the draft.

Prewriting

Flowcharts chronologically trace the stages of an instruction, visually revealing the flow of action, decision, authority, responsibility, input/output, preparation, and termination of process. Flowcharting is not just a graphic way to help you gather data and sequence your instruction, however. It is two-dimensional writing. It provides your reader content as well

FIGURE 7 HP Officejet Pro K550 Series Color Printer



HP Officejet Pro K550 Series Color Printer

Selecting print media

The printer is designed to work well with most types of office paper. It is best to test a variety of print media types before buying large quantities. Use HP media for optimum print quality. Visit HP website at www.hp.com for details on HP media.

- Load only one type of media at a time into a tray.
- For tray 1 and tray 2, load media print-side down and aligned against the right and back edges of the tray.

Loading media

This section provides instructions for loading media into the printer.

To load tray 1 or tray 2

1. Pull the tray out of the printer by grasping under the front of the tray.

2. For paper longer than 11 inches (279 mm), lift the front cover of the tray (see shaded tray part) and lower the front of the tray.

3. Insert the paper print-side down along the right of the tray. Make sure the stack of paper aligns with the right and back edges of the tray, and does not exceed the line marking in the tray.

NOTE Tray 2 can be loaded only with plain paper.

4. Slide the paper guides in the tray to adjust them for the size that you have loaded.

5. Gently reinsert the tray into the printer.

CAUTION If you have loaded legal-size or longer media, keep the front of the tray lowered. Damage to the media or printer might result if you raise the front of the tray with this longer media loaded.

6. Pull out the extension on the output tray.

Source: Courtesy of Hewlett-Packard

as a panoramic view of an entire sequence. Rather than just reading an instruction step by step, having little idea what will happen next, with a flowchart your reader can figuratively stand above the instruction and see where it's going. With a flowchart, readers can anticipate cautions, dangers, and warnings, since they can see at a glance where the steps lead.

To create a flowchart, use the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) flowchart symbols shown in Figure 8.

Figure 9 illustrates Stacy's flowcharting to gather data and to arrange it chronologically.

FIGURE 8 Flowcharting Symbols

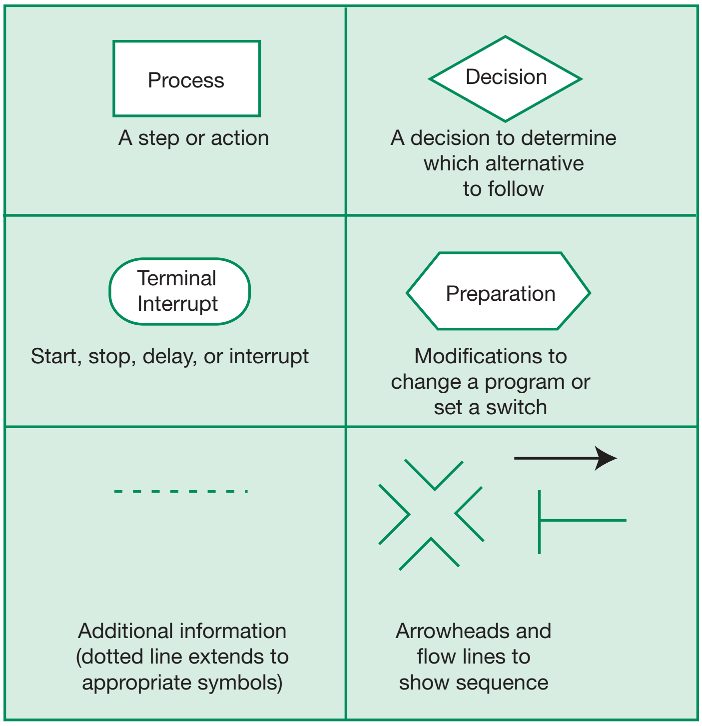
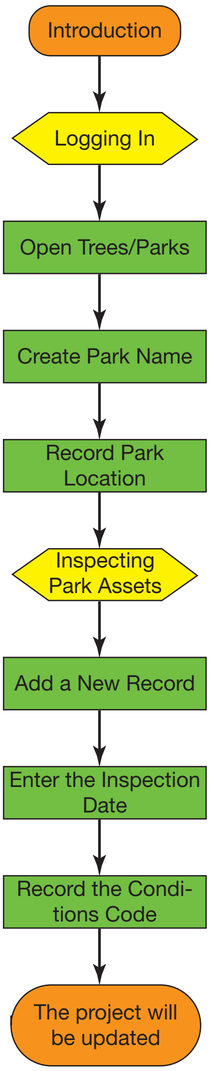


FIGURE 9 Flowchart for gbaMS Parks Inventory



Writing

Once you've graphically depicted your instruction sequence using a flowchart, the next step is to write a rough draft of the instruction. After completing the prewriting, Stacy composed a rough draft. A teammate reviewed her draft and made revision suggestions (Figure 10).

Rewriting

Rewriting, the last stage in the process, is the time to revise your instruction. Stacy revised the rough draft. The revision is shown in Figure 11.

FIGURE 10 gbaMS Instruction Rough Draft with Peer Reviewer Commentary

Add a title page, a table of contents for reader ease of access, a glossary to define terms the audience might not know, and a welcoming introduction.

The first step in the rough draft is actually three, separate steps. The use of the bullet and the numbering confused the test audience, so revise that setup.

You added unnecessary transitional words, such as "then," "next," and "finally." Remove these words since the numbered steps act as transition.

Add screen captures to help the audience understand the procedure.

Park Inventory

The *Parks* module is the most important module in the *Park Master*. All other park asset modules are dependent upon the *Parks* module. While you can access the other asset modules through the gbaMS main menu, it's best to add park assets directly from the *Parks* module. This allows the system to carry over linking information and details about the park. In the following step-by-step example, we'll show you how to create a park, record its location and attributes, and associate park assets.

1. Open **Trees/Parks>>Park Master>>Parks** from the gbaMS main menu.

   - Click *GO* to bypass the filter. When the module is opened, click the Add button in the toolbar to access a blank record.

2. Then, in the module header, create a unique Park Name and Alternate Park ID. Make sure to choose a name and ID that are recognizable; you'll need to be able to select the appropriate park name from a pick list in the park asset modules.

3. Next, record the park location, park supervisor, park type, district, region, owner, acquisition date, and opening date on the General tab.

4. Finally, select a Default WO Category. The category you select here will be carried over to any work order created from this record.

Inspecting Park Assets

All of our park asset inventory modules have associated inspection modules. In the following example, we'll show you how to add an inspection record for your park asset.

1. On the Inspections/Associations tab of the *Park Playground Equipment Inventory* module, right click in the Inspections grid and select *Add Record*.

2. The *Park Playground Equipment Inspection* module will open. There, you'll see the Equipment Number, Alternate Equipment ID, and Equipment Name carried over from the related inventory record.

3. Next, you'll need to enter the inspection date, inspection crew, and next scheduled inspection date.

4. Two Condition tabs are provided. You'll use these to record the condition codes (excellent, good, fair, and poor) for the various aspects of the playground equipment. These include the overall condition, stability, concrete exposure, protective surface, clearance, supports, and fastenings, among other things.

FIGURE 11 gbaMS Parks Inventory Completed Instruction

GBA MASTER SERIES® SOFTWARE APPLICATIONS

GBA Parks Master™

10561 Barkley #500
Overland Park, Kansas 66212
Phone 800.492.2468 • Fax 913.341.3128
www.gbams.com • info@gbams.com

Source: Courtesy of gbaMS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	1
Required Hardware and Software	2
Glossary	2
Park Inventory	3
Inspecting Park Assets	4

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1 Name and ID	3
FIGURE 2 Add Record	4
FIGURE 3 Equipment Name and Number	4
FIGURE 4 Equipment Condition	5

INTRODUCTION

In this workbook, we'll introduce you to the modules in the *GBA Parks Master*™. Using a series of step-by-step examples, we'll show you how to track and maintain your park assets. These include

- Parking lots
- Paths
- Fields and courts
- Landscaping
- Playground equipment
- Pools
- Furniture (and more)

Our software modules will help you manage your parks effectively and efficiently. While the *Parks Master's* multiple inventory and inspection modules track unique park assets, the steps provided in this workbook will apply equally to all park asset modules.

REQUIRED HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE

The following requirements are based on the simplest configurations with the best performance.

Hardware

CPU	450 MHz
RAM	256
Storage Space	20MB
Minimum Video	800 × 600

Software

Windows XP Professional

Internet Explorer Version 7.0

GLOSSARY

ID	Identification number (provided from the dropdown list)
Mb	Megabytes
MHz	Megahertz
WO	Work Order number (you choose your own for your records)

2

PARK INVENTORY

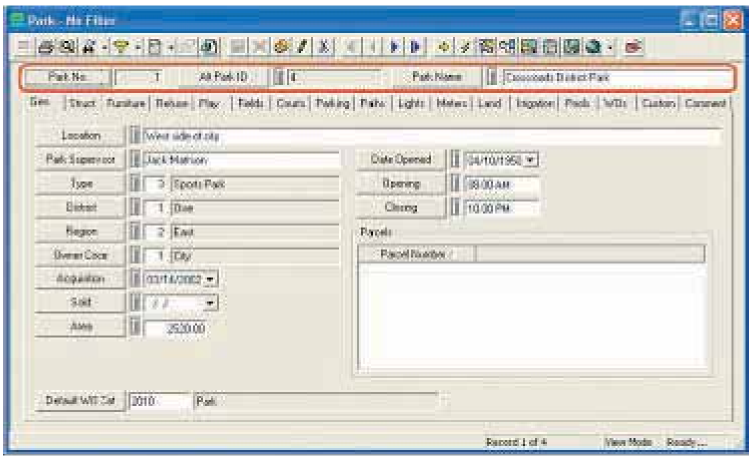
The Parks module is the most important module in the Parks Master. All other park asset modules are dependent upon the Parks module. While you can access the other asset modules through the gbaMS main menu, it's best to add park assets directly from the Parks module. This allows the system to carry over linking information and details about the park.

The following step-by-step instructions show you how to create a park record and report park inspections.

1. Open Trees/Parks>>Park Master>>Parks from the gbaMS main menu.
2. Click GO to bypass the filter.
3. When the module is opened, click the Add button  in the toolbar to access a blank record.
4. In the module header, create a unique Park Name and Alternate Park ID.

Note: Make sure to choose a name and ID that are recognizable. You'll need to be able to select the appropriate park name from a pick list in the park asset modules.

FIGURE 1 Name and ID



Note: In our example above, we've created a record for the Crossroads District Park and given it the Alternate Park ID, 4.

5. Record the park location, park supervisor, park type, district, region, owner, acquisition date, and opening date on the general tab.
6. Select a Default WO Category.

Note: The category you select here will be carried over to any work order created from this record.

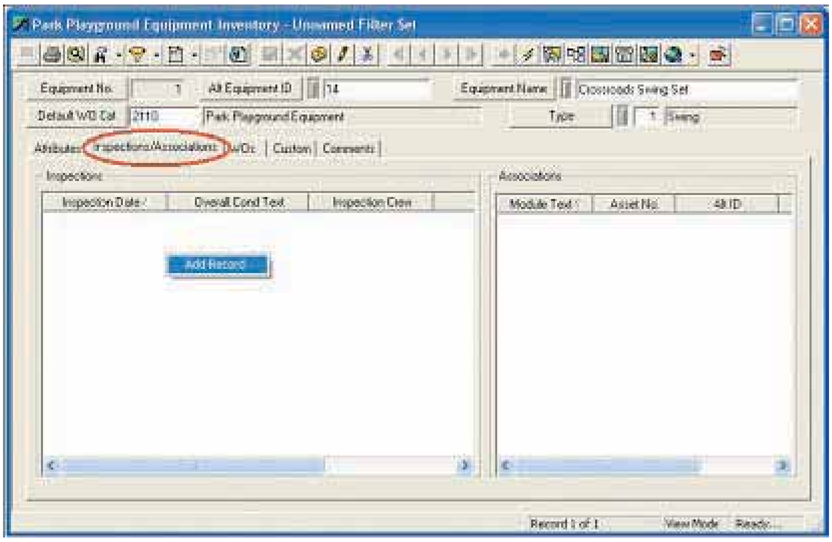
3

INSPECTING PARK ASSETS

All of our park asset inventory modules have associated inspection modules. The following instructions show you how to add an inspection record for your park's swing set. This is an important consideration for liability reasons.

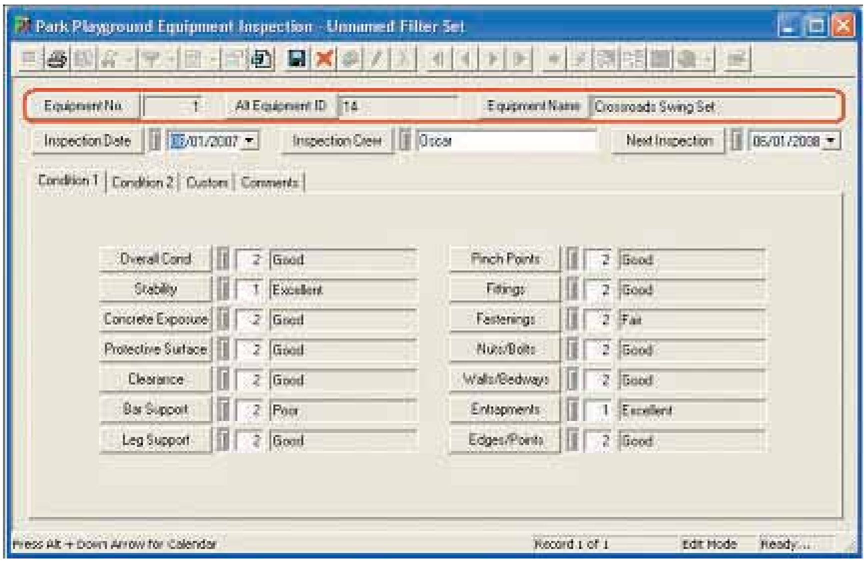
1. On the Inspections/Associations tab of the Park Playground Equipment Inventory module, right click in the Inspections grid and select Add Record.

FIGURE 2 Add Record



Note: The Park Playground Equipment Inspection module will open. Here, you see the Equipment Number, Alternate Equipment ID, and Equipment Name carried over from the related inventory record.

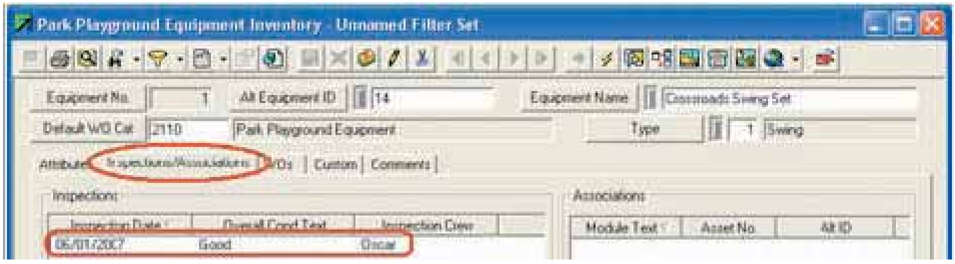
FIGURE 3 Equipment Name and Number



2. Enter the inspection date, inspection crew, and next scheduled inspection date.
3. Two Condition tabs are provided. Record the condition codes (excellent, good, fair, and poor) for the various aspects of the playground equipment. These include the overall condition, stability, concrete exposure, protective surface, clearance, supports, and fastenings, among other things.

4

FIGURE 4 Equipment Condition



Congratulations. Once you've saved the record, the Inspections grid in the Inventory module will be updated.

5

Source: Courtesy of gbaMS

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. To organize your instruction effectively, include an introduction, a table of contents, and a discussion of sequenced steps.
2. Number your steps, and start each step with a verb.
3. Hazard alerts are important to protect your reader and your company. Place these alerts early in your instruction or before the appropriate step.
4. In the instruction, follow a chronological sequence.
5. Screencasting is a mixture of animated screen visuals, voiceovers, and captioned text. Screencasting benefits your audience by allowing the audience to see the procedure in action.
6. An SOP is a set of written instructions that documents routine or repetitive technical or administrative activities followed by business and industry. SOPs ensure accurate job performance and consistent quality and integrity of the end product. SOPs also ensure that governmental regulations are followed.
7. Highlighting techniques emphasize important points, thus minimizing damage to equipment or injury to users.
8. SOPs are used in many fields, including science, healthcare, biomedical technology, government, military, the computer industry, and others.
9. The writing process, complete with usability testing, will help you construct an effective instruction, user manual, or SOP.
10. Consider usability testing to determine if your procedure is valid.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. PhlebotomyDR provides instructions for its staff (nurses, doctors, and technicians) regarding the correct procedures to ensure cleanliness and employee protection. These include hand washing procedures and the correct use of sterile equipment, such as gloves, masks, aprons, and shoe coverings.

   Following is a rough draft of one set of instructions for personnel safety. Revise the rough draft according to the criteria provided in this chapter. Correct the order of information, the grammar, and the instruction's content. In addition, improve the instruction by including appropriate graphics.

Hand washing

- Lather hands to cover all surfaces of hands and wrists.
- Wet hands with water.
- Rub hands together to cover all surfaces of hands and fingers. Pay special attention to areas around nails and fingers. Lather for at least 15 seconds.
- Dry thoroughly.
- Rinse well with running warm water.
- Avoid using hot water. Repeated exposure to hot water can lead to dermatitis.
- Use paper towels to turn off faucet.

Gloves

- Replace damaged gloves as soon as patient safety permits
- Don gloves immediately prior to task.
- Remove and discard gloves after each use.

Masks

Wear masks and eye protection devices (goggles or eye shields) to avoid droplets, spray, or splashes and to prevent exposure to mucous substances. Masks are also worn to protect nurses, doctors, and technicians from infectious elements during close contact with patients.

Aprons and Other Protective Clothing

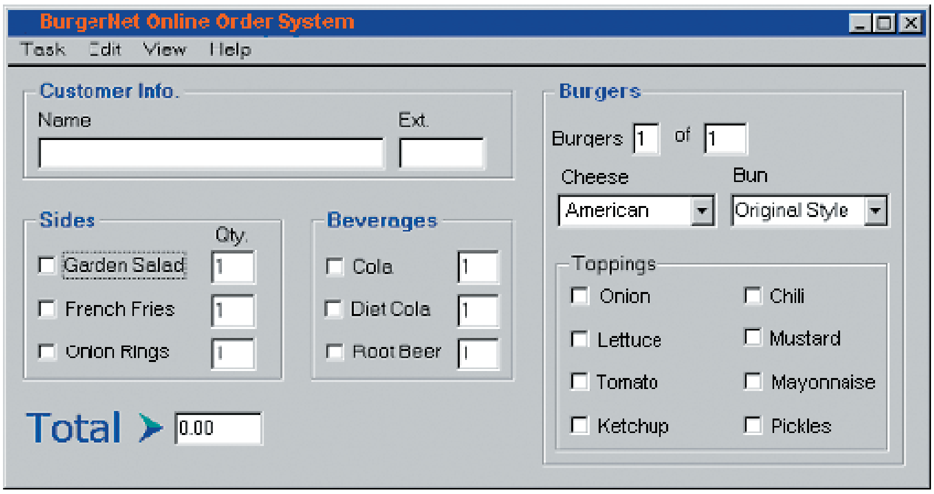
Wear aprons or gowns to avoid contact with body substances during patient care procedures.

- Remove and discard aprons and other protective clothing before leaving work area.
- Some work areas might require additional protective clothing such as surgical caps and shoe covers or boots.

2. BurgerNet Online Order System is a software product in development. As a technical communicator, write the instruction to accompany this online order system.

BurgerNet Online Order System

1. **Description.** The BurgerNet application will be used to order burgers for delivery to a customer's home or work.



2. **Dropdown Menu Bar.** The dropdown menu bar includes a Task, Edit, View, and Help menu.
   - Task menu. On the "Task" menu customers will find a "Send Order" command, used to electronically send the completed order to the restaurant. The "Print Order" command on the "Task" menu lets the customer print a copy of the order. The "Exit" command terminates the order session.
   - Edit menu. On the "Edit" menu, an "Add Favorites" command allows customers to add a frequently ordered combination of food items to make future online ordering quick and easy. The "Edit Favorites" command lets customers modify an existing favorite order.
   - View menu. On the "View" menu, the "Preferences" command is used to modify default customer. In addition, when favorites have been defined, they are listed under "View." Customers can select a favorite for display before sending the order.
   - Help menu. On the "Help" menu, customers can access FAQs.
3. **Key Components of BurgerNet.**
   - Customer Info. frame: Customers type in their name and telephone number in the "Name" and "Extension" fields.
   - Burgers frame. In the "Burgers" fields customers specify the number of burgers desired. The "Cheese" dropdown list lets the customer select either American cheese, Pepperjack, Mozzarella, or Swiss cheese to top their burgers. "Bun" lets customers choose either plain or onion buns from the dropdown list.
   - Toppings. Here, customers check what to put on their burgers.
   - Sides: Select which side dish or dishes and specify the quantity for each.
   - Beverages: Select drink(s) and specify the quantity for each.
   - Total field. The total cost of the customer's order is automatically displayed.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Write an instruction or SOP. To do so, first select a topic. You can write an instruction telling how to monitor, repair, test, package, plant, clean, operate, manage, open, shut, set up, maintain, troubleshoot, install, use software, and so on. Choose a topic from your field of expertise or one that interests you. Follow the writing process techniques to complete your instruction. Prewrite (using a flowchart), write a draft (abiding by the criteria for instructions or SOPs presented in this chapter), and rewrite to perfect your text.
2. Find examples of instructions, user manuals, or SOPs written in the work environment. Bring these to class. Using the criteria for instructions and SOPs presented in this chapter, decide whether the instructions and SOPs are successful or unsuccessful. If the instructions and SOPs are good, show how and why. If they are flawed, explain the problem(s). Then rewrite the instructions or SOPs to improve them.
3. Good writing demands revision. Following is a flawed instruction. To improve it, rewrite the text, abiding by the criteria for instructions and the rewriting techniques included in this chapter.

Date: November 1, 2014
To: Maintenance Technicians
From: Second Shift Supervisor
Subject: Oven Cleaning

The convection ovens in kiln room 33 need extensive cleaning. This would consist of vacuuming and wiping all walls, doors, roofs, and floors. All vents and dampers need to be removed and a tack cloth used to remove loose dust and dirt. Also, all filters need replacing. I am requesting this because when wet parts are placed in the ovens to cure the paint, loose particles of dust and dirt are blown onto the parts, which causes extensive rework. I would like this done twice a week to ensure cleanliness of product.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECE

Read the following instructional steps. Are they in the correct chronological order? How would you reorder these steps to make the instruction more effective?

Changing Oil in Your Car

Run the car's engine for approximately 10 minutes and then drain the old oil.
Park the car on a level surface, set the parking brake, and turn off the car's engine.
Gather all of the necessary tools and materials you might need.
Open the hood.
Jack up and support the car securely.
Place the funnel in the opening and pour in the new oil.
Replace the cap when you have finished pouring in new oil.
Locate the oil cap on top of the engine and remove the cap.
Tighten the plug if you find leakage.
Run the engine for a minute, then check the dipstick. Add more oil if necessary.
Pour the used oil into a plastic container and dispose of it safely and legally.

WEB WORKSHOP

1. Review any of the following Web sites' online instructions. Based on the criteria provided in this chapter, are the instructions successful or not?
   - If the answer is yes, explain why and how the instructions succeed.
   - If the answer is no, explain why the instructions fail.
   - Rewrite any of the flawed instructions to improve them.

Web Sites	Topics
http://www.hometips.com/diy.html	Electrical systems, plumbing, kitchen appliances, walls, windows, roofing, and siding
http://www.hammerzone.com	Kitchen projects, tubs, sinks, toilets, showers, and water heaters
http://dmoz.org/Home/Home_Improvement/	Links to step-by-step procedures for painting, welding, soldering, plumbing, building walls, installing windows, and repairing and installing doors
http://directory.google.com/Top/Home/Home_Improvement/	Links to sites for instructions on decorating, electrical work, flooring installation, furniture selection, lighting, painting, plumbing, welding, window installation, and door repair
http://www.quakerstate.com/#/car-care	Instructions for car care

2. The U.S. Department of Labor article "Hazard Communication: A Review of the Science Underpinning the Art of Communication for Health and Safety" can be found at http://www.osha.gov/dsg/hazcom/hc2inf2.html. This article focuses on many important aspects of writing instructions, including the use of icons, readability, and audience variables. Access the article and report your findings either orally or in a memo, letter, or e-mail message.
3. YouTube provides thousands of instructional videos for topics including creating Origami shapes, playing World of Warcraft, playing pool and billiards, snowboarding and paragliding, playing guitars, tossing pizzas, using Macs and PCs, installing software and hardware, and downloading music for iPods. Research any of these videos (or others). Based on the criteria provided in this chapter, assess your findings. Were the videos successful? How could they be improved? Share your findings with your teacher in an e-mail message or present your findings to your class in a brief oral presentation.

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Table 1 — Text without Graphics for High-Tech readers. Courtesy of Nelcor Puritan Bennett.

Table 2 — Text without Graphics for High-Tech readers. Courtesy of Covidien, LLC.

Figure 4 — Instructions with Large, Bold Graphics for Low-Tech Audience. Courtesy of Puritan Bennett Corp.

Figure 4 — Instructions with Large, Bold Graphics for Low-Tech Audience. Courtesy of Covidien, LLC.

Figure 7 — HP Officejet Pro K550 Series Color Printer. © 2012 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P. Reproduced with permission.

Figure 10 — gbaMS Instruction Rough Draft with Peer Reviewer Commentary. Courtesy of George Butler Associates.

Figure 11 — gbaMS Parks Inventory Completed Instruction. Courtesy of gbaMS.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Ablestock.com / Getty Images

© Steven and Sharon Gerson

© C. Thatcher / Getty Images

REFERENCES

Sharp, Roger A. "Incorporating Animation into Help Files." *Intercom* Nov. 2007: 8–12. Print.

Tietjen, Phil. "Adventures in Screencasting." *Intercom* Jul./Aug. 2008: 8–10. Print.

Web Sites and Online Help

Web Sites and Online Help

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In the following scenario, Future Promise is creating a team to develop a Web site.

Future Promise is a not-for-profit organization created to help at-risk high school students. This agency realizes that to reach its target audience (teens aged 15 to 18), it needs an Internet presence.

Future Promise's CEO, Brent Searing, has decided to form a team to create the agency's Web site. Brent will encourage the team to work collaboratively to determine the Web site's content, its level of interactivity, and its design features. Brent wants the Web site to include

- College scholarship opportunities
- After-school intramural sports programs
- Job-training skills (resume building and interviewing)
- Service learning programs to encourage civic responsibility
- An FAQ page

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Know that the Web, due to its speed, affordability, and international access, is a key component for corporate communication
- Understand that the Web Accessibility Initiative pursues accessibility to the Web for persons with disabilities such as cognitive, hearing, and vision impairment
- Understand how to establish your Web site's credibility and security and maintain ethical standards
- Consider differences between paper text and online communication such as screen size, rapid reading (scanning), and hypertext links when creating a Web site
- Create a successful Web site containing a home page and linked pages with easy navigation within the site, readable text, and effective document design
- Provide the reader with hypertext links on a home page to act as an interactive table of contents or index
- Test a site's usability to reduce customer and colleague complaints; increase employee productivity (reducing the time it takes to get work done); increase sales volume because customers can purchase products or services online; and decrease help desk calls and their costs
- Know that a successful Web page, whether displayed on a PC, laptop monitor, or mobile device, should limit information per screen so the reader doesn't have to scroll endlessly
- Create effective online help following the criteria in this chapter
- Evaluate your Web site or online help with the checklists

- Future Promise's toll-free hotline (for information on suicide prevention, STDs, depression, substance abuse, and peer counseling)
- Social media links to Future Promise's Facebook, Twitter, and blog sites
- Additional links (for donors, sponsors, educational options, job opportunities, etc.)
- Easy access from mobile devices

To accommodate these Web components, the Future Promise Web team will consist of the agency's accountant, sports and recreation director, public relations manager, counselor, training facilitator, graphic artist, and computer and information systems director. In addition to these Future Promise employees, Brent also has asked two local high school principals, two local high school students, and a representative from the mayor's office to serve on the committee. Future Promise's public relations manager Jeannie Kort will chair the committee.

Jeannie has a big job ahead of her. First, she must coordinate everyone's schedules. The two principals and high school students, for example, can attend meetings only after school hours. Next, she must meet Brent's deadline; he wants the Web site up and running within three months. Jeannie also must manage this diverse team (with varying ages, levels of responsibility, and levels of knowledge).

The task is daunting, but the end product will be invaluable for the city and the city's youth. Jeannie and Brent know that by conveying information about jobs, training, scholarships, and counseling to their end-users (at-risk teens), Future Promise can improve the quality of many people's lives. Jeannie's Web design team has an exciting project on its hands.

Why the Web Is Important for Corporate Communication

Due to its speed, affordability for end-users as well as companies, and international access, the Web is a key component for corporate communication. Like no other communication medium, the Web has changed the way companies do business by providing companies an international channel for

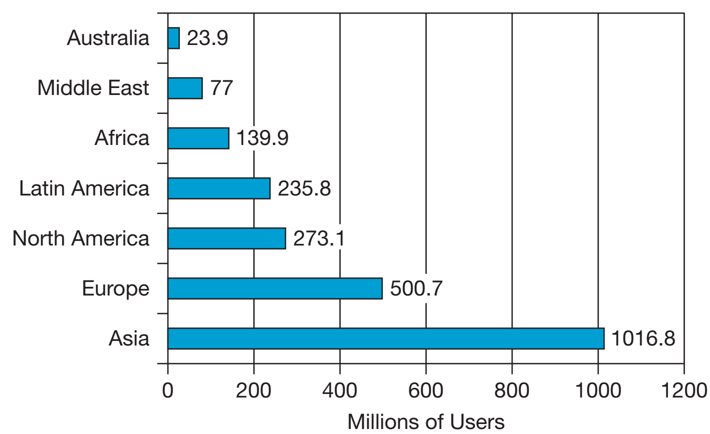
- Selling their products and services through e-commerce
- Updating employees and customers about corporate changes through wikis, forums, intranets, FAQs, blogs, and more
- Providing employment opportunities
- Offering online forms and instructions for internal and external communication
- Creating a point of contact for customers through online chat, order entry, social media sites, and customer service systems

With very low investments of time, money, and personnel, practically any business can access a huge market, quickly and economically, regardless of the type of product or service being sold, the size of the company, or the location of the business ("Internet Growth").

International Growth of the Internet

The extent to which the Internet has flooded the world market is startling. In 1995, only 16 million people had access to the Internet, representing just 0.4 percent of the world's population. By 2012, this number had grown to over two billion people, representing over 30 percent of the world's population ("Internet World Stats"). Figure 1 compares Internet usage breakdown in the world.

FIGURE 1 Internet Usage in the World by Geographic Region



Source: ("Internet World Stats")

FAQs: Foreign Language and the Internet

Q: Why should my business consider languages other than English when designing a Web site?

A: According to Christian Arno, the founder and managing director of U.K. translation company Lingo24, "All signs point toward an increasingly multilingual future for the Web. It's estimated that over a billion people will be using PCs in the so-called BRIC countries [Brazil, Russia, India, and China] alone by 2015, and the opportunity is even greater when you factor more people accessing the Web using mobile devices than computers in many emerging markets. It's time businesses of all sizes embraced the foreign language Internet."

Asia has over a billion Internet users; Europe is second in usage with over 500 million users ("Internet World Stats"). These numbers represent an enormous and growing market for companies. No other communication channel (e-mail, memos, letters, reports, newsletters, or brochures) can reach so many people, in so many distant locations, 24 hours a day, seven days a week, as can the Internet.

Web Accessibility

An international goal is Internet accessibility for persons with disabilities. The Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI), in coordination with organizations around the world, pursues accessibility of the Web. The following are Web accessibility problems ("Internet Accessibility").

Cognitive

Cognitive issues include learning disabilities, reading disorders, and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). Web access can be enhanced with illustrations, graphics, and headings, which provide visual cues for easier Web understanding.

Hearing

Hearing-impaired Web users may need assistive technology to read Web audio or captioned text for multimedia content.

Visual

Color-blindness causes problems on the Internet. To combat this challenge, Web writers need to choose colors correctly, perhaps avoiding green and red fonts. The U.S. government recognizes the importance of the Internet and the need for inclusiveness for both employees and external Web readers. In 1998, Congress amended the Rehabilitation Act, requiring federal agencies to make electronic and information technology accessible to people with disabilities. Section 508 for federal employees and the public eliminates barriers in information technology ("508 Law"). For information about Web accessibility, see Table 1.

TABLE 1 Sites for Web Accessibility

Web Site Name	URL
Web Accessibility Initiative (WAI)	http://www.w3.org/WAI/
The Society for Technical Communication Accessibility Special Interest Group	http://www.stcsig.org/sn/internet.shtml
National Center for Accessible Media	http://ncam.wgbh.org/
International Web Accessibility Concerns	http://www.stcsig.org/sn/international.shtml

The Characteristics of Online Communication

Writing for a Web site is different than writing hard-copy text, such as proposals, reports, letters, or user manuals. This means changing your mindset as a writer. When you design a Web site, you must reconsider the following.

- **Skimming versus linear reading.** We read books "linearly," line by line. In contrast, Web sites are skimmed and scanned.

- **Linking versus chronological reading.** We read books from beginning to end, sequentially. Web sites, however, allow us, even encourage us, to leap randomly from screen to screen, site to site through hypertext links.
- **Reading on varying screen sizes versus 8½" × 11" hard-copy text.** For traditional, 8½" × 11" hard-copy text, we easily can read from margin to margin. In contrast, reading from margin to margin online is not as easy, due to glare, varying screen sizes, and a desire to skim and scan. To help the user access your Web content, pay attention to the Web site's page length, margins, and font selection. In addition, for mobile devices, remember that users must pan by moving their fingers down and across the screen.
- **Choosing the best font.** Your computer's word processing software probably defaults to Times New Roman, 12 point, or Calibri, 11 point. That is considered the best type and size font for readable hard-copy text. In contrast, sans serif fonts, like Arial or Verdana, seem to work best for online reading. "Stylized, cursive, italicized, and decorative typefaces are difficult to read online" (Hemmi 11).
- **Minimizing noise.** Because hard-copy text is motionless and printed on dull paper that absorbs light, it can be easier to read than online text. For online text, however, the screen can reflect light, creating visual glare. In addition, Web sites often contain lots of color, blinking text, animated graphics, frames of layered text, and sound and video. Extended viewing of a computer screen is more demanding than continued reading of paper text. Help online readers by limiting computer "noise"—sound and visual distractions. In such a busy communication vehicle as a Web site, the less we give the reader on one screen in terms of words and images, the better.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about designing Web sites on mobile devices, check out the following links:

- Mobile Web Design Trends: http://www.smashingmagazine.com/2009/01/13/mobile-web-design-trends-2009/
- How to Make a Mobile Website:

  http://blog.templatemonster.com/2010/05/11/how-make-mobile-website-6-easy-tips/

Considerations for Handheld Mobile Devices

Additional considerations when you design Web sites relate to handheld mobile devices. Pew Research tells us that "59% of adults now access the Internet wirelessly using a laptop or cell phone" (Smith). Due to the growing use of mobile devices, Web designers need to be aware of Wireless Application Protocol (WAP), a standard for accessing information over a mobile wireless networks. According to Marziah Karch (author of *Android for Work, Droids Made Simple,* and *Android Tablets Made Simple*) and Shannon Conner (a freelance Web site developer), consider the following when you design Web sites for mobile devices:

- Remember that the screen of a handheld mobile device is much smaller than a desktop PC screen.
- Connection time is slower for devices that rely on WiFi or mobile phone networks for connectivity (like 3g and 4g).
- Use xml or xhtml for coding.
- Avoid background images that could reduce readability.
- Don't expect the mobile device user to have the same plug-ins for tools like PDF, Flash, Javascript, videos, or ActiveX.
- Smaller graphics will aid download time.
- Less text, fewer paragraphs, and more links save room.
- Increased font size improves legibility.
- Design the site for fingers, making sure that links are about 30 to 40 pixels in size and can be clicked easily.

Establishing Credibility and Security in a Web Site

As the creator of a Web site, you must be concerned about your site's credibility. When the user accesses your site, he or she must be assured that the content within the site is credible, safe, and secure. For example, if a consumer enters credit card information when purchasing a product or service from your site, that consumer demands a sense of security. When people buy products from your site, they need to know that their purchase is warranted and that your customer service is accountable. To determine how the public views a Web site's credibility, Stanford University studied how 2,440 people evaluated the credibility of sites. Table 2 shows the results of their study, ranked one through ten.

TABLE 2 Evaluation of Web Site Credibility

	Percent (of 2,440 comments)	Topics (addressing specific credibility issue)
1.	46.1%	Design Look
2.	28.5%	Information Design/Structure
3.	25.1%	Information Focus
4.	15.5%	Company Motive
5.	14.8%	Information Usefulness
6.	14.3%	Information Accuracy
7.	14.1%	Name Recognition and Reputation
8.	13.8%	Advertising
9.	11.6%	Information Bias
10.	9.0%	Writing Tone

Almost half of all respondents to the Stanford study (46.1 percent) ranked visual design most important for establishing credibility, focusing on layout, font type, font size, and color. However, Stanford also concluded that a Web site's visual appeal had limited value for long-term credibility. Though a Web site's design might initially attract an audience, consumers will go to other Web sites if they are not satisfied with other aspects of the site, including the following key credibility concerns:

- **Identity of the site or its operator.** Prove your credentials by including your company's years in business, your staff's education and certifications, lists of satisfied customers, and customer testimonials.
- **The site's customer service.** Provide easy access for consumers to contact people within the company for help. This includes toll-free numbers, hotlines, 24/7 assistance, e-mail addresses, social media sites, rapid response, and the chance to speak to an actual person within the company.
- **Privacy policies.** Clearly and briefly state how your company ensures privacy related to credit cards and personal information.

(Fogg, et al.)

Ethical Considerations in a Web Site

As a business professional, you have an ethical responsibility on your Web site to your audience. Customers will input personal information, such as social security numbers, credit card numbers, expiration dates, and personal identification numbers, when purchasing products and services. This material must be safeguarded to avoid fraud and identity theft. The Federal Trade Commission, under the FTC Act, protects consumers against unfairness and deception by enforcing a company's promises about collection and use of personal information ("Privacy Initiatives").

Privacy and Security Considerations

To ensure your audience's privacy and demonstrate your company's ethical practices, focus on the following:

- **Maintain records.** You must document personal information you have in your computer files and back up these files in archives.
- **Acquire security certifications and keep certifications updated.** Transport Layer Security (TLS) and Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificates will assure consumers that the site is safe for searching, browsing, buying, and logging in. In other words, the consumer can trust your site has passed a malware scan and is "legitimate and safe" so their "transactions are secure" ("E-Commerce").
- **Delete inactive files.** Don't stockpile files indefinitely. Only maintain files that your company needs to conduct business.
- **Secure the information.** Frequently update firewalls, anti-virus, and anti-spyware software.
- **Protect passwords.** Avoid sharing customer passwords online, over the phone, or in e-mail messages. Ask customers to change passwords frequently and to avoid using the same password for multiple accounts.

("Protecting Personal Information"; *OnGuard Online*)

Criteria for a Successful Web Site

Because Web sites are a different type of correspondence than traditional, paper-bound text, you need to employ different criteria when creating your site.

Home Page

The home page on a Web site is your welcome mat. Because it is the first thing your reader sees, the home page sets the tone for your site. A successful home page should consist of the following components.

Identification Information. Who are you? What is the name of your company, product, or service? How can viewers get in touch with you if they want to purchase your product? A good home page should provide your audience the following:

- The name of your company, service, or product.
- Contact information (or a link to corporate contacts), including phone numbers, e-mail addresses, fax numbers, street address, city/state/zip, customer service contacts, and social media links.

Amazingly, many Web sites omit this information. They provide the reader information about a product or service, but they prevent the reader from making a follow-up purchase or inquiry. That's not good business (Berst).

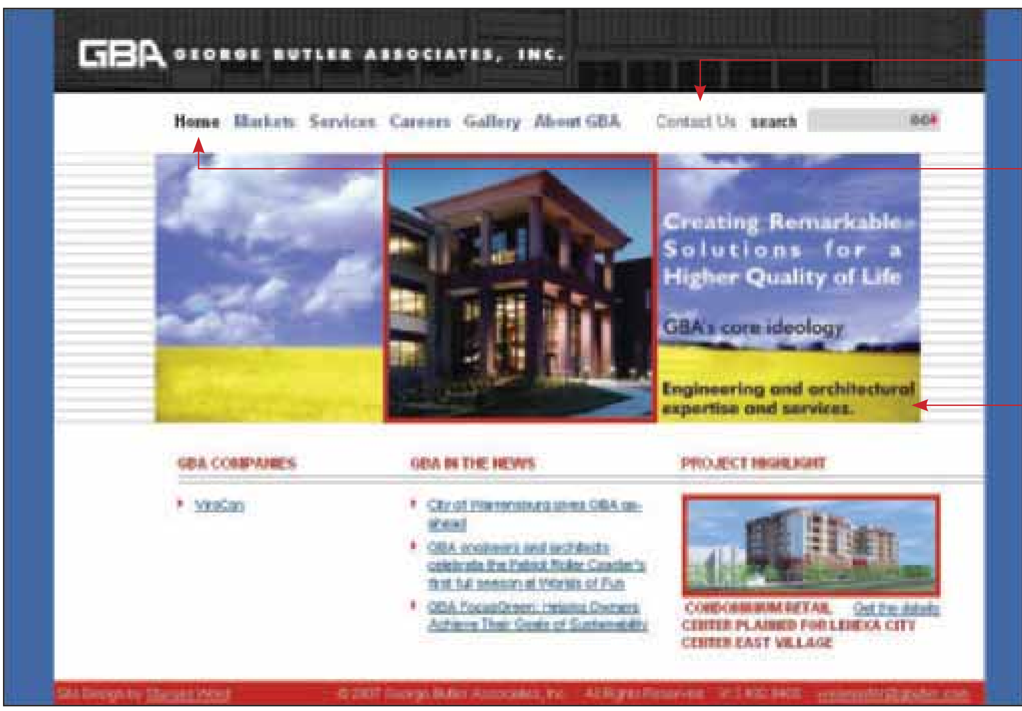
Graphics. Don't just tell the reader who or what you are. Show the reader and establish brand recognition (Redish 6). An informative, attractive, and appealing logo depicting your product or service could convey more about your company and be more memorable than words. Check out various Web sites to prove this point. Be careful, however, when you choose the size of your home page graphic. If the graphic is too large, it will take a long time to load, especially on mobile devices. This delay might cause Web users to lose patience, stop the HTTP transfer, and visit another site. Then you've lost their business or interest.

Lead-in Introduction. In addition to a graphic, you might want to provide a one- or two-sentence lead-in, or a three- to eight-word tagline, explaining the purpose of the Web site. Few Web visitors will read a paragraph-long mission or vision statement (Redish 6).

For example, if your company is named "NovaTech," what do you market? The name alone does not explain the company's focus. A company named "NovaTech" could market telecommunications equipment, intergalactic armaments, or computer repairs. To clarify your company's purpose, provide a short lead in. Quickly welcome readers to the site and tell them what they can find in the following screens.

At this textbook's writing, Dell's home page introduced itself with this sentence: "Shop Dell PCs, Laptops, Servers and More." CSC knows that their three-letter company name isn't informative, so they lead into their Web site by stating, "We are a global leader in providing technology enabled business solutions and services." See Figure 2 for a sample Web site home page.

FIGURE 2 Web Site Home Page with Lead-in Information



Source: Courtesy of George Butler Associates, Inc.

Navigation Links/Buttons. The "nav bar" is what distinguishes a Web site from all other types of written communication: the ability to click on a hot button and link to another screen. By providing the reader with hypertext links, a home page acts as an interactive table of contents or index. The reader selects the topic he or she wishes to pursue, clicks on that link, and jumps to a new screen. Instead of being forced by the constraints of paper-bound text to read sequentially, line by line, page by page, the reader can follow a more intuitive approach. With hypertext links, you read what you want to read, when you want to read it.

Linked Pages

Once your reader clicks on the hypertext links from the home page, he or she will jump to the designated linked pages. These linked pages should contain the following.

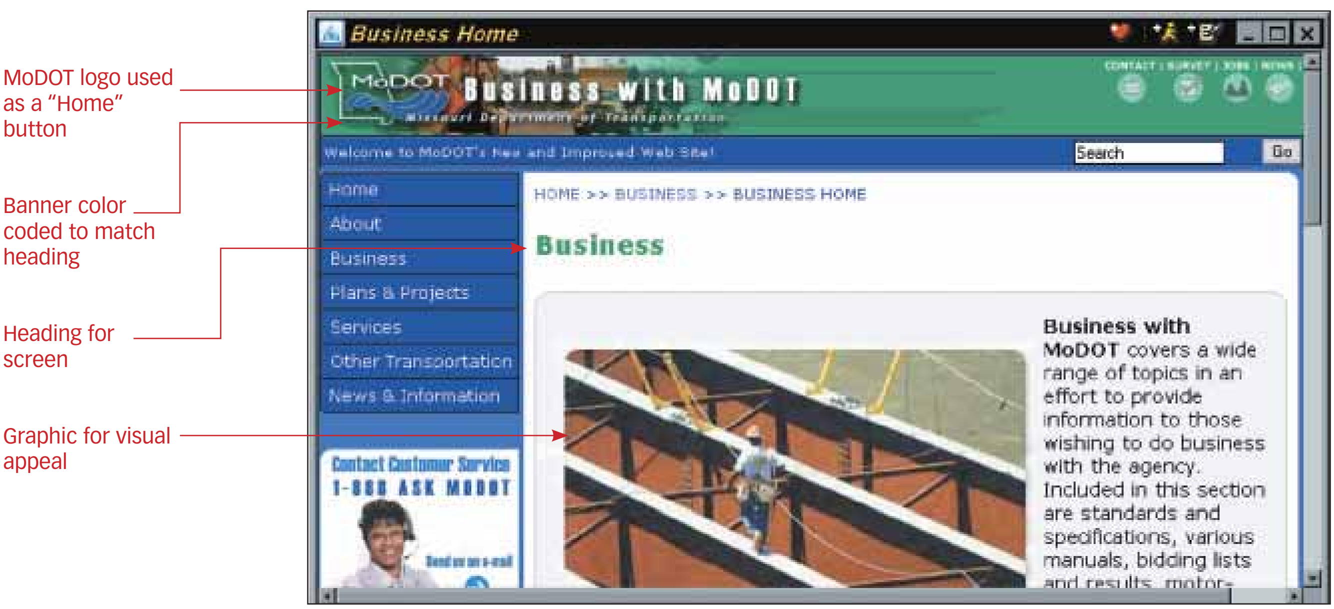
Headings/Subheadings. To ensure that readers know where they are in the context of the Web site, you need to use headings. These give the readers visual reminders of their location. Effective linked-page headings should be consistent. They should be the same font size, font type, and in the same location on the screen. For example, if one heading is centered and typed in 16-point Arial font, all headings should follow this format.

Navigation. Help the reader navigate online. You can do this in two ways:

- **Home buttons.** The reader needs to be able to return to the home page easily from any page of a Web site. The home page acts as a table of contents or index for all the pages within the site. By returning to the home page, the reader can access any of the other pages. To ensure this easy navigation, provide a hypertext-linked "Home" button or icon on each page.
- **Links between Web pages.** Why make the reader return to the home page each time he or she wants to access other pages within a site? If each page has hypertext links to all pages within the site, then the reader can access any page he or she chooses, in any order of discovery.

See Figure 3 for an example of a successful linked page.

FIGURE 3 MoDOT "Business" Page Link



Source: Courtesy of MoDOT

Document Design

On a Web site, you can add distinctive backgrounds, colored fonts, different font faces and sizes, animated graphics, frames, and highlighting techniques (such as lines, icons, and bullets). However, just because you can doesn't mean you should. Document design should enhance your text and promote your product or service, not distract from your message.

Background. You can add backgrounds running the gamut from plain white, to various colors, to an array of patterns: fabrics, marbled textures, simulated paper, wood grains, grass and stone, psychedelic patterns, water and cloud images, and waves. They all look exciting, but some are not as effective as others.

When choosing a background, consider your corporate image. If you are a child-care center, do you want a black background? This could convey a negative image. A white background with toys as a watermark might more successfully convey your center's mission statement.

In addition, remember that someone will attempt to read your Web site's text. Very few font colors or styles are legible against a psychedelic background—or against most patterned backgrounds, for that matter. Instead, to achieve readability, you want the best contrast between text and background. Despite the vast selection of backgrounds at your disposal, the best contrast is still black text on a white background.

Color. When you create a Web site, you can use any font color in the spectrum, but do you want to? What corporate image do you have in mind? The font color should be suitable for your Web site, as well as readable. A yellow font on a light blue background is hard to read. A red font on a black background is nightmarish.

The issue, however, isn't just esthetics. As noted, a primary concern is contrast. Red, blue, and black font colors on a white background are legible because their contrast is optimum. Other combinations of color do not offer this contrast making readability difficult. In the following example, notice how yellow font on a blue background "strobes." The colors bleed into each other and become unreadable. Though black font on a white background might seem uninteresting, this color combination is the most readable choice.

◀ EXAMPLE

Ineffective Contrast	Effective Contrast
Yellow font on a light blue background is unreadable.	Black font on a white background provides optimum contrast.
Red font on a black background is nightmarish.	White font on a dark blue background is readable.

Graphics. Another problem is image size. Your Web site will be affected by the size of your graphics and the number of graphics you have included. For example, a "small" graphic (approximately 90 × 80 pixels, 1½"× 1½") consumes about 2.5 kilobytes. A "medium" graphic (approximately 300 × 200 pixels, 5" × 4") consumes about 25 kilobytes. A "large" graphic (approximately 640 × 480 pixels, 10" × 8") consumes about 900 kilobytes. When you use graphics with varying amounts of color depth, your file size increases. The larger your file, the longer it will take for the images to load. The longer it takes for your file to load, the less interested your reader might be in your Web site. Limit the size and number of your graphics.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For Web design tips, check out these sites:

- Website Tips (http://www.websitetips.com/), complete with articles, tutorials, and resources.
- Grantastic Design (http://www.grantasticdesigns.com/tips.html), complete with design tips, rules for effective Web layout, and readability and usability ideas.
- Web Design Features (http://www.ratz.com/features.html), complete with discussion of good Web design ideas and examples of problems associated with bad Web designs.
- HTML Goodies (http://www.htmlgoodies.com/), one of the most complete sites for all kinds of Web design hints.

Highlighting Techniques. Font sizes and styles, lines, icons, bullets, frames, Java applets, Flash animation, video, audio! You can do it all on your Web page, but should you? Excessive highlighting techniques can be distracting.

Effective Online Highlighting	Ineffective Online Highlighting
1. *Lines* (horizontal rules) can separate headings and subheadings from the text.	1. *Frames* are considered to be one of the worst highlighting techniques. Jesse Berst, editorial director of ZDNet, considers frames to be one of the "Seven Deadly Web Site Sins." He says, "Too many frames . . . produce a miserable patchwork effect." If you want to achieve the frame look, but without the hassle, use tables instead. They are easier to create and revise, load faster, and are less distracting to your readers.
2. *Bullets and icons* enliven your text and break up the monotony of wall-to-wall words.	2. *Italics and underlining.* Both are hard to read online. Plus underlining looks like a hypertext link.
3. *First- and second-level headings,* achieved by changing your font size and style, separate key ideas.	3. *Java applets* take a long time to load.
4. *Boldface* also emphasizes important points.	4. *Video* requires an add-on users must download before they can enjoy your creation.
5. *White space,* created by indenting, makes text more readable.	

Grammar

If your Web site represents your company, you don't want prospective clients to perceive your company as lacking in quality control. In fact, that's what poor grammar online denotes—poor attention to detail. It's easy to see why many sites are grammatically flawed. First, anyone can go online almost instantaneously. All you need to do is save a Word document as an HTML file and transfer the file to your Web server. Speed is great for business, but it's bad for proofreading. Good proofreading takes time. When building your Web site, you must be vigilant. The integrity of your Web site demands correct grammar.

WEB SITE USABILITY CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Audience Recognition and Involvement

- Does the Web site meet your readers' needs?
- Does the Web site give your audience a reason to return (tutorials, tips, links to other interesting sites, regular updates, social media links, and so on)?
- Does the Web site involve the audience by asking for user feedback, displaying customer comments in a blog, providing an FAQ page, or providing links to the company's Twitter or Facebook site?
- Does the Web site make it easy for your audience to purchase online?
- Does the Web site use pronouns to engage the reader?

_____ **2.** Home Page

- Does the home page provide identification information (name of service or product, company name, e-mail, fax, telephone, address, etc.)?
- Does the home page provide an informative and appealing graphic?
- Does the home page provide a welcoming, informative, and concise introduction?
- Does the home page provide hypertext links connecting the reader to subsequent screens?

_____ **3.** Linked Pages
- Do the linked pages provide headings clearly indicating to the reader which screen he or she is viewing?
- Are the headings consistent in location and font size/style?

_____ **4.** Navigation
- Does the Web site allow for easy return from linked pages to the home page?
- Does the Web site allow for easy movement between linked pages?

_____ **5.** Document Design
- Does the Web site provide an effective background, suitable to the content and creating effective contrast for reading the text?
- Does the Web site use color effectively, in a way suitable to the content and creating effective contrast for reading the text?
- Does the Web site use graphics effectively, suitable to the content, not distracting, and not causing delays for the site to load?
- Does the Web site use highlighting techniques effectively (lines, bullets, icons, audio, video, font size and style, etc.) in a way that is suitable to the content and not distracting?
- Does the Web site's design allow for accessibility, meeting Web Accessibility Initiative and Section 508 mandates?

_____ **6.** Style
- Is the Web site concise?
  - o Short words (one to two syllables)
  - o Short sentences (10 to 12 words per sentence)
  - o Short paragraphs (four typed lines maximum)
  - o Text per Web page minimizing the need to scroll excessively
- Is the Web site personalized, using positive words and pronouns?

_____ **7.** Grammar
- Does the Web site avoid grammatical errors?

SPOTLIGHT

The Process of Creating Effective Web Sites

Shannon Conner is a freelance technical writer and Web designer. When asked what his most important job is as a freelance technical writer and Web designer, Shannon says, "Finding the perfect balance between content and design to give a Web site user reason to come back to the site."

One of the biggest challenges Shannon faces in his work is balancing clients' expectations with audience need while achieving concise, clear design.

Define the client's need. "I always ask clients, 'What are the top three ideas you want your visitors to take with them when they leave this page or Web site?' Undoubtedly, the common response is, 'It's all important,' but when the clients put some serious thought to it and pick the top three, they get a Web site with clear intent and satisfied users," Shannon says.

Define your target audience. It can be a challenge knowing who the audience is for a Web site. Defining the target audience ensures you are communicating the right way to the right people. "Your vernacular would be vastly different for a Web site geared toward retirement-aged users compared to a Web site geared toward high school-aged users," explains Shannon.

Employ clarity, conciseness, and consistency. "Consider the three Cs the keystone of your communication goals," Shannon says. "Always communicate with clarity, conciseness, and consistency. Without these three traits—especially when your medium is a Web site—the thoughts and ideas you worked hard to produce are worthless. What is the value of your content if no one reads it? Remember, users of Web sites typically scan the text; they don't read it. Provide them clean content so they can find exactly what they're looking for with as little effort as possible."

A final challenge for Shannon involves the global audience. Users can easily translate Web site content without the Web site owner's knowledge or participation, and many clients request their Web sites be available in multiple languages. "This fact not only impacts the words I use and my sentence structure, but it also affects how graphics are used," Shannon says.

Shannon, like all good technical communicators, knows the value of graphics. A screen capture of a Web application or a graphical representation of a workflow will be more effective than hundreds of words in helping an end-user perform a task. In the United States, a screen capture of a Windows dialog box will read "Save," "Exit," or "Next." This will not communicate to all members of a multilingual audience. The dialog box has to be translated into many languages, and then new visuals must be made for each application. If an online help screen has many visuals, suddenly, Shannon's task becomes more challenging and more costly for the client.

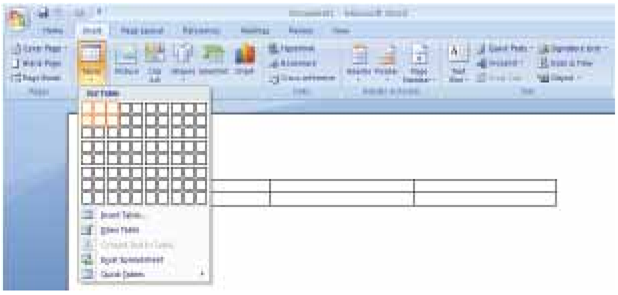
Usability for the Web audience is paramount for Shannon. The audience must be able to say, "I can use this Web site, and I can benefit from it." To accomplish these goals, Shannon must consider international customers, their varied knowledge of the subject matter, and their diverse computer skills.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

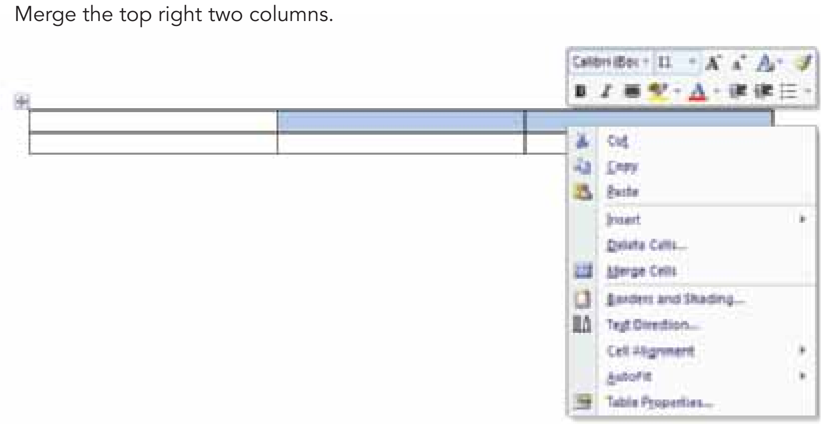
Using Microsoft Office Word 2010 to Create a Web Site

You can use Word 2010 to create your Web site. Follow these steps to do so:

1. From the **Insert** tab, insert a 3 × 2 table.



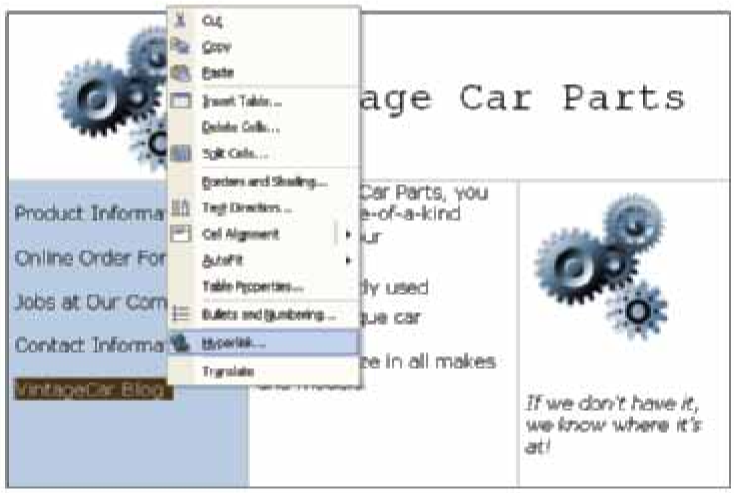
2. Merge the top right two columns.



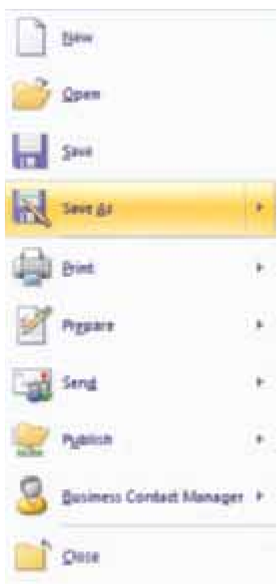
3. Place your cursor in the right rows and press the **Enter** key to add space. At this point, you have the beginning design for a Web page.
4. Add graphics, text, color, and font types just as you would with any Word document.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS (*Continued*)

5. To create hypertext links, highlight selected text, right-click, and select **Hyperlink**.



6. To create your Web site, click on the Word 2010 File tab and select **Save As**.



7. In the pop-up **Save As** window, click the **Save as type** down arrow and select **Web Page**. This saves your work as an HTML (hypertext markup language) file that you can open in a Web browser.

Online Help

Imagine this possibility. Your boss calls you into a meeting and says, "As of today, we are no longer producing paper documents" (McGowan 23). It's not as unbelievable as it sounds. Online Web help is a major part of the technical communicator's everyday job for several reasons, including

- The increased use of computers in business, industry, education, and the home
- The reduced dependence on hard-copy manuals by consumers
- The need for readily available online assistance
- Proof that people learn more effectively from online tutorials than from printed manuals (Pratt 33)

In addition, online help screens provide the practical value of portability. Rather than take up computer archival space with thousands of pages of PDF files or print out hundreds of pages of instructional help, online help screens allow companies to save space and provide readers ease of use.

What is an online help system? Online help systems, which employ computer software to help users complete a task, include procedures, reference information, wizards, and indexes (see Figure 4). Typical online help navigation provides readers hypertext links, tables of contents, and full-text search mechanisms.

Help menus on your computer are excellent examples of online help systems. As the computer user, you pull down a help menu, search a help list, and click on the topic of your choice, revealed as hypertext links. When you click on a link, you could get a *pop-up* (a small window superimposed on your text), or your computer might *link* to another full-sized screen layered over your text. In either instance, the pop-up or hyperlink gives the following information about your topic:

- **Overviews.** Explanations of why a procedure is required and what outcomes are expected.
- **Processes.** Discussions of how something works.
- **Definitions.** An online glossary of terms.
- **Procedures.** Step-by-step instructions for completing a task.
- **Examples.** Feedback verifying the completion of a task or graphic depictions of a completed task. These could include a screen capture or a description with callouts.
- **Cross-references.** Hypertext links to additional information.
- **Tutorials.** Opportunities to practice online.

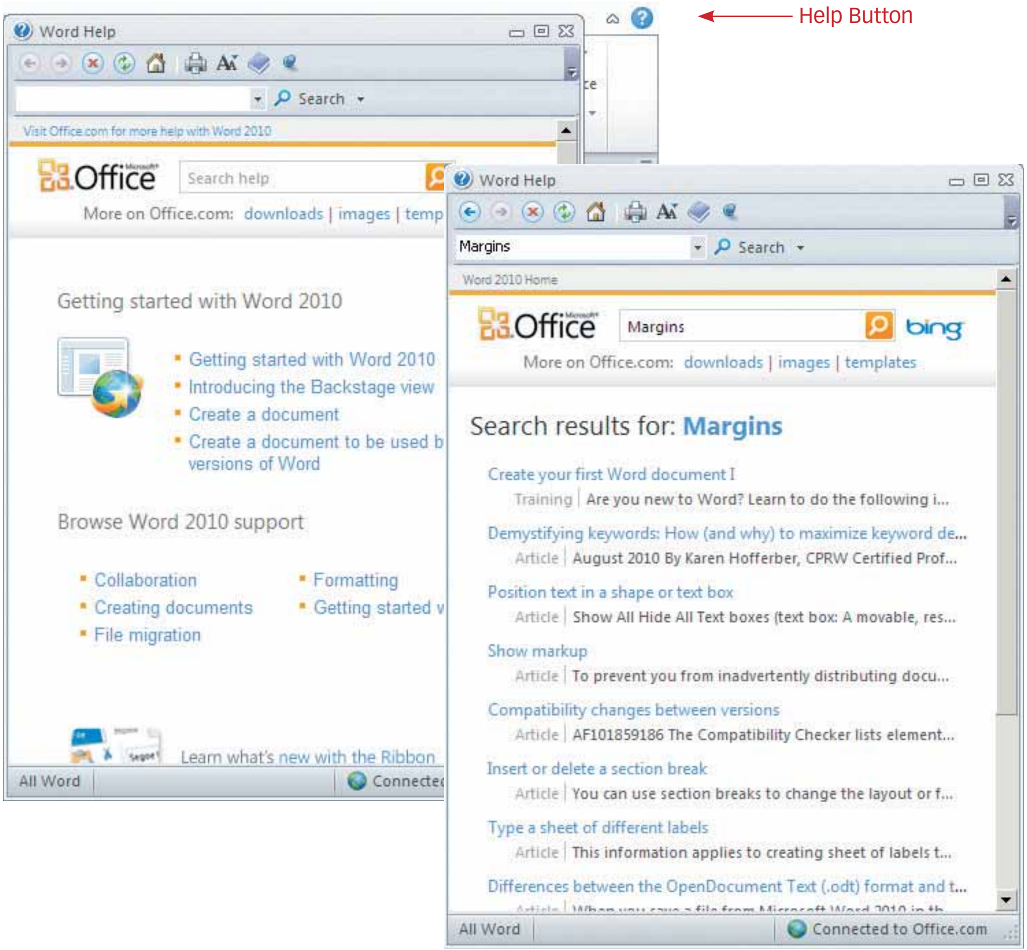
Online help systems allow the technical communicator to create interactive training tools and informational booths within a document. These online systems can be created using a wide variety of help authoring tools (HATs). Some popular HATs include Adobe RoboHelp, Author-it, Doc-To-Help, DocArchitector, HelpScribble, HyperText Studio, MadCap Flare, and Sandcastle. The value of online help is immense. Because online help offers "just in time" learning or "as needed" information, readers can progress at their own pace while learning a program or performing a task.

Techniques for Writing Effective Online Help

To create effective online help screens, consider the following suggestions.

Organize Your Information for Easy Navigation. Poorly organized screens lead to readers who are lost in cyberspace. Either they can't find the information they need, or they have accessed so many hypertext links that they are five or six screens deep into text.

FIGURE 4 Microsoft Word 2010 Help Screen with a Search for "Margins" and the Resulting Pop-up Help Screen



You can avoid such problems and help your readers access information in various ways:

- Allow users to record a history of the screens they've accessed through a bookmark or a help topics pull-down menu.
- Provide an online contents menu, allowing users to access other, cross-referenced help screens within the system.
- Provide a back button or a home button to allow the readers to return to a previous screen.
- Provide links such as "In this section" and "Related topics" on each screen for immediate access to topic-specific content.

A good test is the "three clicks rule." Readers should not have to access more than three screens to find the answer they need. Similarly, readers should not have to backtrack more than three screens to return to their place in the original text (Timpone).

Recognize Your Audience. Online help must be user oriented. After all, the only goal of online help is to help the user complete a task. Thus, a successful online help system must be "designed at the same level of detail as the user's knowledge and experience"

(Wagner). This means that technical communicators have to determine a user's level of knowledge.

If the system is transmitted by way of an intranet or extranet, you might be tempted to write at a high- or low-tech level. Your readers, you assume, will work within a defined industry and possess a certain level of knowledge. That, of course, is probably a false assumption. Even within a specific industry or within a specific company, you will have coworkers with widely diverse backgrounds: accountants, engineers, data processors, salespeople, human resource employees, management, technicians, and so on.

Don't assume. Find out what information your readers need. You can accomplish this goal through usability testing, focus groups, brainstorming sessions, surveys, and your company's hotline help desk logs. Then don't scrimp on the information you provide. Don't just provide the basic or the obvious. Provide more detailed information and numerous pop-ups or links. Pop-up definitions are an especially effective tool for helping a diverse audience. Remember, with online help screens, readers who don't need the information can skip it. Those readers who do need the additional information will appreciate your efforts. They will more successfully complete the tasks, and your help desk will receive fewer calls.

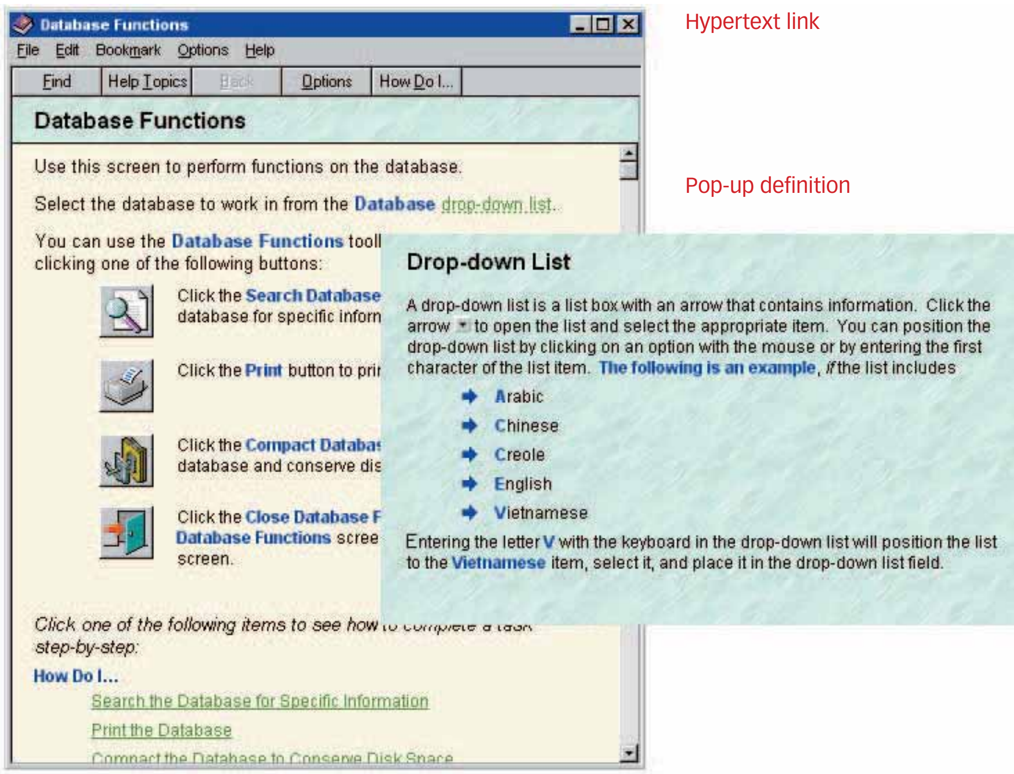
Achieve a Positive, Personalized Tone. Users want to be encouraged, especially if they are trying to accomplish a difficult task. Thus, your help screens should be constructive, not critical. Your text should be affirmative, a concept supported by human-computer interaction (HCI) concerns. HCI-driven online help systems coach the users rather than command them (Wagner). The messages also should be personalized, including pronouns to involve the reader.

Design Your Document. How will your help screens look? Document design is important because it helps your readers access the information they need. (See Figure 5.)

To achieve an effective document design, consider the following points:

- **Use color carefully.** Bright colors and too many colors strain your readers' eyes. Furthermore, a color that looks good on a high-resolution monitor might be difficult to read on a monitor with poor resolution. Your primary goal is contrast. To help your audience read your text, maximize the contrast between the text color and the background color, as seen in Figures 4 and 5.
- **Be consistent.** Pick a color scheme and stick with it. Your headings should be consistent, along with your word usage, tone, placement of help screen links and pop-ups, graphics, wizards, and icons. Readers expect to find things in the same place each time they look. If your help screens are inconsistent, readers will be confused.
- **Use an easy-to-read font.** A 12-point type size is standard for most printed documents, but 10-point type will save you valuable space online. Serif fonts are the standard for most technical writing. A serif font, with small, horizontal "feet" at the bottom of each letter, helps guide the eye while reading printed text. However, on lower resolution monitors, serif text is more difficult to read. Many online help screens, such as those provided by Word, use a sans serif font, such as Arial or Calibri. Avoid "designer fonts," such as Algerian, Bauhaus 93, or Brush Script MT, which are hard to read.
- **Use white space.** Don't clutter your help screens. Avoid excessive emphasis techniques. For example, typical PowerPoint "fly-in" effects not only are distracting, but also negatively impact the online screen's performance, slowing load time dramatically. Minimize your reader's overload by adding ample horizontal and vertical white space. Online, less is best.

FIGURE 5 Help Screen



Source: Courtesy of Earl Eddings, Technical Communications Specialist

Be Concise. "It takes 20 to 30 percent longer to read on-screen than in print, so you must minimize text" (Timpone). In addition to limiting word and sentence length, a help screen, just like any Web page, should limit horizontal and vertical scrolling. Each screen should include one self-contained message. If readers need additional information, use "In this section" and "Related topics" links.

Be Clear. Your audience reads the help screen only to learn how to perform a task. Thus, your only job is to meet the readers' needs—clearly. To accomplish this goal, be specific. In addition, clarity online could include the following:

- Tutorials to guide the reader through a task. Microsoft Office Word provides clear, step-by-step instructions with embedded screen captures to help its audience complete activities.
- Pop-up definitions with expanding blocks for longer definitions.

Provide Access on Multiple Platforms. You will want every reader to be able to access your online help, not just those using a PC or a Mac or UNIX. After all, if readers can't access online help, how have you helped them? To ensure that all readers can access your system,

- Do not use platform-specific technologies, such as ActiveX, which only runs in 32-bit Windows.

- Create content that can be viewed on multiple browsers, including Internet Explorer and Firefox.
- Create online help for the oldest version that you will support—the lowest common denominator. Remember, all users won't have the latest version browser, software, or hardware.
- Test your online help on at least three different browsers and platforms. Though you might be creating your online help screens on a 30-inch widescreen, your audience might be accessing the text on a 15-inch panel or smaller smartphone. Make sure they can see what you see, even if they are viewing text on smaller screens.

Correct Your Grammar. As in all technical communication, incorrect grammar online leads to two negative results: a lack of clarity and a lack of professionalism. Don't embarrass your company or confuse your reader with grammatical errors. Proofread.

ONLINE HELP CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Have you used your online help screens to explain why a procedure is required, show how something works, define terms, give examples, allow opportunities to practice tasks, and/or provide access to additional information?

_____ **2.** Have you helped readers access information with pull-down menus, tables of content, back and/or home buttons, and links to related topics?

_____ **3.** Have you tried to ensure that readers do not need to navigate more than three screens to find answers to their questions?

_____ **4.** Have you met your audience's needs by designing content at the level of their knowledge and expertise?

_____ **5.** Have you written your content using a positive tone, striving to "coach" rather than "command"?

_____ **6.** Did you design your help screens effectively by limiting color, using a consistent color scheme, choosing an easy-to-read font, and incorporating white space for easy access?

_____ **7.** Is your online help concise, limiting word length, sentence length, paragraph length, and horizontal and vertical scrolling?

_____ **8.** Have you developed your text thoroughly?

_____ **9.** Can your audience access the online help using different platforms and browsers?

_____ **10.** Is your online help grammatically correct?

The Writing Process at Work

Shannon Conner, a freelance technical writer and Web designer, used the communication process to create an effective and dynamic Web site for JConner Photography, a photography business owned by his wife, Jeanne.

Prewriting

See how Shannon used prewriting to begin the Web site he designed. To plan the Web site, Shannon considered the following:

- Goal—provide policy and procedures for the photography studio's Web site
- Audience—existing and potential photography studio clients
- Channels—statement of purpose for the Web site
- Data—policy and procedures including fees, ordering, pricing structure, and so on

Shannon used a questionnaire to define the audience, communication channel, and shelf life of the content for the Web site. Figure 6 shows Shannon's questionnaire.

FIGURE 6 Questionnaire Completed by Client Used for Prewriting

What are session fees?

- Session fees are $125, covering my time, talent, and equipment, not including any prints. Session fees are due at time of booking.

What happens in your session?

- Your session is individualized to fit your needs. I do not rush you through the session.

How do clients order photos?

- A minimum of 15 proofs will be provided in a private, password-protected online gallery within one week of each session date. JConner will e-mail a link to a gallery.

What are print prices?

- Prices range from $20 for wallet sized to $400 for large, wall-hanging photos.

What is available in the boutique?

- Boutique items are available after a minimum purchase of $300, unless otherwise noted.

When are final prints available?

- Prints will be delivered in 2–3 weeks. Larger images, canvas prints, and specialty items may take 4–6 weeks.

How can reprints be ordered?

- Reprints may be ordered up to one year from the session date. They are subject to the $45 re-hosting fee, and a minimum order of $250 applies.

Who holds the copyright for the photographs?

- All images copyrighted by photographer, Jeanne Conner.

Writing

You next have to write a draft of every Web page. Figure 7 shows Shannon's rough draft of a Web page.

Rewriting

Rewriting is the final part of the writing process. Using input from Jeanne, Shannon revised and reformatted the Web page considering how the design would be effective for the audience. Figure 8 shows Shannon's revised Web pages.

Jeanne said to Shannon, "I see why you wanted me to pick the most important ideas for the potential customer to take away from the Web site. Let's make the Web site simpler, with far fewer words, and use lots more linked pages so that the customer can focus. I want the Web site to be as elegant as possible and illustrate some of my most treasured photographs so the customers can see what they will get when they hire me."

FIGURE 7 Web Page Mockup with Input from the Client

Thank you for choosing JConner Photography! Please take a moment to look through our policies and procedures. If you have any questions, please contact Jeanne at jconner@jconnerphotography.com.

Session Fee

Session fees are $125. This covers my time, talent, and equipment and does not include any prints. Session fees are due at time of booking. Due to my busy schedule, session dates are only held once the session fee has been received.

Your Session

Your session is individualized to fit your needs. I do not rush you through the session. We will take our time to get the best image possible. For small children and newborns, this may mean taking short breaks for feeding and snacks.

Ordering

A minimum of 15 proofs will be provided in a private, password-protected online gallery within one week of your session date. JConner will e-mail you a link to your gallery. You're welcome to forward your gallery to family and friends. The ordering process is secure. Cash and credit/debit payments are made through the PayPal system.

Print Prices

Wall Portraits (mounted and coated)	Gift Prints (coated)
30 × 40 $400	8 × 10 $40
20 × 24 $275	5 × 7 $25
16 × 20 $170	8 Wallets $20
Add $150 for gallery-wrapped canvas.	

Boutique

Boutique items are available after a minimum purchase of $300, unless otherwise noted. JConner Photography also offers custom sterling silver photo jewelry and photo purses and handbags. Due to the handmade nature of these items, ask about current prices, styles, and availability.

FIGURE 8 Revised Home Page and Linked Page

Home Page

FIGURE 8 Continued

Linked Page

Source: Courtesy of JConner Photography

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. The Web, due to its speed, affordability, and international access, is a key component for corporate communication.
2. The Web Accessibility Initiative pursues accessibility to the Web for persons with disabilities such as cognitive, hearing, and vision impairment.
3. Establish your Web site's credibility and security.
4. When creating a Web site, consider differences between paper text and online communication such as screen size, rapid reading (scanning), and hypertext links.
5. A successful Web site contains a home page and linked pages with easy navigation within the site, readable text, and effective document design.
6. A successful home page should provide your audience the name of your company, service, or product, and contact information (or a link to corporate contacts), including phone numbers, e-mail addresses, fax numbers, street address, city/state/zip, customer service contacts, and social media links.
7. By providing the reader with hypertext links, a home page acts as an interactive table of contents or index.
8. By successfully testing a site's usability, a company can reduce customer and colleague complaints; increase employee productivity (reducing the time it takes to get work done); increase sales volume because customers can purchase products or services online; and decrease help desk calls and their costs.
9. A successful Web page, displayed on a PC, laptop monitor, or mobile device, should limit information per screen so the reader doesn't have to scroll endlessly.
10. An important consideration in Web site design is maintaining ethical standards, security, and credibility.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. Future Promise is a not-for-profit organization geared toward helping at-risk high school students. This agency realizes that to reach its target audience (teens aged 15 to 18), it needs an Internet and social media presence. To do so, it has formed a team, consisting of the agency's accountant, sports and recreation director, public relations manager, social media manager, counselor, graphic artist, computer and information systems director, two local high school principals, local high school students, and a representative from the mayor's office. Jeannie Kort, the public relations manager, is acting as team leader.

The team needs to determine the Web site's content, design, and levels of interactivity. Jeannie's boss, Brent Searing, has given the team a deadline and a few components that must be included in the site:

- College scholarship opportunities
- After-school intramural sports programs
- Job-training skills (resume building and interviewing)
- Service learning programs to encourage civic responsibility
- Social media sites (Facebook, Twitter, YouTube, Future Promise blog, and foursquare)
- Future Promise's toll-free hotline (for information on suicide prevention, STDs, depression, substance abuse, and peer counseling)
- Additional links (for donors, sponsors, educational options, job opportunities, etc.)

Assignment

In a team, design Future Promise's Web site. To do so, follow the criteria for Web design provided in this chapter.

2. The following short proposal recommends that upper management approve the construction of a corporate Web site. The company's management has agreed with the proposal. You and your team have received an e-mail directing you to build the Web site. Using the proposal, build your company's Web site.

Subject: Recommendation Report for New Corporate Web Site

In response to your request, I have researched the impact of the Internet on corporate earnings. Companies are positioning themselves online to maximize their earnings potential. I concluded that from 2012 to 2014, 78 percent of companies with Internet sites were profiting from their online access. The time is right for our company, Java Lava, to go online.

By going online, we can maximize our profits by going global. We can accomplish this goal as follows:

1. **International bean sales.** Currently, coffee bean sales account for only 27 percent of our company's overall profit. These coffee bean sales depend solely on walk-in trade. The remaining 73 percent stems from over-the-counter beverage sales. If we go global via the Internet, we can expand our coffee bean sales dramatically. Potential clients from every continent will be able to order our coffee beans online.

2. **International promotional product sales.** Mugs, T-shirts, boxer shorts, jean jackets, leather jackets, key chains, paperweights, and calendars could be marketed. Currently we give away items imprinted with our company's logo. By selling these items online, we could make money while marketing our company.
3. **International franchises.** We now have three coffeehouses, located at 1200 San Jacinto, 3897 Pecan Street, and 1801 West Paloma Avenue. Let's franchise. On the Internet, we could offer franchise options internationally.
4. **Online employment opportunities.** Once we begin to franchise, we'll want to control hiring practices to ensure that Java Lava's standards are met. Through a Web site, we could post job openings internationally and list the job requirements. Then potential employees could apply online.

In addition to the above information, used to increase our income, we could provide the following:

- A map showing our three current sites.
- Our company's history—founded in 1982 by Hiram and Miriam Coenenburg, with money earned from their import/export bean business. "Hi" and "Mam," as they were affectionately called, handed their first coffeehouse over to their sons (Robert, John, and William) who expanded to our three stores. Now a third generation, consisting of Rob, John, and Bill's six children (Henry, Susan, Andrew, Marty, Blake, and Stefani) could take us into the next millennium.
- Sources of our coffee beans—Guatemala, Costa Rica, Columbia, Brazil, Sumatra, France, and the Ivory Coast.
- Freshness guarantees—posted ship dates and ground-on dates; 100 percent money-back guarantee.
- Corporate contacts (addresses, phone numbers, e-mail, fax numbers, etc.).
- A corporate blog for news, events, sales, and promotional discounts.

Coffee is a "hot" commodity now. The international market is ours for the taking. We can maximize our profits and open new venues for expansion. I'm awaiting your approval.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

Online Help

1. In a team, have each individual ask a software-related question regarding a word processing application. These could include questions such as "How do I print?" or "How do I set margins?" Then, using a help menu, find the answers to these questions. Are the answers provided by way of pop-up windows or hyperlinks? Rewrite any of these examples to improve their conciseness or visual layout.
2. Take an existing document (one you have already written in your technical writing class or writing from your work environment) and rewrite it as online help. To do so, find key words, phrases, or concepts that need to be defined. Then, expand on them as either pop-up windows or hyperlinks.
3. Using our suggestions in this chapter, rewrite the following text as an effective online help screen. To do so, reformat the information for access on a smaller screen. Next, determine which of the words, phrases, or concepts can be expanded with a short pop-up window and which require a longer hyperlink.

Because your company is located in the East Side Commercial Park, the outside power is subject to surges and brownouts. These are caused when industrial motors and environmental equipment frequently start and stop. The large copiers in your office also cause power surges that can damage electronic equipment.

As a result of these power surges and outages, your three network servers have become damaged. Power supplies, hard drives, memory, and monitors have all been damaged. The repair costs for damages totaled $55,000.

Power outages at night also have caused lost data and failed backups and file transfers. Not being able to shut down the servers during power failures is leading to system crashes. Data loss requires time-consuming tape restorations. If the failures happen before a scheduled backup, the data are lost, which requires new data entry time. Ten percent of your data loss can not be restored. This will lead to the loss of customer confidence in the reliability of your services.

Finally, staff time losses of $40,000 are directly related to network downtime. Data-entry staff are not able to work while the servers are being repaired. These staff also must spend extra time reentering lost data. Fifteen percent of the data management staff time is now spent recovering from power-related problems.

To solve your problems, you need to install a BACK-UPS 9000 system. It has the configuration and cost-effectiveness appropriate for your current needs.

Web Sites

1. Create a corporate Web site. To do so, make up your own company and its product or service. Your company's service could focus on dog training, computer repair, basement refinishing, vent cleaning, Web site construction, child care, auto repair, personalized aerobic training, or online haute cuisine. Your company's product could be interactive computer games, graphics software packages, custom-built engines, flooring tiles, or duck decoys. The choice is yours. To create this Web site, follow our writing process.
2. Create a Web site for your technical communication or professional writing class. To create this Web site, follow our writing process.
3. Create a personal Web site for yourself or for your family.
4. Research several Web sites, either corporate or personal. Use our Web Site Usability Checklist to determine which sites excel and which sites need improvement. Then write a report justifying your assessment. In this report, clarify exactly what makes the sites successful. To do so, you could use a table, listing effective traits and giving examples from the Web sites to prove your point. Next, explain why the unsuccessful sites fail. Finally, suggest ways in which the unsuccessful sites could be improved.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. FlyHigh Travel does not book trips to Washington, D.C., for tours of national monuments; to Las Vegas to see shows; or to Boston to visit historical sites. Instead, FlyHigh specializes in "adventure trips . . . in the air, sea, and land." If it's shark watching off the Barrier Reef, paragliding from a cliff in Acapulco, or mountain climbing in Nepal, FlyHigh is the traveler's answer. FlyHigh books adventures like feeding stingrays in the Caribbean, animal photo shoots in Kenya, and kayaking down the Colorado River. FlyHigh also makes travel

arrangements for scuba diving in Hawaii, spelunking in French caves, and skydiving anywhere in the world. To reach as wide an audience as possible, FlyHigh is building its Web site (www.WeFlyHigh.com). FlyHigh's CEO wants this Web site to include trip information, testimonials from satisfied travelers, pricing, and photos that highlight each trip's excitement.

Assignment

Build the Web site for FlyHigh including the following content:

- Specific trip information travelers need to plan their trips (costs, accommodations, options, and so on)
- Information international customers will need (passports, visas, vaccinations, or inoculations)
- Information for FlyHigh's clients who travel with families (alternative, age-specific activities)
- Information for FlyHigh's "fit and fearless" clients whose travels will involve extreme sports

2. Web site design is challenging. Some Web sites are outstanding; others are not as successful. Check out http://www.webpagesthatsuck.com/ and http://www.webpractices.com/samplesites.htm, two sites that assess flawed Web pages. Do you agree with their assessments?

Assignment

Write a memo to your instructor or give an oral presentation explaining your decisions.

WEB WORKSHOP

1. Access any company's Web site and study the site's content, layout (color, graphics, headings, use of varying font sizes and types, etc.), links (internal and external), ease of navigation, tone, and any other considerations you think are important. Then, determine how the Web site could be improved if you were the site's webmaster. Once you have made this determination, write a memo or e-mail message recommending the changes that you believe would improve the site. Do the following in this memo or e-mail:
   - Analyze the Web site's current content and design, focusing on what is successful and what could be improved.
   - Recommend changes to improve the site.
2. Audience recognition involves a reader's level of knowledge as well as his or her gender, religion, age, culture, and language. No communication channel allows for a more diverse audience than the Internet, where anyone can click on a link and enter a site. Still, effective Web sites recognize and appeal to specific audiences. To better understand how successful technical communication recognizes and involves audience, click on the following sites:
   - http://www.mcdonalds.com/ (food)
   - http://www.gap.com/browse/home.do (clothing)
   - http://www.harley-davidson.com/ (motorcycles)

Who are the intended audiences within each Web site, and what techniques do the Web sites use to involve and recognize their unique audience types?

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 2 — Internet Usage in the World by Geographic Region. Courtesy of George Butler Associates.

Figure 3 — MoDOT "Business" Page Link. Courtesy of MoDOT.

Figure 5 — Help Screen. Courtesy of Earl Eddings, Technical Communications.

Figure 8 — Revised Home Page and Linked Page. Courtesy of JConnor Photography.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© pressmaster / Fotolia

© Steven and Sharon Gerson

© Corbis Bridge / Alamy

REFERENCES

Arno, Christian. "Why Your Business Must Embrace the Foreign Language Internet." *Business.Com.* 15 Nov. 2010. Web. 17 Jul. 2011.

Berst, Jesse. "Seven Deadly Web Site Sins." *ZDNet*. 30 Jan. 1998. Web. 15 Dec. 2005.

Conner, Shannon. Interview. 11 Jul. 2011.

"E-Commerce, Trust, and SSL." *Symantec.com.* 2011 Web. 17 Jul. 2011.

Eddings, Earl, Kim Buckley, Sharon Coleman Bock, and Nathaniel Williams. Software Documentation Specialists at PDA. Interview. 12 Jan. 1998.

Fogg, B. J. *et al*. "How Do People Evaluate a Web Site's Credibility?" 29 Oct. 2002. Web. 17 Jul. 2011.

"508 Law." *Section 508*. 15 Aug. 2002. Web. 10 Jun. 2004.

Hemmi, Jane A. "Differentiating Online Help from Printed Documentation." *Intercom* (July/August 2002): 10–12. Print.

"Internet Accessibility." *STC AccessAbility SIG*. 9 Jun. 2004. Web. 15 Jun. 2004.

"Internet Growth: Today's Road to Business and Trade." *Internet World Stats.* 2004. Web. 30 May 2004.

"Internet World Stats: Usage and Population Statistics." Internet *World Stats*. 2012. Web. 18 Mar. 2012.

Karch, Marziah. Interview. 15 Jul. 2011.

McGowan, Kevin S. "The Leap Online." *Intercom* Sep./Oct. 2000: 22–25. Print.

Olive, Eric G. "Usability: Making the Web Work." *Intercom* (Nov. 2002): 8–10. Print.

OnGuard Online. 1 Aug. 2007. Web. 4 Mar. 2012.

Pratt, Jean A. "Where Is the Instruction in Online Help Systems." *Technical Communication* Feb. 1998: 33–37. Print.

"Privacy Initiatives." *Federal Trade Commission*. 1 Aug. 2007. Web. 17 Jul. 2011.

"Protecting Personal Information." *Federal Trade Commission.* 1 Aug. 2007. Web. 17 Jul. 2011.

Redish, Janice C. "Writing for the Web: Letting Go of the Words." *Intercom* (June 2004): 4–10. Print.

Smith, Aaron. "Mobile Access 2010." *Pew Internet.* 7 Jul. 2010. Web. 17 Jul. 2011.

Timpone, Donna. "Help! Six Fixes to Improve the Usability of Your Online Help." *Society for Technical Communication: 44th Annual Conference, 1997 Proceedings*. May 1997: 306. Print.

Wagner, Carol A. "Using HCI Skills to Create Online Message Help." *Society for Technical Communication: 44th Annual Conference, 1997 Proceedings*. May 1997: 35. Print.

Short, Informal Reports

From Chapter 16 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

Short, Informal Reports

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, a director of information technology must write a variety of reports, including trip reports, feasibility/recommendation reports, and progress reports.

Cindy Katz is director of information technology at WIFI Nation, an electronics communication company with branches in 35 cities and a home office in Austin, Texas.

Cindy has been traveling to Austin from her office in Miami, Florida, one week each month for a year. She is part of a team being trained on WIFI Nation's new corporate software. Her team consists of staff members from human resources, information technology, accounting, payroll, and administrative services. The software they are learning will be used to manage WIFI Nation's electronic communication system-wide. It will allow for

- Electronic payroll reports
- Employee benefits
- Paystubs
- Record of cumulative sick leave and vacation days available

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Distinguish the differences between short, informal reports and long, formal, researched reports
- Write different types of short reports including incident reports, investigative reports, trip reports, progress reports, lab reports, and feasibility/recommendation reports
- Choose the correct communication channel (e-mail, letter, or memo) for your short, informal report
- Write an introduction for your short report that explains the purpose, documents personnel involved, and states when and where the activities occurred
- Write a discussion section that quantifies what occurred by supplying accurate dates, times, calculations, and problems encountered
- Design a discussion section that is accessible with highlighting techniques, such as headings, boldface, underlining, itemization, and graphics
- Select an appropriate method of organization in your discussion section, such as chronology, importance, comparison/contrast, or problem/solution
- Present a value judgment in the conclusion based on the findings in the discussion section
- Provide a recommendation that tells your reader what to do next or what you consider to be the appropriate course of action
- Recognize your audience's level of understanding (high tech, low tech, lay, management, subordinate, colleague), multiple, internal, or external and write accordingly

- Corporate blogging
- WIFI Nation's intranet
- WIFI Nation's Web site
- WIFI Nation's e-mail system

In addition, with the help of the new software, WIFI Nation is creating an intracorporate Web site called "WIFILand." This social media site, based on a Facebook model, will provide WIFI Nation employees an online location to share stories, update their personal profiles, and inform their colleagues about community activities. The site will also allow for the posting of instructional videos and videos of corporate activities. WIFILand will be an online meet-and-greet site designed to build corporate rapport. Cindy's team is responsible for this new social media venture. In her travels to Austin, she is gathering information from her coworkers about what they want to build into this social media site.

Cindy must document her activities monthly and biannually. First, she must record her travel expenses and the team's achievements, necessitating monthly **trip reports** submitted to her manager. As a member of her team's technology impact task force subcommittee, Cindy also has been asked to study technology options and emerging technology concerns. This means that she will write a **feasibility/recommendation report** following her study to justify the implementation of the new technology system the team decides on.

Finally, when her project is completed, Cindy will collaborate with her team members to write a **progress report** for WIFI Nation's board of directors. Though Cindy's area of expertise is computer information systems, her job requires much more than programming or overseeing the networking of her corporation's computer systems. Cindy's primary job has become communication with colleagues and administrators. Writing reports is a major component of this job requirement.

FAQs: Reports

Q: What's a report? I've seen "reports" that look like memos and "reports" that look like letters. What's the difference?

A: Reports come in all shapes and sizes, and different companies define the word *report* differently. For one company, a report could consist of an informal, half-page e-mail message, a page-long memo, or a three-page letter. Other companies might define a report as a formal, long document, such as a 30-page report on acquiring new clients or a 100-page annual report to stockholders.

Few companies use the same terms for their reports or even write the same kinds of reports. For example, note how the following industries use different terminology for their reports.

- Banking supervisors might write a **Job in Jeopardy** report to document employee problems.
- If a customer's loan request is denied, the bank will report this by writing an **Adverse Action Letter** to the client, documenting this unfavorable finding.
- Accountants write **Financial Statements**, reports that document if a client's finances are normal, if some aspect of the client's finances does not meet industry standards, or if rules have not been followed and violations have occurred.
- Accounting **Valuation Reports** are sent to the IRS for estate planning and gift tax reporting.
- Software developers write **Flash Notification** reports informing clients of vital flaws discovered in software that could lead to financial loss.
- Software **Release Notes**, sent electronically via a company's Web site, are reports that explain corrections or enhancements and include how-to instructions for testing software functionality.

Each industry sector writes different kinds of reports using different communication channels. However, all reports have certain characteristics in common, as this chapter will illustrate.

What Is a Report?

Reports come in different lengths and levels of formality, serve different and often overlapping purposes, and can be conveyed to an audience using different communication channels. You could write a short, informal progress report that conveys information about job-related projects. For a short report, an e-mail format might be sufficient, directed to either a high-tech or low-tech, internal audience. However, you might write a longer, more formal progress report in a letter format for an external lay audience, which provides facts, analyzes these findings, and recommends follow-up action.

Your reports will satisfy one or all of the following needs:

- Supply a record of work accomplished
- Record and clarify complex information for future reference
- Present information to a large number of people with different skill levels
- Record problems encountered
- Document schedules, timetables, and milestones
- Recommend future action
- Document current status
- Record procedures

Long? Short? Formal? Informal? To clarify unique aspects of different kinds of reports, look at Table 1.

TABLE 1 Unique Aspects of Reports

Report Features	Distinctions	Definition of Unique Characteristics
Length and Scope	Short	A typical short report is limited to one to five pages. Short reports focus on topics with limited scope. This could include a limited timeframe covered in the report, limited financial impact, limited personnel, and limited impact on the company.
	Long	Long reports are more than five pages. If a topic's scope is large, including a long timeframe, significant amounts of money, research, many employees, and a momentous impact on the company, a long report might be needed.
Formality (tone)	Informal	Most short reports are informal, routine messages, written as letters, memos, or e-mail.
	Formal	Formal reports are usually long and contain standardized components, such as a title page, table of contents, list of illustrations, abstract, appendices, and works cited/references.
Audience	Internal (high tech or low tech)	Colleagues, supervisors, or subordinates within your company are an internal audience. Usually you would write an e-mail or memo report.
	External (multiple audience levels)	An external audience is composed of vendors, clients, customers, or companies with whom you are working. Usually you would write a report in letter format.
	Internal and external	If a report is being sent to both an internal and external audience, you would write an e-mail, memo, or letter report.
Purpose	Informational	Informational reports focus on factual data. They are often limited in scope to findings: "Here's what happened."
	Analytical	Analytical reports provide information, but analyze the causes behind occurrences. Then, these analytical reports draw conclusions, based on an interpretation of the data: "Here's what happened and why this occurred."
	Persuasive	Persuasive reports convey information and draw conclusions. Then, these reports use persuasion to justify recommended follow-up action: "Here's what happened, why this occurred, and what we should do next."
Communication Channels	E-mail	E-mail reports, written to internal and external audiences, are short and informal.
	Memo	Memo reports are written to internal audiences and are usually short and informal.
	Letter	Letter reports are sent to external audiences. These reports can be long or short, formal or informal, depending on the topic, scope, purpose, and audience.
	Electronic (online)	Many reports can be accessed via a company's Web site. These reports can be downloaded and printed out and often are "boilerplate"—text that can be used repetitively. Electronic reports also provide interactivity, allowing end-users to fill out the report online and submit it to the intended audience.

Types of Reports

Many reports fall into the following categories:

- Incident reports
- Investigative reports
- Trip reports
- Progress reports
- Lab or test reports
- Feasibility/recommendation reports
- Research reports
- Proposals

SPOTLIGHT

How Much Time Do You Spend Writing Reports and Why are the Reports Important in the Accounting Field?

Linda M. Freeman, CPA, says she and her colleagues throughout the office of Marks, Nelson, Vohland & Campbell spend approximately "20 to 25 percent of our day on report writing, including background research, drafting, and proofreading."

On a daily basis, Linda and her colleagues write Compilation Reports, Review Reports, and Audit Reports. Because these reports are "subject to guidelines of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants," the reports, in large part, are boilerplate with prescribed wording.

Linda also writes Valuation Reports on a daily basis. Some Valuation Reports are sent to the IRS for estate planning and gift tax reporting. Others "go to the courts for settling disputes between business owners or divorcing couples." Because Valuation Reports are judgment calls on the part of the CPAs, these reports are not boilerplate and entail less prescribed language.

Private Letter Ruling Requests are less frequently written reports. They are "high-level tax-planning" documents that require intensive research. In these formal requests sent to the IRS, a client proposes a new business or activity structured in a unique way. The accountant projects that the venture will be taxed according to one standard and asks the IRS if they agree with this assumption.

Times are changing. Communication is "going more electronic," Linda says. Reports to federal agencies, for example, are "template driven." Accountants are encouraged to use online forms and software from federal agencies to help the government cut back on paperwork.

Writing takes up much of Linda's time. Her reports must address many precise accounting standards. Linda's ultimate goal in report writing is quality assurance: adherence to legalities.

This chapter will focus on short, informal reports (incident reports, investigative reports, trip reports, progress reports, lab or test reports, and feasibility/recommendation reports).

Criteria for Writing Reports

Although there are many different types of reports and individual companies have unique demands and requirements, certain traits, including format, development, audience, and style, are basic to all report writing.

Organization

Every short report should contain five basic features: identification lines, headings and talking headings, introduction, discussion, and conclusion/recommendations.

Identification Lines. Identify the date on which your report is written, the names of the people to whom the report is written, the names of the people from whom the report is sent, and the subject of the report. The subject line should contain a *topic* and a *focus*. In a short internal report, the identification lines will look like the following example.

EXAMPLE ▶

Date: March 15, 2014
To: Rob Harken
From: Stacy Helgoe
Subject: Report on Usenet Conference

Headings and Talking Headings. To improve page layout and make content accessible, use headings and talking headings. Headings—words or phrases such as "Introduction," "Discussion," "Conclusion," "Problems with Employees," or "Background Information"—

highlight the content in a particular section of a document. Talking headings, in contrast, are more informative than headings. Talking headings, such as "Human Resources Committee Reviews 2014 Benefits Packages," informatively clarify the content that follow.

Introduction. The introduction supplies an overview of the report. It can include three or more optional subdivisions, such as the following:

- **Purpose**—a topic sentence(s) or paragraph explaining why you are submitting the report (rationale, justification, objectives) and the subject matter of the report.
- **Personnel**—names of others involved in the reporting activity.
- **Dates**—what period of time the report covers.

In this introductory section, use headings or talking headings to summarize the content. These can include headings for organization, such as "Overview" or "Purpose," or more informative talking headings, such as "HVAC Conference Dates Set for 2014."

◀ EXAMPLE

> **Introduction**
>
> ***Report Objectives:*** I attended the Southwest Regional Conference on Workplace Communication in Fort Worth, TX, to learn more about how our company can communicate effectively. This report addresses the workshops I attended, consultants I met with, and pricing for training seminars.
>
> ***Conference Dates:*** August 5–8, 2014
>
> ***Committee Members:*** Susan Lisk and Larry Rochelle

Some businesspeople omit the introductory comments in reports and begin with the discussion. They believe that introductions are unnecessary because the readers know why the reports are written and who is involved. These assumptions are false for several reasons. First, it is false to assume that readers will know why you're writing the report, when the activities occurred, and who was involved. Perhaps if you are writing only to your immediate supervisor, there's no reason for introductory overviews. Even in this situation, however, you might have an unanticipated reader for the following reasons:

- **Immediate supervisors change**—they are promoted, fired, retire, or go to work for another company.
- **Immediate supervisors aren't always available**—they're sick for the day, on vacation, or offsite for job-related travel.

Second, avoiding introductory overviews assumes that your readers will remember the report's subject matter. This is false because reports are written not only for the present, when the topic is current, but also for the future, when the topic is history. Reports go on file—and return at a later date. At that later date, the following may occur:

- You won't remember the particulars of the reported subject matter.
- Your colleagues, many of whom weren't present when the report was originally written, won't be familiar with the subject.
- You might have external, lay readers who need additional detail to understand the report.

An introduction, which seemingly states the obvious, satisfies multiple and future readers.

Discussion. The discussion section of the report can summarize many topics, including your activities, the problems you encountered, costs of equipment, warranty information, and more. This is the largest section of the report, requiring detailed development, illustrated in the different report types discussed throughout this chapter.

Conclusion/Recommendations. The conclusion section of the report allows you to sum up, to relate what you have learned, or to state what decisions you have made regarding the activities reported. The recommendation section allows you to suggest future action, such as what the company should do next. Not all reports require recommendations.

EXAMPLE ▶

Headings, such as "Benefits of the Conference" and "Proposed Next Course of Action" provide focus.

The conclusion shows how the writer benefited.

The recommendation explains what the company should do next and why.

Conclusion/Recommendation

Benefits of the Conference

The conference was beneficial. Not only did it teach me how to improve my technical communication but also it provided me contacts for technical communication training consultants.

Proposed Next Course of Action

To ensure that all employees benefit from the knowledge I acquired, I recommend hiring a consultant to provide technical communication training.

Development

Now that you know what subdivisions are traditional in short reports, the next questions might be, "What do I say in each section? How do I develop my ideas?"

First, answer the reporter's questions.

- **Who** did you meet or contact, who was your liaison, who was involved in the accident, who was on your technical team, and so on?
- **When** did the documented activities occur (dates of travel, milestones, incidents, etc.)?
- **Why** are you writing the report and why were you involved in the activity (rationale, justification, objectives)? Or, for a lab report, for example, why did the electrode, compound, equipment, or material act as it did?
- **Where** did the activity take place?
- **What** were the steps in the procedure, what conclusions have you reached, or what are your recommendations?

Second, when providing information, *quantify*. Do not be vague or imprecise. Specify to the best of your abilities with photographic detail.

The following justification is an example of vague, imprecise writing.

BEFORE

Installation of the machinery is needed to replace a piece of equipment deemed unsatisfactory by an Equipment Engineering review.

Which machine are we purchasing? Which piece of equipment will it replace? Why is the equipment unsatisfactory (too old, too expensive, too slow)? When does it need to be replaced? Where does it need to be installed? Why is the installation important? A department supervisor will not be happy with the preceding report. Instead, supervisors need information *quantified,* as follows:

AFTER

Note that the italicized words and phrases provide detail by quantifying.

The *exposure table* needs to be installed by *9/10/14* so that we can *manufacture printed wiring products with fine line paths and spacing (down to 0.0005 inch).* The table will replace the *outdated printer* in *Department 76.* Failure to install the table *will slow the production schedule by 27 percent.*

Audience

Since reports can be sent both internally and externally, your audience can be high tech, low tech, lay, or read by multiple readers. Before you write your report, determine who will read your text. This will help you decide if terminology needs to be defined and what tone you should use. In a memo report to an in-house audience, you might be writing simultaneously to your immediate supervisor (high tech), to his or her boss (low tech), to your colleagues (high tech), and to a CEO (low tech). In a letter report to an external audience, your readers could be high tech, low tech, or lay. To accommodate multiple audiences, use parenthetical definitions, such as Cash in Advance (CIA) or Continuing Property Records (CPR).

In reports, audience determines tone. For example, you cannot write directive reports to supervisors mandating action on their part. It might seem obvious that you can write directives to subordinates or a lay audience, but you should not use a dictatorial tone. You will determine the tone of your report by deciding if you are writing vertically (up to management or down to subordinates), laterally (to coworkers), or to multiple readers.

Style

Style includes conciseness and highlighting techniques. Achieve conciseness by eliminating wordy phrases. Use *consider* rather than *take into consideration*; use *now* (or provide a date) rather than *at this present time*. Headings, subheadings, and graphics can be used to help communicate content. Note how the text in the following example fails to communicate effectively.

BEFORE

Johnson County is expected to add 157,605 persons to its 1990 population of 270,269 by the year 2015. That population jump would be accompanied by a near doubling of the 96,925 households the county had in 1990. The addition of 131,026 jobs also is forecast for Johnson County by 2015, more than doubling its employment opportunity.

The information is difficult to access readily. We are overloaded with too much data. Luckily, the report provided a table for easier access to the data. Through highlighting techniques (tables, white space, headings), the demographic forecast is made accessible at a glance.

AFTER

Table 1 Johnson County Predicted Growth by 2015

	Population	Households	Employment
1990	270,269	96,925	127,836
2015	427,874	192,123	258,862
% change	+58.3%	+98.2%	+102%

Types of Short, Informal Reports

All reports include identification information, an introduction, a discussion, and conclusion/recommendations. However, different types of short reports customize these generic components to meet specific needs. Let's look at the criteria for six common types of reports: incident reports, investigative reports, trip reports, progress reports, lab reports, and feasibility/recommendation reports.

Incident Reports

An *incident report* documents an unexpected problem that has occurred. This could be an automobile accident, equipment malfunction, fire, robbery, injury, or even problems with employee behavior. In this report, you will document what happened. If a problem occurs within your work environment that requires analysis (fact finding, review, study, etc.) and

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about online incident reports, check out the following links:

- U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission's online "Consumer Product Incident Report" form https://www.cpsc.gov/cgibin/incident.aspx
- National Fraud Information Center's "Online Incident Report Form" http://www.fraud.org/info/repoform.htm
- Health & Safety Executive's "Incident Reporting" forms https://www.hse.gov.uk/forms/incident/index.htm

suggested solutions, you might be asked to prepare an incident report (also called a trouble report or accident report), as follows:

- **Biomedical technology—**A CAT scan in the radiology department is not functioning correctly. This has led to the department's inability to read X-rays. To avoid similar problems, you need to report this incident.
- **Hospitality management—**An oven in your restaurant caught fire. This not only injured one of your cooks but also damaged the oven, requiring that it be replaced with more fire-resistant equipment.
- **Retail—**Maybe one of your retail locations has experienced a burglary. The police have been contacted, but as site manager, you believe the problem could have been avoided with better in-store security. Your incident report will document the event and show how to avoid future problems.

Criteria. To write an incident report, include the following components:

1. Introduction
   Purpose. In this section, document when and where the incident occurred.
   Personnel. *Who* was involved, and *what* role do you play in the incident? That could entail listing all of the people involved in the accident or event. These might be people injured, as well as police or medical personnel answering an emergency call.
   In addition, *why* are you involved in the activity? Are you a supervisor in charge of the department or employee? Are you a police officer or medical personnel writing the report? Are you an employee responsible for repairing the malfunctioning equipment?
2. Discussion (body, findings, agenda, work accomplished)
   Using subheadings or itemization, quantify what you saw (the problems motivating the report). Organize your content using problem/solution, chronology, cause/effect, or other modes of organization. Develop your content by including the following information:
   - Make or model of the equipment involved
   - Police departments or hospitals contacted
   - Names of witnesses
   - Witness testimonies (if applicable)
   - Extent of damage—financial and physical
   - Graphics (sketches, schematics, diagrams, layouts, etc.) depicting the incident visually
   - Follow-up action taken to solve the problem
3. Conclusion/recommendations
   Conclusion. Explain what caused the problem.
   Recommendations. Relate what could be done in the future to avoid similar problems.

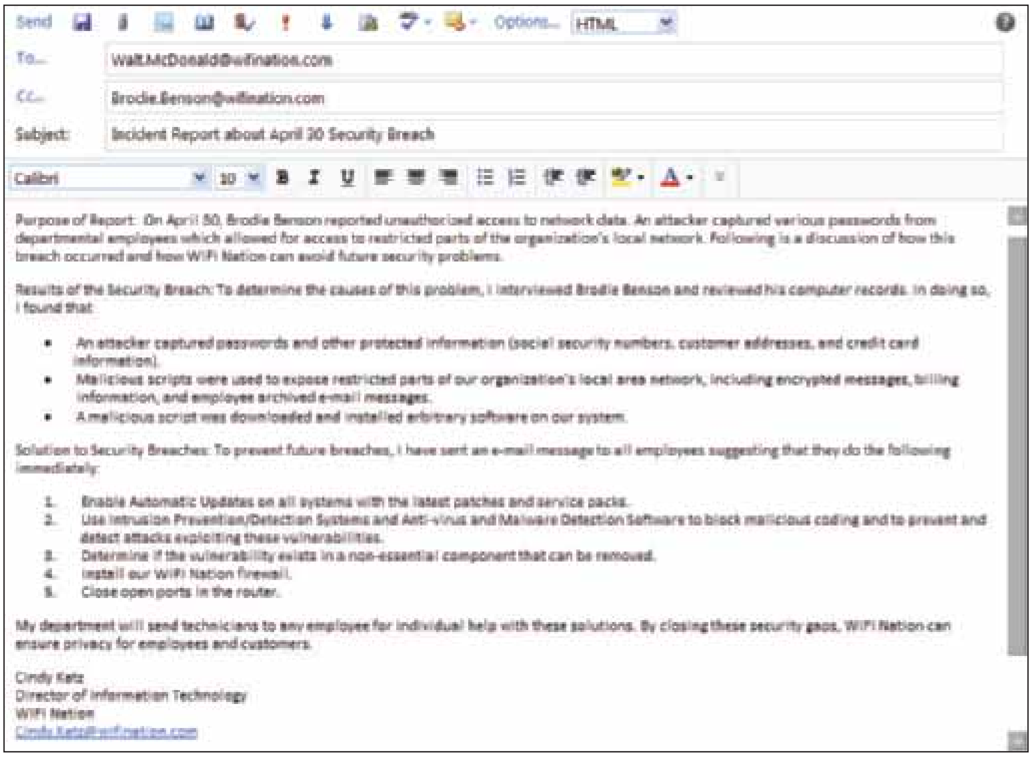
Figure 1 presents an example of an incident report, written as an e-mail.

Investigative Reports

As the word *investigate* implies, an *investigative report* asks you to examine the causes behind an incident. Something has happened. The report does not just document the incident. It focuses more on why the event occurred. You might be asked to investigate causes leading up to a problem in the following instances:

- **Security—**You work in a bank's security department. You are responsible for investigating theft, burglary, fraud, vandalism, check forging, and other banking illegalities. One of your customers, a college student at the local university, reports losing her purse

FIGURE 1 E-mail Incident Report



To... Walt.McDonald@wifination.com
CC... Brodie.Benson@wifination.com
Subject: Incident Report about April 30 Security Breach

Purpose of Report: On April 30, Brodie Benson reported unauthorized access to network data. An attacker captured various passwords from departmental employees which allowed for access to restricted parts of the organization's local network. Following is a discussion of how this breach occurred and how WiFi Nation can avoid future security problems.

Results of the Security Breach: To determine the causes of this problem, I interviewed Brodie Benson and reviewed his computer records. In doing so, I found that

- An attacker captured passwords and other protected information (social security numbers, customer addresses, and credit card information).
- Malicious scripts were used to expose restricted parts of our organization's local area network, including encrypted messages, billing information, and employee archived e-mail messages.
- A malicious script was downloaded and installed arbitrary software on our system.

Solution to Security Breaches: To prevent future breaches, I have sent an e-mail message to all employees suggesting that they do the following immediately:

1. Enable Automatic Updates on all systems with the latest patches and service packs.
2. Use Intrusion Prevention/Detection Systems and Anti-virus and Malware Detection Software to block malicious coding and to prevent and detect attacks exploiting these vulnerabilities.
3. Determine if the vulnerability exists in a non-essential component that can be removed.
4. Install our WiFi Nation firewall.
5. Close open ports in the router.

My department will send technicians to any employee for individual help with these solutions. By closing these security gaps, WiFi Nation can ensure privacy for employees and customers.

Cindy Katz
Director of Information Technology
WiFi Nation
Cindy.Katz@wifination.com

The writer relies on a "problem/solution" analytical pattern of organization for this short, informal, internal e-mail report.

The writer includes a "signature file" that acts like an online business card, clearly identifying the writer and providing contact information.

at a campus party. Within hours of the theft, charges to her debit card are showing up across the city. Your job now is to investigate the incident and report your findings.

- **Engineering**—A historic, 100-year-old bridge crossing your city's river is buckling. The left lane is now two inches higher than the right lane, and expansion joints are separating beyond acceptable specifications. You must visit the bridge site, inspect the damage, and report on the causes for this construction flaw.
- **Computer Technology**—You work in a college's technology department. The college requires that all student grades be kept on a newly installed, campus-wide database and then be submitted electronically when the semester ends. For some reason, faculty cannot access their students' records to input grades. You must investigate the causes behind this technology glitch and solve the problems—*now*! The semester grades are due within 24 hours.

Criteria. Following is an overview of what you might include in an effective investigative report.

1. Introduction (overview, background)

   Purpose. In the purpose section, document the date(s) of the incident. Then comment on your objectives or rationale. What incident are you reporting on and what do you hope to achieve in this investigation?

   You might also want to include these following optional subheadings:

   Location. Where did the incident occur?

   Personnel. Who was involved in the incident? This could include those with whom you worked on the project or those involved in the situation.

   Authorization. Who recommended or suggested that you investigate the problem?

2. Discussion (body, findings, agenda)
   This is the major part of the investigation. Using subheadings, document your findings. This can include the following:
   - A review of your observations. This includes physical evidence, descriptions, lab reports, testimony, and interview responses. Answer the reporter's questions: who, what, when, where, why, and how.
   - Contacts, people interviewed
   - Difficulties encountered
   - Techniques, equipment, or tools used in the course of the investigation
   - Test procedures followed, organized chronologically
3. Conclusion/recommendations
   Conclusion. What did you accomplish? What did you learn? What discoveries have you made regarding the causes behind the incident? Who or what is at fault?
   Recommendations. What do you suggest next? Should changes be made in personnel or in the approach to a particular situation? What training is required for use with the current technology, or should technology be changed? What is the preferred follow-up for the patient or client? How can the problem be fixed?

Figure 2 illustrates an investigative report, written in letter format to an external audience. This example is written at a high-tech level because the city council needs to understand the scientific information about the incident.

FIGURE 2 Investigative Report in Letter Format (High-tech Level)

Follow letter format when you write a short, informal report for an external audience.

Frog Creek Wastewater Treatment Plant
9276 Waveland Blvd.
Bowstring City, UT 86554

September 22, 2014

Bowstring City Council
Arrowhead School District 234
Bowstring City, UT 86721

The subject line provides a topic (Frog Creek Wastewater Pollution) and a focus (Investigative Report).

Subject: Investigative Report on Frog Creek Wastewater Pollution

In the letter's introduction, reporter's questions clarify when and where the event occurred, who was involved, and why the report is being written.

On September 12, 2014, teachers at Arrowhead Elementary School reported that over a five-day period (September 8–12), approximately 20 students complained of nausea, lightheadedness, and skin rashes. On the fifth day, the Arrowhead administration called 911 and the Arrowhead School District (ASD 234) in response to this incident.

Bowstring City paramedics treated the children's illnesses, suggesting that the problems might be due to airborne pollutants. The Bowstring City Council contacted the Frog Creek Wastewater Treatment Plant (FCWTP) to investigate the causes of this problem. This report is submitted by Mike Moore (Director of Public Relations), Sue Cottrell (Wastewater Engineer), and Thomas Redburn (Wastewater Engineer), in response to Bowstring City's request.

FIGURE 2 (Continued)

Mike Moore
Page 2
September 22, 2014

Committee Findings

Impact on Schoolchildren: Arrowhead Elementary School administrators reported the following:

- Monday, September 8—Two children reported experiencing nausea.
- Tuesday, September 9—Two children reported experiencing nausea, and one child experienced lightheadedness.
- Wednesday, September 10—Three children experienced skin rashes.
- Thursday, September 11—Two children complained of nausea, one child was lightheaded, and two children showed evidence of skin rashes.
- Friday, September 12—Two children reported nausea, three reported skin rashes, and two lightheadedness.

After Friday's occurrences, Arrowhead Elementary School administrators called 911. Bowstring paramedics reported that (with parental approval) the children were treated with antacids for nausea, antihistamines for skin rashes, and oxygen for their lightheadedness. No other incidents were reported in the neighborhood surrounding the school.

Report on Frog Creek Pollutants: Wastewater Engineers Sue Cottrell and Thomas Redburn took samples of Frog Creek on September 12–15 and found the following:

Typical Frog Creek Readings	Readings from September 12–15
Low alkalinity: (generally <30 mg/l) (milligrams per liter)	High alkalinity readings: <45 mg/l
Low inorganic fertilizer nutrients (phosphorous and nitrogen): <20 mg/l	High phosphorous and nitrogen readings: <25 mg/l
Limited algae growth: 1 picometers	High algae readings: 4 picometers

Explanation of Findings:
Despite normally low readings, in late summer, with heat and rain, these readings can escalate. Higher algae-related odors above the 3 to 6 picometer thresholds, along with increased alkalinity (<50 mg/l) can create health problems for youth, elderly, or anyone with respiratory illnesses.

These studies showed that algae, alkalinity, and fertilizer nutrients were higher than usual.

The above elevated readings were caused by three factors (heat, rain, and northeasterly winds).

- Heat—On the days of the Arrowhead Elementary School incident, the temperature ranges were 92 to 95 degrees F, unusually high for early September. Algae and chemical growth increases in temperatures above 84 degrees F.

(Continued)

Include a new-page notation on every page after page one. In this notation, provide the writer's name, page number, and date. You can use a header to create this notation.

The findings use chronological organization to document the incidents.

FIGURE 2 Investigative Report in Letter Format (High-tech Level) (Continued)

Mike Moore
Page 3
September 22, 2014

- Rain—In addition, on September 8–10, Bowstring City received 2 inches of rain, swelling Frog Creek to 3 feet above its normal levels. Studies show that rain-swollen creeks and rivers lead to increased pollutants, as creek bottom silt rises.
- Wind—On September 8–9, a prevailing northeasterly wind blew from Frog Creek toward Arrowhead Elementary School's playground.

The findings not only investigate the causes of the incident, but also document with specific details. To achieve a readable format, the text is made accessible through highlighting techniques—underlined and italicized subheadings, bulleted details, and a comparison/contrast table.

Follow-up Studies: On September 16–19, our engineers rechecked Frog Creek, finding that the chemical levels had returned to a normal, acceptable range.

Conclusion about Incident

Frog Creek normally has acceptable levels of algae, alkalinity, and fertilizer nutrient levels. The heat and higher water levels temporarily led to elevated pollutant readings. These levels subsequently returned to normal. Wind directions during the school incidents also had an impact on the children's illnesses. On follow-up questionnaires, FCWTP employees found that the school children's ailments had subsided.

The Arrowhead Elementary School situation appears to have been an isolated incident due to atmospheric changes.

Recommendations for Future Course of Action

Though we constantly monitor Frog Creek for safety, FCWTP HAZMAT employees would be happy to work with parents and teachers to provide additional health information. In a one-hour workshop, presented during the school day or at a Parent-Teacher Organization meeting, FCWTP could offer the following information:

- Scientific data about stream and creek pollutants
- The effects of rain, wind, and heat on creek chemicals
- Useful preventive medical emergency techniques

The letter's conclusion provides options for the readers and a positive tone appropriate for the intended audience.

This information would explain real-world applications for science classes and provide valuable health tips for parents and teachers. We have enclosed for your review information about our proposed training sessions.

Please let us know if you would like to benefit from this free-to-the-public workshop. We would be happy to schedule one at your convenience.

Mike Moore

Mike Moore
Frog Creek Wastewater Treatment Plant Director of Public Relations

Enclosure

In contrast to Figure 2, the high-tech investigative report, Figure 3 is written at a lay level for an external audience consisting of the elementary school administration, the teachers, and the parents of the school children affected by the incident in Frog Creek. The highly technical and scientific information is omitted, the material is condensed, and the writer includes sufficient details to alleviate the concerns of the audience. In addition, the writer emphasizes actions taken and assurances of how and why this incident will not recur.

FIGURE 3 Investigative Report for Lay Audience in Letter Format

Frog Creek Wastewater Treatment Plant
"Safety is Our Number 1 Concern."
9276 Waveland Blvd.
Bowstring City, UT 86554

September 22, 2014

Attention: Parents and Arrowhead Elementary School Teachers and Administrators

Subject: Report on September 8–12 Frog Creek Incident

Recently, your children at Arrowhead Elementary School experienced nausea, lightheadedness, and skin rashes. This was due to an unusual environmental situation at Frog Creek, a rare case of airborne pollutants caused by high winds and rain.

How Did This Happen?

Algae is a good thing. The crayfish, snails, and minnows that your children love seeing in Frog Creek thrive on algae and lichen (the small, green plants that are the food base for most marine life). However, when temperatures rise above 84 degrees, algae can grow to an unhealthy level.

The same thing applies to the acid level in water. When acid is regulated by alkalinity, algae growth is controlled. When acid levels rise, however, algae can bloom or marine creatures can die. Both of these problems lead to unusual odors.

That's what happened last week. Our studies showed that algae and alkalinity were higher than usual. The causes were increased heat, rain, and wind:

- <u>Heat</u>—On the days of the Arrowhead Elementary School incident, the temperature ranges were 92 to 95 degrees F, unusually high for early September.
- <u>Rain</u>—In addition, on September 8–10, Bowstring City received 2 inches of rain, swelling Frog Creek to 3 feet above its normal levels. The rain forced the creek bottom silt to rise, which led to increased pollutants.
- <u>Wind</u>—On September 8–9, a northeasterly wind blew from Frog Creek toward Arrowhead Elementary School's playground.

What Can We Do to Help?

Could heat, rain, and wind lead to similar situations in the future? Yes. But . . . the incidents from last week were very rare. Please do not expect a repeat occurrence any time soon. Tell your children to enjoy Frog Creek for its beauty and natural resources.

Because this letter report is sent to multiple audiences, no reader address is given. Instead, an attention line is used.

To communicate effectively with the public, the writer uses pronouns and a pleasant tone. Words like "unusual" and "rare" are used to lessen the parents' concerns.

For headings, the writer uses questions that an audience of concerned parents and teachers might have.

Because the audience is composed of lay readers, the writer uses simple sentence structure ("Algae is a good thing"; "The same applies to acid levels in water.") and avoids complex discussion of science, focusing on temperature, rain levels, and wind direction.

(Continued)

FIGURE 3 Investigative Report for Lay Audience in Letter Format (Continued)

The writer emphasizes the positive by using words such as "please," "enjoy Frog Creek for its beauty," and "We would be happy to meet with you."

The writer focuses on the audience's future concerns and suggests age-appropriate material to explain the incident to the elementary school children. This attempt at community outreach connects the wastewater treatment plant to concerned constituents.

page 2
September 22, 2014

We would be happy to meet with you and your children to explain the science of this environmental event. Plus, we'd like to provide techniques for managing simple ailments like nausea, skin rashes, and lightheadedness.

In a one-hour workshop, presented during the school day or at a Parent-Teacher Organization meeting, Frog Creek Wastewater Treatment Plant (FCWTP) could offer the following information:

- Scientific data about stream and creek pollutants—with hands-on tutorials for your students.
- The effects of rain, wind, and heat on creek chemicals—complete with graphics and an age-appropriate PowerPoint presentation.
- Useful preventive medical emergency techniques—which every parent and child should know.

This information would explain real-world applications for science classes, as well as provide valuable health tips for parents and teachers. We have enclosed for your review information about our proposed training sessions.

Please let us know if you would like to benefit from this free-to-the-public workshop. We would be happy to schedule one at your convenience. FCWTP wants to assure you that your child's "safety is our number 1 concern."

Mike Moore

Mike Moore
Frog Creek Wastewater Treatment Plant Director of Public Relations

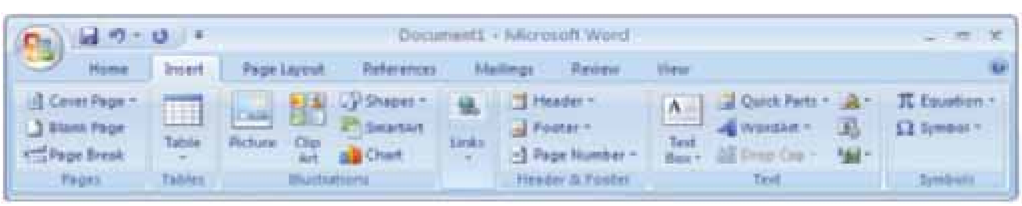
Enclosure

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

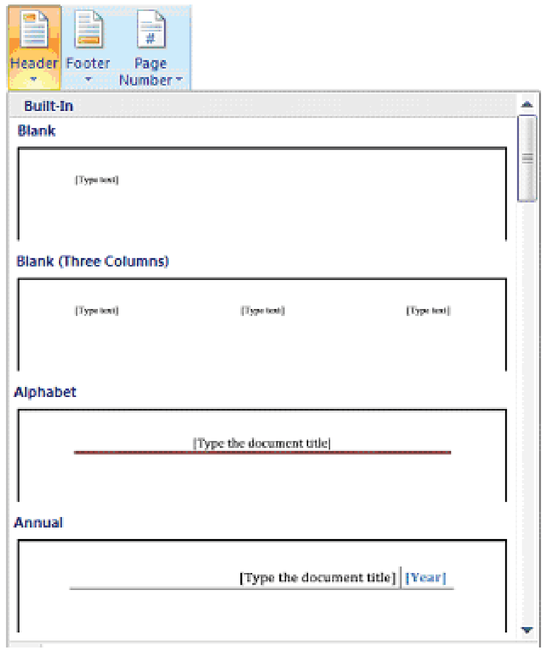
Creating Headers and Footers in Microsoft Word 2010

To create headers and footers (useful for new-page notations in reports), follow these steps:

1. Click the **Insert** tab on your toolbar. You will see the following ribbon.



2. Click either **Header** or **Footer**. When you click your choice of either **Header** or **Footer**, you will see a drop-down menu, such as shown below.



3. Choose the type of **Header** or **Footer** you want to use in your document and type your content (date, name, page number, etc.), as shown in the following example.

TECHNOLOGY TIPS *(Continued)*

Trip Reports

A *trip report* allows you to report on job-related travel. When you leave your work site and travel for job-related purposes, your supervisors not only require that you document your expenses and time while offsite, but they also want to be kept up to date on your work activities. For example, you might be engaged in work-related travel as follows:

- **Information technology**—You go to a conference to learn about the latest hardware and software technologies for the workplace. There, you meet with vendors, participate in hands-on technology workshops, and learn what other companies are doing to manage their technology needs. When you return, you write a trip report documenting your activities.
- **Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning**—One of your clients is building an office site. Your company has been hired to install their heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC) system. You travel to your client's home office to meet with other contractors (engineering and architectural) so all team members can agree on construction plans. At the conclusion of your job-related travel, you will write a trip report about your meeting.
- **Biomedical equipment sales**—Four days a week, every week, you are on the road making sales calls. Each month, you must document your job-related travel to show that you are making your quota and to receive recompense for travel expenditures.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about trip reports, check out the following links:

- This Disney Trip Report Archive lets you read reports for all trips taken during an indicated period, plus you can add your own trip report. http://www.mouseplanet.com/dtp/trip.rpt/
- Vanguard, an independent consulting company specializing in customer contact and convergence, provides their employees a sample trip report template. http://www.vanguard.net/documents/CCT%20Trip%20Report%206-02.doc

Criteria. Following is an overview of what you will include in an effective trip report.

1. Introduction (overview, background)
   Purpose. In the purpose section, document the date(s) and destination of your travel. Then comment on your objectives or rationale. What motivated the trip, what did you plan to achieve, and why were you involved in job-related travel? You might also want to include the following optional subheadings:
   Personnel. With whom did you travel?
   Authorization. Who recommended or suggested that you leave your work site for job-related travel?
2. Discussion (body, findings, agenda)
   Using subheadings, document your activities. This can include a review of your observations, contacts, seminars attended, or difficulties encountered.
3. Conclusion/recommendations
   Conclusion. What did you accomplish—what did you learn, whom did you meet, what sales did you make, what of benefit to yourself, colleagues, or your company occurred?
   Recommendations. What do you suggest next? Should the company continue on the present course (status quo), or should changes be made in personnel or in the approach to a particular situation? Would you suggest that other colleagues attend this conference in the future, or was the job-related travel not effective? In your opinion, what action should the company take?

Figure 4 presents an example of an informal trip report written in memo format. The memo format, providing identification lines (date, to, from, subject), is written to an internal audience and creates a hard-copy document.

FIGURE 4 Trip Report in Memo Format

Date: February 28, 2014
To: Debbie Rulo
From: Oscar Holloway
Subject: Trip Report—Unicon West Conference on Electronic Training

Introduction

Purpose of the Meeting: On Tuesday, February 25, 2014, I attended the Unicon West Conference on Electronic Training, held in Ruidoso, New Mexico. My goal was to acquire hands-on instruction and learn new techniques for electronic training, including the following:

- Online discussion groups
- E-based tutorials
- Intranet instruction
- Videoconference lecture formats

The introduction section answers the reporter's questions—who, what, when, where, and why.

Conference Participants: My co-workers Bill Cole and Gena Sebree also attended the conference.

Discussion

Different heading levels and highlighting techniques are used to make the information more accessible and to help the readers navigate text.

Presentations at the Conference:
Gena, Bill, and I attended the following sessions:

- ***Online Discussion Groups***
  This two-hour workshop was presented by Dr. Peter Tsui, a noted instructional expert from Texas State University, San Marcos, Texas. During Dr. Tsui's presentation, we reviewed how to develop online questions for discussion, post responses, interact with colleagues from distant locales, and add to streaming chats. Dr. Tsui worked individually with each seminar participant.

FIGURE4 (Continued)

Oscar Holloway
Page 2
February 28, 2014

- ***E-based Tutorials***
  This hour-long presentation was facilitated by Debbie Gorse, an employee of Xenadon E-Learning Inc. (Colorado Springs, Colorado). Ms. Gorse used videos and screen captures displayed on overhead projectors to give examples of successful E-based, computer-assisted instructional options.
- ***Intranet Instruction***
  Dr. Randy Towner and Dr. Karen Pecis led this hour-long presentation. Both are professors at the University of Nevada, Las Vegas. Their workshop focused on course development, online instructional methodologies, customizable company-based examples, and firewall-protected assessment. The professors provided workbooks and hands-on learning opportunities.
- ***Videoconferencing***
  Denise Pakula, Canyon E-Learning, Tempe, Arizona, spoke about her company's media tools for teleconferenced instruction. These included lapel microphones, multi-directional pan/tilt video cameras, plasma display touch screens, wideband conference phones, recessed lighting ports with dimming preferences, and multimedia terminals.

Conclusion

Presentation Benefits:

Every presentation we attended was beneficial. However, the following information will clarify which workshop(s) would benefit our company the most:

1. Dr. Tsui's program was the most useful and informative. His interactive presentation skills were outstanding and included hands-on activities, small-group discussions, and individual instruction. In addition, his online discussion techniques offer the greatest employee involvement at the most cost-effective pricing. We met with Dr. Tsui after the session, asking about his fees for onsite instruction. He would charge only $90 per person (other people we researched charged at least $150 per person). Dr. Tsui's fees should fit our training budget.
2. E-based tutorials will not be a valid option for us for two reasons. First, Xenadon's products are prepackaged and allow for no company-specific examples. Second, Ms. Gorse's training techniques are outdated. Videos and overhead projections will not create the interactivity our employees have requested in their annual training evaluations.
3. The Towner/Pecis workshop was excellent. Intranet instruction would be ideal for our needs. We will be able to customize the instruction, provide participants individualized feedback, and ensure confidentiality through firewall-protection. Furthermore, Drs. Towner and Pecis used informative workbooks and hands-on learning opportunities in their presentation.
4. Ms. Pakula's presentation on videoconferencing focused more on state-of-the-art equipment rather than on instruction. We believe that the price of the equipment both exceeds our budget and our needs. Our current videoconference equipment is satisfactory. If the purchasing department is looking for new vendors, they might want to contact Canyon.

Recommendations:

Gena, Bill, and I suggest that you invite Dr. Tsui to our site for further consultation. We also think you might want to contact Drs. Towner and Pecis for more information on their training.

A new-page notation helps readers avoid losing or misplacing pages.

The conclusion focuses on the primary findings to give the audience direction.

The recommendation suggests the next course of action.

Progress Reports

A *progress report* lets you document the status of an activity, explaining what work has been accomplished and what work remains. Supervisors want to know what progress you are making on a project, whether you are on schedule, what difficulties you might have encountered, and what your plans are for the next reporting period. Because of this, your audience might ask you to write progress (or activity or status) reports daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, or annually.

- **Hospitality management—**The city's convention center is considering new catering options. Your job has been to compare and contrast catering companies to see which one or ones would best be suited for the convention center's needs. The deadline is arriving for a decision. What is the status? Whom have you considered, what are their prices and food choices, what additional services do they offer, and so forth? You need to submit a progress report so management can determine what the next steps should be.
- **Project management—**Your company is renovating its home office. Many changes have occurred. The supervisor wants to know when the renovations will be concluded. You need to write a progress report to quantify what has occurred, what work is remaining, and when work will be finished.
- **Automotive technology—**Your company recently suffered negative publicity due to product failures. As manufacturing supervisor, you have initiated new procedures for automotive manufacturing to improve your product quality. How are these procedural changes going? Your company CEO needs an update. To provide this information, you must write a progress report.

Criteria. Following is an overview of what you will include in an effective progress report.

1. Introduction (overview, background)
   Objectives. These can include the following:
   - Why are you working on this project (what's the rationale)?
   - What problems motivated the project?
   - What do you hope to achieve?
   - Who initiated the activity?

   Personnel. With whom are you working on this project (i.e., work team, liaison, contacts)?
   Previous activity. If this is the second, third, or fourth report in a series, remind your readers what work has already been accomplished. Bring them up to date with background data or a reference to previous reports.

2. Discussion (findings, body, agenda)
   Work accomplished. Using subheadings, itemize your work accomplished either through a chronological list or a discussion organized by importance.
   Problems encountered. Inform your reader(s) of any difficulties encountered (late shipments, delays, poor weather, labor shortages) not only to justify possibly being behind schedule but also to show the readers where you'll need help to complete the project.
   Work remaining. Tell your reader what work you plan to accomplish next. List these activities, if possible, for easy access. A visual aid, such as a Gantt chart or a pie chart, fits well after these two sections. The chart will graphically depict both work accomplished and work remaining.

3. Conclusion/Recommendations
   Conclusion. Sum up what you've achieved during this reporting period and provide your target completion date.
   Recommendations. If problems were presented in the discussion, you can recommend changes in scheduling, personnel, budget, or materials that will help you meet your deadlines.

Figure 5 presents an example of a progress report.

FIGURE 5 Progress Report in Memo Format

To: Buddy Ramos
From: Pat Smith
Date: April 2, 2014
Subject: First Quarterly Report—Project 80 Construction

Purpose of Report

In response to your December 20, 2013, request, following is our first quarterly report on Project 80 Construction (Downtown Airport). Department 93 is in the start-up phase of our company's 2014 build plans for the downtown airport and surrounding site enhancements. These construction plans include the following:

1. *Airport construction*—terminals, runways, feeder roads, observation tower, parking lots, maintenance facilities.
2. *Site enhancements*—northwest and southeast collecting ponds, landscaping, berms, and signage.

The introduction explains *why* the report has been written and *what* topic will be discussed.

Work Accomplished

In this first quarter, we have completed the following:

1. *Subcontractors*: Toby Summers (project management) and Karen Kuykendahl (finance) worked with our primary subcontractors (Apex Engineering and Knoblauch and Sons Architects). Toby and Karen arranged site visitations and confirmed construction schedules. This work was completed January 13, 2014.
2. *Permits*: Once site visitations were held and work schedules agreed upon, Toby and Wilkes Berry (public relations) acquired building permits from the city. They accomplished this task on January 20, 2014.
3. *Core Samples*: Core sample screening has been completed by Department 86 with a pass/fail ratio of 76.4 percent pass to 23.6 percent fail. This meets our goal of 75 percent. Sample screening was completed January 30, 2014.
4. *Shipments*: Timely concrete, asphalt, and steel beam shipments this quarter have provided us a 30-day lead on scheduled parts provisions. Materials arrived February 7, 2014.
5. *EPA Approval*: Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) agents have approved our construction plans. We are within guidelines for emission controls, pollution, and habitat endangerment concerns. Sand cranes and pelicans nest near our building site. We have agreed to leave the north plat

The discussion provides quantified data and dates for clarity, such as "76.4 percent pass" and "January 20, 2014." The discussion also clarifies who worked on the project and lists other primary contacts.

(Continued)

FIGURE 5 Progress Report in Memo Format (Continued)

Pat Smith
Page 2
April 2, 2014

(40 acres) untouched as a wildlife sanctuary. This will cut into our parking plans. However, since the community will profit, we are pleased to make this concession. Our legal department also informs us that we will receive a tax break for creating this sanctuary. EPA approval occurred on February 14, 2014.

A problems-encountered section helps justify delays and explain why more time, personnel, or funding might be needed to complete a project.

Problems Encountered

Core samples are acceptable throughout most of our construction site. However, the area set aside for the northwest pond had a heavy rock concentration. We believed this would cause no problem. Unfortunately, when Anderson Brothers began dredging, they hit rock, which had to be removed with explosives.

Since this northwest pond is near the sand crane and pelican nesting sites, EPA told us to wait until the birds were resettled. The extensive rock removal and wait for wildlife resettlement have slowed our progress. We are behind schedule on this phase. This schedule delay and increased rock removal will affect our budget.

Work Remaining

To complete our project, we need to accomplish the following:

Numbered points with italicized sub-headings help readers access the information more readily. This is especially valuable when an audience needs to refer to documents at a later date.

1. *Advertising*: Our advertising department is working on brochures, radio and television spots, and highway signs. Advertising's goal is to make the construction of a downtown airport a community point of pride and civic celebration.
2. *Signage*: With new roads being constructed for entrance and exit, our transportation department is working on street signage to help the public navigate our new roads. In addition, transportation is working with advertising on signage designs for the downtown airport's two entrances. These signs will juxtapose the city's symbol (a flying pelican) with an airplane taking off. The goal is to create a logo that simultaneously promotes the preservation of wildlife and suggests progress and community growth.
3. *Landscaping*: We are working with Anderson Brothers Turf and Surf to landscape the airport, roads, and two ponds. Our architectural design team, led by Fredelle Schneider, is selecting and ordering plants, as well as directing a planting schedule. Anderson Brothers also is in charge of the berms and pond dredging. Fredelle will be our contact person for this project.
4. *Construction*: The entire airport must be built. Thus, construction comprises the largest remaining task.

The conclusion sums up the overall status of the project: "15 percent" complete.

The recommendation explains how the problems discussed in the Problems Encountered section can be solved and what is needed to complete the job: "additional personnel" and "increased funds." It also states who to contact for help, "Darlene Laughlin."

Project Completion/Recommendations

Though we have just begun this project, we have completed approximately 15 percent of the work. We anticipate a successful completion, especially since deliveries have been timely.

Only the delays at the northwest pond site present a problem. We are two weeks behind schedule and $3,575.00 over cost. With approximately 10 additional personnel to speed the rock removal and with an additional $2,500, we can meet our target dates. Darlene Laughlin, our city council liaison, is the person to see

FIGURE 5 (Continued)

Pat Smith
Page 3
April 2, 2014

about corporate investors, city funds, and big-ticket endowments. With your help and Darlene's cooperation, we should meet our schedules.

The Gantt chart in Figure 1 clarifies our status at this time.

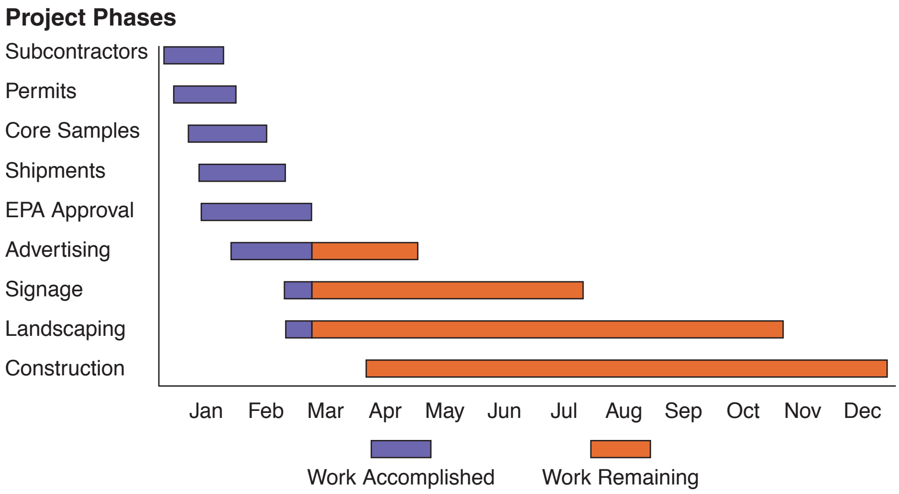


Figure 1 Project Status

A graphic not only adds interest to the report but also helps quantify information and clarify details visually.

Lab Reports (Test Reports)

A *lab* or *test report* lets you document the status of and findings from a laboratory experiment, procedure, or study. The knowledge acquired from a laboratory activity must be communicated to colleagues and supervisors so they can benefit from your discoveries. You write a lab report after you have performed the lab to share your findings.

- **Biomedical technology**—You have performed a pathology study on tissue, reviewed a radiological scan, or drawn blood. What have you found? To help nurses and doctors provide the best patient care, you must write a lab report documenting your findings.
- **Electronics**—Your company manufactures Global Positioning Systems (GPS) to correctly inform a user of an exact location. The GPS receiver must compare the time a signal is transmitted by a satellite with the time it is received. Your company's receptors are malfunctioning as are the units' electronic maps. Why? Your job is to study the electronic systems on randomly selected GPS units and write a lab report documenting your findings.
- **Information technology**—Customers are calling your company's toll-free hotline almost daily, complaining about hard drive error readings. This is bad for business and profitability. To solve these hard drive malfunctions, you must study units to find the problem. Then, you will write a lab report to document your discoveries.

You write a lab report after you've performed a laboratory test to share with your readers

- Why the test was performed
- How the test was performed

- What the test results were
- What follow-up action (if any) is required

Criteria. The following are components of a successful lab report.

1. Introduction (overview, background)
   Purpose. Why is this report being written? To answer this question, provide any or all of the following:
   - Rationale (What problem motivated this report?)
   - Objectives (What does this report hope to prove?)
   - Authorization (Under whose authority is this report being written?)
2. Discussion (body, methodology)
   How was the test performed? To answer this question, provide the following:
   - Apparatus (What equipment, approach, or theory have you used to perform the test?)
   - Procedure (What steps—chronologically organized—did you follow in performing the test?)
3. Conclusion/recommendations
   Conclusion. The conclusion of a lab report presents your findings. Now that you've performed the laboratory experiment, what have you learned or discovered or uncovered? How do you interpret your findings? What are the implications?
   Recommendations. What follow-up action (if any) should be taken?

You might want to use graphics to supplement your lab report, as shown in Figure 6.

FIGURE 6 Lab Report in Memo Format

Date: April 11, 2014
To: Dr. Lee Wang
From: Cassidy Poston
Subject: Lab Report on Anti-cancer Characteristics of Anthocynanins in SW480 Cancer Cells

Introduction

Biosystems Inc. is testing new drugs in different applications to prevent colon cancer. This lab report will evaluate colon cancer cell growth rate and cell cycle apoptosis in response to varying concentrations of anthocynanin. The study was authorized by Dr. LeeWang, laboratory supervisor at Biosystems, and conducted by me, Cassidy Poston, and Cynthia Ruiz, laboratory technicians at Raston Pharmaceuticals.

Discussion

Apparatus—To conduct the lab work, we used the following chemicals and equipment:

Chemicals	Equipments
• Anthocynanin • Peonidin 3-glucose • Cyanidin 3-glucose • SW480 colon cancer cells • Fetal bovine serum • Penicillin	• Spectroscope • Petri dishes • 96-well microtiter plate

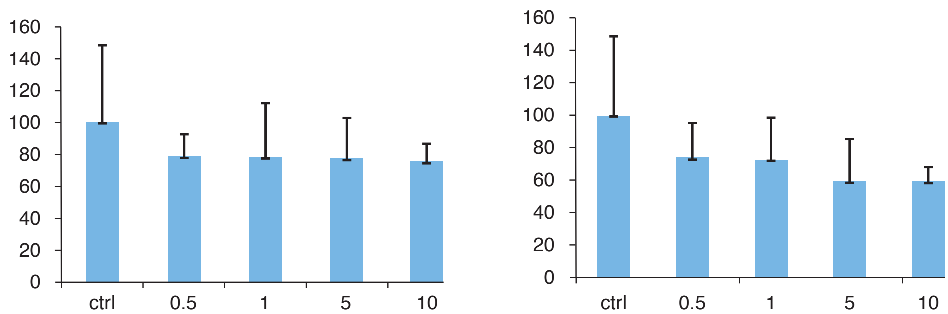
FIGURE 6 (Continued)

Cassidy Poston
Page 2
April 11, 2014

Procedure—To conduct the lab work, we followed this procedure:

1. *HPLC analysis*: Ms. Ruiz purified anthocynanin samples extracted from a sweet potato using HPLC (high-performance liquid chromatographic) analysis.
2. *Cells cultured*: SW480 colon cancer cells were cultured in a standard growth medium supplemented with 10 percent fetal bovine serum and 1 percent penicillin. The cells were then placed in 96-well microtiter plates for drug administration; approximately $2.0*10^4$ cell density per well.
3. *Anthocynanin application*: The standard anthocynanins along with the sweet potato extracts were applied to the cell cultures in varying concentrations: 0.5, 1.0, 5.0 and 10.0 microgram/ml.
4. *Results*: Cancer cell growth inhibition was measured using spectroscopy, absorbance at 490 nm with a 96-well plate reader. The analysis of anthocynanin standards were recorded graphically. We are awaiting results on the cells treated with sweet potato extract. (See graphs below.)

Colon Cancer Cell Growth vs. Anthocynanin Concentration



Standard: Peonidin 3-glucose

Standard: Cynanin 3-glucose

Conclusion

The application of the anthocynanin standards gave undesirable results. The cell growth inhibition was similar for all concentrations of drug treatment: 0.5 to 10 microgram/ml. Our team of lab techs suspects that more concentrated applications would have a greater inhibitory effect on colon cancer cell growth or at least varying growth recordings for each concentration. We believe this discrepancy may be due to differences in cell densities per well. We did not invert our cell suspension often or follow a randomized application. This delayed analysis of the cell cultures treated with sweet potato extract.

(Continued)

FIGURE 6 Lab Report in Memo Format (Continued)

Cassidy Poston
Page 3
April 11, 2014

Recommendation

With the permission of Dr. Wang, we suggest a follow-up procedure:

1. *Reapplication of cells*: This would include re-culturing and inoculating SW480 cells on the 96-well plates. To do so, we suggest applying similar amounts of cell density to each well by inverting the cell suspension and applying the cells in a zig-zag pattern down the plate.
2. *Reapplication of anthocynanin*: Both the standard and sweet potato extracts should be reapplied to the new plates in the same concentrations discussed above.
3. *Purchase of new equipment*: In addition, we suggest the purchase of a digital pipette. This would allow for precise and quick application of cell suspension, medium and anthocynanin to the 96-well plates.
4. *Analysis*: The cell growth could then be measured using spectrometry with the same conditions of prior trials.
5. *Cytoflowmetry*: Once all values have been recorded for cell growth, the samples should be sent to Biosystems's laboratory to be assessed using cytoflowmetry. This will detect the specific stage of cell apoptosis.

Summarize the report's findings in the conclusion and recommend the next steps to be followed.

Although our results have not been optimal, treated colon cancer cells did have inhibited growth compared to control values (which had no anthocynanin applied). This is an encouraging lab result.

Feasibility/Recommendation Reports

A *feasibility/recommendation report* accomplishes two goals. First, it studies the practicality of a proposed plan. Then, it recommends action. Occasionally, your company plans a project but is uncertain whether the project is feasible. Will the plan work, does the company have the correct technology, will the idea solve the problem, or is there enough money? One way a company determines the viability of a project is to perform a feasibility study, to document the findings, and then to recommend the next course of action.

- **Manufacturing—**Your company is considering the purchase of new equipment but is concerned that the machinery will be too expensive, the wrong size for your facilities, or incapable of performing the desired tasks. You need to research and analyze the options, determining which equipment best suits your company's needs. Then, you will recommend purchase.
- **Accounting—**Your company wants to expand and is considering new locations. The decision-makers, however, are uncertain whether the market is right for expansion. Are interest rates good? Are local property taxes and sales taxes too high? Will the city provide tax rebate incentives for your company's growth? You need to study the feasibility of expansion and report your recommendations.
- **Web design—**Your company wants to create a Web site to market your products and services globally. The CEO wants to be sure that online checkout is easy, pricing is cost effective, products are depicted in a visually appealing way, the site is secure, and the site loads quickly. How will you make your Web site stand out

from the competition? You must write a feasibility report to present the options as well as to offer your recommendations.

Criteria. One way a company determines the viability of a project is to perform a feasibility study and then write a feasibility report documenting the findings. The following are components of an effective feasibility report.

1. Introduction (overview, background)
   Objectives. Under this subheading, answer any of the following questions:
   - **What is the purpose of this feasibility report?** One of your responsibilities is to provide background data. To answer the question regarding the report's purpose, provide a clear and concise statement of intent.
   - **What problems motivated this study?** To clarify for your readers the purposes behind the study, explain what problems cause doubt about the feasibility of the project (i.e., is there a market, is there a piece of equipment available that would meet the company's needs, or is land available for expansion?). You can also explain what problems led to the proposed project (i.e., current equipment is too costly or time consuming, current facilities are too limited for expansion, current net income is limited by an insufficient market).
   - Who initiated the feasibility study? List the name(s) of the manager(s) or supervisor(s) who requested this report.

   Personnel. Document the names of your project team members, your liaison between your company and other companies involved, and your contacts at these other companies.
2. Discussion (body, findings)
   Under this subheading, provide accessible and objective documentation.
   Criteria. State the criteria upon which your recommendation will be based. Criteria are established so you have a logical foundation for comparison of personnel, products, vendors, costs, options, schedules, and so on.
   Analysis. In this section, compare your findings against the criteria. You might want to use a visual, such as a table, to organize the criteria and to provide easy access.
3. Conclusion/recommendations
   Conclusion. In this section, state the significance of your findings. Draw a conclusion from what you have found in your study. For example, state that "Tim is the best candidate for director of personnel" or "Site 3 is the superior choice for our new location."
   Recommendations. Once you have drawn your conclusions, the next step is to recommend a course of action. What do you suggest that your company do next? Which piece of equipment should be purchased, where should the company locate its expansion, or is there a sufficient market for the product?

Figure 7 presents an example of a feasibility/recommendation report.

FIGURE 7 Feasibility/Recommendation Report

From: Cindy Katz, Director of Information Technology
To: Shamir Rammalah, Accounts Payable
Date: August 12, 2014
Subject: Feasibility Study for Technology Purchases

The purpose reminds the reader why this report has been written and what the report's goal is.

Purpose of the Report

The purpose of this report is to study which technology will best meet your communication needs and budget. After analyzing the feasibility of various technologies, we will recommend the most cost-effective technology options.

The problem details what issues have led to this report.

Technology Problems

According to your memo dated August 1, 2014, your department needs new communication technologies for the following reasons:

- Your department has hired three new employees, increasing your headcount to ten.
- Currently, your department has only five laptops.
- WIFI Nation has purchased new software that requires updated training.
- Accounts Payable's current printer is also insufficient due to your increased headcount.

The vendor section provides contact information (names and e-mail addresses).

Vendor Contacts

Our vendor contacts for the laptops, printers, and software are as follows:

Electek	Tech on the Go	Mobile Communications
Steve Ross	Jay Rochlin	Karen Allen
stever1@electek.com	jrochlin@tog.com	karen.allen@mobcom.net

The criteria states the topics used to research the report and includes precise details. In this way, the audience can understand the rationale for later decisions.

Criteria for Vendors

The following criteria were considered to determine which communication technology would best meet your department's needs:

1. *Trainers*—Because of the unique aspects of the software, we need trainers who are familiar with password creation, privacy laws, malware, spyware, and corporate e-mail policy.
2. *Maintenance*—We need to purchase equipment and software complete with either quarterly or biannual service agreements (at no extra charge).
3. *Service Personnel*—The service technicians should be certified to repair and maintain whatever hardware we purchase. In addition, the vendors must also be able to train our personnel in hardware usage.
4. *Warranties*—The warranties should be for at least one year with options for renewal.
5. *Cost*—The total budgeted for your department is $15,000.

FIGURE 7 (Continued)

Cindy Katz
Page 2
August 12, 2014

Needs Assessment

Purchasing agrees that the Accounts Payable hardware and software needs exceed their current technology. Not only are the department's laptops and printer insufficient in number, but also they do not allow the personnel to access corporate e-mail, the Internet, or word processing packages. Updated equipment is necessary.

Vendor Evaluation

- **Electek**—Having been in business for ten years, this company is staffed by highly trained technicians and sales staff. All Electek employees are certified for software training. The company promises a biannual maintenance package and subcontracted personnel if employees cannot repair hardware problems. They offer manufacturers' guarantees with extended service warranties costing only $100 a year for up to five years. Electek offers 20 percent customer incentives for purchases of over $2,000.
- **Tech on the Go (TOG)** —This company has been in business for two years. TOG provides only subcontracted service technicians for hardware repair. TOG's employees are certified in software training. The owners do not offer extended warranty options beyond manufacturers' guarantees. No special customer pricing incentives are offered though TOG sells retail at a wholesale price.
- **Mobile Communications**—Having been in business for five years, Mobile has certified technicians and sales representatives. All repairs are provided in house. The company offers quarterly maintenance at a fee of $50 ($200 per year). Mobile offers a customer incentive of 10 percent discounts on purchases over $5000.

The organizational mode comparison/contrast is used to analyze the strengths and weaknesses of each vendor.

The discussion provides specific details to prove the feasibility of the plan or project.

Cost Analysis

- **Laptops**—Accounts Payable requests one laptop per departmental employee. Our analysis has determined that the most affordable laptops we can purchase (with the requested software and wireless Internet connections) would cost $1,500 per unit. Thus, 10 laptops would cost $15,000. Even with discounts, this exceeds your department's budget.
- **Printers**—Accounts Payable requests three additional printers, with the capability to print double-side pages, staple, collate, print in color, and print three different sizes of envelopes and three different sizes of paper. Our analysis has found that the most affordable printers meeting your specifications would cost $2,500 each. Again, when combining this cost with that of laptops, you exceed your budget.
- **Training**—The manufacturer can provide training on our new software. Training can be offered Monday through Friday, starting in September. The manufacturer says that effective training must entail at least 20 hours of hands-on practice. The cost for this would be $5,000.

(Continued)

FIGURE 7 Feasibility/Recommendation Report (Continued)

Graphics depict the findings more clearly and more concisely than a paragraph of text.

Cindy Katz
Page 3
August 12, 2014

The following table compares the three vendors we researched on a scale of 1 to 3, 3 representing the highest score.

Table 1: Criteria Comparison			
Criteria	**Electek**	**TOG**	**Mobile**
Maintenance	3	2	3
Personnel	3	3	3
Warranties	3	2	2
Cost	3	2	2
Total	**12**	**9**	**10**

The conclusion sums up the findings, explaining the feasibility of a course of action—why a plan should or should not be pursued.

Summary of Findings

We cannot purchase the number of laptops and printers you have requested. Doing so exceeds the budget. Training is essential. Your department must adjust its budget accordingly to accommodate this need. All three vendors have the technology you require. However, TOG and Mobile do not meet the criteria. In particular, these companies do not provide either the maintenance packages, warranties, or pricing required.

The recommendation explains what should happen next and provides the rationale for this decision.

Recommended Action

Given the combination of cost, maintenance packages, warranties, and service personnel, Electek is our best choice. We suggest the following options for printers and laptops: purchasing five laptops instead of ten; purchasing one additional printer instead of three; and/or sharing printers with nearby departments.

SHORT, INFORMAL REPORT CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Have you chosen the correct communication channel (e-mail, letter, or memo) for your short, informal report?

_____ **2.** Does your subject line contain a topic and a focus?

_____ **3.** Does the introduction explain the purpose of the report, document the personnel involved, or state when and where the activities occurred?

_____ **4.** When you write the discussion section of the report, do you quantify what occurred by supplying accurate dates, times, calculations, and problems encountered?

_____ **5.** Is the discussion accessible? To create reader-friendly ease of access, use highlighting techniques, such as headings, boldface, underlining, itemization, and graphics.

_____ **6.** Have you selected an appropriate method of organization in your discussion, such as chronology, importance, comparison/contrast, or problem/solution?

_____ **7.** Does your conclusion present a value judgment regarding the findings presented in the discussion?

_____ **8.** In your recommendation section, do you tell your reader what to do next or what you consider to be the appropriate course of action?

_____ **9.** Have you effectively recognized your audience's level of understanding (high tech, low tech, lay, management, subordinate, colleague), multiple, internal, or external and written accordingly?

_____ **10.** Is your report accurate? Correct grammar and calculations make a difference.

The Writing Process at Work

The best way to accomplish any technical communication challenge is by following a process: Prewrite to gather data and determine objectives, write a rough draft of your document, and rewrite to revise. Look at how one writer, with the assistance of a peer evaluation group, used the writing process to construct her progress report.

Prewriting

The writer used a simple topic outline to gather data and determine her objectives (Figure 8).

FIGURE 8 Topic Outline for Prewriting

Sales Proposal to Round Rock Hospital

I. Introduction
- A. When—Oct. 10
- B. What—Sales Proposal to hospital
- C. Why—in response to your memo

II. Discussion
- A. What points to cover?
  - 1. Containers
  - 2. Sterilization
  - 3. Documentation
  - 4. Cost
  - 5. Disposal
- B. What's next?
  - 1. Future work requirements

III. Conclusion/Recommendations
- A. Conclusion—When? On schedule, 50 percent completed
- B. Recommendations—Comply with regulations

Writing

The writer drafted her progress report, focusing on the information she discovered in prewriting. After drafting this report, the writer submitted her copy to a peer review group, which helped her edit and revise her text (Figure 9).

FIGURE 9 Rough Draft with Peer Group Revision Suggestions

November 6, 2014
To: Carolyn Jensen
From: Shuan Wang
Subject: Progress Report.

Omit the period and clarify the topic of this report.

Purpose: This is a progress report on the status of a sales proposal you requested in your memo of October 10, 2014. The objective of this proposal is the sale of a total program for infectious waste control and disposal to a Round Rock Hospital. The proposal will cover the following five things.

1. Containers
2. Steam sterilization
3. Cost savings
4. Landfill operating
5. Computerized documentation

The second sentence above is long. Remember to limit sentences to 10 to 15 words.

"Things" = weak word!

Boldface the headings for emphasis.

Work Completed: The following is a list of items that are finished on the project.

Containers
I have finished a description of the specially designed containers with disposable biohazard bag.

Steam sterilization
I have set a instructions for using the Biological Detector, model BD 12130 as a reliable indicator of sterilization of infectious wastes.

Correct the typo = "a set of instructions"

Why do you mention "Central Hospital"?

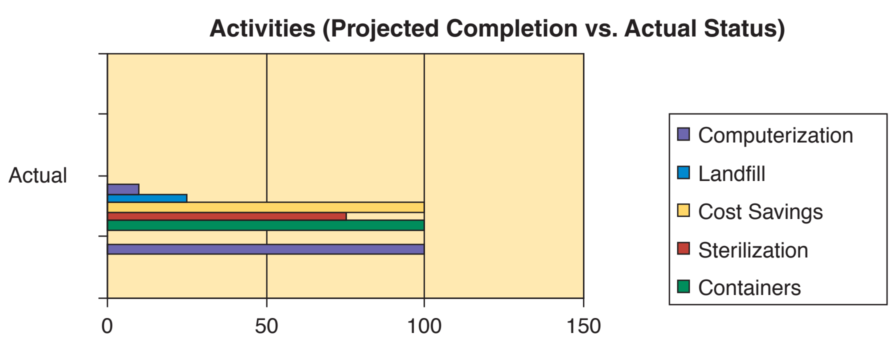
Cost savings
Central Hospital sent me some information on installing a pathological incinerator as well as the constant personal and maintenance costs to operate them. I ran this information through our computer program "Save-Save". The results show that a substantial savings will be realized by the use of our services. I have data to support this, since more and more of our customer base is online with the system proving that expenses to other companies have been reduced.

"Personal" should be "personnel."

Future Work: I have an appointment to visit Round Rock Hospital on November 7, 2014. At that time I will make on-site evaluations of present waste handling practices at Round Rock Hospital. After carefully studing this evaluation, I will report to you on needed changes to comply with governmental guidelines.

Correct the spelling error

Conclusion: The project is proceeding on schedule. Approximately 50% of work is done (see graph). I don't see any problem at this time and should be able to meet the target date. I will update you on our continuing progress in the near future.



Why is there an empty cell in the graphic?

Rewriting

After discussing the suggested changes with her peer review group, the writer revised her draft and submitted her finished copy to her supervisor (Figure 10).

FIGURE 10 Finished Progress Report in Memo Format

Date: November 6, 2014
To: Carolyn Jensen
From: Shuan Wang
Subject: Progress Report on Round Rock Hospital

Purpose of Report

In response to your October 10, 2014, request, following is a progress report on our Round Rock Hospital sales proposal. This proposal will present Round Rock Hospital our total program for infectious waste control and disposal. The proposal will cover the following five topics:

- Containers
- Steam sterilization
- Cost savings
- On-site evaluations
- Landfill disposal

Work Completed

1. *Containers*—On October 6, I finished a description of the specially designed containers with biohazard bags. These were approved by Margaret Chase, Round Rock's Quality Control Administrator.
2. *Steam sterilization*—On November 4, I wrote instructions for using our Biological Detector, model BD 12130. This mechanism measures infectious waste sterilization levels.
3. *Cost savings*—Round Rock Hospital's accounting manager, Lenny Goodman, sent me their cost charts for pathological incinerator expenses and maintenance costs. I used our computer program "Save-Save" to evaluate these figures. The results show that we can save the hospital $15,000 per year on annual incinerator costs, after a two year break-even period. I have data to support this from other customers.

Work Remaining

1. *On-site evaluation*—When I visit Round Rock Hospital on November 7, I will evaluate their present waste handling practices. After studying these evaluations, I will report necessary changes for governmental compliance.
2. *Landfill disposal*—I will contact the Environmental Protection Agency on November 13, 2014, to receive authorization for disposing sterilized waste at our sanitary landfill.

(Continued)

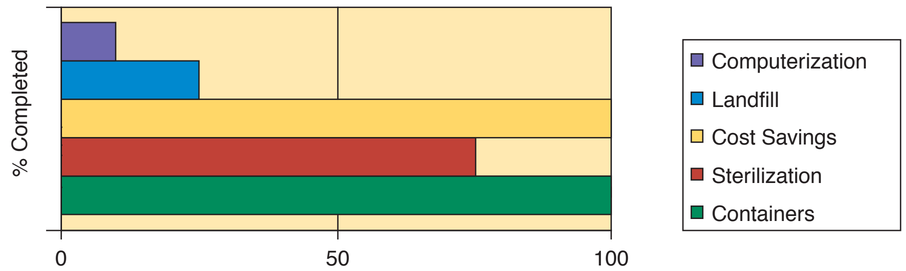
FIGURE 10 Finished Progress Report in Memo Format (Continued)

Carolyn Jensen
Page 2
November 6, 2014

Completion of Project

The project is proceeding on schedule. Approximately 50 percent of work is done (see Figure 1).

Figure 1: Completion Status of Planned Activities



I see no problems at this time. We should meet our December 31, 2014, target date. I will update you on our continuing progress in two weeks.

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Reports are used to document many different occurrences on the job and written to both internal and external audiences.
2. Use headings and talking headings when designing your report.
3. E-mail, letters, and memos are effective communication channels for short, informal reports.
4. Progress reports recount work accomplished and work remaining on a project.
5. Lab reports document the findings from a lab analysis.
6. Feasibility/recommendation reports are used to determine the viability of a proposed project.
7. Graphics help your audience understand and access content.
8. An incident report documents an unexpected problem that has occurred.
9. An investigative report asks you to examine the causes behind an incident.
10. Trip reports allow you to report on job-related travel.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

In small groups, read the following case studies and write the appropriate report.

1. You manage an engineering department at Acme Aerospace. Your current department supervisor is retiring. Thus, you must recommend the promotion of a new supervisor to the company's executive officer, Kelly Adams. You know that Acme seeks to promote individuals who have the following traits:

   - Familiarity with modern management techniques and concerns, such as teamwork, global economics, crisis management, and the management of hazardous materials.
   - An ability to work well with colleagues (subordinates, lateral peers, and management).
   - Thorough knowledge of an area of expertise.

   You have the following candidates for promotion. Using the information provided about each and the criteria for feasibility/recommendation reports discussed in this chapter, write your report recommending your choice for a new supervisor.

   a. **Pat Jefferson.** Pat has worked for Acme for 12 years. In fact, Pat has worked up to a position as a lead engineer by having started as an assembler, then working in test equipment, quality control, and environmental safety and health (ESH). As an engineer in ESH, Pat was primarily in charge of hazardous waste disposal. Pat's experience is lengthy, although Pat has only taken two years of college coursework and one class in management techniques. Pat is well liked by all colleagues and is considered to be a team player.

   b. **Kim Kennedy.** Kim is a relatively new employee at Acme, having worked for the company for two years. Kim was hired directly out of college after earning an MBA from the Mountaintop College School of Management. As such, Kim is extremely familiar with today's management climate and modern management techniques. Kim's undergraduate degree was a BS in business with a minor in engineering. Currently, Kim works in the engineering department as a departmental liaison, communicating the engineering department's concerns to Acme's other departments. Kim has developed a reputation as an excellent coworker who is well liked by all levels of employees.

   c. **Chris Clinton.** Chris has a BS in engineering from Poloma College and an MBA from Weatherford University. Prior to working for Acme, Chris served on the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineering) Commission for Management Innovation, specializing in global concerns and crisis management. In 2000, Chris was hired by Acme and since then has worked in various capacities. Chris is now lead engineer in the engineering department. Chris has earned high scores on every yearly evaluation, especially regarding knowledge of engineering. Whenever you have needed assistance with new management techniques, Chris has been a valued resource. Chris's only negative points on evaluations have resulted from difficulties with colleagues, some of whom regard Chris as haughty.

Assignment

Whom will you recommend for supervisor? Write your feasibility/recommendation report stating your decision.

2. Your company, Telecommunications R Us (TRU), has experienced a 45 percent increase in business, a 37 percent increase in warehoused stock, and a 23 percent increase in employees.

You need more room. Your executive officer, Polina Gertsberg, has asked you to research existing options. To do so, you know you must consider these criteria:

- **Ample space for further expansion.** Gertsberg suggests that TRU could experience further growth upward of 150 percent. You need to consider room for parking, warehouse space, additional offices, and a cafeteria—approximately 20,000 square feet total.
- **Cost.** Twenty million dollars should be the top figure, with a preferred payback of five years at 10 percent.
- **Location.** Most of your employees and customers live within 15 miles of your current location. This has worked well for deliveries and employee satisfaction. A new location within this 15-mile radius is preferred.
- **Aesthetics.** Ergonomics suggest that a beautiful site improves employee morale and increases productivity.

After research, you've found three possible sites. Based on the following information and on the criteria for feasibility/recommendation reports discussed in this chapter, write your report recommending a new office site.

a. **Site 1 (11717 Grandview).** This four-story site, located 12 miles from your current site, offers three floors of finished space equaling 18,000 square feet. The fourth floor is an unfinished shell equaling an additional 3,000 square feet. As is, the building will sell for $19 million. If the current owner finishes the fourth floor, the addition would cost $4 million more. For the building as is, the owner asks for payment in five years at 12 percent interest. If the fourth floor is finished by the owner, payment is requested in seven years at 10 percent. The building has ample parking space but no cafeteria, although a building next door has available food services. Site 1 is nestled in a beautifully wooded area with hiking trails and picnic facilities.

b. **Site 2 (808 W. Blue Valley).** This one-story building offers 21,000 square feet that includes 100 existing offices, a warehouse capable of holding 80 storage bins that measure 20 feet tall × 60 yards long × 8 feet wide, and a full-service cafeteria. Because the complex is one story, it takes up 90 percent of the lot, leaving only 10 percent for parking. Additional parking is located across an eight-lane highway that can be crossed via a footbridge. The building, located 18 miles from your current site, has an asking price of $22 million at 3.75 percent interest for five years. Site 2 has a cornfield to its east, the highway to its west, a small lake to its north where flocks of geese nest, and a strip mall to its south.

c. **Site 3 (1202 Red Bridge Avenue).** This site is 27 miles from your current location. It has three stories offering 23,000 square feet, a large warehouse with four-bay loading dock, and a cafeteria with ample seating and vending machines for food and drink. Because this site is located near a heavily industrialized area, the asking price is $15 million at 3.5 percent interest for five years.

Assignment

Which site do you recommend? Write your feasibility/recommendation report stating your choice.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Write a progress report. The subject of this report can involve a project or activity at work. If you haven't been involved in job-related projects, write about the progress you're making in this class or another course you're taking. Write about the progress you're making on a home improvement project (refinishing a basement, constructing a deck, painting and papering a room). Write about the progress you're making on a hobby (rebuilding an antique car,

constructing a computer, or making model trains). Follow the criteria presented in this chapter regarding progress reports.

2. Write a lab report. The subject of this report can involve a test you're running at work or in one of your classes. Use the criteria regarding lab reports presented in this chapter to help you write the report.
3. Write a feasibility/recommendation report. You can draw your topic either from your work environment or home. For example, if you and your colleagues were considering the purchase of new equipment, the implementation of a new procedure, expansion to a new location, or the marketing of a new product, you could study this idea and then write a report on your findings. If nothing at work lends itself to this topic, then consider plans at home. For example, are you and your family planning a vacation, the purchase of a new home or car, the renovation of your basement, or a new business venture? If so, study this situation. Research car and home options, study the market for a new business, and get bids for the renovation. Then write a feasibility/recommendation report to your family documenting your findings. Follow the criteria for feasibility/recommendation reports provided in this chapter to help you write the report.
4. Write an incident report. You can select a topic either from work or home. If you have encountered a problem at work, write an incident report documenting the problem and providing your solutions to the incident. If nothing has happened at work lending itself to this topic, then look at home. Has your car broken down, did the water heater break, or did you or any members of your family have an accident of any sort? Consider such possibilities, and then write an incident report documenting the incident. Follow the criteria for incident reports provided in this chapter.
5. Revision is the key to good writing. An example of a flawed progress report that needs revising is shown in the example below. To improve this report, form small groups, decide what's missing according to this chapter's criteria for good progress reports, and then revise the report.

Site Visit—Alamo Manufacturing
November 1

Sam, I visited our Alamo site and checked on the following:

1. Our plant facilities suffered some severe problems due to the recent wind and hail storms. The west roof lost dozens of shingles, leading to water damage in the manufacturing room below. The HVAC unit was submerged by several feet of water, shorting out systems elsewhere in the plant. In addition, our north entryway awning was torn off its foundation due to heavy winds. This not only caused broken glass in our front entrance door and a few windows bordering the entrance, but also the entryway driveway now is blocked for customer access.

2. Maintenance and security failed to handle the problems effectively. Security did not contact local police to secure the facilities. Maintenance responded to the problems far too many hours late. This led to additional water and wind damage.

3. Luckily, the storm hit early in the day, before many of our employees had arrived at work. Still, a few cars were in the parking lot, and they suffered hail damage. Are we responsible?

4. The storm, though hurting manufacturing, will not affect sales. Our 800-lines and e-mail system were unaffected. But, we might have problems with delivery if we can't fix the entryway impediment. I think I have some solutions. We could reroute delivery to one of our new plants, or maybe we should consider direct delivery to our sales staff (short term at least). Any thoughts?

5. Meanwhile, I have gotten on Maintenance's case, and it is working on repairs. Brownfield HVAC service has given us a quote on a new sump pump system that has failsafe programs (not too bad an extra cost, given what we can save in the long run). Plainview Windows & Doors is already on the front entrance problem. It promises replacement soon.

6. As for future plans, I think we need to reevaluate both Maintenance and Security. Training is an option. We could also add new personnel, reconsider our current management in those departments, or maybe just a few, good, hard, strongly stated comments from you would do the trick.

Anyway, we're up and running again. Upfront repair costs are covered by insurance, and long-term costs are minimal because sales weren't hurt. Our only remaining challenges are preventive, and that depends on what we do with our Maintenance and Security staff. Let me know what you think.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. Angel Guerrero, computer information technologist at HeartHome Insurance, has traveled from his home office to a branch location out of town. While on his job-related travel, he encountered a problem with his company's remanufactured laptop computer. He realized that the problem had been ongoing not only for this laptop but also for six other remanufactured laptops that the company had recently purchased.

   Angel thinks he knows why the laptops are malfunctioning and plans to research the issue. When he returns to his home office from his business trip, he needs to write a report. What type of report should he write? Explain your answer, based on the information provided in this chapter.
2. Sally Jones is a special events planner in the marketing department at Thrill-a-Minute Entertainment Theme Park. Sally and her project team are in the middle of a long-term project. For the last eight months, they have been planning the grand opening of the theme park's newest sensation ride—The Horror—a wooden roller coaster that boasts a 10 g (gravity) drop.

   During one of its weekly project meetings, the team has hit a roadblock. The rap group Bite R/B Bit originally slated to play at the midnight unveiling has cancelled at the last minute. The team needs to get a replacement band. One of Sally's teammates has researched the problem and presented six alternative bands (at varying prices and levels of talent) for consideration. Sally needs to write a report to her supervisor. What type of report should she write? Explain your decision, based on the criteria for reports provided in this chapter.
3. Toby Hebert is human resource manager at Crab Bayou Industries (Crab Bayou, Louisiana), the world's largest wholesaler of frozen Cajun food. She and her staff have traveled to New Orleans to attend meetings held by five insurance companies that planned to explain and promote their employee benefits packages. During the trip, Toby's company van is sideswiped by an uninsured driver. When Toby returns to Crab Bayou, she has to write a report. What type of report should she write? Base your decision on the criteria for reports provided in this chapter.

4. Bill Baker, claims adjuster for CasualtyU Insurance Company (CUIC), traveled for a site visit. Six houses insured by his company were in a neighborhood struck by a hailstorm and 70-mile-per-hour winds. The houses suffered roof and siding damages. Trees were uprooted, with one falling on a neighbor's car. Though no injuries were sustained, over $50,000 worth of property damage occurred. When he returns to CUIC, what type of report should he submit to his boss? Defend your decision based on criteria for reports provided in this chapter.

WEB WORKSHOP

More and more, companies and organizations are putting report forms online. The reason for doing this is simple—ease of use. Go online and access online report forms. Use any Internet search engine, and type in "online__________report form." (In the space provided, type in "trip," "progress," "incident," "investigative," or "feasibility/recommendation.") Once you find examples, evaluate how online reports differ from hard-copy reports. Share your findings with others in your class, either through oral presentations or written reports.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Picture-Factory / Fotolia
© Steven and Sharon Gerson
© Dmitriy Shironosov / Shutterstock

This page intentionally left blank

Long, Formal Reports

From Chapter 17 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

Long, Formal Reports

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In the following scenario, an information technology consulting company needs to write a long, formal report recommending a backup data storage facility for a client.

Alpha/Beta Consulting (A/B/C) is going to work with Nitrous Solutions to help them choose an offsite backup data storage facility that will be safe, secure, dependable, prompt, and able to grow as the company grows. Nitrous Solutions, a multidiscipline architectural design company, is a relatively new but successful business with no offsite backup data storage location.

Nitrous knows that offsite data backup is important for many reasons. First, after the September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on the United States, many companies realized that their data, if only housed on site, could be endangered. What companies need is a defense-in-depth strategy to ensure data security. Offsite data storage provides companies remote backup for worst-case scenarios, such as terrorism. With

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Understand that long, formal reports require time, resources of people and money, have far-reaching effects, and often deal with topics that consider serious and complex issues
- Know that long reports can provide information, be analytical, and/or recommend a course of action
- Understand how to write the components of long, formal reports including front matter (title page, cover letter, table of contents, list of illustrations, and abstract); text (introduction, discussion, conclusion/recommendation); and back matter (glossary, works cited, and optional appendix)
- Help your readers navigate the report by creating a clear hierarchy of headings
- Write your long report, considering your audience and enhancing your discussion with figures and tables for clarity, conciseness, and cosmetic appeal
- Use primary research performed and generated by you to develop content for the long report
- Create surveys or questionnaires, primary sources of research, to generate content and factual information for the long report
- Conduct secondary research with already printed and published information for content
- Evaluate your long report with the long report checklist

offsite data storage, even if a company's primary facility is damaged, data stored in another location is preserved.

In addition, weather problems, highlighted by the New Orleans Hurricane Katrina catastrophe, proved to companies that multiple levels of data redundancy were needed to secure their files. High waters and rain damage caused many Gulf Coast businesses to lose valuable data. Offsite storage, in contrast, would provide a higher level of security.

Data loss isn't just due to terrorism or natural disasters. Nitrous also realizes that their files are endangered from simple causes like software and hardware failure. When disasters occur, a company can lose days, weeks, or months of past work. Recovering these files takes time, negatively impacts the company's credibility with clients, and can lead to financial losses.

Nitrous needs to factor in one more consideration when choosing an offsite storage option. The company does not want to trust couriers to transport files from their home site to a separate location. Nitrous doesn't want an employee to put data tapes in a car and drive hundreds or thousands of miles. This kind of transport could lead to additional problems—time, car wrecks, theft, etc. Instead, Nitrous wants a secure means of electronic file transfer that will be quick, safe, and efficient.

Management has hired A/B/C to help them determine their data storage needs. A/B/C has met with management and key employees at Nitrous to study their unique needs. Now, A/B/C will write a long, formal report to inform, analyze, and recommend. The report will provide factual information about backup solutions for archiving architectural materials and critical communications for Nitrous.

The long, formal report will then analyze options, focusing on pros and cons of various solutions. In this analysis, A/B/C will draw conclusions about pricing, support, scalability, reliability, ease of use, and archiving choices.

Based on their findings and analysis of the options, A/B/C will draw a conclusion. Then, the consulting company will recommend the best options to help Nitrous fulfill their company's mission statement.

Why Write a Long, Formal Report?

In some instances, your subject matter might be so complex that a short report will not thoroughly cover the topic. For example, your company asks you to write a report about the possibility of an impending merger. This merger will require significant commitments regarding employees, schedules, equipment, training, facilities, and finances. Only a long report, complete with research, will convey your content sufficiently and successfully. Long reports are not simply extensions of short reports. Long, researched reports require time, resources of people and money, and have far-reaching effects.

The following are titles of long, formal, research reports:

- The Effect of Light Rail on Wyandotte County: An Economic Impact Study on Infrastructure
- The Increasing Importance of Mobile Communications: Security, Procurement, Deployment, and Support
- Managing Change in a Technologically Advancing Marketplace at EBA Corp.
- Information Stewardship at The Colony, Inc.: Legal Requirements for Protecting Information
- Remote Access Implementation and Management for New Hampshire State University

Types of Long, Formal Reports: Informative, Analytical, and Recommendation

Reports can provide information, be analytical, and/or recommend a course of action. Occasionally, you might write a report that only informs. You might write a report that just analyzes a situation. You could write a report to recommend action persuasively. Usually, however, these three goals will overlap in your long, formal reports.

For example, let's say that your company is expanding globally and will need a WAN (a wide area network that spans a large geographical area). In a long, formal report to management, you might first write to inform the audience that this WAN will meet the strategic goals of storing and transmitting information to your global coworkers. The report also will analyze the ways in which this network will be safe, reliable, fast, and efficient. Finally, the report will recommend the best designs for providing secure communications to clients, partners, vendors, and coworkers. Ultimately, you must persuade the audience, through research, that your envisioned network's design, hardware specifications, software, and estimated budget will satisfy both internal and external needs. Such a report would have to be informative, analytical, and persuasive to convince the audience to act on the recommended suggestion.

Information

When you provide information to your audience, focus on the facts. These facts will help your readers better understand the situation, the context, or the status of the topic. For example, in this chapter's opening scenario, Nitrous Solutions asked Alpha/Beta Consulting (A/B/C) to report on backup data storage options for software archives. To do so, A/B/C needed to present factual information about the importance of backup storage. In a long, formal report, A/B/C informed its client about the following: the threats to data, the cost of lost data, how often data should be backed up, and what data should be archived (See Figure 1).

FIGURE 1 Information about Backup Data Storage

Description of Backup Data Storage
The following information provides facts about permanent storage to help Nitrous Solutions maintain a high degree of security in an offsite backup data storage location.

Facts
Due to events such as 9/11 and Hurricane Katrina, the importance of maintaining mission-critical electronic data and backups has become evident for companies that wish to avoid a catastrophic outcome. Moving data to a separate offsite location dilutes risk and protects against data loss when, for example, the company's IT infrastructure or its critical electronic information is damaged by the following:

Threats to Your Data

- Fire
- Flood
- Hurricane or tornado
- Lightning strike
- Earthquake
- Heat, sunlight
- Humidity, moisture, and spilled liquids
- Smoke, dust, and dirt
- Electrical surge or power failure
- Media failure
- Hard drive failure

Dangers and Costs of Data Loss

- Loss of mission-critical files
- Corrupted database
- Corrupted operating system
- Loss of all files on hard drive
- Laptop damage, theft or loss
- Damaged computer hardware
- Backup media loss or theft
- Total loss of all data at your site
- Compromised data security
- Competitor access to your data
- Lost business records

When and What Data Should be Backed Up?
Some basic questions that are commonly asked when determining when and what data should be backed up are as follows:

How often should desktop PCs or Macs be backed up?

- Data on desktop PCs and Macs should be backed up at a minimum of at least once a week. This will prevent anyone losing more than one week's worth of information.

Should everything on my PC or Mac be backed up once a week?

- This is not necessary. Only data needs to be backed up once a week. Software, operating systems, and even static data do not need to be backed up that often. Backing up everything on your PC or Mac adds time to the process and requires substantially more backup tapes, backup disks, or other types of media.

How long should I keep computer backups?

- Some companies keep original backups up to seven years and have a set schedule that includes five different increments of backups: daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, and yearly.

This is a topic for discussion with your key management, legal aids, information systems technicians, records management, and key personnel. Balancing the needs of a company's computer system protection and good records management takes informed decisions on the part of all these departments.

Information is presented in a variety of ways. The consulting company details data in bulleted lists, asks questions and provides answers, and explains facts and findings in paragraphs.

Analysis

When you analyze for your audience, you begin with factual information. However, you expand on this information by interpreting it and then drawing conclusions. Once A/B/C presented the informational findings about backup data storage facilities, they followed this information with a more in-depth analysis of backup options and drew a conclusion for their client (see Figure 2).

FIGURE 2 Analysis of Backup Data Storage Options

Industry analysts claim that two out of five businesses that experience a disaster will go out of business within five years of the event due to information and service lost as a consequence of disasters.

This is an alarming statistic considering the high cost of not expecting the unexpected. In the event of a disaster, a corporation could lose hundreds, thousands, or even millions of dollars through lost productivity. At worst the corporation could go out of business without the possibility of a second chance.

The two main types of offsite data storage include the following:

Offsite Data Storage Facility	Internet Data Storage Facility
Tapes, CDs, DVDs, or hard drives are sent to a predetermined offsite location for security and disaster recovery purposes. This allows a business to be safe in the knowledge that it will be able to recover quickly and seamlessly from any disaster. With simply a walk across the street or a drive downtown to the storage facility, the business can quickly begin to rebuild from the data it has stored.	Offsite Internet data storage, although relatively new, has quickly become one of the fastest growing arenas in the records and information management industry. A business can simply select the files and the time that it wishes to have its files backed up with the offsite backup software. Its files are compressed and encrypted and sent to a backup server over an existing Internet connection. The business can upload or download your files as often as needed, usually with no additional charges.

Offsite Location for Data Storage Options	
Offsite Residential Location	**Offsite Facility Location**
Costs	
• Completely free	• $5 to $650 per month depending on space and features

FIGURE 2 (Continued)

Reliability	
• Data are accessible when needed. • Save and archive as much as you need with no restrictions or extra fees.	• Insurance on data is automatic with contract. • Data are fully accessible during normal business hours, and after hours by emergency only.

Security	
• More secure than leaving your data in your office building	• Vault and/or building monitored by 24-hour surveillance and alarm systems • Security patrolled
Scalability	
• Can store as little or as much data as needed, with no restrictions, guidelines, rules or regulations free of charge	• Just like the Internet storage, as your company grows, so can data storage. This increases monthly fees.
Ease of Use	
• Your house, your rules • Maintenance of data management can be completed in your spare time.	• Easy to set up and manage • Step-by-step instructions available • Some companies offer free technical help.

Conclusion

Regardless of how much or how little a business uses a computer, your company will create important and unique data. The unique data can include financial and project budget records, digital images, client profiles, and marketing sales. The data are priceless and constantly at risk.

Data loss is likely to occur for many reasons:

- Hardware failure = 42%
- Human error = 35%
- Software corruption = 13%
- PC viruses = 7%
- Hardware destruction = 3%

When analyzing information, A/B/C presents facts and figures, pros and cons, and specific details.

Recommendation

After providing information and analysis, you can recommend action as a follow-up to your findings. The recommendation allows you to tell the audience why they should purchase a product, use a service, choose a vendor, select a software package, or follow a course of action. A/B/C presented findings and analyzed information for its client Nitrous Solutions. Based on the analysis, the consulting company then made a recommendation (see Figure 3).

A table makes the numerical information easy to understand.

FIGURE 3 Analysis and Recommendation

Offsite Location for Permanent Storage: Analysis and Recommendation

Weighted Analysis:

Type		Offsite Residential		Offsite Facility	
Criteria	Weight	Rating*	Score	Rating*	Score
Cost	15%	5	.75	3	.45
Performance	25%	-	-	-	-
Reliability	30%	4	1.20	4	1.20
Security	15%	3	.45	4	.60
Scalability	10%	5	.50	5	.50
Ease of use	5%	4	.20	4	.20
Total	100%		3.1		2.95

*Rating: The weighted analysis is based on a 1 to 5 scale; 1 is poor, 5 is excellent.

Recommendation

Because Nitrous Solutions does not currently have a network infrastructure in place, the data storage decision should be considered a high priority since all new data that the company creates will be significant to the company's overall success. Alpha/Beta Consulting recommends that Nitrous Solutions use the residential offsite data storage option due to the slight advantage it has over a professional storage facility. The one real advantage between the two is cost. Whereas residential storage is free with no contracts or monthly charges, a storage facility will charge anywhere from $5 to $650 per month, depending on the size of data and equipment that needs to be accompanied with such data.

Based on information and an analysis of the findings, provided in a weighted table, A/B/C recommends a backup solution for the client.

If Nitrous Solutions needs to have multiple backup solutions, rather than a single reinforcement to the backup data, another recommended means of storage would be an Internet storage facility. Due to the popular demand and increasing technology, many different companies are now offering free trials of their Internet storage facilities and software. Because of the unknown intentions of Nitrous Solutions, only the features for Internet storage will be researched. Almost all options for Internet companies are either compatible or identical.

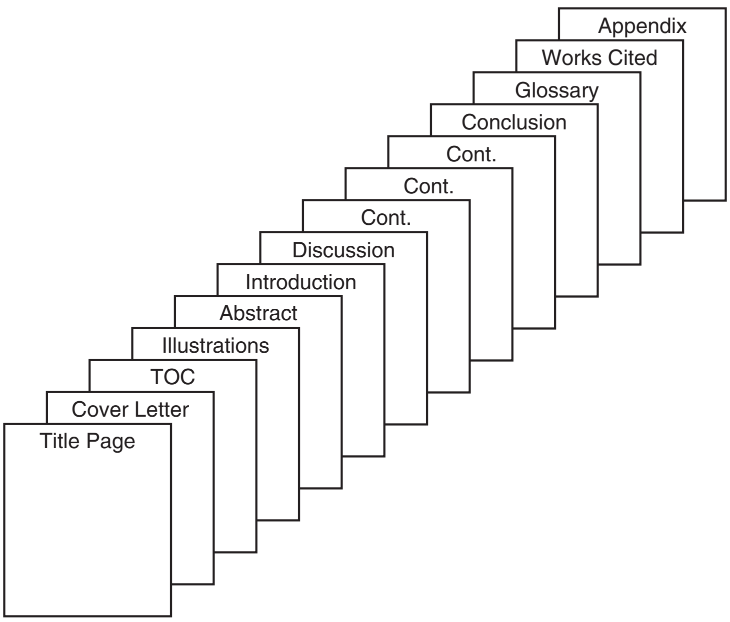
Major Components of Long, Formal Reports

A long, formal report includes the following:

- **Front matter** (title page, cover letter or memo, table of contents, list of illustrations, and an abstract or executive summary)
- **Text** (introduction, including purpose, issues, background, and problems; discussion; and conclusion/recommendation)
- **Back matter** (glossary, works cited or references page, and an optional appendix)

Figure 4 shows the components of a long, formal report.

FIGURE 4 Components of a Long, Formal Report



Title Page

The title page tells your reader the following:

- Title of the long report (thereby providing clarity of intent)
- Name of the company and writer or writers submitting the long report
- Date on which the long report was completed

If the long report is being mailed outside your company to a client, you also might include on the title page the audience to whom the report is addressed. If the long report is being submitted within your company to peers, subordinates, supervisors, or owners, you might want to include a routing list of individuals who must sign off or approve the report.

Following are two sample title pages. Figure 5 is for a long report with routing information. Figure 6 is for a long report without routing information.

FIGURE 5 Title Page for Long Report (with Routing Information)

Report on Multicultural Workforce at StartCo Insurance

Prepared by: ______________________________ Date: __________
Pete Niosi
Assistant Director, Human Resources

Reviewed by: ______________________________ Date: __________
Leah Workman
Manager, Accounting

Recommended by: __________________________ Date: __________
Greg Foss
Department Supervisor, Customer Service

Recommended by: __________________________ Date: __________
Shirley Chandley
Director, Human Resources

Approved by: ______________________________ Date: __________
Ralph Houston
Vice President

FIGURE 6 Title Page for a Long Report (without Routing Information)

Title the report.

Computer Networking Report:
The Need to Upgrade Intranet Capabilities

Provide the reader's name(s), title, and company name.

for
Acme Products, Inc.
2121 New Line Avenue
San Antonio, TX 78666

Give the writer's name(s), title, and company.

Submitted by
Thomas Brasher
CEO, Technology Upgrades
3254 West King's Highway
San Antonio, TX 78221

August 13, 2014

Cover Letter or Memo

Your cover letter or memo prefaces the long report and provides the reader an overview of what is to follow. It tells the reader the following:

- Why you are writing
- What you are writing about (the subject of this long report)
- What exactly of importance is within the report
- What you plan to do next as a follow-up
- When the action should occur
- Why that date is important

Table of Contents

Long reports are read by many different readers, each of whom will have a special area of interest. For example, the managers who read your reports will be interested in cost concerns, timeframes, and personnel requirements. Technicians, in contrast, will be interested in technical descriptions and instructions. Not every reader will read every section of your long report.

Your responsibility is to help these different readers find the sections of the report that interest them. One way to accomplish this is through a table of contents. The table of contents should be a complete and accurate listing of the main *and* minor topics covered in the report. In other words, you don't want just a sketchy outline of major headings. This could lead to page gaps; your readers would be unable to find key ideas of interest. In the following table of contents example, the discussion section contains approximately sixteen pages of data. What is covered in those sixteen pages? Is anything of value discussed? We don't know.

BEFORE

Table of Contents

	List of Illustrations	iv
	Abstract	v
1.0	Introduction	1
2.0	Discussion	3
3.0	Conclusion	19
4.0	Recommendations	21
5.0	Glossary	22
6.0	References	23

This poorly written table of contents omits second-level headings and has too many page gaps.

In contrast, an effective table of contents fleshes out this detail so your readers know exactly what is covered in each section. By providing a thorough table of contents, you will save your readers time and help them find the information they want and need. The next example is a successful table of contents.

Second-level and third-level headings help the audience access all parts of the report in any order.

In this sample table of contents, we followed the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) numbering style (1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 2.0, etc.) to number headings.

AFTER

Table of Contents

	List of Illustrations	1
	Abstract	2
1.0	Introduction	3
	1.1 Purpose	3
	1.2 Background	3
	1.3 Problems	3
	1.3.1 Profit/Loss	3
	1.3.2 Equipment Costs	4
	1.3.3 Repair Costs	4
	1.3.4 Indirect Costs	4
2.0	Discussion	6
	2.1 Solution	6
	2.1.1 Computer Monitors	6
	2.1.2 Computer Hard Drive	7
	2.1.3 Computer Printers	8
	2.1.4 Computer Operations	9
	2.2 Management	10
	2.2.1 Personnel Requirements	10
	2.2.2 Method of Delivery	11
	2.2.3 Schedule of Delivery	12
	2.3 Training	13
	2.3.1 Schedule of Training	14
	2.4 Costs	15
	2.4.1 Cost Analysis	15
	2.4.2 Payment Schedules	16
	2.4.3 Payback Analysis	17
	2.5 Impact of Needs Assessment	18
	2.6 Credentials	19
	2.7 Company History	20
3.0	Conclusion	21
4.0	Recommendations	22
	Glossary	23
	References	24

TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Creating a Hierarchy of Headings Using Microsoft Word 2010

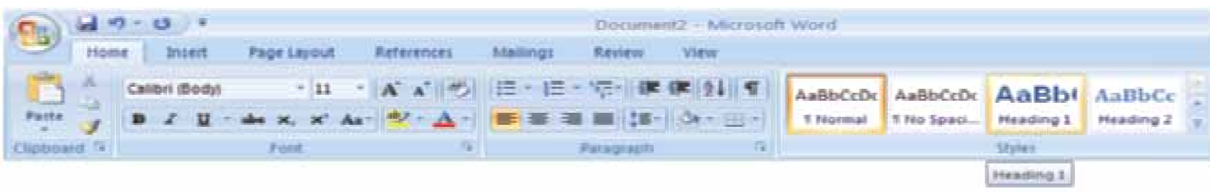
When writing your long, formal reports, include headings and subheadings. To help your readers navigate the text, create a clear hierarchy of headings (also called cascading headings) that distinguishes among first-level headings, second-level headings, third-level headings, and fourth-level headings.

Microsoft Word 2010 will help you create this hierarchy of headings. You can apply a style to your entire document in Word's "formatting text by using styles" tool. For example, let's say that you want your headings and subheadings to look as follows:

Hierarchy of Headings	Description
HEADING ONE	First-level headings: Arial, all cap, boldface, 16-point font
Heading two	Second-level headings: Times New Roman, italic, boldface, 14-point font
Heading three	Third-level headings: Times New Roman, boldface, 12-point font
Heading four	Fourth-level headings: Times New Roman, italic, 12-point font

To create a hierarchy of headings, follow these steps:

1. Click on the **Home** tab and then click on the down arrow to the right of **Heading 2**.



The following styles and formatting box will pop up.

2. Right-click the **Heading 1** button and scroll to **Modify**. Here, you can change font type, size, and color.

List of Illustrations

If your long report contains several tables or figures, provide a list of illustrations. This list can be included below your table of contents, if there is room on the page, or on a separate page. As with the table of contents, your list of illustrations must be clear and informative. Don't waste your time and your reader's time by providing a poor list of illustrations like in the "before" example. Instead, provide a list as shown in the "after" example.

BEFORE

List of Illustrations

Fig. 1	2
Fig. 2	4
Fig. 3	5
Fig. 4	5
Fig. 5	9
Table 1	3
Table 2	6

AFTER

List of Illustrations

Figure 1. Revenues Compared to Expenses	2
Figure 2. Average Diesel Fuel Prices Since 2012	4
Figure 3. Mainshaft Gear Outside Face	5
Figure 4. Mainshaft Gear Inside Face	5
Figure 5. Acme Personnel Organization Chart	9
Table 1. Mechanism Specifications	3
Table 2. Costs: Expenditures, Savings, Profits	6

Abstract

As mentioned earlier, a number of different readers will be interested in your long report. Because your readers are busy with many different concerns and might have little technical knowledge, they need your help in two ways: They need information quickly, and they need it presented in low-tech terminology. You can achieve both these objectives through an abstract or executive summary. The abstract is a brief overview of the proposal or long report's key points geared toward a low-tech reader. To accomplish the required brevity, limit your abstract to approximately one to two pages.

Each long report you write will focus on unique ideas. Therefore, the content of your abstracts will differ. Nonetheless, abstracts might focus on the following: the *problems* necessitating your report, your suggested *solutions,* and the *benefits* derived when your suggestions are implemented. For example, let's say you are asked to write a formal report suggesting a course of action (limiting excessive personnel, increasing your company's workforce, improving your corporation's physical facilities, etc.). First, your abstract should specify the problem requiring your planned action. Next, mention the action you are planning to implement. This leads to a brief overview of how your plan would solve the problem, thus benefiting your company.

Another approach to an abstract for a long report is to summarize the content being analyzed in the report, setting the stage for the major issues to be discussed. In this abstract, highlight all the main points in the long report, omitting any supporting facts and documentation (to be developed in the discussion section of the report). You not only want to be brief, focusing on the most important issues, but also you should avoid high-tech terminology and concepts. The purpose of the abstract is to provide your readers with an easy-to-understand summary of the entire report's focus. Your readers want the bottom line, and they want it quickly. Therefore, avoid all high-tech terminology completely, define your terms parenthetically, or refer readers to a glossary.

Executive Summary

An executive summary, similar to an abstract but generally longer, is found at the beginning of either a formal report or a proposal and summarizes the major topics covered in the document. By reading the executive summary, your audience (the decision makers) gets an overview of the much longer report or proposal. To write an effective and concise executive summary, use only the most important details and supporting statistics or information. Omit details or technical content that your reader either does not need to know or would be unnecessarily confused by. Details are used in the discussion section of the report or the proposal. To limit the length of your executive summary to one or two pages, choose the most important elements, and omit those that are secondary. An effective summary can include the following:

- Purpose and scope of the report or proposal, stating the problem or need and your ability to improve the situation
- Research or methods used to develop your content
- Conclusions about your analysis of the topic
- Your qualifications showing that you can resolve the issue
- A project management plan and timetable
- The total project budget
- Recommendations based on your findings

Introduction

Your introduction should include the following: purpose, background, and problem.

Purpose. In one to three sentences or a short paragraph, tell your readers the purpose of your long report. This purpose statement informs your readers *why* you are writing or *what* you hope to achieve. This statement repeats your abstract to a certain extent. However, it's not redundant; it's a reiteration. Although numerous people read your report, not all of them read each line or section of it. They skip and skim.

The purpose statement, in addition to the abstract, is another way to ensure that your readers understand your intent. It either reminds them of what they have just read in the abstract or informs them for the first time if they skipped over the abstract. Your purpose statement is synonymous with a paragraph's topic sentence, an essay's thesis, the first sentence in a letter, or the introductory paragraph in a shorter report.

Background and Problem. Whereas the purpose statement should be limited to one to three sentences or a short paragraph for clarity and conciseness, your discussion of the problem must be much more detailed. For example, if you are writing a report about the need for a new facility, your company's current work and storage space must be too limited. Your company has a problem that must be solved.

Your introduction's focus on the problem and background, which could average one to two pages, is important for two reasons. First, it highlights the importance of your report and establishes a context for the reader. The introduction emphasizes for your readers the report's priority. In this section, you persuade your readers that a problem truly exists and needs immediate attention.

Second, by clearly stating the problem and background information, you also reveal your knowledge of the situation. This section reveals your expertise. Thus, after reading this section of the introduction, your audience should recognize the importance of the issue and trust you to solve it or understand the complexity of the topic being discussed.

Discussion

The discussion section of your long report constitutes its body. In this section, you develop the detailed content of the long report. As such, the discussion section represents the major portion of the long report, perhaps 85 percent of the text.

What will you focus on in this section? Because every report will differ, we can't tell you exactly what to include. However, your discussion can contain any or all of the following:

- Analyses
  - Existing situation
  - Solutions
  - Benefits
- Product specifications of mechanisms, facilities, or products
- Comparison/contrast of options
- Assessment of needs
- Features of the systems or products
- Process analyses of the systems or products
- Instructions for completing tasks
- Optional approaches or methodologies for solving the problems
- Managerial chains of command (organizational charts)
- Biographical sketches of personnel
- Corporate and employee credentials
  - Years in business
  - Satisfied clients
  - Certifications
  - Previous accomplishments
- Schedules
  - Implementation schedules
  - Reporting intervals
  - Maintenance schedules
  - Delivery schedules
  - Completion dates
  - Payment schedules
  - Projected milestones (forecasts)
- Cost analyses
- Profit and loss potential
- Documentation and researched material
- Survey results
- Lab report results
- Warranties
- Maintenance agreements
- Online help
- Training options
- Impact on the organization (time, personnel, finances, customers)

You will have to decide which of these sections will be geared toward high-tech readers, low-tech readers, or a lay audience. Once this decision is made, you will write accordingly, defining terms as needed. In addition to audience recognition, enhance your discussion with figures and tables for clarity, conciseness, and cosmetic appeal.

Conclusion/Recommendation

Sum up your long report in a page or so. The conclusion can restate the problem, the important implications of your analysis, your solutions, and the benefits to be derived. In doing so, remember to quantify. Be specific—state percentages and amounts.

Your recommendation will suggest the next course of action. Specify when this action will or should occur and why that date is important. The conclusion/recommendation section can be made accessible through highlighting techniques, including headings, subheadings, underlining, boldface, itemization, and white space.

Glossary

Because you will have numerous readers with multiple levels of expertise, you must be concerned about your use of high-tech language (abbreviations, acronyms, and terms). Although some of your readers will understand your terminology, others won't. However, if you define your terms each time you use them, two problems will occur: You might insult high-tech readers, or you will delay your audience as they read your text. To avoid these pitfalls, use a glossary. A glossary is an alphabetized list of high-tech terminology placed after your conclusion/recommendation.

A glossary is invaluable. Readers who are unfamiliar with your terminology can turn to the glossary and read your definitions. Those readers who understand your word usage can continue to read without stopping for unneeded information.

Ethical Considerations when Documenting Sources in a Long, Formal Report

If you use research to write your long report, include a works cited or references page. This page(s) documents the sources (books, periodicals, interviews, computer software, Internet sites, etc.) you have researched and from which you have quoted or paraphrased. Correct documentation and source citations are essential in your long report to enhance your credibility and demonstrate your ethical behavior. Remember that boilerplate content and templates, already created material in your company's document library, do not necessarily require documentation. However, if you research the material on the Internet or from any other published source, you must document this material or be guilty of unethical behavior.

Appendix

A final, optional component is an appendix. Appendices allow you to include any additional information (survey results, tables, figures, previous report findings, relevant letters or memos, etc.) that you have not built into your long report's main text. The contents of your appendix should not be of primary importance. Valuable data (proof, substantiation, or information that clarifies a point) should appear in the text where it is easily accessible.

Using Research in Long, Formal Reports

You can use researched material, quotes, and paraphrases to support and develop content in your long, formal report. Technical communicators often ask how much of a long, formal report should be *their* writing, as opposed to researched information. A general rule is to lead into and out of every quotation or paraphrase with your own writing. In other words, do the following:

- Make a statement (your sentence).
- Support this generalization with a quotation, paraphrase, or graphic (referenced material from another source).
- Provide a follow-up explanation of the referenced material's significance (your sentences or paragraphs).

FAQs: Research in Long Reports

Q: Why do long, formal reports include research? Aren't research papers just assignments we have in freshman composition classes?

A: Research, a major component of long, formal reports, helps you develop your report's content. Often, your own comments, drawn from personal experience, will lack detail, development, and authority to be sufficiently persuasive. Research in your long report can do the following:

- Create content
- Support commentary and content with details
- Prove points
- Emphasize the importance of an idea
- Enhance the reliability of an opinion
- Show the importance of a subject to the larger business community
- Address the audience's need for documentation and substantiation

SPOTLIGHT

Who Writes Long, Formal Reports?

City, state, and the federal government constitute the largest employer in the United States. The government hires engineers, financial analysts, accountants, scientists, administrative assistants, fire fighters, police officers, employees in public works and utilities, and parks and recreation workers.

Do these employees have to write long, formal reports? The answer is yes. **Vicki Charlesworth,** Assistant City Manager/City Clerk of Shawnee, Kansas, says that her city's engineers, police officers, fire chiefs, financial advisors, and parks and recreation employees often write formal reports to city council members and the city's mayor. These long reports help the city council members "make informed decisions" that impact the city's residents and business owners.

Topics for the reports bubble up from citizens. A citizen contacts one of the city council members, for example, to share a concern about streets, sidewalks, animal control, traffic, or taxes. Maybe a citizen wants to expand a business, improve safety guard training for school crosswalks, or build a skateboard park for resident recreation. City council members ask the city's staff to research the issues, write a report that provides information on relevant statutes and/or other cities' best practices for handling issues, analyze options, and then recommend follow-up actions.

In one recent instance, the city needed to expand an existing road. The two-lane, winding road, initially built in the early 1940s, no longer met the city's growing population needs. To accommodate city growth, the road had to be widened to four lanes and straightened to meet increased traffic and speed limits. This change would necessitate significant research and resources. City engineers needed to study the extent to which a road change would impact

- An adjacent animal refuge
- Current homeowners' land
- Sewage lines
- Easements
- Electrical and water lines
- New signage
- Traffic signals

The roadway project would be time consuming and costly. Only through a long, formal report could city engineers thoroughly provide the city council information about this project, analyze the options, and recommend appropriate construction steps.

Vicki says that poor communication damages the city employees' credibility and diminishes their professionalism. Flawed reports—ones that aren't well written or clearly developed—suggest that the writers "lack interest in the city's residents and business owners," are unresponsive to their constituents, or "just don't want to help" the city's taxpayers. That's bad PR, potentially leading to citizen complaints and inefficient government. It's not surprising that Vicki says, "One of the most important assets you can have in government is writing skills."

Research Includes Secondary and Primary Sources

To conduct *secondary research*, you rely on printed and published information taken from sources including books, periodicals, newspapers, encyclopedias, reports, proposals, or other business documents. You might also rely on information taken from a Web site or a blog. All of this secondary research requires parenthetical source citations.

Primary research (field research) is research performed or generated by you. You do not rely on books or periodicals. Instead you create original research by preparing a survey or a questionnaire targeting a group of respondents, networking to discover information from other individuals, visiting job sites, or performing lab experiments. With primary research, you will be generating the information based on data or information from a variety of sources that might include observations, tests of equipment, interviews, networking, surveys, and questionnaires.

LONG, FORMAL REPORTS CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Have you included the major components for your long, formal report (front matter, text, and back matter)?

_____ **2.** In your long, formal report, have you written to inform, analyze, and/or recommend?

_____ **3.** Have you used research effectively, incorporating quotes, paraphrases, and graphics successfully?

_____ **4.** Have you used primary and/or secondary research?

_____ **5.** Did you correctly give credit for the source of your research?

_____ **6.** Have you correctly used a hierarchy of headings to help your audience navigate the text?

_____ **7.** Did you use tables and/or figures to develop and enhance content?

_____ **8.** Have you met your audience's need for definitions of acronyms, abbreviations, and high-tech terms by providing a glossary?

_____ **9.** Have you achieved clarity and conciseness?

_____ **10.** Is your text grammatically correct?

The Writing Process at Work

Now that you know the criteria for long, formal reports and the importance of research, the next step is to write your report. To do so, follow the recursive, step-by-step process of prewriting, writing, and rewriting. Remember that the process is dynamic and the steps frequently overlap.

Prewriting

There are several techniques for prewriting—reporter's questions, clustering/mind mapping, flowcharting, brainstorming/listing, and outlining. An excellent way to gather data and to determine your objectives in a long report is to brainstorm and list. One businessperson we met, Jon Russell, considered the following about his long, formal report:

- Goal—inform the audience of the need for new financial software, analyze findings from research, and recommend a preferred vendor
- Audience—lay readers (city manager and city council members)

- Channels—long, formal report
- Data—vendor options; software applications; cost of software, training, and implementation; payment schedules

To gather content for the long, formal report, Jon says he must do the following primary research:

- Meet with the accounting manager to determine the required software applications for the finance department
- Seek proposals from software vendors
- Determine how to allocate finances to pay for the software purchases

To accomplish the above, Jon uses brainstorming to list the project requirements (Figure 7).

FIGURE 7 Jon's Brainstorming List of End-User Requirements

Prioritized List of Needs

1. End-user ease of use, complete with extensive online help for inexperienced end users
2. Ability to accomplish specific finance tasks
    a. automated interest allocations
    b. pooled cash
    c. seamless purchasing card interaction
    d. superior budget module
    e. project accounting
3. Lotus Notes compatibility
4. Seamless interaction with Excel and Word
5. Choice of three vendors for onsite demonstration
6. MEGS is $70,000 over budget
7. MEGS lets us pay over 2 years
8. MEGS offers best solution
9. New software will result in cost reductions
10. No temporary help will be needed for redundant data entry

Writing

After prewriting, you then draft the document. Figure 8 shows the rough draft of Jon's executive summary.

FIGURE 8 Rough Draft of Executive Summary with Suggestions for Revision

Subject: Procurement of new financial software

The financial software (ACS) that the Finance Department is currently utilizing is 16 years old. The current software is not Windows based and is extremely cumbersome to accomplish the simplest tasks. Many staff hours are wasted retyping information into Excel spreadsheets for reporting purposes; dual and even triple data entry is common due to the shortcomings of the current software. Additionally, the current software currently resides on an AS/400. Many technology experts believe the AS400 is becoming obsolete. In their management letter for year ended December 31, 2013, the City's auditors, Cottrell and Kreisler, LLC made several references to the inadequacy of the current software. Attached is an excerpt from the management letter referencing these weaknesses. They site multiple internal control issues, inability to track vial information and redundant data entry. During the 2014 budget discussions a Decision Package was approved for $90,000 for hardware or software that might be required for a new financial software package. It was determined at that time to wait to make the decision on how to proceed.

Avoid using the word "current" repetitively.

Avoid lengthy sentences.

Requests for proposals for new financial software were sent to seven software vendors. The following table illustrates the five responses received on March 14, 2014.

New Land	Utica, NY	$254,295
MEGS	St. Louis, MO	$159,538
MoonRay	Jupiter Beach, FL	$129,884
ACS	Springfield, IA	$123,800
Roedell	Taos, NM	$109,318

After a review of the responses, three vendors were selected to provide on-site demonstrations. Staff from finance and from other departments spent many hours comparing these vendor's products. The highest priorities were identified as end-user ease of use, ability to accomplish specific finance tasks, and Lotus Notes compatibility. MEGS software met all of the department's needs including the following: automated interest allocation, pooled cash, seamless purchasing card interaction, superior budget module, project accounting, etc. Unfortunately MEGS is $70,000 over our allotted budget of $90,000. MEGS has offered to divide the payment over two years so the remaining $70,000 would be included in the General Fund in the 2014 budget. With the implementation of the software the Finance Department will have some cost reductions related to the constant need for temporary help to accomplish current requirement for redundant data entry.

Add headings to break the text into more manageable units.

Check for grammar and spelling errors throughout the text.

Rewriting

Next, revise and rewrite your draft by considering the revision suggestions. See Figure 9 for John's rewritten executive summary.

See Figure 10 for a sample long, formal report.

FIGURE 9 Rewritten Executive Summary for City Manager and City Council Members

Executive Summary

Background of Finance Department's Software Requirements
The Finance Department's current ACS software is 16 years old. Because the software is outdated, it has the following problems:

- The software is not Windows based.
- The software is not time efficient. Many staff hours are wasted retyping information into Excel spreadsheets for reporting purposes. Dual and even triple data entry is common due to the shortcomings of the current software.
- The ACS financial software resides on an AS/400 hardware system. Many technology experts believe the AS/400 is becoming obsolete.
- In their management letter for the year ended December 31, 2013, the city's auditors, Cottrell and Kreisler, LLC, made several references to the inadequacy of the current software, including the following: multiple internal control issues, inability to track vital information, and redundant data entry.

During the 2014 budget discussions, a decision package was approved for $90,000 for hardware or software that might be required for a new financial software package.

Comparison of Vendor Proposals
Requests for proposals for new financial software were sent to seven software vendors. Table 1 illustrates the five responses received on March 14, 2014.

Table 1 Vendor Comparison

Vendors	Locations	Proposed Fees
New Land	Utica, NY	$254,295
MEGS	St. Louis, MO	$159,538
MoonRay	Jupiter Beach, FL	$129,884
ACS	Springfield, IA	$123,800
Roedell	Taos, NM	$109,318

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System

Linux Desktop in Enterprise Settings at Design International, Inc.

Submitted by
John Staples, Manager of Information Technology
March 2, 2014

Date: March 2, 2014
To: Tiffany Steward, CEO
From: John Staples, Manager Information Technology
Subject: Recommendation for Migration to a Linux Operating System

Ms. Steward, thank you for allowing me to report on a possible solution to Design International's operating system challenges. This report is in response to a survey my team conducted and the Information Technology Department's focus on improving internal and external communication.

Currently, we use Microsoft Windows as our computing system. However, Windows has a few inherent challenges. These include limited security, limited customization, and increased cost. Based on substantial research, my team and I would like to present an option—Linux. This report will provide you the following information:

- A definition of Linux page 2
- A comparison/contrast of Linux vs. Windows page 2
- An explanation of how Linux works page 3
- The benefits of migrating to Linux page 11

Information Technology believes migrating to a Linux Operating System can benefit Design International. I appreciate your thoughts on this report and look forward to answering any questions you might have. If you could assess this report by March 20, we would be able to initiate a Linux migration before the next quarter begins.

(*Continued*)

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System (Continued)

Table of Contents

Abstract 1

Introduction 1

Purpose 1
Challenges Created by Relying Only on Windows 1

Discussion 2

What the Linux Desktop Environment Is 2
Linux vs. Windows Design Issues 2
How Linux Works 3
File Systems for Linux 4
Network Support for Linux 4
How Linux Addresses the Enterprise Desktop Need at Design International 5
The User and the Enterprise Desktop 5
Enterprise Desktop Management 5
What Are Design International's Options for Accessing Linux? 5
Use of a Linux Environment at Design International 6
Explanation of Survey Results 6
Migration Planning to the Linux Environment 8
Solutions to Migration Issues 9
Managing User Satisfaction in Migration Planning 10
Benefits of Using Linux at Design International 11

Conclusion 11
Recommendation 11
Glossary 12
Works Cited 13

List of Illustrations

Table 1 Comparison/Contrast of Key Facts Regarding Windows vs. Linux 7
Table 2 Client Segmentation 9
Table 3 Bridging Applications in a Migrations Solution 10
Figure 1 Survey on Computer Operating Systems 6

iii

FIGURE 10 (Continued)

Abstract

The Microsoft Windows desktop has established a dominant presence in the enterprise desktop marketplace. Currently, the Windows desktop has nearly total control over the enterprise desktop market primarily due to

- an aggressive marketing strategy
- its intuitive ease of use
- its apparent ease of installation and administration
- readily available support

Windows, however, is not the only viable desktop solution in the enterprise marketplace. Because of potential risks and benefits associated with any technology product, as IT manager I must be alert for alternatives that are secure, reliable, and cost effective.

This report provides technical information regarding the issue of migration to a Linux enterprise desktop solution, analyzes the pros and cons of migrating to a Linux solution, and recommends appropriate action for our company, Design International, Inc.

Introduction

Purpose

We need to consider changing from a Windows-based desktop to a Linux-based desktop for Design International.

Challenges Created by Relying Only on Windows

Though Microsoft Windows is the standard in the marketplace, it presents the following challenges:

- Security—In Windows, the operating system and key applications are combined, which can lead to security issues for e-mail clients. In addition, users of Windows are dependent upon the vendor for recognition and correction of security issues, as well as the implementation of security patches.
- Customization—Prepackaged IT systems, such as Windows, disallow Design International to customize our computerization.
- Cost—Windows requires that Design International pay costly software licensure fees. This cost is compounded by the fact that Windows is platform-dependent, limiting server selection.

1

(Continued)

Summarizing the report in the Abstract allows the reader to get a "snapshot" of the content. Since most people think that Microsoft Windows is the only option for desktop computing, this report discusses an alternative—Linux.

The IT manager lets the reader see that a recommendation will be made based on the facts in the report.

Highlighting problems in the introduction shows the importance of your topic and the need to consider other options.

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System (Continued)

Discussion

What the Linux Desktop Environment Is

The current industry standard for the computing desktop is the Microsoft operating system. This system, like all other Microsoft products, is distributed to consumers, including enterprise consumers, in machine code only. The source code is kept as a tightly guarded secret. The Microsoft operating system comes to the consumer as an "end-to-end solution" that includes operating system, desktop, common applications, and utilities all bundled into one package.

In contrast, Linux is not necessarily distributed as machine code, nor is it necessarily an end-to-end solution. "Strictly speaking, Linux refers to the kernel maintained by Linus Torvalds and distributed under the same name through the main repository and various mirror sites. This code base includes only the kernel and no utilities whatsoever. The kernel provides the core system facilities" (Yaghmour).

Embedding secondary research helps to develop the analysis and gives authority to your argument.

The Linux kernel is open source. As such, a custom operating system may be built to suit a particular need based on the kernel. However, most distributions of Linux include common user applications and are marketed by one of several vendors in the open source community such as RedHat, SuSe, Mandrake, or Caldera. The products currently available come with differing levels of utilities, installation tools, support, and documentation. Linux is available either by way of machine code or in its native source code format. In this manner, and by virtue of the general public license, the user can modify the operating system, so long as the source code remains open.

Linux desktop environments including KDE and GNOME are utilities that are available for the user to interface with the other utilities that are driven by the Linux kernel. These tools also provide a graphic user interface for the user to interact with the Linux operating system. Because a number of graphic user interface desktop solutions are available in the marketplace, the user is free to choose from the ones that come with their Linux distribution or to search from the other available alternatives.

Comparing and contrasting facts about the options helps to explain the topic to the reader. By focusing on pros and cons, you analyze the topic, clarifying the issue and supporting the conclusions you will draw later.

Linux vs. Windows Design Issues

The Microsoft Windows operating system follows the monolithic design. Most of the features of the system, including the graphics user interface (GUI) by way of the Internet Explorer, are built into one single unit, the kernel (Petreley 20).

While the Linux kernel is also characterized in the literature as being "monolithic" in relationship to traditional Unix microkernel design, fewer of the utilities and drivers are part of the kernel. What further differentiates the design of the Windows operating system and the design of Linux is that Linux is fully modular in nature (Petreley 21). Microsoft developed the Internet Explorer browser as an integrated part of the operating system to provide for more convenience for the user. However, because of the interdependencies between Internet Explorer and the other parts of the operating system, the entire system is exposed to any flaws that exist in the interdependent system (Petreley 23).

The Linux operating system does not for the most part allow graphics drivers to run inside the kernel. "A bug in a graphics driver may cause the graphical desktop to fail, but not cause the entire system to fail. If this happens, one simply restarts the graphical desktop" (Petreley 25).

2

FIGURE 10 (Continued)

Another architectural issue has been that Windows is heavily reliant on the remote procedural call (RPC), a situation where one computer initiates a call on another computer, over a network. While this is sometimes not possible to avoid, it is a procedure that should be kept to a bare minimum. This is the case with Linux (Petreley 27).

A final architectural issue that has rendered security issues with Windows is the high level of reliance on the GUI for performing administrative tasks. When the administrator is performing tasks as the administrative user, the GUI being used is essentially an instance of Internet Explorer. Because this browser is built so closely to the operating system, the underlying kernel, and in the case of a server, the entire network, is exposed to security risks that are inherent with the browser (Petreley 22).

How Linux Works

Proprietary software primarily exists for the purpose of generating revenue for the owner of the copyright to the software. Its use is permitted in accordance with a licensing agreement. According to Kenston, software licenses serve three basic functions:

Highlight facts and rely on research to emphasize important parts of the topic and strengthen the analysis.

1. They create profit for the developer.
2. They provide a means for controlling the distribution of the product.
3. They protect the underlying source code from modification. (6)

Raymond characterized software developed under the cathedral model as "carefully crafted by individual wizards or small bands of magi working in splendid isolation, with no beta released before its time" (29).

These concepts of business and development have two primary advantages:

1. They protect the vendor's profit motive.
2. They provide for centralized control of changes and development, along with a mechanism for funding and sustaining ongoing research and development.

Open source software benefits the user community. It is distributed freely under the General Public License (GPL), which states that anyone may use or distribute the source code. The GPL says, "You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above" ("GNU").

In general, open source software products, including Linux, are developed by groups of users collaborating together to improve systems and applications. Raymond provides a description of the culture in which open source software is developed. Some of the cornerstones of this culture that were described by Raymond are as follows:

- Software development starts with some personal need of the developer.
- The developer remains in charge of the project, until it is passed along to some other competent developer.

3

(Continued)

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System (Continued)

- Reuse and improvement of code is preferable to coding from scratch.
- Treating users as co-developers helps to harness their creative energy.
- Releasing beta code often and listening to feedback leads to rapid debugging. (Raymond 27-28)

File Systems for Linux

The Second Extended File system (ext2fs) was developed specifically for Linux. According to Dalheimer et al., "The ext2fs is one of the most efficient and flexible file systems" (35) This file system was designed to provide an implementation of UNIX file commands and offers advanced file system features. This system is currently the most common file system found in Linux distributions. Some of the features that are supported by ext2fs are

Because long report topics are complex, help your reader navigate the text easily. To create a readable style in your long report, use short sentences, short paragraphs, bulleted lists, and headings and subheadings.

- Standard UNIX file types, directories, device files, and links
- Large file systems, up to 32TB
- Long file names, usually 255 characters, but extendable to 1012
- Root user reserved files
- Root user block sizes that can improve I/O performance
- File system state tracking (Dalheimer et al., 6)

In addition to ext2fs, Linux supports a wide range of non-Linux file systems including

- Minix-1 and XENIX
- Windows NTFS (Windows 2000 and NT)
- VFAT (Windows 95/98)
- FAT (MS-DOS)
- Macintosh
- HPFS (OS/2)
- Amiga
- ISO 9660 (CD-ROM)
- Novell
- SMB
- Apple McIntosh
- BFS (SCO Unix)
- UFS

(Dalheimer et al., 6)

Network Support for Linux

The Linux kernel provides for a full implementation of the TCP/IP networking protocols. According to Dalheimer et al., some of the features included with the kernel are

- Device drivers for a wide range of Ethernet cards
- Parallel Line Internet Protocol (PLIP)
- IPv6 protocol suite
- DHCP

4

FIGURE 10 (Continued)

- Appletalk
- IRDA
- DECnet
- AX.25 for packet radio networks
- FTP
- Telnet
- NNTP
- Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)

(Dalheimer et al., 42)

How Linux Addresses the Enterprise Desktop Need at Design International

The User and the Enterprise Desktop

Two examples of desktops are emerging as the front runners for enterprise use: KDE and GNOME. Both provide a colorful GUI environment that is highly customizable, even to the extent that it can be made to look a lot like the familiar Windows environment. Support for other features, including drag and drop, multiple languages, and session management, is now available.

Enterprise Desktop Management

While the Linux desktop has evolved in the past few years, until recently, there was no true enterprise desktop management solution for the Linux environment. While installing a Linux desktop in a network environment has been easy, it is much more difficult to manage an entire network of hundreds or thousands of desktops. Even the most basic desktop management issues such as common configuration management, software installation, software updates, printer configurations, network file configuration, and authentication management become a resource drain without an enterprise management solution.

Tracing historical developments, such as desktop management, shows the reader the viability of changing desktop solutions.

What Are Design International's Options for Accessing Linux?

We can load Linux systems on our computers at Design International in the following ways (Freedman 69):

- **Live CD:** The most risk-free approach to accessing Linux is achieved by inserting CDs in all our computers, rebooting, and circumventing Windows once the system restarts. Computers started this way will function as Linux machines. This solution, however, is a quick fix and not advisable for long-term functionality.
- **Parallel installation:** We can download and install Linux software and run it parallel to Windows. This way, our end-users can choose between the two operating systems at start-up. This solution does not allow users to access both systems synchronously.

Persuasion is a key component of recommendations. To communicate persuasively, you might need to refute opposing points of view. Notice how the writer analyzes information in this section but then rebuts the argument by pointing out its drawbacks.

5

(Continued)

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System (Continued)

- **Windows replacement**: If we choose to use Linux exclusively, we must remove all Windows files and install Linux. Then, if we would want access to Windows, we would need to perform a complete Windows reinstall.

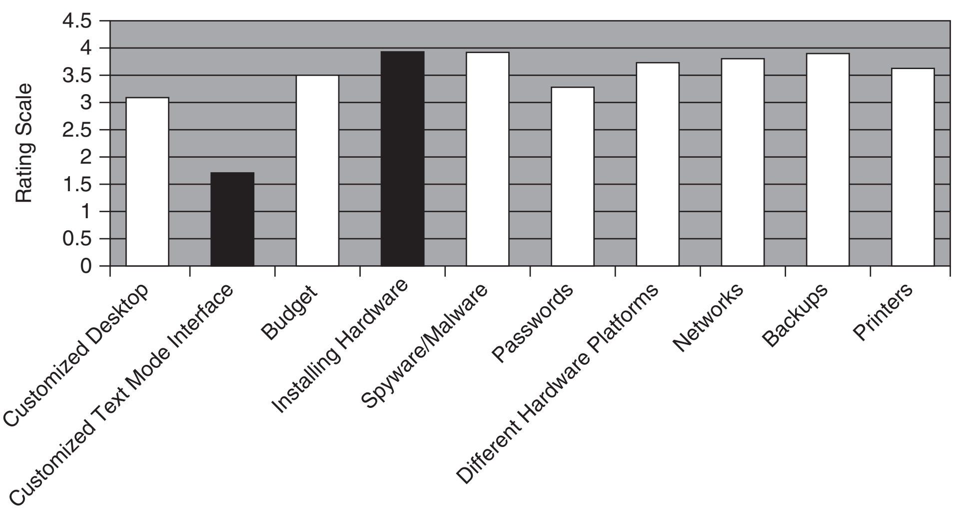
Use of a Linux Environment at Design International

I conducted an online survey of our 3,000 nationwide employees, asking for their input on issues such as security, printer usage, budget, installation of hardware, networking, archiving of files, and more. They ranked their responses on the following four-point scale:

___ 4 = absolutely critical
___ 3 = important
___ 2 = somewhat important
___ 1 = not important

I received a 75 percent response rate, equaling 2,250 responses to the survey (see Appendix). The results of this survey are shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1: Survey on Computer Operating Systems



Conducting primary research, such as through a survey, is an excellent way to add content that is customized for your particular audience and topic.

Explanation of Survey Results

Based on the ten questions asked, the results strongly suggest that our employees would profit from a migration to a Linux environment. Table 1 compares and contrasts key facts regarding Windows and Linux, as represented in the survey:

A key component of analysis is interpretation. Informing allows you to convey data. In analysis, you explain what this data means to provide the audience a better understanding of the consequences of your findings.

6

FIGURE 10 (Continued)

Table 1 Comparison/Contrast of Key Facts Regarding Windows vs. Linux	
Windows	**Linux**
Graphical User Interface	
Windows offers some customization of the GUI.	Linux allows advanced users to customize GUIs to their liking.
Text Mode Interface	
Each version of Windows has a single command interpreter.	Linux supports multiple command interpreters that can present a highly customized user interface employing the user interface and input/output facilities.
Cost	
Windows is expensive. Microsoft allows a single copy of Windows to be used on only one computer.	Linux is very cheap and/or free. Once you have purchased Linux, you can run it on any number of computers for no additional charge.
Getting the Operating System	
Windows comes with an operating system.	PC vendors sell Linux-based machines only as servers, not to consumers, so you must buy a new computer with the operating system pre-installed, or as a consumer, you must install the Linux system yourself.
Viruses and Spyware	
Spyware is the worst problem affecting Windows-based computers.	One of the major reasons for using Linux is that viruses and spyware are far less troublesome.
Users and Passwords	
Windows XP allows the omission of the password. Windows software is not designed to be used by a restricted user. Therefore, viruses and malware can access Windows machines easily.	Linux supports root and restricted users, which limits viruses and malware.

7

Table 1 uses comparison/contrast to analyze Windows vs. Linux. This analysis provides information and then draws conclusions.

(Continued)

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System (Continued)

Table 1 Continued	
Windows	**Linux**
Hardware the Operating System Runs On	
Windows does not run on different hardware platforms.	Linux runs on many different hardware platforms, even very old personal computers such as 486-based machines.
Clustering, Multiple Users, and Networking	
Windows is designed to be used by one person at a time.	Linux has been used to make enormous clusters of computers. Linux is a multiuser system, designed to handle multiple concurrent users.
User Data	
Windows allows programs to store user information (files and settings) anywhere. This makes it hard to back up user data files and settings and to switch to a new computer.	Linux stores all user data in the home directory making it much easier to migrate from an old computer to a new one.
Printer Drivers	
Windows supports many printers.	Linux does not support as many printers as Windows.

Migration Planning to the Linux Environment

Migration planning is critical to deploying the Linux desktop. This is the process of identifying how the organization will move from its current desktop environment to the Linux environment. The literature advocates a "divide and conquer" approach. According to Almond et al., the migration plan will include the assessment of user patterns, establishing functional continuity, dealing with user issues, and retraining considerations.

8

FIGURE 10 (Continued)

Table 2 below depicts a typical example of client segmentation.

Table 2 Client Segmentation				
Fixed Function	**Technical Workstation**	**Transactional Workstation**	**Basic Office**	**Advanced Office**
Limited use of business apps	Limited use of business apps	Applications drive business process	Applications drive business process	Applications drive business process
Limited office productivity	Simple office productivity	Simple office productivity	Simple office productivity	Advanced office productivity
No e-mail	Simple e-mail	Simple e-mail	Simple e-mail	Advanced e-mail
No instant messaging	No instant messaging	No instant messaging	No instant messaging	Instant messaging
Simple browser access	Simple browser access	Simple browser access	Simple browser access	Advanced browser applications
Filepoint systems management; network access; host emulation	Filepoint systems management; network access; host emulation	Filepoint systems management; network access; host emulation	Filepoint systems management; network access; host emulation	Filepoint systems management; network access; host emulation

(Almond et al., 28)

Solutions to Migration Issues

According to Almond et al., six potential technological solutions for solving migration issues are as follows:

- Bridging applications, or applications that work in both the old and new environment.
- Similar applications or applications that work in the new environment that have the look and feel of the application used in the old environment.
- Server based applications, or applications that run solely on the server.
- Independent Software Vendor applications or custom software purchased for the new environment.
- Web-based functional equivalents or applications that run in the browser, regardless of the operating system.
- Custom porting of custom applications or modifying the code of custom applications so that they operate in the new environment as they did in the old. (33-36)

9

A major concern with altering desktop solutions is how such a change will affect the end-user. This table highlights key points of the analysis and clarifies pros and cons.

(Continued)

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System (Continued)

The table helps your reader quickly see the comparison/contrast between moving from a Windows-based application to a Linux-based environment.

An example of establishing a migration solution by way of bridging applications is shown in Table 3:

Table 3 Bridging Applications in a Migrations Solution

Application in Windows	**Linux/Open Source Equivalent**
Internet Explorer	Mozilla.org Firefox
Outlook	Mozilla.org Thunderbird
MS Office Word	OpenOffice.org Writer
MS Office Excel	OpenOffice.org Spreadsheet
MS Office Power Point	OpenOffice.org Impress
PaintShop Pro	Gimp
Messenger Client	Gaim

(Almond et al. 31)

Managing User Satisfaction in Migration Planning

Perhaps the most critical issue in migration planning will be managing user satisfaction. Some strategies suggested by Almond et al. that can be used to help move users forward during the migration process are as follows:

- **Communicate.** Make sure that users understand what changes are upcoming, what the schedule is, and how the changes will have a positive impact on the organization.
- **Use bridging applications.** Some Linux-based software such as OpenOffice runs well on Microsoft systems.
- **Provide a similar look and feel.** The GNOME and KDE desktops can be customized to provide the user with a familiar Windows-lookalike work environment.
- **Use similar actions.** Linux customization features allow desktop actions (for example, mouse double-clicks) to be changed so that they can more closely resemble the familiar Windows actions.
- **Move file systems in a contiguous manner.** A common issue with users is the new Linux file structure. When moving file systems, the user's new file structure can be customized to closely resemble the familiar Windows file structure.
- **Provide users with the opportunity to try it before the migration.** Many Linux distributions are available in the form of a bootable CD. Users can test the operating system on their own computers without actually installing it by merely booting from the CD (Almond et al. 34-36).

To ensure enthusiastic acceptance of migration to Linux, use bullets to highlight the information and draw the reader's attention to the benefits.

10

FIGURE 10 (Continued)

Benefits of Using Linux at Design International

According to Dalheimer et al., some of the key attributes that make Linux a viable operating system for Design International include the following:

- **Linux is free.** Organizations using the Linux desktop can eliminate the need for paying software licensure fees. In fact, an independent study by Enterprise Management Associates concluded that "Linux may, in many cases, be substantially less expensive to own than Windows" (Galli 16).
- **Linux is reliable.** Linux systems rarely crash.
- **Linux is gaining popularity.** Linux is supported by user groups by way of the Internet through the open source community. In addition, commercial software vendors have seen the value of making software that is compatible with Linux.
- **Linux is powerful.** The Linux operating system is efficient and makes good use of hardware.
- **Linux is robust.** Linux can be anything from a simple office application environment, to a full-featured development workstation with advanced networking capability.
- **Linux is compatible.** Linux can exist on the same computer as Windows and even access Windows files that are in a different partition on the same disk as the Linux installation.
- **Linux is supported.** Support and documentation for Linux users is widely available online.
- **Linux affords superior manageability of security issues.** The nature of the open source environment lends itself to the fast development and implementation of security patches. The organization no longer relies on the vendor of the operating system to identify and rectify security issues. (Dalheimer et al., 11-19).

Focusing on the key benefits of using Linux helps your readers understand the implications of your topic and substantiates the recommendation.

Conclusion

The Microsoft Windows desktop has established a dominant presence in the enterprise desktop marketplace. Nonetheless, as the IT manager at Design International, I must be alert for opportunities to improve service delivery that is safe, secure, and cost effective. Among the options that are currently available in the marketplace is the range of Linux-based desktop solutions.

Recommendation

We should consider migrating to a Linux-based desktop system at Design International. A further study should be conducted to consider the economic impact of migration on our budget, resources, and personnel.

11

(Continued)

FIGURE 10 Long, Formal Report Recommending a Linux Operating System (Continued)

Use a glossary to define high-tech terms, abbreviations, and acronyms. By using a glossary, you do not have to burden the report's text with definitions or slow down your readers. Readers unfamiliar with terms can look for definitions in the glossary, while readers familiar with the terms can continue to read without interference.

Glossary

Term, Acronym, or Abbreviation	Definition
Beta Testing	The process used to identify the correctness, completeness, security, and quality of computer software.
Browser	A user interface that allows navigation. For example, a web browser provides access to the Internet; a file browser manages files and related objects; a code browser allows you to access the source code of a computer program.
Drivers	A driver is an electronic component used to control another electronic component. The term refers to a specialized chip that controls high power transistors.
GNOME	GNOME is an international project to create an easy-to-use computing system built from free software.
GPL	The General Public License allows anyone to use or distribute source code.
GUI	Graphical User uses graphical images to represent information or actions available to the user.
I/O	Input/Output. Input allows a computer system user to manipulate the system; Output allows the system to produce what the user has asked for.
KDE	K Desktop Environment is a free desktop environment that uses GUIs.
Kernel	The kernel is the central component of most operating systems (OS). It manages the system's resources and allows for communication between hardware and software.
Open Source Software	Open source software is computer software that permits users to change and to redistribute the software in the revised form.
OS	A computer's operating system manages the computer's hardware and software.
RPC	Remote Procedure Call—a situation where one computer initiates a call on another computer or network.
Source Code	A program's source code is its programming language.
Utilities	Utility software helps manage the computer's hardware and operating system.

12

FIGURE 10 (Continued)

Works Cited

Almond, Chris, et al. “Linux Client Migration Cookbook.” *IBM Redbooks*. 2004. Web. 20 Apr. 2005.

Dalheimer, Matthias, et al. *Running Linux*. Sebastapol, CA: O’Reilly Safari Books, 2003. Print.

Freedman, David H. “Tech geeks have long praised open-source software. Now’s the time to see what the fuss is about.” *Inc*. 28, 6 (June 2006): 69-71. Print.

Galli, Peter. “OSDL Answers Microsoft Claims; Study: Linux is cost-effective alternative to Windows.” *eWeek*. 23, 7 (Feb. 13, 2006): 16. Print.

“GNU General Public License Version 2.” *Free Software Foundation*. 10 Mar. 2005. Web. 12 Aug. 2011.

Kenston, Geoff. “Software Licensing Issues.” *Faulkner Information Services* 2004. 14 Feb. 2005. Web. 9 May 2008.

Petreley, Nicholas. “Security Report: Windows vs. Linux.” *The Register*. (October 22, 2004): 20-28. Print.

Raymond, Eric. *The Cathedral and the Bazaar*. Sebastapol, CA: O’Reilly Safari Books, 1999. Print.

“Work Groups.” *Free Standards Group*. 20 Mar. 2005. Web. 20 Jan. 2010. Yaghmour, Karim. *Building Embedded Linux Systems*. Sebastapol, CA: O’Reilly Safari Books, 2003. Print.

13

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Long, formal reports require time, resources of people and money, and have far-reaching effects.
2. Long, formal reports often deal with topics that consider serious and complex issues.
3. Long reports can provide information, be analytical, and/or recommend a course of action.
4. Long, formal reports include front matter (title page, cover letter, table of contents, list of illustrations, and abstract); text (introduction, discussion, conclusion/recommendation); and back matter (glossary, works cited, and optional appendix).
5. To help your readers navigate the report, create a clear hierarchy of headings.
6. When you write your long report, consider your audience and enhance your discussion with figures and tables for clarity, conciseness, and cosmetic appeal.
7. Primary research is research performed and generated by you.
8. Surveys or questionnaires are primary sources of research.
9. When you conduct secondary research, you rely on already printed and published information.
10. Secondary research is from books, periodicals, databases, and online searches.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDY

Alpha/Beta Consulting (A/B/C) solves customer problems related to hardware, software, and Web-based applications. The consulting company helps clients assess their computing needs, provides training, installs required peripherals to expand computer capabilities, and builds e-commerce applications, such as Web sites and corporate blogs. Their client base includes international companies and academic institutions. A/B/C works extensively with FIRE industries (Finance, Insurance, and Real Estate).

A new client, Home and Hearth Security Insurance Company, has asked A/B/C to build its e-commerce opportunities. Home and Hearth's current Web site is outdated. Since the Web site was created, Home and Hearth has added new services, including insurance coverage for electronic commerce, employment-related practices liability, financial institutions, management protection, and medical professional liability. In addition, Home and Hearth has expanded globally. It now has a presence in Asia (Japan, Taiwan, and Singapore), the Middle East (the United Arab Emirates, Jordan, and Israel), and South Africa. Home and Hearth's new services and new service locations are not evident on the current Web site.

An additional challenge for Home and Hearth is client contact. Currently, Home and Hearth depends on a hard-copy newsletter. However, corporate communications at Home and Hearth believes that a corporate blog would be a more effective means of connecting with its client base. A/B/C can meet Home and Hearth's needs by building a new Web site and by creating a corporate blog.

Assignments

1. Write the abstract that will preface A/B/C's long, formal report to Home and Hearth Security Insurance Company.
2. Write the introduction that will preface A/B/C's long, formal report to Home and Hearth Security Insurance Company.
3. Create a survey questionnaire asking Home and Hearth employees what they would like to see on the company's Web site and corporate blog.
4. Outline what you believe Home and Hearth's new Web site should include to cover its new international focus. This constitutes the discussion section of the report.
5. Conduct any research you need to find more information about either Web design or the development of a corporate blog.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Read a long, formal report. It might be one your instructor provides you or one you obtain from a business or online (see the links provided in this chapter's Web Workshop). If the report contains an abstract or executive summary, is it successful, based on the criteria provided in this chapter? Explain your decision. If the abstract or executive summary could be improved upon, revise it to make it more successful. If the report does not have an abstract or executive summary, write one.
2. Read the following abstract from Alpha/Beta Consulting, written for their client Nitrous Solutions. It needs revision. How would you improve its layout and content?

◀ EXAMPLE

> Nitrous Solutions, a multi-discipline architectural design, is a start-up business with plans to begin operation in October 2014. The company currently has no information technology network for internal and external communication. Alpha/Beta Consulting will recommend a server to meet Nitrous Solutions' unique needs, a backup solution for archiving architectural materials and critical communications, software for digital asset management, and a proposed network design. After implementing these suggestions, Nitrous Solutions will have an IT network that will be safe, secure, dependable, and prompt. The system that Alpha/Beta Consulting is recommending also can be restructured with simplicity as the company's needs grow. By installing the IT network recommended in this report, Nitrous Solutions will be able to fulfill their company's mission statement.

3. At the conclusion of their long, formal report, the employees at A/B/C wrote a recommendation. Their recommendation, though excellent in terms of its content, needed to be reformatted for easier access and better emphasis of key points. Read the employees' recommendation and improve its layout.

◀ EXAMPLE

> **Recommendations to Meet Nitrous Solutions' Network Needs**
>
> To ensure a secure and dependable network that can be restructured to meet Nitrous Solutions' developing needs, Alpha/Beta Consulting recommends the following:
>
> You can improve your computing system's "Application Layer." The applications software programs that Alpha/Beta Consulting recommends consist the Adobe Creative Suite 6 for imaging, editing, illustrations, file sharing, Web designs and digital processing; Microsoft Office, for spreadsheets, word processing documents, project timelines and maintenance; and

Internet communication utilities, such as Web browsers and FTP clients, to guarantee rapid deployment of company communications and contract sales. All of these applications will be run on both the current Mac and Windows operating systems.

You also need to add a "Data Layer" to your new computing system. The data transferred on the new network will consist of large graphic files and fonts being accessed from a centralized server, postscript printing, voice, and messaging. TCP/IP will be the main communication protocol, but Appletalk may also be used.

To meet Nitrous Solutions' network infrastructure requirements, Alpha/Beta Consulting recommends Category 6 (Cat 6) cables connected to 1Gbps switches. These constitute your "Network Layer." The logical star topology network will enable a higher degree of performance for all users associated with the production of architectural designs, meet all organizational duties and communications requirements, and provide a centralized server as the main point of access for all the client machines

Finally, once installed, the physical network must have a "Technology Layer." This will enable the company to perform at a competitive level. This communication system will be a vital piece of the overall success of the company. The server will provide quick and reliable data storage, meet Nitrous Solutions' data backup needs, and allow for streamlined work flow.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECE

Read the following text from a long, formal report written by Alpha/Beta Consulting. Based on the explanation in this chapter, decide whether the text informs, analyzes, and/or recommends. Explain your decisions.

EXAMPLE ▶

Purpose Statement

This report will recommend the design parameters, hardware specifications, and estimated expenses needed to build and install external and internal computer network technology to meet Nitrous Solutions' communication needs.

This report's recommendation will focus on the following key areas:

- A solution for Nitrous Solutions' server needs
- Recommendations for a backup solution
- Possible software for digital asset management
- A proposed network design

Needs Analysis

1. *Company Background*

Nitrous Solutions, a multi-discipline architectural design firm located in Raleigh, North Carolina, is a start-up company. Nitrous Systems will occupy a 2,000-square-foot office space. They plan to begin operations in October 2014. The company will provide industrial, interior, landscape, and green architecture services for an international client base. Communication is a major component of their business plan. Thus, a reliable, efficient, creative communications/IT technology system is mandatory.

2. *Basic IT Requirements*

Currently, Nitrous Solutions has no network. The company needs an infrastructure plan that allows for the following:

- An IT platform that will be compatible with Mac and Windows.
- Eight Windows work stations and four Mac platforms.
- A network based on WiMAX impact.
- An internal and external network that is safe, secure, reliable, and fast.
- An internal and external network that can store, execute, and transmit architectural materials.

- A network that will allow for successful communications to clients, partners, and vendors.
- A data backup solution.
- Digital asset management software.

3. *Detailed IT Requirements*

In addition to the basic network requirements for Nitrous Solutions, the company also has asked for recommendations to meet the following micro network needs:

- Information about the most efficient server operating system for reliable communication in a cross-platform environment.
- Requirements for different file and storage server hardware and software.
- An analysis of which FTP server software would transfer secure data reliably to external clients.
- The need for scripts to scan recently modified files and back them up to a server.
- Reliable backup solutions and backup media types.
- A comparison of different software applications that would prevent data duplication in the permanent backup archives.
- A comparison of software that could catalog backup storage.
- A software solution allowing Microsoft Word documents to be converted and catalogued into one PDF file.

WEB WORKSHOP

You can find many examples of long, formal reports online. Compare the format of the online reports with the criteria for long, formal, researched reports discussed in this chapter. Explain where the online reports are similar to or different from this chapter's criteria. Do the online reports successfully communicate information and analyze issues and problems? Check out these sites for examples:

- Reporting Student Progress: Policy and Practice (http://www.bced.gov.bc.ca/classroom_assessment/09_report_student_prog.pdf)
- The Use of Radio Frequency Identification by the Department of Homeland Security to identify and track suspicious individuals (http://www.dhs.gov/xlibrary/assets/privacy/privacy_advcom_rpt_rfid_draft.pdf)
- The United States Government Accountability Offices' Report on "Women's Participation in the Sciences" (http://www.gao.gov/new.items/d04639.pdf)
- The World Health Organization's Report on HIV/AIDS http://www.who.int/hiv/fullreport_en_highres.pdf

PARENTHETICAL SOURCE CITATIONS AND DOCUMENTATION

To document research correctly, you must provide parenthetical source citations following the quote or paraphrase within the text. At the end of your document, supply a references page (American Psychological Association and Council of Science Editors) or a works cited page (Modern Language Association).

Parenthetical Source Citations

The American Psychological Association (APA), the Council of Science Editors (CSE), and the Modern Language Association (MLA) use a parenthetical form of source citations. If your boss or instructor requests footnotes or endnotes, you should still use these forms. However, the most modern approach to source citations according to MLA and APA requires only that you cite the source of your information parenthetically after the quotation or paraphrase. The CSE style manual uses a number after the quote or paraphrase to reference the source to the references page at the end of the document. CSE also uses an author-year sequence similar to APA.

APA Format

One Author. If you do not state the author's name or the year of the publication in the lead-in to the quotation, include the author's name, year of publication, and page number in parentheses, after the quotation.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints" (Cottrell, 2011, p. 118).

(Page numbers are included for quoted material. The writer determines whether page numbers are included for source citations of summaries and paraphrases.)

Two Authors. When you cite a source with two authors, always use both last names with an ampersand (&).

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (Gerson & Gerson, 2011, p. 158).

Three or More Authors. When your citation has more than two authors but fewer than six, use all the last names in the first parenthetical source citation. For subsequent citations, list the first author's last name followed by *et al.* (Latin for "and others"), the year of publication, and for a quotation, the page number.

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" (Conners et al., 2011, p. 2).

Anonymous Works. When no author's name is listed, include in the source citation the title or part of a long title and the year. Book titles are underlined or italicized, and periodical titles are placed in quotation marks.

> Flash drives have revolutionized data storage (*Electronic Databases,* 2011).

> Effective e-mail messages can be organized in three paragraphs ("Using Templates," 2011).

CSE Format

In-text citations for quoted or paraphrased material are in the form of superscript numbers. Sometimes, editors prefer that numbers are placed in parentheses or in brackets. The number refers to the numbered source citations on the references list at the end of the document. Many editors and publishers believe that a numbered form of citation is less intrusive to the reader than the method used by APA or MLA.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints."[1]

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (2).

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" [3].

MLA Format

One Author. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the author's last name and the page number of the information.

> "Viewing the molecular activity required state-of-the-art electron microscopes" (Heinlein 193).

Note that the period follows the parenthesis, not the quotation. Also note that no comma separates the name from the page number and that no lowercase *p* precedes the number.

Two Authors. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the authors' last names and the page number of the information.

> "Twitter has dramatically changed the way we write on the job" (Crider and Berry 292).

Three or More Authors. Writing a series of names can be cumbersome. To avoid this, if you have a source of information written by three or more authors, parenthetically cite one author's name, followed by *et al.* and the page number.

> "The development of gaming software is a growing industry" (Norwood et al. 93).

Anonymous Works. If your source has no author, parenthetically cite the shortened title and page number.

> "Robots are more accurate and less prone to errors caused by long hours of operation than humans" ("Useful Robots" 81).

Documentation of Sources

Parenthetical source citations are an abbreviated form of documentation. In parentheses, you tell your readers only the names of your authors and the page numbers on which the information can be found, or you provide a number that parallels the numbered source at the end of the document. Such documentation alone would be insufficient. Your readers would not know the names of the authors (in CSE numerical-sequence format), the titles of the books, the names of the periodicals, or the dates, volumes, or publishing companies. This more thorough information is found on the references page (APA) or works cited page (MLA), a listing of research sources alphabetized either by author's name or title (if anonymous). On the references page (CSE), you organize the citations numerically by the order in which the quote or paraphrase appeared in the text. This is the last page[s] of your research report.

Your entries should follow APA, CSE, and MLA standards. (Additional style manuals are available for many professions.) MLA no longer requires the use of URLs in source citations. Because Web addresses can change and documents sometimes appear in several different databases, MLA says that most readers can find electronic sources using title or author searches in Internet search engines. If you do include a URL, MLA says to put the URL in angle brackets after the date of access. Use slash marks to break a URL.

APA References

The APA style is commonly used in both engineering and scientific fields. The following are sample entries for the reference page, which is placed at the end of the document. Include on the reference page only sources from which you cited in the document. For a comprehensive illustration of reference page entries, use the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association* (2009) and the *APA Style Guide to Electronic References* (2009).

A book with one author

Cottrell, R. C. (2006). *Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II*. London: McFarland and Co., Inc.

A book with two authors

Heath, C. & Heath, D. (2007). *Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die*. New York: Random House.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell, J., McNeniman, L., & Langan, J. (1997). *The Macmillan writer.* Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends.* Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

A translated book

Phelps, R. (Ed.). (1983). *The collected stories of Colette* (M. Ward, Trans.). New York: Farrar, Straus & Giroux.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, K. (2005). What's in a Name? In R. Atwan (Ed.), *America now: short readings from recent periodicals* (pp. 12–20). NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, R. (2007, April). Getting—and keeping good clients. *Intercom,* 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, J. (2007, May 28). A question of honor. *Time,* 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

Internet. (2000). *The world book encyclopedia.* Chicago: World Book.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities [Computer software]. (2002–2004). Dell, Inc.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

E-mail

According to APA, do not include e-mail messages in the list of references. You should cite the message parenthetically in your text. (J. Millard, personal communication, April 2, 2011).

Blog

McWard, J. (2011, May 31). Graphics on-line. Message posted to http://www.jmcward.net.

Personal Web site

Mohr, E. (2011, Dec. 29). Home page of Ellen Mohr's Web site. Retrieved from http://emohr.edu.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. (2011, Jan. 5). Johnson County Community College. Retrieved from http://jccc.edu.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

APA References Page

Place the references page at the end of the document or in an appendix. The entries on the reference page are alphabetized by author's last name or title.

References

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends.* Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

CSE References

The CSE style guide shows two systems for organizing references at the end of the document. First, you can use the citation-sequence system that lists the numbered references in the order cited within the text (illustrated below). Second, you can follow the name-year system that lists references in alphabetical order by author's last name.

Personal e-mail messages, blog entries, personal Web sites, and entries to listservs should not automatically be included on a references list. According to the CSE style manual, the decision to include such references is left to publishers and editors.

The CSE style of documentation is used in the fields of biology and medicine. Following are sample entries using the numerical system for the references list. For a comprehensive

illustration of entries on the references list, use the *Scientific Style and Format: The CSE Manual for Authors, Editors, and Publishers* (2006).

A book with one author

Cottrell RC. Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II. London: McFarland and Co., Inc.; 2006. p 27–28.

A book with two authors

Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell J., McNeniman L., Langan J. The Macmillan writer. Boston: Allyn and Bacon; 1997. p 224.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends. Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central; 2007.

A translated book

Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton K. What's in a name? R. Atwan, editor. America now: short readings from recent periodicals. NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2005. p 12–20.

A signed article in a journal

Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007 April: 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe J. A question of honor. Time 2007 May 28: 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C: 3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. Technical Communication 2009 Sep 23; 22.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. [cited 2011 Jan 5]. Available from: http://jccc.edu.

CSE References Page

The references page in CSE style is placed either at the end of the document or in an appendix. List the sources in the order in which they appeared in the document.

References

1. Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007; April: 8–12.
2. Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.
3. Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.
4. Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.
5. Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C:3.

MLA Works Cited

MLA documentation format is used in the arts and humanities fields. Following are examples of entries on the works cited page. For a comprehensive illustration of MLA format for the works cited page, refer to the *MLA Style Manual and Guide to Scholarly Publishing* (2008). MLA also recently provided an abbreviated, updated style guide, *A Guide to MLA Style 2009 Update*.

A book with one author

Cottrell, Robert C. *Smoke Jumpers of the Civilian Public Service in World War II*. London: McFarland and Co., Inc., 2006. Print.

A book with two or three authors

Heath, Chip, and Dan Heath. *Made to Stick: Why Some Ideas Survive and Others Die*. New York: Random House, 2007. Print.

A book with four or more authors

Nadell, Judith, et al. *The Macmillan Writer.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1997. Print.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends.* Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

A translated book

Phelps, Robert, ed. *The Collected Stories of Colette*. Trans. Matthew Ward. New York: Farrar, Straus Giroux, 1983. Print.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, Kendra. "What's in a Name?" *America Now: Short Readings from Recent Periodicals.* Ed. Robert Atwan. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's, 2005. 12–20. Print.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, Rachel. "Getting—and Keeping Good Clients." *Intercom* (April 2007): 8–12. Print.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, Jason. "University to go wireless." *The Kansas City Star* 29 Mar. 2007: C3. Print.

An unsigned article

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

"Internet." *The World Book Encyclopedia.* 2000 ed. Chicago: World Book. Print.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities. Computer software. Dell, Inc., 2002–2004. Print.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

E-mail

Schneider, Max. "Re: Teaching Technical Communication." Message to Sharon Gerson. 2 Apr. 2011. Email.

Blog

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Personal Web site

Mohr, Ellen. Home page. 29 Dec. 2009. Web. 30 December 2011.

Professional web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. 5 Jan. 2009. Web. 14 Feb. 2011.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Ptsui [Peter Tsui]. "Questionnaire." *Society for Technical Communication Listserv.* 15 Sep. 2011. Web. 17 Sep. 2011.

MLA Works Cited Page

At the end of the document, include a works cited page or place this page in an appendix.

Works Cited

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends*. Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version*. National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

© Supri Suharjoto / Fotolia
© Steven and Sharon Gerson
© Michal Kowalsk / Shutterstock

Proposals

Proposals

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, small business owner Mary Whittier writes proposals to market her company.

Mary Whittier is the owner of Business Communicators, Inc. "I'm also the receptionist, the accountant, the marketing department, and the janitor. I'm a one-person company, so I do it all. The title 'Owner' or 'President' sounds pretentious under the circumstances. Anyway, the most important thing I do is help clients accomplish the goals they have for their print and electronic materials. I'm not sure what the title is for that."

Whatever her title, Mary creates a variety of materials for her clients including requirements documentation, user manuals, training materials, job aids, newsletter articles, marketing copy, proposals, presentations, and more. Her clients are just as varied as the materials.

On any project, the client's goal is Mary's primary focus. Before getting started, she encourages clients to be very clear about who their audience is and what the objectives of the finished materials are. Then she uses her training and experience to create written documents that address the audience and meet the goals.

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- Understand that you might have multiple readers for a proposal, including internal and external audiences
- Write effective internal proposals to persuade corporate decision makers to address issues and provide resources
- Write effective external proposals to sell a new service or product to a potential customer
- Distinguish among common proposal terms including RFP, T&C, SOW, boilerplate, solicited proposals, and unsolicited proposals
- Apply research techniques to gather information for proposals
- Include a cover letter or e-mail cover message (stating why you're writing and what you're writing about; what exactly you're providing the readers; what's next—follow-up action)
- Include the following in a proposal: title page; list of illustrations; abstract; introduction (providing a statement of purpose and an analysis of the problem); discussion (solving the readers' problem by discussing topics such as procedures, specifications, timetables, materials/equipment, personnel, credentials, facilities, options, and costs); conclusion; glossary; works cited (or references); and appendix
- Design the proposal to make content visually appealing and accessible through highlighting techniques, headings and subheadings, and visual aids
- Write persuasively to convince your audience to act by arousing reader interest, refuting opposing points of view, gathering details to support your argument, and urging action
- Write ethically by documenting sources and making sure your content (prices, timelines, credentials, etc.) are accurate
- Evaluate your proposal using this chapter's checklist

During her work day, if Mary is not in her home office writing or doing research, she is on the phone or in a client's office attending project meetings or interviewing subject matter experts. She also spends a good deal of time reading existing documentation in order to fully understand the subject matter of a project. Although tackling new topics can be a challenge at times, "It's what I love best," she says. "I'm always learning something new."

According to Mary, no matter what the project is, clear, two-way communication is critical at every step. "Obviously, clients hire me to share my expertise with them, but if I don't listen to my clients carefully in return, I run the risk of creating materials that fail to get the job done. In that case, nobody is happy."

Her company has a small budget for advertising, so Mary cannot rely only on satisfied customers and word of mouth for new projects. She writes proposals to generate new business. Mary responds to RFPs (requests for proposals) and researches expanding companies in her region to see where growth opportunities might exist. Then, based on her research, she writes unsolicited proposals explaining how her company could help with corporate communication challenges. Mary's proposals have assured her a steady stream of revenue and a very successful business.

Why Write a Proposal?

When you write a proposal, your goal is to sell an idea persuasively. Consider this scenario: Your company is growing rapidly. As business increases, several changes must occur to accommodate this growth. For example, the company needs a larger facility. This new building could be located in your city's vibrant new downtown expansion corridor, in a suburban setting, or entail the expansion of your current site. A new building or expansion should include amenities to improve recruitment of new employees, such as workout facilities, daycare, and restaurant options. Finally, as part of new employee recruitment, the company must increase its diversity hiring practices.

Internal Proposals

How will you convey these ideas to upper-level management? The topic is large and will require extensive financial obligations, time for planning, and a commitment to new staffing. A short, informal report will not suffice. In contrast, you will have to write a type of longer, formal report—an *internal proposal* for your company's management.

Additional examples of internal proposals include the following:

- Your company needs to improve its mobile communication abilities for employees who work at diverse locations. To accomplish this goal, you write an internal proposal requesting the purchase of WiFi-compatible laptops, smartphones, and MiFi routers to give smartphones mobile WiFi capabilities.
- Your company's insurance coverage is skyrocketing. As a member of the human resources staff, you have researched insurance carriers and now will propose insurance options or opt-out options to upper-level management.
- Your company is migrating to a new software platform. Employees will need training to use the software. You propose consulting companies that can offer training, optional schedules, funding sources, and post-training certification.

External Proposals

Whereas *internal proposals* are written to management within your company, *external proposals* are written to sell a new service or product to an audience outside your company. Your biotechnology company, for example, has developed new software for running virtual cell cultures. The software simulates cell runs and displays synchronous strip charts for sterile monitoring. Data from the runs are graphed for comparison purposes. Not only will your company sell the software, but also the company provides consulting services to train clients in the software use. Your responsibility is to write an *external proposal* selling the benefits of this new corporate offering to a prospective client.

Requests for Proposals

Many external proposals are written in response to *requests for proposals* (RFPs). Often, companies, city councils, and state or federal agencies need to procure services from other corporations. A city, for example, might need extensive road repairs. A governmental agency needs Internet security systems for its offices. A hospital asks engineering companies to submit proposals about facility improvements. An insurance company needs to buy a fleet of cars for its adjusters. To receive bids and analyses of services, the city will write an RFP, specifying the scope of its needs. Competing companies will respond to this RFP with an external proposal.

In each of these instances, you ask your readers to make significant commitments regarding employees, schedules, equipment, training, facilities, and finances. Only a proposal, complete with research, will convey your content sufficiently and successfully.

FAQs: Typical Proposal Terms

Q: When I read about proposals, I see terms like *RFP, T&C, SOW, boilerplate*, and *solicited* and *unsolicited*. What do these words mean?

A: Here's a table defining these common proposal terms:

Proposal Terms	Definitions
Boilerplate	Any content (text or graphics) that can be used in many proposals
RFP	Request for Proposals—means by which external companies and agencies ask for proposals
Solicited Proposal	A proposal written in response to a request
SOW	Scope of Work *or* Statement of Work—a summary of the costs, dates, deliverables, personnel certifications, and/or company history
T&C	Terms and Conditions—the exact parameters of the request and expected responses
Unsolicited Proposal	A proposal written on your own initiative

Criteria for Proposals

To guide your readers through a proposal, provide the following:

- Title page
- Cover letter (or cover e-mail message for electronic submission of proposals)
- Table of contents
- List of illustrations
- Abstract
- Introduction
- Discussion (the body of the proposal)
- Conclusion/recommendation
- Glossary
- Works cited (or references) page
- Appendix

Each of these components, typical of long, formal reports, is thoroughly covered in that chapter. Following is information specifically related to your proposal's abstract, introduction, and conclusion/recommendation.

Abstract

Your audience for the proposal will be diverse. Accountants might read your information about costs and pricing, technicians might read your technical descriptions and process analyses, human resources personnel might read your employee biographies, and shipping/delivery might read your text devoted to deadlines. One group of readers will be management—supervisors, managers, and highly placed executives. How do these readers' needs differ from others? Because these readers are busy with management concerns and might have little technical knowledge, they need your help in two ways: They need information quickly, and they need it presented in low-tech terminology. You can achieve both of these objectives through an abstract or executive summary.

The abstract, limited to approximately three to ten sentences, presents the *problems* leading to your proposal, the suggested *solutions*, and the *benefits* your audience will derive. The following is an example of a brief, low-tech abstract for an internal proposal.

EXAMPLE ▶

An effective abstract highlights the problem, possible solutions, and benefits in the proposal.

Abstract

Due to deregulation and the recent economic recession, we must reduce our workforce by 12%.

Our plan for doing so involves

- Freezing new hires
- Promoting early retirement
- Reassigning second-shift supervisors to our Desoto plant
- Temporarily laying off third-shift line technicians

Achieving the above will allow us to maintain production during the current economic difficulties.

Introduction

Your introduction should include two primary sections: (1) purpose and (2) problem.

Purpose. In one to three sentences, tell your readers the purpose of your proposal. Your purpose statement clarifies the proposal's context. The following is an effective purpose statement.

EXAMPLE ▶

Purpose Statement

The purpose of this report is to propose the immediate installation of the 102473 Numerical Control Optical Scanner. This installation will ensure continued quality checks and allow us to meet agency specifications.

Problem (Needs Analysis). To clarify for the audience why this proposal is important, explain the problems leading to your suggestions. For example, computer viruses are attacking your company's work stations. This is leading to a decline in productivity, compromised security, and corrupted documents. Your proposal highlights these problems to explain why new computer security measures are needed. One way to help your readers understand the problem is through the use of highlighting techniques, especially headings and subheadings. See Figure 1 for a sample introduction.

Discussion

When writing the text for your proposal, sell your ideas persuasively, develop your ideas thoroughly through research, observe ethical technical communication standards, organize your content so the audience can follow your thoughts easily, and use graphics.

Communicating Persuasively. A successful proposal will make your audience act. Writing persuasively is especially important in an *unsolicited* proposal since your audience has not asked for your report. A *solicited* proposal, perhaps in response to an RFP, is written to meet an audience's specific request. Your audience wants you to help them meet a need or solve a problem. In contrast, when you write an unsolicited proposal, your audience has not asked for your assistance. Therefore, in this type of proposal, you must convincingly persuade the audience that a need exists and that your proposed recommendations will benefit the reader.

FIGURE 1 Introduction with Purpose Statement and Needs Analysis

Introduction

Purpose Statement

This is a proposal for a storm sewer survey for Yakima, Washington. First, the survey will identify storm sewers needing repair and renovation. Then it will recommend public works projects that would control residential basement flooding in Yakima.

Needs Analysis

Increased Flooding

Residential basement flooding in Yakima has been increasing. Fourteen basements were reported flooded in 2011, whereas 83 residents reported flooded basements in 2014.

Provide specific details to explain the problem. Doing so shows that you understand the reader's needs and highlights the proposal's importance.

Property Damage

Basement flooding in Yakima results in thousands of dollars in property damage. The following are commonly reported as damaged property:

- Washers
- Dryers
- Freezers
- Furniture
- Furnaces

Major appliances cannot be repaired after water damage. Flooding also can result in expensive foundation repairs.

Indirect Costs

Flooding in Yakima is receiving increased publicity. Flood areas, including Yakima, have been identified in newspapers and on local newscasts. Until flooding problems have been corrected, potential residents and businesses may be reluctant to locate in Yakima.

Special-Interest Groups

Citizens over 55 years old represent 40 percent of the Yakima population. In city council meetings, senior citizens with limited incomes expressed their distress over property damage. Residents are unable to obtain federal flood insurance and must bear the financial burden of replacing flood-damaged personal and real property. Senior citizens (and other Yakima residents) look to city officials to resolve this financial dilemma.

To write persuasively, accomplish the following:

- Arouse audience involvement—focus on your audience's needs that generated this proposal.
- Refute opposing points of view in the body of your proposal.
- Give proof to develop your content, through research and proper documentation.
- Urge action—motivate your audience to act upon your proposal by either buying the product or service or adopting your suggestions or solutions.

Researching Content for Proposals. As in any long, formal report, consider developing your content through research. This can include primary and secondary sources such as the following:

- Interviewing customers, clients, vendors, and staff members
- Creating a survey and distributing it electronically or as hard-copy text
- Visiting job sites to determine your audience's needs
- Using the Internet to locate sources of documentation, such as articles
- Reading journals, books, newspapers, and other hard-copy text

Communicating Ethically in Proposals. When you write a proposal, your audience will make decisions based on your content. They will decide what amounts of money to budget, how to allocate time, what personnel will be needed to complete a task, and if additional equipment or facilities will be required. Therefore, your proposal must be accurate and honest. You cannot provide information in the proposal that dishonestly affects your decision makers. To write an ethical proposal, provide accurate information about credentials, pricing, competitors, needs assessment, and sources of information and research. When using research, for example, cite sources accurately to avoid plagiarism.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about ethical considerations, check out the following link:

- The Online Ethics Center for Engineering and Science http://www.onlineethics.org/

Organizing Your Content. Your proposal will be long and complex. To help your audience understand the content, use modes of organization. These can include the following:

- **Comparison/contrast.** Rely on this mode when offering options for vendors, software, equipment, facilities, and more.
- **Cause/effect.** Use this method to show what created a problem or caused the need for your proposed solution.
- **Chronology.** Show the timeline for implementation of your proposal, reporting deadlines to meet, steps to follow, and payment schedules.
- **Analysis.** Subdivide the topic into smaller parts to aid understanding.

See Table 1 for organization and key components of a proposal's discussion section.

TABLE 1 Key Components of the Proposal's Discussion Section

Analysis of the existing situation, your suggested solutions, and the benefits your audience will derive	Spatial descriptions of mechanisms, tools, facilities, or products	Process analysis explaining how the product or service works	Chronological instructions explaining how to complete a task
Comparative approaches to solving a problem	Comparing and contrasting purchase options	Managerial chains of command	Chronological schedules for implementation, reporting, maintenance, delivery, payment, or completion
Corporate and employee credentials	Years in business	Testimonials from satisfied clients	Certifications
Analysis of previous accomplishments	Biographical sketches of personnel	Chronological listing of projected milestones (forecasts)	Comparative cost charts

Using Graphics. Graphics, including tables and figures, can help you emphasize and clarify key points. For example, note how the following graphics can be used in your proposal's discussion section:

- **Tables.** Your analysis of costs lends itself to tables.
- **Figures.** The proposal's main text sections could profit from the following figures:
  - **Line charts**—excellent for showing upward and downward movement over a period of time. A line chart could be used to show how a company's profits have decreased, for example.
  - **Bar charts**—effective for comparisons. Through a bar or grouped bar chart, you could reveal visually how one product, service, or approach is superior to another.
  - **Pie charts**—excellent for showing percentages. A pie chart could help you show either the amount of time spent or amount of money allocated for an activity.
  - **Line drawings**—effective for technical descriptions and process analyses.
  - **Photographs**—effective for technical descriptions and process analyses.
  - **Flowcharts**—a successful way to help readers understand procedures.
  - **Organizational charts**—excellent for giving an overview of managerial chains of command.

Conclusion/Recommendations

Sum up your proposal, providing your readers closure. The conclusion can restate the problem, your solutions, and the benefits to be derived. Your recommendation will suggest the next course of action. Specify when this action will or should occur and why that date is important. The following example is a conclusion/recommendation from an internal proposal.

◀ EXAMPLE

Summarize the key elements of the proposal.

Solutions for Problem

Our line capability between San Marcos and LaGrange is insufficient. Presently, we are 23 percent under our desired goal. Using the vacated fiber cables will not solve this problem because the current configuration does not meet our standards. Upgrading the current configuration will improve our capacity by only 9 percent and still present us the risk of service outages.

Recommend follow-up action and show the benefits derived.

Recommended Actions

We suggest laying new fiber cables for the following reasons. They will

- Provide 63 percent more capacity than the current system
- Reduce the risk of service outages
- Allow for forecasted demands when current capacity is exceeded
- Meet standard configurations

If these new cables are laid by September 1, 2014, we will predate state tariff plans to be implemented by the new fiscal year.

PROPOSAL CHECKLIST

Have you included the following in your proposal?

_____ **1.** Title page (listing title, audience, author or authors, and date)

_____ **2.** Cover letter or e-mail cover message (stating why you're writing and what you're writing about; what exactly you're providing the readers; what's next—follow-up action)

_____ **3.** Table of contents (listing all major headings, subheadings, and page numbers)

_____ **4.** List of illustrations (listing all figures and tables, including their numbers and titles, and page numbers)

_____ **5.** Abstract (stating in low-tech terms the problem, solution, and benefits)

_____ **6.** Introduction (providing a statement of purpose and a lengthy analysis of the problem)

_____ **7.** Discussion (solving the readers' problem by discussing topics such as procedures, specifications, timetables, materials/equipment, personnel, credentials, facilities, options, and costs)

_____ **8.** Conclusion (restating the benefits and recommendation for action)

_____ **9.** Glossary (defining terminology)

_____ **10.** Appendix (optional additional information)

SPOTLIGHT

How to Write an Effective Proposal

In an interview, **Mary Woltkamp,** President of Effective Communications, Inc., made the following comments about the importance of proposals in her job.

Q: Tell me about proposals.

A: All of the proposals that I write are for an external audience: potential clients. Thus, the tone is very formal and businesslike. One thing I always keep in mind when I'm writing is word choice. It's very easy to slip into the jargon of our industry, but more often than not, those terms are foreign to our clients. When I have to use industry-specific words, I define them. I'm also very conscious of the length of my words, sentences, and paragraphs. In general, the people who read my proposals are very busy. They don't have time to wade through a lot of unnecessary verbiage. I'm a big fan of headings, subheadings, and bulleted lists, and I always use lots of white space.

Q: What are some components in your proposals?

A: I include the following headings in a project proposal:

- Contact Information—for both the client and my company—Always the first page of the document.
- Situation—What is the client's need? This assures the client that we understand their dilemma.
- Business Objectives—How will this project positively affect the client's business and return on investment?
- Project Objectives—What behaviors will be changed as a result of the project or training?
- Scope—A very detailed list of all the tasks that we think will need to be done in order to complete the project.
- Deliverables—What the client gets when we're all done, such as paper materials, electronic files, etc.
- Project Timeline—The milestones that have been identified at this point in the process.
- Time and Cost Estimates—A table that outlines our time and cost estimates for each task listed in the Scope.
- Project Team and Company Background—A short biography on all team members, plus our expertise and references (tailored to the prospective client's industry).

Q: Who constitutes the audience for your proposals?

A: It varies. Sometimes the proposal is addressed to someone pretty high up, such as the company's president and CEO. Other times, we're dealing with a department manager or project manager who is responsible for the project.

Q: Do you use boilerplate content?

A: Absolutely. I will cut and paste from multiple documents if it saves me time and makes the proposal stronger. I always have to make changes to whatever I paste into the proposal, but at least I don't have to start from scratch on every paragraph. I'm a firm believer in NOT reinventing the wheel—or retyping content when it can be avoided.

Q: Do you follow a writing process (routing, approvals, team-written, etc.), and if so, what might it be?

A: I follow a process every time I write. As for proposals, once I have completed a rough draft, I pass it off to our sales and marketing manager for input. After I make any changes my colleagues suggest, the document goes to our editor/business manager, who reviews it—both for grammar and for detail. Bottom line: A proposal never leaves this office without at least two pairs of eyes looking at it very closely. Our proposal is the first sample of our work that most clients see. Therefore, we make sure that it is as clean, concise, and user-friendly as we can possibly make it. It's our first opportunity to impress the client, and I'm happy to say that we often do.

The Writing Process at Work

Proposals include descriptions, instructions, cost analyses, scheduling assessments, and personnel considerations. Therefore, writing according to a process approach will help you write an effective proposal. For your proposal, to persuade your audience to act, you will gather data, organize information, and revise text. To help you accomplish these tasks, prewrite, write, and rewrite.

Prewriting

You first have to prewrite by considering the goals of your proposal. Mary Woltkamp had to write a proposal to show how she was going to solve a potential client's problem. For her prewriting, she created a questionnaire. In the questionnaire, she interviewed employees about challenges they faced when using a manual to complete a job-related task. With this primary research, she was able to gather information from the client. See Figure 2 for Mary's questionnaire.

FIGURE 2 Questionnaire for Planning a Proposal

About the Manual

- Are instructions for completing tasks set off clearly from the other text and written in a numbered, step-by-step format?
- Are graphics and screenshots used when appropriate to enhance the instructions?
- Does the material have a table of contents and/or index to help readers find the information they need?
- Are terms and acronyms clearly defined?

From Interviews with Employees

- What tasks do you perform without making mistakes? How often do you perform those tasks?
- What tasks do you struggle with? How often do you perform those tasks?
- Do you refer to the training manual when you are having trouble?
- If you do, can you find the information you need easily? Or at all?

From Interview with Manager

- What mistakes are causing the most problems?
- How often are these mistakes made?

Writing

After you gather information, you can then write a draft of a proposal. Below is Mary's draft of part of the Discussion section of her proposal (Figure 3).

FIGURE 3 Partial Draft of Discussion Section with Colleague Suggestions

Findings:

Employees perform 80 percent of the tasks in Application X with 100 percent accuracy. Each of these tasks is performed at least once a week if not daily. Employees also consistently identified five tasks that they have trouble completing. Three of these tasks are complicated, multi-step tasks with costly consequences when errors are made. Two of the tasks are performed only once a quarter.

Next, the instructions in the existing training manual are well-written. Graphics and screenshots are used often to enhance the clarity of the instructions. Because of this, employees found the manual to be very thorough and helpful in the classroom training sessions.

However, the manual does not have an index, and the table of contents is skeletal. Employees do not use the manual as a reference when they are having trouble with a task because the manual is cumbersome to handle and instructions are hard to find.

Mary, you need to include more details about goals and recommendations. That way we can clarify what we hope to achieve in the proposal.

Try using bullets and subheadings to break the information into smaller chunks for easy access.

The content is good, but we need to make this more persuasive. Let's highlight the errors that employees were making. Doing so will remind the readers exactly what prompted this proposal and how important our solutions are.

Rewriting

After drafting the document, Mary revised the proposal excerpt based on input from her colleague. Figure 4 is Mary's revised proposal excerpt.

FIGURE 4 Proposal Excerpt—Four Sections of the Total Proposal

Client Request

TechnoLand (Client) has asked Effective Communication, Inc. (EC) to submit a proposal for the redesign of an existing training manual. The manual is used to train new finance department employees on Application X, the company's expense reporting application.

Employees are currently making costly mistakes, and the Client believes that the manual is failing to communicate what employees need to know or do. The Client's request for proposal (RFP) does not indicate what information the Client relied on when deciding to have the manual revised.

Project Goal

The goal of the project is to eliminate the mistakes employees make when using Application X.

Findings

In response to TechnoLand, EC asked for and received permission to conduct a front-end analysis to confirm the cause of the mistakes being made in the application.

The findings include the following:

- Employees perform 80 percent of the tasks in Application X with 100 percent accuracy. Each of these tasks is performed at least once a week if not daily.
- Employees consistently identified five tasks that they have trouble completing. Three of these tasks are complicated, multi-step tasks with costly consequences when errors are made. Two of the tasks are performed only once a quarter.
- The instructions in the existing training manual are well-written. Graphics and screenshots are used often to enhance the clarity of the instructions.
- Employees found the manual to be very thorough and helpful in the classroom training sessions.
- The manual does not have an index, and the table of contents is skeletal.
- Employees do not use the manual as a reference when they are having trouble with a task because the manual is cumbersome to handle and instructions are hard to find.

Recommendation

Although the manual would benefit from the addition of an index and a more complete table of contents, a complete revision of the manual is unnecessary. Instead, EC recommends the creation of job aids for those tasks that are complicated, multi-step processes or for those tasks that are performed infrequently.

Sample Internal Proposal

Figure 5 shows a sample internal proposal.

FIGURE 5 Sample Internal Proposal for a New Mobile App

YourU

A Proposed Mobile Application Suite for College Students

For
Anderson Stolper, CEO
NanoTech Software Development, Inc.

By
Adriana Niemhoff, Manager
NanoTech Software Development Department

March 21, 2014

Include a proposal title, audience, author, and date of submission on your title page.

(*Continued*)

FIGURE 5 Sample Internal Proposal for a New Mobile App (Continued)

Date: March 21, 2014
To: Anderson Stolper
From: Adriana Niemhoff
Subject: Proposal for New Mobile Application Suite

According to Kristen Purcell of Pew Internet Research, mobile technology has led to the development of an “apps culture.” People with handheld devices are downloading billions of apps daily, and over half of the U.S. population owns mobile devices with app downloadable capabilities.

This represents huge potential and a growing market for our company. The software development department is proposing a new application suite, suitable for the largest audience of application users—college students. Our proposed app suite, entitled YourU, consists of the following *customizable* features:

- ConnectU—an app that provides students an all-in-one site for their friends and family’s contact information (e-mail address, phone numbers, Facebook sites, Twitter links, and more)
- MoneyU—an app that helps students manage their finances
- FunU—an app that lets students buy concert and athletic event tickets, organize parties, make restaurant reservations, download music, and more
- PlanU—an app that allows students to organize their lives for test dates, work scheduling, and other calendar events

We believe that this application suite will add value to our company’s product line. Once you have reviewed the proposal, please contact me by e-mail or phone so that our team can answer your questions. Thank you for your consideration.

Itemizing the customizable features emphasizes the benefits and usefulness of this new app.

To persuade the reader of the proposal’s value, the writer uses numerous pronouns and positive phrases, such as “huge potential,” “growing market,” and “add value.”

FIGURE 5 (Continued)

Table of Contents

Abstract iv
Problem iv
Solution iv
Benefits iv
Introduction 1
Purpose 1
Needs Assessment 1
Marketing Generic Products Does Not Meet the Needs of a Targeted Audience 1
Off-the-Shelf Products Create Problems with Revisitation and Profit Loss 2
Discussion 3
Research Proving Financial Value of Mobile Apps 3
Product Description 4
Features 4
Customization 4
Specifications 5
Software Development Costs 5
Return on Investment 5
Credentials 6
Conclusion/Recommendation 6
Glossary 7
Works Cited 8

Headings, subheadings, and page numbers help the audience find information and navigate the text.

List of Illustrations

Figure 1 Percent Market Based on Advertising Channel 1
Figure 2 Software Revisitation Patterns 2
Figure 3 COTS Sales versus Decreased Profits 2
Figure 4 Mobile Apps Revenue 3
Figure 5 College Color Customization 4
Figure 6 Projected ROI 5
Table 1 YourU App Suite Specifications 5

Figure and table numbers plus titles allow the readers to find the visuals quickly.

iii

(*Continued*)

FIGURE 5 Sample Internal Proposal for a New Mobile App (Continued)

Stating the problem, solution, and benefits gives focus to the proposal. Emphasize problems generating the proposal. Show how the proposal can solve the problems. Highlight the benefits derived by implementing the proposal's suggestions.

Abstract

Problem

Our company has been searching for a new product idea with the potential for sales growth in a targeted audience. Currently, our mobile application products have been generic with broad but unfocused appeal. In addition, our mobile applications have been limited to static, off-the-shelf products with limited growth potential. Therefore, sales have been steady, but return on investments has diminished.

Solution

A key to any product's success is targeting an audience and meeting their needs. Mobile apps represent a growing market. The largest client base for mobile apps is young adults ages 18 to 30, many of whom are college students. Therefore, the YourU app suite, geared toward college student needs, is an ideal product for our company to develop.

Benefits

Our proposed YourU app suite addresses the above problems as follows:

- Meets the needs of a niche market versus a generic market
- Provides end-users creative options to customize their purchase
- Organizes many capabilities into one app

iv

FIGURE 5 (Continued)

Introduction

Purpose

This report proposes the development of a new mobile application suite, geared toward a niche market of college students.

Needs Assessment

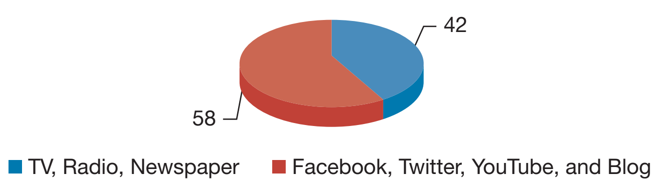
Marketing Generic Products Does Not Meet the Needs of a Targeted Audience:

Our current product line is broad but without focused appeal. We sell mobile apps that offer our end-users games, weathercasts, GPS mapping capabilities, sports news updates, online dictionaries, and financial updates (among other choices). These apps are successful options for a mass audience. However, our company's research and development department (R&D) has found that marketing such diverse product lines is challenging.

For example, the demographic market for games (boys and men ages 14 to 24) is not the same as the demographic for financial updates (men and women ages 45 to 65). The demographic market for sports news (men ages 20 to 30) is not the same as the demographic for weathercasts (men and women ages 35 to 55).

With such diverse demographic ranges, we cannot effectively target our advertising. For men and women ages 45 to 65, we have found that our preferred marketing options are radio, television, and newspapers. However, online venues such as Facebook, Twitter, YouTube, and blogs appeal to youth, men, and women ages 14 to 35. See Figure 1 for a breakdown of advertising channels we currently use for various markets.

Figure 1 Percent of Market Based on Advertising Channel



To more successfully target our advertising, we need a product that appeals to a niche audience so we can saturate a precise consumer base. The YourU app suite accomplishes this goal by allowing us to market primarily in social media.

1

To highlight the importance of this proposal, the writer assesses how the app will meet marketing needs. These include targeted audiences, frequency of app usage, and profitability.

(Continued)

FIGURE 5 Sample Internal Proposal for a New Mobile App (Continued)

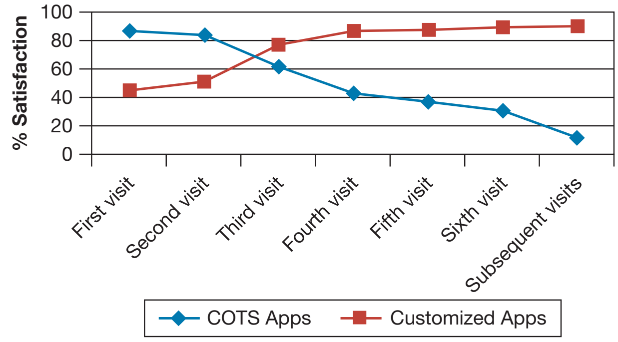
The figure adds visual appeal and makes content readily accessible to the readers.

Off-the-Shelf Products Create Problems with Revisitation and Profit Loss:

Our mobile app software consists of commercially available off-the-shelf (COTS) products. These have been cost effective to produce, but they present our company with two challenges:

- Static product abilities without customization lead to user disinterest. Clients always look for new experiences online, new reasons to return to an app. Figure 2 presents the results of an R&D survey regarding software revisitation patterns.

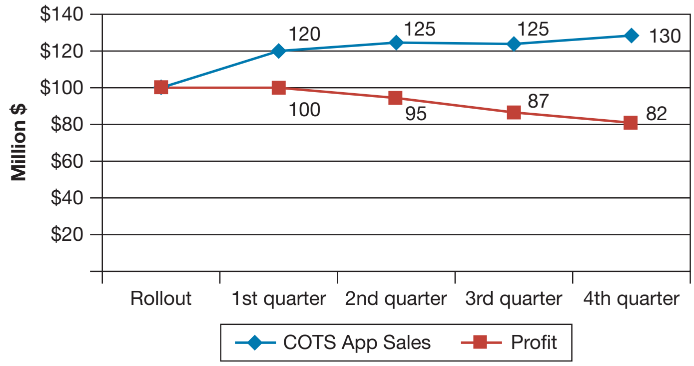
Figure 2 Software Revisitation Patterns



Customized apps with enhancements and upgrades maintain user interest and lead to higher visitation rates.

- Steady COTS app sales have not equaled profit. Our return on investment (ROI) actually has diminished when we consider increases in business expenses (marketing, taxes, salaries, etc.). As seen in Figure 3, R&D compares sales with profit decreases due to business expenditures.

Figure 3 COTS Sales versus Decreased Profits



2

FIGURE 5 (Continued)

Discussion

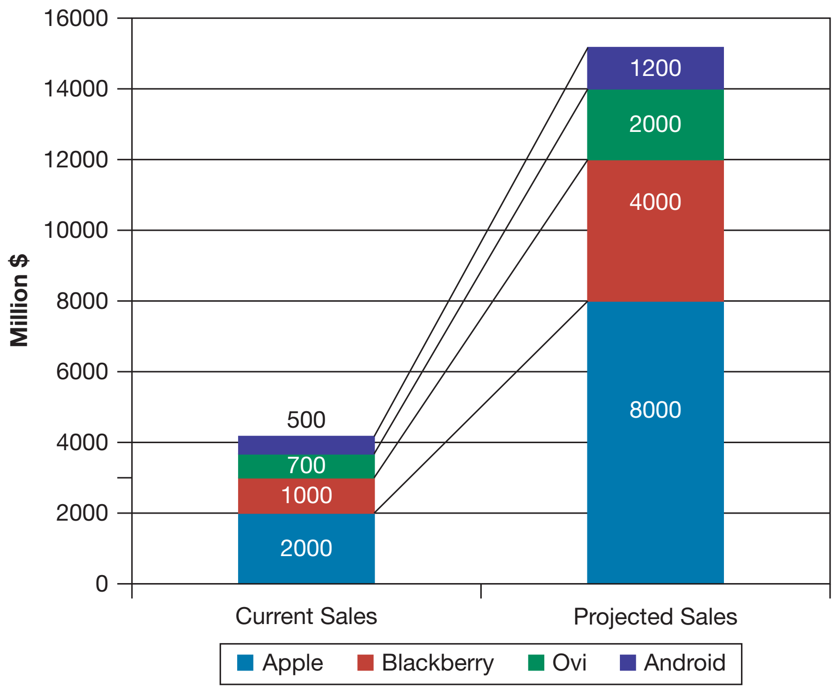
Research Proving Financial Value of Mobile Apps

R&D has found the following regarding the growing audience of app users:

- Half of all Americans own a smartphone that can support software applications. Even more potential clients own PDAs, cell phones, and handheld computers with app capabilities.
- More than 10 billion apps are downloaded each month.
- Approximately 500,000 apps are available for mobile devices (Weisser).

Figure 4 shows the operating systems on which our current and future apps can run and the revenue generated.

Figure 4 Mobile App Revenue



3

The writer adds depth to the content and persuades the audience through primary and secondary research.

The writer uses graphics to add visual interest to the text. The graphics also persuasively emphasize important information, including projected revenue. Where the text tells, the graphics show.

(Continued)

FIGURE 5 Sample Internal Proposal for a New Mobile App (Continued)

Highlighting the app's features persuades the reader of the product's uniqueness and benefit to the consumer.

Product Description

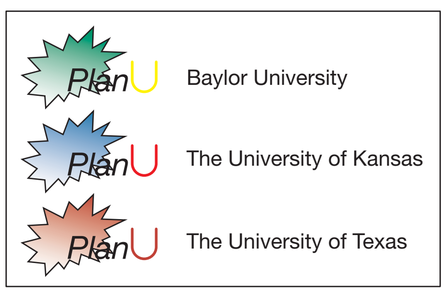
Features:
Our proposed YourU app suite will initially consist of the following four bundled apps.

- ConnectU—This app will provide students an all-in-one site for friend, family, and professor contact information. This will include, but not be limited to, e-mail addresses, phone numbers, street addresses, city/state/zip information, Facebook sites, Twitter links, and blog links.
- MoneyU—MoneyU will help students balance their checkbooks, keep track of their charges, and remind them when rent is due.
- FunU—This app lets students buy concert and athletic event tickets, organize parties, make restaurant reservations, and download music.
- PlanU—This app allows students to organize their lives for test dates, work scheduling, and other calendar events.

Customization:
Our proposed YourU app suite is programmed to allow end-users a new level of personal ownership. The YourU app suite lets clients do the following:

- Add photos.
- Add their own data for phone numbers, important dates, and contacts.
- Choose background images.
- Customize the app with their college colors, as shown in Figure 5.
- Access their apps and input customized data in their language of choice, including English, French, Italian, German, Spanish, Arabic, and Chinese.

Figure 5 College Color Customization



4

FIGURE 5 (Continued)

Specifications:
Table 1 provides an overview of YourU app suite specifications.

Table 1 YourU App Suite Specifications	
Features	**Specifications**
Supporting mobile devices	iPhones, iPad, IPod, Android, Nokia, Samsung, Sony Ericsson, Palm, Blackberry, and Windows Smartphone
Approximate file size per app	286 K
Graphics format	.jpg approximately 2,000 bytes 70 × 90 pixels per graphic

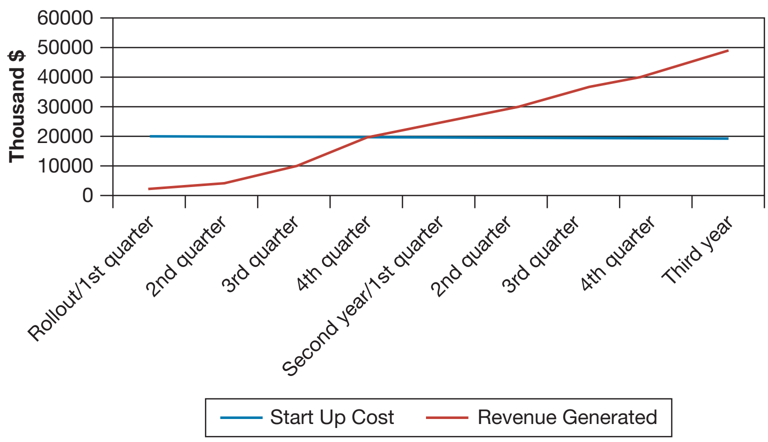
Software Development Costs

Based on prior app development benchmarks, we anticipate that each member of our software development team will spend a month on this project. Our team consists of five staff members. With each member devoting an eight-hour day to the project, five days a week, times four weeks, this will equal 800 work hours. Therefore, at $25 per hour for 800 hours, the upfront development costs will equal $20,000.

Return on Investment

Currently, our product line of apps ranges in price from as low as free downloads to as high as $39.99. A cost-effective price for the YourU app suite is $9.99. Figure 6 shows you the projected ROI based on this pricing structure.

Figure 6 Projected ROI



5

An analytical breakdown of the ROI shows the reader not only that the writer of the proposal has thoroughly researched the topic but also how soon the company will turn a profit.

(Continued)

FIGURE 5 Sample Internal Proposal for a New Mobile App (Continued)

Qualifications and experience help persuade the reader of staff members' expertise and ability to do the job.

Credentials

Our software development team consists of specialists ready to answer your questions.

- *Randy Draper, Team Lead*
  Randy (BS, Information Technology, South Central Texas University, 2009) has worked for NanoTech for five years. He was promoted to software development team lead after two years as an IT specialist. Randy has worked on over 60 software development projects, including 10 app creations.
- *Ruth Bressette*
  Ruth (BS, Computer Information Systems, Northwest New Mexico State University, 2011) has worked for NanoTech for three years. Ruth is our company's social media manager. This gives her unique insights into college student habits related to the development of our PlanU and FunU apps.
- *Doug Loeb*
  Doug (double degree: BS, Computer Information Systems; BS, Accounting, Idaho Tech University, 2010) has worked for NanoTech for two years. He is our expert in financial calculations.
- *Dana Anders*
  Dana (AS, Information Technology, Landview Community College, 2013) has worked for NanoTech for a year. Dana will be responsible for most of the coding.

Though Randy will be in charge of this project, as manager of the software development department, I will oversee all stages of app development.

Conclusion/Recommendation

Conclusion

Our current app line has led to limited sales and decreasing revenues for three reasons:

- Because the audience for our off-the-shelf software is very diverse in terms of age and interest, we have had difficulty targeting a market demographic.
- Our off-the-shelf software does not allow for customization.
- Without a customizable app, revisitation has been limited.

Recommendation

The NanoTech software development team recommends the creation of an app suite, YourU. This bundle of applications will target the largest audience of app users, college students. In addition, we propose a customizable suite that will empower users, personalize their apps, and lead to increased visitation.

6

FIGURE 5 (Continued)

Glossary

Term	Definition
Application Suite	Multiple applications bundled together with related functions and features that can interact with other apps within the suite.
Commercially available Off-the-Shelf (COTS) Software	A Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) term to define software that is commercially available to both the public and government. COTS are not in-house developed products and, therefore, serve a more generic purpose than customizable software.
Demographics	The characteristics of a human population. This can include gender, race, age, income, education, interests, employment, or location.
Mobile Apps	Application software developed for small handheld devices, such as PDAs, handheld computers, and smartphones.
Niche Market	A subset of a larger market. In a niche market, product features strive to satisfy a specific market's needs, price range, and demographics.
PDAs	Personal digital assistants.
Revisitation	The number of times a client visits a software application.
ROI	Return on investment (a calculation that compares initial cost versus revenue generated).

7

The alphabetized glossary defining jargon and technical terms helps both a low-tech and a lay audience understand the text.

(Continued)

FIGURE 5 Sample Internal Proposal for a New Mobile App (Continued)

Works Cited

"App Store." *Wikipedia*. 27 Mar. 2011. Web. 27 Mar. 2011.
Purcell, Kristen, et al. "The Rise of Apps Culture." *Pew Internet*. 14 Sep. 2010. Web. 22 Mar. 2011.
Weisser, Christian R. "Mobile Apps and the Tech Writing Curriculum." *DigitalInk*. 2011. Web. 25 Feb.2011.

8

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. You might have multiple readers for a proposal, including internal and external audiences. Consider your audience's needs. To communicate with different levels of readers, include abstracts, glossaries, and definitions.
2. A proposal could include the following:
   - Title page
   - Cover letter or cover e-mail message
   - List of illustrations
   - Abstract
   - Introduction
   - Discussion
   - Conclusion
   - Recommendation
   - Glossary
   - Works cited (or references)
   - Appendix
3. Subheadings and visual aids will make your proposal more accessible.
4. Use primary and secondary research to develop your content.
5. Write persuasively to convince your audience to act. To accomplish this goal, arouse reader interest, refute opposing points of view, gather details to support your argument, and urge action.
6. Write ethically by documenting sources and making sure your content (prices, timelines, credentials, etc.) is accurate.
7. Write effective internal proposals to persuade corporate decision makers to address issues and provide resource.
8. Write effective external proposals to sell a new service or product to a potential customer.
9. Distinguish among common proposal terms including RFP, T&C, SOW, boilerplate, solicited proposals, and unsolicited proposals.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. The technical communication department at Bellaire Educational Supplies/Technologies (BEST) needs new computer equipment. Currently, the department has outdated hardware, outdated word processing software, an outdated printer, and limited graphics capabilities. Specifically, the department is using computers with 15-inch monitors, hard drives with only 256 KB of memory, and one, 10-MB hard disk drive. The word processing package used is WordPro 3.0, a version created in 2000. Since then, WordPro has been updated four times; the latest version is 9.8. The department printer is a black-and-white Amniprint. To create art, the department must go off-site to a part-time graphic artist who charges $75 an hour, so the department uses very few graphics.

   Because of these problems, the company's user manuals, reports, and sales brochures are being poorly reviewed by customers. The bottom line: BEST is falling behind the curve, and profits are off 27 percent from last year. As department manager, you have consulted with staff members (Jade Nguyen, Mario Lozano, Mike Thurmand, and Maya Liu) to correct these problems. As a team, you have decided the company needs to purchase new equipment:

   - Six new personal computers
   - Two laser printers
   - Up-to-date word processing software
   - Graphics software
   - Scanner

Assignment

Using the criteria provided in this chapter, write an internal proposal to BEST's CEO, Jade McWard. In this proposal, explain the problem, discuss the solution to this problem, and then highlight the benefits derived once the solution has been implemented. These benefits will include increased productivity, better public relations, increased profits, and less employee stress. Develop these points thoroughly, and provide Mr. McWard the names of vendors for the required hardware and software. To find these vendors and technology specifications, search the Internet.

2. You own Buzz Electronics Co., 4256 Blue Mountain Blvd., Raleigh, North Carolina 65221. Mr. and Mrs. Allan Thibodeux, 3876 Spanish Moss Drive, Bayside, North Carolina 65223, have asked you to give them a bid on electrical work for a new family room they are adding to their home.

   You and Mr. and Mrs. Thibodeux have gone over the couple's electrical needs, including the following. The room, which will measure 18 feet (east to west) by 15 feet (north to south), should have four 110-V outlets for three lamps, a clock, a radio, an iPod and MP3 player, and a high-definition, flat-screen, 46-inch television. The family wants the four 110-V outlets to be placed equidistant throughout the room.

   The client wants two 220-V outlets. One 220-V outlet will go by the southwest window on the west wall where the family plans to put a window air conditioning unit. The window will be located 3 feet in from the south wall. There will be another window on the west wall, located 3 feet in from the north wall. A third picture window, measuring 6 feet wide by 4 feet high, will be centered on the south wall. The other 220-V outlet must be placed on the east wall, where the family plans to put home office equipment (computer, printer, scanner, and fax machine). Their office desk will sit 5 feet from the door leading into the room. The door will be built on the east wall where it comes to a corner meeting the south wall.

Centered in the ceiling, the family wants electrical wiring for a fan with a light package. In addition to this light, the family also wants a light mounted on the east wall above the desk area, so wiring is needed there, approximately 5 to 6 feet up from the floor.

The family wants two light switches in the room: one by the door and one on the north wall, approximately 6 feet in from where the north and west walls meet. The Thibodeux family plans to have a couch and lamp in that area for reading. They want both to be double switches, one to control the fan and ceiling lights; the other to control additional floor and ceiling lights in the room. All light switches need rheostats for dimming. Finally, Mr. and Mrs. Thibodeux plan to have a whole-house vacuum system installed in the walls, and they have asked you if you can provide this service.

Buzz Electronics has been in business since 1995. The company has worked with thousands of satisfied customers, including both residential and business owners. Buzz has long-standing contracts for service with Acme Construction, J&L Builders, Food-to-Go Groceries, the City of Piedmont, North Carolina, and Ross and Reed Auto Showroom.

As owner of Buzz Electronics, you have an associate's degree in electronics from Sandy Shoal Community College, Sandy Shoal, North Carolina. You are ETA-I (Electronics Technicians Association International) certified; NAST (National Appliance Service Technician) certified; and a certified industrial journeyman. You have eight employees, all of whom also are certified industrial journeymen.

Assignment

Write an external proposal—bid for contract. To do so, study the Thibodeux family's electrical needs, list the parts you will need to complete the job, estimate the time for your labor—including setup, work performed, and cleanup. Then, provide a price quote. Follow the guidelines provided in this chapter.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

1. Write an external proposal. To do so, create a product or a service and sell it through a proposal. Your product can be an improved radon detection unit, a new MP3 player, safety glasses for construction work, bar codes for pricing or inventory control, a piece of biotechnology equipment for monitoring blood work, computer graphics for an advertising agency, and so on. Your service may involve dog grooming, automobile servicing, computer maintenance, home construction (refinishing basements, building decks, completing room additions, and so on), freelance technical writing, at-home occupational therapy, or home theater installation and maintenance. The topic is your choice. Draw from your job experience, college coursework, or hobbies. To write this proposal, follow the process provided in this chapter.
2. Write an internal proposal. You can select a topic from either work or school. For example, your company or department is considering a new venture. Research the project by reading relevant information. Interview involved participants or survey a large group of people. Once you have gathered your data, document your findings and propose to management the next course of action. If you choose a topic from school, you could propose a day-care center, on-campus bus service, improved computer facilities, tutoring services, co-ed dormitories, pass/fail options, and so on. Write an internal proposal to improve your company's Web site; expand or improve the security of your company's parking lot; improve policies for overtime work; improve policies for hiring diversity; or improve your company's policies for promotion. Research your topic by reading relevant information or by interviewing or surveying students, faculty, staff, and administration. Once you have gathered your data, document your findings and recommend a course of action.

PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

1. Stinson, Heinlein, and Brown Accounting, LLC, employs over 2,000 workers, including accountants, computer information specialists, a legal staff, paralegals, and office managers. The company requires a great deal of written and oral communication with customers, vendors, governmental agencies, and coworkers. For example, a sample of their technical communication includes the following:

    - Written reports to judges and lawyers
    - Letters and reports to customers
    - E-mail and memos to coworkers
    - Oral communication in face-to-face meetings, videoconferences, and sales presentations
    - Maintaining the company's Facebook and blog sites

    Unfortunately, not all employees communicate effectively. The writing companywide is uneven. Discrepancies in style, grammar, content, and format hurt the company's professionalism. The same problems occur with oral communication.

    George Hunt, a mid-level manager, plans to write an internal, unsolicited proposal to the company's principal owners, highlighting the problems and suggesting solutions. What must Mr. Hunt include in his proposal—beyond the obvious proposal components (a title page, table of contents, abstract, introduction, and so forth)—to persuade the owners to accept his suggestions? Suggest ways in which the problem can be solved.

2. Toby Hebert is Sales Manager at Crab Bayou Industries (CBI) in Crab Bayou, Louisiana. In his position, Toby manages a sales staff of 12 employees who travel throughout Louisiana, Texas, Arkansas, and Mississippi. Currently, the sales staff members use their own cars to make sales calls, and CBI pays them 31 cents per mile for travel expenses. Each staff member currently travels approximately 2,000 miles a month, with cars getting 20 miles per gallon.

    Gasoline prices, at the moment, are over $4.00 a gallon. With gasoline and car maintenance costs higher than ever, the current rate of 31 cents per mile means that CBI's sales employees are losing money. Something must be done to solve this problem. Toby has met with his staff, and they have decided to write a proposal to Andre Boussaint, CBI's CEO.

    What must Toby and his staff include in the proposal—beyond the obvious proposal components (a title page, table of contents, abstract, introduction, and so forth)—to persuade the CEO to accept the suggestions? Suggest ways in which the problem can be solved.

WEB WORKSHOP

By typing "RFP," "proposal," "online proposal," or "online RFP" in an Internet search engine, you can find tips for writing proposals and RFPs, software products offered to automatically generate e-proposals and winning RFPs, articles on how to write proposals, samples of RFPs and proposals, and online RFP and proposal forms.

To perform a more limited search, type in phrases like "automotive service RFP," "computer maintenance RFP," "Web design RFP," and many more topics. You will find examples of both proposals and RFPs from businesses, school systems, city governments, and various industries. To enhance your understanding of business and industry's focus on proposal writing, search the Web for information on RFPs and proposals. Using the criteria in this chapter and your knowledge of effective technical communication techniques, analyze your findings. What are some of the industries that are requesting proposals, and what types of products or services are they interested in?

a. Report your findings, either in an oral presentation or in an e-mail message.
b. Respond to an online RFP by writing a proposal. To complete this assignment, go online to research any information you need for your content.

PARENTHETICAL SOURCE CITATIONS AND DOCUMENTATION

To document research correctly, you must provide parenthetical source citations following the quote or paraphrase within the text. At the end of your document, supply a references page (American Psychological Association and Council of Science Editors) or a works cited page (Modern Language Association).

Parenthetical Source Citations

The American Psychological Association (APA), the Council of Science Editors (CSE), and the Modern Language Association (MLA) use a parenthetical form of source citations. If your boss or instructor requests footnotes or endnotes, you should still use these forms. However, the most modern approach to source citations according to MLA and APA requires only that you cite the source of your information parenthetically after the quotation or paraphrase. The CSE style manual uses a number after the quote or paraphrase to reference the source to the references page at the end of the document. CSE also uses an author-year sequence similar to APA.

APA Format

One Author. If you do not state the author's name or the year of the publication in the lead-in to the quotation, include the author's name, year of publication, and page number in parentheses, after the quotation.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints" (Cottrell, 2011, p. 118).

(Page numbers are included for quoted material. The writer determines whether page numbers are included for source citations of summaries and paraphrases.)

Two Authors. When you cite a source with two authors, always use both last names with an ampersand (&).

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (Gerson & Gerson, 2011, p. 158).

Three or More Authors. When your citation has more than two authors but fewer than six, use all the last names in the first parenthetical source citation. For subsequent citations, list the first author's last name followed by *et al.* (Latin for "and others"), the year of publication, and for a quotation, the page number.

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" (Conners et al., 2011, p. 2).

Anonymous Works. When no author's name is listed, include in the source citation the title or part of a long title and the year. Book titles are underlined or italicized, and periodical titles are placed in quotation marks.

> Flash drives have revolutionized data storage (*Electronic Databases,* 2011).

> Effective e-mail messages can be organized in three paragraphs ("Using Templates," 2011).

CSE Format

In-text citations for quoted or paraphrased material are in the form of superscript numbers. Sometimes, editors prefer that numbers are placed in parentheses or in brackets. The number refers to the numbered source citations on the references list at the end of the document. Many editors and publishers believe that a numbered form of citation is less intrusive to the reader than the method used by APA or MLA.

> "Social media has helped companies quickly answer customer complaints."[1]

> "Line charts reveal relationships between sets of figures" (2).

> "Employees require instantaneous access to crisis communication in the workplace" [3].

MLA Format

One Author. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the author's last name and the page number of the information.

> "Viewing the molecular activity required state-of-the-art electron microscopes" (Heinlein 193).

Note that the period follows the parenthesis, not the quotation. Also note that no comma separates the name from the page number and that no lowercase *p* precedes the number.

Two Authors. After the quotation or paraphrase, parenthetically cite the authors' last names and the page number of the information.

> "Twitter has dramatically changed the way we write on the job" (Crider and Berry 292).

Three or More Authors. Writing a series of names can be cumbersome. To avoid this, if you have a source of information written by three or more authors, parenthetically cite one author's name, followed by *et al.* and the page number.

> "The development of gaming software is a growing industry" (Norwood et al. 93).

Anonymous Works. If your source has no author, parenthetically cite the shortened title and page number.

> "Robots are more accurate and less prone to errors caused by long hours of operation than humans" ("Useful Robots" 81).

Documentation of Sources

Parenthetical source citations are an abbreviated form of documentation. In parentheses, you tell your readers only the names of your authors and the page numbers on which the information can be found, or you provide a number that parallels the numbered source at the end of the document. Such documentation alone would be insufficient. Your readers would not know the names of the authors (in CSE numerical-sequence format), the titles of the books, the names of the periodicals, or the dates, volumes, or publishing companies. This more thorough information is found on the references page (APA) or works cited page (MLA), a listing of research sources alphabetized either by author's name or title (if anonymous). On the references page (CSE), you organize the citations numerically by the order in which the quote or paraphrase appeared in the text. This is the last page[s] of your research report.

Your entries should follow APA, CSE, and MLA standards. (Additional style manuals are available for many professions.) MLA no longer requires the use of URLs in source citations. Because Web addresses can change and documents sometimes appear in several different databases, MLA says that most readers can find electronic sources using title or author searches in Internet search engines. If you do include a URL, MLA says to put the URL in angle brackets after the date of access. Use slash marks to break a URL.

APA References

The APA style is commonly used in both engineering and scientific fields. The following are sample entries for the reference page, which is placed at the end of the document. Include on the reference page only sources from which you cited in the document. For a comprehensive illustration of reference page entries, use the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association* (2009) and the *APA Style Guide to Electronic References* (2009).

A book with one author

Cottrell, R. C. (2006). *Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II.* London: McFarland and Co., Inc.

A book with two authors

Heath, C. & Heath, D. (2007). *Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die.* New York: Random House.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell, J., McNeniman, L., & Langan, J. (1997). *The Macmillan writer.* Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends.* Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

A translated book

Phelps, R. (Ed.). (1983). *The collected stories of Colette* (M. Ward, Trans.). New York: Farrar, Straus & Giroux.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, K. (2005). What's in a Name? In R. Atwan (Ed.), *America now: short readings from recent periodicals* (pp. 12–20). NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, R. (2007, April). Getting—and keeping good clients. *Intercom,* 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, J. (2007, May 28). A question of honor. *Time,* 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

Internet. (2000). *The world book encyclopedia.* Chicago: World Book.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities [Computer software]. (2002–2004). Dell, Inc.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

E-mail

According to APA, do not include e-mail messages in the list of references. You should cite the message parenthetically in your text. (J. Millard, personal communication, April 2, 2011).

Blog

McWard, J. (2011, May 31). Graphics on-line. Message posted to http://www.jmcward.net.

Personal Web site

Mohr, E. (2011, Dec. 29). Home page of Ellen Mohr's Web site. Retrieved from http://emohr.edu.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. (2011, Jan. 5). Johnson County Community College. Retrieved from http://jccc.edu.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

APA References Page

Place the references page at the end of the document or in an appendix. The entries on the reference page are alphabetized by author's last name or title.

References

Corporate Credit Union Network. (2007). *A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends.* Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central.

Effective communication with clients. (2009, September 23). *Technical Communication,* 22.

Gertzen, J. (2007, March 29). University to go wireless. *The Kansas City Star,* p. C3.

Pascal, J. (2005). Top ten qualities/skills employers want. *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version.* National Association of Colleges and Employers, 5 (12–16). Retrieved from ProQuest database.

Tsui, P. (2011, Sep. 15). Questionnaire [Msg.16]. Message posted to http://groups.stc.com./html.

CSE References

The CSE style guide shows two systems for organizing references at the end of the document. First, you can use the citation-sequence system that lists the numbered references in the order cited within the text (illustrated below). Second, you can follow the name-year system that lists references in alphabetical order by author's last name.

Personal e-mail messages, blog entries, personal Web sites, and entries to listservs should not automatically be included on a references list. According to the CSE style manual, the decision to include such references is left to publishers and editors.

The CSE style of documentation is used in the fields of biology and medicine. Following are sample entries using the numerical system for the references list. For a comprehensive

illustration of entries on the references list, use the *Scientific Style and Format: The CSE Manual for Authors, Editors, and Publishers* (2006).

A book with one author

Cottrell RC. Smoke jumpers of the civilian public service in World War II. London: McFarland and Co., Inc.; 2006. p 27–28.

A book with two authors

Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.

A book with three or more authors

Nadell J., McNeniman L., Langan J. The Macmillan writer. Boston: Allyn and Bacon; 1997. p 224.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. A review of the credit union financial system: History, structure, and status and financial trends. Kansas City, MO: U.S. Central; 2007.

A translated book

Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton K. What's in a name? R. Atwan, editor. America now: short readings from recent periodicals. NewYork: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2005. p 12–20.

A signed article in a journal

Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007 April: 8–12.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe J. A question of honor. Time 2007 May 28: 59–60.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C: 3.

An unsigned article

Effective communication with clients. Technical Communication 2009 Sep 23; 22.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.

Professional Web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. [cited 2011 Jan 5]. Available from: http://jccc.edu.

CSE References Page

The references page in CSE style is placed either at the end of the document or in an appendix. List the sources in the order in which they appeared in the document.

References

1. Davis R. Getting—and keeping good clients. Intercom 2007; April: 8–12.
2. Heath C., Heath D. Made to stick: why some ideas survive and others die. New York: Random House; 2007. p 217–24.
3. Patel J. Technical communication and globalization. McWard J., translator. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's; 2006. p 15.
4. Pascal J. Re: top ten qualities/skills employers want. In: Job outlook 2006 student version. 2005. National Association of Colleges and Employers; 2006 May 5 [cited 2006 Apr 14]. Available from: ProQuest database.
5. Gertzen J. University to go wireless. The Kansas City Star 2007 Mar 16; Sect C:3.

MLA Works Cited

MLA documentation format is used in the arts and humanities fields. Following are examples of entries on the works cited page. For a comprehensive illustration of MLA format for the works cited page, refer to the *MLA Style Manual and Guide to Scholarly Publishing* (2008). MLA also recently provided an abbreviated, updated style guide, *A Guide to MLA Style 2009 Update*.

A book with one author

Cottrell, Robert C. *Smoke Jumpers of the Civilian Public Service in World War II*. London: McFarland and Co., Inc., 2006. Print.

A book with two or three authors

Heath, Chip, and Dan Heath. *Made to Stick: Why Some Ideas Survive and Others Die*. New York: Random House, 2007. Print.

A book with four or more authors

Nadell, Judith, et al. *The Macmillan Writer.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1997. Print.

A book with a corporate authorship

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends*. Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

A translated book

Phelps, Robert, ed. *The Collected Stories of Colette*. Trans. Matthew Ward. New York: Farrar, Straus Giroux, 1983. Print.

An entry in a collection or anthology

Hamilton, Kendra. "What's in a Name?" *America Now: Short Readings from Recent Periodicals*. Ed. Robert Atwan. New York: Bedford/St. Martin's, 2005. 12–20. Print.

A signed article in a journal

Davis, Rachel. "Getting—and Keeping Good Clients." *Intercom* (April 2007): 8–12. Print.

A signed article in a magazine

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

A signed article in a newspaper

Gertzen, Jason. "University to go wireless." *The Kansas City Star* 29 Mar. 2007: C3. Print.

An unsigned article

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

Encyclopedias and almanacs

"Internet." *The World Book Encyclopedia*. 2000 ed. Chicago: World Book. Print.

Computer software

Drivers and Utilities. Computer software. Dell, Inc., 2002–2004. Print.

An article from an online database (or other electronic subscription service)

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version*. National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

E-mail

Schneider, Max. "Re: Teaching Technical Communication." Message to Sharon Gerson. 2 Apr. 2011. Email.

Blog

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Personal Web site

Mohr, Ellen. Home page. 29 Dec. 2009. Web. 30 December 2011.

Professional web site

Johnson County Community College Writing Center. Johnson County Community College. 5 Jan. 2009. Web. 14 Feb. 2011.

Posting to a discussion listserv

Ptsui [Peter Tsui]. "Questionnaire." *Society for Technical Communication Listserv*. 15 Sep. 2011. Web. 17 Sep. 2011.

MLA Works Cited Page

At the end of the document, include a works cited page or place this page in an appendix.

Works Cited

Corporate Credit Union Network. *A Review of the Credit Union Financial System: History, Structure, and Status and Financial Trends*. Kansas City: U.S. Central, 2007. Print.

"Effective Communication with Clients." *Technical Communication* 23 Sep. 2009: 22. Print.

McWard J. "Graphics On-line." *Myinfosite*. 31 May 2009. Web. 7 Sep. 2011.

Pascal, Janet. "Top Ten Qualities/Skills Employers Want." *Job Outlook 2006 Student Version*. National Association of Colleges and Employers 5 (2005): 12–16. ProQuest. Web. 25 May 2009.

Rawe, Julie. "A Question of Honor." *Time* 28 May 2007: 59–60. Print.

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Oral Presentations

From Chapter 19 of *Technical Communication: Process and Product*, Eighth Edition. Sharon J. Gerson, Steven M. Gerson.

Oral Presentations

COMMUNICATION AT WORK

In this scenario, a recruitment specialist talks about the importance of oral communication in her new job.

Estella Alvarez has just been hired as recruitment specialist in the human resources department for Monroe, Louisiana. She will be responsible for coordinating the recruitment and hiring of city employees. She also will administer the city's retirement system, unemployment compensation, family medical leave programs, and the city's drug and alcohol abuse policy.

As a recruitment specialist, Estella will be involved in staffing merit system positions. This will include ensuring that employee recruiting, advertising, testing, certification, and applicant record-keeping comply with legal, professional, and merit system standards.

Learning Objectives

When you complete this chapter, you will be able to

- **Understand the importance of verbal, vocal, and visual communication in the workplace**
- **Develop effective listening skills**
- **Use the telephone and voicemail to communicate successfully**
- **Deliver effective informal oral presentations on the job**
- **Participate in teleconferences by planning ahead, checking equipment for audio quality, and choosing a quiet and private location**
- **Communicate effectively in videoconferences, Skype, or web-conferences**
- **Understand that an effective oral presentation introduction might include an anecdote, question, quote, facts, or a table setter**
- **Conclude your formal speech by restating your main points, recommending a future course of action, or by asking for questions and comments**
- **Use a variety of visual aids to enhance your oral presentations, including techniques for effective Prezi and PowerPoint presentations**
- **Understand benefits of PowerPoint slides including different autolayouts and design templates, the ability to add and delete slides easily, SmartArt, hypertext links, and the incorporation of sound and graphics**
- **Perfect your oral presentation by working on your delivery, including eye contact, rate of speech, enunciation, pitch, pauses and emphasis, interaction with the audience, and conflict resolution**
- **Evaluate your presentation by using this chapter's checklist**

She will meet these responsibilities as follows:

- Advertising and recruiting
- Reviewing approximately 120,000 applications a year to determine whether or not the applicants meet position requirements
- Verifying experience and education by contacting former employers, checking social media sites, and performing credit checks
- Establishing, maintaining, and certifying eligibility lists for vacant city positions

The largest part of her job will be making presentations to city employees and conducting new-employee orientation each month. In this capacity, she will prepare PowerPoint slides and speak in front of small and large groups, in both formal and informal presentations. She will also meet individually with employees to work with them regarding their benefits, on-the-job certification needs, and education requirements record-keeping. For example, when employees complete college classes or attend off-site training, Estella reminds them to update their records since additional education enhances their opportunities for raises and promotions.

Estella is well educated with a degree in communications from the University of Texas at Austin, where she gave many classroom presentations and participated in debates. As a member of the debate team, she traveled nationwide to participate in debate tournaments and helped her team win numerous awards in competition.

Although she has confidence about her abilities to meet her job requirements, like most employees, she knows that much of her job success will be based on how she presents important information and how she interacts with and listens to her audiences.

The Role of Verbal and Nonverbal Communication

Here is a fact: Excellent communication does not just depend on the words you say and write. Communication depends greatly on the tone of your voice, your body language, and other vocal and nonverbal cues you give your audience.

How Important Is Verbal and Nonverbal Communication?

Some researchers suggest that "from 65 to 90 percent of every conversation is interpreted through body language" (Warfield 1). Albert Mehrabian, a University of California at Los Angeles professor and researcher, states that three elements combine to express messages. He calls it the three Vs—verbal, vocal, and visual. His studies determined that words account for 7 percent of communication, tone of voice for 38 percent, and body language for 55 percent of the message (Mehrabian).

What Is Verbal Communication?

Verbal communication equals the words you say. This focuses on the content of your communication, the text, or the development of your ideas. When you speak, you prove your points with anecdotes, examples, quotes, dialogue, and descriptions, among a variety of other means of development.

What Is Vocal Communication?

What you say is either positively or negatively impacted by *how* you say it. In fact, "after your physical appearance, your voice is the first thing people notice about you"(Clarke). Verbal communication includes your pace (rate of speech) and modulation (the loudness, tone, and pitch of your voice).

What Is Visual Communication?

Visual (or nonverbal) communication is another phrase for body language. Basically, nonverbal communication entails "any conscious or unconscious movement of a part or all of the body that communicates an emotional message" (Tilton 15). Nonverbal cues can include eye contact, facial expressions, posture, proximity to audience, and gestures.

Listening Skills

In addition to controlling verbal and nonverbal reactions, you must also learn to listen effectively. If you are not listening while others are speaking, no communication can occur. Collaboration demands that all voices be heard. Successful workplaces value everyone's input.

Barriers to Active Listening. What gets in the way of your active listening abilities? Following are barriers to active listening.

- **Multitasking.** If you are speaking to a customer on your smartphone, checking your online calendar, thinking about a deadline, and wondering if your graphic artist has completed a sketch, you are juggling too many tasks at the same time. Now, the meeting you are currently in has begun, and your coworker is speaking. How can you also pay attention to this colleague if you are distracted by the other tasks you are involved in?
- **Preconceived notions.** If you believe that you already know what a coworker will say, then you will not hear his or her comments objectively. Assumptions like this are a barrier to successful teamwork. Preconceived notions will diminish the colleague's comments and hinder your contributions to the team effort.
- **Focusing on your response.** While your colleague is speaking, you do not wait to hear all he or she says. You focus only on your follow-up response. This does your colleague and your team a disservice. By thinking only of what you might say in response, you risk not hearing all that is said in the meeting.

- **Interrupting the speaker.** Interrupting a speaker is rude. A person should have the right to his or her say. If you interject your comments abruptly, then your coworker cannot complete his or her thoughts. Waiting to respond is not only good manners; it is also good business.
- **External distractions.** External distractions, such as weekend plans, a room's temperature, or a text message, might disallow you from focusing on what your coworkers are saying.

Tips for Effective Listening. To be an effective listener, do the following:

1. Stop what you are doing; concentrate on the task at hand.
2. Do not talk. Let the speaker have his or her say.
3. Make eye contact with the speaker.
4. Take notes to stay focused and for future reference.
5. Ask questions for clarification and to stay engaged.
6. Be objective, open to alternatives, and willing to accept differences of opinion.
7. Control your reactions. Even a short delay in response will let you digest the issue, consider other points of view, organize thoughts, and respond professionally.

The Importance of Oral Communication

Many people, even the seemingly most confident, are afraid to speak in front of others. A recent Monster.com poll asked, "What is your biggest career-related phobia?" See the results in Table 1.

TABLE 1 Career-Related Phobias

Percentage	Phobia
42%	Giving a speech or presentation
32%	Confronting a coworker or boss
15%	Networking
11%	Writing a report or proposal

Source: Monster Career Advice Newsletter

You may have to communicate orally with your peers, your subordinates, your supervisors, and the public. Oral communication is an important component of your business success because you will be required to speak formally and informally on an everyday basis.

Everyday Oral Communication

"Hi. My name is Bill. How may I help you?" Think about how often you have spoken to someone today or this week at your job. You constantly speak to customers, vendors, and coworkers face-to-face, on the telephone, or by leaving messages on voicemail.

- If you work a helpline, your primary job responsibility is oral communication.
- When you return the dozens of calls you receive or leave voicemail messages, each instance reveals your communication abilities.

- As an employee, you must achieve rapport with your coworkers. Much of your communication with them will be verbal and nonverbal. What you say and your body language impact your working relationships.

Every time you communicate orally, you reflect something about yourself and your company. The goal of effective oral communication is to ensure that your verbal and non-verbal skills make a good impression and communicate your messages effectively.

Telephone and Voicemail

You speak on the telephone dozens of times each week. When speaking on a telephone, make sure that you do not waste either your time or your listener's time.

Tips for Telephone and Voicemail Etiquette. Follow these tips for effective telephone communication:

1. Know what you are going to say before you call.
2. Speak clearly and enunciate each syllable.
3. Avoid rambling conversationally.
4. Avoid lengthy pauses.
5. Leave brief messages.
6. Avoid communicating bad news.
7. Repeat your phone number twice including the area code.
8. Offer your e-mail address as an option.
9. Sound pleasant, friendly, and polite.
10. If a return call is unnecessary, say so.

Informal Oral Presentations

As a team member, manager, supervisor, employee, or job applicant, you often will speak to a coworker, a group of colleagues, or a hiring committee. You will need to communicate orally in an informal setting for several reasons.

- Your boss needs your help preparing a presentation. You conduct research, interview appropriate sources, and prepare reports. When you have concluded your research, you might be asked to share your findings with your boss in a brief, informal oral presentation.
- Your company is planning corporate changes (staff layoffs, mergers, relocations, or increases in personnel). As a supervisor, you want to provide your input in an oral briefing to a corporate decision maker.
- At a departmental meeting, you are asked to report orally on the work you and subordinates have completed and to explain future activities.
- Your company is involved in a project with coworkers, contractors, and customers from distant sites. To communicate with these individuals, you participate in a teleconference, videoconference, or webinar, orally sharing your ideas.

Videoconferences and Teleconferences

If you are communicating with a dispersed group located in different cities or countries and you want to hear what everyone else is saying simultaneously, videoconferences or teleconferences are an answer. Consider using a videoconference or teleconference when three or more people at separate locations need to talk.

In a videoconference or teleconference, make all participants feel as if they are in the same room facing each other. With expensive technology in place, such as cameras, audio components, coder/decoders, display monitors, and user interfaces, avoid wasting time and money with poor communication.

Tips for Videoconferences and Teleconferences. Use these tips to communicate effectively in videoconferences and teleconferences:

1. Inform participants of conference date, time, time zone, and expected duration.
2. Make sure participants have printed materials before the teleconference.
3. Ensure that equipment has good audio quality.
4. Choose your room location carefully for quiet and privacy.
5. Consider arrangements for hearing impaired participants. You might need a text telephone (TTY) system or simultaneous transcription in a chat room.
6. Introduce all participants.
7. Direct questions and comments to specific individuals.
8. Do not talk too loudly, too softly, or too rapidly.
9. Turn off smartphones.
10. Limit side conversations.

Skype

Skype, a social media option, might provide your company a more cost-effective means of oral communication. You and your audience need a computer, Web cam, microphone or headset, and speakers. You can even Skype from your smartphone, allowing for mobile, anywhere, anytime oral communication. The Skype-to-Skype business call is free. Finally, Skype allows for easy collaboration through group chats and conference calls ("Business").

Webconferencing

Due to economic hardships, rising costs of airline tickets, time-consuming travel, and the need to complete projects or communicate information quickly, many companies and organizations are using webconferencing to communicate with their personnel, customers, prospective employees, and vendors. Webconferencing, sometimes called webinars or virtual meetings, include Web-based seminars, lectures, presentations, or workshops transmitted over the Internet. A unique feature of a live webconference or webinar is interactivity. In a webconference, the presenter and audience can send, receive, and discuss information. In contrast to webconferences, a podcast "is a digital audio or video file that is episodic; downloadable; program-driven, mainly with a host and/or theme; and convenient, usually via an automated feed with computer software" (Zuniga et al).

Following are instances where a webconference would be appropriate:

- **Training employees.** Companies are using webconferences as a training tool not only to save travel expenses but also because of the interactivity a webconference allows.
- **Making sales presentations.** With webconferences, a sales team can make numerous sales calls without leaving the office. Through webconferencing, sales presentations can be enhanced with product demonstrations, questions and answer sessions, text messaging, and interactive polling to gather client and customer information.
- **Conducting quarterly or annual meetings.** An online conference room allows corporations to "rollout earnings reports and corporate information to employees and investors" (Murray).

- **Holding press conferences**. Share corporate information with news agencies at diverse locations.
- **Enhancing online collaboration with colleagues at diverse locations.** Along with e-mail, teleconferencing, and videoconferencing, webconferencing provides companies another option when face-to-face meetings are difficult due to cost and distance.

Tips for Webconferencing. Succeed in webconferencing by following these tips:

1. Limit webconferences to 60 to 90 minutes.
2. Limit a webconference's focus to three or four important ideas.
3. Start fast by limiting introductory comments.
4. Keep it simple. Instead of using too many Internet tools, limit yourself to simple and important features like polling and messaging.
5. Plan ahead. Make sure that all webconference participants have the correct Internet hardware and software requirements; know the correct date, time, agenda, and Web login information for your webconference; and have the correct Web URL or password.
6. Before the webconference, test your equipment, hypertext links, and PowerPoint slide controls.
7. Use both presenter and participant views. One way to ensure that all links and slides work is by setting up two computer stations. Have a computer set on the presenter's view and another computer logged in as a guest. This will allow you to view accurately what the audience sees and how long displays take to load.
8. Involve the audience interactively through questions and/or text messaging.
9. Personalize the presentation. Introduce yourself, other individuals involved in the presentation, and audience members.
10. Archive the presentation.

Formal Presentations

You might need to make a formal presentation when you do any of the following:

- Attend a civic club meeting and provide an oral presentation to maintain good corporate or community relations.
- Represent your company at a city council meeting. You will give an oral presentation explaining your company's desired course of action or justifying activities already performed.
- Represent your company at a local, regional, national, or international conference by giving a speech.
- Make an oral presentation promoting your service or product to a potential customer.

Types of Formal Oral Presentations

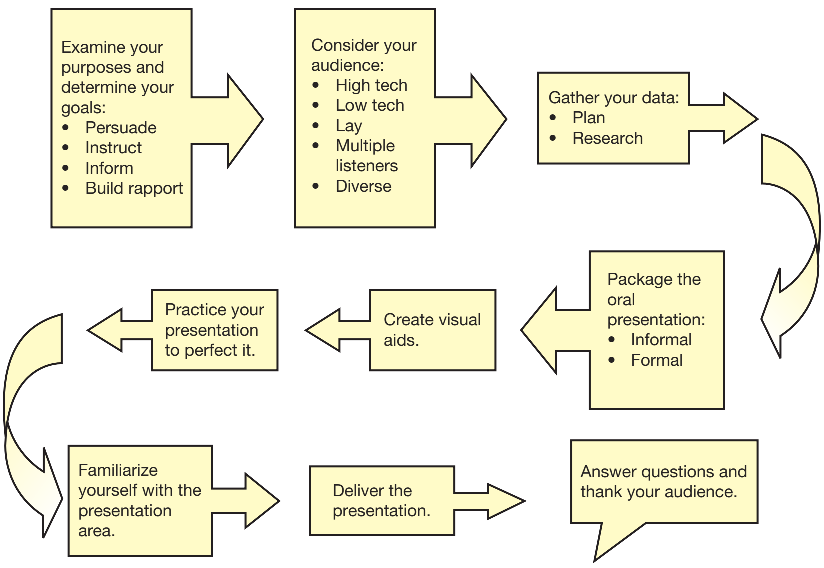
Three types of formal oral presentations include the following.

Memorized Speech. The least effective type of oral presentation is the memorized speech. This is a well-prepared speech which has been committed to memory. Although such preparation might make you feel less anxious, too often these speeches sound mechanical and impersonal. They are often stiff and formal, and allow no speaker-audience interaction.

Manuscript Speech. In a manuscript speech, you read from a carefully prepared manuscript. The entire speech is written on paper. This may lessen speaker anxiety and help you to present information accurately, but such a speech can seem monotonous, wooden, and boring to the listeners.

Extemporaneous Speech. Extemporaneous speeches are probably the best and most widely used method of oral communication. You carefully prepare your oral presentation by conducting necessary research, and then you create a detailed outline. However, you avoid writing out the complete presentation. When you make your presentation, you rely on notes or PowerPoint slides with the major and minor headings for reference. This type of presentation helps you avoid seeming dull and mechanical, allows you to interact with the audience, and still ensures that you correctly present complex information. (See Figure 1 for the oral presentation process.)

FIGURE 1 Oral Presentation Process



Source: Adapted from "Communications: Oral Presentations"

Parts of a Formal Oral Presentation

A formal oral presentation consists of an introduction, a discussion (or body for development), and a conclusion.

Introduction

The introduction should welcome your audience, clarify your intent by providing a verbal road map, and capture your audience's attention and interest. This is the point in the presentation where you are drawing in your listener, hoping to generate enthusiasm and a positive impression.

To create a positive impression, set the table. Address your audience politely by saying "Good morning" or "Good afternoon." Tell the audience your name and the names of others who might be speaking. Welcome the audience and thank them for inviting you to speak.

- Table setters for goodwill

EXAMPLE ▶

"Good evening. Thank you for allowing us to speak to you tonight. I'm (name and title). You'll also hear from (name and title)."

Next, provide a road map, clarifying what points you'll discuss and laying out the order of the topics.

- Road map (thesis statement)

EXAMPLE ▶

"What we are going to talk about, and in this order, are the following key points:

- The issues that led us to consider road improvements
- Challenges to this construction task
- Optional approaches
- Costs
- A timeframe for your consideration."

You can use a variety of openings to capture your audience's attention, such as the following:

- **Word pictures**—Anecdotes (specific in *time, place, person, and action*), quotes, and data (facts and figures) capture audience attention.

EXAMPLE ▶

Word Pictures to Arouse Your Audience's Interest

"From November 2013 to February 2014, our police department received over 75 reports of problems regarding Elm Street. These ranged from injuries related to hill jumping, cars sliding into the street's ditches, increased rush hour traffic, and tight turn lanes. One stretch of the road, from grid 39 to grid 47, is too narrow for snow removal crews to clean effectively. And these issues promise to get worse with residential growth anticipated to increase by 39 percent. As Sgt. Smith of the police department stated, 'Elm Street is a disaster waiting to happen.'"

- **A question or a series of questions**—Asking questions involves the audience immediately. A training facilitator could begin a workshop as illustrated in the following example.

EXAMPLE ▶

Questions to Involve Your Audience

"How many reports do you write each week or month? How often do you receive and send e-mail messages to customers and colleagues? How much time do you spend on the telephone? Face it; technical communication is a larger part of your engineering job than you ever imagined."

These three questions are both personalized and pertinent. Through the use of the pronoun *you,* the facilitator speaks directly to each individual in the audience. By focusing on the listeners' job-related activities, the questions directly lead into the topic of conversation—technical communication.

- **A quotation from a famous person**—The training facilitator in the previous example could have begun his speech with a quote from Warren Buffett, a famous businessperson.

◀ EXAMPLE

A Quote to Arouse Audience Interest

"How important is effective technical communication? Just listen to what Warren Buffett has to say on the topic:

> For more than forty years, I've studied the documents that public companies file. Too often, I've been unable to decipher just what is being said or, worse yet, had to conclude that nothing was being said. . . . Perhaps the most common problem . . . is that a well-intentioned and informed writer simply fails to get the message across to an intelligent, interested reader. In that case, stilted jargon and complex constructions are usually the villain. . . . When writing Berkshire Hathaway annual reports, I pretend that I'm talking to my sisters. I have no trouble picturing them: Though highly intelligent, they are not experts in accounting or finance. They will understand plain English, but jargon may puzzle them. My goal is simply to give them the information I would wish them to supply me if our positions were reversed. To succeed, I don't need to be Shakespeare; I must, though, have a sincere desire to inform.

That's what I want to impart to you today: Good writing is communication that is easy to understand. If simple language is good enough for Mr. Buffett, then that should be your goal."

(Buffett 1-2)

Discussion (or Body)

After you have aroused your listeners' attention and clarified your goals, you have to prove your assertions. In the *discussion* section of your formal oral presentation, provide details to support your thesis statement. You can develop your content in a variety of ways, including the following:

- **Use quotes, testimony, anecdotes.** You can find this type of information through primary and secondary research. For example, primary research, such as a survey or questionnaire, will help you substantiate content. By using people's direct comments, you help your audience to relate to the content. You also can find quotes, testimony, or anecdotes in secondary research, such as periodicals, newspapers, books, or online. This type of information validates your comments.
- **Present data.** Facts and figures, again found through research or interviews, develop and support your content. Stating exactly how often your company's computer system has been attacked by viruses will support the need for improved firewalls. A statistical analysis of the increase in insurance premiums will clarify the need for a new insurance carrier. Showing the exponential increase in the cost of gasoline over the last ten years will show why your company should consider purchasing hybrids.

To help your audience follow your oral communication, present these details using any of the following modes of organization.

Comparison/Contrast. In your presentation, you could compare different makes of office equipment, employees you are considering for promotion, different locations for a new office site, vendors to supply and maintain your computers, different employee benefit providers, and so forth. Comparison/contrast is a great way to make value judgments and provide your audience options.

Problem/Solution. You might develop your formal oral presentation by using a problem-to-solution analysis. For example, you might need to explain to your audience why your division needs to downsize. Your division has faced problems with unhappy customers, increased insurance premiums, decreased revenues, and several early retirements of top producers. In your speech, you can then suggest ways to solve these problems ("We need to downsize to lower outgo and ultimately increase morale"; "Let's create a Twitter account to answer customer concerns"; "We should compare and contrast new employee benefits packages to find creative ways to lower our insurance costs").

Argument/Persuasion. Almost every oral presentation has an element of argument/persuasion to it—as does all good written communication. You will usually be persuading your audience to do something based on the information you share with them in the presentation.

Importance. Prioritizing the information you present from least to most important (or most important to least) will help your listeners follow your reasoning more easily. To ensure the audience understands that you are prioritizing, provide verbal cues. These include simple words like *first, next, more important,* and *most important*. Do not assume that these cues are remedial or obvious. Remember, sometimes it is hard to follow a speaker's train of thought. Good speakers realize this and give the audience verbal signposts, reminding the listeners exactly where they are in the oral presentation and where the speaker is leading them.

Chronology. A chronological oral presentation can outline for your audience the order of the actions they need to follow. For example, you might need to prepare a yearly evaluation of all sales activities. Provide your audience with target deadlines and with the specific steps they must follow in their reports each quarter.

Maintaining Coherence. To maintain coherence, guide your audience through your speech as follows:

- **Use clear topic sentences.** Let your listeners know when you are beginning a new, key point: "Next, let's talk about the importance of conciseness in your workplace writing."
- **Restate your topic often.** Constant restating of the topic is required because listeners have difficulty retaining spoken ideas. A reader can refer to a previously discussed point by turning back a page or two. Listeners do not have this option.

  Furthermore, a listener is easily distracted from a speech by noises, room temperature, uncomfortable chairs, or movement inside and outside the meeting site. Restating your topic helps your reader maintain focus. "Repeat major points. Reshow visuals, repeat points and ideas several times during your presentation. Put them in your summary, too" (O'Brien).
- **Use transitional words and phrases.** This helps your listeners follow your speech. Transitional words and phrases, like those shown in Table 2, aid reader comprehension, emphasize key points, and highlight your speech's organization.

Conclusion

Conclude your speech by restating the main points, by recommending a future course of action, or by asking for questions or comments. A polite speaker leaves time for a few follow-up questions from the audience. Gauge your time well, however. You do not want to bore people with a lengthy discussion after a lengthy speech. You also do not want to cut short an important question-and-answer session. If you have given a controversial speech that you know will trouble some members of the audience, you owe them a chance to express their concerns.

TABLE 2 Purpose of Transitional Words

Purpose	Examples
Cause and effect	because, since, thus, therefore, for this reason, due to this, as a result of, consequently, in order to
Example	for instance, for example, another
Interpreting jargon	that is, in other words, more commonly called
Sequencing ideas	first, second, next, last, following, finally, above, below
Adding a point	furthermore, next, in addition, besides, not only . . . but also, similarly, likewise
Restating	in other words, that is, again, to clarify
Contrasting	but, instead, yet, however, on the other hand, nevertheless, in contrast, on the contrary, whereas, still
For emphasis	in fact, more importantly, clearly
Summarizing	to summarize, therefore, in summary, to sum up, consequently, therefore

Presentation Delivery Skills

Effective oral communicators interact with and establish a dynamic relationship with their audiences. The most thorough research will be wasted if you are unable to create rapport and sustain your audience's interest. Although smaller audiences are usually easier to connect with, you can also establish a connection with much larger audiences through a variety of vocal and visual delivery techniques.

Eye Contact. Avoid keeping your eyes glued to your notes. You will find it easy to speak to one individual because you will naturally look him or her in the eye. The person will respond by looking back at you.

With a larger audience, whether the audience has 20 or 200-plus people, keeping eye contact is more difficult. Try looking into different people's eyes as you move through your presentation (or look slightly above their heads if that makes you more comfortable). Most of the audience has been in your position before and can sympathize.

Rate. Vary your rate of speech to keep the audience interested. Slow down for the most important and most interesting parts. Speed up your delivery when you reach a section of less interesting facts. Match your rate of speaking to the content of your speech, just as actors vary their speech rate to reflect emotion and changes in content.

Enunciation. Speak each syllable of every word clearly and distinctly. Rarely will an audience ask you to repeat something even if they could not understand you the first time. It is up to you to avoid mumbling. Remember to speak more clearly than you might in a more conversational setting.

Pitch. When you speak, your voice creates high and low sounds. That's *pitch*. In your presentation, capitalize on this fact. Vary your pitch by using even more high and low sounds than you do in your normal, day-to-day conversations. Modulate to stress certain keywords or major points in your oral presentations.

Pauses. One way to achieve a successful pace is to pause within the oral presentation. Pause to ask for and to answer questions, to allow ideas to sink in, and to use visual aids or give the audience handouts. These pauses will not lengthen your speech; they will only improve it.

A well-prepared speaker will allow for pauses and will have budgeted time effectively. Know in advance if your speech is to be 5 minutes, 10 minutes, or an hour long. Then plan your speech according to time constraints, building pauses into your presentation. Practice the speech beforehand so you can determine when to pause and how often.

Emphasis. You will not be able to underline or boldface comments you make in oral presentations. However, just as in written communication, you will want to emphasize key ideas. Your body language, pitch, gestures, and enunciation will enable you to highlight words, phrases, or even entire sentences.

Conflict Resolution

You might be confronted with a hostile listener who either disagrees with you or does not want to be in attendance. You need to be prepared to deal with such a person. If someone disagrees with you or takes issue with a comment you make, try these responses.

- "That is an interesting perspective."
- "Thanks for your input."
- "Let me think about that some more and get back to you."
- "I have got several more ideas to share. We could talk about that point later, during a break."

The important point to remember is to not allow a challenging person to take charge of your presentation. Be pleasant but firm and maintain control of the situation. You will be unable to please all of your listeners all of the time. However, you should not let one unhappy listener destroy the effect of your presentation for the rest of the audience.

Visual Aids

Most speakers find that visual aids enhance their oral communication. "Visuals have the greatest, longest lasting impact—show as much or more visually as what you say. Use pictures; use color. Use diagrams and models" (O'Brien).

Although PowerPoint slide shows, and the use of tables and figures are powerful means of communication, you must be the judge of whether visual aids will enhance your presentation. Avoid using them if you think they will distract from your presentation or if you lack confidence in your ability to create them and integrate them effectively. However, with practice, you probably will find that visuals add immeasurably to the success of most presentations.

Table 3 lists the advantages, disadvantages, and helpful hints for using visual aids. For all types of visual aids, practice using them before you actually make your presentation. When you practice your speech, incorporate the visual aids you plan to share with the audience.

DOT.COM UPDATES

For more information about Prezi, check out the following links:

- Bird, Phil. "Prezi vs. Powerpoint." http://classroom201x.wordpress.com/2010/07/18/prezi-vs-powerpoint/
- Davis, Andrew. "10 Tips to Help Master Prezi." http://tippingpointlabs.com/2010/11/22/10-tips-to-help-master-prezi/
- Lorang, Tim. "Prezi versus PowerPoint." http://imagemediapartners.blogspot.com/2010/03/prezi-versus-powerpoint.html
- Wicks, David. "Prezi vs. PowerPoint." http://www.spu.edu/depts/its/workshops/prezi-vs-powerpoint.pdf
- "Why Convert from PowerPoint to Prezi." http://www.prezentdesign.com/why-convert-from-powerpoint-to-prezi.html

Powerpoint Presentations

One of the most powerful oral communication tools is visual—Microsoft PowerPoint. Whether you are giving an informal or formal oral presentation, your communication will be enhanced by PowerPoint slides.

Today, you will attend very few meetings where the speakers do not use PowerPoint slides. PowerPoint slides are used frequently because they are simple to use, economical, and transportable. Even if you have never created a slide show before, you can use the templates in the software and the autolayouts to develop your own slide show easily. An added benefit of PowerPoint slides is that you can print them and create handouts for audience members.

TABLE 3 Visual Aids—Advantages and Disadvantages

Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Helpful Hints
Chalkless whiteboards	Help audiences take notes. Allow you to emphasize a point. Allow audiences to focus on a statement. Help you be spontaneous. Break up monotonous speeches.	Require unique, erasable pens. Can stain clothing. Some pens can be hard to erase if left on the board too long. Pens that run low on ink create light, unreadable impressions.	Use blue, black, or red ink. Cap pens to prevent them drying out. Use pens made especially for these boards. Erase soon after use.
Flip charts	Can be prepared in advance. Are neat and clean. Can be reused. Are inexpensive. Are portable. Help you avoid a nonstop presentation. Allow for spontaneity. Help audiences take notes. Allow you to emphasize key points. Encourage audience participation. Allow easy reference by turning back to prior pages. Allow highlighting with different colors.	Are limited by small size. Require an easel. Require neat handwriting. Won't work well with large groups. You can run out of paper. Markers can run out of ink.	Have two pads. Have numerous markers. Use different colors for effect. Print in large letters. Turn pages when through with an idea so audience will not be distracted. Don't write on the back of pages where print bleeds through.
CDs	Are easy to use. Are entertaining. Have many to choose from. Can be used for large groups.	Require equipment and outlets. Deny speaker–audience interaction. Can become dated.	Use up-to-date information. Avoid long presentations. Provide discussion time. Use to supplement the speech, not replace it.
Prezi presentations	Are entertaining—Prezi is animation intensive with swirling and zooming capabilities. Offer flexibility, allowing you to move from topics with a mouse click. Can be customized and updated. Can be used for large groups. Allow speaker-audience interaction. Can be prepared in advance. Can be reused.	Does not lend itself to handouts. Requires Internet connectivity during the presentation if you want to use Prezi's ability to support YouTube. Has pre-formatted templates, which limit your ability to change color, font, or style. Can be difficult to learn, use, and master.	Practice with the equipment. Be prepared with a backup plan if the system crashes. Have the correct computer equipment (cables, monitors, screens, etc.). Practice your presentation.
PowerPoint presentations	Are entertaining. Offer flexibility, allowing you to move from topics with a mouse click. Can be customized and updated. Can be used for large groups. Allow for speaker–audience interaction. Can be supplemented with handouts easily generated by PowerPoint. Can be prepared in advance. Can be reused. Allow you to return to a prior slide. Can include animation and hyperlinks.	Require computers, screens, and outlets. Work better in dark rooms. Computers can malfunction. Can be too small for viewing. Can distance the speaker from the audience.	Practice with the equipment. Be prepared with a backup plan if the system crashes. Have the correct computer equipment (cables, monitors, screens, etc.). Practice your presentation.

FAQs: Using PowerPoint

Q: Why is the use of PowerPoint so important in the workplace?

A: Widely used by businesspeople, educators, and trainers, PowerPoint is among the most prevalent forms of presentation technology. "According to Microsoft, 30 million PowerPoint presentations take place every day: 1.25 million every hour" (Mahin). Employees in education, business, industry, technology, and government use PowerPoint not only for oral presentations but also as hard-copy text.

Q: Does everyone like PowerPoint? Aren't there any negative attitudes toward this technology?

A: Not everyone likes PowerPoint. Opposition to the use of this technology, however, usually stems from the following problems:

- Dull PowerPoint slides, lacking in variety and interest
- The use of Microsoft's standardized templates
- "Death by Bullet Point," caused by an excessive dependence on bullets

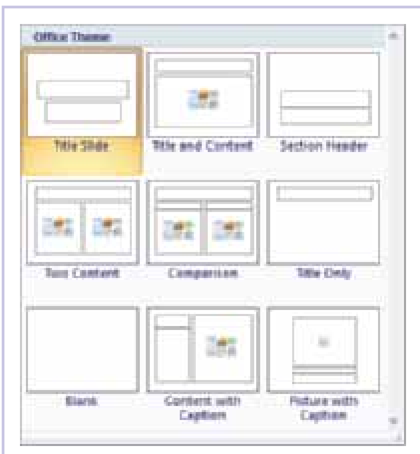
However, these challenges can be overcome easily through techniques discussed in this chapter.

Benefits of PowerPoint

When you become familiar with PowerPoint, you will be able to achieve the following benefits:

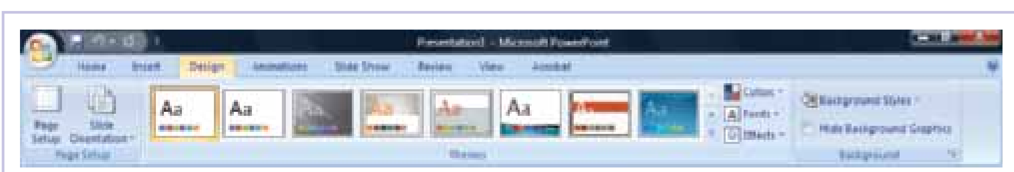
- Choose from many different presentation layouts and designs.

EXAMPLE ▶



- Create your own designs and layouts, changing colors and color schemes from preselected designs.

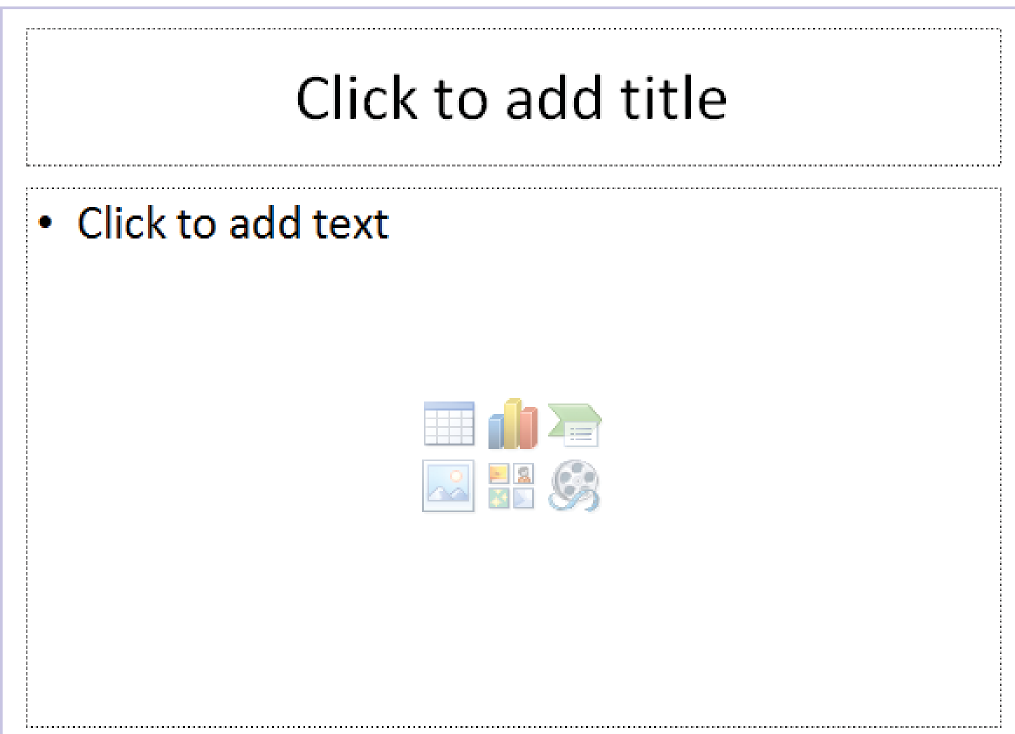
EXAMPLE ▶



- Add, delete, or rearrange slides as needed. By left-clicking on any slide, you can copy, paste, or delete it. By left-clicking between any of the slides, you can add a new blank slide for additional information.

EXAMPLE

- Insert tables, charts, SmartArt, pictures from files, clip art, or media clips.



EXAMPLE

- Add hyperlinks either to slides within your PowerPoint presentation or to external Web links.

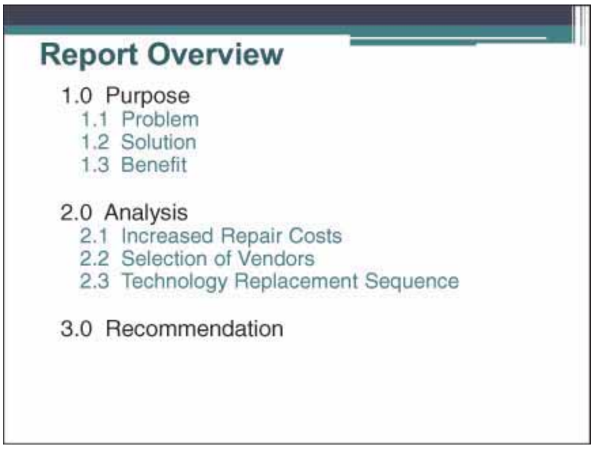
Tips for Using PowerPoint

To make it easy for you to add PowerPoint slides to your presentations, consider the following hints.

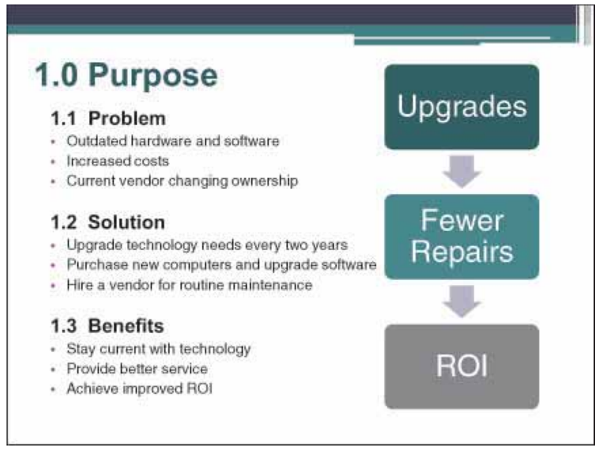
1. **Create optimal contrast.** Use dark backgrounds for light text or light backgrounds for dark text. Avoid using red or green text (individuals who are color blind cannot see these colors). You should use color for emphasis only.
2. **Choose an easy-to-read font size and style.** Use common fonts, such as Times New Roman, Courier, or Arial. Arial is considered to be the best to use because sans serif fonts (those without feet) show up best in PowerPoint. Use no more than three font sizes per slide. Use at least a 24-point font size for text and 36-point font for headings.
3. **Limit the text per slide.** Too many words per slide are not effective in an oral presentation. Use short sentences or phrases to ensure readability. You can accomplish this by creating a screen for each major point discussed in your oral presentation.
4. **Use headings for readability.** To create a hierarchy of headings, use larger fonts for a first-level heading and smaller fonts for second-level headings. Each slide should have at least one heading to help the audience follow your thoughts.
5. **Use emphasis techniques.** To call attention to a word, phrase, or idea, use color (sparingly), boldface, all caps, or arrows. Use a layout that includes white space. Include figures, graphs, pictures from the Web, or other line drawings.
6. **End with an obvious concluding screen.** Often, if speakers do not have a final screen that *obviously* ends the presentation, the speakers will click to a blank screen and say, "Oh, I didn't realize I was through," or "Oh, I guess that's it." In contrast, an obvious ending screen will let you as the speaker end graciously—and without surprise.
7. **Prepare handouts.** Give every audience member a handout, and leave room on the handouts for note-taking.
8. **Avoid reading your screens to your audience.** Remember they can read and will become quickly bored if you read slides to them. Speakers lose their dynamism when they resort to reading slides rather than speaking to the audience.
9. **Elaborate on each screen.** PowerPoint should not replace you as the speaker. In contrast, PowerPoint should add visual appeal, while you elaborate on the details. Give examples to explain fully the points in your presentation.
10. **Leave enough time for questions and comments.** Instead of rushing through each slide, leave sufficient time for the audience to consider what they have seen and heard. Both during and after the PowerPoint presentation, give the audience an opportunity for input.

See Figure 2 for a sample effective PowerPoint slide presentation of a report.

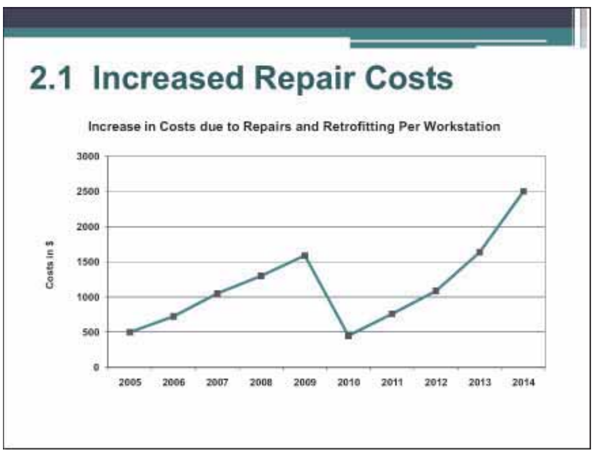
FIGURE 2 PowerPoint Presentation of a Report



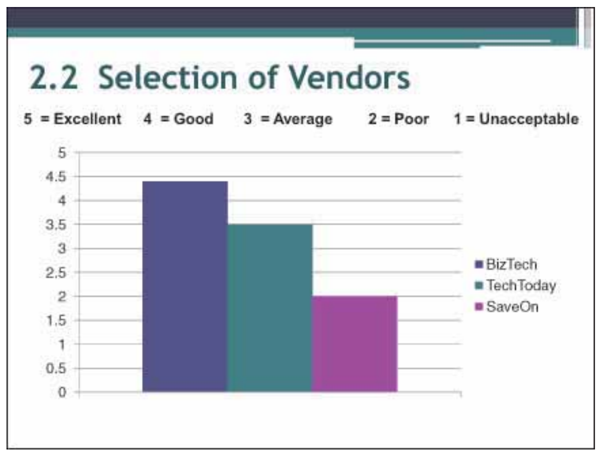
Sans serif font (such as Arial, Verdana, or Calibri) achieves a professional and readable look. Numbered headings and sub-headings help readers navigate the report. White space breaks up the text.



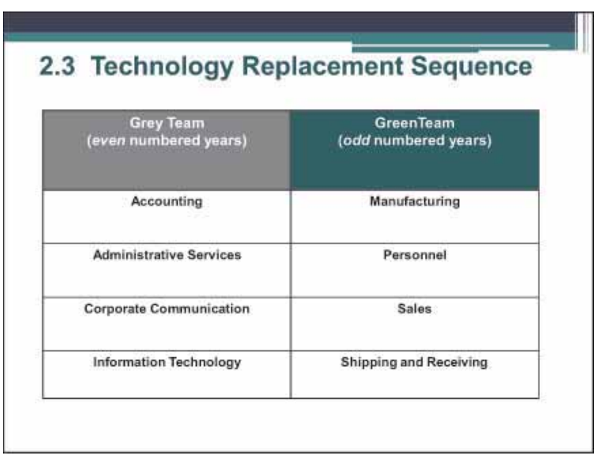
The SmartArt feature in PowerPoint allows the writer to emphasize a flow of ideas and add visual appeal. Bullets help to enhance the text.



A line graph highlights increases and decreases in expenditures over a period of time. This figure will help persuade an audience to accept recommendations for change.



The bar chart, using a graded scale, compares options and clarifies which vendor should be selected.



Use tables to show comparison/contrast. Concise word usage is best for PowerPoint slides.

White space between text aids readability. The photograph adds visual appeal and personalizes the content.

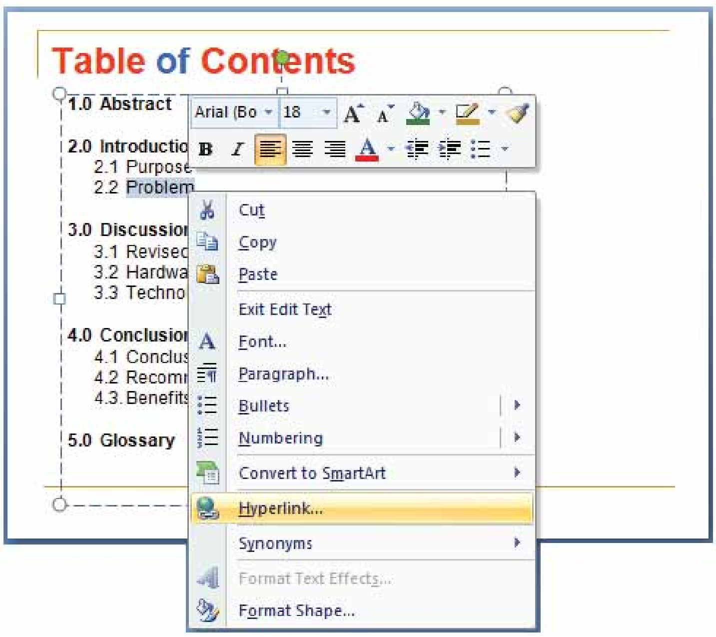
TECHNOLOGY TIPS

Adding Hypertext Links to a PowerPoint Presentation

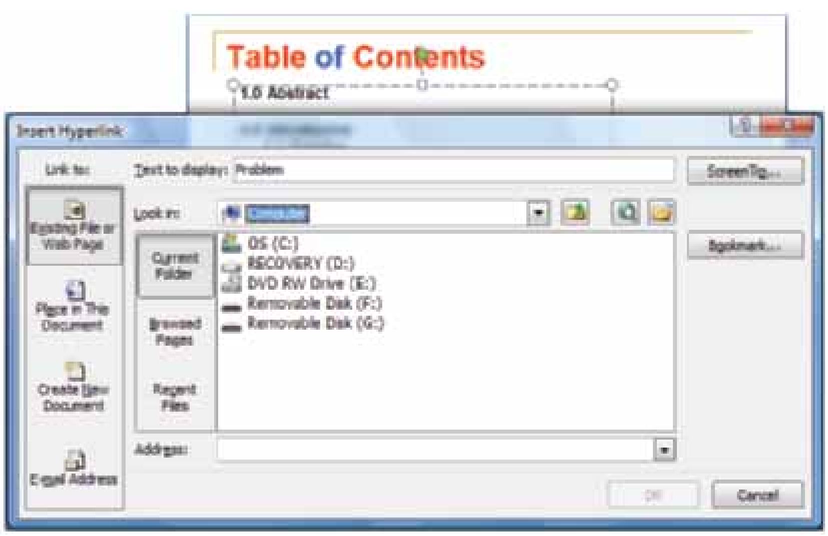
To enhance your oral presentation, you can add hypertext links to PowerPoint. Doing so will allow you to accomplish two goals: moving seamlessly between slides within the presentation and linking to external sites.

To create hypertext links, follow these steps:

1. Highlight the word or words that you want to make a hypertext link.
2. Right-click the highlighted word or words. A box will pop up, as shown in the figure below.



3. Scroll to **Hyperlink** and right-click. You will see the following pop up.



4. To create a hypertext link to screens within your presentation, left-click **Place in This Document**.
5. To create a hypertext link to external Web sites, left-click **Existing File or Web Page**. Then, type the URL to the existing site in the Address line.

POWERPOINT SLIDES CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Does the presentation include headings for each slide?

_____ **2.** Have you used an appropriate font size for readability?

_____ **3.** Did you choose an appropriate font type for readability?

_____ **4.** Did you limit yourself to no more than three different font sizes per screen?

_____ **5.** Has color been used effectively for readability and emphasis, including font color and slide background?

_____ **6.** Did you use special effects effectively versus overusing them?

_____ **7.** Have you limited text on each screen?

_____ **8.** Did you size your graphics correctly for readability, avoiding images that are too small or too complex?

_____ **9.** Have you used highlighting techniques (arrows, color, white space) to emphasize key points?

_____ **10.** Have you edited for spelling and grammatical errors?

EFFECTIVE ORAL PRESENTATION CHECKLIST

_____ **1.** Does your speech have an introduction,
- arousing the audience's attention?
- clearly stating the topic of the presentation?

_____ **2.** Does your speech have a body,
- explaining what exactly you want to say?
- developing your points thoroughly?

_____ **3.** Does your speech have a conclusion,
- suggesting what is next?
- explaining when (due date) a follow-up should occur?
- stating why that date is important?

_____ **4.** Does your presentation provide visual aids to help you make and explain your points?

_____ **5.** Do you modulate your pace and pitch?

_____ **6.** Do you enunciate clearly so the audience will understand you?

_____ **7.** Have you used verbal and nonverbal communication skills effectively?

_____ **8.** Do you speak slowly and remember to pause so the audience can think?

_____ **9.** Have you practiced with any equipment you might use?

_____ **10.** Have you left time for questions and answers?

SPOTLIGHT

How Is PowerPoint Used in Business?

Mark Uhlig is Chairperson and CEO of Uhlig Communications, Inc. This advanced-technology publishing company specializes in the management and creation of marketing and business documents for a diverse clientele, ranging from apartment and condominium communities to individual businesses.

Mark has to speak formally and informally every day to employees, customers, investors, and strategic partners. In many instances, Mark says, "Oral communication is superior to written correspondence. It's quicker, it requires less preparation, and it's more persuasive since you get immediate feedback from your audience and, thus, can react and adjust your message. The challenge," notes Mark, "is to speak with the same deliberation and structure as you would when writing."

That's where PowerPoint comes in. According to Mark, PowerPoint is the perfect hybrid, fusing the benefits of written and oral communication. With PowerPoint, "you can talk from an outline or an agenda. You can prepare talking points to help you stay on message. Thus, you have the power of oral persuasion enhanced by the structure of written communication." In addition, PowerPoint slides "allow the audience to use the printed slides as a record of the conversation, ensuring that their recollections are accurate." Finally, people happily will read PowerPoint slides "because they are short and can be accessed at a glance," Mark says.

Because PowerPoint has become "the standard currency" for oral presentations, Mark uses PowerPoint slides when speaking to his employees about their 401ks, to investors about Uhlig Communications' financial performance, and to customers about the benefits of his products.

Mark sketched the following table to clarify how PowerPoint is the perfect hybrid between oral and written communication:

Oral Communication		PowerPoint	Written Communication	
Positives	**Negatives**	**Positives**	**Positives**	**Negatives**
• Fast • Easy • Persuasive—allowing for give and take	• Hard for audience to recall key ideas • Heard in real time • Not good for complex facts/figures	• Easy • Structured • Combines oral persuasion and written record • Printed notes help recall	• Allows for unlimited detail • Allows for random access	• Takes time and effort to read • Disallows give and take

PowerPoint is just one of the many tools Mark employs in his publishing company to meet the needs of customers and other stakeholders. Clear communication is his goal, and PowerPoint addresses this need.

The Writing Process at Work

Estella Alvarez is a recruitment specialist in the human resources department for Monroe, Louisiana. She uses PowerPoint to make new-hire orientation presentations to city employees.

Prewriting

To plan a presentation, Estella considered the following:

- Goal—to communicate human resources information and regulations
- Audience—new city employees
- Channels—oral presentation, PowerPoint slides, and handouts
- Data—details about governmental regulations illustrated by real-life experiences of other employees

Figure 3 shows how Estella used brainstorming to plan her communication.

FIGURE 3 Estella's Brainstorming List

Before the interview: Be prepared, find the best place and time for the interview, make up the interview questions, invite the panel of interviewers, get water and glasses, paper and pens.

During the interview: Create a comfortable environment, ask questions correctly (check with our HR legal staff to find out what we can and can't ask), use correct body language when speaking to the applicant, and be sure to manage time (don't go too long, so we have enough time for the next interview).

At the end of the interview: Thank the applicant, walk her or him out of the building (or to meet management), meet with the panel to discuss the interview, rate the applicant, and prepare documentation for records.

Writing

Estella drafted PowerPoint slides, such as the one shown in Figure 4.

FIGURE 4 Rough Draft of a PowerPoint Slide for Estella's Presentation on "Conducting Effective Interviews"

Create a Comfortable Environment

Not every applicant will be comfortable in an interview. It's your job to make them comfortable. Conduct the interview in a pleasant, informal, and conversational manner. Here's what to do:

Welcome applicants and make them feel comfortable by creating a climate that shows trust. Introduce any panel members and explain how the interview will be conducted. Tell the applicant how many questions will be asked, who will ask them, the sequence of the questions, and let them know about note-taking resources available during the interview, like pen, paper, or reference materials. Let applicants know that they will be allowed to ask questions at the end of the interview if there's time and encourage them to organize their thoughts before responding to questions.

Create a positive body language by making eye contact and facing the applicants so that you seem caring and interested. Avoid negative body language. Don't frown, cross your arms, look at your watch, take phone calls, or yawn during the interview.

Estella says, "After my first unsuccessful presentation, I realized I was too slide dependent. My slides had too much content and were way too boring, and I read them to my audience! No wonder I scored poorly on the effectiveness of the presentation."

Rewriting

Figure 5 shows Estella's revised PowerPoint slide.

FIGURE 5 Estella's Revised PowerPoint Slide

Create a Comfortable Environment

In the interview, be pleasant, informal, and conversational.

- Welcome applicants by using their name.
- Introduce the interviewers.
- Allow applicants to ask questions.
- Avoid negative body language.

Large heading to help reader navigation

Subheadings using Arial font for readability

Graphics and white space

Four lines of text, bulleted, with few words per line

CHAPTER HIGHLIGHTS

1. Effective oral communication ensures that your message is conveyed successfully and that your verbal, vocal, visual, and listening skills make a good impression.
2. You will communicate verbally and nonverbally on an everyday basis, informally and formally.
3. Some points to consider when you use the telephone are to script your telephone conversation, speak clearly and slowly, and avoid rambling.
4. To prepare for a teleconference, plan ahead, check equipment for audio quality, and choose a quiet and private location.
5. A webconference is a way to offer online training for employees at remote locations.
6. An effective oral presentation introduction might include an anecdote, question, quote, facts, or a table setter.
7. In the discussion section of a formal oral presentation, organize your content according to comparison/contrast, problem/solution, argument/persuasion, importance, and chronology.
8. Conclude your formal speech by restating your main points, recommending a future course of action, or by asking for questions and comments.
9. Many visual aids can enhance your oral presentation. Choose from whiteboards, Prezi, PowerPoint, and CDs.
10. Some benefits of PowerPoint slides include different autolayouts and design templates, the ability to add and delete slides easily, SmartArt, hypertext links, and the incorporation of sound and graphics.
11. When you use PowerPoint slides, ensure contrast between the font color and background, choose an easy-to-read font size and type, use few words and lines per slide, use headings for navigation, and prepare print handouts for your audience.
12. To revise your oral presentation (the third part of the writing process), work on your delivery, including eye contact, rate of speech, enunciation, pitch, pauses and emphasis, interaction with the audience, and conflict resolution.
13. Appearance, body language, and gestures will impact your oral presentation.
14. Restate main points frequently in an oral presentation.
15. Be prepared for questions and discussion after you conclude your oral presentation.

APPLY YOUR KNOWLEDGE

CASE STUDIES

1. A customer is treated poorly by a salesperson at TechStop. The vice president of customer service, Shana Wong, has received reports of other problems with customer–sales staff interaction, such as employee rudeness, unfamiliarity with store policy and products, taking personal calls while interacting with customers, or visiting with other employees instead of focusing on customer needs. Shana needs to make a formal oral presentation to all sales personnel to improve customer service.

Assignment

Based on this scenario, outline the content for Shana's oral presentation as follows:

- Determine what kind of introduction should be used to arouse the audience's interest.
- Provide a thesis statement.
- Develop information to teach employees sales etiquette and customer interaction, store policy regarding customer satisfaction, the impact on poor customer relations, and the consequences of failing to handle customers correctly. Research these topics (either online, in a library, or through interviews) to find your content.
- Organize the speech's content with appropriate transitions to aid coherence.
- Determine which types of visual aids would work best for this presentation.

2. Halfmoon outdoor equipment is an online wholesaler of hiking, biking, and boating gear. Their staff is located in four Northeastern states. Halfmoon's CEO, Montana Wildhack, wants his employees to excel in communication skills, oral and written. He has hired a consultant to train the employees. To accomplish this training, the consultant will provide a teleconference. Fifty employees will meet with the consultant in a training room, while another 150 Halfmoon staff members view the training session from their different work locations.

   During the presentation, the consultant highlights his comments by writing on a whiteboard, using green and yellow markers. He attempts humor by suggesting that Halfmoon's thermal stocking caps would be a perfect gift for one of the seminar's balding participants, Joe. In addition, the consultant has participants break into small groups to role play. They take mock customer orders, field complaints, and interact with vendors, using a prepared checklist of dos and don'ts.

   At one point, when a seminar participant calls in a question, the consultant says, "No, that would be wrong, wrong, wrong! Why would you ever respond to a customer like that? Common sense would dictate a different response." During a break, the consultant does not mute his clip-on microphone. To conclude the session, the consultant asks for questions and comments. When he cannot provide a good answer, he asks the participants to suggest options, and he says he will research the question and place an answer on his corporate Web site.

Assignment

Using the guidelines in the chapter, discuss the speaker's oral communication skills. Explain what went wrong and why. Explain what was effective.

INDIVIDUAL AND TEAM PROJECTS

Evaluating an Oral Presentation

Listen to a speech. You could do so on television; at a student union; at a church, synagogue, or mosque; at a civic event, city hall meeting, or community organization; at a company activity; or in your classroom. Answer the following questions.

1. What type of introduction did the speaker use to arouse listener interest (anecdote, question, quote, or facts)? Give examples to support your decision.
2. What visual aids were used in the presentation? Were these visual aids effective? Explain your answers.
3. How did the speaker develop the assertions? Did the speaker use analysis, comparison/contrast, argument/persuasion, problem/solution, or chronology? Give examples to prove your point.
4. Was the speaker's delivery effective? Use the Presentation Delivery Rating Sheet to assess the speaker's performance by placing check marks in the appropriate columns.

PRESENTATION DELIVERY RATING SHEET

Delivery Techniques	Good	Bad	Explanation
Eye contact			
Rate of speech			
Enunciation			
Pitch of voice			
Use of pauses			
Emphasis			
Interaction with listeners			
Conflict resolution			

Giving an Oral Presentation

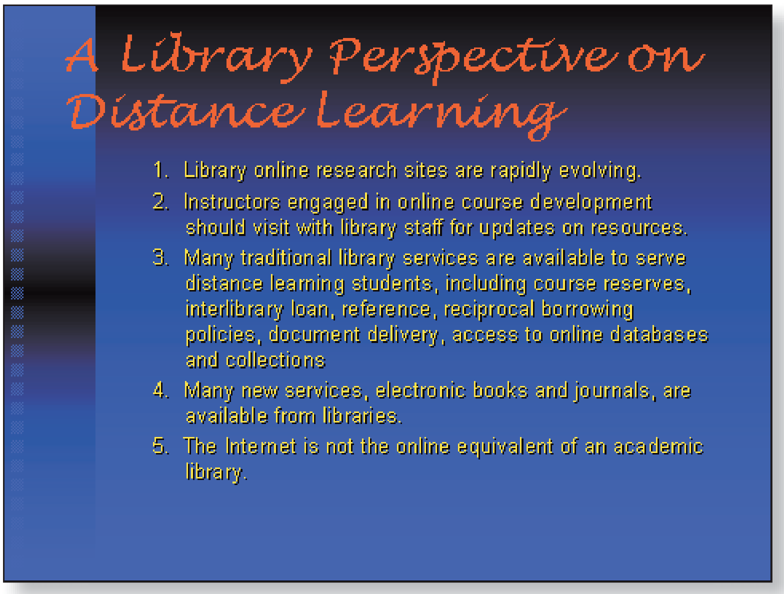
Research a topic in your field of expertise or degree program. The topic could include a legal issue, a governmental regulation, a news item, an innovation in the field, or a published article in a professional journal or public magazine. Make an oral presentation about your findings.

Creating a PowerPoint Slide Presentation

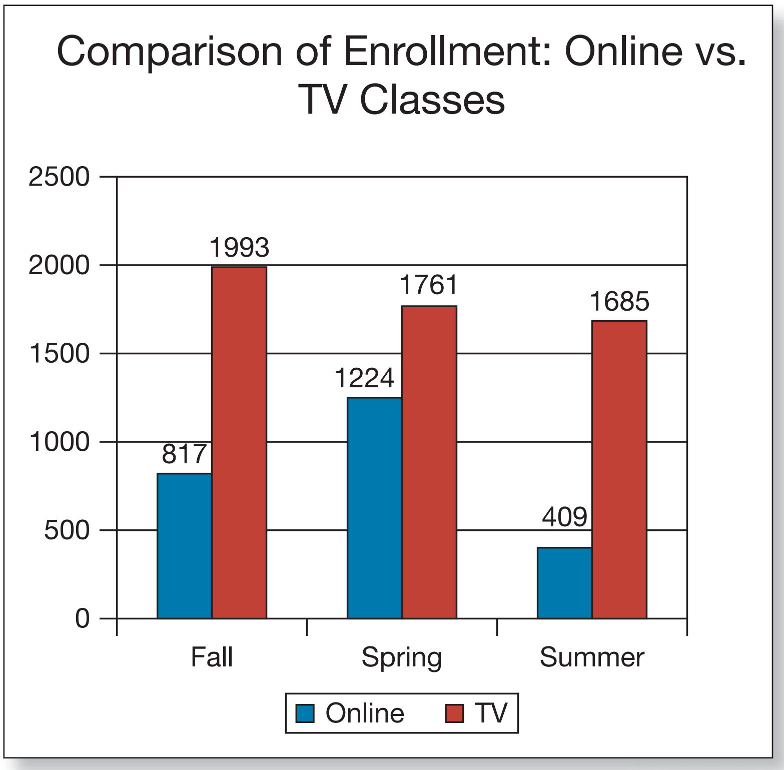
For the assignment above ("Giving an Oral Presentation"), create PowerPoint slides to enhance your oral communication. To do so, follow the guidelines provided in this chapter.

Assessing PowerPoint Slides

After reviewing the following PowerPoint slides, determine which are successful, which are unsuccessful, and explain your answers, based on the guidelines provided in this chapter.


A Library Perspective on Distance Learning
1. Library online research sites are rapidly evolving.
2. Instructors engaged in online course development should visit with library staff for updates on resources.
3. Many traditional library services are available to serve distance learning students, including course reserves, interlibrary loan, reference, reciprocal borrowing policies, document delivery, access to online databases and collections
4. Many new services, electronic books and journals, are available from libraries.
5. The Internet is not the online equivalent of an academic library.


A Technology Perspective on Online Education
Students—24-hour Call Centers answer student hardware/software needs
Faculty—The Tech Center helps faculty with course creations and tech resources



PROBLEM-SOLVING THINK PIECES

After reading the following scenarios, answer these questions:

- Would your oral presentation be everyday, informal, or formal?
- Would you use a videoconference, Skype, teleconference, or face-to-face meeting?
- Which visual aids would work best for your presentation?
- Is your oral presentation goal to persuade, instruct, inform, or build trust?

In addition, complete any or all of these assignments:

- Write an outline for the presentation.
- Write a brief, introductory lead-in to arouse your listeners' interest.
- Create a questionnaire.

1. You work at FlashCom Electric. Your company has created a mobile app to calculate utility usage. Your boss has asked you to make a presentation to sales representatives from 20 potential vendors in the city. The oral presentation will explain to the vendors the benefits of your product, the sales breaks you will offer, and how the vendors can increase their sales.
2. After working for Friendly's, a major discount computer hardware and software retailer, for over a year, you have created a new organizational plan for their vast inventory. In an oral presentation, you plan to show the CEO and board of directors why your plan is cost effective and efficient.
3. You are the manager of an automotive parts supply company, Plugs, Lugs, & More. Your staff of ten in-store employees lacks knowledge of the store's new merchandise, has not been meeting sales goals, and does not always treat customers with respect and care. It's time to address these concerns.

4. As CEO of your engineering/architectural firm (Levin, Lisk, and Lamb), you must downsize the workforce. Business is decreasing and costs are rising. To ensure third-quarter profitability, 10 percent of the staff must be laid off. That will amount to a layoff of over 500 employees. You now must make an oral presentation to your stockholders and the entire workforce (located in three states) at your company's annual meeting to report the situation.

WEB WORKSHOP

PowerPoint has proven to be a useful tool in business presentations. However, PowerPoint must be used correctly, as discussed in the chapter, to be effective. Access an online search engine and type in phrases such as follows (include any additional search terms you create):

- using PowerPoint in business
- effective PowerPoint use
- tips for using PowerPoint
- PowerPoint + business presentations
- PowerPoint + pros and cons

Once you have found articles discussing this topic, summarize your findings and make an oral presentation (using PowerPoint slides).

TEXT CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

Figure 1 — The Oral Presentation Process. Adapted from "Communications: Oral Presentations."

PHOTO CREDITS

Credits are listed in order of appearance.

REFERENCES

Buffett, Warren. "Preface." In *A Plain English Handbook: How to Create Clear SEC Disclosure Documents,* Office of Investor Education and Assistance. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, Aug. 1998: 1–2. Print.

"Business." *Skype*. 2012. Web. 7 Mar. 2012.

Clarke, Robyn D. "Put your best voice forward - speech recommendations." *The CBS Interactive Business Network*. 2000 Jun. Web. 5 Jul. 2011.

"Communications: Oral Presentations." *UniS Skills Material*. 2004. Web. 7 Mar. 2012.

Hall, Edward T. *The Silent Language*. New York: Random House, Inc. 1981. Print.

Mahin, Linda. "PowerPoint Pedagogy." *Business Communication Quarterly* 67 (Jun. 2004): 219–222. Print.

Mehrabian, Albert. *Silent Messages: Implicit Communication of Emotions and Attitudes*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 1981. Print.

Monster Career Advice Newsletter. 29 Aug. 2006. Print.

Murray, Krysta. "Web Conferencing Tips from a Pro." 1 Jul. 2004. Web. 7 Mar. 2007.

O'Brien, Tim. "In Front of a Group." *The Kansas City Star.* 15 Jul. 2003: C5. Print.

Tilton, James E. "Adventures in public speaking: A guide for the beginning instructor or public speaker." *The CBS Interactive Business Network*. Feb. 2002. Web. 5 Jul. 2011.

Warfield, Anne. "Do You Speak Body Language?" *The CBS Interactive Business Network*. 2001 Apr. Web. 5 Jul. 2011.

Zúñiga, Gil de, *et al*. "Digital Democracy: Reimagining Pathways to Political Participation." *Journal of Information Technology & Politics,* 7.1 (2010): 36–51. Print.

Index

Page references followed by "f" indicate illustrated figures or photographs; followed by "t" indicates a table.

A

A key, 30, 51, 73, 207, 233, 260, 303, 333, 357, 365, 367, 396, 449, 505-506, 525, 599-600, 636
Abbreviations, 91, 93-94, 96-98, 105, 119, 122, 161, 166, 173-174, 200, 204-205, 207-208, 210, 268, 296, 300-301, 303-304, 306, 354, 362, 442, 446-447, 449-450, 452, 476, 587, 589, 606
Abilities, 122, 172, 258, 267, 271, 278, 389, 484, 538, 624, 638, 659-661
Abuse, 183, 505, 526, 658
acceleration, 208, 304, 450
Acceptance, 171, 251, 279-280, 282, 604
Access, 3, 7-8, 15, 17-18, 21, 32, 37-38, 40-42, 51-53, 67-68, 75, 79, 91, 99, 104, 123, 126, 130-131, 134-136, 138, 143, 146-149, 160-161, 170, 173, 176, 185, 189, 213, 229, 233-234, 236, 238-240, 242-244, 246, 253-254, 256, 262-263, 276, 283-284, 309, 324-328, 332-336, 341-345, 354, 397-398, 400, 403, 405, 419, 424-425, 455, 471-472, 475, 492, 495, 499, 501, 505-509, 512, 519-522, 525-527, 529-530, 539, 541, 550, 552, 557, 559-560, 564, 567, 569, 574-575, 582, 599-601, 603, 605-606, 609-610, 612-613, 631, 640, 648-649, 678, 685
  charts, 52-53, 148-149, 242, 341, 400, 612-613, 648-649
  colors, 8, 91, 333-335, 341, 345, 425, 475, 507, 520, 640
  controls, 606
  creating, 38, 130-131, 138, 170, 246, 343-344, 398, 400, 501, 505-506, 508, 522, 525, 552
  database, 134, 253, 284, 541, 575
  designing, 138, 506, 508, 522, 564
  editing, 8, 21, 51, 609
  footers, 41, 333, 341
  for data, 276
  formatting, 40, 75, 263
  forms, 3, 52, 130, 148, 160, 229, 233, 244, 326, 506, 569, 612, 648
  headers, 41, 333, 341
  links, 17, 37-38, 91, 229, 233-234, 238, 242, 244, 253-254, 263, 341, 501, 505, 508, 512, 519-522, 525-526, 529, 609, 640
  objects, 475, 606
  order, 21, 53, 149, 263, 325-328, 332, 344, 354, 492, 495, 499, 506, 512, 526, 530, 569, 582, 613, 649
  orientation, 68, 91, 325, 342, 398, 678
  printing, 173, 325, 333, 336, 342, 419, 610
  reports, 3, 38, 67, 134, 160, 185, 253, 326-328, 344, 507, 539, 541, 550, 552, 557, 559-560, 564, 567, 569, 574-575, 582, 599-601, 603, 605-606, 609-610, 613
  sections, 130, 263, 475, 550
  starting, 75, 131, 236, 559
  tables, 32, 131, 170, 263, 341, 354, 397, 400, 403, 522, 539
  views, 424, 509
  working with, 3, 276, 552
Access to information, 324, 326
accessibility, 12, 90, 176, 338, 505, 507, 515, 525, 530
Accessories, 41, 380, 406, 479, 489
  marketing, 380
Accidents, 3, 20, 67, 77, 162
Accommodations, 138, 529
Accomplishments, 4, 7, 77, 164, 204, 252, 258-260, 262-263, 268, 270, 278, 300, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 446, 586, 628
Accountability, 184, 611
Accounting, 5, 11-12, 85, 106, 120, 147, 171, 182, 189, 263, 328, 344, 393, 532, 534, 536, 556, 563, 580, 590-591, 642, 647, 667
Accounts payable, 8, 558-559
Accounts receivable, 283
  managing, 283
Accuracy, 36, 41-43, 47, 63, 67, 75, 83, 87, 103, 180, 429, 484, 486, 509, 631-632
Acetate, 217, 313, 459
acid, 545
Active listening, 660
Adding, 19, 31-32, 42-43, 47, 214-215, 234, 310-311, 370, 381, 456-457, 474, 520, 645, 669, 676
Addition, 3, 7, 10, 12, 14-15, 39-40, 42, 64, 76, 94, 99-101, 104, 109, 111, 114, 120, 126-127, 134, 136, 143, 145, 166, 168, 170, 177, 183, 185, 190, 198, 201, 213, 234, 238, 246, 250, 253-255, 257-262, 269, 271-272, 280, 285, 294, 297, 309, 327, 333, 353, 359, 381-382, 384, 386, 388, 396-397, 400, 406, 416, 440, 443, 455, 474-475, 478, 498-499, 505, 508, 511, 513, 518, 521, 527, 533, 539-540, 544-545, 549, 552, 556, 558, 566-567, 573, 585-586, 595, 598, 605, 608, 611, 632, 636, 642, 646, 660, 669, 677, 681, 684
Address Book, 231
adjectives, 64
Administrative, 8, 36, 112, 171, 186-187, 221, 268, 317, 408, 463, 471, 483-484, 497, 532, 588, 597
Administrative assistants, 588
Administrative management, 221, 317, 408, 463
Administrator, 8, 268, 563, 597
Adults, 508, 636
adverbs, 64, 196, 292, 438
advertising, 77, 113, 187, 214, 235, 237, 267, 284, 310, 359, 387-388, 391, 393, 396, 456, 482, 509, 552-553, 623, 635, 637, 646, 658-659
  costs, 396, 623, 635
  media, 214, 235, 237, 284, 310, 391, 456, 509, 637, 659
Africa, 369, 506, 608
Age, 90-92, 101, 111, 119-120, 238, 240, 255, 350-351, 354-355, 358, 376-377, 475, 529, 546, 642-643
Agenda, 13, 22, 33, 36, 162, 325, 329, 332, 336, 339, 344, 540, 542, 548, 550, 664, 677
agendas, 159
agriculture, 104
  production, 104
AIDS, 31-32, 46-47, 100, 111, 158, 254, 339, 347-378, 471, 575, 611, 622-623, 632, 644, 659, 665, 669-671, 675, 677, 680-682, 684
Air, 13, 96, 215, 217, 263, 311, 313, 342, 420-422, 457, 459, 487, 528, 547, 645
Air conditioning, 215, 263, 311, 457, 547, 645
Airbags, 417
Airways, 137
  airways, 137
Alcohol, 658
Algae, 84, 485, 543-545
alignment, 9
Alternatives, 66, 111, 178, 388-389, 393-394, 402, 595-596, 661
Altitude, 486
alveoli, 158
Amenities, 624
American cheese, 499
American National Standards Institute, 475
American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 475
Americans with Disabilities Act, 90, 120
Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), 90, 120
Ammonia, 84
Amperes, 209, 305, 451
Anger, 238, 385
Angle, 53, 149, 613, 649
Angles, 12, 401
  right, 401
animals, 107
animation, 38, 482, 502, 514, 671
Annual meetings, 663
annuals, 113-114
antacids, 543
Antihistamines, 543
Anxiety, 388, 665
Appearance, 28, 59, 124, 155, 225, 248, 269, 277, 321, 325, 342, 346, 378, 396, 412, 467, 502, 530, 569, 619, 655, 660, 680, 686
appendix, 55-56, 58, 141, 151-152, 154, 354, 417, 573, 579, 587, 600, 608, 615-616, 618, 623, 625, 630, 644, 651-652, 654
Applications, 17, 28, 66, 120, 132, 134, 163, 193, 225, 276, 285, 289, 360, 390, 404, 435, 472, 493, 544, 546, 554-555, 590, 594-597, 603-604, 608-611, 636, 639, 642-643, 659
arch bridges, 418
architecture, 230, 263, 363, 420, 610
Area, 7, 65, 80, 85, 93-94, 99, 134, 146, 175, 255, 258, 260, 278, 287, 362, 393, 404, 420, 431, 470, 487, 498, 533, 552, 565-566, 574, 581, 646, 662, 665
Arenas, 576
argument, 32, 380, 382, 384-390, 402, 406, 596, 599, 623, 644, 668, 680, 682
arguments, 20, 40, 384-385, 400, 406-407
Arms, 140, 679
arrow, 142-143, 478, 517, 583
Arrowheads, 491
Arteries, 432
Asia, 506-507, 608
assembly, 426-429, 473
Assessing, 21, 270, 343, 345, 374, 483, 682
Assessment, 69, 81, 166, 170, 188, 485-486, 528, 549, 559, 582, 586, 602, 611, 628, 635, 637
assets, 14, 271, 349, 371-372, 491-492, 494-495, 588, 611
  types of, 349, 371
Assistant, 8, 112, 120, 186-187, 267, 283-285, 580, 588
Assistants, 213, 309, 455, 588, 643
Associate, 93, 286, 389-390, 486, 492, 646
Associations, 204, 261, 300, 446, 492, 495
Atlanta, 108, 211, 307, 453
atmosphere, 208, 217, 304, 313, 407, 450, 459
Attitude, 92, 101, 119, 194, 221, 251, 278, 290, 317, 408, 436, 463
Attitudes, 63, 100, 103, 194, 213, 290, 309, 385, 399, 402, 436, 455, 672, 686
audio, 31, 91, 208, 233-234, 263, 265, 304, 391, 450, 507, 514-515, 659, 663, 680
Audiovisual equipment, 181
Australia, 103, 376, 506
Authority, 119, 128, 196, 292, 387, 438, 489, 554, 588, 596
AutoCorrect, 9
Avant garde, 330
Average, 10, 69, 72, 108-109, 112, 158, 260, 283-284, 357, 376, 584-585
Averages, 35
Awards, 20, 36, 260, 262, 659

B

background, 64, 93-94, 97-98, 119, 136, 257, 267, 269, 327, 334-335, 339, 341, 508, 513, 515, 520, 536, 541, 548, 550, 554, 557, 579, 582, 585, 592, 610, 630, 640, 677, 680
  charts, 341
  Web pages, 136
Backspace key, 42
Bacon, 54, 56-57, 150, 152-153, 614, 616-617, 650, 652-653
Bacteria, 365
Baking, 472
  procedure, 472
balance, 76, 384, 515, 640

Balances, 11, 13, 74
Banana Republic, 62
Banking, 8, 104, 106, 134, 191, 534, 540
    check, 8, 104, 540
Bankruptcy, 244
Banks, 24, 121, 123, 132
bar charts, 341, 349, 351, 353, 355, 357-358, 373, 377, 400, 629
Bar codes, 646
Bar graphs, 144
Barcode, 94
barometer, 208, 304, 450
Barrel, 62, 208, 304, 353, 450
Barriers, 20, 38, 104, 106, 124, 507, 660
Base, 13, 67, 101, 106, 130, 238, 246, 344, 362, 384, 395, 431, 545, 562, 568, 596, 608, 610, 636-637
bases, 69
BASIC, 94, 167, 189, 192, 261, 268, 270, 272, 276, 278, 283, 285-286, 288, 353, 434, 486, 520, 536, 575, 597, 599, 603, 610-611
Basics, 248
Batteries, 201, 297, 396, 443, 479
    construction, 479
Battery, 364, 416, 431, 433, 480
Bay, 566
beam bridges, 418
Beans, 526-527
Beef, 387
    marketing, 387
    prices, 387
Behavior, 101, 120, 245, 368, 473, 539, 587
    investigative, 539
    sexual, 101, 120
Belts, 79, 391
Berkshire, 667
Best management practices (BMPs), 138
Beverages, 277, 376, 499
Biases, 91, 107, 111, 120
bibliography, 134, 143
bids, 567, 624
Biking, 84, 681
billboards, 391
Billing, 180, 326
Billing policies, 180
Binders, 487
binding, 181
biology, 55, 134, 151, 615, 651
Biotechnology, 158-159, 188, 270, 344, 430, 486, 624, 646
birds, 552
birth, 261
Bleeding, 432
Blindness, 507
Blocks, 144, 164, 211, 244, 307, 326-327, 350, 453, 521
Blog, 3, 5, 7, 9, 17-18, 31-33, 38, 50, 55, 58, 64, 67, 81, 92, 98, 100, 128, 130-131, 136-137, 146, 151, 154-155, 229-234, 236, 238, 240-244, 246-248, 254-255, 269, 272, 381, 394-395, 505, 508, 514, 526-527, 589, 608-609, 615, 618, 637, 640, 647, 651, 654
Blogs, 6, 14, 18, 38, 115, 131, 160, 228-234, 244, 246-248, 253, 269, 382, 401, 506, 608, 637
blood, 158, 431-432, 470-472, 553, 646
    clotting, 432
blood pressure, 431
Blood vessels, 432
Bloom, 190, 545
Bluetooth, 77
Board of directors, 187, 533, 684
Body, 80, 93, 123, 139, 158-159, 166, 168, 171-172, 177, 179, 181, 187-188, 271, 273, 277, 366, 382-383, 386, 388-389, 400-401, 406, 424, 498, 540, 542, 548, 550, 554, 557, 585, 625, 627, 660, 662, 665, 667, 670, 677-680, 686
    barriers, 660
Body language, 171, 277, 660, 662, 670, 678-680, 686
Boiling, 206, 302, 448
bold, 9, 331, 341, 480, 502
bolts, 433
Bonds, 349, 372-373
bone, 432
Bone marrow, 432
    red, 432
Booking, 523-524
bookmarks, 231
books, 8, 53, 69, 118, 127-128, 133, 138, 140, 144, 149, 210, 219, 306, 315, 452, 461, 507-508, 528, 587, 589, 607-608, 613, 628, 649, 667
borders, 14, 106, 266, 341
Bore, 668
Brain, 122
brainstorming, 20, 31, 35-36, 47-48, 122, 242-243, 403, 412, 426, 431, 520, 589-590, 678
Brand loyalty, 242-243
Branding, 380
Brands, 102-103, 228, 237
    trends, 228
Breaking up, 349, 373
breathing, 217, 313, 333, 459
brick, 420-421
Bridges, 418
brochures, 5-6, 31, 38, 47, 90, 122, 259, 263, 267, 328, 344, 380-381, 394, 398-399, 405-407, 507, 552, 645
bronze, 366
Brownies, 472
Browse, 69, 529
browsers, 431, 522, 610
Budget, 13, 49, 64-65, 100, 129, 213, 215, 272, 309, 311, 328, 334-335, 455, 457, 474, 482, 549, 551-552, 558-560, 574, 577, 585, 590-592, 600, 605, 623, 628
    enterprise, 605
budgeting, 120, 483
Budgets, 280
bug, 596
Building construction, 96
building permits, 551
buildings, 96, 210, 306, 366, 452
bulb, 431
Bulk Mail, 108
bulleted lists, 45, 575, 598, 630
bullets, 9, 42, 75, 79, 170, 172-173, 262, 265-266, 281, 325, 333, 335, 339-340, 342, 344, 369, 389, 397, 401, 403, 405, 477, 489, 513-515, 604, 631, 672, 675
    formatting, 75, 477
Bun, 499
Burlington, 367, 378
Burns, 475-476
Business, 3-5, 8, 11, 13, 23-24, 28, 37, 47, 63, 67, 79-80, 90, 98, 101-104, 106, 108-109, 113-114, 118, 120-124, 127-128, 134-135, 138, 142, 145-146, 158, 160-161, 167, 170-171, 177, 179-181, 183-184, 188, 191-192, 196, 202, 204, 216, 218-219, 221, 225, 229-232, 235-238, 240, 246-248, 250-251, 255-256, 258-259, 267-268, 272-273, 277, 288, 292, 298, 300, 312, 314-315, 317, 321, 325, 327, 329, 332, 336, 338-339, 344, 346, 362, 380-381, 384, 390-391, 393-395, 398, 406, 408, 434, 438, 444, 446, 458, 460-461, 463, 471, 474, 482, 484, 497, 506, 509-512, 514, 518, 522, 527, 530, 536, 541, 553, 559, 565, 567-568, 572, 575-577, 586, 588-589, 597, 603, 609-610, 622-624, 628, 630, 638, 646-647, 661, 663, 672, 677, 685-686
    managing, 506
    marketing, 5, 11, 102, 120, 128, 134, 171, 229-230, 235-236, 240, 248, 259, 268, 272, 380-381, 384, 391, 394, 398, 482, 527, 567-568, 577, 622, 630, 638, 677
    plan, 3, 5, 24, 63, 127, 138, 145-146, 177, 240, 267, 277, 381, 391, 406, 522, 559, 610, 646
    safety, 106, 391, 471, 474, 484, 565, 588, 646
Business communications, 183
business documents, 128, 589, 677
Buttons, 129, 369, 419, 483, 511-512, 522
bytes, 641

C

cables, 190, 431, 433, 479, 610, 629, 671
Calendar, 8, 36, 634, 640, 660
    meetings, 36
    tasks, 660
Calendars, 527
Calorie, 208, 304, 450
camera, 38, 46, 393
cameras, 18, 48, 549, 663
CAN, 7-8, 10-18, 20-22, 26, 30, 32-36, 38-47, 49, 52-53, 55, 63-69, 72-74, 76-79, 84-88, 91, 94, 96, 98-101, 103-104, 106-107, 109, 111-115, 117, 120, 122-123, 127-134, 136, 138, 140, 144-146, 148-149, 151, 158, 160-163, 165, 167-172, 174-181, 183-185, 187-188, 192-193, 203, 213, 215-216, 219, 229-238, 240, 242-246, 251-255, 257-263, 265-266, 268-269, 271, 275, 277-279, 281-282, 285-286, 288-289, 299, 309, 311-312, 315, 326-328, 330, 333, 337-338, 340-342, 344, 349-351, 353-358, 362, 367-370, 373, 381, 384-385, 387-391, 394-402, 405-407, 414-417, 420-425, 431-435, 445, 455, 457-458, 461, 470-472, 474-477, 480, 482-490, 492, 495, 498-501, 505-508, 510-529, 534-535, 537-539, 542-543, 545, 547-548, 550-553, 557-559, 563, 566-568, 573-574, 576-577, 583-588, 593, 595-596, 598-599, 601, 604-606, 608-613, 615, 623-631, 634, 636-637, 639, 643, 646-649, 651, 660, 663, 665-672, 674, 676-678, 680, 684
Canada, 103, 109, 132, 376
Cancer, 554-556
    colon cancer, 554-556
Capital, 120, 196, 205, 210, 218, 269, 292, 301, 306, 314, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 348-349, 372, 438, 447, 452, 460
capitalization, 87, 217, 313, 459
Car accidents, 20
Career, 44, 49, 59, 147, 250, 252-253, 256, 258, 269, 282, 284-285, 287, 321, 661, 686
    plans, 661
Career opportunities, 256
careers, 253
    cover letters, 253
    employment, 253
cars, 87, 102, 218, 220, 314, 316, 328, 419, 421-422, 460, 462, 567-568, 624, 647, 666
cascading, 583
case, 23, 40, 48, 84, 97, 101-104, 120, 124, 188, 213, 229, 244, 250, 279, 285, 309, 341-342, 373, 382, 386, 406, 416, 420, 426-430, 455, 471, 479, 498, 526, 545, 565, 567-568, 572, 597, 608, 623, 667
Cash, 78, 99, 283, 426, 428, 524, 539, 590-591
Casinos, 106
catalog, 611
Catering, 5, 550
Cathode, 206, 302, 448
Cations, 182, 267, 270, 284, 559, 597
Cell cycle, 554
Cell phones, 68, 185, 233, 639
cells, 432, 554-556
    growth, 554-556
    theory, 554
    values, 556
Celsius, 208, 304, 450
Center of gravity, 208, 304, 450
Centers for Disease Control and, 412
Certification, 96, 181, 257, 390, 486, 624, 658-659
Chain of command, 21, 111, 362
Change, 9, 15, 31, 34, 45, 53, 69, 73-74, 104, 129, 137, 149, 176-177, 194, 213, 220, 236, 259, 263, 273, 290, 309, 316, 341, 382, 385, 390, 398-399, 402, 417, 420, 425, 436, 455, 462, 487, 491, 510, 537, 539, 574, 583, 588, 603, 606, 613, 649, 671, 675
Change orders, 31
Channels of communication, 3-4, 6, 23, 246, 280, 401
Character, 67-68, 108, 203, 245, 268, 299, 381, 384, 402, 445
characters, 38, 68-69, 108, 161, 184-185, 191, 233, 235, 241, 598
chargers, 431, 433, 479
Charlotte, 28
charts, 14, 31, 35-36, 47, 49, 52-53, 144, 148-149, 242, 341, 349, 351, 353, 355, 357-362, 373-374, 377, 399-400, 563, 586, 612-613, 624, 628-629, 648-649, 671, 673
    axes, 357-358, 360
    elements, 373, 629
    gridlines, 358, 360
    layout, 31, 47, 400
    legend, 357-358, 360, 362
    moving, 31, 47
    printing, 355
    publishing, 53, 149, 613, 649
    styles, 341, 361
Checks, 11, 13, 76, 113-114, 257, 488, 626, 659
Cheese, 499
chemical reactions, 432
Chemicals, 201, 297, 443, 487, 544, 546, 554

chemistry, 134, 271, 486
Chicago, 14, 54, 58, 62-63, 76, 141, 150, 154, 167, 229, 614, 618, 650, 654
Chickens, 143
Chief executive officer (CEO), 250
Childcare, 106
Children, 112, 121, 472, 524, 527, 542-546
China, 102-103, 107, 369, 376, 506
  buttons, 369
Chlorine, 486
Choices, 79, 161, 183, 349, 373, 398, 550, 573, 637
Chronological resume, 77, 251, 257, 266-267, 275, 281-282, 284-285
Circle, 213, 215-216, 218, 309, 311-312, 314, 360, 455, 457-458, 460
  parts of, 360
circuits, 139-140
Citations, 52-53, 127-128, 140-142, 144, 148-149, 393, 587, 589, 612-613, 648-649
Civic responsibility, 504, 526
Claims, 77-78, 115-116, 176, 178, 385, 406, 569, 607
Class, 19, 24, 26-27, 49, 63, 86, 101, 147, 195, 245, 260, 276, 286-287, 291, 344, 351, 389, 406, 437, 486, 500-501, 527-528, 565-566, 569
classes, 49, 127, 184, 211, 219, 272, 307, 315, 351-352, 384, 453, 461, 544, 546, 567, 588, 659, 684
  names of, 211, 307, 453
Classmates, 24-26, 260, 286
cleaning, 342, 470, 500, 528
Cleanliness, 486, 498, 500
Cleaver, 74
clicking, 16, 131, 136, 263, 321, 356, 391, 398, 672
Clients, 4-5, 7, 11, 13, 30, 34, 54-58, 62-63, 95, 101, 103-104, 112, 116, 121, 132, 138, 150-154, 159, 161-162, 171, 174, 180, 218, 229, 240, 242-243, 254, 262, 267, 270, 314, 326, 343, 348, 366, 374, 384-385, 391, 395-396, 412, 417, 420, 460, 482-483, 514-515, 522-523, 526, 529, 534-535, 547, 573-574, 586, 595, 608, 610-611, 614-618, 622-624, 628, 630, 638-640, 650-654
climate, 565, 679
Clinical trials, 15
clip art, 266, 341, 415, 424, 430, 673
  slides, 673
Clipboard, 370
Clothing, 77, 79, 86-87, 189, 267, 277, 286, 498, 529, 671
  drying, 671
  hand washing, 498
cloud, 8, 513
clusters, 602
coal, 80
code, 106, 168, 254, 258, 399, 420, 482, 491, 596-598, 603, 606, 662
codes, 420, 492, 496, 646
Coding, 278, 482-483, 508, 598, 642
Coffee, 22, 112, 167, 431, 526-527
Colleges, 8, 11-12, 28, 54-58, 87, 150-154, 219, 250, 257, 260, 315, 461, 614-618, 650-654
collision, 421
Colon, 168-169, 201, 216, 297, 312, 443, 458, 554-556
Colon cancer, 554-556
color, 9, 38-39, 41, 84, 91, 101, 109, 172-173, 333, 335, 339-342, 345, 349, 352-353, 358, 360, 369, 371, 373, 378, 381, 397, 400, 405, 419, 423, 425, 476-477, 479, 489-490, 502, 507-509, 512-513, 515-516, 520, 522, 529, 559, 583, 635, 640, 670-672, 674, 677, 680
  rendering, 378
color scheme, 405, 520, 522
Columbia, 527
column headings, 355
columns, 266, 325, 337, 342, 349, 353-354, 373, 398, 516, 682
  gutter, 325, 337, 342
  text boxes, 325, 342
  width, 337, 354
combines, 678
commands, 106, 203, 299, 445, 598
comments, 19, 23, 25-26, 42-43, 45-46, 63, 83, 111, 128, 130, 136, 179, 190, 202, 221, 229, 231, 233-234, 238-239, 246, 269, 278, 298, 317, 385, 388-389, 394, 408, 423, 444, 463, 509, 514, 537, 568, 588, 630, 659-661, 663-664, 667-668, 670, 674, 680-681
  displaying, 514
commerce, 76, 103, 236, 247, 326, 506, 510, 530, 608
Commission, 6, 8-9, 11, 28, 41, 47, 59, 85, 90, 120, 160, 222-225, 318-321, 404, 409-411, 415, 420, 464-466, 510, 530, 540, 565, 686
Commitment, 90-91, 624
Common denominator, 522
communication, 1-28, 29-59, 61-88, 89-92, 97-98, 100, 102-105, 109-110, 114-116, 119, 122, 124, 125, 135, 146, 148-154, 157, 159-163, 165, 171-173, 178, 183-185, 187-188, 192, 204-205, 211, 225, 227, 230, 233, 236, 240-241, 244-246, 249, 259, 261, 263, 267-268, 271-272, 274, 278, 280, 283-284, 286, 288, 300-301, 307, 321, 323-327, 337, 344-346, 347, 350, 352, 354, 357, 371, 374, 378, 379, 381-382, 384, 386-392, 401-403, 405, 407, 413, 416, 420, 433-434, 446-447, 453, 469-471, 473-474, 482, 489, 501, 503, 505-508, 511, 515, 522, 525, 528-530, 531-538, 558, 560-561, 564, 571, 588, 593, 606, 609-618, 621, 623-624, 626, 632, 645, 647-654, 657-663, 665-668, 670, 677-678, 680-682, 686
  barriers, 20, 38, 104, 124, 507, 660
  barriers to, 660
  cultural issues, 104
  electronic, 8, 13-14, 38, 48, 52-54, 56, 58, 67-68, 71, 87-88, 146, 148-150, 152, 154, 171, 183, 261, 271, 321, 381, 405, 407, 471, 482, 507, 528, 532, 535-536, 606, 612-614, 616, 618, 648-650, 652, 654
  gestures, 18, 660, 670, 680
  graphic, 11, 14, 36, 91, 263, 337, 352, 374, 381, 391, 401, 405, 474, 489, 505, 511, 610, 645, 660
  instant, 2-3, 5-7, 10, 14, 18, 21, 31, 38, 47, 50, 67-69, 81, 92, 159-161, 172-173, 183-185, 187-188, 225, 382
  interactive, 233, 283, 505, 525, 528, 663, 686
  listening, 11, 66, 390, 659-661, 680
  listening skills, 390, 659-660, 680
  mobile, 6-9, 14-15, 28, 31, 68, 77, 81, 160, 230, 402, 482, 505-506, 508, 511, 525, 530, 558, 560, 624, 663
  modes of, 667
  nonverbal, 18, 24, 103-104, 284, 660, 662, 677
  nonverbal communication, 18, 24, 103-104, 284, 660, 677
  reading, 10-11, 40, 49, 66, 69, 75-76, 98, 116, 124, 188, 245, 268, 326, 505, 507-508, 515, 525, 623
  speak clearly, 662, 680
  verbal communication, 660
  written, 3-4, 6-7, 10-12, 18, 23-24, 32, 34, 40, 43-44, 50, 53, 63, 65, 68-71, 73, 79, 82, 102-103, 115, 119, 149, 159-163, 171-172, 178, 192, 267, 271, 274, 283, 288, 390-391, 401-403, 407, 416, 420, 434, 471, 473-474, 489, 511, 522, 535-537, 558, 560, 564, 588, 609-610, 613, 624, 626, 632, 647, 649, 665, 668, 670, 677-678, 681
Communication channels, 3, 6-7, 10-11, 13, 21, 24, 38-39, 50, 67-68, 160-161, 245, 381-382, 405, 470-471, 534-535, 564
communication medium, 506
Communication process, 29-51, 53-59, 63, 185, 522
Communication techniques, 433, 647
communications, 62, 95, 104, 134, 137, 160, 167, 183, 236, 238, 242-243, 283-284, 380, 391, 397, 521, 530, 558-559, 573-574, 608-611, 630, 659, 665, 677, 686
Community, 7, 15, 55-56, 58, 63, 67, 75, 84-85, 90, 104, 115, 121, 128, 131, 151-152, 154, 183, 188, 230-231, 244, 252, 254-256, 261, 267, 270, 276, 285, 321, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 343, 355, 368, 378, 403-404, 420, 533, 546, 552, 588, 596-597, 605, 615-616, 618, 642, 646, 651-652, 654, 664, 682
  examples of, 75, 231, 329
  living in, 420
  resources, 15, 104, 183, 188, 252, 285, 343, 588, 605
Company, 3, 5, 11-14, 16, 21, 23, 30, 32-34, 38, 44-45, 49-50, 62, 76-79, 81-83, 85, 87, 90-91, 93-95, 98, 100-104, 106, 113-115, 120, 122-124, 128-130, 132, 138, 141-142, 145-146, 158-159, 161-163, 168, 171-172, 174-184, 186-189, 195-198, 202-204, 214, 219, 225, 228-246, 250-255, 258-259, 262, 266, 268-281, 283, 285, 291-294, 298-300, 310, 315, 324, 326-328, 339, 343, 345, 366-367, 370, 374, 376, 380-382, 384-385, 387-391, 394-397, 399-401, 406, 414, 416-418, 423, 428, 430, 437-440, 444-446, 456, 461, 467, 471, 473-477, 479-482, 497, 502, 506, 509-511, 514, 520, 522, 525-529, 532, 534-535, 537-538, 547-551, 553, 556-557, 559, 565, 568-569, 572-575, 577-580, 582, 584-585, 587, 595, 608-611, 622-626, 629-630, 632, 634, 636-638, 641-642, 645-647, 662-664, 667, 677-678, 682, 684-685
comparing, 79, 374, 388, 591, 596, 628
compatibility, 344, 590-591
Compensation, 21, 182, 658
Competition, 107, 215, 245, 283, 311, 388, 399, 457, 557, 659
Compliance, 101, 184, 222-224, 270, 318-320, 390, 409-411, 464-466, 485-486, 563
compression, 172
Compressors, 205, 301, 447
Compromise, 22, 266, 420
computer, 4, 7-9, 12-13, 34, 36, 45-46, 48, 54, 58, 68, 70, 76, 81, 85, 93, 99, 106, 108, 115, 122, 129-130, 132-134, 139-140, 147, 150, 154, 160-162, 167, 170, 172, 174, 184-185, 189-190, 197, 217, 219, 230, 247, 250-251, 260, 266, 268-271, 274-275, 277, 285-286, 293, 313, 315, 344-345, 352, 367, 369, 371, 376, 380-381, 387-388, 393, 417, 431, 439, 459, 461, 471-472, 481, 484, 497, 505, 508, 510-511, 515, 518, 520, 526, 528, 533, 541, 549, 562-563, 567-568, 575, 577, 580, 582, 587, 594, 597, 600-602, 605-606, 608, 610, 614, 618, 626, 642, 645-647, 650, 654, 663-664, 667, 671, 684
  computer network, 610
computer networks, 132
computer technology, 134, 250-251, 269, 285, 387, 541
computer viruses, 431, 626
Computer-aided design (CAD), 367
Computerized documentation, 562
Computers, 17, 21, 39, 91, 129-130, 135, 172, 185, 197, 266, 280, 293, 325, 329, 332, 336, 339, 390, 439, 472, 506, 518, 599, 601-602, 604, 639, 643, 645, 667, 671
  Conflict, 21, 135
  Consequences, 390
  Consumers, 130, 518, 601
  Credit, 325, 329, 332, 336
  customer service, 506
  early, 21
  hardware, 21, 130, 602, 645
  parts of, 172
  printers, 602, 645
  scanners, 266
  security, 129
  software, 21, 130, 172, 266, 472, 518, 599, 601, 604, 639, 643, 645
  types of, 185
  viruses, 601, 667
concrete, 215, 278, 311, 457, 492, 496, 551
Condensation, 217, 313, 459
Condensers, 362
Confidential information, 231, 241
Confidentiality, 38, 241
Conflict, 3, 21-23, 25, 109, 135, 171, 659, 670, 680, 682
  avoiding, 3, 109, 171
Conflict resolution, 3, 21, 23, 25, 659, 670, 680, 682
Consent, 127, 145, 222-224, 318-320, 409-411, 464-466
Consequences, 390-391, 475, 482, 600, 631-632, 681
  results of, 482, 600
consistency, 41, 143, 330, 488-489, 515
construction, 2-3, 67, 96-97, 104, 106, 126-127, 134, 138, 145, 192, 244, 288, 334-335, 359, 369, 415-418, 426-427, 430, 434, 479, 526, 528, 541, 547, 551-553, 588, 646, 666
  bridges, 418
  buildings, 96
  houses, 126
  project management, 551
  roads, 551-552
Consulting, 26, 49, 171, 181-182, 216, 312, 324, 393, 414, 417, 458, 470, 547, 572-575, 578,

608-610, 624
Consumers, 12, 130, 230, 368, 509-510, 518, 596, 601
education, 509, 518
research, 130, 230, 596
contacts, 121, 181, 254-255, 334-335, 510-511, 525, 527, 538, 542, 548, 550-551, 557-558, 588, 640
addresses, 254, 510-511, 525, 527, 558, 640
e-mail addresses, 254, 510, 525
information, 121, 254-255, 335, 510-511, 525, 527, 538, 542, 548, 550, 558, 588, 640
phone numbers, 510-511, 525, 527, 640
containers, 333, 422, 485, 561-564
Contamination, 486
contiguous, 604
continuing education, 272, 390, 486
Contours, 362
Contractors, 2, 547, 662
Contracts, 101, 163, 177, 578, 646
controls, 203, 299, 445, 480, 551, 606, 664
reports, 551, 606
Convection, 500
Convection ovens, 500
Conventions, 63, 201, 206, 208, 297, 302, 304, 443, 448, 450
Cookies, 167
Cooking, 245
Coordinating, 195, 197, 202, 206, 291, 293, 298, 302, 437, 439, 444, 448, 486, 658
Coordinator, 121
Copper, 366, 426-428
copy notation, 169
Cornstarch, 421
corporations, 5, 9-12, 14, 97, 106, 137, 160, 395, 624, 663
corrosion, 202, 298, 444
Cos, 208, 304, 450
Cost, 11, 13, 96, 118, 133, 138, 146, 159, 171, 177, 179-180, 183, 185, 215-216, 311-312, 328, 343-344, 376, 381, 396, 457-458, 471, 479, 499, 528, 549, 552, 556, 558-564, 566-568, 574, 576, 578, 581-582, 586, 590-591, 593, 595, 601, 605, 607, 628, 630, 638, 641, 643, 663-664, 667, 684
Costs, 3, 11, 14, 23, 34, 49, 78, 80, 87, 162, 174, 176, 181-182, 188, 268, 280, 351-352, 374-375, 396, 505, 525, 528-529, 537, 557, 562-563, 568, 575-576, 582, 584, 623, 625, 627, 629-630, 635, 641, 647, 663, 666, 668, 685
energy, 280
equipment, 162, 174, 176, 181, 268, 528, 537, 557, 582, 623, 630, 663
insurance, 49, 78, 176, 280, 374, 568, 627, 668
labor, 78, 268
meetings, 3, 14, 23, 80, 505, 568, 623, 627, 647, 663
operating, 562, 575
Counseling, 258, 505, 526
Count, 9, 107, 477
Cover letters, 159, 253
Co-workers, 548
creating, 5, 22, 31, 35-36, 38-39, 47-50, 84, 130-131, 138, 141, 155, 158, 164, 170, 172, 217, 235, 246, 264, 282, 313, 343-344, 355, 361, 370-371, 396, 398-400, 414, 459, 501, 504-506, 508, 510, 515, 522, 525, 533, 546, 552, 573, 583, 608, 623, 628, 674, 679, 682
tables, 31, 47, 131, 170, 400, 522, 573, 608
Credit, 54-58, 118, 140, 150-154, 257, 276, 321, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 346, 351, 509-510, 524, 589, 614-618, 650-654, 659
establishing, 509, 659
Credit cards, 509
criteria, 36, 75, 136, 174, 177, 189, 256, 271, 277-279, 344, 353-354, 357, 371, 376-377, 396, 399, 406-407, 420, 433, 473, 498, 500-501, 505, 510, 526, 536, 539-541, 548, 550, 554, 557-558, 560, 565-569, 578, 589, 609, 611, 625, 645, 647
Criticism, 219, 234, 315, 461, 481
Crop, 481
Crude oil, 353
Cube, 237
Cultural diversity, 104, 111, 146
Cultural issues, 104
Culture, 75, 92, 101, 103, 106, 119, 135, 252, 281, 369, 487, 529, 597, 634, 644
ethnicity, 101
race, 92, 101
Curb, 108
Cure, 238, 500
Currency, 677
Customer satisfaction, 13, 45-47, 78, 133, 180, 283, 384, 681
Customer service, 6, 12, 44-46, 79, 98, 137, 179, 182, 237, 240, 242-243, 246, 250, 267, 270-271, 283-286, 328, 475, 506, 509-510, 525, 580, 681
customers, 4-5, 14, 16, 34-35, 44, 47, 80, 85-86, 91-92, 95, 100-101, 106, 116, 121, 130, 132, 137, 158-159, 162, 170-171, 178, 180, 183, 188-189, 191-192, 230-236, 238, 240, 242, 245, 251, 259, 267, 272, 274-275, 283, 288, 326, 366, 380-381, 388, 390, 394-395, 400, 403, 423, 434, 474-475, 479, 484, 499, 505-506, 509-510, 515, 524-525, 529, 535, 540, 553, 563, 566, 586, 623, 628, 645-647, 661-663, 666, 668, 677-678, 681, 684
internal, 159, 183, 233, 403, 423, 506, 529, 535, 623, 645-647
customs, 104, 326
Cutting, 30, 43, 78, 94, 179, 387, 473
Cylinder, 421
Cylinders, 487

D

Dallas, 232, 237, 343
Dampers, 342, 500
Dance, 79
Data, 7, 9, 30-34, 37, 39-40, 43-44, 47-48, 52, 63, 71, 93, 98, 119, 128, 130-131, 133, 148, 164, 185-186, 190, 200, 228, 242-243, 255, 261, 276, 284, 296, 327, 335, 338, 350, 352, 354-356, 360, 371, 374, 376, 380-381, 385, 394, 403, 406, 426-427, 442, 475, 484, 487, 489, 491, 520, 522, 528, 535, 539, 544, 546, 550-551, 557, 561-563, 572-578, 581, 587, 589-592, 600, 602, 610-612, 624, 630, 640, 646, 648, 665-667, 678
computer systems, 48
plotting, 39
sources of, 133, 573
Data tables, 356
Databases, 52-53, 128, 133, 136, 148-149, 608, 612-613, 648-649
blank, 136
planning, 136
tables, 608
templates, 52, 148, 612, 648
date, 13, 20, 22, 26, 45-46, 49, 53, 65-66, 78, 82, 86-87, 94, 98, 108-109, 122, 128, 135-136, 142, 149, 161-162, 164, 166-170, 172, 175, 177, 179, 182, 186-187, 217, 221-222, 232, 244, 246-247, 260-261, 271, 276, 279, 282, 313, 317-318, 342-343, 359, 367, 383, 390-391, 394, 408-409, 459, 463-464, 473-474, 485, 487, 491-492, 495-496, 500, 523-524, 536-537, 539, 541, 543, 547-548, 550-552, 554, 558, 562-564, 579-581, 587, 593, 613, 629, 633-634, 645, 649, 663-664, 671, 677
handouts, 671
Dates, 22, 33-34, 48, 53, 65, 75, 108, 136, 149, 170, 176, 178, 181, 212, 254, 259, 282, 284, 308, 349, 359-360, 373, 387, 391, 403, 454, 510, 524, 527, 533, 537-538, 551-552, 560, 586, 613, 625, 634, 640, 649
Dating, 87, 182
death, 107, 204, 300, 446, 475, 477, 672
Debit card, 541
debugging, 598
Decimals, 355
Decision-making, 13
Decisions, 10, 12-13, 48, 67, 79-80, 86, 108, 160, 162, 184, 188, 218, 261, 314, 344, 362, 389, 404, 460, 529, 538, 558, 575, 588, 610, 628
analyzing, 558
decks, 646
safety, 646
decorative fonts, 266
Deductibles, 176
Deductions, 49
Defibrillators, 431
definitions, 47, 91, 99-101, 119, 122, 237, 416, 475, 518, 520-521, 539, 587, 589, 606, 625, 644
Degrees, 260, 268, 360, 406, 543, 545
Delegation, 163
Delete key, 42
deleting, 31-32, 42-43, 47, 63, 72, 84, 370
Dell Computers, 280
Delta, 267
Demand, 13, 38, 122, 174, 184, 194, 208, 290, 304, 416-417, 436, 450, 470, 578
Demographics, 102, 104, 124, 246, 255, 643
Denominator, 204, 300, 446, 522
Denominators, 355
Density, 330, 423, 425, 483, 555-556
Depression, 505, 526
Dermatitis, 498
design, 7, 15, 18, 31, 36, 41, 44, 47, 62, 75, 96, 130, 132, 138, 166, 214, 216, 263, 266, 268, 274-276, 310, 312, 323-346, 360, 367-368, 373, 381, 391, 393, 398, 400, 404-405, 417-418, 420, 456, 458, 489, 504-505, 507-509, 513, 515-516, 520, 522-523, 525-526, 529, 533, 552, 556, 572, 574, 593-596, 599-600, 605, 609-610, 623, 647, 659, 680
informed, 574
landscape, 325, 337, 342, 398, 418, 420, 552, 610
principles, 96
Design elements, 339-340, 373
Designers, 38, 508
desktop, 8, 62, 72, 129, 236-237, 284, 344, 508, 575, 593-596, 599, 602-606
desktop publishing, 62, 284
developer, 237, 275-276, 402, 508, 597
Development, 8, 12, 15, 28, 31, 41, 45, 47, 53, 62, 72, 74, 121, 126, 128, 132, 138, 149, 155, 164, 188, 192, 236, 246, 274-276, 280, 282, 288, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 363, 401, 403-404, 420, 434, 467, 489, 498, 502, 536-538, 549, 588, 597, 605, 609, 613, 633-635, 637, 641-642, 649, 660, 665
Diabetes, 111, 419
diagrams, 341, 362, 540, 670
Diameter, 208-209, 304-305, 416, 426-427, 429, 450-451
Diaphragm, 366, 424
Dice, 43, 253
Diction, 269
Diesel fuel, 584
Difference, 34, 42, 67, 76, 108, 252, 422-423, 471, 534, 560
digital images, 577
Diodes, 362
Director of sales, 30
Disabilities, 90-91, 111, 119-120, 505, 507, 525
Disability, 91, 111
insurance, 111
Discount, 35, 180, 394-395, 684
disease, 270, 385, 412, 419
Disease control, 385, 412
disorders, 507
displaying, 514
Disposition, 78
distribution, 5, 363, 377, 414, 596-597
Diversity, 12-13, 22, 34, 81, 90-92, 101-102, 104, 111, 119-120, 122, 124, 128, 146, 182, 188-189, 624, 646
divide and conquer, 602
dividers, 327
Division, 187, 204-205, 300-301, 446-447, 485-486, 668
Fractions, 204, 300, 446
Dock, 566
document window, 265, 362
Documentation, 10, 15, 42, 52-53, 55, 57, 67, 72, 85, 88, 103, 115, 128, 132, 137, 140-142, 146, 148-149, 151, 153, 162-163, 177, 185, 189, 222-224, 270, 276, 318-320, 363, 409-411, 415, 464-466, 488, 530, 557, 561-562, 584, 586-588, 596, 605, 612-613, 615, 617, 622-623, 627-628, 648-649, 651, 653, 678
abbreviations, 587
conciseness, 42, 67, 72, 85, 586
methods of, 140
documents, 7-9, 14-17, 34, 38-39, 43-44, 53, 63, 66, 68, 85, 98, 124, 128, 134, 136, 149, 177, 183, 239, 263, 265, 277, 326, 370, 378, 380-381, 391, 393-394, 405, 407, 416, 419-420, 474, 484, 488, 497, 518, 520, 533, 536, 539, 547, 552, 564, 587, 589, 609, 611, 613, 622, 626, 630, 649, 667, 677, 686
footers, 9
headers, 9

hyperlinks, 15
line spacing, 9
page numbers, 53, 149, 177, 613, 649
proofreading, 15, 536
specialized, 134
versions, 15-17, 407
dogs, 376
Dormitories, 215, 311, 457, 646
Down, 3, 34, 78, 109, 128, 131-132, 136, 140, 142-143, 171, 220, 237, 241, 269, 316, 341, 353, 362, 387, 462, 478, 482-483, 487, 508, 517-519, 522, 528, 538-539, 547, 556, 567, 583, 606, 669
draft, 31-32, 39-40, 43-45, 47, 63, 82, 133, 141, 143, 185-186, 242, 248, 283, 372, 403-404, 412, 426-427, 489, 491-492, 498, 500, 502, 523, 561-563, 591-592, 611, 630-631, 679
Drafting, 31, 141, 263, 282, 536, 561, 632
drag, 362, 481, 599
drawing, 109, 263, 365-369, 378, 576, 665
lines, 369
scale, 367, 369
Dresses, 79
drill, 136
drilling, 131, 416
Drop, 547, 568, 599
Drugs, 554
pharmaceuticals, 554
drying, 671
duct, 217, 313, 459

E

earth, 96
changes, 96
eating, 245
Ebay, 254
E-commerce, 506, 510
Economics, 134, 387, 565
Economy, 14, 102-104, 146, 160, 344, 368
Ecosystem, 127
ecosystems, 230
Edges, 328, 478
Editing, 8, 21, 31, 39, 43, 51, 62, 231, 269, 282, 609
education, 1, 8, 28, 29, 51, 61, 69, 89, 93, 106, 125, 134-136, 147, 157, 211, 227, 249, 259-262, 266-272, 276-277, 280-286, 307, 323, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338-339, 347, 360, 379, 384, 387, 390, 413, 453, 469, 486, 503, 509, 518, 531, 571, 621, 643, 657, 659, 672, 686
value of, 518
Effective communication, 18, 30, 33, 54-56, 58, 150-152, 154, 241, 280, 471, 564, 614-616, 618, 632, 650-652, 654
Effectiveness, 215, 311, 457, 485, 528, 679
effects, 82, 391, 393, 425, 520, 544, 546, 573-574, 608, 677
Efficiency, 13, 83, 85, 100, 171, 183, 262, 471
Elapsed time, 422
Electrical wiring, 646
Electrical work, 501, 645
Electricity, 421
Electrocution, 475
Electronic files, 630
electronics, 85, 87, 133, 214, 310, 362, 416, 456, 532, 553, 582, 645-646
components, 416
elements, 74, 234, 339-340, 373, 404, 498, 585, 629, 660
Elevations, 360, 366
ellipses, 137, 172-173, 203, 299, 445
em dash, 203, 299, 445
E-mail, 2, 4, 6-11, 13-15, 18, 21, 23-27, 52, 55, 58, 148, 151, 154, 159-160, 175, 250-251, 254, 258-259, 263, 266-267, 270-271, 273, 275, 277, 279, 281-282, 285-287, 374, 380, 382-383, 386, 388, 391, 394, 396, 399-401, 403, 406, 507, 509-511, 514, 523-527, 529, 533, 558-559, 567-568, 595, 603, 612, 615, 618, 623, 648, 651, 654
e-mail addresses, 254, 273, 386, 509-510, 525
HTML, 7, 55, 151, 399, 514, 615, 651
memos, 6, 159-160, 382, 507
plain text, 9
reading, 10-11, 277, 507, 525, 623
receiving, 258
sending, 14, 263, 277
signature, 279, 394
stationery, 175
writing e-mail, 10-11
e-mail addresses, 254, 273, 386, 509-510, 525
embedding, 596
emoticons, 18, 172-173
Emotions, 380, 385, 402, 686
Empathy, 34, 397
emphasis, 45, 91, 283-284, 333, 372, 400, 520, 562, 609, 659, 669-670, 674, 677, 680, 682
Employees, 2-7, 9-14, 20, 23-24, 33, 36, 41, 47, 52-53, 67, 82-83, 87, 93, 98, 100-106, 113-114, 121-122, 129, 132-133, 141-142, 145-146, 148-149, 158-160, 163, 167, 170-171, 177, 182-190, 192, 194, 200, 202, 205, 213-216, 218, 229-234, 237-238, 240-245, 251, 253-254, 259-262, 267-268, 270, 272, 278, 287-288, 290, 296, 298, 301, 309-312, 314, 324-325, 327-329, 332, 336, 338, 345, 371, 374, 380, 384, 390, 392, 396, 403, 406-407, 415, 434, 436, 442, 444, 447, 455-458, 460, 479, 483-484, 486-487, 505-507, 520, 527, 533, 535-536, 538, 544, 547, 549, 558-559, 565-568, 573-574, 588, 600, 609, 612-613, 624, 631-632, 646-649, 658-659, 663, 667, 672, 677-678, 680-681, 684-685
development of, 53, 149, 192, 288, 434, 609, 613, 649
satisfaction, 13, 41, 47, 133, 190, 384, 566, 681
theft, 183, 573
employers, 8, 12, 23, 28, 41, 44, 54-58, 87, 150-154, 253-255, 257-258, 261, 263, 269, 278, 281, 286, 321, 614-618, 650-654, 659
Employment, 5, 10, 25, 28, 44, 49, 77, 90, 120, 133, 218, 248, 253-256, 258-259, 261, 267, 275-277, 279-280, 282-284, 287, 314, 321, 390, 400, 460, 506, 527, 539, 608, 643
applications, 28, 120, 276, 390, 608, 643
cover letters, 253
friends and, 255
international, 133, 253, 255, 261, 279, 506, 527, 608
interviewing, 253, 277
job outlook, 28
orientation, 120
professional development, 282
resume, 5, 77, 253, 256, 258-259, 261, 267, 275, 277, 280, 282-284, 287, 321
Employment opportunities, 49, 400, 506, 527
sales, 527
Encryption, 184, 380, 406
software, 184, 380, 406
endnotes, 52, 148, 612, 648
Endowments, 553
Energy, 96, 134, 147, 277, 280, 326, 419, 598
maintenance, 419
net, 96
energy resources, 134
Engine, 37, 123, 131, 134-136, 147, 233, 247, 287, 377, 395, 407, 433, 472-473, 478, 500, 569, 647, 685
power, 395, 433, 473
engineering, 2-3, 12, 15, 23-24, 26, 54, 85, 96, 103, 134, 138, 150, 171, 222-224, 233, 244, 263, 274, 318-320, 324-325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 343, 362, 366, 384, 404, 409-411, 414, 417-418, 420, 464-466, 538, 541, 547, 551, 565, 614, 624, 628, 650, 666, 685
Engines, 37, 53, 128, 133, 135-136, 149, 233, 250, 252-253, 431, 528, 613, 649
maintenance, 133
England, 376
Enter key, 136, 516
Enthusiasm, 19, 277, 665
envelopes, 38, 559
Environment, 4-5, 7, 13, 15, 22, 33-34, 43, 69, 83-84, 86, 97, 101, 116, 128, 143, 147, 162, 213-214, 251, 254, 258, 274, 276, 278, 283, 286-287, 309-310, 392, 419, 455-456, 500, 527, 539, 567, 594, 596, 599-600, 602-606, 611, 678-679
respect for, 83
supporting, 596
Environmental Protection Agency, 270, 551, 563
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 551
Equal, 18, 21, 25-26, 90, 100-101, 106, 120, 136, 261, 274, 334, 362, 421, 471, 641
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC), 90, 120
equipment, 20-22, 35, 41, 63-64, 68, 76, 84-85, 93, 95, 106, 117, 128, 146, 158-159, 162-163, 174-176, 181, 189, 194, 199, 202, 206, 214-215, 217, 240, 260, 268, 273, 290, 295, 298, 302, 310-311, 313, 326, 344, 382-383, 390, 414-417, 419-420, 422, 426, 430-431, 436, 441, 444, 448, 456-457, 459, 470-479, 482, 484, 487-489, 492, 494-498, 511, 523-524, 528, 537-540, 542, 547, 549, 554, 556-559, 565, 567, 574, 578, 582, 589, 623-624, 628, 630, 645-646, 659, 663-664, 667, 671, 677, 680-681
malfunctioning equipment, 540
ranges, 84, 417
safety, 21, 106, 422, 471, 474-475, 484, 498, 540, 565, 646
Equity, 120, 143
Equivalents, 603
Ergonomics, 21, 566
error, 42, 76, 118, 174, 180, 192, 195, 197, 218, 262, 288, 291, 293, 314, 326, 354, 393, 434, 437, 439, 460, 553, 562, 577
logical, 393
errors, 31-32, 39, 41-42, 44-45, 53, 75-76, 87, 104, 111, 144, 149, 166, 170, 173, 192, 207, 213, 217-218, 241, 255, 262, 269, 281-282, 288, 303, 309, 313-314, 350, 403, 425, 434, 449, 455, 459-460, 471, 515, 522, 591, 613, 631-632, 649, 677
Estate planning, 13, 387, 534, 536
Ethics, 140, 162, 246, 384, 386, 400, 407, 628
e-mail, 386, 400
in business, 384, 628
Ethnicity, 101, 120
Ethnocentrism, 103
Etiquette, 237, 273, 662, 681
Evaluation, 31, 41, 166, 170, 217, 313, 459, 509, 559, 561-563, 565, 668
events, 9, 62, 77, 211, 229, 231, 235-236, 238, 240, 244, 247, 256, 307, 381, 393, 398, 403, 453, 527, 568, 575, 634, 640
Excel, 107, 261, 276, 283-284, 528, 590-592, 604, 681
colors, 107
fonts, 261
graphics, 107, 528
headings, 261, 591
list of, 590
moving, 604
numbers, 261
results, 284
text, 107, 261, 591
types of, 681
Executive assistant, 120
Exhalation, 365-366, 378, 424, 467
Expansion, 99, 279, 343, 380, 430, 527, 541, 556-557, 566-567, 624
Expenditures, 11, 64, 162, 218, 314, 348, 373, 460, 547, 584, 638
Expenses, 133, 162, 184, 260, 533, 547, 562-563, 584, 610, 638, 647, 663
experiment, 111, 194, 201, 290, 297, 436, 443, 553-554
Expiration, 510
Expiration dates, 510
Exploded view, 365-366, 378, 424
exports, 85
expressions, 106, 202, 298, 444, 660
Extracts, 555-556
Eye contact, 278, 659-661, 669, 679-680, 682
Eyes, 171, 328, 422, 520, 630, 669

F

Fabrics, 134, 513
Facebook, 5-7, 14, 30, 38, 67, 69, 81, 103, 115, 128, 130-131, 136-138, 146, 229-233, 238-241, 244-246, 248, 253-254, 257, 272, 350, 360, 381, 394-395, 402, 415, 505, 514, 526, 533, 634, 637, 640, 647
Face-to-face communication, 15, 272
Facial expressions, 660
Facilities, 75, 96, 138, 184, 215, 217, 222-224, 251, 311, 313, 318-320, 344, 382, 409-411, 457, 459, 464-466, 470, 551, 556-557, 566-568, 574, 576, 578, 584, 586, 596, 601, 623-624, 628, 630, 646
Factors, 40, 261, 344, 368, 386, 543
Fahrenheit, 208, 304, 450
Fairs, 284
Families, 8, 11, 114, 216, 312, 458, 529
importance of, 8, 11
Fashion, 86, 218, 263, 277, 314, 460

Fast food, 106
Fax machines, 48
Federal Trade Commission, 510, 530
Feedback, 3, 7, 15, 18-19, 40, 45, 49, 67, 69, 122, 177, 188, 240, 328, 488, 514, 518, 549, 598, 677
positive feedback, 45
Fertilizer, 84, 543-544
Fiber, 366, 393, 629
fiberglass, 427
Fibrin, 432
fields, 43-44, 54-55, 57, 106, 142, 150-151, 153, 362, 392, 471, 483-484, 494, 497, 614-615, 617, 650-651, 653
adding, 43
contents, 142, 471, 484, 494, 497
required, 43, 494
unique, 44, 106, 494
files, 9, 16-17, 38, 98-99, 108, 158, 162, 172-173, 183, 233, 263, 265, 369, 502, 510, 518, 573, 610-611, 630, 673
Fill, 34, 43, 76, 94, 118, 129, 163, 259, 341, 398, 483, 535
film, 96
filters, 229, 342, 487, 500
finances, 163, 187, 235, 268, 534, 574, 586, 590, 624, 634
financial statements, 534
Financing, 146, 344
Fire prevention, 134
Firewalls, 510, 667
fish, 84
Fit, 43, 67-69, 74, 217, 259, 313, 384, 399, 459, 523, 529
Flaming, 172, 333
Flash drive, 263, 431
flash drives, 52, 148, 612, 648
Flexibility, 12, 671
Flextime, 23, 36
floors, 342, 500, 566
flowcharts, 144, 349, 357, 362, 373, 377, 489, 629
flush, 168-169
flyers, 398
Focus groups, 75, 520
fog, 69
folders, 8-9
Folding, 396
Font, 8-9, 42, 91, 166-167, 172, 261, 266, 281, 328, 330, 332-334, 339-341, 344, 353, 396, 400-401, 477, 508-509, 512-516, 520, 522, 529, 583, 671, 674-675, 677, 679-680
font color, 172, 341, 513, 677, 680
font faces, 513
font size, 261, 332, 341, 353, 396, 508-509, 512, 514-515, 674, 677, 680
fonts, 9, 91, 167, 189, 261, 263, 266, 270, 328, 334, 341, 345, 507-508, 513, 520, 610, 674
changing, 341, 507
colors, 9, 91, 266, 334, 341, 345, 507, 513, 520, 674
decorative, 266, 328, 508
font color, 341, 513
sans serif, 328, 508, 520, 674
food, 13, 106, 134, 176, 245, 286, 376, 393, 484, 499, 529, 545, 550, 566, 568, 646
safety, 106, 484, 545, 646
security, 568, 646
sources, 134
food choices, 550
footers, 9, 41, 333, 341, 489, 546
graphics, 9, 41, 489, 546
types, 333
footnotes, 9, 52, 142, 148, 612, 648
force, 74, 139-140, 208, 244, 304, 421, 450, 533
Forecasting, 87, 203, 299, 343, 445
Forging, 540
form, 52-53, 118, 124, 129, 148-149, 171, 200, 217, 242-243, 255, 281, 296, 313, 372, 432, 442, 459, 477, 482, 484, 486-487, 504, 540, 567, 569, 604, 606, 612-613, 648-649
Formal communication, 163
formatting, 40, 75, 263, 477, 583
italics, 477
Forming, 14, 597
forms, 3, 6, 34, 52, 71, 129-130, 148, 160, 178, 229-230, 233, 244, 326, 360, 487, 506, 536, 540, 569, 612, 647-648, 672
titles, 52, 148, 612, 648
formulas, 69, 88
Founder, 387, 506
Fractions, 204, 300, 355, 446
division of, 204, 300, 446
France, 14, 108-109, 527
Franchises, 527
Freezers, 627
Freezing, 187, 626
frequency, 162, 208-210, 304-306, 399, 450-452, 611, 637
Friends, 7, 114, 161-162, 238, 251, 253, 255, 281, 285, 381, 524, 634
work and, 381
fuel, 219, 315, 344, 431, 461, 584
full block, 221-223, 317-319, 341, 408-410, 463-465
Functional resume, 251, 257-258, 260, 265, 268, 271, 281-283, 285
functionality, 534, 599
functions, 44, 99, 189, 274, 381, 415, 422, 425, 430, 479, 597, 643

G

Gallery, 523-524
Game, 283
Gaming, 53, 133, 146, 149, 613, 649
GANTT Chart, 359, 550, 553
Gantt charts, 357, 359-360
Gap, 259, 267, 529
Gardening, 472
Gates, 232, 248, 387
Gates, Bill, 232, 387
Gauge, 69, 139, 208-209, 304-305, 428, 450-451, 478, 668
Gauges, 140, 431
Geese, 566
Gender, 91-92, 101, 109, 111-112, 120, 173, 188, 193, 221, 255, 261, 289, 317, 369, 408, 435, 463, 529, 643
discrimination, 101
Generalizations, 392
Generators, 433
geology, 134, 362
Germany, 108-109
Gestures, 18, 660, 670, 680
Girl Scouts, 211, 307, 453
Glass, 333, 422, 478, 567
Global, 14, 28, 102-104, 106, 109, 123-124, 132, 146, 230, 232, 239, 368, 395, 511, 515, 526, 553, 565, 574
Global marketplace, 109
Globalization, 56-57, 152-153, 616-617, 652-653
Gloves, 245, 475-476, 498
sterile, 498
Glucose, 554-555
Goals, 11-13, 20-21, 24-25, 30-31, 33-34, 38, 40, 47, 75, 80, 94, 122, 127, 133, 138, 147, 159, 177, 189, 233, 242-244, 246, 252, 258, 262, 268-269, 279-280, 283-285, 329, 332, 336, 338, 343, 350, 371, 381, 388, 403-404, 483, 515, 556, 574, 622, 631, 665, 667, 676, 684
planning for, 13
Goggles, 498
Goods, 268
Government, 3, 37, 41, 59, 101, 106, 108, 134-136, 141, 190, 192, 253, 268, 288, 321, 382, 403, 415, 434, 471, 484, 497, 507, 536, 588, 611, 643, 672
Web sites, 134, 136, 141, 253, 507
Government agencies, 134
Gowns, 498
Grain, 67, 143, 208, 304, 450
grains, 513
Grams, 208, 304, 450, 479
Graphs, 144, 349, 351, 353, 355, 373, 555, 674
Greenhouse, 146
location, 146
Greenhouse effect, 146
Group dynamics, 20
Groups, 13, 24, 55, 63, 75, 85, 119, 122, 151, 171, 211, 231, 255, 269, 286, 307, 344, 384, 406, 453, 471, 520, 548, 565, 567, 597, 605, 607, 615, 627, 651, 659, 671, 681
growth, 10, 84, 87, 124, 238, 252, 258-259, 268, 272, 343, 349, 351, 404, 407, 506, 530, 539, 543, 545, 552, 554-556, 566, 588, 623-624, 636, 666
cells, 554-556
definition of, 87
fetal, 554-555
Growth and development, 404
Guarantees, 35, 159, 385, 406, 423, 473, 475, 527, 559
Guests, 4, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338
guides, 188, 474, 483
guitars, 501
GUM, 277

H

Hacking, 232
Hair, 277, 407
hamburgers, 376
hand tools, 433
Handbags, 524
hard copy, 38, 49, 162-163, 266, 281, 415, 548, 569, 628
hard drive, 553, 575, 582
hardware, 8, 14, 21-22, 130, 132, 146, 189, 240, 251, 260, 268, 272, 277, 283, 285, 376, 380-381, 406, 415, 484, 494, 501, 522, 547, 558-559, 573-575, 577, 591-592, 600, 602, 605-606, 608, 610-611, 645, 664, 684
hats, 518
Haute cuisine, 528
hazardous materials, 133, 271, 565
Hazardous waste, 174, 259, 262, 270, 565
Head, 39, 73, 112, 123, 181, 242-243, 332, 421, 473
injuries, 473
Headache, 396
headers, 9, 41, 333, 341, 489, 546
headers and footers, 546
Health, 20-21, 37, 49, 75, 134-135, 147, 184, 222-224, 280, 318-320, 348-349, 373, 409-411, 419, 464-466, 471, 475, 501, 540, 543-544, 546, 565, 611
disease, 419
planning, 21, 349
Health insurance, 49, 184
HEAR, 23, 64, 76, 80, 171, 178, 238, 278, 387, 391, 394, 660, 662, 666
Hearing, 91, 158, 178-180, 214, 216, 279, 310, 312, 420, 456, 458, 505, 507, 525, 660, 663
Heart, 158, 199, 251, 285, 295, 441
heat, 64, 96, 362, 543-546, 575
Help, 3-4, 7, 11, 13, 15, 21, 25-26, 31, 35, 39-43, 45-47, 63, 65, 68-69, 71-72, 74-79, 84, 86, 99-100, 104, 106-107, 117-118, 122, 124, 127, 129-133, 136-137, 139-140, 143-144, 146, 170, 180-181, 185-189, 213-216, 228, 231, 233, 235, 237-238, 242, 245, 251-256, 258-260, 265, 268-269, 274-275, 278, 280, 282, 284-286, 309-312, 324-330, 332-333, 335-336, 338, 342, 345, 348, 350-351, 360, 362, 366, 368, 373, 381, 384, 386-387, 391, 394-395, 397, 400, 403, 406, 414, 419-420, 428, 433, 455-458, 472, 474-475, 477-480, 482-483, 488-489, 492, 494, 497, 499, 502, 503-530, 533, 536, 539, 545, 548, 550-553, 564, 567, 572-575, 577, 581-584, 586, 588-591, 598, 604, 608, 622-623, 625-626, 628-631, 635, 640, 642, 661-662, 665, 667-668, 670-671, 674-675, 677-679
at work, 11, 26, 86, 133, 185, 189, 237, 258, 280, 327, 386, 403, 489, 522, 567, 589, 630, 678
Help button, 519
Herring, 393
Hertz, 209, 305, 451
highlighting, 8, 41, 164, 166, 172-173, 181, 259-260, 263, 325, 333, 335-336, 342-344, 383, 388, 397, 403-404, 424, 426, 471, 477-478, 497, 513-515, 533, 539, 544, 548, 560, 587, 595, 623, 626, 640, 647, 671, 677
Hiring process, 251
history, 15, 17, 54-58, 75, 93-94, 98, 121, 131, 150-154, 211, 252, 257, 260, 269, 287, 307, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 345, 400, 453, 519, 527, 537, 582, 614-618, 625, 650-654
HIV/AIDS, 611
Hobbies, 135, 266, 646
Holding, 387, 421, 566, 664
Holes, 43, 422
Home care, 211, 307, 453
Homes, 112, 123, 216, 222-224, 236, 312, 318-320, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 409-411, 458, 464-466
Honesty, 12, 23, 82, 234, 392
horsepower, 209, 305, 451
Hospitals, 24, 104, 124, 471, 540
staff, 104, 471

Hot dogs, 376
Hot water, 498
Hotels, 104, 106, 159, 418
 management, 106
house, 47-48, 54, 56-57, 78, 86, 94, 97, 135, 150, 152-153, 162, 174, 193, 218, 268, 289, 314, 396, 435, 460, 539, 559, 577, 614, 616-617, 643, 646, 650, 652-653, 686
houses, 123, 126, 357, 569
HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 17, 517
Human population, 643
Human resources, 4, 49, 120, 132, 135, 171, 177, 188, 266, 271-272, 278, 280-282, 284, 327, 389, 532, 537, 580, 624-625, 658, 678
 benefits, 49, 132, 266, 282, 327, 532, 537, 624
 compensation, 658
 orientation, 120, 678
 performance appraisal, 135
 planning, 624
 recruitment, 624, 658, 678
 selection, 177, 272
 turnover, 278
Humanism, 116
humans, 53, 149, 613, 649
humidity, 486, 575
Humor, 91, 107, 119-120, 681
hunting, 135, 253
Hurricane Katrina, 573, 575

I

IBM, 181, 232, 240, 247-248, 395, 607
icons, 349, 357, 368-369, 373, 419, 475, 501, 513-515, 520
Identification procedures, 470
identifying, 138, 423-425, 541, 602
Identity, 183, 255, 325-326, 391, 396-397, 509-510
 theft, 183, 510
Identity theft, 183, 510
images, 59, 99, 107-108, 129, 155, 225, 263, 266, 269, 346, 369-370, 391, 412, 467, 481, 502, 508, 513, 523, 577, 606, 640, 677
 from the Internet, 369
 resizing, 370
Immobility, 158
Impressions, 671
Incident reports, 3, 533, 535-536, 539-540, 567
Inclusion, 221, 317, 408, 463
Income, 11, 49, 103, 392, 479, 527, 557, 643
 net income, 557
Index, 26-27, 37, 69, 104, 134-136, 252, 287, 417, 433, 489, 505, 512, 525, 540, 631-632
Infection, 471
Infection control, 471
information, 3-4, 6-7, 12, 15-17, 20-21, 26-27, 30, 32-38, 40-41, 43-45, 48, 50, 52-53, 63-65, 67-69, 71-72, 74-75, 77, 80, 83-85, 87, 91, 93-94, 97-98, 101-102, 104, 106, 114, 119, 121-122, 127-130, 132-144, 146-149, 155, 159, 161-162, 165-167, 169-172, 174-179, 183-186, 188-191, 204, 215, 221, 228-235, 238, 240-241, 247, 253-255, 257-261, 266, 268, 272, 279-282, 285-286, 300, 311, 317, 324-333, 335, 337, 342, 344-345, 350, 352-355, 357, 360, 362, 371-372, 374, 376, 380-382, 384-385, 387, 389-397, 399-406, 408, 414, 416, 446, 457, 463, 473-478, 480, 482, 487-489, 491-492, 495, 498, 505, 507-511, 514, 518-522, 525-527, 529-530, 532-542, 544-550, 552-553, 558, 561-562, 565-566, 568, 572-581, 584-585, 587-589, 591-593, 595, 599, 601-602, 604, 606-609, 611-613, 623, 625, 628, 630-632, 634-635, 639-640, 642, 646-649, 659, 663-665, 667-668, 670-672, 678, 681, 686
Information management, 576
Information sharing, 231
Information technology, 3, 12, 68, 129, 147, 232, 247, 285-286, 345, 414, 507, 532, 547, 553, 558, 572, 593, 609, 642, 686
Infrastructure, 132, 138, 403-404, 415, 574-575, 578, 610
Injuries, 3, 106, 245, 270, 473, 569, 666
Innovation, 133, 565, 682
inserting, 164, 214, 310, 356, 456, 478, 599
inside address, 168
Insight, 40, 213, 230, 309, 455
inspection, 222-224, 318-320, 409-411, 414, 464-466, 485-486, 491-492, 494-496
Installation, 35, 44-46, 48, 96, 130, 132, 174, 179, 181, 380-381, 406, 475, 479, 501, 538, 595-596, 599-600, 605, 626, 646
Instant messaging, 81, 172-173, 183, 189, 225, 603
 abbreviations, 173
Instinct, 103
Institutions, 395, 608
Instruments, 484
Insulin, 419
Insurance, 8, 10, 49-50, 77-78, 104, 111, 123, 159, 175-177, 184, 219, 280, 283-284, 315, 344, 374, 376, 387, 461, 471, 568-569, 577, 580, 608-609, 624, 627, 667-668
 analyzing, 77, 577
 automobile, 104
 policies, 123, 184, 284, 344
 premiums, 667-668
Insurance costs, 668
Integrated circuits, 139-140
Integration, 132, 363
Integrity, 12, 471, 484, 497, 514
Intelligence, 266
interchangeable parts, 423
Interest, 39, 63, 117, 145-146, 170, 174, 233-234, 242-243, 247, 254, 269, 279, 281, 286-287, 324, 349-350, 361, 383-384, 386-389, 391, 394-396, 400-403, 405-407, 431, 507, 511, 553, 556, 566, 581, 588, 590-591, 623, 627, 638-639, 642, 644, 665-667, 669, 672, 681-682, 684
Interest rates, 556
Interests, 11, 49, 101, 161, 229, 231, 247, 252, 256, 266, 500, 643
Interference, 606
International, 14, 30-31, 37, 47, 102-104, 123-124, 133, 181, 184, 209, 240, 245, 253, 255, 261, 270, 279, 305, 326, 349, 376, 378, 384, 451, 491, 505-507, 515, 525-527, 529, 593-595, 599-600, 605-606, 608-610, 646, 664
 mail, 14, 30-31, 47, 103, 123, 181, 184, 270, 279, 326, 507, 525-527, 529, 595, 599, 664
 time zones, 14
Internet, 6, 17, 37-39, 53-54, 58, 95, 99, 103-104, 107-108, 122, 127-128, 132-136, 144, 146, 149-150, 154, 183, 228-231, 233, 244, 251-253, 255, 257, 281, 285, 287, 321, 340, 344-345, 357, 369, 377, 395, 407, 494, 504, 506-508, 522, 526-527, 529-530, 559, 569, 576-578, 587, 596-598, 604-606, 610, 613-614, 618, 624, 628, 634, 644-645, 647, 649-650, 654, 663-664, 671
 e-commerce, 506
 hyperlinks, 527, 671
 Interviews, 6, 127-128, 132, 144, 251, 253, 285, 587
 Investments, 506
 search engines, 37, 53, 128, 135-136, 149, 233, 252-253, 613, 649
 tips for, 183, 647, 663-664
 Web browser, 17, 606
 Web pages, 17, 136, 231, 529
Internet Explorer, 494, 522, 596-597, 604
Internship, 256, 267
Internships, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338
Interpersonal, 6, 12, 82, 159, 162, 187, 267-268, 274, 284, 286
 interpersonal skills, 12
Interpersonal communication, 6, 82, 159, 162, 187, 267-268, 274, 284, 286
interpersonal skills, 12
Intervention, 21
Interventions, 21
Interview, 5, 10, 28, 49, 59, 82, 129, 145, 193, 225, 248, 251-252, 256-258, 261, 263, 269, 277-279, 281-282, 285-287, 289, 321, 390, 414, 435, 530, 542, 630-631, 646, 662, 678-679
 campus, 646
 materials, 630, 679
 questions, 49, 82, 129, 251-252, 277-278, 281, 285-286, 542, 678-679
 research, 10, 28, 49, 82, 129, 145, 252, 277, 287, 321, 631, 646, 662
 reviewing, 278
Interviewing, 128, 132, 145, 253, 277-278, 286, 504, 526, 623, 628, 646
Interviews, 6, 26, 30, 100, 127-128, 132, 144, 250-251, 253, 266, 278, 282, 285, 385, 415, 587, 589, 631, 667, 679, 681
Intranet, 3, 34, 233, 520, 533, 548-549, 580
Inventory, 259, 376, 414, 483, 487, 491-497, 502, 646, 684
 inventory control, 646
Inventory control, 646
investigation, 73, 86, 541-542
Investigative report, 540-542, 544-546, 564
Investments, 349, 506, 636
 bonds, 349
Investors, 103, 553, 663, 677
invoices, 72, 177, 219, 315, 461
iPods, 501
Iron, 113-114
Issuing, 87
italic, 583
Italy, 108, 210, 306, 452
Items, 20, 36, 78-79, 175, 200, 204, 206, 263, 296, 300, 302, 333, 342, 442, 446, 448, 487, 499, 523-524, 527, 562, 611
Itinerary, 8

J

Japan, 14, 109, 608
Java, 261, 270, 274, 276, 514, 526-527
Jeffrey, 234
Jersey, 207, 303, 449
Jewelry, 79, 277, 524
Job descriptions, 268
Job interviews, 26, 282
Job leads, 278
Job market, 121, 287
Job outlook, 12, 28, 54-58, 150-154, 252, 614-618, 650-654
Job search, 249-287, 289-316, 318-321
 acceptance, 251, 279-280, 282
 advertisements, 268, 284
 application, 250-251, 256-257, 271-273, 276-277, 285-286, 289, 321
 cover letter, 251, 253, 263, 281
 hiring process, 251
 interview, 251-252, 256-258, 261, 263, 269, 277-279, 281-282, 285-287, 289, 321
 interviews, 250-251, 253, 266, 278, 282, 285
 networking, 251, 253, 255, 257, 281, 285, 287, 321
 overview of, 258
 portfolios, 262
 process of, 280
 scannable resume, 251, 266, 269-270, 285
Job searches, 253
 cover letters, 253
 interviews, 253
 networking, 253
 research, 253
Job titles, 5, 268
Jobs, 4, 7-8, 11, 44, 48, 66, 112, 136, 147, 173, 179, 219, 230, 251, 253-257, 259, 262, 267, 271, 282, 284-287, 315, 321, 461, 505, 539
 security, 255, 505
Joining, 254, 256, 280, 370
Joints, 96, 541
Journalism, 62-63
Journals, 3, 9, 132, 134, 136, 144, 256, 281, 628
Judgment, 87, 121, 138, 222-224, 318-320, 409-411, 464-466, 533, 536, 560
Juice, 167
Jumper cables, 431

K

keyboard, 370, 481
Keys, 201, 297, 443
keywords, 136, 233, 254, 266, 268-269, 287, 669
KFC, 102
Kilocalorie, 209, 305, 451
Knowledge, 3, 8, 13, 20, 23, 26, 34, 40, 49, 63-64, 81, 84, 91-93, 95, 100-101, 106, 111, 120, 127, 132, 144, 174, 213, 257, 261, 269-270, 276, 278, 284-286, 309, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 382, 416, 433, 455, 505, 515, 519-520, 522, 529, 538, 553, 565, 576, 584-585, 625, 647, 684

L

Labeling, 470, 479
Labels, 356-357, 424, 480
labor, 78, 244, 268, 326, 423, 501, 550, 646
Labor costs, 268
lamb, 685
land, 123, 126-127, 145, 254, 343, 360, 368-369, 404, 418, 528, 557, 562-563, 588, 591-592

boundaries, 369
classes, 127, 588
description, 418, 562-563
landfill, 562, 564
landscape, 9, 325, 337, 342, 369, 398-399, 418, 420, 467, 552, 610
companies, 325
plan, 369, 418, 420, 467, 610
specifications, 420, 610
landscape orientation, 325, 337, 342
landscaping, 113-114, 359, 368, 417-418, 420, 467, 494, 551-553
Language, 17, 34, 38, 52, 87, 91-92, 101-104, 106-108, 111-112, 119-121, 124, 127, 141, 144, 148, 155, 170-172, 228, 234, 275, 277, 368, 378, 391, 402-403, 425, 506, 517, 529-530, 536, 587, 606, 612, 640, 648, 660, 662, 667, 670, 678-680, 686
demographics of, 102, 104, 124
Language barriers, 38, 104, 124
Languages, 47, 91, 102-104, 107, 124, 254, 260, 272, 274, 276-277, 368, 475, 506, 515, 599
laptops, 376, 511, 558-560, 568, 624
Las Vegas, 238, 245, 528, 549
laser printers, 645
Lasts, 479
Law, 86, 101, 134-135, 222-224, 231, 248, 276, 318-320, 409-411, 464-466, 507, 530
categories of, 134
Laws, 109, 138, 162, 261, 349, 370, 373, 391, 558
Lawsuits, 120, 474, 477
Layoffs, 160, 187, 328, 389, 662
Leaders, 8, 20-21, 28, 112, 124, 134, 160, 225, 232
leadership, 20, 49, 81, 190, 232, 260, 267, 343
of team, 20
skills, 20, 81, 190, 260, 267
leading, 6, 9, 103, 182, 237, 328, 402, 407, 528, 540, 567, 588, 626, 645, 668
Learning, 3, 31, 46, 63, 91, 106, 127, 159, 229, 251-252, 325, 337, 349, 381, 415, 471, 504-505, 507, 518, 526, 532-533, 549, 573, 623, 659
learning objectives, 3, 31, 63, 91, 127, 159, 229, 251, 325, 349, 381, 415, 471, 505, 533, 573, 623, 659
learning styles, 337
Learning styles, 337
Leases, 388
Leather, 527
Leaves, 229, 630, 668
Legislation, 101
Leisure, 79
Length, 8, 38, 63, 67, 69-72, 74, 84-86, 107-108, 161, 166, 170, 173, 181, 183, 209, 241, 269, 305, 324, 354, 396, 400, 403, 422, 426-429, 451, 508, 521-522, 535, 585, 630
Letter formats, 221, 317, 408, 463
letterhead, 38, 161, 175, 394
Letters, 3, 6, 10, 31, 33, 38, 44, 47, 50, 94, 107, 158-163, 165, 167-168, 170, 174, 180-181, 183, 185, 187-189, 192, 205, 210, 245, 253, 263, 271, 277, 288, 301, 306, 326, 328, 333, 344, 369, 374, 380-382, 384, 390, 394, 405-406, 417, 434, 447, 452, 507, 534-535, 564, 587, 647, 671
Liaison, 482, 538, 550, 552, 557, 565
Libraries, 134-135
Licensing, 146, 344, 597, 607
Licensure, 595, 605
life, 75, 101, 106, 135, 191, 215, 229-231, 238, 240, 248, 254, 276, 280, 311, 372, 404, 407, 457, 479, 522, 545, 678
Life cycle, 248, 276
Life insurance, 280
lift, 473
Light, 44, 96, 139-140, 189, 196, 206, 292, 302, 334, 348, 371, 373, 431, 438, 448, 508, 513, 574, 646, 671, 674
Lighting, 127, 145, 366, 501, 549
Lights, 419, 646
Lime, 96, 174
Lincoln, 13
line breaks, 108
line charts, 52-53, 148-149, 341, 349, 357, 361, 373, 612-613, 629, 648-649
Line graphs, 349, 351, 353, 355, 373
line spacing, 9
Lines, 11-12, 38, 41, 46, 68, 74-75, 77, 83, 85, 108, 127, 145, 161, 166, 168-170, 327-328, 341, 354, 361-362, 369, 400, 491, 513-515, 536, 548, 567-568, 588, 637, 679-680
presentation, 38, 145, 354, 548, 679-680
secondary, 127, 145
store, 361
LinkedIn, 7, 38, 128, 130, 229-231, 241, 254-255, 257, 321, 360
links, 17, 37-38, 48, 87, 91, 100-101, 129, 162, 183, 229, 231-234, 238, 241-242, 244, 247, 253-254, 263, 265, 269, 330, 341, 377, 384, 394-395, 399, 417, 489, 501, 505, 508, 510-512, 514, 517-522, 525-526, 529, 540, 547, 598, 609, 634, 640, 659, 664, 670, 673, 676, 680
updating, 229, 241
Liquid, 206, 302, 448, 473, 555
Liquids, 575
Listening, 11, 66, 390, 598, 659-661, 680
active listening, 660
Listening skills, 390, 659-660, 680
lists, 9, 12, 35, 42, 45, 55, 144, 151, 176, 253, 257, 259, 262, 281, 333, 341, 344-345, 486, 509, 551, 575, 598, 615, 630, 651, 659, 670
Liver, 419
Loads, 556
Loans, 245, 388
Location, 8, 13-14, 16-17, 41, 77, 138, 146, 162, 171, 182, 185, 234, 238, 259-261, 279, 282, 394, 399-400, 417, 420-421, 480, 489, 491-492, 495, 506, 512, 515, 533, 541, 553, 557, 566-568, 572-573, 575-576, 578, 643, 659, 663, 680
log on, 13, 184
Logos, 232, 381, 384-386, 391, 405
London, 54, 56-57, 108, 150, 152-153, 614, 616-617, 650, 652-653
long documents, 66
Los Angeles, 14, 244, 660
Love, 43, 131, 238, 397, 545, 623
Lumen, 209, 305, 451

M

machines, 48, 130, 240, 278, 566, 599, 601-602, 610
Magazines, 37, 43, 134-136, 210, 306, 452
Mail, 2, 4, 6-11, 13-15, 18, 21, 23-28, 30-35, 38, 44, 47-48, 50-52, 55, 58, 63-66, 68-69, 80, 82-83, 85-87, 92-98, 103, 107-109, 115, 117, 121-123, 130, 144-148, 151, 154, 158-163, 170-177, 180-181, 183-185, 187-191, 216, 225, 232, 246-247, 250-251, 254, 258-259, 263, 265-268, 270-271, 273, 275, 277, 279, 281-282, 285-287, 312, 321, 326, 328, 374, 380, 382-383, 386-388, 391, 394, 396, 399-401, 403, 406, 417, 420, 433, 458, 472, 480, 482, 501, 507, 509-511, 514, 523-527, 529, 533-535, 540-541, 558-560, 564, 567-568, 595, 599, 603, 612, 615, 618, 623, 625, 629, 634, 640, 644, 647-648, 651, 654, 662, 664, 666
addressing, 509
bulk, 108, 122, 175, 189
distributing, 216, 312, 458
opening, 146, 173, 250, 268, 271, 273, 287, 391, 568
presenting, 246
tracking, 85, 266
maintenance, 31, 67, 133, 174, 176, 189, 217, 219, 271, 313, 315, 380-381, 387, 406, 414, 419, 459, 461, 474, 483, 500, 551, 558-560, 562-563, 567-568, 577, 586, 609, 628, 646-647
Malaysia, 103
Malls, 126
Management, 3-4, 11, 14, 20-21, 31, 34, 49, 62-63, 65, 75, 81, 92, 94, 101-103, 106, 111-112, 120-121, 124, 127, 132-136, 138, 145-146, 162, 173, 177, 182, 211, 213, 215, 217-218, 221-224, 230-231, 253, 261, 266-268, 270, 272, 277-278, 283-284, 307, 309, 311, 313-314, 317-320, 349, 376, 388, 390, 401, 407-411, 414, 453, 455, 457, 459-460, 463-466, 484, 487, 520, 526, 528, 533, 539-540, 550-551, 560, 565, 568, 573-577, 582, 585, 591-592, 594, 599, 603, 605, 608-611, 624-625, 646, 677-678
decisions, 162, 218, 261, 314, 460, 575, 610
financial, 14, 20, 103, 106, 268, 349, 540, 573, 608, 624, 677
resource management, 101-102, 124, 253, 266, 277
restaurant, 540, 624
skills, 11, 20, 81, 106, 120-121, 162, 182, 261, 266-268, 270, 272, 278, 284, 390, 526, 677
staffing, 20, 215, 311, 457, 624
Managers, 13, 15, 20, 28, 81, 98, 122, 159, 171, 187, 204, 250, 253-254, 266, 285, 300, 358, 446, 581, 625, 647
manuals, 11, 39, 45-47, 53, 103, 127, 141, 144, 149, 245, 262, 270, 384, 395, 415-417, 430, 469-502, 507, 518, 613, 622, 645, 649
Manufacturing, 10, 24, 94, 106, 160, 215-216, 311-312, 342, 457-458, 550, 556, 567-568
map, 31, 36, 39, 48, 362, 364, 378, 394, 400, 527, 665-666
Mapping, 31, 34-35, 39, 47-48, 185-186, 228, 366, 589, 637
Marc, 63, 232, 403, 405, 412
margins, 108, 167, 222, 318, 337, 341, 354, 357, 409, 464, 508, 519, 527
Markers, 671, 681
Market share, 120, 395, 399
Marketing, 2, 5, 11, 30-31, 62, 102, 120, 128, 132, 134, 171, 187, 229-230, 233, 235-236, 240, 242-244, 248, 259, 268, 272, 279, 283-284, 376, 380-381, 384, 386-387, 389, 391-392, 394, 398-399, 403, 407, 482, 527, 567-568, 577, 595, 622, 630, 635, 637-638, 677
economics, 134, 387
functions, 381
infrastructure, 132, 403
management, 11, 31, 62, 102, 120, 132, 134, 230, 268, 272, 283-284, 376, 407, 568, 577, 677
niche, 637
on the Internet, 134, 407, 527
special events, 568
technology, 128, 134, 387, 595, 677
Masks, 498
mass, 15, 71, 273, 381, 637
Mat, 510
materials, 13, 31, 78, 86, 96, 133, 136, 159, 203, 245, 271, 299, 366, 384, 403, 421, 423, 425, 433, 445, 479, 500, 551, 565, 573, 609-610, 622-623, 630, 663, 679
disposal of, 133
industrial, 610
plastic, 500
primary, 551, 573, 622
mathematics, 134
addition, 134
matter, 40, 46, 74, 83, 92-95, 98, 108, 119, 129, 174-175, 185, 189, 241, 359, 382, 482-483, 485, 513, 515, 537, 573-574, 579, 589, 608, 623
McClintock, Jessica, 267
Mean, 41, 49, 64, 76, 106-109, 119, 136, 143, 187, 369, 392-393, 475, 477, 489, 513, 524, 625
measurement, 109, 208, 210, 212, 304, 306, 308, 358, 450, 452, 454
abbreviations, 208, 210, 304, 306, 450, 452
direct, 208, 304, 450
volume, 210, 306, 452
measurements, 65, 108-109, 119, 425
formats, 109
Meat, 74, 104
Media, 10, 14, 38-39, 52-53, 62-63, 69, 79, 81, 115, 128, 130-131, 137-138, 148-149, 155, 214, 227-248, 251, 253-255, 281, 284-285, 287, 310, 321, 350, 354, 358, 360-361, 381-382, 391, 394-395, 401-402, 405, 407, 415, 456, 480, 505-507, 509-510, 514, 525-526, 533, 549, 575, 611-613, 637, 642, 648-649, 659, 663, 673
kinds, 79
Medical technology, 103, 175
meetings, 3, 6, 10, 13-15, 22-25, 36, 50, 63, 67, 80, 82-83, 159, 163-164, 171, 184, 213, 218, 231, 235, 309, 314, 324, 326, 420, 455, 460, 505, 568, 623, 627, 647, 663-664, 670
agenda, 13, 22, 36, 664
conference call, 13
details, 63, 67, 159, 623, 627
follow-up, 6, 623
food, 13, 568
minutes, 3, 10, 22, 235, 324, 664
notices, 420
software, 14-15, 22, 163, 184, 231, 647, 663-664,

670
team, 3, 6, 10, 13-15, 22-25, 36, 63, 82, 164, 184, 505, 568, 663
virtual, 13-15, 231, 663
Men, 111-113, 119, 210, 215, 277, 306, 311, 369, 371, 452, 457, 637
Mentor, 238, 256, 324
Mentoring, 21
menu bar, 355-356, 398, 424, 499
Menus, 3, 48, 181, 518, 522
Merchandising, 86
organization, 86
messages, 2-3, 5-7, 10, 13-15, 18, 21, 30-31, 38, 44, 47, 50, 52, 55, 66-69, 83, 97, 117, 146, 148, 151, 158-161, 163, 170-174, 178, 180-181, 183-185, 187-188, 191, 225, 231, 235-236, 248, 271, 374, 380-381, 383, 391, 406, 417, 482, 510, 520, 535, 612, 615, 648, 651, 660-662, 666, 686
metadata, 7, 131
methods, 24, 34, 38, 40, 50, 85, 140, 262, 265, 335, 380, 384, 406-407, 585
arguments, 40, 384, 406-407
calling, 50
Mexico, 14, 207, 303, 376, 449, 548, 642
Miami, 532
Microscopes, 53, 149, 613, 649
Microsoft, 9, 19, 31, 42, 47, 63, 69-70, 84, 103, 107, 124, 129, 142, 165, 183, 232, 248, 254, 261, 265-266, 268, 270, 276, 283-286, 330, 340, 355, 387, 390, 398, 424, 481, 516, 519, 521, 546, 583, 593, 595-596, 601, 604-605, 607, 609, 611, 670, 672
Microsoft Office button, 70
Microsoft Windows, 129, 270, 593, 595-596, 605
Windows desktop, 595, 605
Microsoft Word, 19, 42, 63, 70, 84, 142, 165, 261, 265-266, 276, 340, 355, 519, 546, 583, 611
borders, 266
spacing, 266
tabs, 266
text, 19, 42, 63, 70, 84, 261, 266, 519, 583
Middle East, 506, 608
minimizing, 471, 497, 508, 515
Mission statement, 252, 513, 573, 609
Mistakes, 104, 180, 192, 252, 288, 434, 631-632
mixing, 200, 296, 442
Mobility, 6-7
Mode, 9, 480, 559, 601, 628
Models, 11, 176, 181, 416, 670
Modulation, 208, 304, 450, 660
Moisture, 575
Molding, 64
Money, 3, 11, 13-14, 20, 23, 47, 49, 76, 101, 135, 186, 191, 201, 255, 260, 277, 297, 325-326, 329, 332, 336, 338, 348-349, 374, 384, 387, 396, 406, 417, 443, 471, 474, 480, 506, 527, 535, 556, 573-574, 608, 628-629, 647, 663
Monuments, 528
Mortgages, 245
motherboard, 99
motion, 263, 421
Motivating, 391, 540
mouse, 362, 369, 431, 604, 671
actions, 604
Mouth, 395, 422, 623
movement, 361, 515, 629, 660, 668
movies, 210, 253, 306, 452, 483
Mozzarella, 499
multiple documents, 39, 630
Multitasking, 7, 183, 185, 660
Municipal bonds, 349, 372-373
Music, 81, 106, 235, 391, 501, 634, 640
MySpace, 229, 231, 233

N

nails, 213, 309, 455, 498
Name, 9, 36, 52-57, 68, 76, 82, 91, 107, 116, 119-120, 123, 136, 142, 148-153, 166-170, 172, 181, 210, 221, 235, 254, 258-259, 266, 270-271, 273, 279, 281, 306, 317, 365, 367, 390, 394, 397, 399, 408, 420, 425, 430, 452, 463, 487, 491-492, 494-496, 499, 507, 509-511, 514, 525, 543, 547, 557, 579-580, 596, 612-617, 648-653, 661, 665-666
Name recognition, 509
Nanotechnology, 133, 158
natural resources, 545
Needs, 10, 13, 20, 22, 26, 30-33, 40, 45, 48, 62-63, 65, 75, 81, 87, 94-95, 97-98, 100, 106, 113-114, 120, 122, 126, 132-133, 138, 145, 171, 174-177, 182, 188-190, 202, 220, 229, 236, 239, 241-244, 252, 270, 276, 278-279, 283-285, 298, 316, 332, 343-344, 370, 376, 381, 383, 396-397, 403, 405, 414-416, 418, 420, 430, 444, 462, 470, 472-473, 479, 482, 484, 504, 510, 512, 514, 521-524, 526, 528, 534, 538-539, 542, 547, 549-550, 552, 556-559, 567-568, 572-575, 578, 582, 585-586, 588, 590-591, 608-611, 624-628, 635-637, 643-646, 659, 662, 668, 678, 681
Neighbors, 388
Net income, 557
Netiquette, 172-173, 183, 253
Network, 7, 35, 38, 54-58, 87, 95, 99, 130, 150-155, 229-231, 233, 247-248, 253-256, 268, 276, 343, 345, 363, 395, 472, 528, 574, 578, 594, 597-599, 603, 606, 609-611, 614-618, 650-654, 686
Networking, 30, 81, 88, 130, 229-231, 235, 248, 251, 253, 255, 257, 281, 285, 287, 321, 350, 378, 419, 482, 533, 580, 589, 598, 600, 602, 605, 661
New jobs, 7-8
News releases, 67, 229, 235, 244
newsletters, 39, 67, 90, 233, 237, 392, 507
Newspapers, 37, 128, 134-136, 401, 589, 627-628, 637, 667
Niche, 636-637, 643
Nike, 62, 102, 232, 397
Nitrogen, 84, 421-422, 543
Nonprofit organizations, 63
nonverbal communication, 18, 24, 103-104, 284, 660, 677
facial expressions, 660
posture, 660
Nose, 79, 422
Notions, 258, 660
nouns, 106, 112, 137, 195, 210, 291, 306, 400, 437, 452
Nova, 104
Numbers, 9, 24, 41, 52-53, 87, 104, 108, 148-149, 170, 172-173, 177-178, 181, 202, 204, 212-213, 238, 258, 260-261, 278, 298, 300, 308-309, 342-344, 349, 351, 353-357, 361, 371, 373, 400, 403, 423, 425, 444, 446, 454-455, 475, 477, 489, 507, 509-511, 525, 527, 612-613, 629, 634-635, 640, 648-649
signed, 170
whole, 351, 355
Numerator, 204, 300, 446
Numerators, 355
Nurses, 106, 498, 553
Nutrients, 84, 543
water, 84
Nuts, 201, 297, 433, 443
Nylon, 421

O

Objectives, 3, 31-32, 39, 43, 61-88, 91, 93-94, 98, 127, 133, 159, 185-186, 190, 229, 242-243, 251, 258, 266, 268-270, 280, 282, 325, 349, 381, 391, 394, 403, 415, 471, 489, 505, 533, 537-538, 541, 548, 550, 554, 557, 561, 573, 584, 589, 622-623, 625, 630, 659
objects, 139, 366, 475, 606
views, 366
Occupational Outlook Handbook, 49, 252, 269, 287
Occupational therapy, 646
Office button, 70, 165, 265
Office equipment, 215, 268, 311, 457, 645, 667
Office managers, 647
offline, 183
oil, 80, 259, 353, 360, 417, 472, 500
online, 3, 7, 13, 17-18, 21, 27, 35, 37, 39, 44-46, 49, 51, 54, 56, 58, 67-69, 71, 81, 87-88, 91, 99-100, 122-123, 128, 130, 132-136, 140, 145-146, 150, 152, 154, 170, 183-184, 191, 228-235, 238, 240-244, 247-248, 250, 252-253, 255, 263, 265, 269, 273-274, 278, 281, 321, 328, 344-345, 349, 351-352, 361, 369, 373, 380-381, 385, 394-395, 406-407, 415, 433, 471-472, 474, 482-484, 498-499, 501, 503-530, 533, 535-536, 540-541, 548-549, 556, 562, 569, 586, 590, 600, 605, 608-609, 611, 614, 616, 618, 628, 637-638, 647, 650, 652, 654, 660, 663-664, 667, 680-681, 684-685
Optimum, 13, 334, 513
Orally, 6, 11, 20-21, 24-27, 87, 122-123, 344, 407, 420, 501, 661-662
Orders, 31, 64, 103, 106, 175, 483, 681
Organization charts, 31, 35-36, 47
Organizational chart, 48-49, 362, 377
organizations, 6, 24, 30, 63, 87, 124, 132, 134, 137, 204, 211, 228-229, 240, 245, 261, 300, 307, 382-383, 395, 446, 453, 475, 507, 569, 605, 663
student, 204, 300, 446
orientation, 68, 91-92, 101, 120, 325, 337, 342, 398, 659, 678
Outlets, 645, 671
Outlook, 12, 14, 28, 49, 54-58, 150-154, 252, 269, 283-284, 287, 604, 614-618, 650-654
Outputs, 99
Ovens, 342, 500
Overflow, 96
Overhead, 167, 274, 549
Ownership, 20, 406, 640
Oxygen, 208, 304, 450, 543
explanation, 543
Ozone, 407
Ozone layer, 407

P

Pace, 106, 482, 518, 660, 669, 677
Pacemakers, 158
Packages, 21, 36, 122, 177, 327, 528, 537, 559-560, 568, 668
packaging, 21, 416
Pads, 245, 671
page layout, 9, 261, 266, 327, 337, 339-340, 342, 398, 400, 403, 475, 536
Page Layout tab, 398
page orientation, 337
pages, 9, 15, 17, 38, 69, 136, 138, 161, 169, 177, 231, 237, 263, 265-266, 326, 353, 357, 399, 505, 511-512, 515, 518, 523-525, 529, 535, 549, 559, 579, 581, 584-585, 671
Paint, 78, 139-140, 215, 311, 370, 457, 481, 500
paper, 8, 10, 28, 68-69, 71, 108, 129, 144, 146, 163, 167, 172, 263, 266, 333, 337, 342, 393, 396, 399-400, 431, 498, 505, 508, 510, 512-513, 518, 525, 559, 630, 665, 671, 678-679
Paperwork, 536
paragraph alignment, 9
paragraphs, 41, 45, 52, 66-67, 71, 74-75, 85, 99, 139, 148, 166, 168, 170, 172-173, 176-177, 221-222, 242, 317-318, 326-327, 339-340, 357, 400, 403, 408-409, 463-464, 478, 485, 489, 508, 515, 575, 587, 598, 612, 630, 648
spacing, 168, 172-173, 327
Paramedics, 106, 542-543
Parentheses, 52-53, 148-149, 204, 213, 300, 309, 355, 446, 455, 612-613, 648-649
Paris, 238
Parks and recreation, 145, 414, 588
Part, 8, 11, 31-32, 39, 47, 52, 77, 80-81, 109, 113-115, 127, 140, 145, 148, 159, 179, 187, 202, 222-224, 229-230, 232, 252, 259-260, 282, 285, 298, 318-320, 365-366, 374, 384, 386, 389, 391, 409-411, 416-417, 420, 428, 430, 444, 464-466, 477-479, 481, 485, 518, 523, 532, 536, 539, 542, 575, 596, 612, 624, 631, 645, 648, 659-660, 666, 680
Parts list, 366
password, 13, 344, 510, 523-524, 558, 601, 664
Pathology, 553
Patient safety, 498
Patients, 112, 132, 213, 309, 455, 471, 498
Patterns, 63, 77, 84, 87, 343, 513, 602, 635, 638
computer, 602
Payments, 219, 315, 461, 524
Payroll, 49, 532
Payroll deductions, 49
Peace, 79
Pencils, 129
Penicillin, 554-555
Pepsi, 397, 406
Percent, 10-11, 13-14, 46, 49, 69, 71, 80, 87, 96, 102-104, 107-108, 120, 122, 132, 160, 171, 178-180, 184, 187, 189-190, 212, 214-215, 230, 235, 244-245, 251, 255, 259, 262, 268, 272, 277-278, 285, 308, 310-311, 326, 328, 349-350, 354, 358, 360, 368, 387-388, 390, 395, 406-407, 454, 456-457, 506, 509, 521, 526-528, 536, 538, 551-552, 555, 559, 561,

564-566, 585, 600, 627, 629, 631-632, 635, 637, 645, 660, 666, 685
applications, 120, 132, 285, 360, 390, 555
change, 69, 104, 259, 390
commission, 11, 120, 160, 565
discount, 180, 395
efficiency, 13, 171, 262
interest, 349-350, 387-388, 395, 406-407, 566, 627, 666
problems, 10, 46, 87, 132, 178-179, 190, 244-245, 262, 328, 368, 395, 528, 536, 551-552, 559, 564, 627, 631, 635, 645, 666
tolerance, 87
Percentage, 11, 45-46, 104, 145, 160, 350, 354, 358-359, 361, 375, 661
Percentages, 206, 212, 302, 308, 349-351, 353, 360-361, 371, 373, 387, 392, 448, 454, 586, 629
Performance appraisal, 33, 135
Performance appraisals, 21, 277
Performance reviews, 6, 263, 284
Perpendicular, 418
Personal digital assistants, 643
Personality, 92, 100-101, 115-116, 119, 233, 397
Personnel, 2-3, 13, 20, 33-34, 47, 65, 74, 81, 85, 90, 93-95, 98, 104, 106, 112, 120, 127, 134, 146, 171, 181, 204, 213, 215, 217, 230, 234, 300, 309, 311, 313, 334-335, 343, 384, 400, 446, 455, 457, 459, 482, 484-486, 498, 506, 533, 535, 537, 540-542, 548, 550-552, 557-560, 562, 568, 575, 581-582, 584, 586, 605, 623, 625, 628, 630, 662-663, 681
Perspective, 12, 40, 75, 388, 670
Petroleum, 134
pH, 93, 485, 488
Pharmaceuticals, 132, 554
Phlebotomy, 470
Phobias, 661
phosphorus, 84
Photographs, 78, 90, 229, 233, 238, 241, 244, 253, 263, 353, 357, 367, 369-370, 381, 399-400, 415, 424, 430, 480, 523-524, 629
Phototransistors, 139-140
Physicians, 106
physics, 134, 274
work, 274
pictures, 9, 131, 229, 235, 241, 244, 261, 341, 350, 666, 670, 673-674
PowerPoint slides, 9, 670, 674
Pie chart, 7, 338, 349, 360, 372, 374-375, 377, 550, 629
pie charts, 144, 341, 349, 351, 353, 355, 357, 360, 373-374, 400, 629
Pitch, 122, 659-660, 669-670, 677, 680, 682
pixels, 254, 508, 513, 641
Pizza Hut, 102
Plagiarism, 127, 140-141, 144, 235, 628
Planners, 103, 403, 420
Planning, 13, 21-22, 31, 33-34, 36, 72, 103, 136, 138, 145, 190, 245, 258, 268, 274, 279, 343, 349, 363, 371-372, 387, 404, 415, 420, 483, 534, 536, 567-568, 584, 594, 602, 604, 624, 631, 659, 662
Plans, 3, 15, 26, 31, 63, 67, 87, 96, 112, 126, 145, 158, 164, 178, 185, 188-189, 244, 343, 349, 373-374, 380, 400, 404, 417, 420, 430, 547, 550-552, 556, 567-568, 609, 629, 645-647, 661
plantings, 113-114, 369
plants, 545, 552, 567-568
Plasma, 393, 549
Plastic, 146, 201, 206, 297, 302, 333, 416, 426-427, 429, 443, 448, 500
Plastics, 134
Plat, 420, 551
platelets, 432
Platinum, 96
Play, 33, 132, 252, 277, 540, 568, 681
Pliers, 431, 477
Plug, 106, 274, 406, 500, 508
plugs, 684
poetry, 326
pointers, 15
pointing, 22, 479, 599
Points, 12-13, 22-24, 40-41, 43, 71, 80, 97, 106, 108, 138, 172-173, 176-177, 184, 197-198, 206, 215, 242, 293-294, 302, 311, 327, 332-333, 335, 355, 357, 371, 385-386, 388-389, 394, 397, 400, 402, 404, 407, 439-440, 448, 457, 471, 478, 480, 497, 514, 520, 552, 561, 565, 584, 588, 599, 603, 609, 623, 627, 629, 644-645, 659-661, 666, 668-669, 671, 674, 677, 680
Polarity, 416
Policies, 34, 123, 180, 184, 232, 241, 262, 284, 344, 485-486, 509, 524, 646
Politics, 135, 686
Pollination, 12
Pollutants, 158, 542-546
Pollution, 222-224, 245, 318-320, 409-411, 464-466, 542, 551
Polypropylene, 366
ponds, 551-552
Population, 69, 90, 102, 104-105, 126, 188, 368, 377, 506, 530, 539, 588, 627, 634, 643
world, 90, 506, 530
Pork, 107
Port, 343, 366, 419, 424
Portfolio, 245, 250, 262-265, 277, 281, 348, 372-373
portions, 360, 483
Portland, 268, 272
portrait orientation, 337, 342
poses, 255
Positive attitude, 251, 278
Positive feedback, 45
Posture, 278, 660
Potassium, 421-422
Potato, 555-556
Power, 2-3, 69, 91, 96, 103, 202, 298, 395, 422, 433, 444, 473, 480, 528, 575, 604, 606, 677
PowerPoint, 4, 6, 8-9, 11, 31, 47, 63, 65, 69, 100, 160, 172, 190, 229, 239, 261, 263-265, 270, 276, 283-284, 389, 418, 520, 546, 659, 664-665, 670-680, 682, 685-686
alignment, 9
backgrounds for, 674
bullets, 9, 172, 265, 389, 672, 675
drawing, 263, 665
effects, 520, 546, 677
fonts, 9, 261, 263, 270, 520, 674
notes, 9, 284, 665, 671, 677-678
options, 8-9, 65, 418, 675
setting, 283-284, 664
SmartArt, 659, 673, 675, 680
source, 239, 418, 665
viewing, 671
Prejudice, 101
Premiums, 667-668
Presentation, 4, 33, 38, 63-65, 81, 92, 100, 109, 121, 140, 145-147, 167, 176, 182, 190, 229, 234, 243, 248, 270, 286-287, 354, 357, 371-372, 382, 386-387, 391, 418, 433, 501, 529, 546, 548-549, 647, 659, 661-662, 664-665, 667-682, 684-686
molding, 64
presentations, 6, 9, 11, 31, 33, 38, 47, 66, 121, 160, 229, 235, 239, 244, 263, 267, 284, 324, 380, 382, 389, 417, 420, 548, 569, 622, 647, 657-686
animation, 38, 671
delivery, 11, 659, 669, 680, 682
evaluating, 682
introduction, 6, 9, 11, 548, 647, 659, 665, 677, 680-682
main points, 659, 668, 680
planning, 31, 33, 420, 659, 662
purpose, 6, 244, 548, 669
structure, 417, 677
using PowerPoint, 672, 674, 685
press releases, 63, 381, 389, 394, 401, 405-406
Pressing, 104, 370, 481
Pressure, 94, 139-140, 217, 313, 365, 431, 459, 480
Pressure sensor, 140
previewing, 8
Prices, 36, 48, 72, 77, 80, 113-114, 159, 345, 351, 353, 357, 376, 381, 387, 400, 407, 433, 523-524, 550, 568, 584, 623, 644, 647
food, 376, 550, 568
Pride, 117, 406, 552
Principal, 213, 309, 455, 647
Print Layout view, 100
printing, 76, 141, 173, 325, 333, 336, 342, 355, 419, 610
orientation, 325, 342
Priorities, 591
Prioritizing, 668
Privacy, 16, 38, 162, 171, 184, 255, 509-510, 530, 558, 611, 663
problem solving, 13, 432, 568, 647
Problems, 3, 10, 12, 20-24, 26, 45-46, 64, 68, 73, 79, 82-85, 87, 97, 109-111, 129, 132-133, 138, 159, 162, 165, 178-179, 183, 186, 190, 193, 196, 202, 219, 222-224, 231, 240, 242-245, 252-253, 262, 266, 269, 287, 289, 292, 298, 315, 318-320, 327-328, 344, 368, 373, 394-395, 409-411, 415, 435, 438, 444, 461, 464-466, 471-472, 474, 485, 488, 507, 513, 519, 528, 533-534, 536-537, 539-543, 545, 550-552, 557-560, 564, 567-568, 573, 579, 582, 584, 586-587, 592, 595, 608, 611, 626-627, 631, 635-636, 638, 645, 647, 666, 668, 672, 681
Problem-solving, 25, 49, 146, 190, 287, 376, 407, 528
Procedure manuals, 270
Procedures, 10, 20, 34, 64, 82, 91, 93-95, 98-99, 103, 120, 162-163, 260, 262, 342-343, 388, 469-502, 518, 522, 524, 534, 542, 550, 623, 629-630
processing, 39, 42, 122, 162, 189, 203, 299, 340, 398, 445, 485, 508, 527, 559, 609, 645
Procurement, 574, 591
Produce, 7, 32, 64, 96, 117, 122, 127, 333, 416, 421-422, 432, 514-515, 606, 638
producers, 668
Product, 1, 12, 16, 29, 32, 34-36, 39, 44-46, 48, 61, 89, 103, 122, 125, 128, 146, 157, 159, 175, 180-181, 183-184, 187, 189-190, 213-214, 227, 229, 233, 239-240, 244-246, 249, 252, 272, 274, 280, 309-310, 323, 326, 347, 370, 379-380, 382, 387, 390-391, 393-394, 396-397, 399-401, 406-407, 413, 415-417, 420, 423, 430, 433, 455-456, 469, 471-474, 478-479, 482, 484, 486, 497-498, 500, 503, 505-506, 509-511, 513-514, 525, 527-528, 531, 540, 550, 557, 567, 571, 577, 586, 595, 597, 621, 623-624, 627-629, 634-638, 640-641, 643-644, 646, 657, 663-664, 684
Product development, 274
Product release, 382
Productivity, 8, 11, 13, 20, 106, 112, 164, 179, 183, 188, 399, 505, 525, 566, 576, 603, 626, 645
Professional appearance, 269
Professional development, 188, 282
professional organizations, 132
Professionalism, 87, 116, 166, 170-173, 178, 183, 254, 269, 277, 282, 403, 522, 588, 647
Professionals, 8, 102, 229, 254-255, 266, 278, 324, 470
Profit sharing, 204, 300, 328, 446
Profitability, 380, 553, 637, 685
programming languages, 274, 276
programs, 21, 39, 42, 122, 184, 203, 210-211, 233, 236, 258, 280, 283-284, 299, 306-307, 363, 370, 374, 445, 452-453, 478, 482-483, 504, 526, 567-568, 602, 609, 658
Progress report, 34, 44, 533-534, 550-552, 561-564, 566-567
Project management, 14, 75, 230, 270, 550-551, 585
Project management software, 14
Projections, 49, 105, 164, 166, 214, 310, 456, 549
projectors, 549
Projectors, 549
promoting, 120, 391, 626, 664
promotion, 9-10, 34, 195-196, 291-292, 382-383, 390, 437-438, 565, 646, 667
Proof, 121, 278, 384-386, 389, 391, 394-395, 402, 406-407, 479, 518, 587, 627
Proofing, 70
proofreading, 15, 21, 32, 41-42, 47, 51, 75-76, 84, 514, 536
Property taxes, 556
Proteins, 432
provider, 158, 181
public area, 420
Public Health Department, 348
Public relations, 12, 62, 67, 85, 228, 231, 267, 283-284, 505, 526, 542, 544, 546, 551, 645
public speaking, 284, 686
Publications, 134, 136, 263, 384
Publicity, 245, 550, 627
Publisher, 261
Pump, 86, 117, 414, 567-568
Purchasing, 159, 215, 311, 414, 457, 509-510, 538, 549, 559-560, 590-591, 667

Q

Quality, 3, 13, 15, 20, 32, 75, 106, 172, 192, 203, 218,

251, 263, 269-270, 274-275, 277, 283, 288, 299, 314, 346, 397, 404, 407, 416, 434, 445, 460, 471, 482, 484-485, 488, 497, 505, 514, 536, 550, 563, 565, 606, 626, 659, 663, 680
of service, 514
quality assurance, 270, 471, 482, 485, 488, 536
Quality control, 218, 314, 460, 484, 488, 514, 563, 565
Quark, 269
Quick Styles, 341
Quotas, 82, 203, 299, 445

R

Race, 91-92, 101, 109, 120, 261, 643
Radian, 209, 305, 451
Radiology, 540
Radon, 646
rain, 123, 393, 543-546, 573
Range, 38, 84, 134, 161-162, 238, 252, 287, 374, 383, 399, 418, 422, 478, 523, 544, 598, 605, 643
Rashes, 542-543, 545-546
Rate, 74, 164, 245, 326, 372, 554, 600, 647, 659-660, 669, 678, 680, 682
Ratio, 49, 115, 551
scale, 49
Reach, 5, 184, 235, 239, 337, 395, 475, 504, 507, 526, 529, 669
Real estate, 8, 10, 120, 145, 184, 398, 404, 608
Reasoning, 377, 393, 407, 668
Receiving, 146, 177, 258, 627
Receptionist, 622
receptors, 553
Recession, 179, 202, 298, 444, 626
Recommendations, 138, 141, 163, 215, 254, 311, 344, 457, 536, 538-540, 542, 544, 548-549, 551-552, 554, 556-557, 561, 581-582, 585, 599, 609-611, 626, 629, 631, 675, 686
Record keeping, 171
Records, 98, 104, 121, 147, 174, 257, 476, 484, 487, 494, 510, 539, 541, 575-577, 659, 678
health, 147
Records management, 487, 575
Recreation, 135, 145, 414, 505, 526, 588
recycling, 146
red blood cells, 432
Reduction, 49
References tab, 142
Referrals, 381
Regulations, 71, 80, 90, 112, 120, 222-224, 318-320, 343-344, 390, 409-411, 464-466, 471, 484-487, 497, 561, 577, 678
Regulatory agencies, 75, 270, 343
Rehabilitation, 507
related, 3, 7, 16, 77, 84, 104, 131, 133, 142, 161, 163, 171, 173, 183, 193, 197, 213, 228, 232, 241, 255, 257, 268-269, 277, 284, 287, 289, 293, 309, 324, 383, 386, 414, 435, 439, 455, 472, 483, 486, 492, 496, 509, 519, 521-522, 527-528, 534, 537, 543, 547-548, 564, 566, 568, 591, 606, 608, 625, 631, 642-643, 661, 666
relational database, 275
Relationship, 123, 186, 253, 343, 596, 669
Relationships, 33, 52-53, 63, 83, 121, 148-149, 171, 361-362, 476, 612-613, 648-649, 662
Relays, 374
Religion, 91-92, 101, 120, 261, 529
Religious organizations, 395
Rendering, 367, 378
Renovations, 550
repair, 67, 78, 251, 380-381, 391, 406, 472, 500-501, 528, 558-559, 568, 582, 627
repetition, 354, 357, 388
Replace, 66, 73, 85-86, 179-181, 186, 350, 498, 500, 538, 671, 674
Reply, 390, 422
Reporting, 10, 34, 77, 171, 222-224, 228, 230, 247, 276, 318-320, 359, 409-411, 464-466, 481, 487, 534, 536-537, 540-541, 550-551, 586, 591-592, 611, 628, 632
Reports, 3-4, 6, 10-11, 20, 31, 33-34, 38, 44, 47, 49-50, 63, 67, 78, 82, 86-87, 90, 94, 98, 103, 121-122, 124, 127-128, 132, 134, 141, 144, 160, 177, 185, 188, 192, 216, 222-224, 252-253, 270, 288, 312, 318-320, 326-328, 344, 360, 374, 382, 384, 409-411, 415, 417, 430, 434, 458, 464-466, 485, 487, 507, 531-569, 571-611, 613-619, 625, 645, 647, 662-663, 666-668, 681
incident, 3, 533, 535-536, 539-546, 564, 567, 569
investigative report, 540-542, 544-546, 564
oral, 3-4, 6, 10-11, 38, 50, 103, 121, 128, 160, 382, 569, 647, 662-663, 666-668, 681
progress report, 34, 44, 533-534, 550-552, 561-564, 566-567
telephone, 6, 10, 50, 63, 128, 326, 374, 662-663, 666
written, 3-4, 6, 10-11, 34, 44, 50, 63, 82, 94, 103, 121, 128, 160, 177, 192, 222-224, 270, 288, 318-320, 409-411, 417, 434, 464-466, 535-537, 540, 542, 545, 548, 551, 554, 558, 560, 564, 569, 581, 588-589, 609-610, 613, 625, 647, 668, 681
Reputation, 219, 244, 315, 326, 461, 509, 565
research, 6-7, 9-10, 14, 22, 24, 26-28, 35, 49, 52-53, 65, 82, 123, 125-155, 191, 229-230, 235, 240, 252-253, 255, 277, 287, 321, 350, 355, 360, 385, 391, 415, 419, 430, 432, 481, 488, 501, 508, 528, 535-536, 556, 558, 566-568, 573-574, 585, 587-590, 593, 596-597, 600, 608-609, 612-613, 623-624, 626-628, 631, 634-635, 637, 639, 644, 646-649, 662, 665, 667, 669, 681-682
specialists, 647
research papers, 588
Reservations, 634, 640
Residents, 75, 78, 84, 145-146, 244-245, 385, 404, 414, 420, 588, 627
resistors, 362
Resolution, 3, 21, 23, 25, 269, 479, 520, 659, 670, 680, 682
Resources, 3-4, 15, 20-21, 23, 26, 37, 49, 104, 120, 132, 134-135, 171, 177, 183, 188, 234, 237, 251-253, 266, 271-272, 278, 280-282, 284-285, 327, 340, 343, 389, 417, 513, 532, 537, 545, 573-574, 580, 588, 605-606, 608, 623-625, 658, 678-679
capital, 120
cost of, 574
information, 3-4, 15, 20-21, 26, 37, 104, 132, 134-135, 171, 177, 183, 188, 234, 253, 266, 272, 280-282, 285, 327, 389, 532, 537, 545, 573-574, 580, 588, 606, 608, 623, 625, 678
people, 4, 15, 20-21, 23, 171, 183, 237, 251, 253, 278, 282, 389, 573-574, 608
selection of, 177, 513
sharing, 15
time, 3, 20, 23, 26, 120, 132, 135, 177, 183, 234, 237, 251, 272, 278, 281, 285, 343, 537, 545, 573-574, 588, 608, 623-624, 678-679
tools, 20, 678
transportation, 134
Respirators, 74, 217, 313, 459
Responsibilities, 4, 12, 20-22, 28, 94-95, 146, 163, 184, 214, 229, 232, 251-252, 256-257, 259, 267-268, 274, 279, 282, 284, 286, 310, 456, 473, 482, 484, 486, 557, 659
legal responsibilities, 473
roles and, 20, 28
Responsibility, 10, 120, 175, 232, 254, 474, 489, 504-505, 510, 526, 581, 624, 661
Rest, 203, 214, 299, 310, 445, 456, 670
Restaurants, 87, 104, 106, 236, 245, 253
Restorations, 528
Restorative, 84
Restructuring, 388
Resumes, 6, 68, 77, 252-253, 256, 258, 262-263, 266, 268-269, 273, 278, 282, 321, 328
appearance, 269, 321
checklist, 321
chronological, 77, 258, 266, 268, 282
curriculum vitae (CV), 252
formatting, 263
functional, 258, 268, 282
information in, 266
planning, 258, 268
Sales, 6, 268, 328
Retailers, 159
Retirement, 13, 49, 186-187, 348-349, 372-373, 515, 626, 658
planning, 13, 349, 372
Return on investment (ROI), 638
Revenues, 9, 203, 272, 299, 351, 384, 393, 407, 445, 584, 642, 668
reviews, 6, 88, 200, 231, 252, 263, 284, 296, 327, 442, 484, 537, 630
Revolution, 209, 305, 451
Ribbon, 8, 42, 340-341, 546
Home tab, 340
Insert tab, 341, 546
menu, 341
Rich Text Format, 17, 172
right-clicking, 263
Ring, 43, 106
Rise, 104, 238, 545, 644
Risk, 43, 262, 372, 504-505, 526, 575, 577, 599, 623, 629, 660
Risks, 595, 597
Rivets, 433
robotics, 140, 206, 214, 302, 310, 448, 456
robots, 53, 139-140, 149, 613, 649
Roles, 12, 20, 26, 28, 111, 485
Rolling, 106, 245, 418
Ross, 558, 646
Rules, 66, 71, 99, 137, 172, 183, 192, 201, 203, 212, 229, 237, 244-245, 248, 265, 288, 297, 299, 308, 327-328, 390, 434, 443, 445, 454, 513-514, 534, 577
Run, 43, 108, 129, 186, 213, 236, 262, 309, 415, 455, 477-478, 500, 567-568, 596, 599, 601-603, 610, 623, 639, 671
Running, 84, 421, 498, 505, 513, 567-568, 607, 624
Runoff, 138
Rye, 210, 306, 452

S

Safety, 10, 21, 81, 106, 147, 261, 270, 391, 422, 471, 474-475, 484, 498, 501, 540, 544-546, 565, 588, 646
chemical, 544
computers, 21
hazardous waste, 270, 565
material safety data sheets, 475
Salaries, 49, 216, 312, 458, 638
Salary, 11, 147, 203, 215, 218, 252-253, 257, 278-280, 282, 287, 299, 311, 314, 445, 457, 460
Sales, 5-6, 11, 30, 35-36, 39, 48, 73, 82, 86, 102-103, 114, 120-122, 132, 163-164, 166, 175, 189, 204, 214-215, 240, 242-243, 260, 268, 280, 283-284, 300, 310-311, 326, 328, 351, 357-359, 377, 380-381, 384, 386-388, 390, 394-395, 405-406, 415, 417, 419, 423, 428, 430, 446, 456-457, 505, 525-527, 547-548, 556, 559, 561-563, 567-568, 577, 610, 630, 635-636, 638-639, 642, 645, 647, 663, 668, 681, 684
advertising, 214, 284, 310, 359, 387-388, 456, 635
analysis, 82, 215, 284, 311, 328, 406, 415, 417, 419, 423, 430, 457, 556, 559, 577, 610, 630, 668
goals, 11, 30, 122, 189, 242-243, 268, 280, 283-284, 381, 388, 556, 684
incentives, 556, 559
records, 121, 577
representatives, 5, 214, 240, 283-284, 310, 456, 559, 684
specialists, 11, 121, 387, 642, 647
training, 6, 11, 102, 215, 240, 260, 268, 283, 311, 390, 457, 505, 526, 548, 559, 568, 630, 663, 681
Sales leads, 284
Sales volume, 505, 525
Salmon, 266
salt, 13, 216, 312, 387, 458
salutation, 161, 167-170, 201, 221-222, 271, 279, 297, 317-318, 394, 408-409, 443, 463-464
San Francisco, 13, 246
sans serif fonts, 508, 674
Saving money, 186
Savings, 13, 75-76, 82, 107, 245, 348, 373, 562-564, 584
Savings accounts, 107
scale, 12, 49, 80, 82, 87, 129, 260, 367, 369, 560, 578, 600, 675
Scales, 87
Scanners, 266, 376, 433
Scheduling, 218, 314, 460, 483, 551, 630, 634, 640
Schematic diagrams, 362
Scholarships, 260, 505
School, 25-26, 48, 86, 96-97, 112, 120-121, 126-128, 189, 214, 219, 257, 260, 267, 286, 310, 315, 456, 461, 504-505, 515, 526, 542-546, 565, 588, 646-647
Schools, 8, 11, 96, 127, 134, 210, 260, 270, 306, 452
science, 28, 52, 127, 131, 133-135, 141, 144,

147-148, 238, 274-276, 284, 345, 471, 484-486, 497, 501, 544-546, 612, 628, 648
life, 135, 238, 276, 545
social, 52, 131, 134, 148, 238, 612, 648
scientists, 171, 419, 485-486, 588
screen, 7, 9, 13, 16, 18, 34, 36, 40, 45-46, 67-68, 70, 100, 108, 142, 161, 170, 189, 235-236, 248, 266, 370, 430, 471, 480-484, 492, 497, 505, 508, 512, 515, 518-521, 525, 527, 530, 549, 645, 674, 677
screens, 3, 39, 49, 68, 100, 122, 161, 173, 181, 278, 406, 430, 482-483, 511, 514, 518-520, 522, 549, 671, 674, 676
screws, 433
Scroll, 68, 106, 165, 236, 259, 263, 265, 398, 478, 505, 515, 525, 583, 676
searching, 136, 252, 321, 391, 510, 636
Seasons, 211, 307, 453
Seconds, 162, 386, 498
Secretaries, 215, 311, 457
Secretary, 77, 113, 206, 302, 363, 448
Section, 80, 94, 105, 138-139, 159, 164, 168, 176, 187, 206, 218, 259, 261, 271, 284, 302, 314, 327, 366, 368-369, 378, 390, 417-418, 448, 460, 485-487, 507, 515, 519, 521, 530, 533, 537-538, 540-541, 548, 552, 557-558, 560, 581, 584-587, 597, 599, 609, 628-629, 631, 667, 669, 680
sections, 130, 263, 281, 330, 417, 475, 485, 487, 550, 581, 586, 626, 629, 632
Security, 65, 93, 95, 129, 159-160, 162, 183-184, 187, 225, 241, 255, 345, 348, 505, 509-510, 525, 540, 567-568, 572-578, 593, 595, 597, 600, 605-609, 611, 624, 626, 646
Security concerns, 160
segmentation, 594, 603
Selection, 177, 272, 330, 358, 470, 501, 508, 513, 595
selection of, 177, 513
Self-starter, 272, 285
selling, 146, 479, 506, 527, 624
Seminars, 167, 200, 260-261, 296, 325, 329, 332, 336, 339, 390, 442, 537, 548, 663
Sense of self, 115
Senses, 387, 402
senses, 387, 402
sensors, 139-140
September 11, 543, 572
sequence, 32, 39, 52-53, 55, 75, 139-140, 148-149, 151, 333, 362, 365, 423, 471, 477, 485, 489-491, 497, 612-613, 615, 648-649, 651, 679
series, 45-46, 53, 149, 163-164, 202-204, 206, 251, 298-300, 302, 374, 419, 444-446, 448, 482-483, 490, 493-494, 502, 550, 613, 649, 666
serif fonts, 508, 520, 674
Servers, 240, 274, 380, 406, 511, 528, 601
Service, 4, 6, 8, 12, 24, 34-35, 39, 44-46, 48, 54, 56-58, 79-81, 95, 98, 108, 115-116, 135, 137, 146, 150, 152-154, 159, 162, 178-179, 182, 184, 189-190, 207, 231, 233, 235-237, 240, 242-243, 246, 250, 252, 259, 261, 265, 267, 270-272, 283-286, 303, 326, 328, 345, 380, 389, 391, 393-394, 397, 399-400, 406, 414-416, 420, 423, 430, 449, 472, 474-475, 504, 506, 509-511, 513-514, 525-526, 528, 558-560, 566-568, 576-577, 580, 605, 608, 614, 616-618, 623-624, 627-629, 644, 646-647, 650, 652-654, 664, 681
American, 54, 108, 150, 261, 475, 614, 650
Service technicians, 558-559
Services, 2-4, 10, 13, 23, 33, 35-36, 48-50, 62, 77, 95, 100-102, 113, 121, 130, 180-184, 230, 233-238, 241, 252, 254, 283, 286, 321, 343, 366, 381, 394-395, 399, 401, 405-406, 417, 505-506, 510-511, 525, 528, 532, 550, 556, 562, 566, 607-608, 610, 624, 646-647
Serving, 10, 68, 88, 258
Sexual orientation, 91-92, 101, 120
Shades, 109, 353
Shading, 353, 360
Shadow effects, 425
shadows, 341
Shape, 106, 423, 425, 433, 479
shapes, 7, 341, 367, 399, 424-425, 501, 534
drawing, 367
fill, 341
outline, 425
size, 341, 399
shark, 528
Sheath, 366
Sheraton, 189
shift, 261, 500, 626
Shingles, 479, 567
Shipping, 35, 159, 175, 178, 189, 199, 295, 416, 441, 625
Shirts, 79, 527
Shock, 179-181, 370
Shock absorbers, 179
Shoes, 79, 475
shoots, 528
Shoppers, 395
Shopping, 101, 127, 243
Shorts, 79, 527
Showers, 501
Shrubs, 113-114
Silicon, 189, 248, 280, 421-422
Sinks, 501
Size, 6, 9, 38, 67-68, 108, 122, 158, 162, 167, 172-173, 255, 258, 261, 329, 332, 341-342, 353-354, 357-358, 371, 392, 396, 399-400, 420, 423, 433, 473, 475, 479, 486, 505-506, 508-509, 511-515, 520, 525, 556, 578, 583, 641, 671, 674, 677, 680
Sketches, 540, 586, 628
Skill, 7-8, 12, 47, 272, 534
Skills, 7-13, 20, 23, 28, 41-42, 54-58, 81-82, 104, 106, 120-121, 128, 150-154, 162, 182, 190, 252, 254, 256-263, 265-272, 274-276, 278-279, 284-287, 345, 389-390, 504, 515, 526, 530, 549, 588, 614-618, 650-654, 659-660, 662, 669, 677, 680-681, 686
developing, 28, 190, 677
management skills, 270
Skin, 79, 109, 201, 297, 369, 443, 542-543, 545-546
slides, 9, 100, 234, 239, 421, 483, 659, 664-665, 670, 672-680, 682, 685
multiple, 665
pictures from, 673-674
Smartphones, 6-7, 21, 68, 160, 189, 269, 277, 376, 433, 624, 643, 663
Smiles, 171
social networking, 81, 88, 229-231, 235, 248, 253, 255, 257, 287, 321, 350, 378, 482
Social Security, 348, 510
card, 510
retirement and, 348
Sodium, 421-422, 486
software, 7-8, 14-15, 21-22, 34-35, 53-54, 58, 65, 69, 81, 98, 107-108, 121, 130, 132-133, 146, 149-150, 154, 162-163, 172, 183-184, 189, 228-229, 231, 237, 240, 243, 245, 251, 260, 263, 266, 268-269, 272-276, 284-285, 340, 380-381, 384, 388, 391, 396, 398, 406, 414-415, 472, 482-484, 493-494, 498, 500-501, 508, 510, 518, 522, 527-528, 530, 532-534, 536, 547, 558-559, 573-578, 587, 589-592, 595, 597, 599, 601, 603-611, 613-614, 618, 624, 628, 633-635, 638-639, 641-643, 645, 647, 649-650, 654, 663-664, 670, 684
soldering, 199, 295, 441, 501
solutions, 24, 31, 33, 50, 79, 83, 87, 100, 122, 132, 138, 181, 186, 201-202, 240, 270-271, 283, 297-298, 443-444, 511, 540, 567-568, 572-575, 578, 584, 586, 594, 596, 599, 603, 605, 609-611, 626-629, 631, 647
Sourcing, 39, 59
South Africa, 608
spaces, 168-169, 185, 203, 222, 299, 318, 409, 445, 464
Spacing, 9, 108, 168, 172-173, 266, 327, 330-331, 333, 341-342, 360, 538
Spain, 109, 267
Speakers, 71, 102, 108, 240, 324, 433, 663, 668, 670, 674
speaking, 4, 10-11, 20, 22-24, 34, 64, 104, 115, 244, 278-279, 284, 596, 660, 662, 665, 669, 674, 677-678, 686
Special events, 568
Specialist, 34, 62, 276, 521, 642, 658, 678
Specialization, 8, 62, 260
Specific gravity, 210, 306, 452
Specifications, 93, 159, 175-177, 189, 215, 311, 400, 415-417, 420, 430, 433, 457, 475, 479, 488, 541, 574, 584, 586, 610, 623, 626, 630, 635, 641, 645
speeches, 664-665, 671
speed, 6, 95, 139-140, 160, 171, 183, 185, 266, 416, 419, 421-422, 478, 505-506, 514, 525, 552, 588, 669
Sportswear, 268
Spreadsheets, 284, 591-592, 609
Springs, 126-127, 145, 245, 380, 406, 549
Spyware, 510, 558, 601
Square, 209-210, 269, 305-306, 401, 451-452, 477, 566, 610
Staffing, 20, 45, 47, 163, 215, 311, 457, 624, 658
Standard sheet, 108
Standards, 34, 53, 87, 106, 133, 145, 149, 190, 229, 241, 257, 343, 380, 470, 474-475, 487, 505, 525, 527, 534, 536, 555, 607, 613, 626, 629, 649, 658
Staple, 559
Staples, 166, 266, 593
State government, 41, 59, 321
statements, 106, 133, 163, 203, 299, 326, 445, 534
Statistical analysis, 360, 667
statistics, 69-70, 104, 131, 239, 248, 350-351, 355, 385, 395, 530, 585
steel, 416-417, 421, 551
Stems, 526, 672
step, 31-34, 37, 39-40, 43, 45-47, 75, 97, 122, 136, 185, 278, 386, 388, 400, 417, 420, 470-471, 473-474, 477-480, 482-483, 488-492, 494-495, 497, 501, 518, 521, 557, 577, 589, 623, 631-632
steps, 14, 21, 34, 41, 46, 49, 77, 84, 142, 159, 185, 222-224, 235, 243, 318-320, 344, 362, 365, 371, 381, 388, 391, 409-411, 423-425, 464-466, 471-478, 480-484, 487-490, 492, 494, 497, 500, 516, 538, 546, 550, 554, 556, 583, 588-589, 628, 668, 676
Stereotyping, 111-112, 369
sterilization, 470, 561-564
Stewardship, 574
Stock market, 143
Stockholders, 161-162, 186-187, 534, 685
stocks, 218, 314, 372, 460
making, 218, 314, 460
quality, 218, 314, 460
Storage, 52, 148, 231, 494, 566, 572-578, 585, 610-612, 648
storing, 130, 231, 487, 574
Strategic planning, 13, 21
Strength, 210, 251, 259, 285, 306, 452
Stress, 20, 215, 311, 388, 457, 645, 669
strings, 432
Students, 8, 69, 122, 126-127, 139, 141-142, 211, 238, 245, 278, 285-286, 307, 324-325, 329, 332, 336, 338, 351, 355, 376, 387, 426, 431, 453, 504-505, 526, 541-542, 546, 633-634, 636-637, 640, 642, 646
Style, 9, 41, 52-57, 72, 88, 92, 100-101, 103, 119, 127, 141, 144, 148-153, 159, 167, 171, 261, 274, 332, 352-353, 371, 396, 401, 407, 514-515, 536, 539, 582-583, 598, 612-617, 647-653, 671, 674
styles, 103, 337, 340-341, 361, 425, 477, 513-514, 524, 583
subcontractors, 11, 359, 551, 553
Subordinates, 4, 34, 92-93, 97, 115, 121, 162-163, 170, 188, 217-218, 286, 313-314, 388, 403, 459-460, 535, 539, 565, 579, 661-662
Substance abuse, 505, 526
Suburban, 624
Success, 3, 13, 21, 23-24, 26, 30, 40, 45, 63, 98, 107, 122, 159, 182, 192, 201, 229, 242-243, 278, 288, 297, 374, 385, 391, 406, 434, 443, 473, 488, 578, 610, 636, 659, 661, 670
Suicide, 505, 526
Suites, 414
Suits, 79, 277, 284, 556
Sums, 422, 552, 560
sun, 230, 232, 247
Sunlight, 575
Supervision, 33, 81, 94, 217, 274, 313, 459
Supervisor, 8, 33, 44, 85, 93, 97, 112, 114, 128, 182, 188, 190, 192, 194, 199, 205-206, 210, 213-217, 285-286, 288, 290, 295, 301-302, 306, 309-313, 328, 434, 436, 441, 447-448, 452, 455-459, 492, 495, 500, 537-540, 550, 554, 557, 563, 565, 568, 580, 662
Supervisors, 4, 43, 45, 49-50, 98, 100, 106, 112, 158, 162, 167, 170, 188, 190, 215, 217, 261, 285, 311, 313, 383, 403, 457, 459, 471, 483, 534-535, 537-539, 547, 550, 553, 579,

625-626, 661
Suppliers, 14, 175
Surfaces, 498
Surgeons, 211, 307, 453
Survey, 6, 11, 28, 46, 81, 83, 87, 102, 128-130, 160, 177, 225, 230, 235, 253, 321, 343, 586-587, 589, 593-594, 600, 609, 627-628, 638, 646, 667
surveying, 129, 420, 646
Surveys, 67, 104, 128, 130, 385, 520, 573, 589, 608
suspension bridges, 418
Sustainability, 138
Switches, 140, 610, 646
synonyms, 136, 393
Syringes, 487
  disposable, 487
Systems, 4, 48, 55, 85, 96, 99, 103, 129, 151, 162, 170-171, 174, 184, 214-215, 217, 247, 268, 285, 310-311, 313, 345, 376, 414, 421, 430, 456-457, 459, 472, 501, 505-506, 518, 520, 526, 530, 533, 553, 567, 575, 577, 586, 594-595, 597-600, 603-607, 610, 615, 624, 639, 642, 647, 651
  airbag, 421

T

Tab key, 266
table design, 275
table of contents, 9, 136, 263, 471, 474-475, 484, 492, 494, 497, 505, 512, 525, 535, 573, 579, 581-582, 584, 594, 608, 625, 629, 631-632, 635, 647
Tables, 9, 31-32, 47, 131, 142, 170, 263, 341, 349, 353-354, 356-357, 373, 377, 397, 400, 403, 514, 518, 522, 539, 573, 584, 586-587, 589, 608, 629, 670, 673, 675
Tablet PCs, 430, 433
Tablets, 8, 129, 508
tabs, 263, 266, 327, 478-479, 492, 496
Taco Bell, 102
Tagging, 231
Tags, 81, 131
Talents, 11, 252, 254
Tape, 528
Target, 22, 46, 132, 246, 254, 504, 515, 526, 551-552, 562, 564, 637, 642, 668
tasks, 12, 98, 163, 239, 274, 477, 482, 520, 522, 556, 586, 590-591, 597, 630-632, 660
  completed, 482, 630, 660
  due, 591
  list of, 590, 630
  subject, 98, 482, 591
Taste, 84, 387
Taxes, 76, 202-203, 238, 298-299, 390, 393, 444-445, 556, 588, 638
teachers, 41, 141, 192, 261, 288, 434, 542, 544-546
Teaching, 58, 154, 276, 481, 618, 654
Team building, 13
Team meetings, 3, 25
  facilitator, 25
Teams, 3, 10-12, 14-15, 17, 20-21, 23-24, 28, 87, 103, 135, 237, 239, 251, 270, 283-284, 342-344, 431
Teamwork, 3, 11-12, 19-20, 23-24, 83, 270, 286, 565, 660
  conflict resolution, 3, 23
technologists, 93, 395
technology, 3, 6-8, 12, 15, 18, 67-68, 75-77, 93-96, 98, 103, 106, 128-130, 133-134, 139-140, 147, 175-176, 182-183, 214, 231-232, 237, 247, 250-251, 253, 265, 269, 285-286, 310, 328, 345, 387, 414, 419, 456, 471, 473, 484, 497, 507, 511, 532-533, 540-542, 547, 550, 553, 556, 558-560, 572, 578, 580, 591-593, 595, 609-610, 634, 642, 645, 663, 672, 677, 686
  and community, 231
  and education, 106
  appropriate, 18, 98, 129, 214, 310, 328, 456, 471, 497, 533, 560, 595, 663, 677
  communication technology, 558
  computer, 7-8, 12, 68, 76, 93, 106, 129-130, 133-134, 139-140, 147, 247, 250-251, 269, 285-286, 345, 387, 471, 484, 497, 511, 533, 541, 580, 610, 642, 645, 663
  defined, 94-95, 98
  impact of, 128
  industry and, 3, 134
  laser, 645
  manufacturing, 94, 106, 550, 556
  with friends, 253
Telecommuting, 14
Teleconferences, 6, 11, 13-14, 50, 162, 240, 659, 662-663
Teleconferencing, 13, 49, 664
Telephone, 6, 10, 13, 30, 50, 63, 99, 128, 171, 181, 183-184, 218, 231, 235, 251, 278, 283, 314, 326, 374, 399, 460, 480, 482, 499, 514, 659, 661-663, 666, 680
  directories, 128
  messages, 6, 10, 13, 30, 50, 171, 181, 183-184, 231, 235, 374, 482, 661-662, 666
  messaging, 183-184, 663
  techniques, 128, 181, 183, 278, 514, 659
Telephone communication, 662
Television, 78, 210, 229, 235, 253, 306, 389, 391, 452, 552, 637, 645, 682
telnet, 599
Temperature, 210, 306, 365, 452, 486, 543, 545, 661, 668
templates, 9, 47, 52, 148, 165-166, 265-266, 398, 587, 612, 648, 659, 670-672, 680
Tennis, 267
Tensile strength, 210, 306, 452
Terminology, 43, 45-47, 94-95, 97-98, 354, 357, 473, 475-476, 534, 539, 584, 587, 625, 630
  abbreviations, 94, 97-98, 354, 476, 587
  understanding, 46, 98
Terms, 14, 41, 43, 47, 63, 66, 84, 91, 93-94, 96-99, 106, 112-113, 119-120, 122-123, 136, 174, 188, 207-208, 210, 236-237, 279, 286, 303-304, 306, 324, 354, 397, 433, 449-450, 452, 474-476, 484, 488-489, 492, 508, 518, 522, 534, 584, 586-587, 589, 597, 606, 609, 623, 625, 629-631, 642-644, 685
  lowest, 522
terrain, 228, 362
Terrorism, 95, 257, 572-573
Testing, 31, 40-41, 43, 47, 51, 66, 69, 217, 240, 270, 274, 276, 313, 374, 416, 459, 471, 482, 488, 497, 520, 525, 534, 554, 606, 658
  importance of, 41, 374, 658
  methods of, 40
text, 2-3, 5-10, 14-19, 21, 28, 31-32, 36, 38-43, 46-47, 50, 52-53, 55, 59, 62-63, 68-71, 75, 77, 79, 84, 86, 91, 99, 106-108, 115, 120, 124, 134, 137, 141, 143, 148-149, 151, 155, 158-161, 164, 167, 169-170, 172-173, 184-185, 187-189, 191, 221, 225, 229, 231-233, 235-236, 242, 244, 246, 248, 261-263, 266, 270, 277, 282, 317, 321, 325-328, 330-335, 337, 341-343, 346, 349-350, 352-354, 356-357, 367, 370-371, 373, 378, 380-382, 394, 396-397, 400-401, 403, 405, 407-408, 412, 417, 419-421, 423, 425, 430, 463, 467, 471, 474-475, 477-478, 480, 482-484, 497, 500, 502, 505, 507-508, 510, 512-522, 525, 527, 530, 535, 539, 544, 548, 560-561, 573, 579, 583, 585, 587, 589, 591, 598, 601, 606, 608, 610, 612-613, 615, 625-626, 628-631, 635, 639, 643, 648-649, 651, 660-661, 663-664, 672, 674-675, 677, 679, 686
  color, 9, 38-39, 41, 84, 91, 172-173, 333, 335, 341-342, 349, 352-353, 371, 373, 378, 381, 397, 400, 405, 419, 423, 425, 477, 502, 507-508, 512-513, 515-516, 520, 522, 583, 635, 672, 674, 677
  column, 337, 354
  finding, 277, 515, 539
  message, 7-8, 14, 18, 32, 38, 41, 55, 59, 68, 120, 151, 159-161, 170, 172-173, 184, 188-189, 191, 225, 235-236, 242, 246, 277, 282, 321, 326, 382, 397, 475, 513, 521, 530, 615, 625, 629, 651, 660-661, 677
text editor, 9
Textile industry, 134
Texture, 423
Thailand, 103
Themes, 402
Theory, 205, 301, 447, 554
thesaurus, 9, 135
thesis, 143, 585, 666-667, 681
Thrombin, 432
thrust, 325, 329, 332, 336, 338
Time, 2-3, 5, 10-11, 13-14, 17-18, 20, 22-23, 26, 32, 34-35, 38-40, 43, 45-47, 54, 56-58, 64, 66, 71, 74, 78, 86-87, 97-99, 103, 106, 109, 119-120, 122, 127, 129, 132-133, 135-136, 146, 150, 152-154, 159, 162, 174-175, 177, 183-187, 190, 199, 212, 220, 228, 230, 234-235, 237, 241-243, 251, 256-257, 259, 270, 272-274, 276-279, 281, 285-286, 295, 308, 316, 325-326, 332, 343, 352, 360, 370, 372, 381, 387, 391-392, 394-396, 407, 419, 422, 441, 454, 462, 471, 474, 479-480, 488-489, 491, 505-506, 508, 511-512, 514, 518, 520, 523-526, 528, 536-537, 539, 545, 547, 552-553, 557, 562, 564, 573-577, 581, 584-588, 591-592, 597, 602, 607-608, 614, 616-618, 623-624, 628-630, 645-646, 650, 652-654, 660, 662-664, 666, 668-671, 674-675, 677-679, 684
  measurements, 109, 119
Time zones, 14
Tips, 28, 76, 81, 170, 183, 230, 237, 247-248, 253, 269, 400, 475, 508, 513-514, 544, 546, 647, 661-664, 670, 674, 685-686
tissue, 158, 553
title block, 367, 369
title page, 263, 399, 474, 484-485, 492, 535, 573, 579-580, 608, 623, 625, 629, 633, 647
Tolerance, 87
Tolerances, 87
Tongue, 426, 429
toolbar, 42, 165, 265, 492, 495, 546
Tools and equipment, 488
Totals, 355
Toys, 472, 513
Track Changes feature, 19
trade, 231-232, 248, 281, 510, 526, 530
Trademarks, 232
Traffic, 67, 85, 87, 126-127, 138, 145, 245, 277, 343, 391, 393, 414-415, 588, 666
Training, 4, 6, 8, 11, 13, 21, 31, 49, 62, 65, 81, 85, 102, 104, 106, 124, 129, 133, 136, 167, 181-182, 185, 190, 197, 200, 203, 215, 218-219, 229, 235, 240, 244-246, 257, 260-263, 268, 270, 274, 283, 293, 296, 299, 311, 314-315, 325, 329, 332, 336, 339, 390, 403, 439, 442, 445, 457, 460-461, 470-471, 474, 483, 486, 504-505, 518, 526, 528, 537-538, 542, 544, 546, 548-549, 558-560, 568, 574, 582, 586, 588, 590, 608, 622, 624, 630-632, 659, 663, 666, 680-681
  online training, 680
Traits, 92, 100-101, 119, 123, 251, 353, 515, 528, 536, 565
Transcription, 663
Transducers, 94
transistors, 606
Translation, 91, 103-104, 108, 120, 124, 506
transportation, 67, 134, 138, 145, 176, 339, 391, 414-415, 552
  land, 145
  space, 67, 134, 339
  water, 138, 414-415
Travel, 7-8, 13-14, 108, 127, 163, 171, 186-187, 200, 213, 240, 277, 296, 309, 383, 432, 442, 455, 528-529, 533, 537-538, 547-548, 564, 568, 647, 663
  agencies, 647
  air, 13, 528, 547
  security, 187, 568
trees, 113-114, 421, 491-492, 495, 569
Trends, 11, 28, 54-58, 77, 150-154, 228, 349-351, 373, 376, 508, 614-618, 650-654
  organizing, 55, 77, 151, 615, 651
Triangle, 384, 386
Trips, 528-529, 547
Troubleshooting, 345, 419, 474-475
Tuberculosis, 349
turf, 20, 552
Turnover, 278
Turns, 229
Tweeting, 7, 235, 241
Twitter, 6-7, 14, 18, 21, 35, 38, 53, 67-68, 103, 115, 128, 130-131, 136-137, 146, 149, 229-233, 235-239, 241, 244-245, 247-248, 253-254, 257, 269, 350, 360, 381, 394-395, 402, 415, 505, 514, 526, 613, 634, 637, 640, 649, 668
Type, 9, 42-43, 50, 69, 71, 91, 97, 99-100, 120, 122-123, 128, 131, 136-137, 147, 165, 168-170, 174, 182-183, 217, 221, 253, 258, 266, 270, 274, 287, 313, 317, 328-330, 333, 335-337, 341-342, 344, 356, 376-377, 398, 400, 407-408, 418, 420, 425, 459, 463, 473, 475, 492, 495, 499, 506, 508-510, 512, 517,

520, 547, 568-569, 578, 583, 624, 626, 647, 664-665, 667, 671, 676-677, 680, 682, 685
types of, 6, 8, 38, 44, 77, 133, 141, 159-160, 173-174, 176, 178, 185, 221, 232, 260, 317, 326, 333, 349, 353, 357, 366, 369, 371, 384, 393, 408, 416, 463, 511, 533, 535-536, 539, 574-576, 647, 664, 670, 681

U

underline, 9, 42, 333, 341, 400, 670
Understanding, 13, 20, 34, 41, 46, 63, 72, 84, 92-93, 98, 108, 111, 119, 136, 138, 143, 172, 187, 232, 242-243, 286, 343, 358, 386, 397, 399, 424, 480, 489, 507, 533, 560, 600, 628, 647
Unemployment, 658
Uniformity, 471
Unit, 173, 208-209, 217, 281-282, 304-305, 313, 332, 358, 450-451, 459, 479-480, 487-488, 559, 567, 596, 645-646
United, 3, 9, 37, 69, 102-109, 124, 135, 167, 184, 214, 239-240, 253, 255, 265, 267, 310, 406, 417, 419, 423, 456, 486, 515, 572, 588, 608, 611
United States, 3, 9, 37, 69, 102-109, 124, 239-240, 253, 255, 265, 406, 419, 486, 515, 572, 588, 611
  meat production, 104
  population, 69, 102, 104-105, 588
Units, 143, 164, 208, 210, 212, 217, 304, 306, 308, 313, 327, 342, 358, 450, 452, 454, 459, 487, 553, 591
Units of measurement, 208, 210, 212, 304, 306, 308, 450, 452, 454
  time, 212, 308, 454
Universities, 219, 257, 260, 315, 461

V

Vacuum, 210, 306, 342, 452, 646
Values, 7, 84, 103, 186, 212, 229, 235, 240, 244, 251-252, 308, 343, 358, 361, 389, 454, 556
Valve body, 366, 424
Valves, 217, 313, 459
Vandalism, 78, 540
Variable, 99
variables, 92, 501
Variety, 3, 7, 13-14, 39, 128, 133-134, 147, 159, 236, 239, 271, 325, 327, 336-338, 342, 344, 391, 400-402, 416-417, 482-483, 518, 532, 575, 589, 622, 659-660, 666-667, 669, 672
Veins, 432
Vending machines, 566
Vendors, 3-4, 11, 49-50, 67, 81, 100, 132, 159, 161-162, 170, 176, 180, 233, 270, 272, 374, 384, 390, 403, 535, 547, 549, 557-558, 560, 574, 590-592, 596, 601, 605, 611, 628, 645, 647, 661, 663, 667, 681, 684
Vent, 528
Ventilation systems, 96
Venting, 172
verbal communication, 660
verbs, 63, 72-73, 84, 106, 193-195, 262, 267, 281, 289-291, 435-437, 478
Versed, 276
Vessels, 432
viability, 556-557, 564, 599
Viable, 595, 605
Vibration, 87
Videoconferences, 6, 13-14, 324, 647, 659, 662-663
Videoconferencing, 549, 664
Videos, 14, 35, 38, 46-47, 99, 131, 136, 138, 228-230, 233, 235, 238, 240-241, 244, 269, 471, 482-484, 501, 508, 533, 549
views, 232, 235, 357, 365-366, 388, 402, 415, 424, 430, 509, 664
Virtual meetings, 663
virtual reality, 357, 366, 368, 378
virtual world, 231, 240
Virus, 183, 345, 385, 510
viruses, 170, 183-184, 232, 417, 431, 577, 601, 626, 667
Vision statement, 511
Visual aids, 31-32, 47, 100, 339, 347-378, 471, 623, 644, 659, 665, 669-671, 677, 680-682, 684
Visual learners, 482
Visualization, 131
Visualizing, 228
Voltage, 94
volts, 208, 210, 304, 306, 450, 452
volume, 210, 306, 452, 505, 525
Volunteering, 256

W

Wages, 11, 186-187, 386
Walk, 24, 171, 237, 326, 342, 483, 526, 576, 678
Walking, 10
Wall Street Journal, 236, 248, 253, 321
walls, 78, 96, 342, 421, 500-501, 646
War, 54, 56-57, 150, 152-153, 211, 307, 453, 479, 614, 616-617, 650, 652-653
Washers, 627
Waste, 39, 66, 97, 174, 206, 217, 259, 262, 270, 302, 313, 390, 448, 459, 562-563, 565, 584, 662
Watches, 483
water, 80, 84, 113-114, 123, 138, 206, 216-217, 222-224, 302, 312-313, 318-320, 343, 360, 409-411, 414-415, 448, 458-459, 464-466, 485-487, 498, 501, 513, 544-545, 567-568, 588, 627, 678
  discharged, 222-224, 318-320, 409-411, 464-466
  resources, 343, 513, 545, 588, 678
  table, 544
water and, 513, 567-568, 678
Water treatment, 343
watt, 210, 306, 452
Wavelength, 210, 306, 452
Weather, 85, 387, 423, 486, 550, 573
Web browsers, 610
Web pages, 17, 69, 136, 231, 265, 512, 523, 529
Web sites, 6, 11, 15, 26-27, 31, 35, 38, 44, 47, 51, 55, 91, 104, 134, 136, 141, 151, 160, 188, 228-229, 231-232, 244, 253, 269, 328, 339, 345, 369, 396, 401, 417, 501, 503-530, 608, 615, 651, 676
wedges, 360-361
weight, 21, 171, 208, 210, 261, 304, 306, 330, 337, 342, 423, 425, 450, 452, 479, 578
Welding, 431, 501
Well-being, 20, 388
Wellness, 20-21, 26
West Nile virus, 385
WiFi, 8, 344-345, 508, 532-533, 558, 624
Wikis, 10, 14-15, 17-18, 229-231, 244, 247, 506
Wind, 96, 473, 544-546, 567-568
Windows, 96, 103, 124, 129-130, 165, 266, 269-270, 275, 419, 483, 494, 501, 515, 521, 527, 567-568, 591-602, 604-605, 607, 610, 641
  moving, 130, 604
Windows XP, 103, 124, 270, 494, 601
Windshield wipers, 396
Witnesses, 540
wood, 390, 513
Word, 7-9, 16-19, 39, 41-45, 47, 63, 65, 69-71, 73, 83-84, 86, 95, 107-108, 111, 115, 122, 131, 136-137, 142, 144, 162, 165-166, 172-173, 180, 189, 198-201, 203-204, 211, 213, 261, 263, 265-266, 273, 276, 281, 283-284, 294-297, 299-300, 307, 309, 324, 326, 332-333, 340, 352, 355-356, 390, 392, 395, 398, 401, 423-425, 430, 440-443, 445-446, 453, 455, 475-476, 489, 508, 511, 514, 516-517, 519-522, 527, 534, 540, 546, 559, 562, 583, 587, 590-591, 604, 609, 611, 623, 630, 645, 666, 669, 674-676
  characters, 69, 108
  consistency, 41, 489
  data labels, 356
  diagrams, 540
  fields, 43-44, 142, 392
  forms, 71, 326, 540
  inserting, 356
  linking, 508, 676
  page layout, 9, 261, 266, 340, 398, 475
  publishing, 17, 111, 142, 284
  setting up, 111, 284
  styles, 340, 425, 514, 583
  surveys, 520
  titles, 41, 261, 356, 489
  tracking, 19, 266
  values, 7, 84
Word processors, 42
words, 7, 9, 32-33, 40-41, 43, 63-64, 66, 69-76, 83-86, 91, 95-96, 106-109, 111, 113, 115, 117-121, 127, 129, 133, 137, 140-141, 143-144, 166, 170, 173, 178, 180, 186, 193, 196-199, 201-204, 211, 213-214, 217, 229, 232-233, 235, 241, 244, 254, 269-270, 275, 279, 289, 292-295, 297-300, 307, 309-310, 313, 324, 326-328, 330, 333, 337, 349-350, 354, 357, 373, 385-386, 391, 396-397, 400, 403, 415, 419, 423, 435, 438-441, 443-446, 453, 455-456, 459, 475-478, 489, 492, 508, 510-511, 514-515, 524, 527, 530, 536, 538, 545-546, 562, 581, 587, 625, 630, 660, 668-670, 674, 676, 679-680
Work, 2-8, 10-17, 19-21, 23-24, 26, 28, 30, 32-34, 43-47, 49, 62-63, 66-69, 73, 75, 77, 79, 82-83, 85-87, 90, 92-98, 100-101, 103, 106, 109, 112-114, 118-120, 122, 126, 128, 132-133, 135, 143, 158-160, 162, 172, 177, 181-182, 184-185, 189, 192, 194, 199, 202-203, 205, 214-216, 225, 228-229, 232, 235, 237, 241, 244, 250-251, 253-254, 258-261, 263, 266-269, 271-272, 274-275, 277-278, 280-281, 284-288, 290, 295, 298-299, 301, 310-312, 324-327, 329, 332, 336, 338, 345, 348, 359-360, 362, 371, 380-384, 386, 390, 392, 396, 403, 406-407, 414-415, 417, 419, 426, 430-431, 434, 436, 441, 444-445, 447, 456-458, 470, 482-483, 486, 488-489, 492, 494-495, 498-501, 504-505, 508, 515, 517, 520, 522, 525, 527-528, 530, 532, 534, 537, 539-541, 544, 547-548, 550-556, 561-568, 572-573, 585, 589, 597, 603-604, 607, 610, 622-626, 630, 634, 640-641, 645-646, 658-659, 661-662, 664, 671, 678, 680-681, 684
Work groups, 607
Work history, 269, 287, 345
Work relationships, 33
Work stations, 610, 626
workbooks, 549
Workplace, 4, 6-8, 11-12, 15, 27-28, 41, 44, 52-53, 63, 68, 76, 90, 93, 98, 100-101, 104, 120, 128, 133, 136, 148-149, 160, 163, 171, 181, 183-184, 225, 230, 232, 240, 246, 262, 272, 278, 326, 537, 547, 612-613, 648-649, 659, 668, 672
  diversity, 12, 90, 101, 104, 120, 128
Works Cited page, 52-53, 57-58, 141, 148-149, 153-154, 612-613, 617-618, 648-649, 653-654
Workshops, 182, 188-190, 246, 390, 403, 470-471, 537, 547, 663, 670
Workspace, 17
workstations, 380, 406
World, 2, 4, 6, 11, 15, 38, 43, 54, 56-58, 63, 88, 90, 103, 106, 108, 124, 150, 152-154, 184, 204, 211, 225, 231, 233, 240, 253, 300, 307, 340, 366, 376, 387, 395, 446, 453, 501, 506-507, 529-530, 544, 546, 568, 611, 614, 616-618, 650, 652-654
  trade, 231, 530
World Health Organization, 611
World War II, 54, 56-57, 150, 152-153, 211, 307, 453, 614, 616-617, 650, 652-653
World Wide Web, 90
Writing, 2-4, 6-11, 14-15, 17-21, 24-28, 30-32, 34, 36, 39-41, 43-47, 49-51, 53, 55-56, 58-59, 62-64, 66, 69-71, 75-76, 82, 85, 93-95, 97-100, 103-104, 107-109, 111-119, 123, 126, 133, 136, 139, 141, 143-144, 149, 151-152, 154, 159-160, 162-164, 166, 168, 170, 172-173, 175-179, 185, 187-189, 192, 201, 207, 213, 221, 225, 229, 237-238, 241-242, 245, 251-252, 257, 262-263, 265, 267, 273, 276-277, 279-280, 282, 286-288, 297, 303, 309, 317, 321, 344, 348, 350, 354, 357, 360, 362, 371-374, 380, 382-383, 390-391, 394, 396, 399, 401, 403-404, 406-408, 419-420, 423, 426, 433-434, 443, 449, 455, 463, 473-474, 477, 480, 482, 485, 489, 491, 497, 500-501, 507, 509, 511, 518, 520, 522-523, 527-528, 530, 533-534, 536-540, 561, 567, 581, 583, 585, 587-589, 591, 613, 615-616, 618, 623, 626, 629-631, 644, 646-647, 649, 651-652, 654, 661, 665, 667-668, 677-681
Writing process, 15, 30-32, 36, 39, 43-44, 47, 133, 141, 185, 241, 280, 371, 403, 426, 489, 497, 500, 522-523, 528, 561, 589, 630, 678, 680
  tone, 32, 43, 280, 489, 522, 630
Written communication, 4, 6, 11, 18, 34, 43, 68, 178, 192, 288, 434, 511, 668, 670, 677-678
www.bls.gov, 252

Z

Zoning, 145, 190, 417, 420